TRAVELS
INTO
MUSCOVY,
PERSIA,
And PART of the
EAST-INDIES.

CONTAINING,

An Accurate DESCRIPTION of whatever is moſt remarkable in thoſe COUNTRIES.

AND EMBELISHED

With above 320 Copper Plates, repreſenting the fineſt Proſpects, and moſt conſiderable Cities in thoſe Parts; the different Habits of the People; the ſingular and extraordinary Birds, Fiſhes, and Plants which are there to be found: As likewiſe the Antiquities of thoſe Countries, and particularly the noble Ruins of the famous Palace of PERSEPOLIS, called *Chelminar* by the *Perſians*. The whole being delineated on the Spot, from the reſpective Objects.

To which is added,

An Account of the Journey of Mr. *ISBRANTS*, Ambaſſador from *Muſcovy*, through *Ruſſia* and *Tartary*, to *China*; together with Remarks on the Travels of Sir *John Chardin*, and Mr. *Kempfer*, and a Letter written to the AUTHOR on that Subject.

In Two VOLUMES.

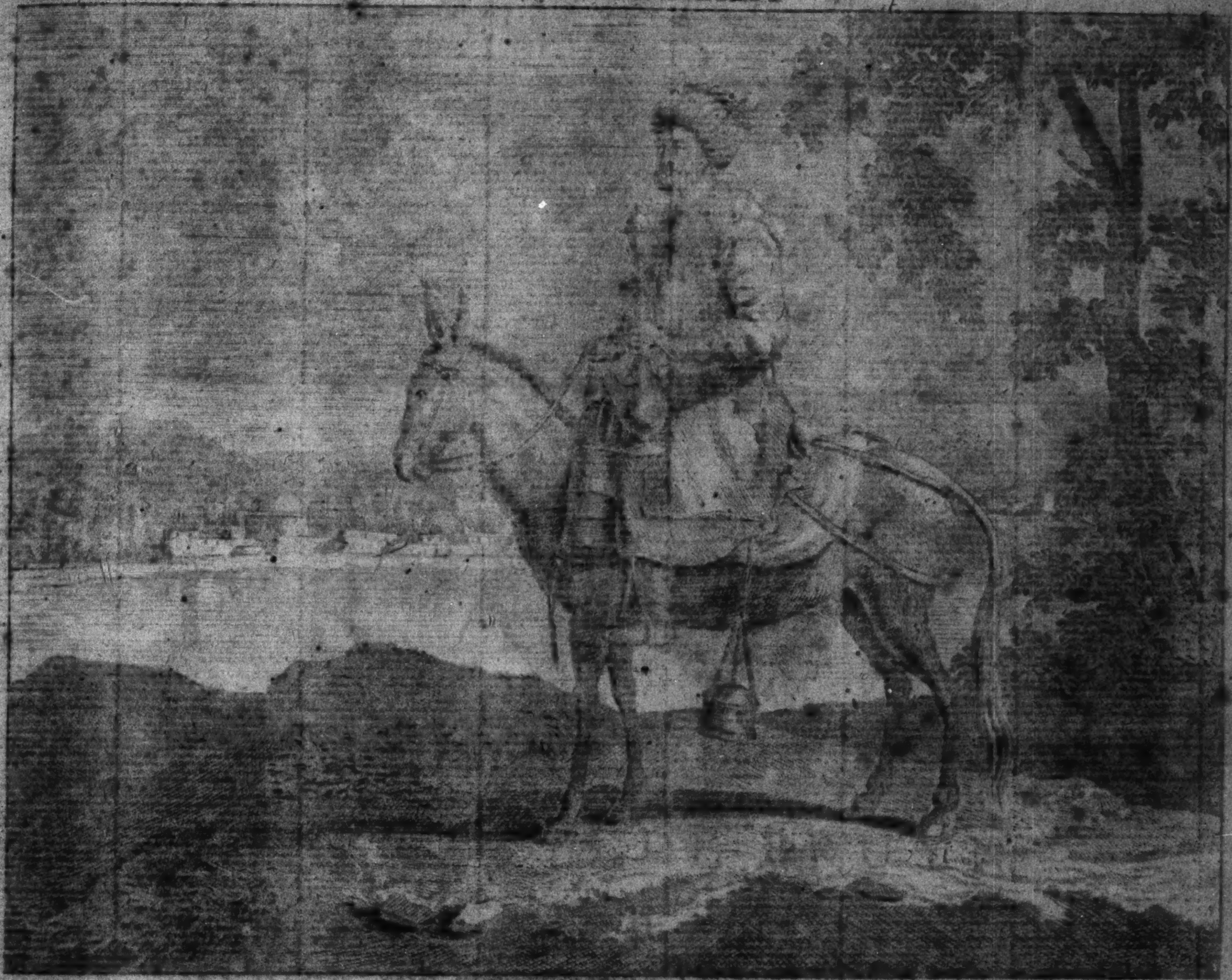
By M. *CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.*

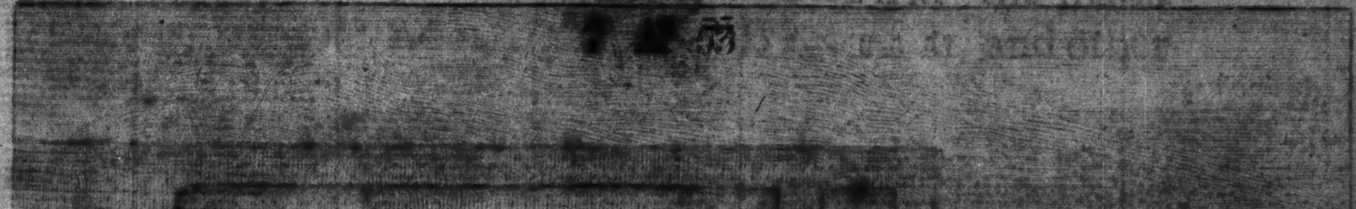
Tranſlated from the Original *FRENCH.*

VOL. II.

LONDON:
Printed for A. BETTESWORTH and C. HITCH, S. BIRT, C. DAVIS, J. CLARKE,
S. HARDING D. BROWNE, A. MILLAR, J. SHUCKBURGH, and T. OSBORNE.
MDCCXXXVII.

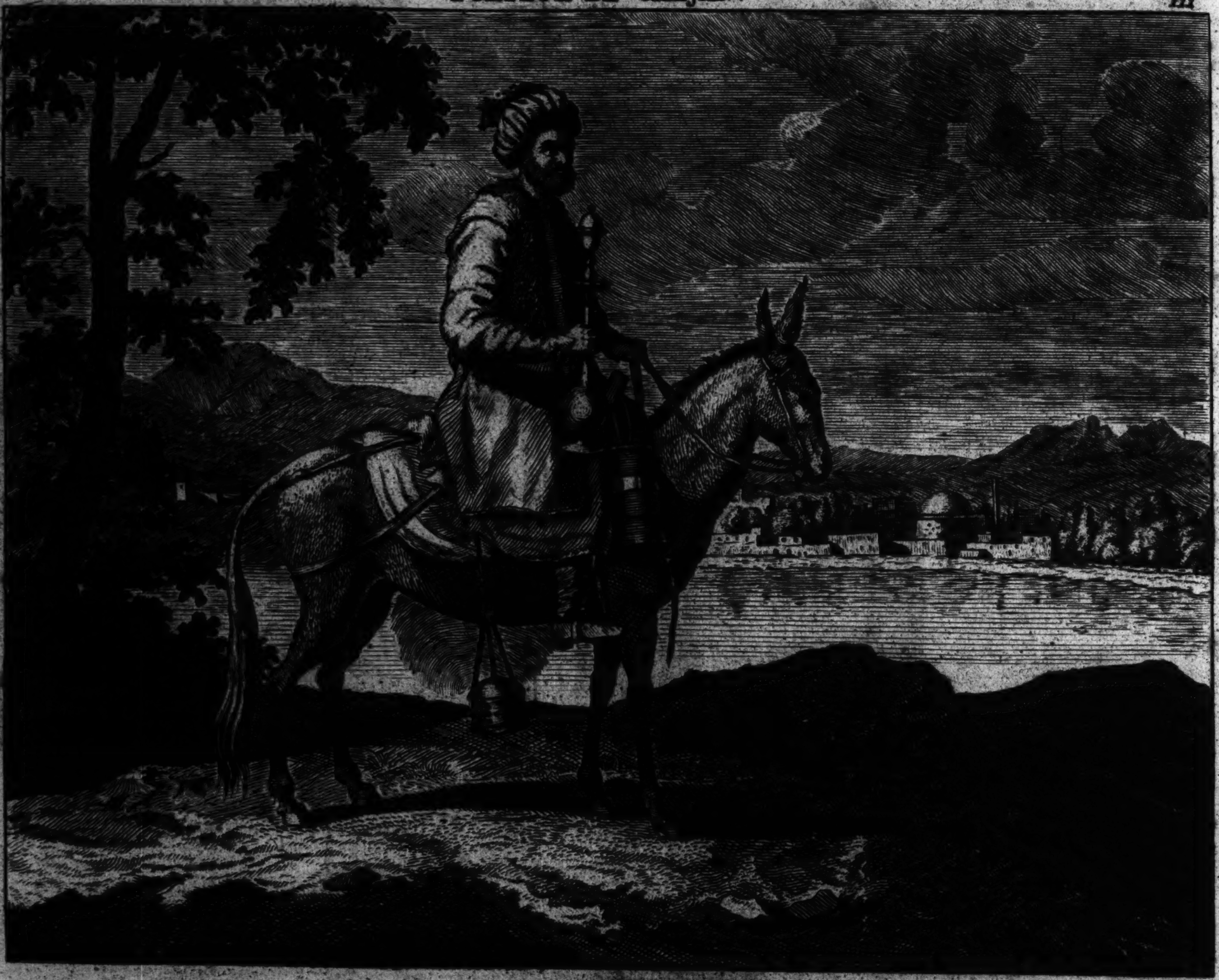
Porteur de Caljan. 111

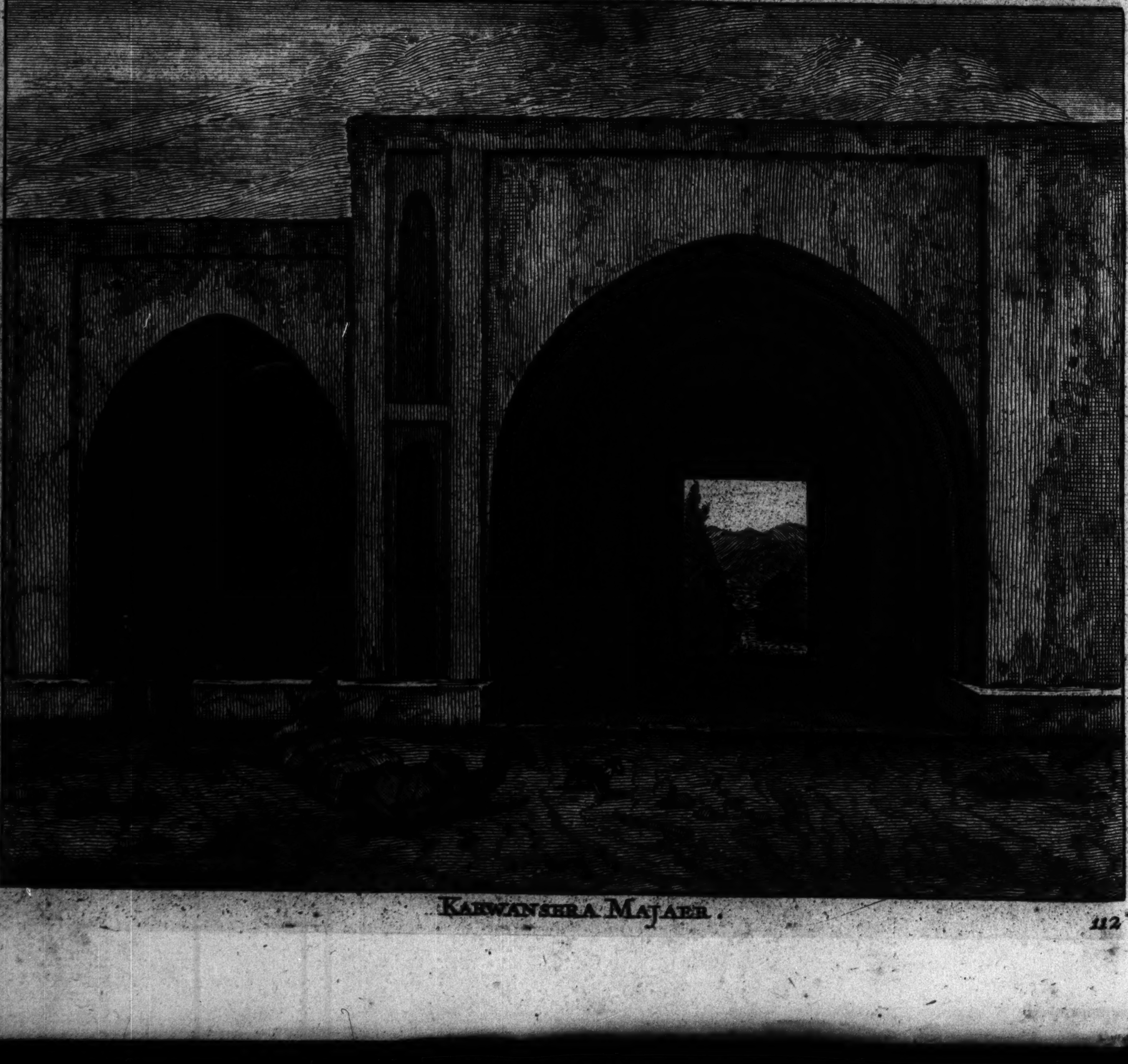




Karwansera Masjaer. 112

PORTEUR DE CALJAN. 111





KARWANSERA MAJAER. 112

THE
TRAVELS
OF
CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

Through MUSCOVY and PERSIA, to the EAST-INDIES, the coaſt of MALABAR, the iſland of CEYLON, BATAVIA, BANTAM, and other places.

CHAP. I.

The Author's departure from Iſpahan. *An account of the* Perſian *couriers, and the bearers of* Caljan. *A fine Caravanſerai. A deſcription of* Jedagaes. *Excellent bread. Dangerous roads. The manner in which the* Arabians *live.*

1704. THE preparations for our journey being completed, we waited till twenty beaſts of carriage, that were loaded with commodities which belonged to the *India* company, had ſet out before us, and we departed from *Iſpahan* the 26th of *October*, 1704, about two in the afternoon. The *Engliſh* merchants, together with father *Antonio Deſtirro*, and all our friends, accompanied us out of the city on horſeback, and were followed by all their domeſtics and couriers. We took a ſhort repaſt in the King's gardens, at the diſtance of a league from the city, and continued there till four of the clock. We then proceeded on our journey, after we had taken leave of our friends, and arrived, about ſeven, at the Caravanſerai of *Spahanec*, three leagues from *Iſpahan*; where we found thoſe 1704.

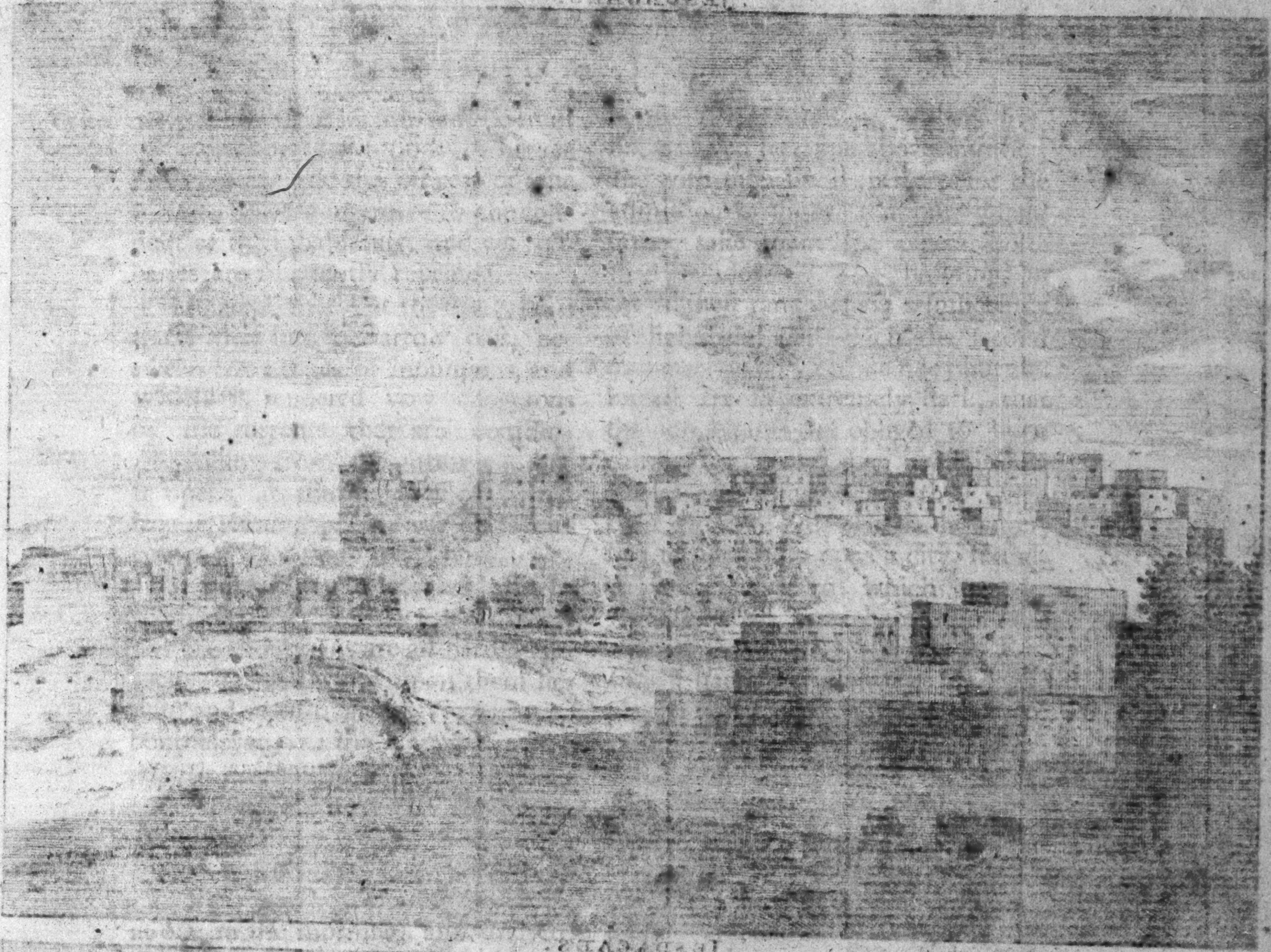
who had ſet out before us, and we all paſſed the night in that place. We had ſeveral couriers, whoſe dreſs is very different from thoſe who live in *Iſpahan*. The reader will find a repreſentation of them in plate 110. The plumes which they wear on their turbans, and the ornaments that accompany them, are of various colours. Their veſts are uſually of ſcarlet, and little bells are faſtened to their girdles, with tufts of black ſilk. The ſound of theſe bells is heard at a conſiderable diſtance, when the couriers are in motion. Thoſe who hire them, are obliged to furniſh them with this habit, which becomes their own at the end of the journey, over and above the wages they receive. It is uſual to hire as many of theſe couriers as are judged neceſſary; with a bearer of *Caljan*, or a bottle of tobacco, who is mounted on a mule, that likewiſe carries two portmantles, or leathern caſes, filled with coffee, roſe-water, tobacco, and ſuch like accommodations. We have repreſented one of theſe perſons, with his equipage, in plate 111. The *Perſians* are always attended by ſome of theſe ſervants, in their travels, and are imitated by all *Europeans* of any rank. The little machine, which hangs on one ſide of the mule, is filled with fire.

Fine Caravanſerai.

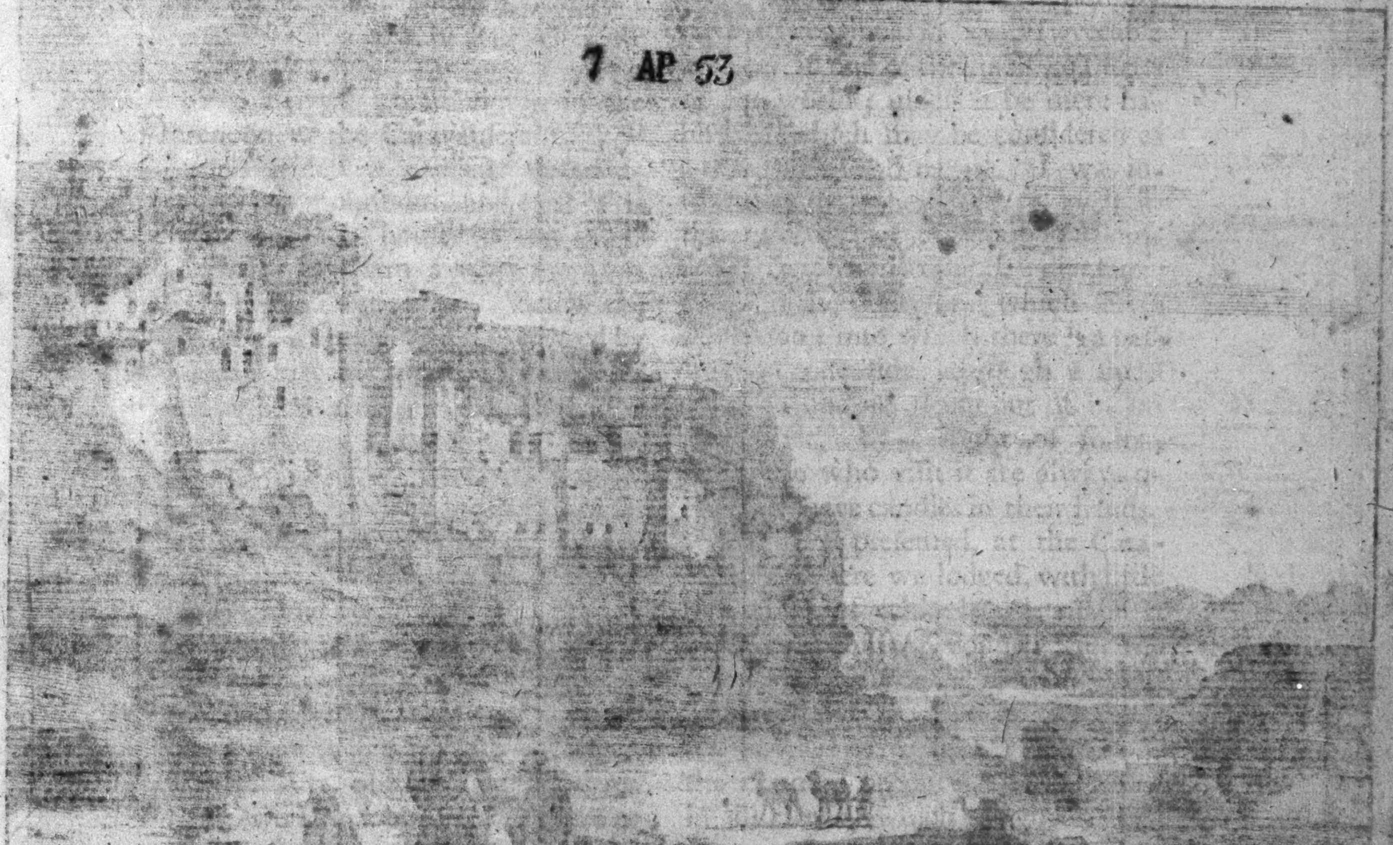
We proceeded on our journey at one in the morning, and arrived, in the ſpace of two hours and an half, at the Caravanſerai of *Mierza Elraſa*, and, within another hour, at a place, where part of the cuſtoms exacted for mercantile goods, is paid. We arrived, about the twenty eighth, at the village of *Majaer*, where a fine Caravanſerai is built of ſtone, and was founded by King *Sulemoen*, the father of the Prince who now reigns. A range of fine ſtables runs all round the inſide of the court; and the outſide of this building has more the air of a palace, than of a publick houſe for travellers. There are two kinds of wings on the ſides of the fore-gate, and a large entrance, that appears beautiful, and opens into exceeding fine walks of trees to the right and left, and of which that in the middle is the largeſt. It likewiſe fronts the edifice, and extends very far towards the mountains. No ſituation can be more amiable than that of this Caravanſerai, which we have delineated in plate 112. The principal cuſtoms are paid there. The village, on one ſide of it, is large, and ſurrounded with trees; and the officers of the cuſtoms ſent from thence refreſhments of melons, and grapes, to Mr. *Bakker*, my companion in this journey.

The Tomb of a Saint.

We left this place on the twenty eighth, about three in the morning, and paſſed by a water-mill, on a little river, which we croſſed twice, on two ſmall bridges of ſtone, and arrived, about ten that morning, at a large town, called *Komminſja*, which is filled with gardens, and little towers that ſerve for pigeon-houſes. On one ſide of this town, we obſerved the tomb of a ſaint named *Zja-reſa*. It is encloſed with a wall, whoſe inward ſpace is ornamented with ſeveral trees, and two fountains filled with fiſh, which the *Perſian* ſuperſtition will not permit any one to touch. We ſaw carps in the ſmalleſt, and large fiſh in the other. This tomb has a lofty ſituation on the ſlope of a mountain. We paſſed the night in the Caravanſerai built of earth, in the town, and purſued our journey on the twenty ninth, about five in the morning. We were informed, that ſome other travellers had been robbed, as they left the town, of two beaſts loaded with goods; and as the inhabitants of that place have the reputation of being great thieves, we had reaſon to ſuſpect they had given this inſtance of their abilities in that profeſſion; we, therefore, judged it expedient to be upon our guard, eſpecially as we were well provided with fire arms. Robberies of this nature are very frequent in that quarter; but if one has any friend to make proper complaints at court, the lord of the town is obliged to be reſponſible for what is loſt; but if a perſon has not ſuch an in-

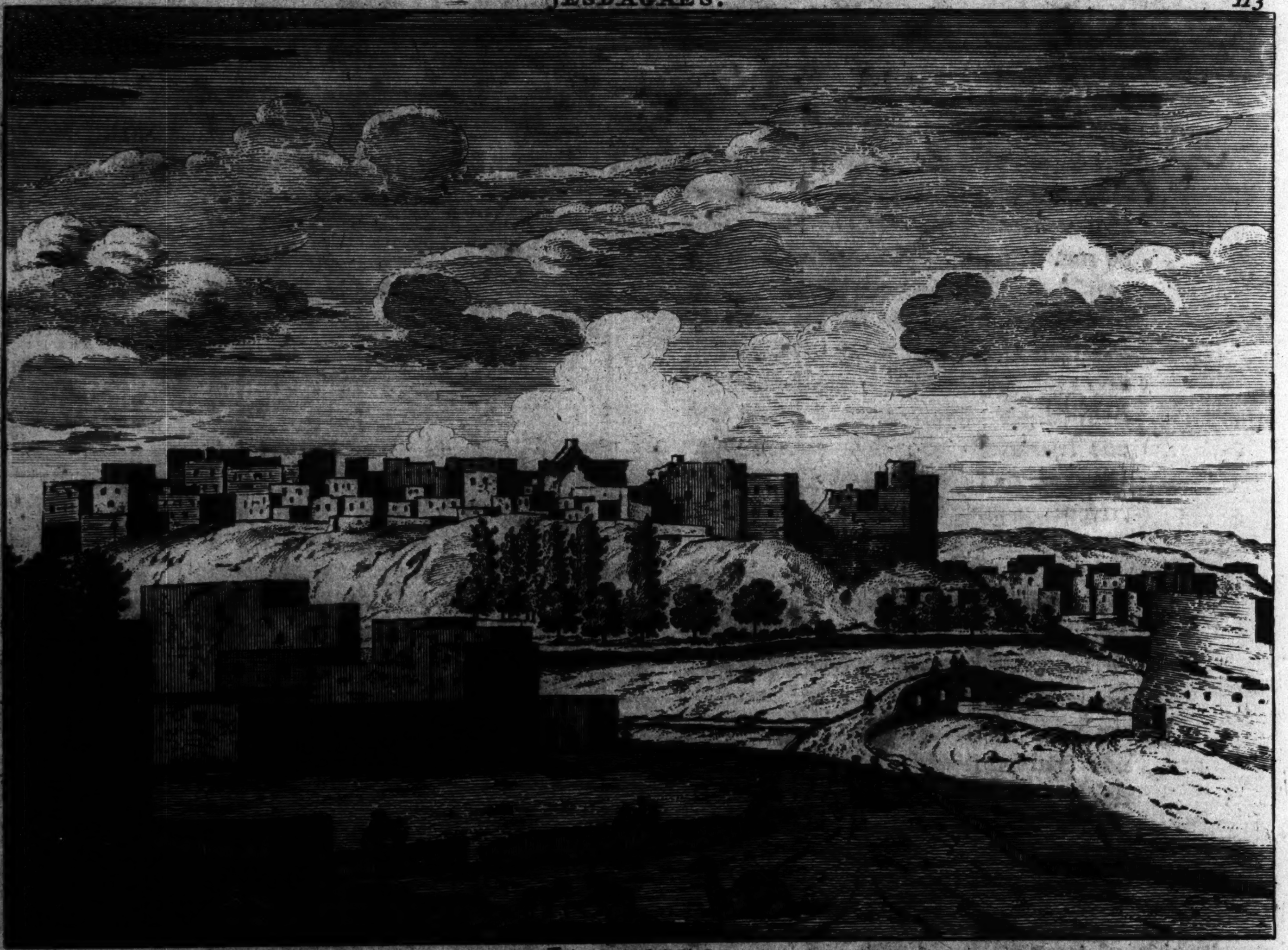


7 AP 53

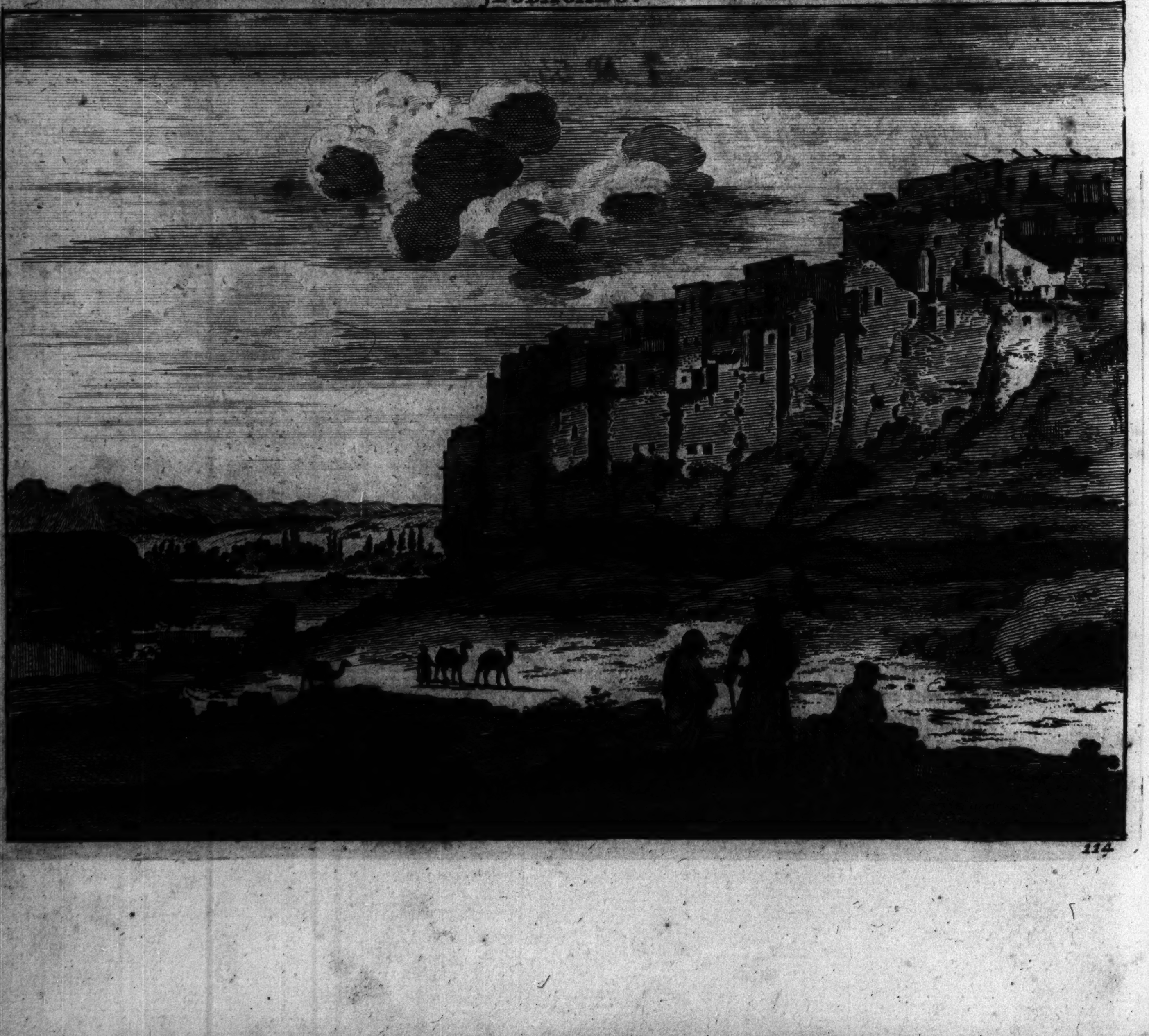


JESDAGAES.

113



JESDAGAES.



114

intereſt as I have mentioned, he muſt not expect any reſtitution. This regulation obliges the officers of the place to be very attentive to the conduct of the inhabitants, and yet robberies are frequently repeated.

The road, without the town, contracts itſelf into a narrow paſs, between two ranges of mountains, and which is rendered very dangerous by the torrents that are continually rolling from the ſummit; but it opens, at the diſtance of half a league, into a plain, which is encompaſſed by theſe mountains. Several villages, full of gardens, preſent themſelves to the view on the right, but the mountains are all barren and rocky, and the land upon them lies wild and uncultivated. We came, about eleven, to the Caravanſerai of *Magſoe-begie*, without having met any game in our way. We there found ſeveral pigeons, woodcocks, mallards, and larks, along the edges of a little canal. We left this place, at one in the morning, and arrived, about five, at the village of *Amanabaet*, which is ſaid to ſeparate *Perſia* from *Parthia*.

Jeſdagaes

We arrived, about eleven in the forenoon, at the Caravanſerai of *Jeſdagaes*, which is a village ſeated among the mountains, and part of it on rocks. The houſes riſe one above another, and form a very fine proſpect by that diſpoſition. Below the village is a large valley, watered by a ſmall river abounding with fiſh, and which muſt be croſſed over a ſtone bridge, in order to arrive at the Caravanſerai, which is likewiſe built of ſtone. The proſpect, a little below this building, is diverſified with large plantations of trees, and a variety of gardens, which extend three or four leagues. This village appears from the Caravanſerai in the manner repreſented in plate 113. It riſes very high on each ſide, with a ſteep declivity. On one ſide of the great road, we ſaw a building that reſembled a fortreſs, the foundations of which are of ſtone, and the ſuperſtructure of earth and clay. You enter it by a little bridge; and the adjoining houſes riſe, ſome four, others five, ſix, or ſeven feet one above another, and with ſuch ſmall apertures for the admiſſion of light, that one would rather take them for pigeon-holes than windows. The buildings in the higheſt range enjoy a ſufficiency of light and air, which the ſecond row receives only on one ſide; but the loweſt are ſo extremely dark, that the inhabitants are obliged to burn candles night and day, even in the ſtables and folds, where they lodge their cattle. This place is, however, ſaid to have been once a city, founded ſeveral ages ago; which may be very probable, ſince there is not ſuch another form of buildings in all *Perſia*. I had the curioſity to enter the place; but did not continue there long, for fear of engaging myſelf too far among a people with whoſe aſpect I was not greatly pleaſed, and, indeed, there was nothing remarkable to excite my attention. Theſe poor people are real objects of compaſſion; and one cannot eaſily conceive what inducements they can poſſibly have to continue in ſo diſagreeable a place, in one of the fineſt countries of the world; unleſs it be mere habitude, which may be conſidered as a kind of ſecond nature. I was informed, that there was a well in this place, cut twenty fathoms deep, and ten feet in diameter, through the rock, and which ſerves as a baſon; into which there is a paſſage on one ſide, through a ſmall fortreſs; and an aſcent out of it, on the other, by a flight of ſtairs; but thoſe who viſit it are always obliged to have candles in their hands.

We were preſented, at the Caravanſerai where we lodged, with little hot loaves of white bread, made in the manner of our country, for the *Europeans* who travel in theſe parts, and altogether as good as the ſmall loaves of *Amſterdam*. This part of the country produces the beſt corn in all *Perſia*, which the governor of *Zjie-raas* preſerves for the King and court. This proceeding occaſioned the *Perſian* proverb, *Chiraup Zjie-raas, noen Jeſgadaes, ſen de Jes*;

1704. that is, *Zjie-raas for wine*, *Jeſdagaes for bread*, *and Jes for women*; all which are in perfection in thoſe places. Ovens are very numerous through the whole kingdom; and they are made in the form of wells, in each of which the paſte is rolled into thin cakes, which are baked in a moment; and when they are taken out, others are immediately placed in the room. Large bread is likewiſe baked in theſe ovens, as among us; and they make Biſcuits at *Iſpahan*, which are altogether as good as thoſe in *France*.

I took the draught of the ſouth ſide of this place, from the great road, where I had a full proſpect of the mountain, with the houſes built upon it one above another, as may be ſeen in plate 114. with a view of ſome gardens and other ſcattered places, that are comprehended under the ſame name, and give a large extent to this village.

We renewed our journey, at two in the morning, through a very incommodious narrow way, which gradually enlarged as we advanced forwards. And we found, at the diſtance of ſome leagues from thence, a ſmall houſe, which uſually ſerves as a retreat to the robbers who infeſt that road and the adjacent parts, and who never fail to attack thoſe travellers who are not in a condition to defend themſelves, and are frequently murdered as well as robbed.

We arrived, about ten in the morning of the thirty firſt of this month, at *Dedergoe*, a village eight leagues from *Jeſdagaes*, where we were ſurpriſed with a great tempeſt, which involved us in ſo thick a cloud of duſt, as made us almoſt incapable of opening our eyes; and the cold was very violent at the ſame time. The clouds, towards noon, diſcharged a greater quantity of rain than had fallen in the ſpace of all that ſummer. But theſe inconveniences did not prevent us from proceeding on our journey, and our company was increaſed on the way, by ſeveral travellers, who joined us for their greater ſecurity. Two of our couriers were here taken ill, and we were obliged to leave one of them behind us, till he could be capable either of returning to *Iſpahan*, or following us: The other, whom I had hired, finding his indiſpoſition a little abated, was determined to continue with us. 1704.

The weather grew fine again, on the firſt day of *November*, and we advanced through a village that was chiefly inhabited by robbers; and had hardly left it before we miſt an aſs that belonged to the conductor of our caravan. Upon which, we immediately diſpatched two of our men to the village, where they had the good fortune to find the beaſt, in the hands of an honeſt man, who deſired them to ſearch the packs of goods, in order to ſee whether any thing had been taken away; and when they had ſatisfied themſelves as to this particular, they rejoined us in a ſhort time.

We then advanced into a plain, and arrived at a ſtone bridge with five arches, which we did not care to paſs over, becauſe it ſeemed in a ruinous condition on one ſide; for which reaſon we rather choſe to ford the river, which was but ſhallow. It likewiſe abounded with fiſh, but we were incapable of receiving any benefit from them, becauſe the day was far advanced, and we had a long way to travel.

Arabs.

We met a ſmall body of *Arabs*, who had lately decamped, and were in queſt of a new ſettlement. Their wives and daughters had rings, with a mixture of pearl, and common ſtones, at the tip of their noſes, and which hung down, in the form of a croſs, to their mouths; their hair was ſet off with other ornaments, and a piece of linnen wound over their heads, but their faces were uncovered. Their upper veſt deſcended no lower than their hips; their under one fell down to the middle of their legs; their ſhifts came ſomething lower, and flowed over their drawers and ſtockings. The generality of theſe women rob with as much intrepidity as the men, and are almoſt as ſtrong. These people are ſcattered through the whole Kingdom, their complexion is tawny, and the men are habited like the common people of the country.

We arrived, in the ſpace of two hours, at the village of *Kouskieſar*, which is a good *Caravanſerai* built of ſtone, where we ſtopped a while, the weather being very bad; but this did not prevent us from continuing our journeyat five in the morning, through lovely plains, and afterwards through ways that opened between rocks and mountains, and were very incommodious. We then paſſed by a ruinous *Caravanſerai*, in a tract that was filled with robbers, and where travellers ought to be always upon their guard. From thence we advanced into a plain that was covered with water and reeds, and likewiſe with ſeveral ſorts of birds; among whom there was one of an extraordinary ſize, and which I took for a bird of prey. We alſo ſaw ſeveral *Arabs* under tents; and when we had ſufficiently traverſed the mountains, we came, at twelve, to the town of *Anapas*, ſeated in a fertile plain, where the Lands are all arable, and well watered, and a *Caravanſerai* of ſtone is likewiſe built there.

We continued here till midnight, and arrived, the third of this month, at the town of *Ooesjoen*, where there is another *Caravanſerai* of ſtone, on the edge of a running ſtream. This ſituation is equally agreeable and commodious, and it lies in the neighbourhood of ſeveral other villages. The land affords paſture for a prodigious number of ſheep and goats. The graſs is entirely parched by the Sun, and yet proves very nouriſhing to the cattle. This is a ſurpriſing circumſtance, conſidering the drought that reigns in *Perſia*, and the ſterility of the mountains, which are covered with rocks; and there are likewiſe but few trees to ſhade the land.

A Tomb.

On one ſide of this *Caravanſerai* we ſaw a tomb, cover'd with a ſmall riſing dome, and ſurrounded with a wall. The inhabitants pretend that it is the ſepulchre of a brother of King *Sefi*, who endeavour'd to make himſelf maſter of this part of the Kingdom, but broke his leg on this mountain, which occaſioned his death. The revenues ariſing from the village are ſtill appropriated to this monument, in conjunction with thoſe to whoſe care it is conſigned.

Great plenty of Fiſh and Game.

As this tract abounds with fiſh, we cauſed ſome nets to be caſt, and drew out four great fiſh, the two largeſt of which much reſembled carps; the others had broad ſcales and yellow bellies; and they are excellent food, tho' their skin be very thick. This part of the country is likewiſe ſtocked with partridges, woodcocks, and cranes, which ſpring to a great height in the air.

We proceeded on our journey after ſun-ſet, and by break of day ſtruck into a road between the mountains that are very lofty and rocky; and the ways are ſo narrow, that they are hardly paſſable by horſes, and other beaſts of burden. They are likewiſe ſo ſteep and ſlippery in ſeveral places, that the poor animals are frequently overthrown with all their load; and they are altogether as fatiguing to travellers, who are not able to ſit their horſes, and are continually obliged to alight and remount. This place called to my remembrance thoſe defiles, which *Quintus Curtius* ſays *Alexander* paſſed in this tract. On the very top of this mountain we found a delightful ſpring, covered over with ſtone. It was ten when we had croſſed to the other ſide of the mountain, where we found a ruinous *Caravanſerai*.

We arrived, about two in the afternoon, at a ſmall canal of running water; after paſſing ſeveral rocks which occaſion'd very bad ways. I there ſtopped with ſome others, and we dined in the ſhade of a growth of trees, while the reſt of the company purſued their journey. This plantation, which extends as far as the rocks, is compoſed of wild Almond-trees, and Sackas. We afterwards travelled, by the ſide of this canal, through arable lands, and arrived about three, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Majien*, where we diſcontinued our journey.

CHAP. LI.

Wild Almond, and other Trees. Mountains, on which Fortreſſes were antiently erected. The River of Bendemir. *The Author's Arrival at* Perſepolis.

I DREW, in this place, a branch of a wild Almond-tree, and another of a Sackas. The former was long and pliant, as appears in plate 115. *A.* and had only one almond on it, the ſeaſon for that fruit being over. *L.* The branch of the Sackas bears a ſmall reddiſh fruit, that much reſembles the ſeeds of a pomegranate; a large cluſter of berries grow on one ſtalk, which is repreſented with its foliage, at the letter *B.* This firſt aſſumes a green complection, when it begins to ripen. The skin muſt be peeled off, and the ſhell broken, to come at the kernel, which, like wild almonds, has an excellent reliſh when pickled.

Perſia produces another tree called *Afrag*, which bears a profuſion of flowers and leaves, that are thick ſet, but eaſily ſeparable from one another, and they reſemble the kernels of white melons, when viewed at a diſtance. This tree is not productive of any fruit; but its thick, ſpreading and leafy branches, diffuſe a deep and pleaſing ſhade. The repreſentation of one of theſe plants, may be ſeen in plate 116. This country likewiſe produces another tree, which is called *Naer-wend*, and bears a fruit with a ſmooth skin, ſome growths of which are as large as ones fiſt, others ſmaller. This fruit is white, and reſembles a bladder; it is likewiſe impregnated with a water, which converts itſelf into a gum, that proves ſalutary in the cure of a cough. This fruit is exhibited to view at the letter *C.*

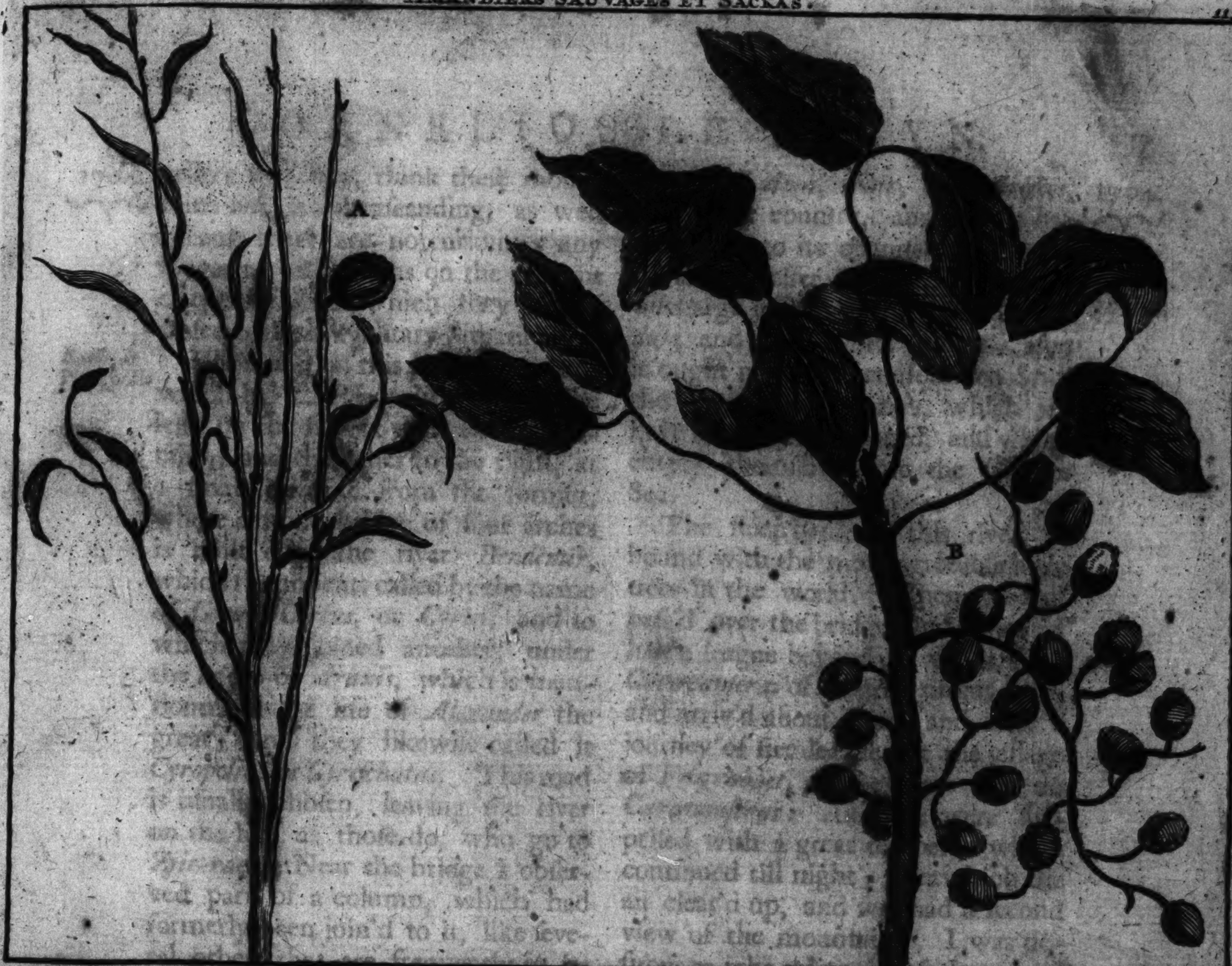
The town of *Majien*, where we then were, is very large, and full of fruit gardens and vines; and there are ſeveral of the latter that grow wild upon the mountains. The interjacent country is very agreeable, and well watered by a canal which flows through the town.

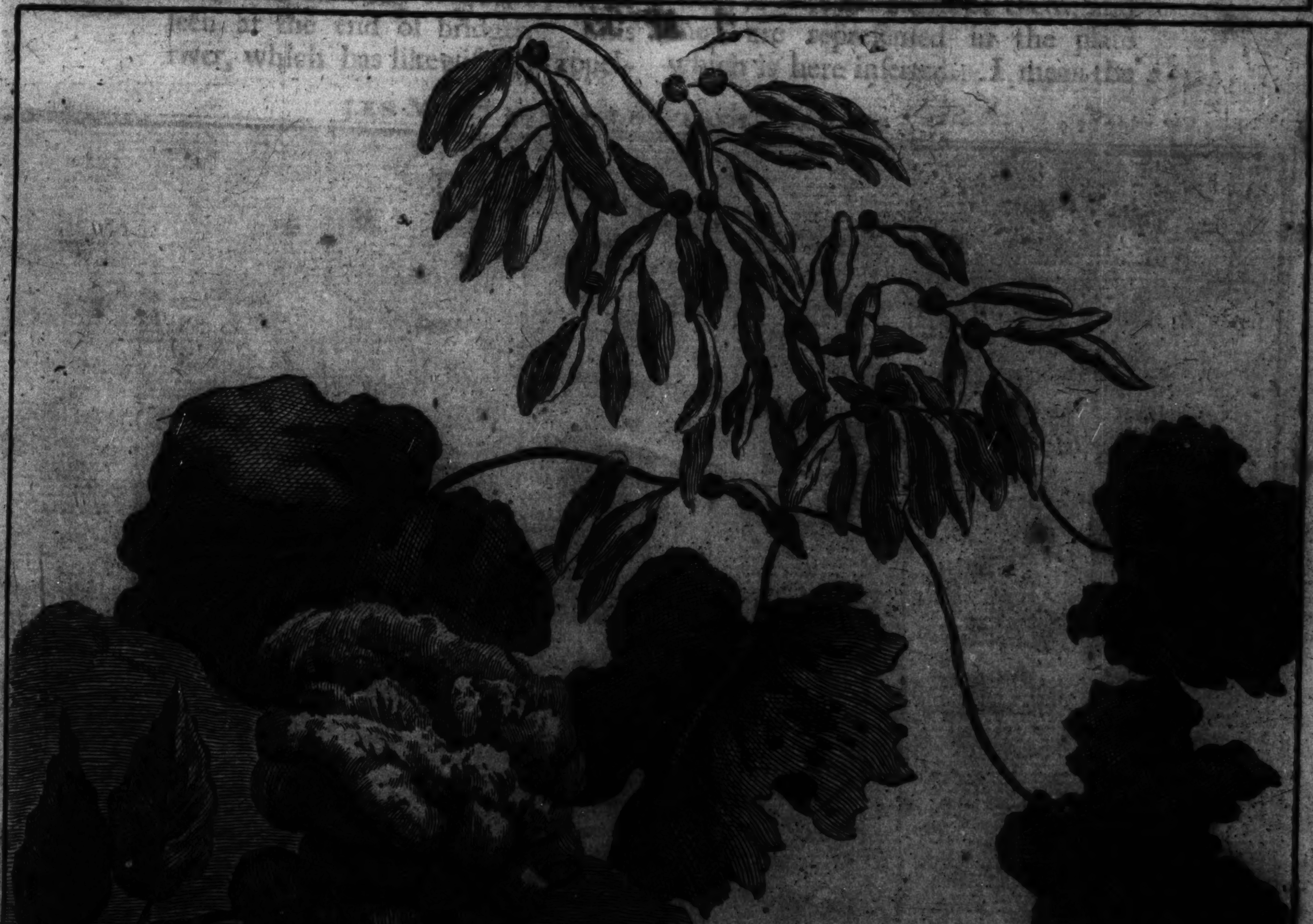
We left it at five in the evening, and proceeded, to the diſtance of a league, through a road much infeſted by robbers, who frequently carry off beaſts of carriage, with all their load, in the night, and drive them into the woods, where travellers never think it adviſeable to purſue them.

On the fifteenth of the month, we enter'd a plain, and ſaw, at about two leagues diſtance on our right, a large and very lofty rock, on which a conſiderable fortreſs had been erected in ancient times; and ſome of its ruins are ſaid to be ſtill remaining. It is likewiſe pretended, that the ſummit of this rock opens into a ſpacious plain, which is cover'd with flocks of cattle in the proper ſeaſon of the year.

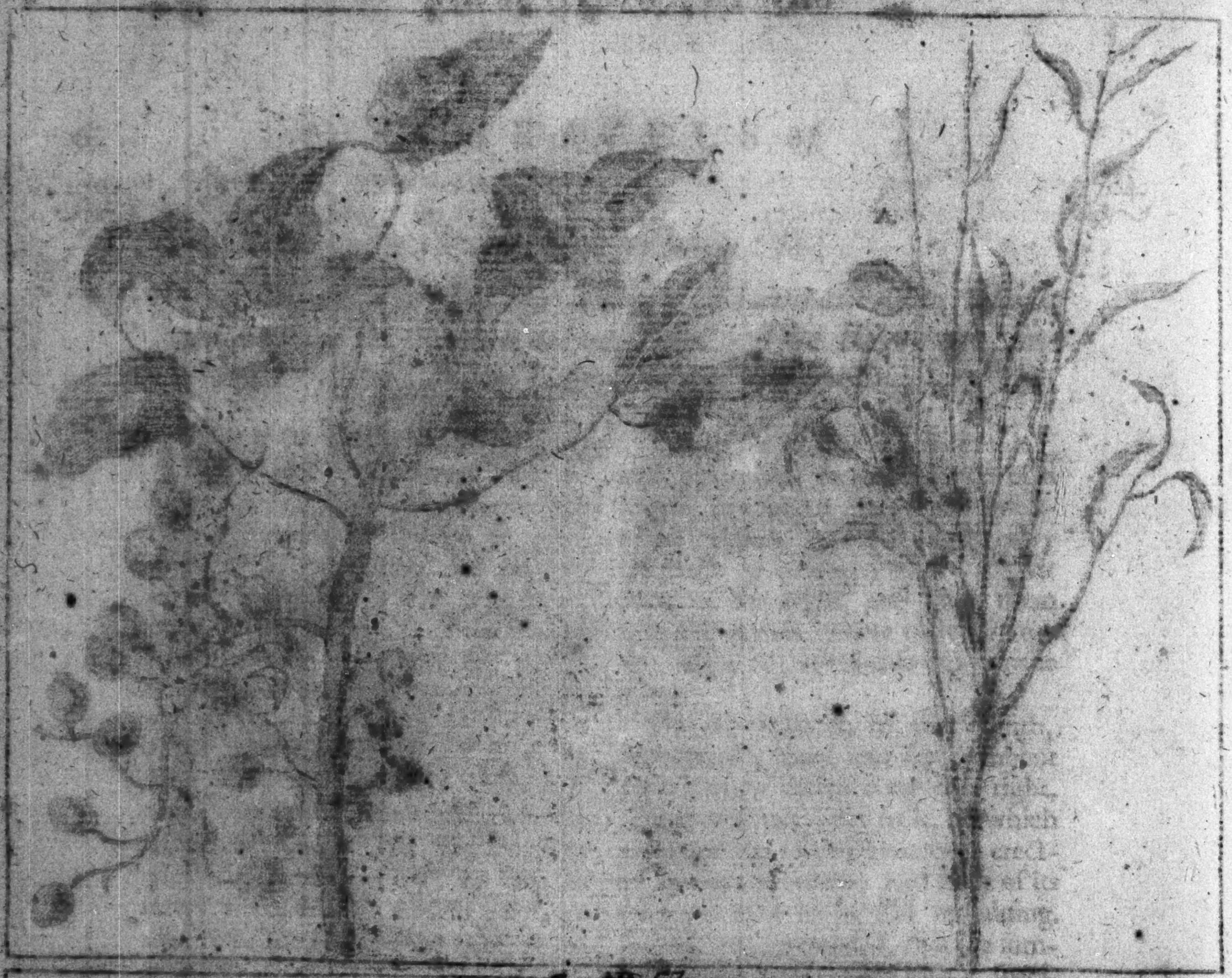
We proceeded on our journey, always keeping to the right, and arrived at the river *Bendemir*, which croſſes the country; and we paſt it, about eleven, at a ſmall diſtance from two other mountains very near each other, and which had formerly been crowned with fortreſſes; tho' none of their ruins are now viſible. We obſerved an opening on the upper part of each of theſe mountains, and which is continued through the rock that riſes upon them, and ſerves as a paſſage to the top, which ends in a round maſs of ſtone, that, at a diſtance, reſembles a caſtle. Some perſons pretend, that the remains of an ancient gate are viſible on the top of one of theſe mountains; but this is an uncertainty. It is likewiſe ſaid, that this place formerly afforded a retreat to rebels; and that after they had been diſlodged from that ſituation, all the remaining ruins were carried away, to prevent their being employed by others to the ſame diſloyal purpoſe for the future. Travellers

AMANDIÉRS SAUVAGES ET SACKAS. 115

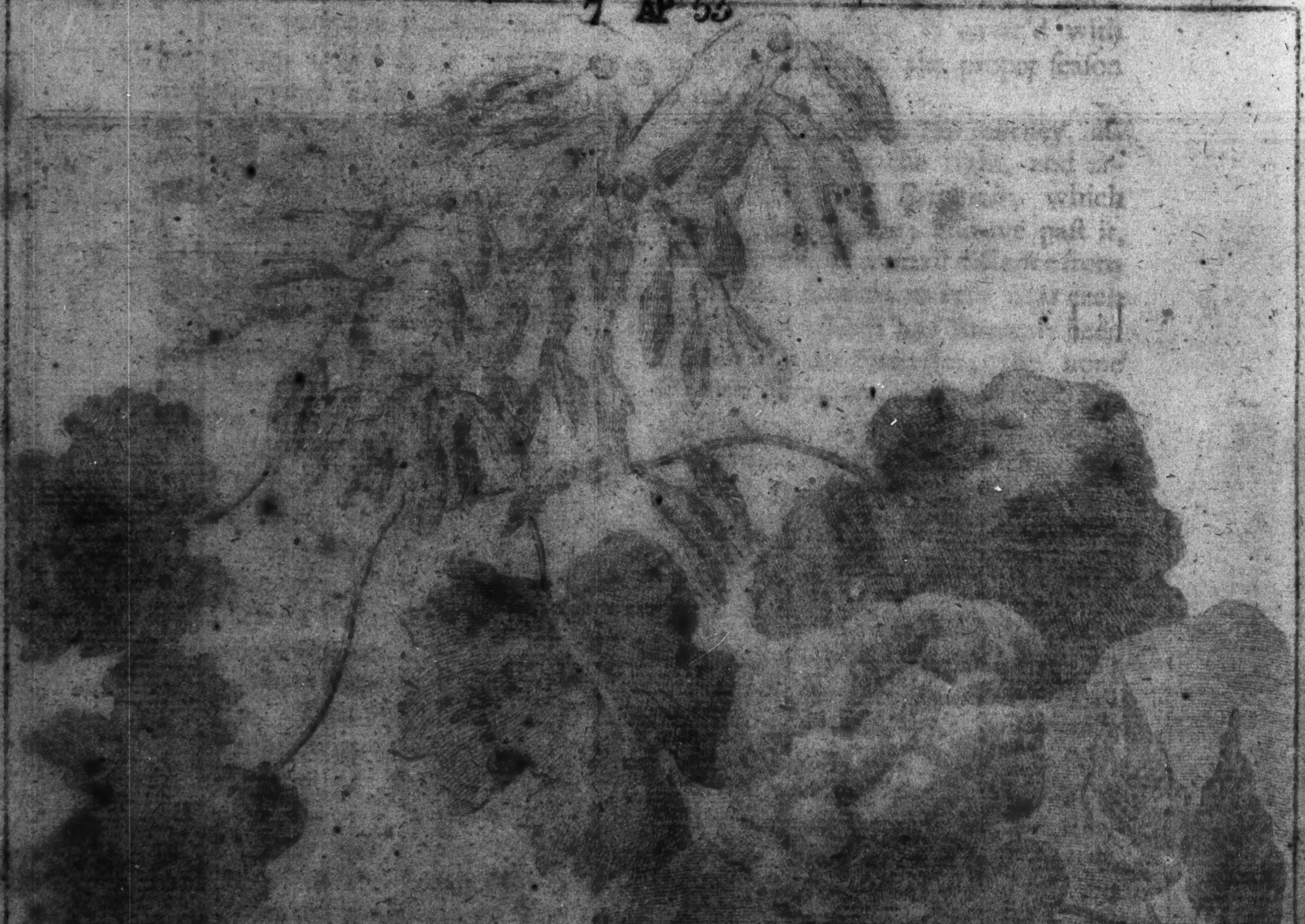




BRANCHE D'APHAR ET MARK-WEND. 116



7 AP 53



[illegible]

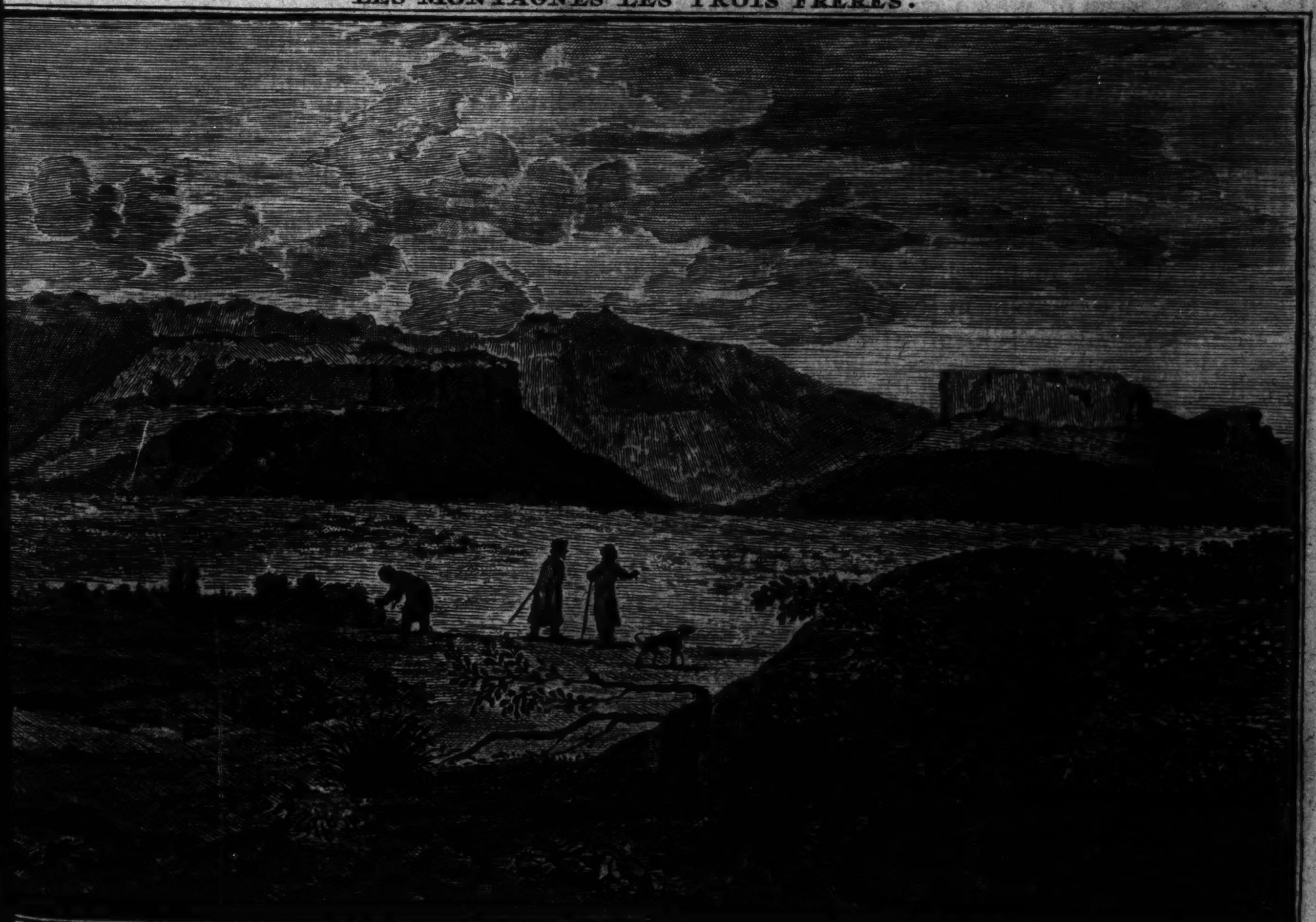
vellers therefore, think theſe mountains not worth aſcending, as well becauſe there are no curioſities any longer to be ſeen, as on the account of the danger to which they are expoſed in ſuch a ſolitary Situation.

Roads to Perſepolis

We found, in this place, two roads which led to *Perſepolis*; one to the left, on the ſide of theſe two mountains; and the other to the right, at a ſmall diſtance ſrom the former, where a ſtone bridge of four arches is built over the river *Bendemir*, which the antients called by the name of *Corus*, *Corius*, or *Cyrus*, and to which they joined another, under the name of *Araxis*, which is mentioned in the life of *Alexander* the great; and they likewiſe called it *Cyropolis*, or *Cyreſchatas*. This road is uſually choſen, leaving the river on the left, as thoſe do, who go to *Zjie-raes*. Near the bridge I obſerved part of a column, which had formerly been join'd to it, like ſeveral others that are frequently to be ſeen at the end of bridges. This river, which has likewiſe the appellations of *Aras*, *Kur*, and *Araxes*, croſſes the country, and after it has received into its channel the waters of ſeveral leſſer ſtreams, is ſaid to diſcharge itſelf into the rivers of *Medum* and *Medus*; for which reaſon it ought not to be confounded with the *Cyrus*, and *Araxes*, which we have formerly mentioned, and which empty themſelves into the *Caſpian* Sea.

The ſteep banks of this river, abound with the moſt agreeable little trees in the world. When we had paſs'd over the bridge, and advanced half a league beyond it, we left the *Caravanſerai* of *Aebgerm* on our right, and arriv'd about noon, and after a journey of five leagues, at the village of *Frograbaet*, where there was no *Caravanſerai*: And we were ſurpriſed with a great tempeſt, which continued till night; after which the air clear'd up, and we had a ſecond view of the mountains. I was deſirous to take a draught of them, and they are repreſented in the plate which is here inſerted. I mean the

LES MONTAGNES LES TROIS FRERES.



two mountains which are neareſt the bridge; for I could not ſee the third, tho' it riſes higher than theſe. The inhabitants call them the *Three Brothers*, from their reſemblance to each other; thoſe who advance in the uſual road, ſtop at the *Caravanſerai* of *Aebgerm*, from whence they proceed to *Aſſaf*, *Poligorg*, or *Sergoon*; but we kept on by the plain and mountains, and came, about nine in the morning, to a very lofty ſtone bridge with five arches, three of which are very large, and the other two but ſmall; and the river I have lately mentioned, runs with much rapidity under them; it is likewiſe very broad and deep there, and its banks are ſteep and extremely high. This river is reſorted to by various ſpecies of ducks, and it muſt be croſſed before one can arrive at *Perſepolis*, which lies at no greater diſtance from it than two leagues. We came, about eleven, to a village called *Zargoen*, which is pleaſantly ſituated among mountains, and is full of gardens, which abound with melons, grapes, and all ſorts of fruits, ſome of which were preſented to us by our *Muleteer*, who ſtopped there, and entertained us in a very agreeable manner, after he had ordered the inhabitants not to ſell proviſions to any of our train. The generality of *Muleteers*, who convey mercantile goods from *Gomron* to *Iſpahan*, have a dwelling in this place, and they take pleaſure in regaling the *Europeans*, who belong to their *Caravan*.

Arable lands, and large flocks of ſheep and goats, are ſeen in this plain, which exceeds two leagues in breadth, and extends in length beyond the reach of the eye. It is likewiſe full of villages, but the rains frequently deluge it in the winter.

The King's Officers robbed.

A few days before our arrival in this place, ſome of the King's officers, who come to collect his Majeſty's revenues, and had received ſums to the amount of 33000 livres, were robbed and rifled at the bridge I lately mentioned. Robberies are very frequent in theſe parts, and are committed by the rebbels, who live under tents on this plain, and march with fifty, ſixty, and even a hundred in company; and yet ſuch is the weakneſs of the government, that they are permitted to rob with impunity, and no precautions are taken to ſuppreſs theſe injurious proceedings.

The rain ſurpriſed us this day, and continued for the whole night, accompanied with hail, lightning, and thunder, till eleven in the morning, when the ſky began to clear up. We were willing to improve this opportunity, but it began to rain anew, before we came to the end of the village, and with ſo much violence, that we were obliged to have recourſe to ſhelter. We renewed our journey the eighth day of the month, at the firſt break of dawn, and favour'd with a very ſerene ſky; but we found all the country on this ſide of the bridge floated with water, which obliged us to proceed very leaſurely, otherwiſe our couriers would have been incapable of following us, the ways were ſo extremely ſlippery. We however arriv'd about, eleven, at the town of *Mier-chas-koen*, which lies at a little diſtance from the ruins of *Perſepolis*; and we alighted at the houſe of the chief magiſtrate of place, to whom Mr. *Bakker* had the goodneſs to recommend me on the part of Mr. *Kaſtelkin*, for whoſe arrival I was to wait in this Town. This magiſtrate favoured me with a moſt obliging reception, and deſired me to accept of one of his ſervants, to conduct me to the *Caravanſerai* of the place, and procure me a commodious Lodging. I no ſooner came thither, but I was ſeized with impatience to behold thoſe famous ruins which were then very near, and I went thither with one of the Inhabitants, whom I had taken into my ſervice as a guide; but I could not take the liberty to make any ſtay there, becauſe my friend was obliged to return to *Zargoen*, where he had left effects in merchandize, and all his domeſticks, except one valet, and two couriers, who attended him, and the way to proceed, the following night, to *Zjie-raes*. I had left my baggage with his, and had only taken out a few neceſſaries, having requeſted him to leave all my other parcels at *Zjie-raes*, where I was to arrive, in order to proceed to *Gomron*, and from thence to *Batavia*, with Mr. *Kaſtelein*, by the firſt Opportunity that ſhould offer. I continued alone after the departure of my friend, with whom I had maintained a very good intelligence at *Iſpahan*, as well as through the whole courſe of our journey; and I was now entirely devoted to the ſatisfaction of my curioſity, and the deſire I had ſo long conceived, of beholding the celebrated ruins of *Perſepolis*.

But before I enter upon their deſcription, I believe it will not be unneceſſary to mention the principal bridges that are to be croſſed in the way thither. The firſt, of which I have already taken notice, is called *Pol Jeſnejoen*, from a neighbouring village. The ſecond, which was the laſt we had then croſſed, is called *Pol Chanje*, from the *Cham* who erected it. The name of the third, which lies between the two former, is *Pol Noof*, or the new bridge. The fourth, which is ſome leagues diſtant to the ſouth from the laſt, is called *Pol Bendemir*, from the river of that name, whoſe ſourſe, as I was aſſured, was in the mountains, and its outlet, to the ſouth, in the ſea of *Derja nemeck*, or the bracky ſea, which is twelve leagues from *Perſepolis*, and four or five from *Zjieraes*.

CHAP. LII.

The ruins of the antient Perſepolis *deſcribed. The ſituation of* Naxi-Ruſtan.

The ruins of Perſepolis.

ON the 9th of this month, I began to viſit thoſe ſtately remains, which are called *the Ruins of Perſepolis*, and are the moſt famous antiquity in all the *Eaſt*, in order to give the public the moſt exact and circumſtantial account of them, that my abilities will permit. They are delightfully ſituated in a lovely plain, which extends two leagues in breadth, from the ſouth weſt to the north eaſt, computing from the bridge of *Pol Chanje*, on the river of *Bendemir*, beyond which it ſtretches out three leagues more, to the foot of the mountains; and it comprehends near forty leagues in length, from the north-weſt to the ſouth-eaſt. It is uſually called *Mardasjo*, and the inhabitants pretend, that it contains 880 villages, and above 1500, in the circumference that extends around theſe ruins to the diſtance of twelve leagues, including thoſe villages which are ſeated among the mountains; ſome of which are filled with beautiful gardens, ſhaded with large growths of trees. The greateſt part of this plain is floated with water, in the winter ſeaſon, which is a very advantageous circumſtance to the rice which grows there at that time. Moſt of the ſoil of this amiable plain is converted into arable land, watered with a variety of ſtreams that render it exceeding fertile. It likewiſe abounds with all ſorts of birds, particularly cranes, ſtorks, ducks, and herons of ſeveral ſpecies; partridges, ſnipes, quails, pigeons, hawks, and eſpecially crows, which ſwarm through all *Perſia*. The plain likewiſe affords a prodigious quantity of little birds that deſcend from the mountains which ſurround it.

The antient palace of the kings of Perſia.

The antient palace of the kings of *Perſia*, uſually called *the Houſe of Darius*, and, by the inhabitants,

1704. *Chel-menar*, or *Chil-minar*, which ſignifies *the forty Pillars*, is ſituated to the weſt, at the foot of the mountain of *Kulirag-met*, or *Compaſſion*, antiently called *the Royal Mountain*, and which is entirely compoſed of free-ſtone. This ſuperb edifice has all its walls ſtill ſtanding, on three of its ſides, with the mountain to the eaſt. The extent of the front comprehends ſix hundred paces, from north to ſouth; and three hundred and ninety, from weſt to eaſt, as far as the rock, and without any ſtair-caſe on that ſide, till you come to the mountain, where the aſcent is formed between ſome ſcattered rocks, where the wall is loweſt, and riſes to the height of no more than eighteen feet, and ſeven inches; and the altitude is leſs in ſeveral other places. This curtain contains four hundred and ten paces in length to the north, and is twenty one feet high in ſome parts; it is likewiſe carried on thirty paces more to the mountain, where there is ſtill to be ſeen part of a wall, with an entrance in the middle, through which you may aſcend to the top, through ſeveral broken rocks. Before theſe remains of the wall on the weſtern ſide, ſeveral others riſe to the north, as high as the wall itſelf, and then extend eighty paces to the eaſt, like a platform before the wall, at the place where you aſcend. There ſeems to have been formerly a ſtair-caſe in this part of the ſtructure, and ſome buildings beyond the curtain, the rocks appearing finely ſmoothed and poliſhed in ſeveral places. The top of this edifice preſents to the view a platform of four hundred paces, which extends from the middle of the front wall, to the mountain; and along three ſides of this wall a pavement of two ſtones joined together, to the breadth of eight feet, is carried on. Some of theſe ſtones are from eight to ten feet in length, and ſix in breadth; but the others are ſmaller. The principal ſtair-caſe is not placed in the middle of the front, but near the northern end, which is but one hundred and ſixty five paces beyond it; 1704. whereas the diſtance between the ſtair-caſe and the ſouthern extremity of the wall, is ſix hundred paces. This ſtair-caſe is double, or conſiſts of two flights of ſteps, which wind off from each other, to the diſtance of forty two feet at the bottom. It is twenty five feet and ſeven inches in depth, to the wall from whence the ſteps project, and the length of theſe equals the depth of the ſtair-caſe within five inches, which are inſerted in the wall, on the right and left where the ſtairs are equal. They are only four inches high, and fourteen in depth; and I never ſaw any that were ſo commodious, except thoſe of the Viceroy's palace in *Naples*, which, however, are ſomething higher in my opinion. There are fifty five of theſe ſteps on the northern ſide, and fifty three to the ſouth; but theſe laſt are not ſo entire as the others. I am likewiſe perſuaded, that there are ſeveral under ground, and which have been covered over by a length of time, as well as part of the wall, which riſes to the height of forty four feet and eleven inches, in the front; and I ſhall obſerve this method of computation for the future. When you arrive at this part of the ſtair-caſe, you find a perron, fifty one feet and four inches in breadth, proportionable to the width of the ſtairs; and the ſtones of this perron are extremely large. The two flights of this ſtair-caſe are ſeparated by the front wall, which riſes to the top; in conſequence of which they are carried off from each other at the middle of the wall, and returned back at the centre, at an equal diſtance from the two extreme parts on the top, which creates a very charming and ſingular effect, and correſponds with the magnificence of the reſt of the building. The upper part of this ſtair-caſe has forty eight ſteps in each flight, ſome of which are impaired by time, notwithſtanding they were cut out of the rock. At the top of the ſtair-caſe, another perron preſents itſelf to the view, between the two flights; this is ſeventy five feet in breadth, and has likewiſe a pavement of large ſtones, ſome of which are from thirteen to fourteen feet in length, and from ſeven to eight in breadth, like thoſe of the facade; others are ſquare; ſome long and narrow; and there is another ſort ſmaller than theſe. They are ſtill entire, and joined together in a very maſterly manner, to the extent of thirty two feet of the facade. The reſt of the perron is compoſed of cemented earth; and the wall which riſes between the flights of the ſtair-caſe is thirty ſix feet in height.

This deſcription correſponds, in a great meaſure, with the exterior plan of this edifice, of which ſome authors have treated in a very ſuperficial manner, and without a ſufficient inſpection into particulars. Some have confined themſelves, to an explication of the remoteſt antiquities, without regarding the preſent ſtate of theſe ſuperb ruins, and content themſelves with offering a ſet of uncertain, and difficult particulars, inſtead of repreſenting them as they ought, in a natural manner. This defect in their accounts proceeds from their not having obſerved thoſe ruins with all the circumſpection and exactneſs that are requiſite. Others have attempted to pleaſe, by introducing pompous relations; to which they have added, a ſet of fables, or voluntary errors: one of which is, that the ſtorks never remove to any diſtance from this plain; which is ſo far from being true, that it is very certain, they continue there only for a certain ſeaſon, as they do in other places; and diſappear, when they have completed their neſts, and reared their young on ſeveral columns of theſe ruins.

The inſide of the edifice.

It will now be neceſſary to open the ſcene, and preſent the interior part of theſe celebrated antiquities to view. The ſpectator firſt ſees, in a right line, and at the diſtance of forty two feet from the facade, or front wall of the ſtair-caſe, which has been already deſcribed; two grand portals, and as many columns. The firſt is paved with two tables of ſtone, which fill up two thirds of the ſpace; but time has deſtroyed the third. The ſecond is ſunk into the earth, five feet lower than the other. Theſe portals are twenty two feet and four inches in depth, and thirteen feet four inches in breadth. In the inſide, and on each pilaſter, is ſeen a large figure in low relief, and almoſt as long as the pilaſter; with a diſtance of twenty two feet from the fore to the hinder legs, and a height of fourteen feet and a half. The heads of theſe animals are entirely deſtroyed, and their breaſts and fore-feet project from the pilaſter. Their bodies are likewiſe greatly damaged. Thoſe of the firſt portal are turned towards the ſtair-caſe, and thoſe of the ſecond, each of which has a wing on the body, face the mountain. On the upper part of theſe pilaſters, within the portal, are a ſet of characters, which it is impoſſible to diſtinguiſh, by reaſon of their ſmallneſs and elevation. The height of the firſt portal is thirty nine feet, and that of the ſecond, twenty eight. The baſe of the pilaſters is five feet and two inches high, with a projection within, and thoſe on which the figures reſt, are a foot and two inches. Theſe animals are not cut out of one ſtone, but out of three, joined together, and which project without the portal. The wall is five feet and two inches thick. The firſt portal has likewiſe eight ſtones in its elevation, and the ſecond, ſeven.

Figures of of animals.

With reſpect to the animals I have mentioned, it would be difficult to determine what they repreſent, unleſs it may be ſaid, that they have ſome ſimilitude to a ſphinx, with the body of a horſe, and the paws thick and ſhort, like thoſe of a lion. But all this is rendered the more uncertain, becauſe the heads are broken into ſhatters. Some perſons have pretended, that they repreſented human heads, and, it muſt be owned, there is ſome appearance

1704. ance, on the hinder part of the neck of one of thoſe monſters, which may ſeem to juſtify that conjecture. It is a kind of a contour, or crowned bonnet, which greatly reſembles thoſe towers which the antients placed upon elephants, in order to ſhoot their arrows in a ſhelter from the enemy. But whatever it be, thoſe figures ſeem to have been extremely curious, and we meet with ſome that reſemble them, on antient medals. One might even ſay, that they are covered with arms, adorned with a good number of round ſtuds.

The two columns that appear between the two portals, are the leaſt damaged of all, eſpecially with reſpect to their capitals, and the other ornaments of their upper parts; but the baſes are almoſt entirely covered over with earth. They are twenty ſix feet from the firſt portal, and fifty ſix from the ſecond; are fourteen feet in circumference, and riſe to the height of fifty four. There were formerly two others, between theſe and the laſt portal, and the cavities in which they ſtood are ſtill to be ſeen in the earth; ſeveral pieces of them likewiſe appear overthrown, and half buried in the ground. At the diſtance likewiſe of fifty two feet ſouth from the ſame portal, is ſeen a large watering baſon, cut out of a ſingle ſtone, twenty feet long, and ſeventeen feet five inches in breadth, and raiſed three feet and a half above the ſurface of the earth. From this baſon to the northern wall, is an extent of ground comprehending a hundred and fifty paces in length, and where nothing is to be ſeen but fragments of large ſtones, and part of the ſhaft of a column, which is not fluted like the reſt. It is twenty feet in circumference, and twelve feet four inches long; beyond this tract of ground, and as far as the mountain, the earth is covered with ſeveral heaps of ſtones.

Proceeding ſouthward from the portals I have deſcribed, and oppoſite to the laſt, on the right, and at the diſtance of a hundred and seventy two feet, is ſeen another ſtair-caſe, with two flights of ſteps like the former, the one to the eaſt, and the other to the weſt. The facade, or wall, which belongs to it, is ſix feet and ſeven inches high; but the middle part is almoſt entirely in ruins. It extends, however, eighty three feet to the eaſt, and the lower ſtones make it evident, that it was adorned with figures in low relief. The upper part of the flight is embelliſhed with foliage, and the repreſentation of a lion rending a bull, much larger than the life, and likewiſe in low relief. This ſtair-caſe is half buried under the earth. There are alſo little figures on the two ſides of the middle wall, which extends to the end of the ſtair-caſe. The weſtern flight has twenty eight ſteps, and the other, where the ground riſes higher, has only eighteen. Theſe are ſeventeen feet in length, and three inches high; their breadth is fourteen inches and an half. ſeveral of theſe ſteps are damaged towards the top, and two or three of them are entirely deſtroyed, tho' they are cut out of the rock. The perron of this ſtair-caſe ends in another facade, on which are three ranges of ſmall figures, one above another, and of which thoſe in the upper row are only viſible from the waiſt downwards; the other part of the body being greatly defaced; and the middle range, which is preſerved the beſt of the three, is, however, much damaged: But as to the lower rank, the heads of the figures are only viſible, all the reſt being buried under the earth. Theſe figures are two feet and nine inches high, and the wall, which riſes to the elevation of five feet and three inches, has an extent of ninety eight feet, from the firſt ſtep to the end of the left angle, which is contiguous to another ſtair-caſe, of which thirteen ſteps are ſtill remaining, and whoſe dimenſions correſpond with thoſe I deſcribed laſt. There is likewiſe to be ſeen, on the remains of the inner wall along the ſide of the ſtair-caſe, another range of figures, of which only 1704.

1704. and only half of the bodies are now viſible; and at the end of this ſtair-caſe, appears another wall which extends ninety feet beyond the perron. The angle of it declines a little to the ſouth, and is there diſcontinued, becauſe the riſing ground in that part is as high as the wall itſelf. This extremity is carried off in a right line, a little beyond the laſt columns, which are extended towards the mountains.

In returning to the weſtern flight of the ſtair-caſe, one finds a wall of forty five feet in length, beyond the lower part of the ſtair-caſe, and then an interval of ſixty ſeven feet, extending to the weſtern facade. This ſide correſponds with the preceding, and has three ranges of figures in the ſame taſte, with a lion tearing a bull, or an aſs, that has a horn projecting from the forehead; and between theſe animals and rows of figures, is a ſquare filled with characters, the uppermoſt of which are defaced; the reſt will be found in the draught I made of this ſtair-caſe. But the characters are entirely defaced on the other ſide. The figures are alſo leſs damaged in this part of the ſtructure, where the ground is lower, and this place has an extent of twenty five paces. The wall, which is carried on from the perron to the weſt, extends to the facade, and has not any figures beyond the ſtair-caſe.

On the top of this ſtair-caſe, and between the two flights of ſteps, is an entrance into an open place, paved with large tables of ſtone, whoſe breadth is equal to the diſtance from the ſtair-caſe to the firſt columns, and which comprehends a ſpace of twenty two feet and two inches. Theſe columns are diſpoſed into two ranges, each of which contains ſix pillars, but none entire; eight baſes, or pedeſtals, and the ruins of ſome others. They are continued along the wall of the ſtair-caſe, with as many intervals of diſtance between each other, as there are ſteps in this. There are likewiſe ſix rows of other pillars, at the diſtance of ſeventy feet

1704. and eight inches from the laſt, and each row conſiſts of ſix pillars. Theſe thirty ſix columns, are alſo twenty two feet and two inches diſtant from each other, like the preceding; and only ſeven of them are now entire; but all the baſes of the others are ſtill in their places, tho' moſt of them are damaged. Among thoſe that are ſtill ſubſiſting, there is one in the firſt and ſecond ranges; two in the third; and one in each of the others. Between theſe columns and the firſt, which have been already deſcribed, ſeveral large ſtones of a ſubterranean edifice are ſtill to be ſeen. At the diſtance of ſeventy feet and eight inches from theſe rows of columns, on the weſt, and towards the facade of the ſtair-caſe, were twelve other columes in two ranges, each of which contained ſix, but there are only five now remaining; three in the firſt, which is fifty five feet from the facade; and two in the ſecond, at the ſame diſtance from each other as the preceding. The baſes of the other ſeven are no longer viſible, and thoſe which ſtill ſubſiſt, are partly in ruins. The ground, in this place, is covered with ſeveral fragments of columns, and the ornaments that crowned them; between which are pieces of ſculpture repreſenting camels on their knees. A compartment is ſtill to be ſeen, on the top of one of the columns, exhibiting the repreſentation of one of theſe animals in this poſture; and the figure is altogether as entire, as our delineation of it in the plate. South of theſe columns is to be ſeen an edifice which riſes higher than any other part of theſe ruins; but before I enter upon its deſcription, it will be proper to obſerve, that on the eaſt quarter, to the left, and towards the mountains, were formerly two other ranges of pillars, with ſix in each, and of which only four or five pedeſtals now appear a little above the ſurface of the earth; and the place where the others were fixed, has been formed by time into a ſmall hill. Several pieces of columns and fragments of ſtone are likewiſe viſible on this ſpot; and there is reaſons to conjecture that theſe columns fronted thoſe which extend along the facade.

As we advance towards the eaſt, we are preſented with a view of ſeveral ruins, which conſiſt of portals, paſſages, and windows. The inſides of the portals are ornamented with figures, and theſe ruins extend ninety paces from eaſt to weſt, and 125 from north to ſouth: They are likewiſe ſixty paces from the columns and the mountains. The earth, in the middle of theſe ruins, is covered with broken columns, and other ſtones, which ſhall be taken notice of in the ſequel of this deſcription, as well as two ſepulchres which are hollowed in the rock. One of theſe is adorned with figures, and it fronts thoſe ruins. The columns I laſt mentioned are ſeventy ſix in number, and nineteen of them have ſtill their entablature. Their ſhafts are formed by a conjunction of four pieces, without comprehending either the baſe, or the capital. But we will now proceed to the lofty building, which riſes on a hill to the ſouth.

The loftieſt part of theſe ruins.

The diſtance of this ſtructure from the columns is 118 feet; and the front wall, which is five feet and ſeven inches high, on that ſide, is compoſed of a ſingle range of ſtones, ſome of which are eight feet in width; and the wall itſelf extends 113 feet from eaſt to weſt. Oppoſite to the middle of this edifice are ſeen ſome foundations of ſtone, which conſtitute a part of it; though it is impoſſible to comprehend their original uſe, ſince not the leaſt appearance of any ſtair-caſe is now diſcoverable. Several ſtones are likewiſe found on the ſame level with the columns, and they extend as far as this place. There is likewiſe a canal which formerly ſerved as an aqueduct; with a heap of large ſtones, that once formed ſome edifice. Beyond the wall are ſeveral other pieces ranged at the diſtance of three feet and two inches from the inſide of it; they are likewiſe five feet high, and ſome are broken to the left. This wall has neither figures, nor any other ornaments. At the diſtance of fifty three feet from the facade of this ſtructure, the entrance into which is hardly diſtinguiſhable, becauſe the ruins of it are partly covered with earth, a ſtair-caſe appears on the right hand, ſix of the ſteps of which are ſtill entire, but the uppermoſt are all entirely deſtroyed. Theſe ſteps are ſix feet and one inch in length, four in height, and a foot and a half in breadth. Several figures are ſeen to the right and left, on the little wings of this ſtair-caſe, and likewiſe on the adjoining ſtones; and over the perron on the top of theſe ſteps lies a ſtone five feet in length, and ſeven in breadth. There was likewiſe another flight on the contrary ſide, which correſponded with this, and where two ranges of ſteps are raiſed oppoſite to each other. The firſt of theſe flights is to the north, and the ſecond to the ſouth, and on the perron which lies between them, were two pilaſters of a portal, which have apparently been ſhaken down by an earthquake. All the reſt of the building, which was chiefly compoſed of large and ſmall portals, is entirely deſtroyed. They were built of large ſtones, of which ſome are opened like windows, and the portals themſelves were filled with figures in low relief. The tract of ground on which theſe ruins ſtand, contains 147 feet in length, and is almoſt ſquare. There was likewiſe a ſtair-caſe with two flights of ſteps to the ſouth, whoſe dimenſions and form correſponded with thoſe of the other, and of which the four laſt ſteps are ſtill viſible on each ſide. Between the two flights, one of which is to the eaſt, and the other to the weſt, a facade is yet to be ſeen, and it extends fifty five feet in length, without including the ſides of the ſtair-caſe, where the wall is loweſt, and only riſes two feet and ſeven inches above the level of the pavement. The ground to the eaſt is more lofty than the ſide walls, and its inward area is almoſt ſquare, ſince it extends fifty five feet on one ſide, and fifty three and a half on the other, with a large hill of ſand in the middle. The largeſt of theſe portals are five feet wide, and five feet and two inches deep. The wall is three feet in thickneſs, and its height to the cornice is about twenty three feet. It is impoſſible to conceive how the ſide-ſtones were originally joined in that part with the ſmalleſt, nor how this part of the fabric was aſcended, becauſe there is not the leaſt trace of a ſtair-caſe to be ſeen; nor can it be determined whether there was any arch above. It is, therefore, difficult to imagine for what uſe this ſtructure was intended. It may poſſibly have been ſome royal apartment.

Two portals appear on the north ſide, with three niches, or windows walled up; and to the ſouth, a portal and four open windows, each of which are five feet and nine inches wide, eleven in height, including the cornice; and their depth is equal to that of the grand portals. There are two other portals to the weſt, which are not covered, together with two openings; and a third to the eaſt, with three niches, or windows walled up. Six of theſe openings are without any cornice; and there is only the half of one to the eaſt. Under the portals, which are erected to the north, are the figures of a man and two women viſible down to the knees, the legs being covered with earth; and under one of thoſe which are to the weſt, is the figure of a man hunting a bull, who has one horn in his forehead; which is graſped by the man's left hand, while his right plunges a large dagger into the belly of the bull. On the other ſide the figure of another man claſps the horn with his right hand, and ſtabs the beaſt with his left. The ſecond portal diſcovers the figure of a man carved in the ſame manner, with a deer that greatly reſembles a lion, having a horn in its forehead, and Wings on the body. The ſame repreſentations are to be ſeen under the portal to the north, with this exception, that inſtead of the deer, there is a great lion, whom a man holds by the mane. Theſe two figures are covered with earth to the middle of their legs. The two ſides of the portal to the ſouth are carved with the figure of a man with an ornament on his head, like a crown; he is accompanied by two women, one of whom holds a paraſol over his head; the other has a certain ornament in her hand. And above this portal, on the inſide, three different niches are filled with characters. On the pilaſters of the firſt portal, which have ſtarted out of their place, and appear on the ſide of the ſtair-caſe, that has been mentioned before, are the figures of two men, each of whom is graſping a lance; one with both his hands, and the other with his left, but only one of theſe figures is entire. Behind this edifice is another ſtructure, which reſembles it in ſome meaſure, but exceeds it in length by thirty eight feet. It has likewiſe a niche or cloſed window, and another that is open; with two ſtones raiſed on the right and left, and of which that to the eaſt is broken; the other, on the weſt, is twenty eight feet high, and ſeems to be all of a piece. It is three feet and ſeven inches in breadth, and five feet four inches thick. The upper part of this ſtone is hollowed into three niches, or ſeparate compartments, filled with characters; below which is a fourth that ſeems to have been cut after the others. Several characters of the ſame nature appear in the other niches or windows, already mentioned, as well as all around them; and likewiſe on the raiſed ſtone, and ſome of the portals, whoſe pilaſters are of one piece, as are alſo the cornices. The niches, or cloſed windows, are alſo cut out of one ſtone, and to the ſouth of theſe are two flights of a ſtair-caſe; one to the eaſt, and the other to the weſt; and of which five of the uppermoſt

Subterranean paſſages.

permoſt ſteps are ſtill remaining, like thoſe in the preceding ſtair-caſe: The wings, as well as the walls which ſeparate them, exhibit the repreſentation of little figures and foilage, which are partly covered with earth. At the diſtance of a hundred feet from this place, to the ſouth, the laſt ruins of theſe famous ſtructures appear; and the greateſt part of theſe likewiſe conſiſt of portals and incloſures. Between theſe ruins and thoſe which have been deſcribed laſt, is a demoliſhed ſtair-caſe, with two flights of ſteps, to the north and ſouth, but there are only ſeven of the uppermoſt now remaining. It is likewiſe ornamented with figures and ſpreading leaves. To the eaſt of this ſtair-caſe are ſubterranean paſſages, into which no one preſumes to enter, though they are ſaid to contain great treaſures; becauſe there is a general perſuaſion, that the lights which perſons may happen to carry into theſe places, will be extinguiſhed of themſelves, after they have advanced a few paces. This opinion, however, did not intimidate me from making the the experiment, in the company of a *Perſian* of reſolution.

We deſcended between the rocks, and entered upon two ways, but we ſtruck into that which runs to the eaſt. The height of this we found to be ſix feet, and the width two feet and four inches, at the entrance; but this was contracted into the ſpace of one foot, and about eight inches, as we advanced forward: And when we had proceeded to the length of twenty paces, we found the roof ſo low, that we were obliged to creep forwards on our bellies, ten paces farther, after which we found the paſſage as high as it was at our firſt entrance: But when we had advanced a few paces more, we were ſtopped by the occurſion of the rock, and I found that there was only a narrow track, which extended to a great length, and had all the appearance of being originally contrived for an aqueduct; but the ſtraitneſs of it rendered it impoſſible to be paſſed. We then returned to the place from whence we deſcended, and I entered the paſſage on the weſt, and found a way which ſtruck to the north; but it was too low to be paſſed even on the breaſt; and had it been higher, the humidity of the earth would have made it impracticable for me to have proceeded farther. We were therefore obliged to return, but without having our lights extinguiſhed, or finding the treaſure which the people of the country pretend is concealed in theſe ſubterranean paſſages; which in all probability were never intended for any other uſe than the conveyance of water, as well on account of their inconſiderable height, as becauſe there are no cells to be ſeen, nor any traces of little altars, or other objects of that nature, which could induce one to believe they were ever conſecrated to devotion, like ſeveral ſubterranean paſſages in *Italy*, and a variety of other places.

A ſtructure to the ſouth.

The other edifice, already mentioned, extends a hundred and ſixty feet, from north to ſouth, and a hundred and ninety one from eaſt to weſt. Ten portals belonging to it, are ſtill to be ſeen, together with ſeven windows, and forty encloſures, that have formerly been covered with buildings, whoſe foundations are viſible to this day; as are likewiſe ſeveral round baſes in the middle, and on which have been erected thirty ſix columns, in ſix ranges. Theſe ſtones are three feet and five inches in their diameter, and all the ground is covered with large fragments, under which were aqueducts in former times. The entrance into this building, is likewiſe diſtinguiſhed by two raiſed ſtones, like that which has been already deſcribed, and ſeveral characters that are ſtill viſible are impreſſed upon them.

There was formerly another ſtructure, weſtward from the front of this, but it is now entirely deſtroyed;

ed; and nothing is to be ſeen but a ſquare place fronting the portals lately mentioned. The wall of this place is ſtill near two foot in height above the pavement, and one ſees along this wall the upper part of ſome figures, with which it was embelliſhed; each of which is repreſented with a lance, and they were almoſt as large as the life. The ground encloſed by this wall contains nothing more than a number of round ſtones, which were formerly baſes to columns, whoſe demenſions correſponded with thoſe of the preceding. Theſe ſtones are placed at the diſtance of eleven feet from one another, and I think there are thirty ſix of them ſtill remaining. There is likewiſe a large hill of ſand, before this laſt edifice, which extends along the portals, with ſeveral fragments of ſtone. On the eaſt ſide of theſe laſt ruins, are the remains of a beautiful ſtair-caſe, which reſembles that of the front wall, and is ſixty feet in length. The lower part of it has twelve ſteps ſtill remaining, and there are fifteen above the perron. The breadth of each of them is ſix feet and two inches, and the wings of this ſtair-caſe are beautified with little figures. The wall which ſeparates the two flights of ſteps, and is ſtill eight feet in height, is likewiſe adorned with figures almoſt as big as the life; but the ſtones on which they are carved, are greatly damaged. The front contains the repreſentation of a lion encountring a bull, together with ſome broken ſtones, on which ſeveral characters are impreſſed. There are alſo lions of the ſame workmanſhip on the wings of the ſtair-caſe, but they are ſmaller than the other; and are likewiſe accompanied with characters and figures, almoſt as large as the life. The ſame is alſo to be ſeen on the other ſide of the walls, together with the figures of women, which are all defaced in a great meaſure. The principal ſtair-caſe of this building, was ſituated to the weſt, not of the front wall, but of the moſt lofty part of the pile, and fronting the great edifice: It likewiſe differs from the others, by being placed directly before the wall, with the additional circumſtance of its ſhooting out into a great breadth below, and gradually contracting itſelf in the aſcent. There are two flights of ſteps, as in the others, one to the weſt, and the other to the eaſt, and the latter ſtill aſcends by twenty ſeven ſteps. The weſtern flight has twenty three ſteps, but time has deſtroyed eight of them, notwithſtanding they were cut out of the rock. When one has arrived at the perron of the firſt flight, a ſecond diviſion of the ſtair-caſe on the ſide of the wall, from weſt to eaſt, preſents itſelf to the view, and contains thirty ſteps, the greateſt part of which are ſtill entire, and are four feet and three inches in breadth, and one foot three inches in depth. The eaſtern flight correſponds with the other, but is deſtroyed in a very great meaſure, and nothing now remains of it, but a part of the wall, with two or three ſteps. Theſe two flights are ſeparated by an extent of 117 feet, including the wall of the perron, along which the buildings are carried to the diſtance of eight feet. Columns were formerly diſpoſed between this lofty edifice, and the portals already mentioned: But there are only four to be ſeen at preſent, with two fragments of baſes, which ſtill riſe a little above the ſurface of the ground. Four portals are likewiſe to be ſeen among theſe laſt ruins, and on each of their pilaſters within, the figure of a man is repreſented, with two women holding a paraſol over his head, in the ſame diſpoſition, as the others which have been already deſcribed. There were figures of the ſame nature, on the pilaſters to the weſt, and they held ſomething in their hand, like thoſe on the eaſt. There was likewiſe the repreſentation of two men armed with lances, under the two other ſculptures, in the ſame manner as thoſe under the preceding, together with three women holding ſomething that is now broken in their hands; but theſe laſt figures are extremely damaged. There are alſo two other figures on each ſide, in the two niches to the ſouth, one of which graſps the horn of a goat with one hand, while the other reſts on the neck of that animal. The ſecond figure had likewiſe ſomething in its hand, but time has entirely deſtroyed it.

Between thoſe ruins, and the laſt ſtructures, which are toward the mountain, we obſerved ſome pilaſters which were ornamented with figures reſembling the others: But with this difference, that one of the women holds a crooked machine over the head of the man, who had alſo ſomething in his hand, but it is now broken. Other machines like this are to be ſeen in the hands of ſeveral other figures, that ſeem to be diſpoſed on the ſide of ſome great perſonages; and they may poſſibly be the tails of ſome Sea-horſes, which are uſed even now by perſons of quality in this country, to chaſe away the flies. They ſometimes coſt a hundred rix-dollars a piece, and are inſerted into golden handles, which are frequently garniſhed with jewels. The King, and the great lords likewiſe carry them faſtened to the head of their horſes, from whence they fall down over their breaſts.

Near theſe two edifices are two very lofty ſtones, but the greateſt part of the other ſtructures are under the earth. Two portals, with their pilaſters, are, however, to be ſeen at a little diſtance to the north; and one of theſe laſt ſupports the figures of a man and two women, one of which holds a paraſol over his head. Above theſe women, we obſerved a figure with wings, which are expanded to the ſides of the portal. The lower part of the buſt of this little figure ſeems to terminate on the two ſides with a ſpread of foilage, and a kind of freeze. Over the ſecond figure, a man is ſeated in a chair, with a ſtaff in his hand; and another ſtands behind him, with his right hand upon the chair, and holding in his left ſomething that is not to be diſtinguiſhed. The little figure which appears above, holds a kind of circle in its left hand, and points to ſomething with its right. Under this portal are three ranges of figures, all of which have their hands lifted up; and over the third pilaſter, which ſtill remains, two women hold a paraſol above the head of a man. The earth is alſo covered with fragments of columns, and other antiquities, between which three baſes are viſible. Theſe portals are nine feet in depth, with a breadth of the ſame dimenſion, and they are ſunk into the earth to the depth of ſome feet.

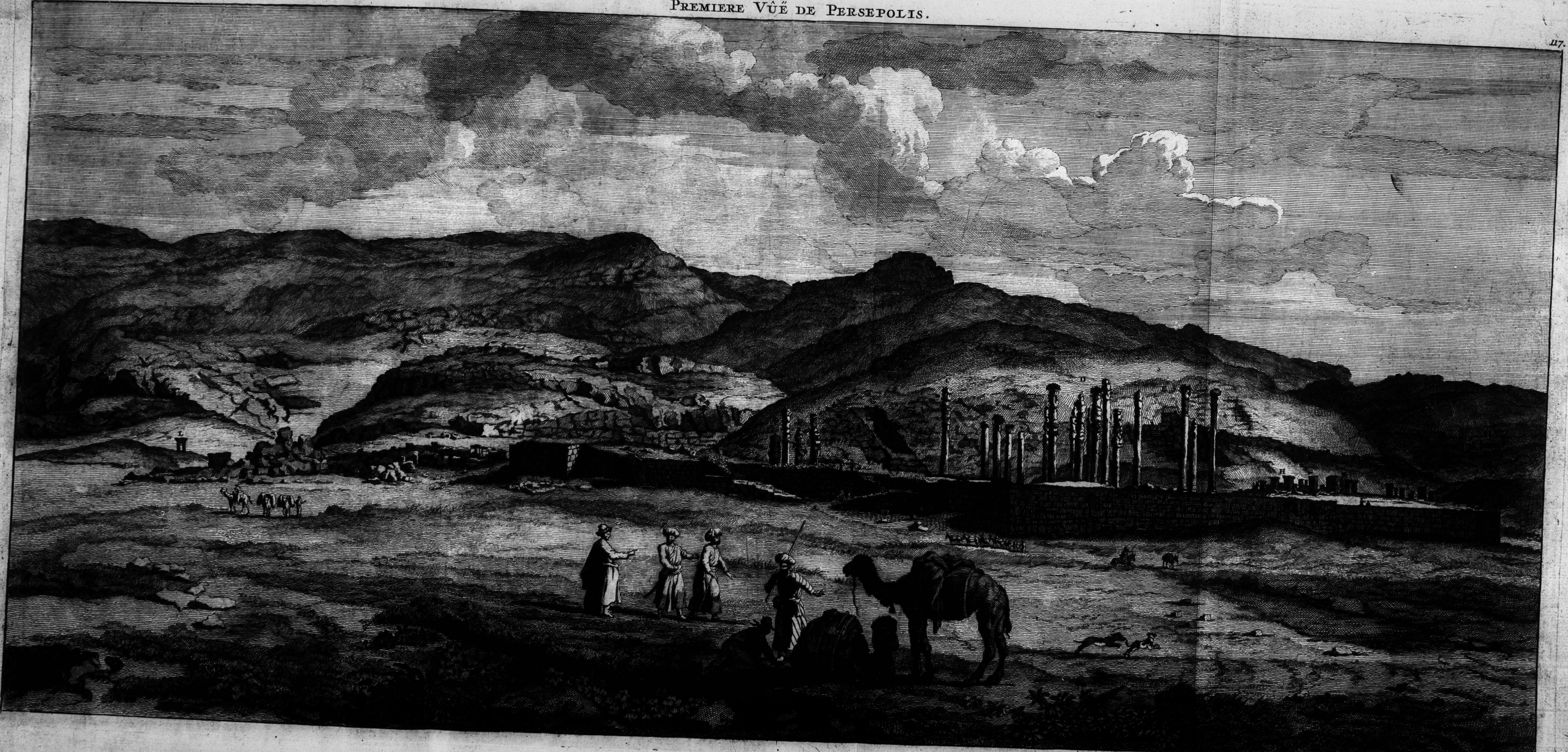
We proceeded from hence to the laſt ruins of the ſtructures that are on the ſide of the mountain, and whoſe circumference has been marked out. They are repreſented on the ſouth ſide, where are two portals, under each of which a man is ſeated in a chair, with a ſtaff in his right hand, and in his left a kind of vaſe. Behind him is another figure, which holds over his head a machine, like the tail of a ſea-horſe, and has a linen cloth in his right hand. Below there are three rows of other figures with lifted hands; four in the firſt, and five in each of the other two rows. They are three feet and four inches high, but the ſeated figure is much larger than the life. Above this are ſeveral ornamental ranges of foliage, the loweſt of which is intermixed with ſmall lions, and the higheſt with Oxen. Over thoſe ornaments is a little winged figure, which holds in its left hand ſome thing which reſembles a ſmall glaſs, and makes a ſignal with its right. The reſt of the figures reſemble thoſe others that have been already deſcribed.

Theſe portals are twelve feet and five inches in breadth, and ten feet four inches deep. Their pilaſters are compoſed of ſeven ſtones, and are about ſix feet in thickneſs. The higheſt are from twenty eight to thirty feet. On the two which are to-

12

PREMIERE VÛË DE PERSEPOLIS.

117.



wards the north, a man is ſeated, with a perſon behind him, like the preceding figures; and behind this are two other men holding in their hands ſomething which is broken. there are likewiſe two other figures, before him that is ſeated, one of which places his hands on his lips with an air of ſalutation, and the other holds a ſmall veſſel. Above theſe figures is a ſtone filled with ornaments, but it is not ſo high as the others that have been already deſcribed. Below the perſon who is repreſented ſitting, are five ranges of figures, three feet in height; theſe are a band of ſoldiers armed in different manners.

In one of theſe portals to the eaſt, we obſerved the figure of a man encountring a lion; and in another compartment, a man fighting with a bull. We likewiſe beheld, under the two portals to the weſt, ſeveral figures of lions, one of which is repreſented with wings. Thoſe to the eaſt and weſt, are much lower than thoſe to the north and ſouth, and the figures are ſunk up to the knees in the earth. The other portals are likewiſe ſunk in the manner repreſented in one of the plates of theſe ruins. Each of them had nine niches or windows on every ſide, but they are all deſtroyed, in a great meaſure. It is evident, however, that none of them were open, except thoſe that front the north, three of which, that were diſpoſed in the middle, are ſtill entire, and open ſo as to ſhew a proſpect through them. The pilaſters, as well as the architrave, are compoſed almoſt of one ſtone, but their cornices are broken. Theſe portals are eleven feet and five inches deep, and four feet ten inches wide. Several pieces of columns, baſes, and ornaments, lie ſcattered between theſe ſtructures, and their number may amount to about thirty or forty. All the laſt that have been mentioned, amount to 119. which being added to the ſeventy ſix that were firſt ſpecified, compleat the number of 195.

The firſt large ſtones of the rock, that appear on the ſide of theſe ſtructures to the north, are the pilaſters of two grand portals, one of which reſembled the two that were erected at the ſtair-caſe of the front wall; the other is adorned with two vaſt figures of men armed with lances, and likewiſe holds a machine which correſponds with thoſe that have been formerly mentioned. There were alſo two others, diſpoſed in the ſame manner, a little farther to the weſt, and fronting the former, as appears by the little which now remains of them. There are likewiſe two other portals to the north, like thoſe of the ſtair-caſe of the facade; and though they are now in ruins, the animals with which they were ornamented, are ſtill diſtinguiſhable. There is alſo a vaſt fragment of ſtone reſembling a horſe's head, but it is now ſunk into the earth. This figure induces me to conclude, that the other pilaſters were embelliſhed with heads of the ſame nature; and ſeveral figures of beaſts, fragments of columns, and other broken ſtones, are ſcattered about in great numbers, on the ſide of theſe ruins, but nothing is to be diſtinguiſhed among thoſe that lie to the north.

A more particular deſcription of theſe ruins.

After this general deſcription of theſe famous ruins, it will be proper to offer a particular account of them, as they are repreſented in four general plates, and four different points of ſight; and where the principal fragments, and even the ſeparate pieces, are exhibited to view. The firſt plate is marked N° 117. and repreſents the facade to the weſt, the particular members of which are diſtinguiſhed by letters. A. marks out the grand ſtair-caſe in the front of the edifice. B. the two grand portals with two columns. C. the only remaining column of twelve. D. the ſeven which are left out of thirty ſix. E. the five columns, which are all that are now ſtanding of the twelve, that were diſpoſed along the wall of the facade. F. the four which

1704.

which remain of the twelve that were placed towards the mountains. The other ruins could not be repreſented in this plate, the hill from whence the deſign was taken, not being high enough for that purpoſe. G. repreſents one of the tombs on the mountain. H. the higheſt ſtructure on a hill. I. the laſt ruins to the ſouth. K. the other tomb on the mountain. L. the portal to the north, placed without the ſtructures.

The ſecond view.

The ſecond view was taken at the foot of the mountain to the ſouth, and is repreſented in plate 118. which exhibits a direct proſpect of the ruins to the eaſt, with the higheſt edifice at the weſtern entrance; at the wall of which were the two grand aſcents of ſtairs, already deſcribed. That to the left is diſtinguiſhed by the letter A; but the ruins of the other are not viſible on this ſide any more than the column, which riſes to the left, without the edifice. The two mountains on which the fortreſſes were erected, are marked by B; and the town of *Mier-chas-koen*, with the gardens before it, by C. Two villages are repreſented a little beyond it, in a diſtant proſpect.

The third view.

The third view, exhibited in plate 119, was deſigned from the eaſt, and under the firſt tomb on the mountain, before which are two hills of ſand. From this ſituation the proſpect opens upon all the ruins ſeparated from one another; and I choſe this point of ſight, and the eminence which commands it, for the ſatisfaction of thoſe who ſhall have the curioſity to conſult this work. That particular portion of them, which is ſituated towards the mountains, as I have already intimated, is viſible at the eaſt entrance into the ruins, and is diſtinguiſhed by the letter A. The columns behind are marked out by B; and on the right of theſe, the two portals which are near the ſtair-caſe of the facade, are repreſented at the letter C. Sevetal fragments of ſtone on the ſame ſide, together with other columns on the left, and which ſtand on an emience beyond the two portals, already deſcribed, are exhibited at D. After which thoſe of the lofty edifice to the ſouth, before which is a ſtair-caſe to the eaſt, appear at the letter E. The other portals are expreſſed at F. And the laſt part, to the ſouth, by G. The column, which ſtands alone, in the fields, is likewiſe repreſented; and beyond this, the villages and mountains, together with the town of *Mier-chas-koen*, are to be ſeen at H.

1704.

The fourth view.

The fourth view, repreſented in plate 120, was deſigned on the northern quarter, above the edifice, and at an angle of the higheſt wall, which has the greateſt projection, in form of a ſtair-caſe, as well on this ſide as on the other. This ſituation preſents to the view part of the ſtair-caſe of the facade, before which are the two grand portals, and the two columns. The wall, and likewiſe the ſtair-caſe, adorned with figures up the aſcent to the place where the columns ſtand, are marked by the letter A. Beyond theſe, ſeveral other ruins, with thoſe on the ſide of the mountain, and likewiſe the two tombs, are repreſented at B and C; and on the other ſide, the column appears alone in the fields.

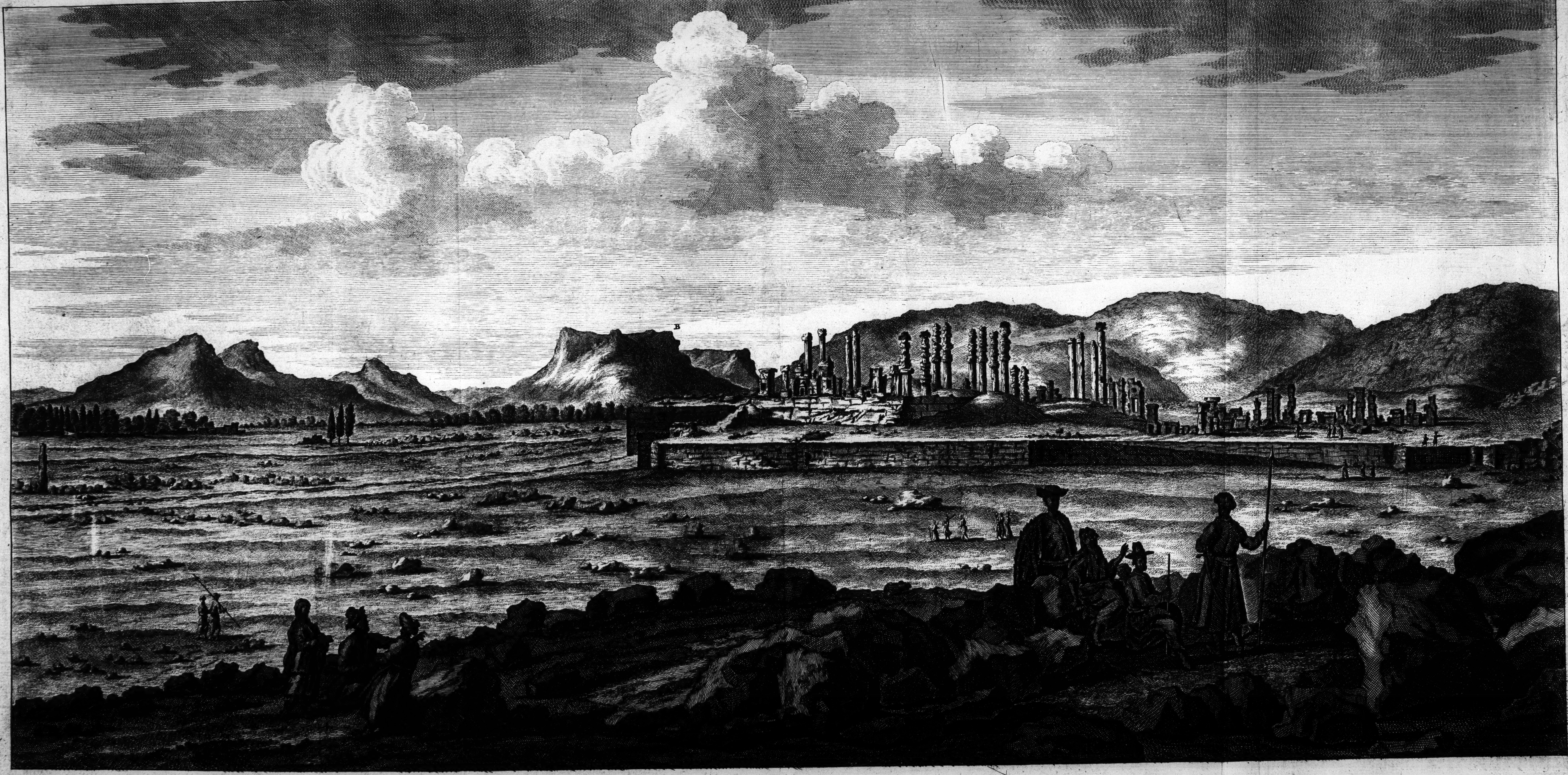
A particular deſcription of the ſeveral pieces.

We will now proceed to a deſcription of each particular piece, and begin with the two portals, and the two columns, which are repreſented in plate 121. The deſign of theſe was drawn on a quarter to the ſouth, by which means, part of the ſtair-caſe of the facade, and the end of the wall to the north, are rendered viſible. One of the Sphinxes of the firſt portal, adorned with broken ornaments, is delineated in the plate 122. And in plate 123, is to be ſeen a winged animal, under the ſecond portal. The ſtair-caſe of the facade, deſigned from a northern ſituation, is exhibited in plate 124. We have likewiſe added in plate 125, the ſteps of the wall, which aſcend to the columns: This view was drawn to the weſt, on the front wall

research publications

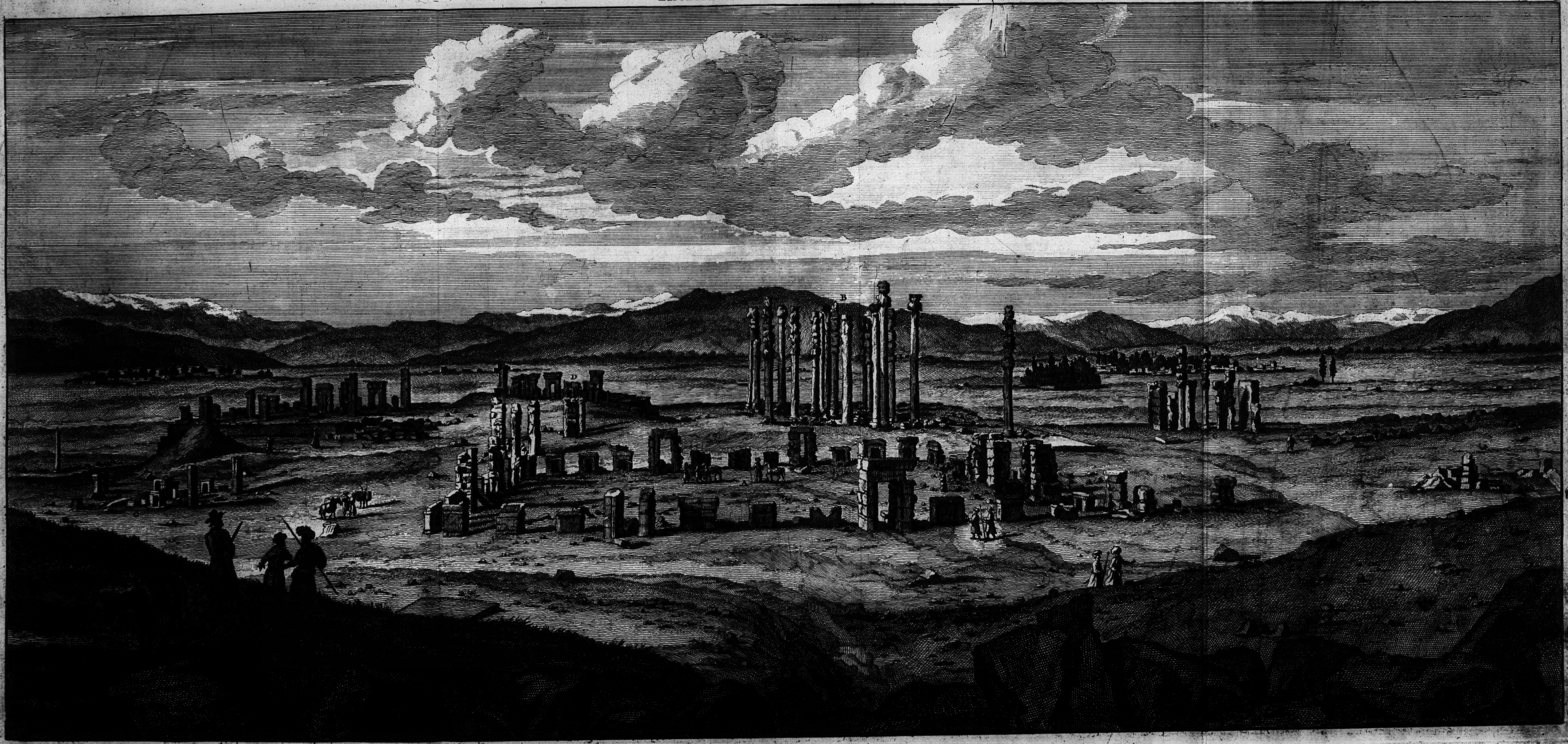
13

SECONDE VÜE DE PERSEPOLIS.

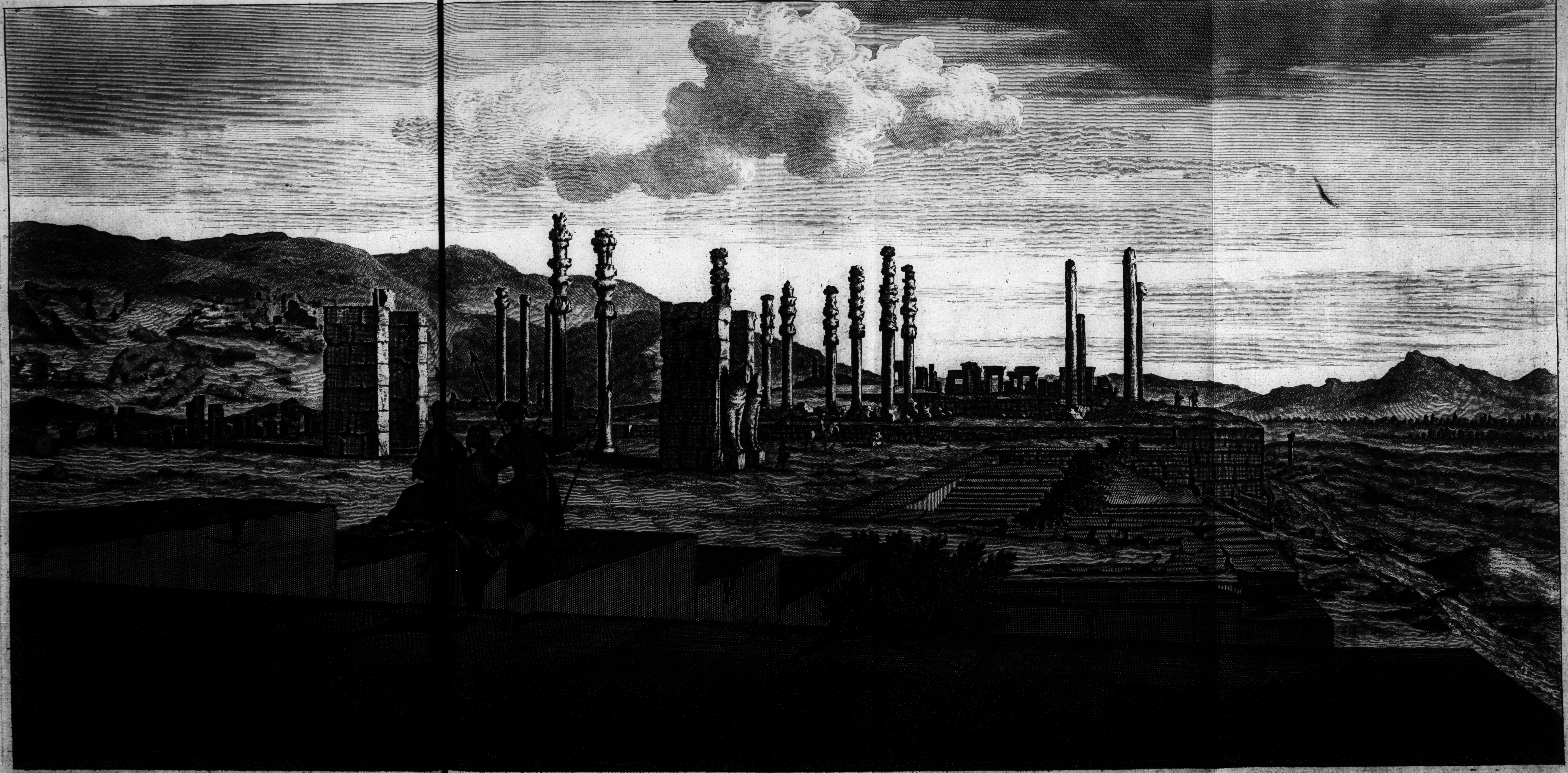


research publications

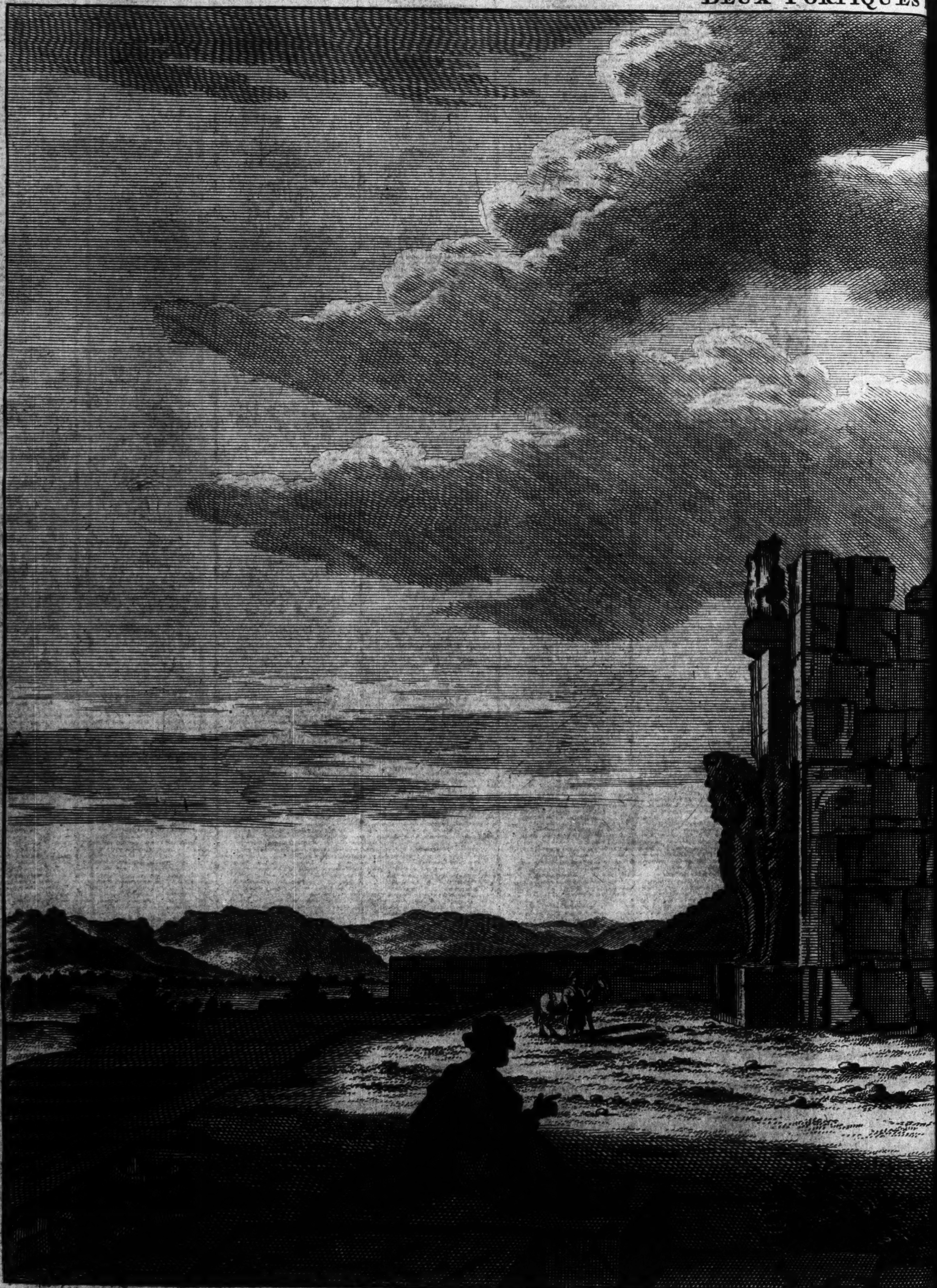
TROISIEME VÛE DE PERSEPOLIS.



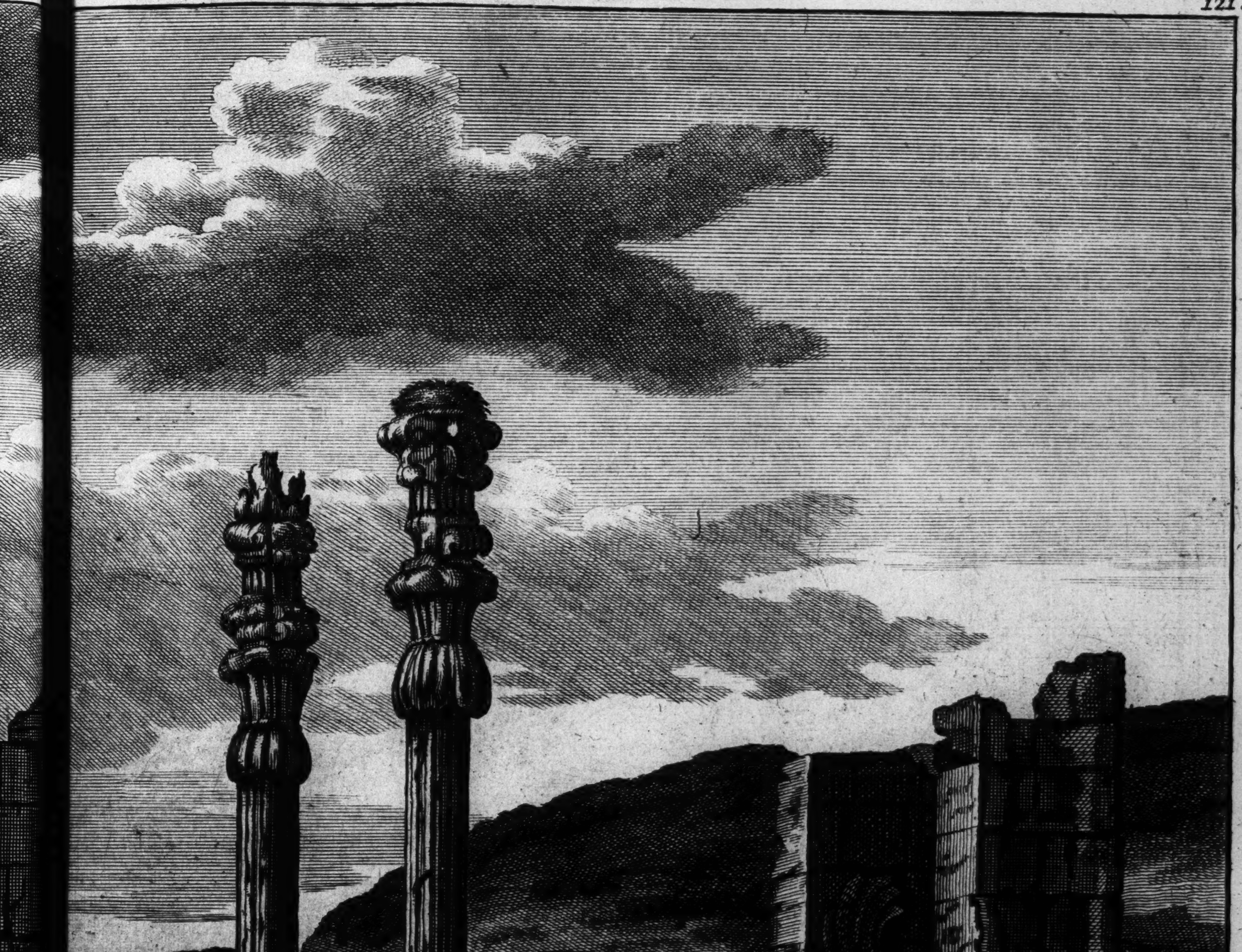
QUATRIEME VÛË DE PERSEPOLIS.

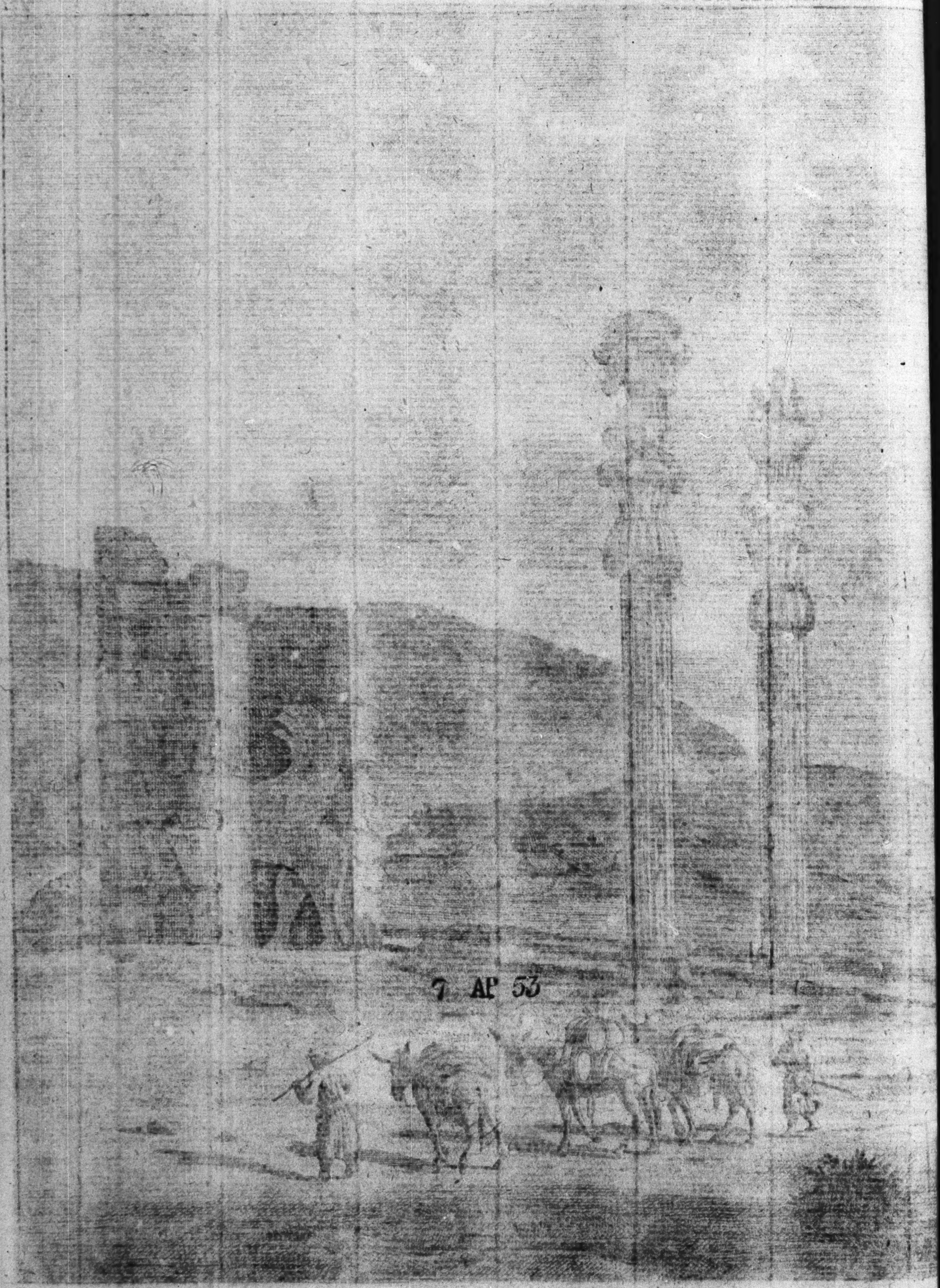


DEUX PORTIQUES S D

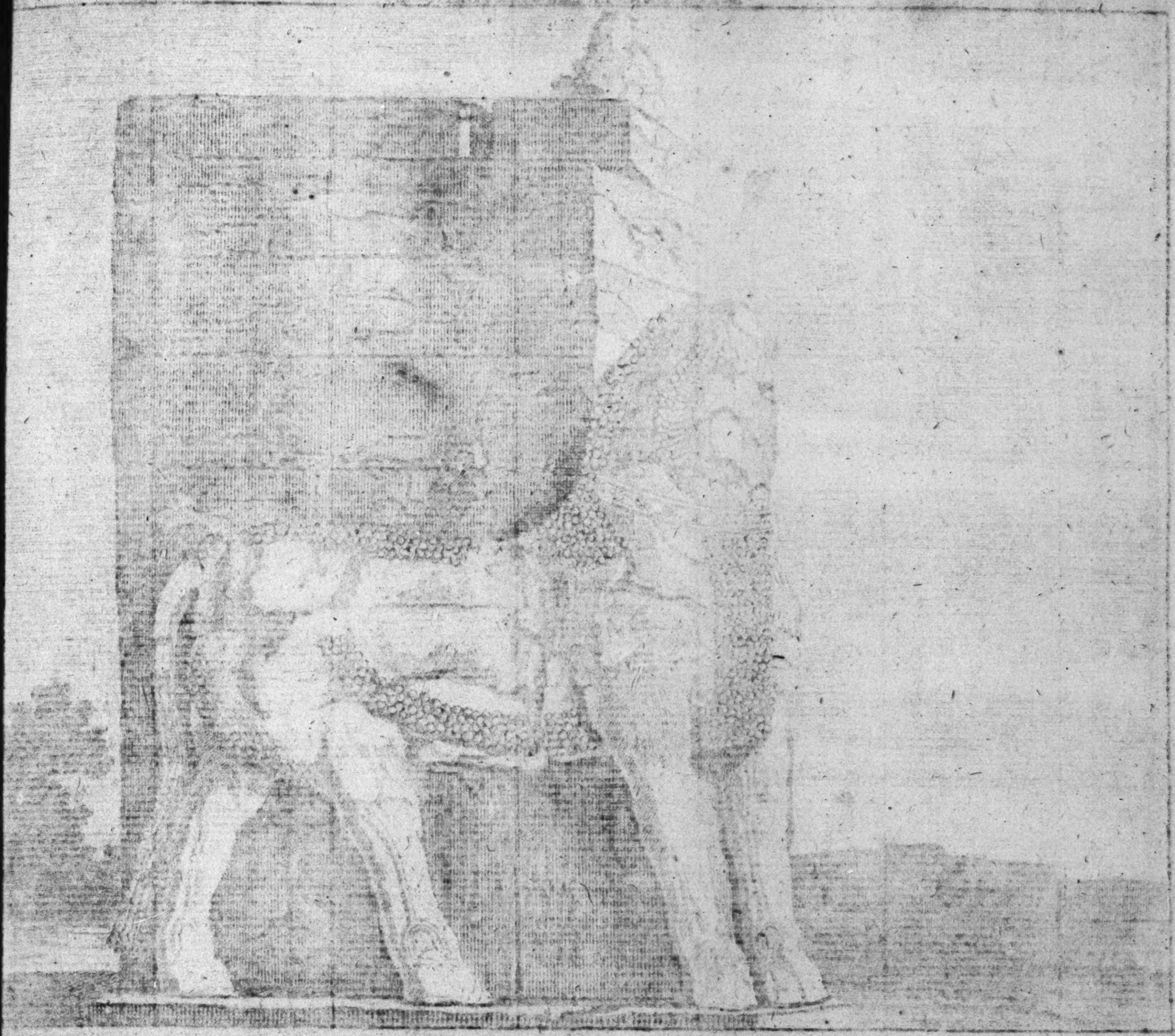


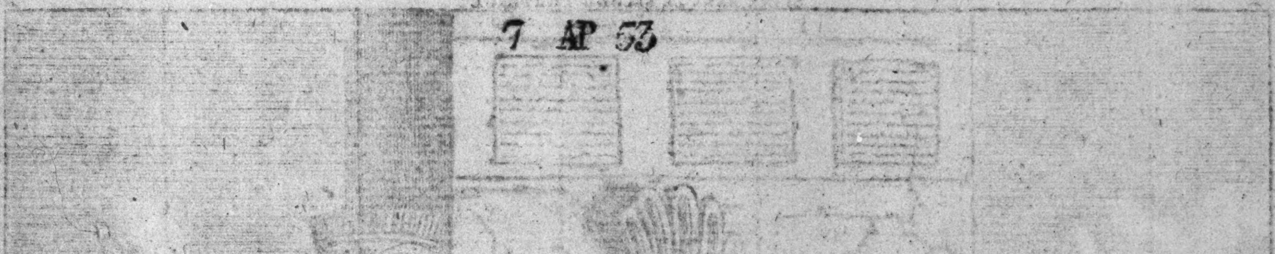
ES S DEUX COLOMNES.





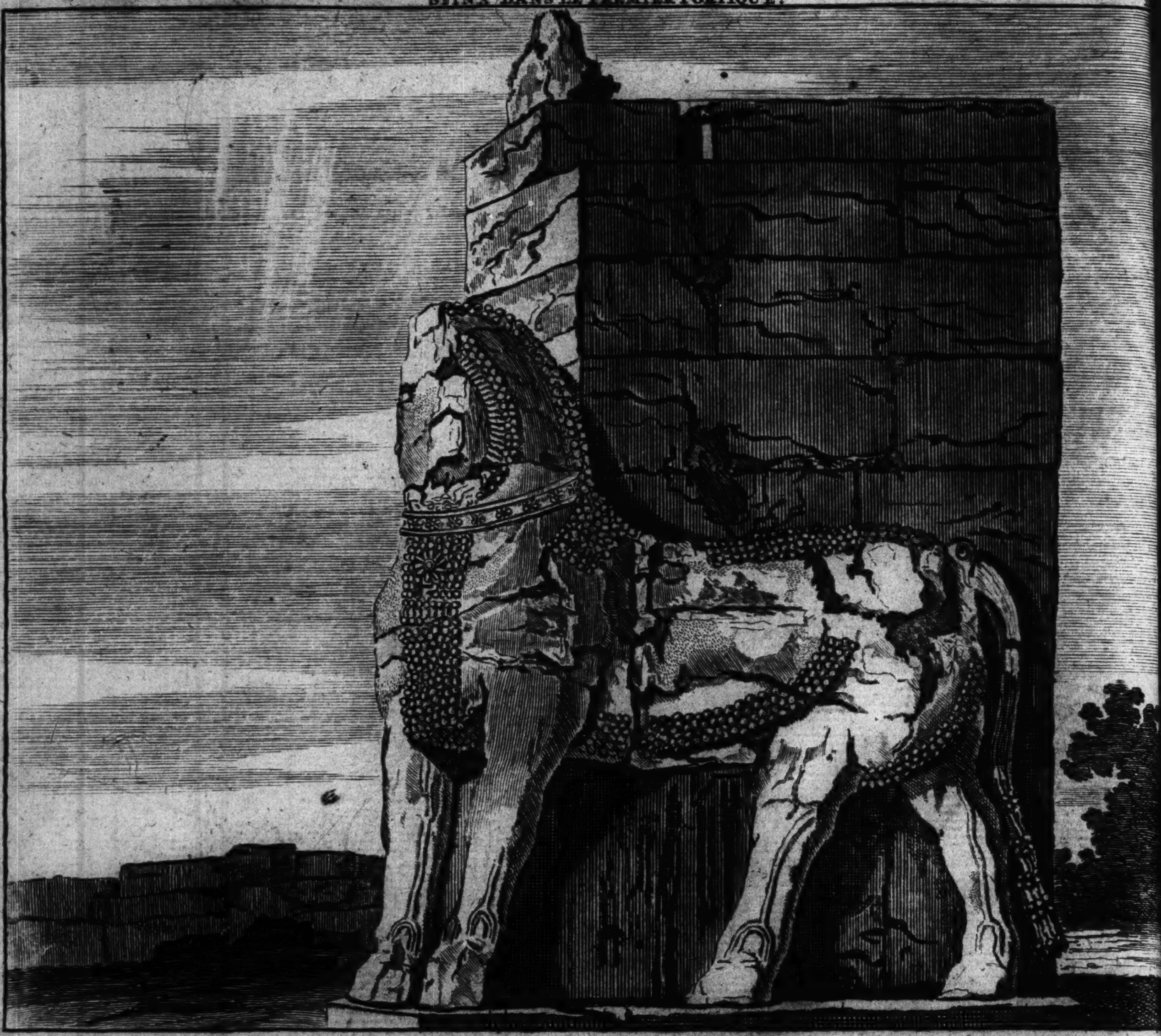
7 AP 53



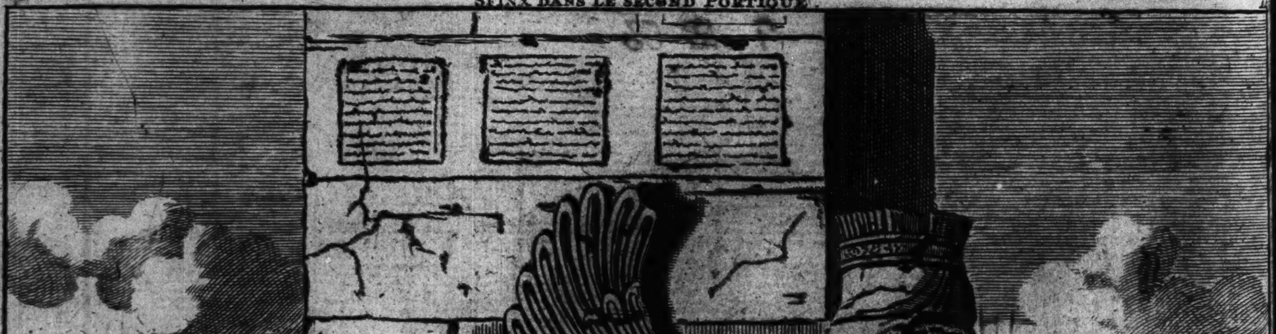


7 AP 53

SFINX DANS LE PREMIER PORTIQUE.

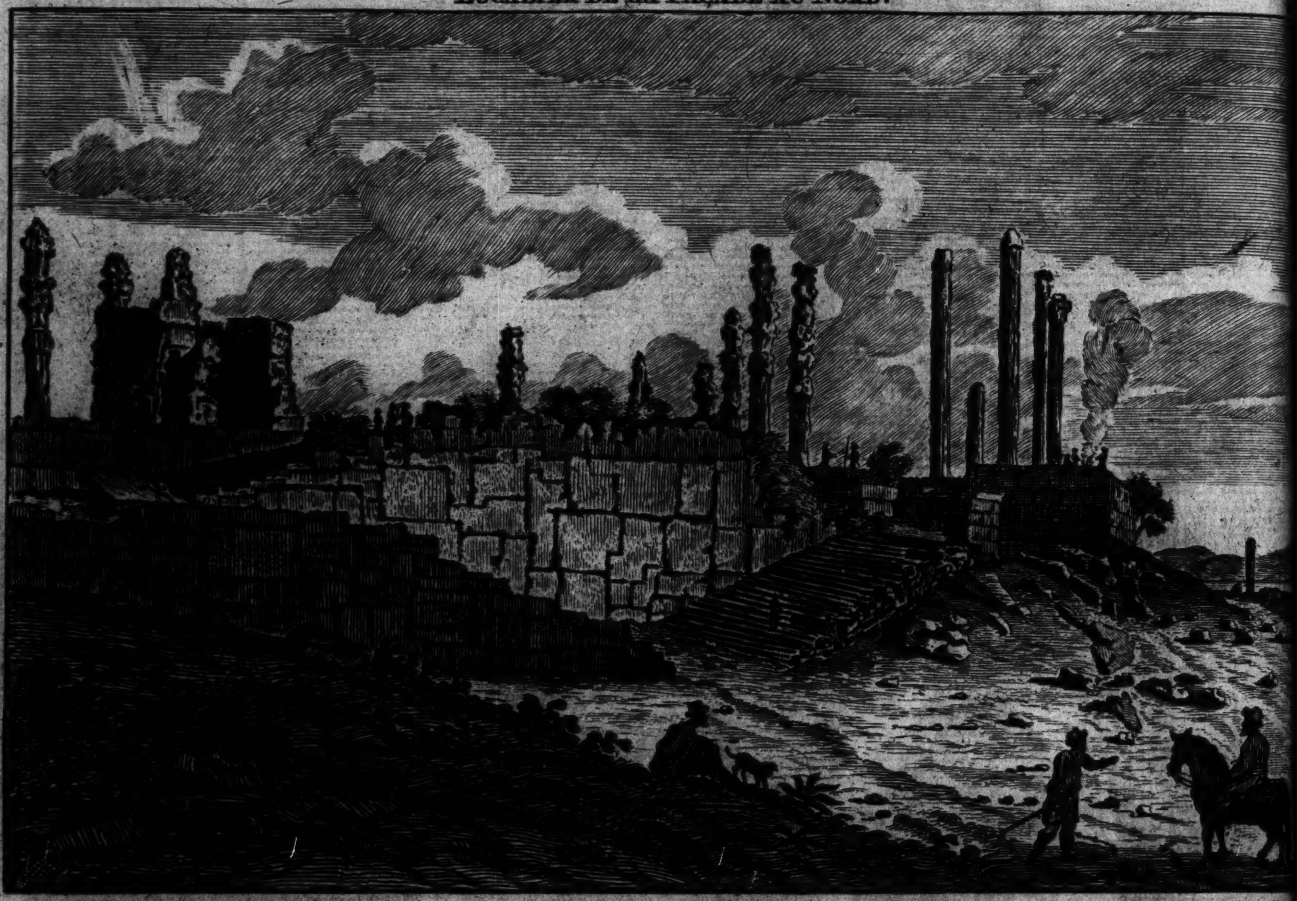


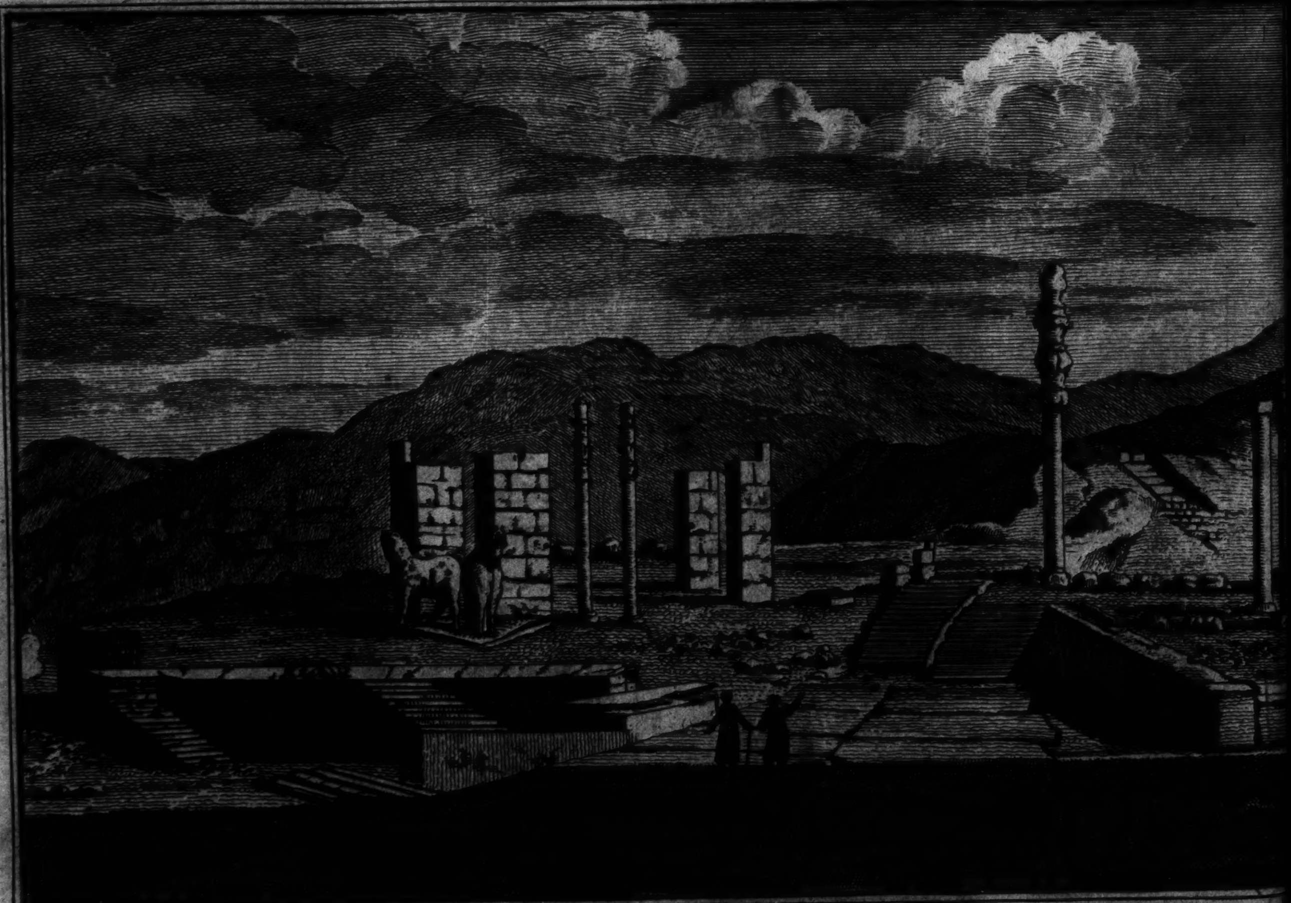
SFINX DANS LE SECOND PORTIQUE.



7 AP 53

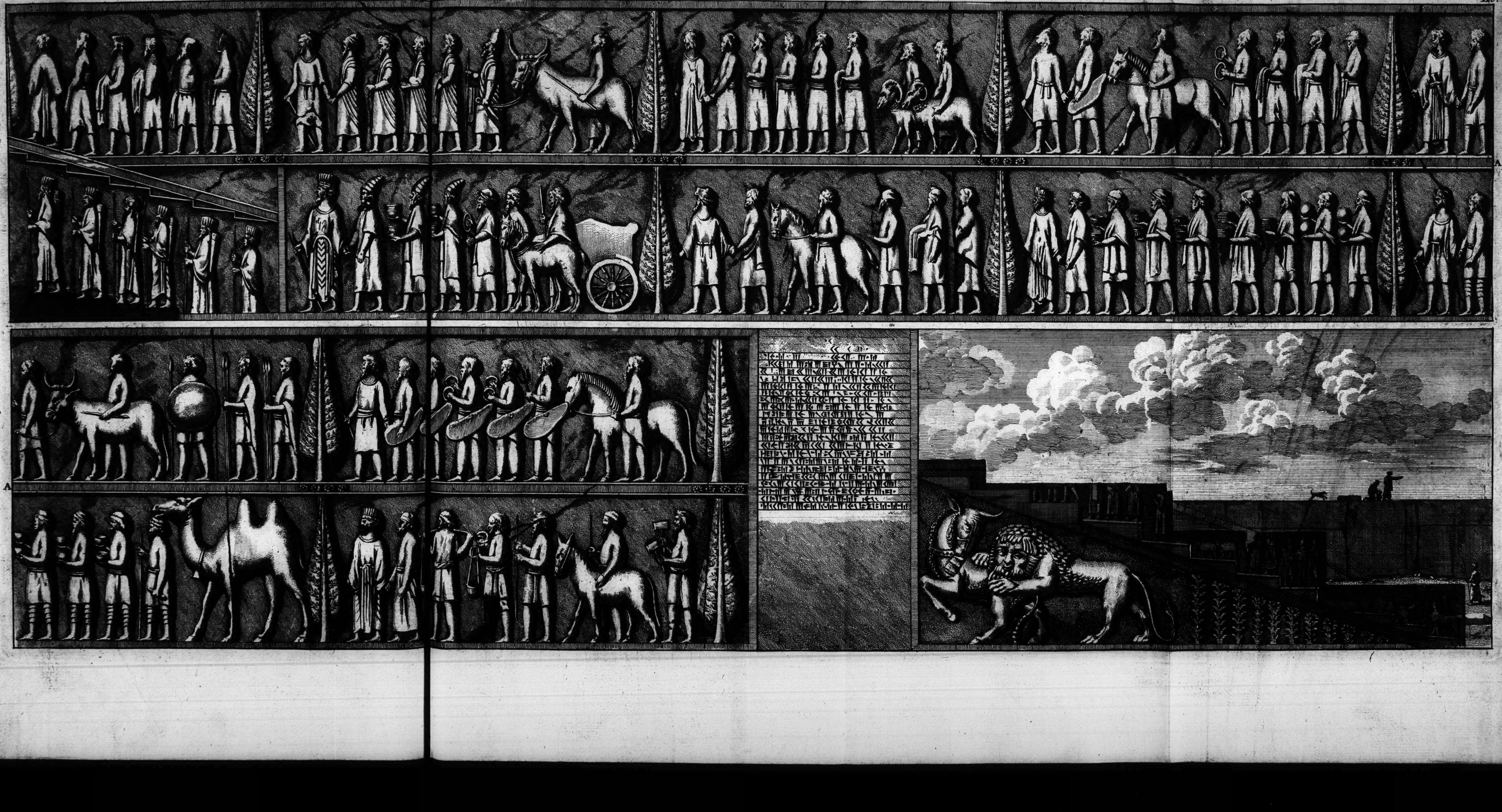
ESCALIER DE LA FAÇADE AU NORD.





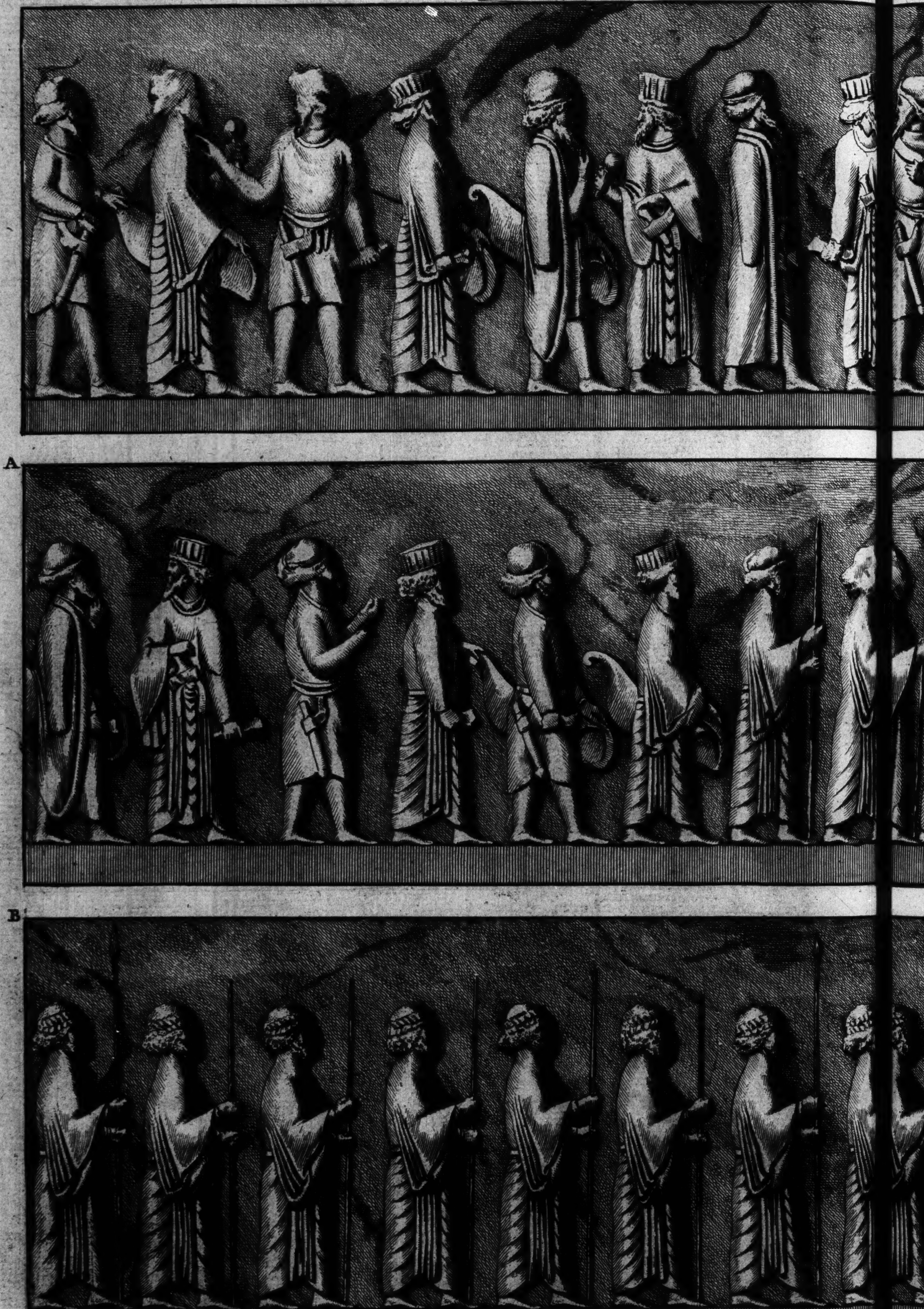
DEGRÉ QUI CONDUIT AUX COLOMNES.

FIGURES & CARACTERES SUR L'AILE DE L'ESCALIER A L'OUEST.

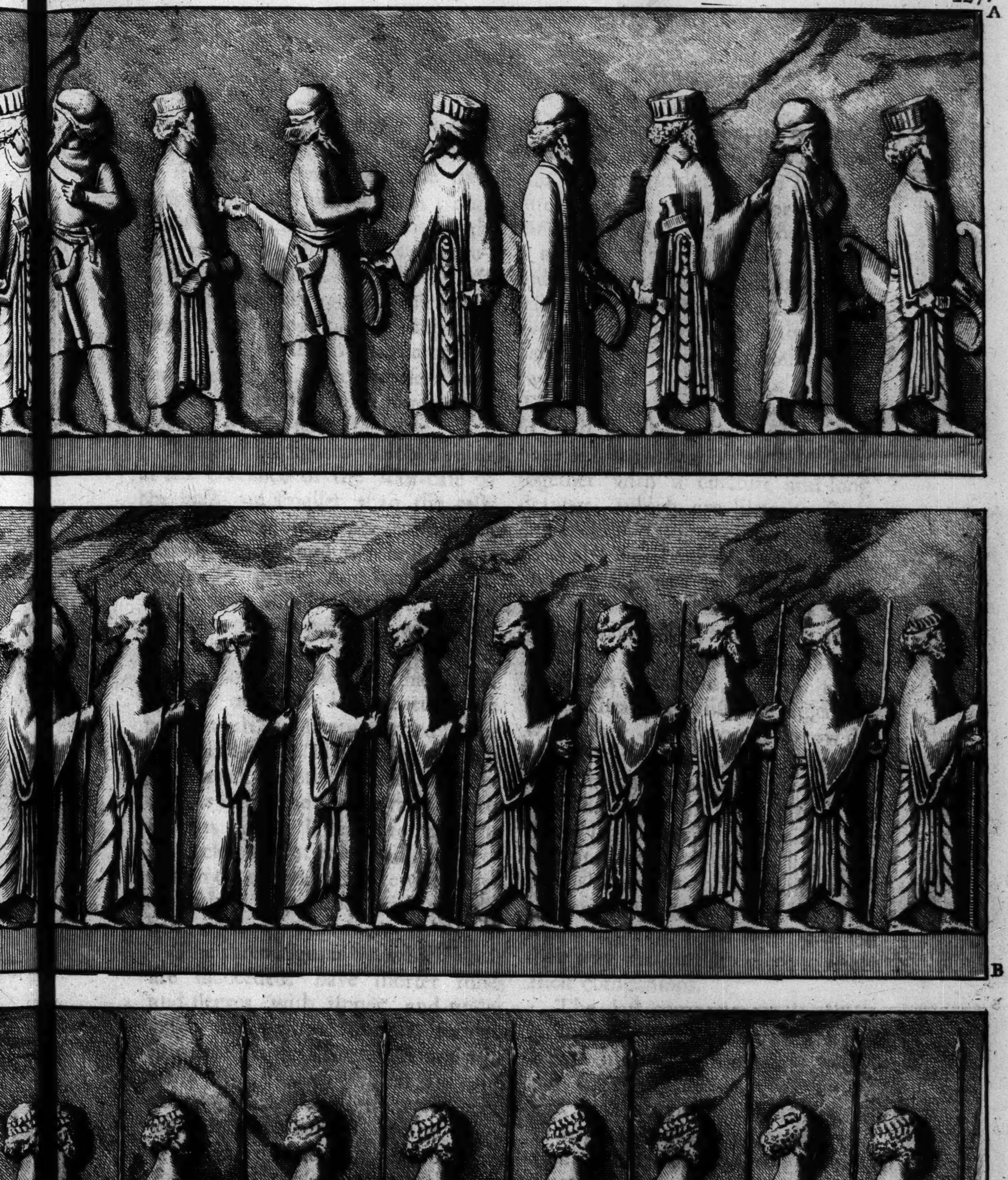


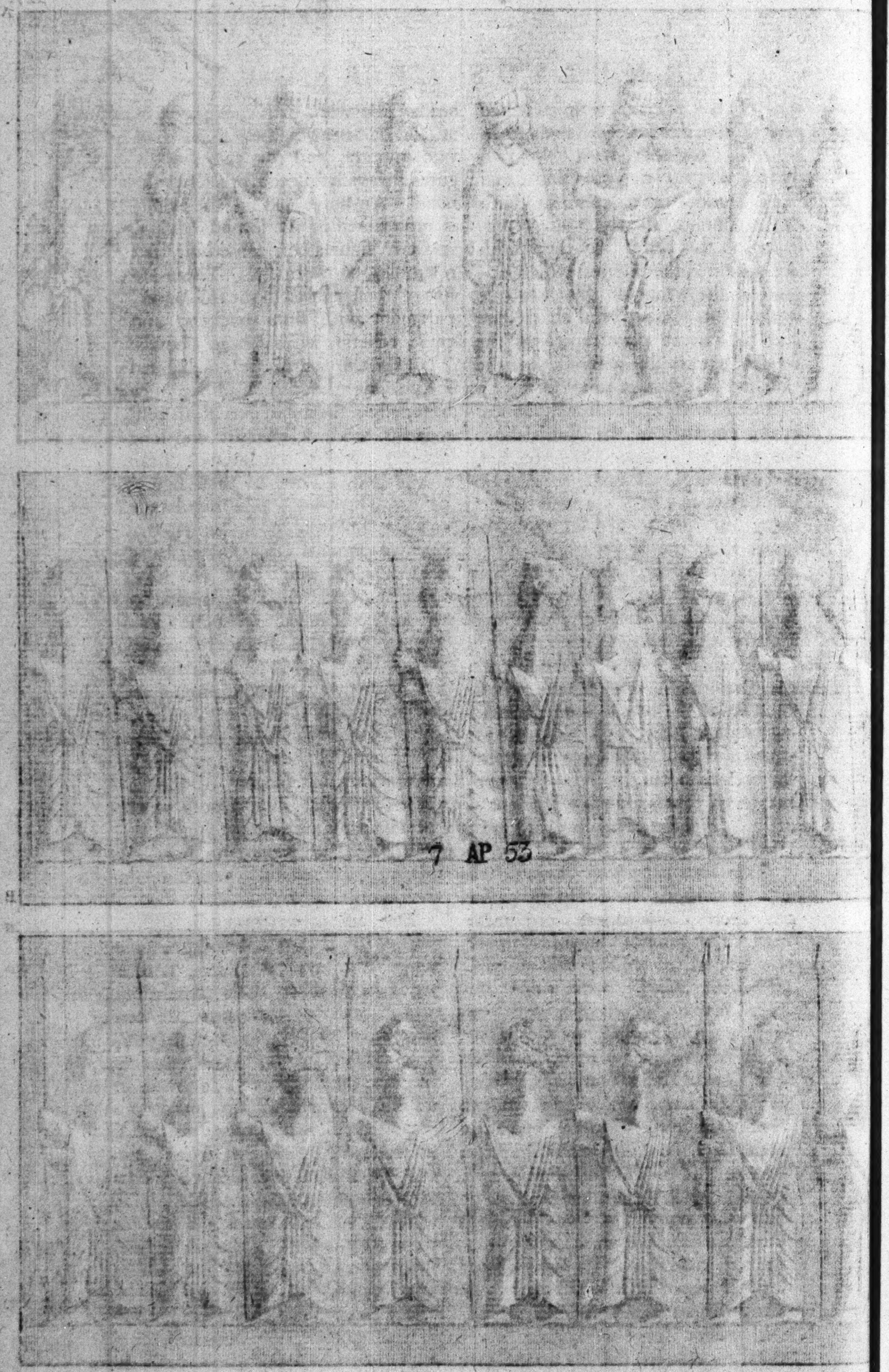
7 AP 53

FIGURES SUR LES DE



ES DE L'ESCALIER L'EST.





7 AP 53

wall of the edifice, from whence part of the ſtair-caſe of the facade is ſeen, together with the two portals, and the two columns; and likewiſe ſome other columns, with the mountain, all which are repreſented in this plate. In the 126th are exhibited the figures which appear on the wings of this ſtair-caſe to the weſt, with ſeveral characters: and the 127th plate repreſents the figures that are ſtill remaining on the eaſt ſide of the ſame ſtair-caſe.

The firſt ſix figures which appear at the entrance of the ſtair-caſe to the eaſt, are ſmaller than the reſt, and have large veſtments, with great plaited ſleeves; and a round bonnet riſing in plaits, and larger in the upper than the lower part. They are likewiſe repreſented with hair and long beards. Each of them holds a lance in the right hand, and a quiver of arrows is faſtened to the back with a ſtrap carried over the ſhoulder. The figure which precedes all the others, holds the next by the left hand, and graſps a fork with its right. It ſeems to repreſent an eccleſiaſtic at the head of a proceſſion of others: it is likewiſe arrayed with a large robe, with a girdle hanging down very low.

The three figures by which theſe are ſucceeded, have ſhorter robes and ſleeves, with upper, and under veſts, and pointed bonnets formed into five plaits. Theſe laſt are properly the *Tiaras*, which are alſo called *Reflexa*, becauſe they are ſloped into a curve behind, as the *Tiara Phrygia* are thoſe which are bent before. One of theſe appears on the head of *Ulyſſes* on antient medals. Two of theſe figures hold a little bucket in each hand, and the third has two hoops. This laſt is followed by two horſes, drawing a chariot, and by two other figures that place their left arms, one on the back, and the other on the neck of the horſes. They are all repreſented with hair and beards; ſome are likewiſe bare-headed, others have a bandage, or a kind of diadem, folded round their heads. Between each compartment of ſix or ſeven figures, a kind of vaſe appears, and the two firſt figures always hold each other by the hand. An horſe, led by the bridle, is repreſented in the ſecond diviſion, and two figures bear ſomething that reſembles a veſtment. There are five of theſe figures in the third compartment with little buckets, and two others with large bowls. Thoſe in the fourth are not habited ſo well as the others, ſince they have only a ſhort and very ſtrait veſt, together with a cincture and long drawers, which are likewiſe ſtrait and plaited. Three of theſe figures have alſo little buckets in their hands, and are followed by a camel, that has two bunches riſing on his back, with a halter, and a little bell hung about his neck, after the manner of the eaſtern caravans, that the ſound may be heard at a diſtance, eſpecially when they paſs through narrow defiles or bad ways, where ſome of the company ought to ſtop, to give the others an opportunity of paſſing on. Theſe bells likewiſe give notice in the night to the inhabitants, of the caravans arrival at thoſe places where the company are to lodge: it is likewiſe a ſignal to thoſe who have loſt their way, and enables them to rejoin their companions.

The laſt compartment is diſtinguiſhed by a figure bearing a pole before him on his ſhoulders, with a pot ſuſpended at each extremity; and in each of theſe pots are ſeen little water veſſels in an upright poſition. The habit of this figure is likewiſe but indifferent. A mule or an aſs is repreſented next, with two men armed with poles; and theſe are followed by another figure bearing two mallets. Several other characters appear next, and laſt of all a great lion encountring a bull or ſome other animal, from whoſe forehead a horn is extended. The ſtair-caſe, around which ſeveral broken figures agpear, preſents itſelf to view in this place. We counted forty eight figures of men and beaſts in this range, and as many in that above. The firſt ſix are meanly habited, and each of them has ſome veſtment in its hand. Thoſe that follow, carry the ſame, and are arrayed in a better manner, but moſt of them are greatly impaired by time. Theſe are ſucceeded by an ox led with a halter. The only difference between this and the third compartment is, that in the latter two rams are led, and each of them has a large crooked horn deflected towards the earth. After theſe appears a figure armed with a buckler, and another, leading a horſe by the bridle, followed by a third with two hoops. The other three are habited like the preceding figures, and they march before a led ox, that is followed by a man armed with a lance and ſhield; behind whom appears two other figures, each of which has three lances, and their ſleeves are longer than their veſts. The laſt figures that follow, have very ſhort veſts, with drawers that are long and ſtrait, and which fall down to their feet. They are likewiſe armed with long bucklers hanging at the girdles of their waiſts. Two of them have hoops in their hands, and another a fork; and they are followed by a horſe led by the bridle. Theſe figures are repreſented in two diviſions which follow the letter A.

The eaſtern range contains the firſt twenty eight figures, including the ſtair-caſe, each of which graſps a lance with both hands. Their veſts are long and wide, and they are repreſented with hair and beards, and ſeem to be bare-headed, unleſs we may rather ſuppoſe them to wear a plaited bandage, or a kind of diadem. Theſe are ſucceeded by a ſet of other figures, armed with long bucklers, which are pointed and bent at one end; together with a ſhort and broad dagger, hung at the girdle of their waiſts; and their veſts have an inequality in their length. They reſemble the laſt figures in the attire of their heads; they have likewiſe ſome ornament in one hand, and the other is placed upon their beard. This range conſiſts of ſixty figures, the laſt of which are entirely defaced. Theſe three diviſions follow the letters A. and B.

All theſe figures, ranged in the diſpoſition we have deſcribed, ſeem to repreſent ſome triumph, or a proceſſion of people bearing preſents to the king, which was very cuſtomary under the antient Monarchs of *Perſia*, and is practiſed to this day. Preſents of this nature are offered to the king on the twentieth of *March*, which is the feſtival of the new ſolar year; and I have been a ſpectator of this ſolemnity, as has been formerly intimated.

When we left theſe columns, we proceeded to the firſt portal, which ſtands to the ſouth, the inward proſpect of which I drew on a ſpot of ground to the eaſt. The laſt window on the right, is in the weſtern part of this pile, as may be ſeen in plate 128. with the portals lateral to each other; the back view of which is here repreſented, together with the ruined ſtair-caſe already mentioned, and which is diſpoſed between this, and the higheſt edifice.

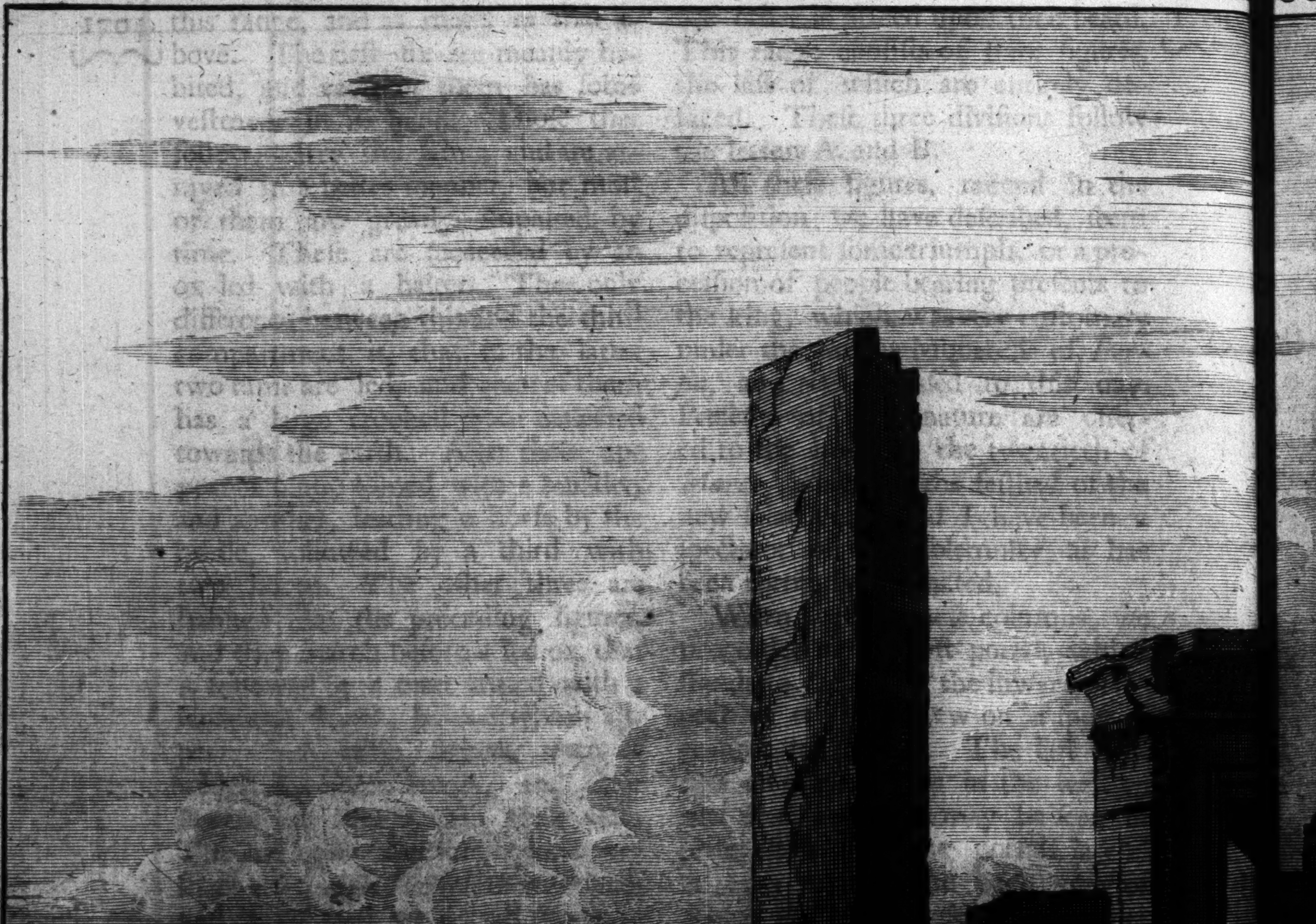
The inward proſpect of the northern portal is exhibited in plate 129. and that of the weſtern, in plate 130. The three compartments of characters, which appear on the lofty pilaſter to the ſouth, are delineated in plate 131. and the three compartments of characters on the portal itſelf, in plate 132.

The ſeven diviſions of characters, which once appeared on the folds of the large outward robe of the principal figure, have been broken off in part; but I have replaced them in the beſt manner I was able, and they are repreſented in plate 133.

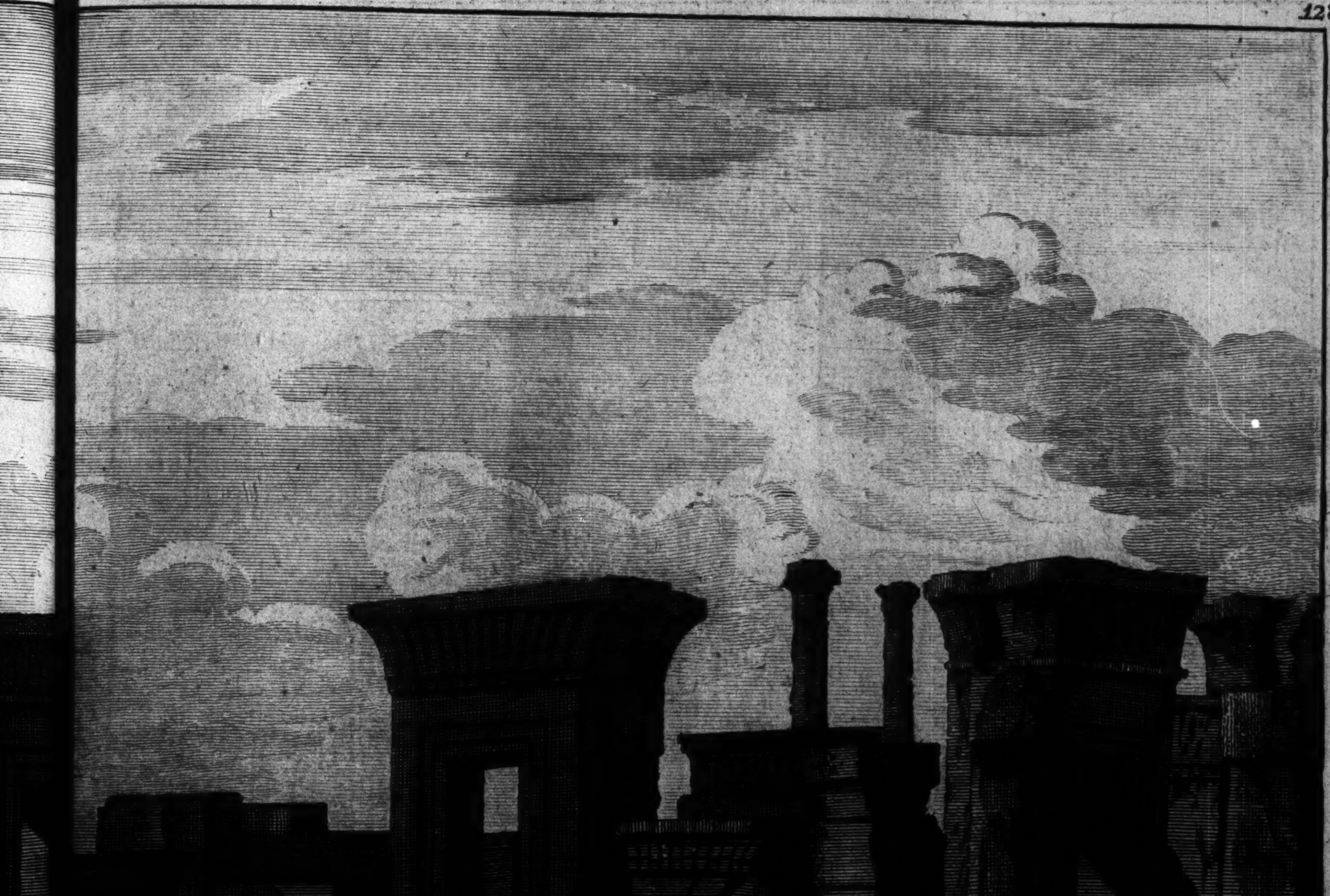
Thoſe that were diſpoſed round the windows, are exhibited in plate 134. The firſt is the upper range; the ſecond filled the right ſide of the window; and the third, that of the left, in the manner they are carved in

7 AP 53

PORT OU



ORT OUEST.

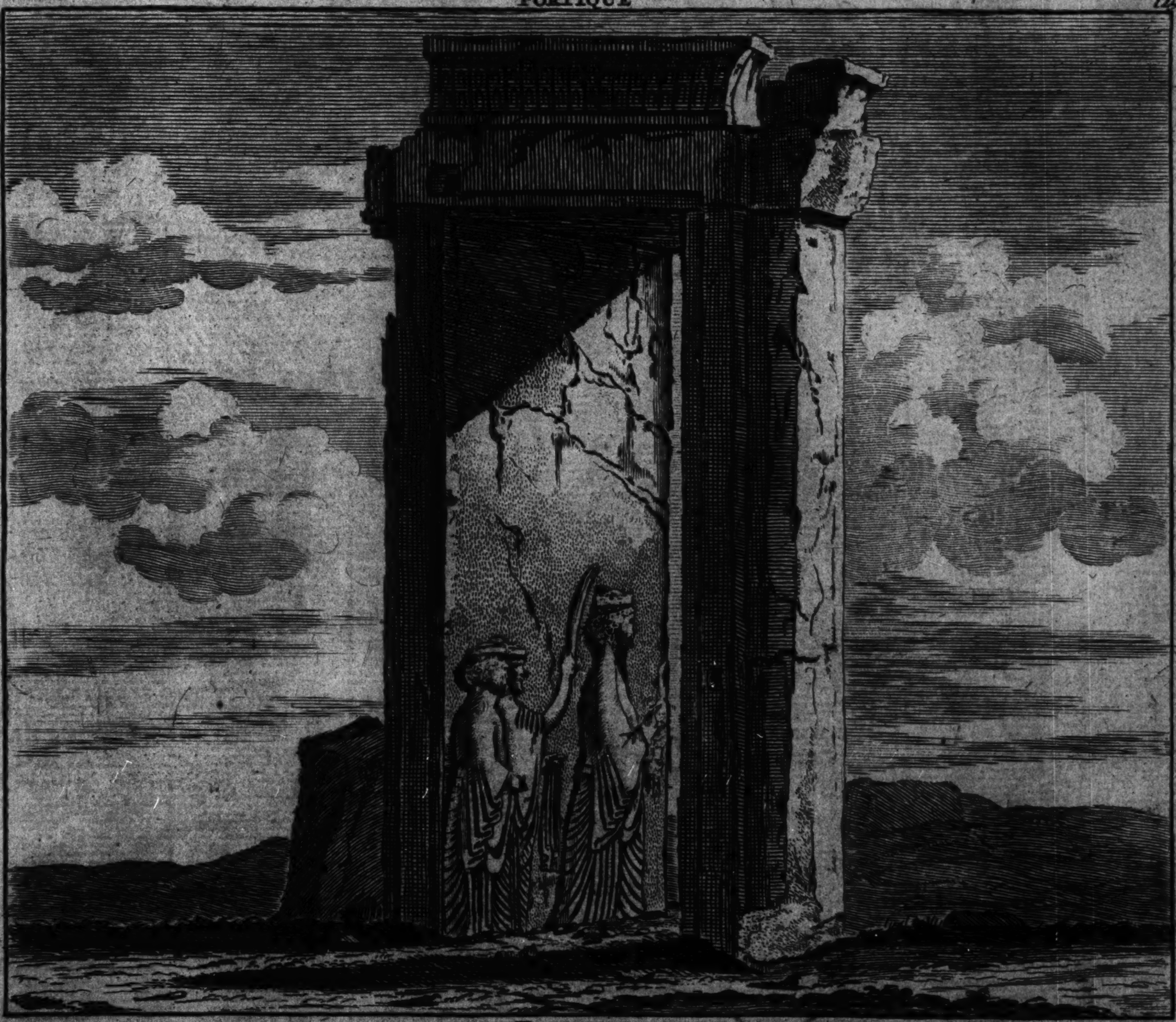


resemble the [illegible] figure in the same of their heads; they have likewise some ornament in one hand, and

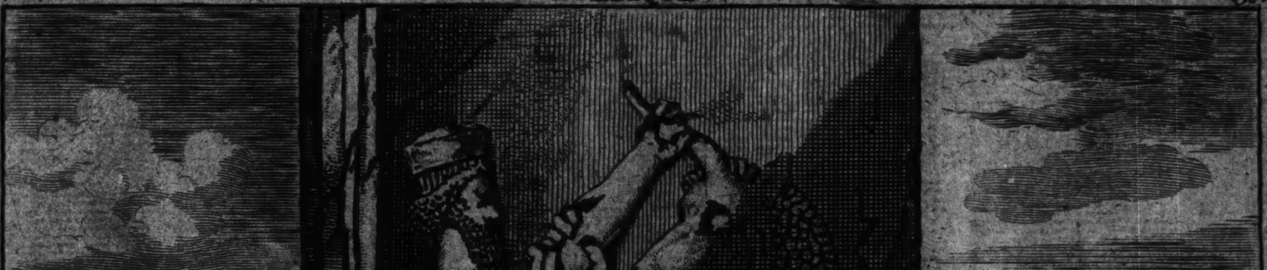
the second shews the right [illegible] of the window; and the third, that of the left, in the manner they are carved in

7 AP 53

PORTIQUE 129.



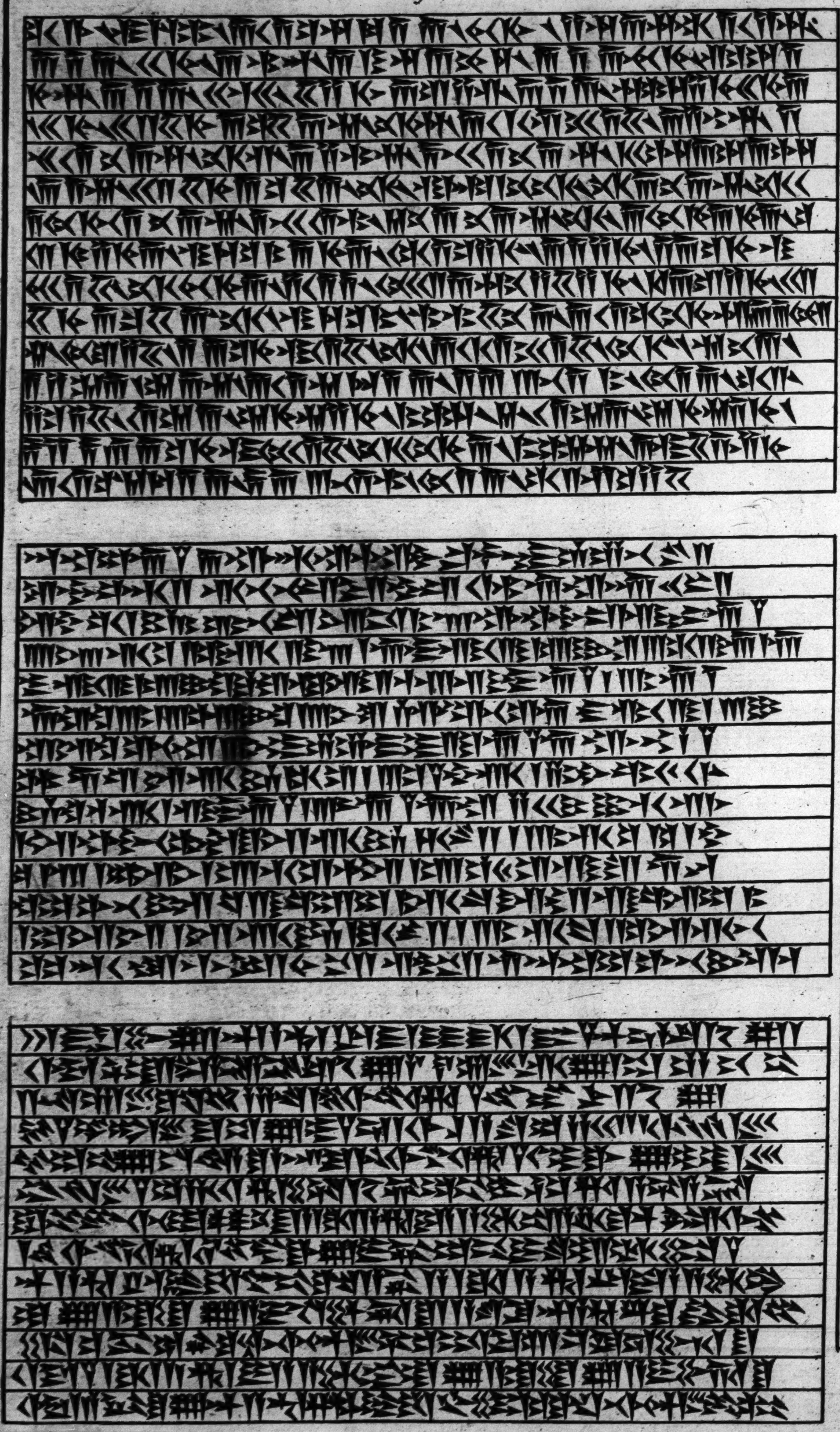
PORTIQUE. 130.



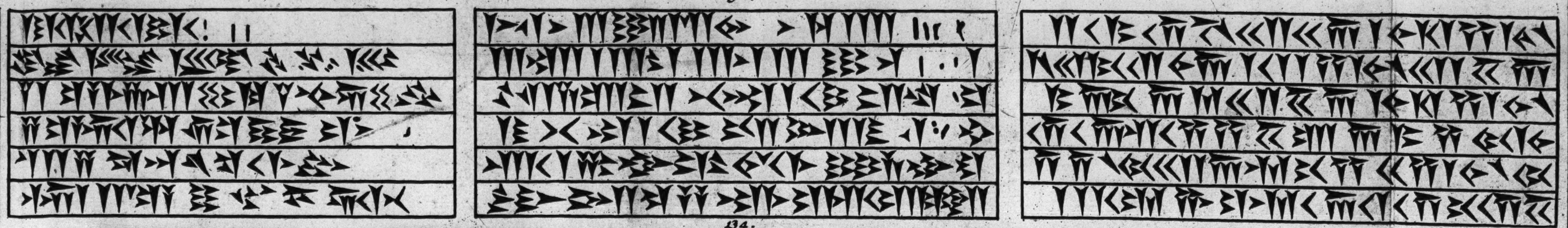
7 AP 53

REPRESENTATION DES ANCIENNES CARACTERES PERSIENNES.

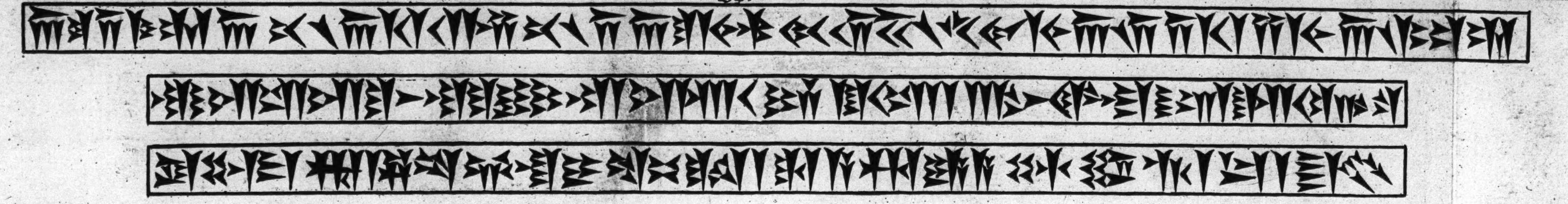
131.



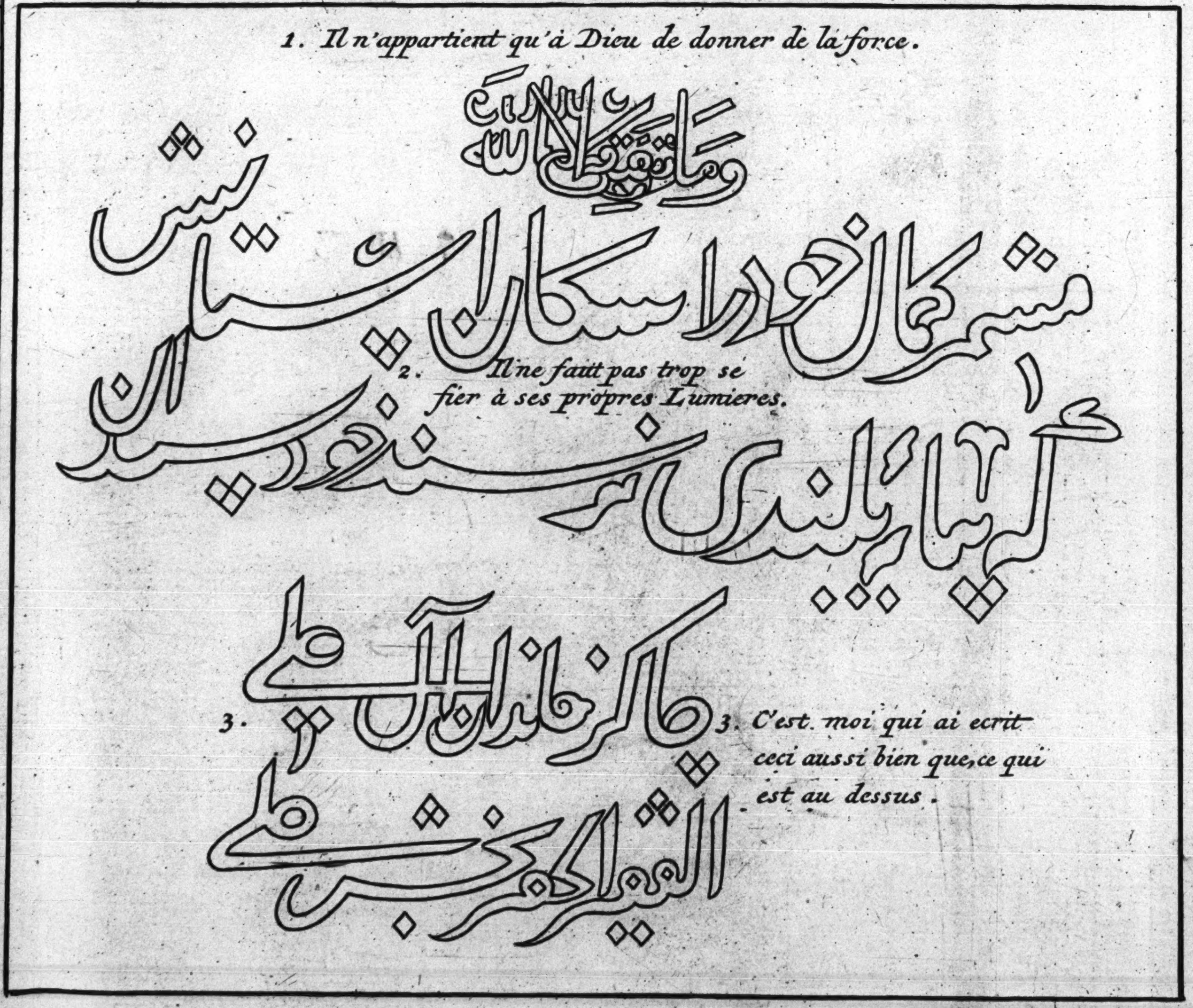
132.



134.



135.

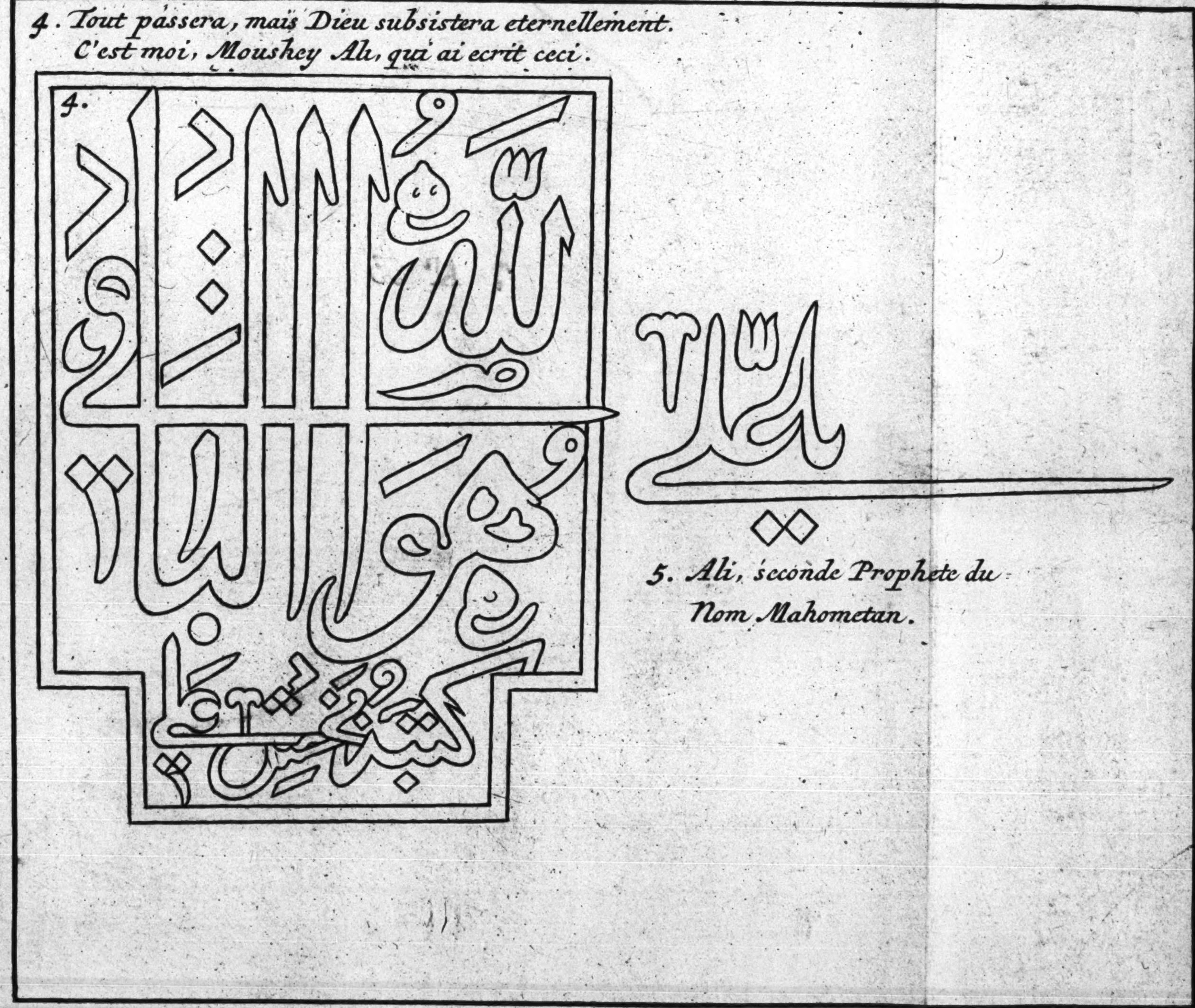


1. *Il n'appartient qu'à Dieu de donner de la force.*

2. *Il ne faut pas trop se fier à ses propres Lumieres.*

3. *C'est moi qui ai ecrit ceci aussi bien que, ce qui est au dessus.*

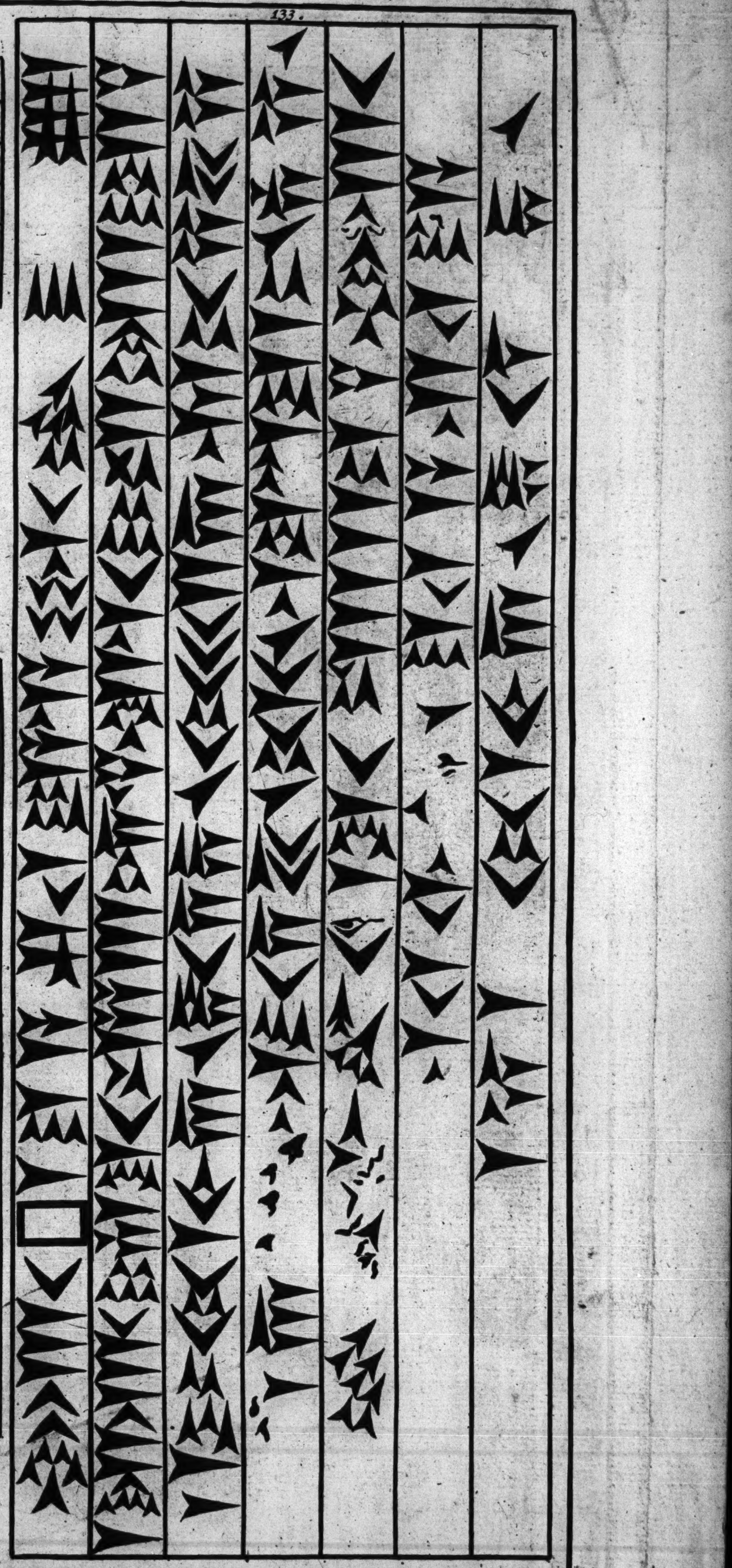
136.

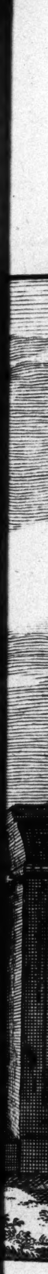


4. *Tout passera, mais Dieu subsistera eternellement. C'est moi, Moushey Ali, qui ai ecrit ceci.*

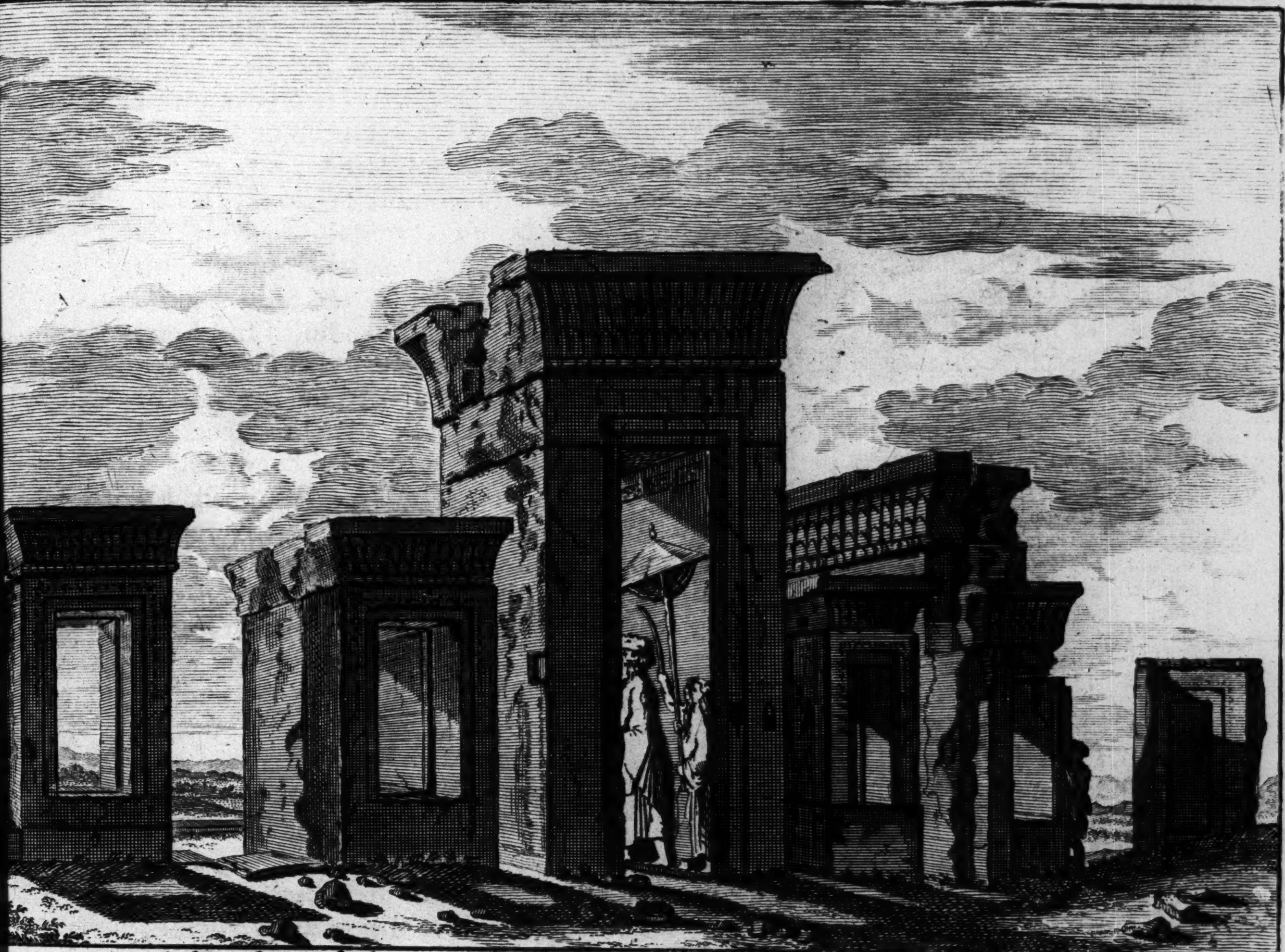
5. *Ali, seconde Prophete du Nom Mahometan.*

133.





T
vi
a
cl



PORTIQUES AU DEDANS.

all the other windows. The ſculpture of them appears as perfect, as if they were but newly carved, as is evinced by thoſe fragments of them, which I brought away with me; and this circumſtance may be aſcribed to the hardneſs of the ſtone on which they were impreſſed.

I found, within the opening of one of theſe windows, ſeveral other characters leſs antient than the others, and which have been carved ſince them. They are *Arabic* letters, and are exhibited on the left ſide of plate 135, and on the right of plate 136, together with their explication.

The obſcurity of the antient characters.

As to the other characters of great antiquity, they are no longer known, and I made ſeveral ineffectual attempts to obtain a diſcovery of their meaning, without being able to find any perſon, who could decypher a ſingle letter. This diſappointment, however, did not prevent me from being at the pains to copy them exactly, in hopes of meeting with ſome prieſt among the *Guebres,* who could afford me ſome light with relation to them, and the event ſhall be related at large in the ſequel of this work.

My ardent deſire to examine theſe ſuperb ruins with the greateſt care, and to render them more known to the curious than they had been till then, cauſed me to ſend for a ſtone-cutter of *Zie-raes,* or *Chiras,* whoſe aſſiſtance I had occaſion for in the execution of my deſign; the hardneſs of the rocks having blunted all the chiſels I had brought from *Iſpahan,* ſo that they were no longer uſeful to me. This perſon however ſucceeded no better than my ſelf, and all his inſtruments were ſoon reduced to the ſame condition as mine, though they were much larger and ſtronger. Notwithſtanding which, my earneſt deſire to convey ſome of theſe precious antiquities into my native country, would not permit me to reſt till I had cut off a fragment of a window, that was filled with characters, the repreſentation of which will be found in plate 137. I likewiſe brought away a little broken figure copied in plate 137. as large as the original; two pieces of hands, in plate 139. part of the body of another ſmall figure, in plate 140. and a little piece of one of one of the ſmalleſt figures in a portal, exhibited in plate 141. I was very deſirous to bring away ſome others, but found it impoſſible, becauſe they flew off in ſhivers with the ſtrokes of our tools.

The principal piece which I endeavoured to procure, was a figure cut on a ſtone detached from the rock that formed the grand ſtair-caſe. As this ſtone was thick, I flattered myſelf that I ſhould be able to ſeparate the whole figure from it, by dint of time and patience; but it ſhivered into three pieces, in ſpite of all my precautions. I, however, rejoined them in the beſt manner I was able, and Monſieur *Kaſtelein* undertook to deliver it, as he paſſed by *Zie-raes*, into the hands of Monſieur *Hoorn*, governour-general of our *India* company; and that he would requeſt him, at the ſame time, to tranſmit it to *Holland*, the firſt opportunity, to Monſieur *Wiſten*, burgo-maſter of *Amſterdam*, to whom I intended to preſent it, as ſome acknowledgment of the obligations he had conferred upon me. This figure is repreſented in plate 142.

The 143d plate exhibits to view a pilaſter of the lofty edifice to the north, and on which is ſeen the figure of a man of rank, with two women, one of whom holds a paraſol over his head; the other drives away the flies with the tail of a ſea horſe; for I took all thoſe figures for women, which held theſe tails and paraſols that were much uſed in antient times.

On another piece of the high edifice to the weſt, and fronting a kind of window, may be ſeen three figures of men, greatly decayed. The foremoſt has a bonnet, which paſſes under his chin, like thoſe which were worn by the antient Magi, when they celebrated divine ſervice. This fragment of the edifice is repreſented in plate 144.

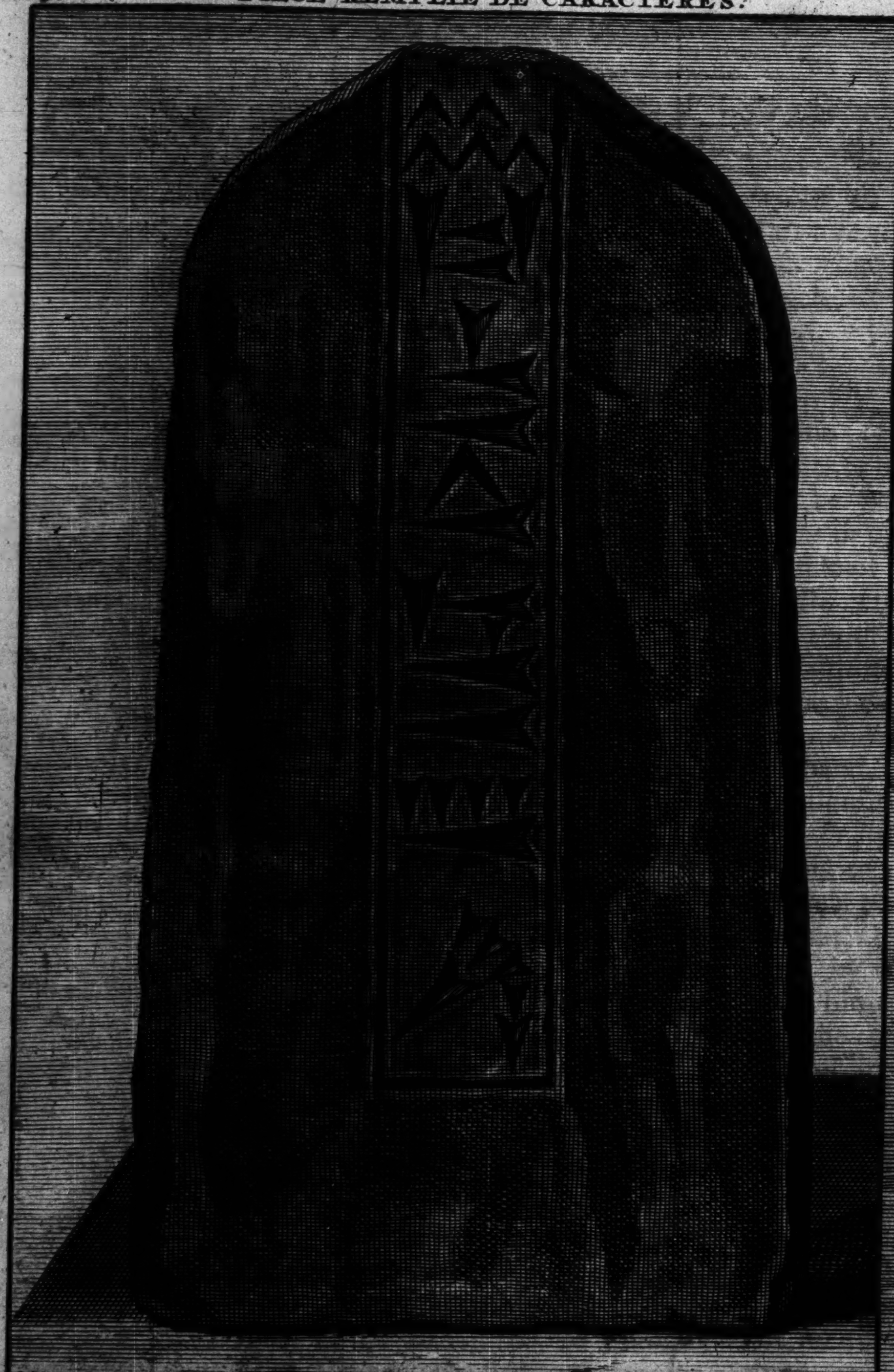
The 145th plate repreſents another pilaſter of the ſame edifice, on which may be ſeen two men armed with lances or pikes, to the eaſt; and on the ſide of them is a fluted machine, which extends to the chin. There was another reverſed on the ſide of the ſame edifice, which preſents the appearance of a man combating a lion, and graſping a ſword in his left hand, agreeably to the repreſentation in plate 146.

In one of the niches, or windows, of this edifice to the ſouth, are to be ſeen two figures of men, with a goat, that has a large bending horn, by which one of the figures holds him with his left hand, and lays the other on his neck. The firſt of theſe figures has likewiſe a bonnet, which is brought under his chin; and in his left hand, he holds ſomething that was perhaps employed in oblations. Theſe figures are exhibited in plate 147; and the 148th plate repreſents the pilaſter of a portal, on one ſide of the edifice laſt mentioned, on which appears three figures half buried; one of which holds the tail of a ſea horſe above the head of a man of diſtinction, whoſe bonnet, hair, and beard, reſemble thoſe that appear on the buſt of *Arſaces*, on medals.

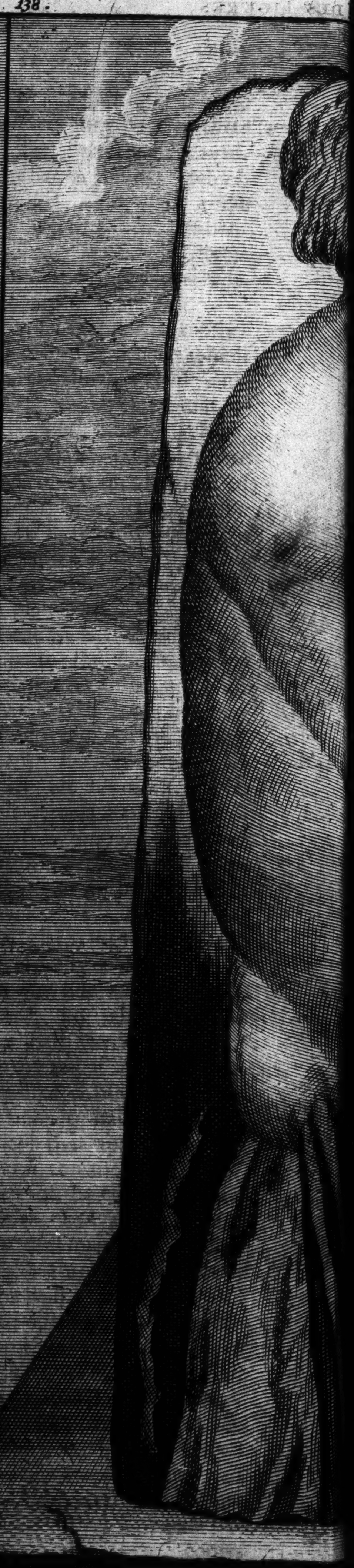
All the reſt of the edifice, which is to the ſouth, had a flat cornice without any ornament, and which was continued through the whole length of the wall. There are ſtill to be ſeen four openings that reſemble windows, and are partly buried in the earth. The whole wall, except the uppermoſt ſtones, is cut out of the natural rock; the ſteps of the ſtair-caſe, which are likewiſe ſhaped out of the rock, are ſeven feet and ſeven inches long, and two inches and a half high. This ſtair-caſe becomes

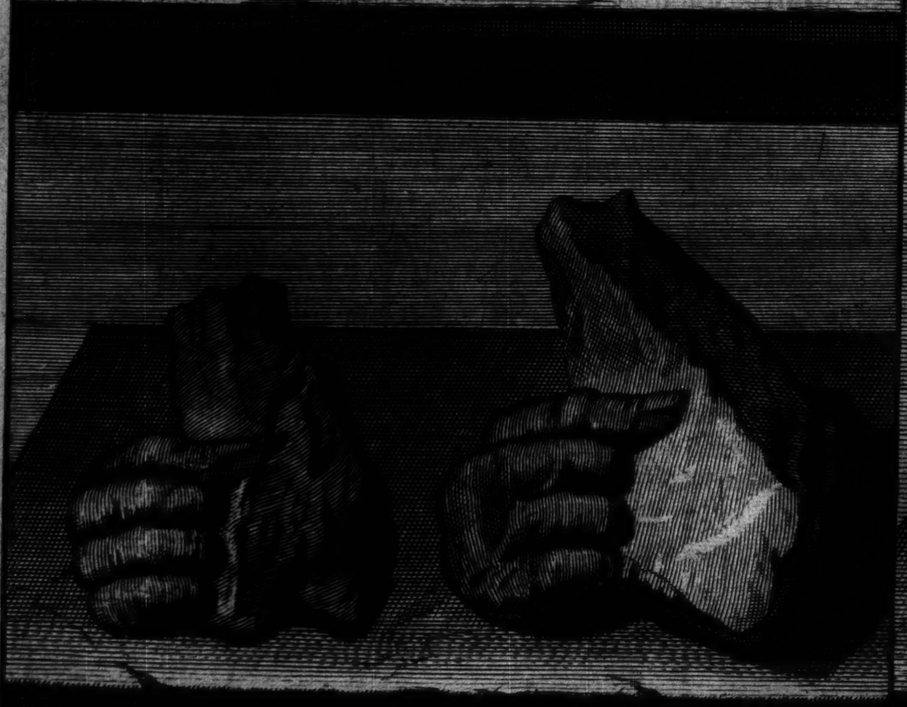
7 AP 53

137. PIECE REMPLIE DE CARACTERES.

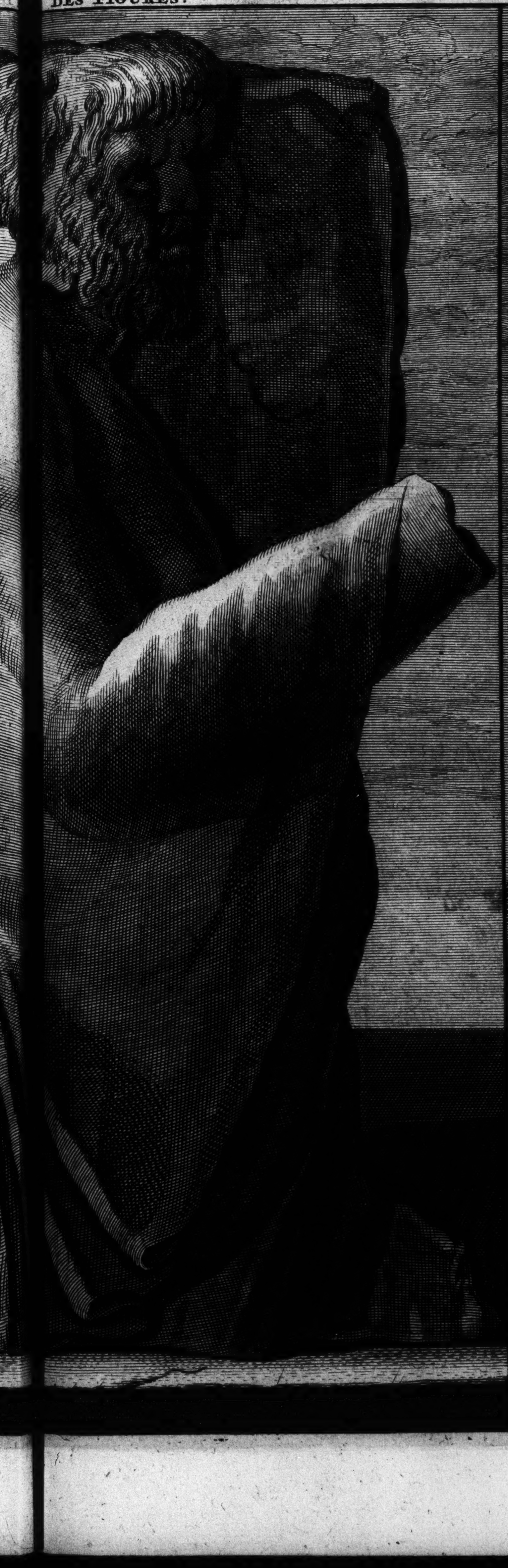


138. DE

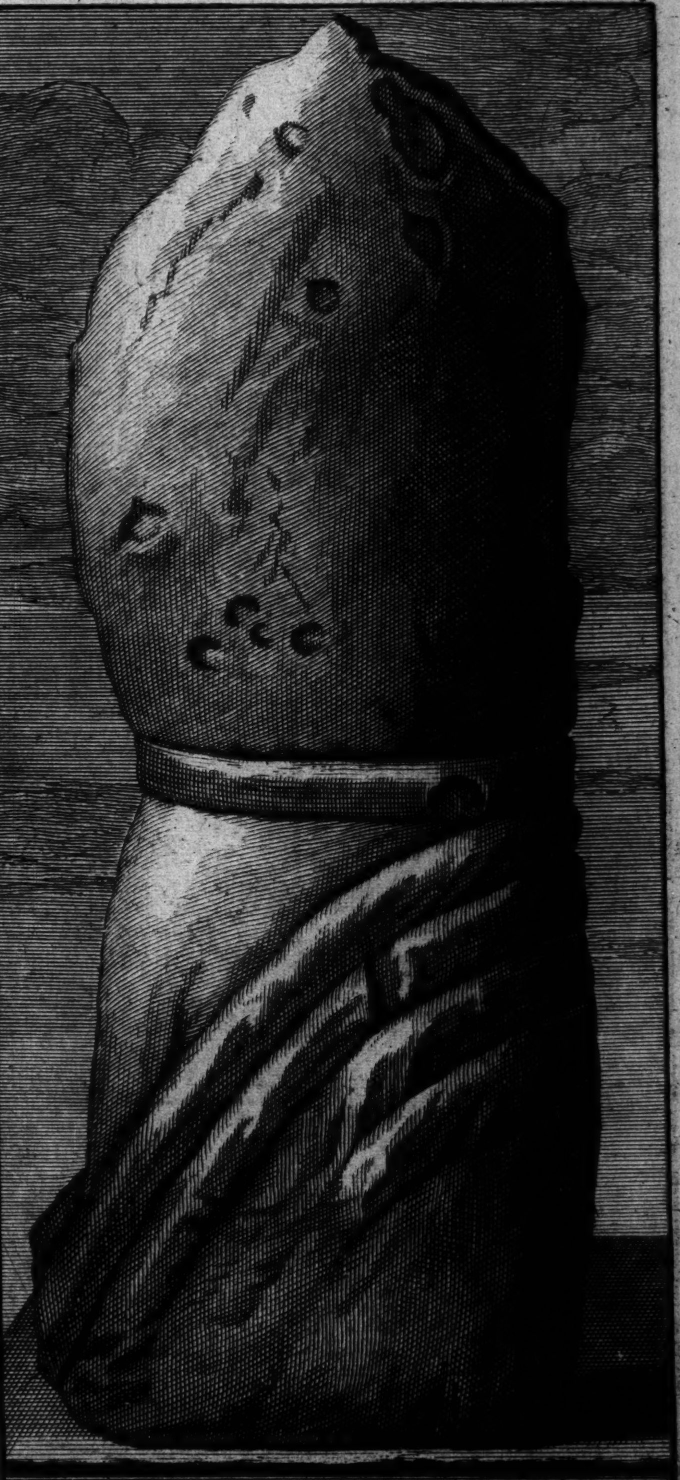


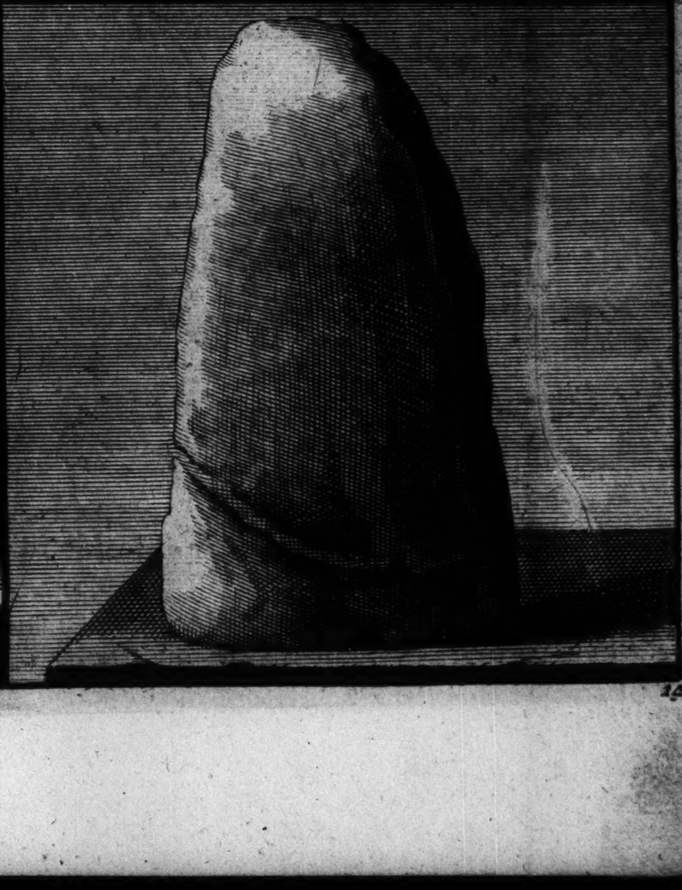


139.



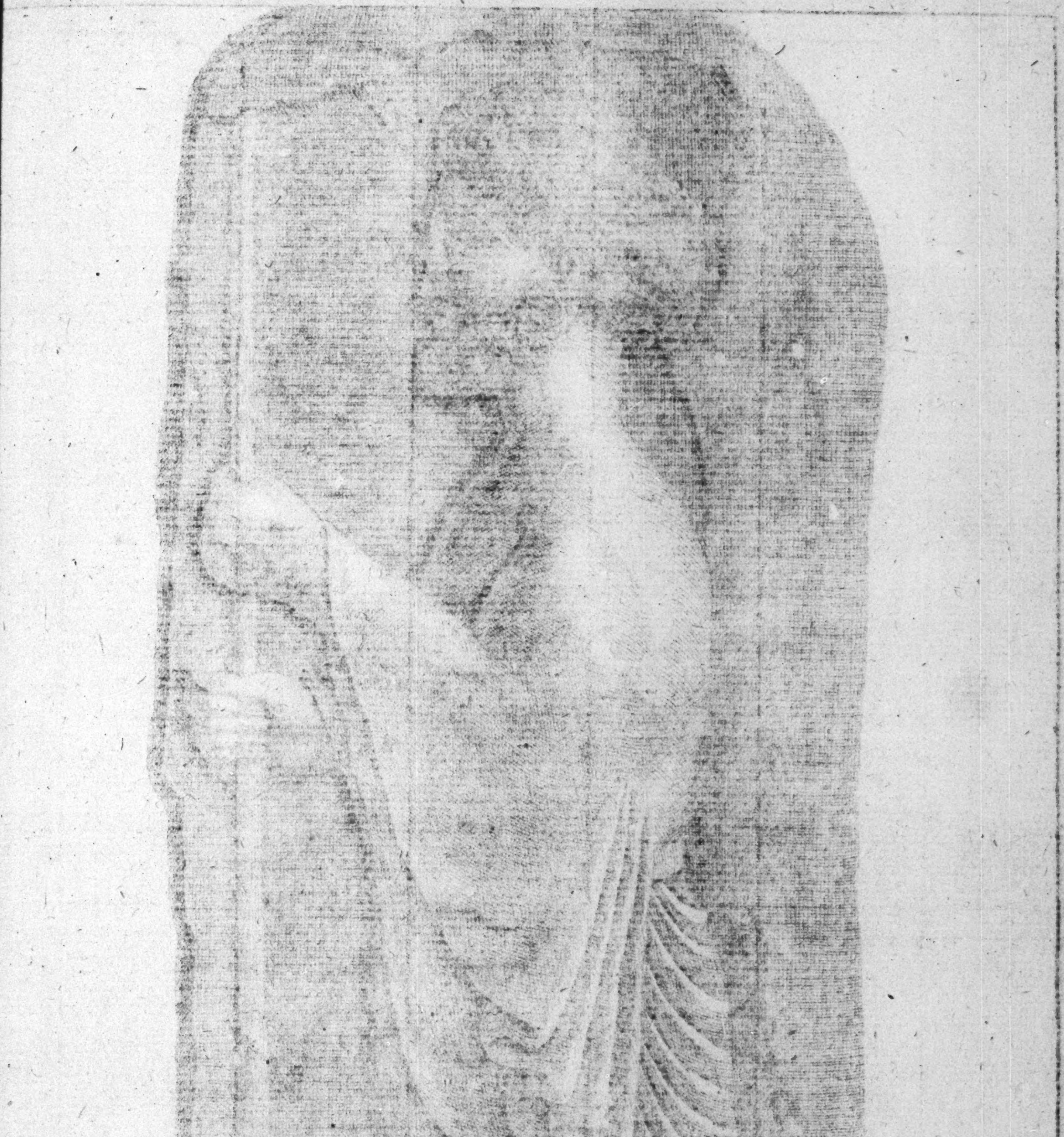
140.





141.

7 AP 53



7 AP 53

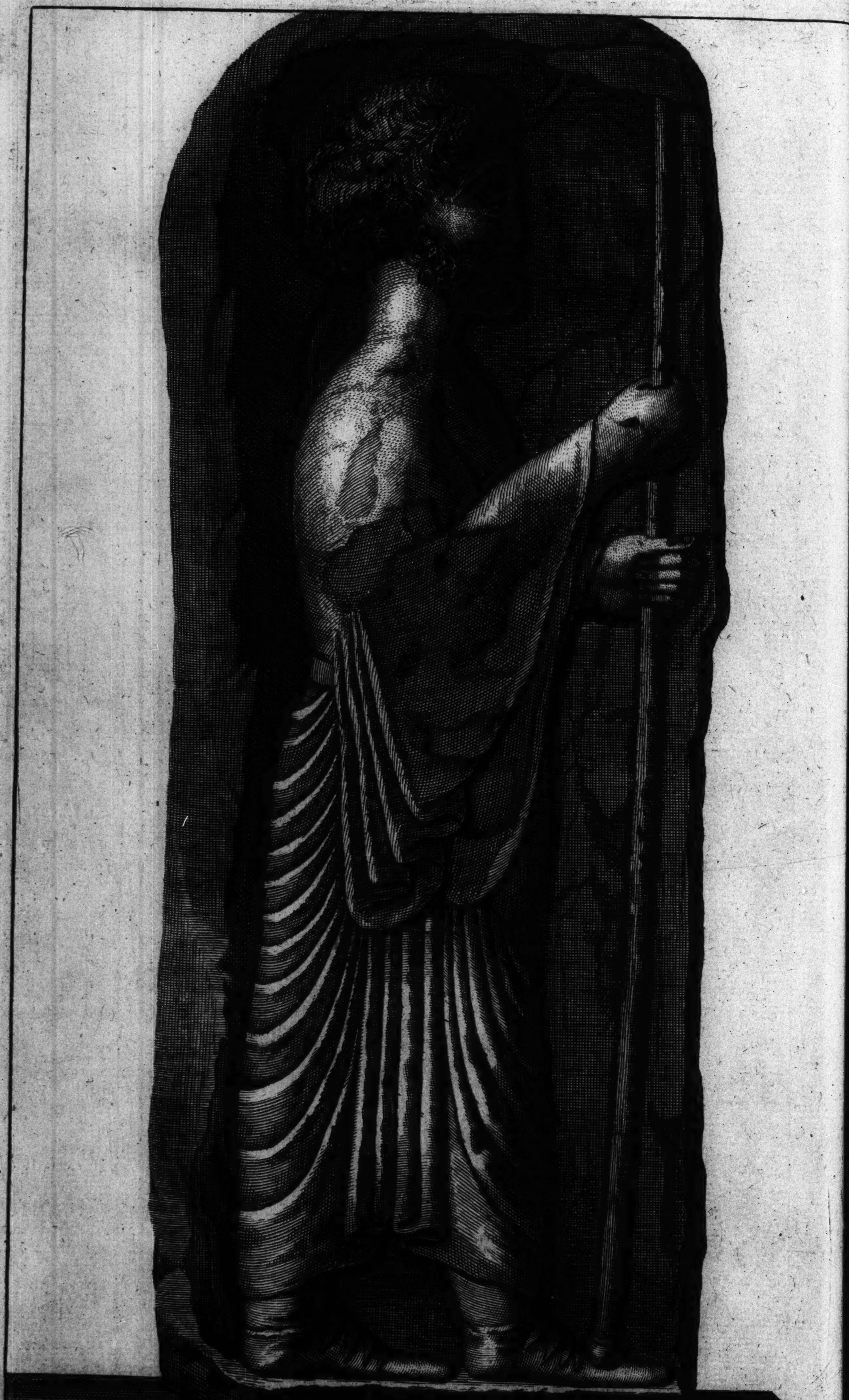
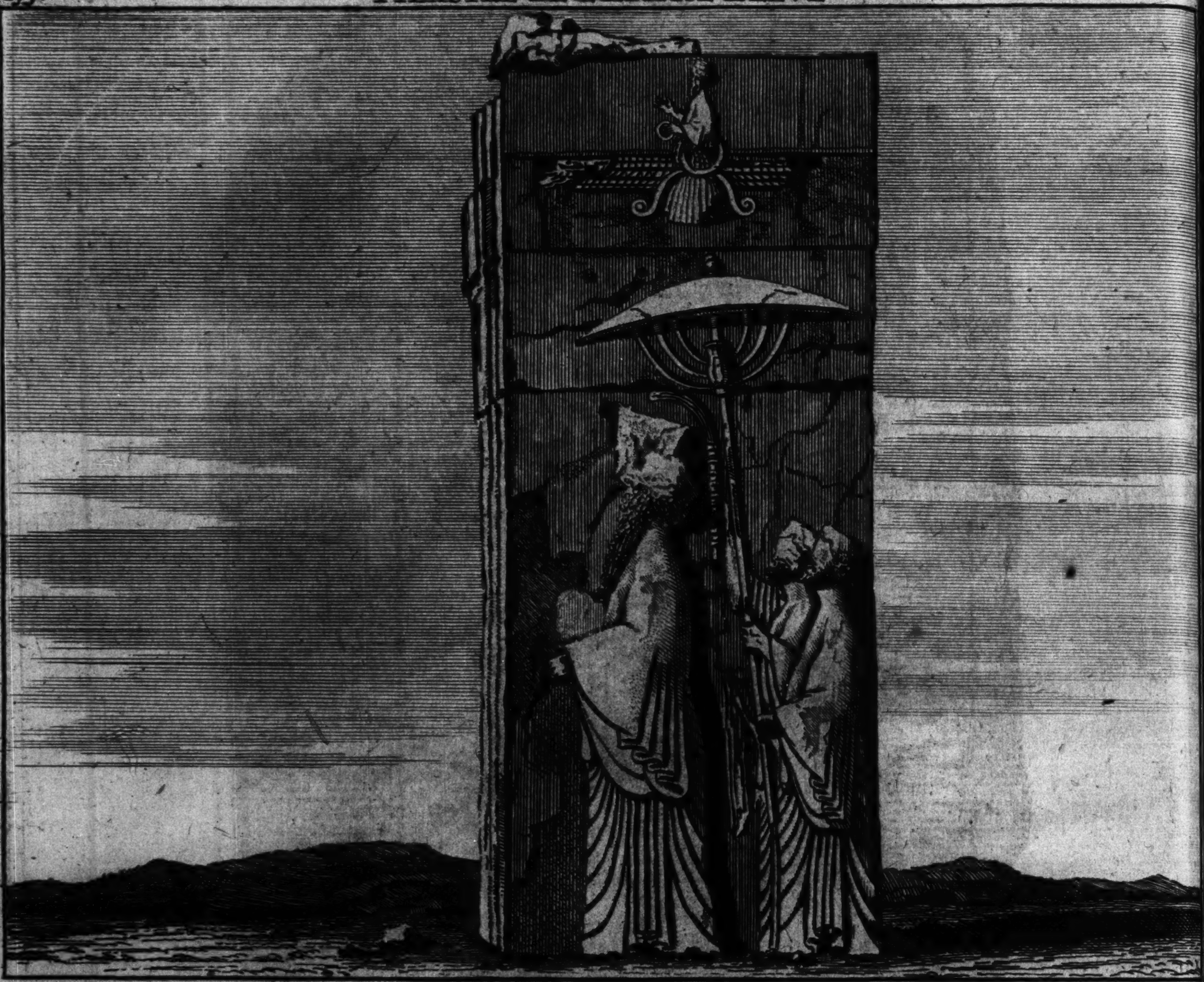


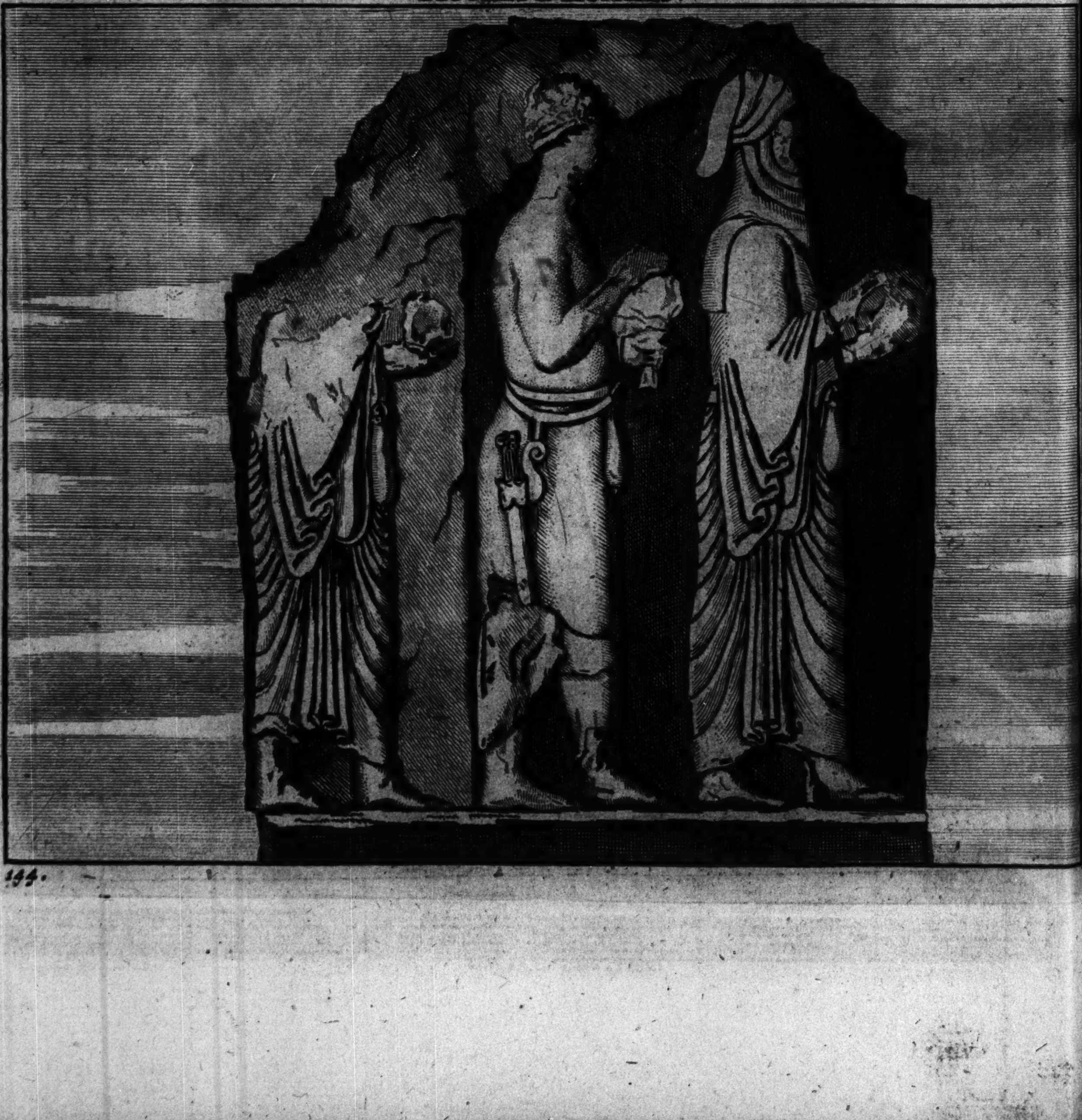
FIGURE DE L'ESCALIER.

7 AP 53

143. PILASTRE DE L'EDIFICE ELEVE



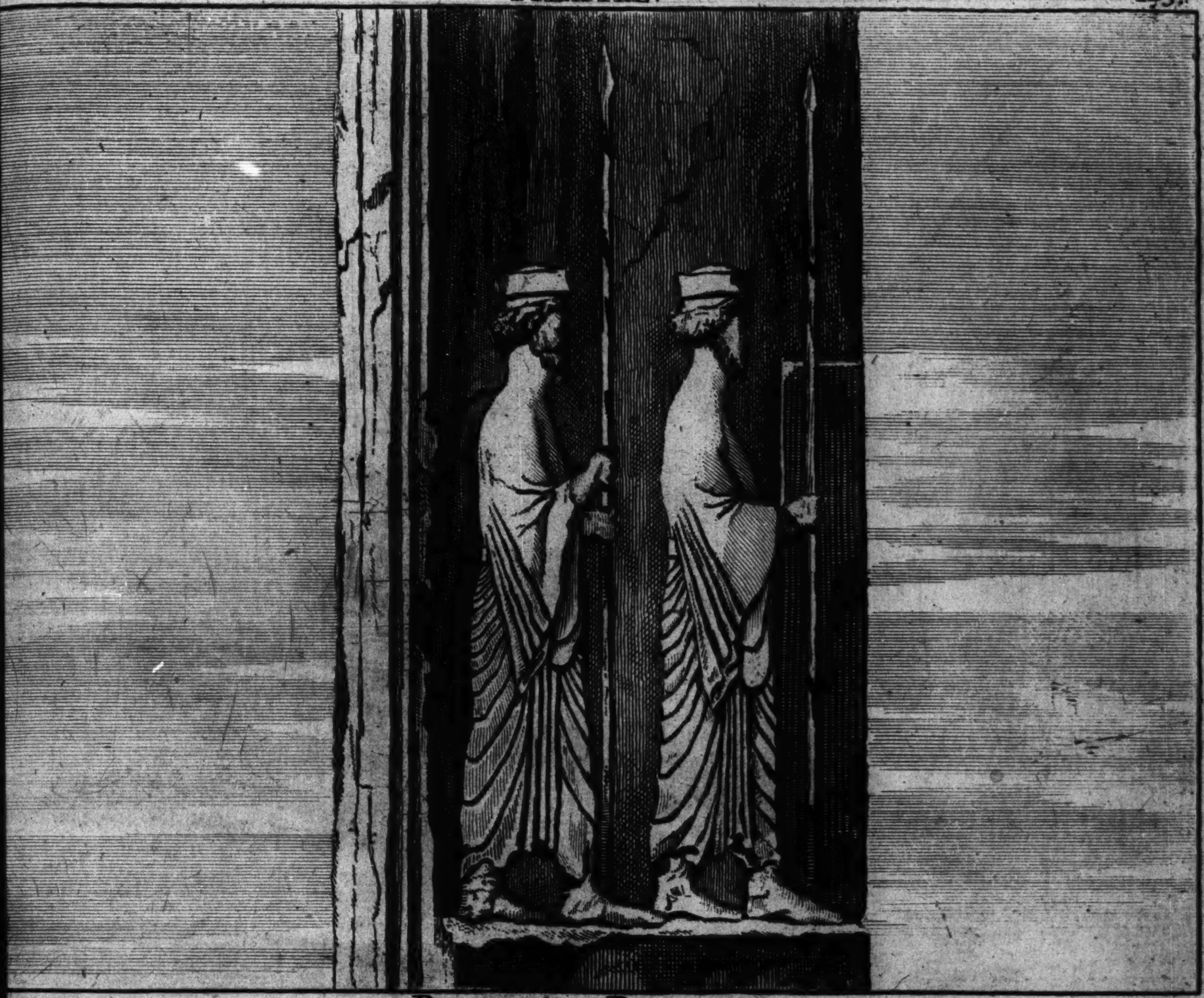
FIGURES D'HOMMES.



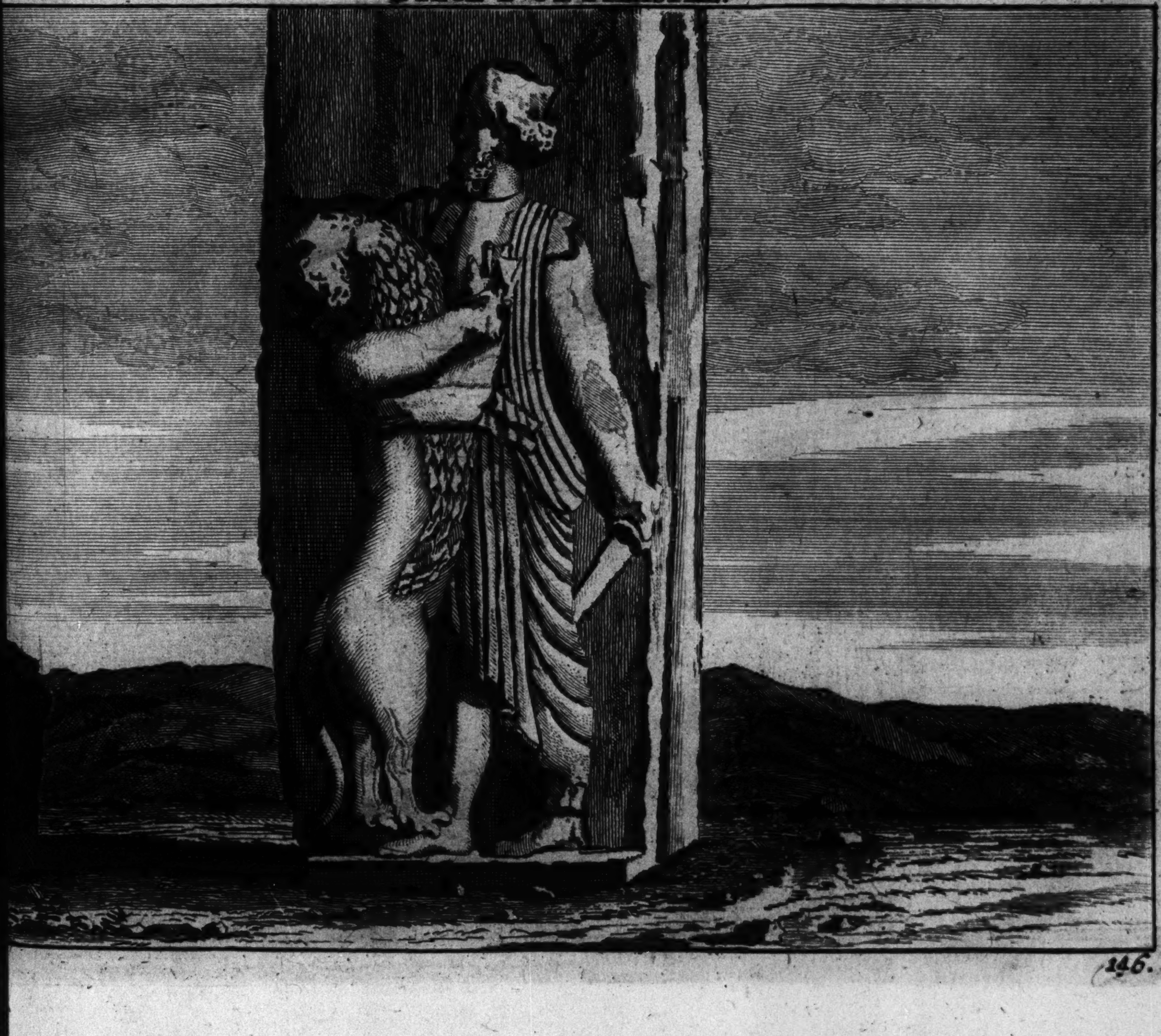
144.

PILASTRE.

145.



PIECE D'UN PILASTRE.



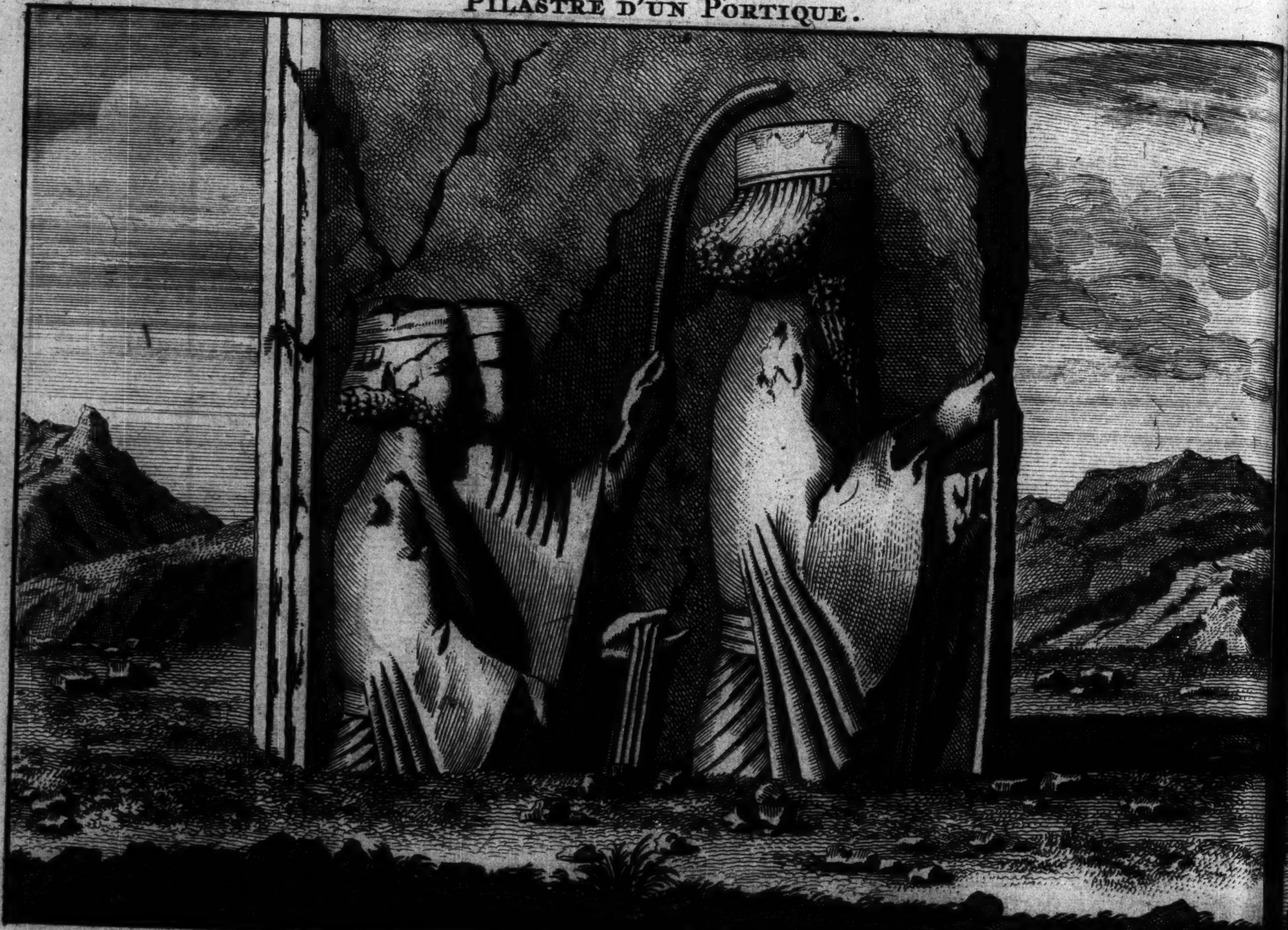
146.

7 AP 55

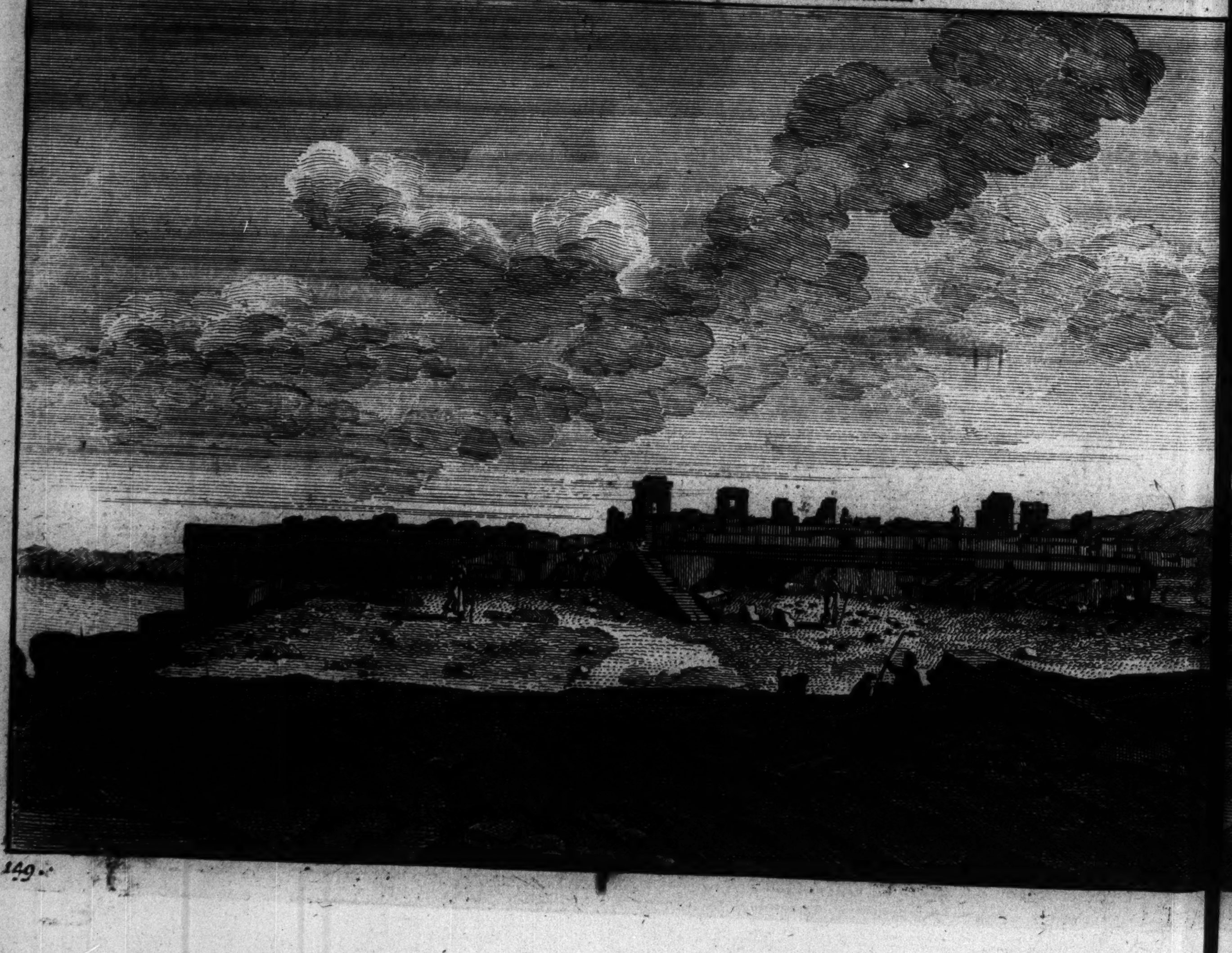
7 A

148.

PILASTRE D'UN PORTIQUE.

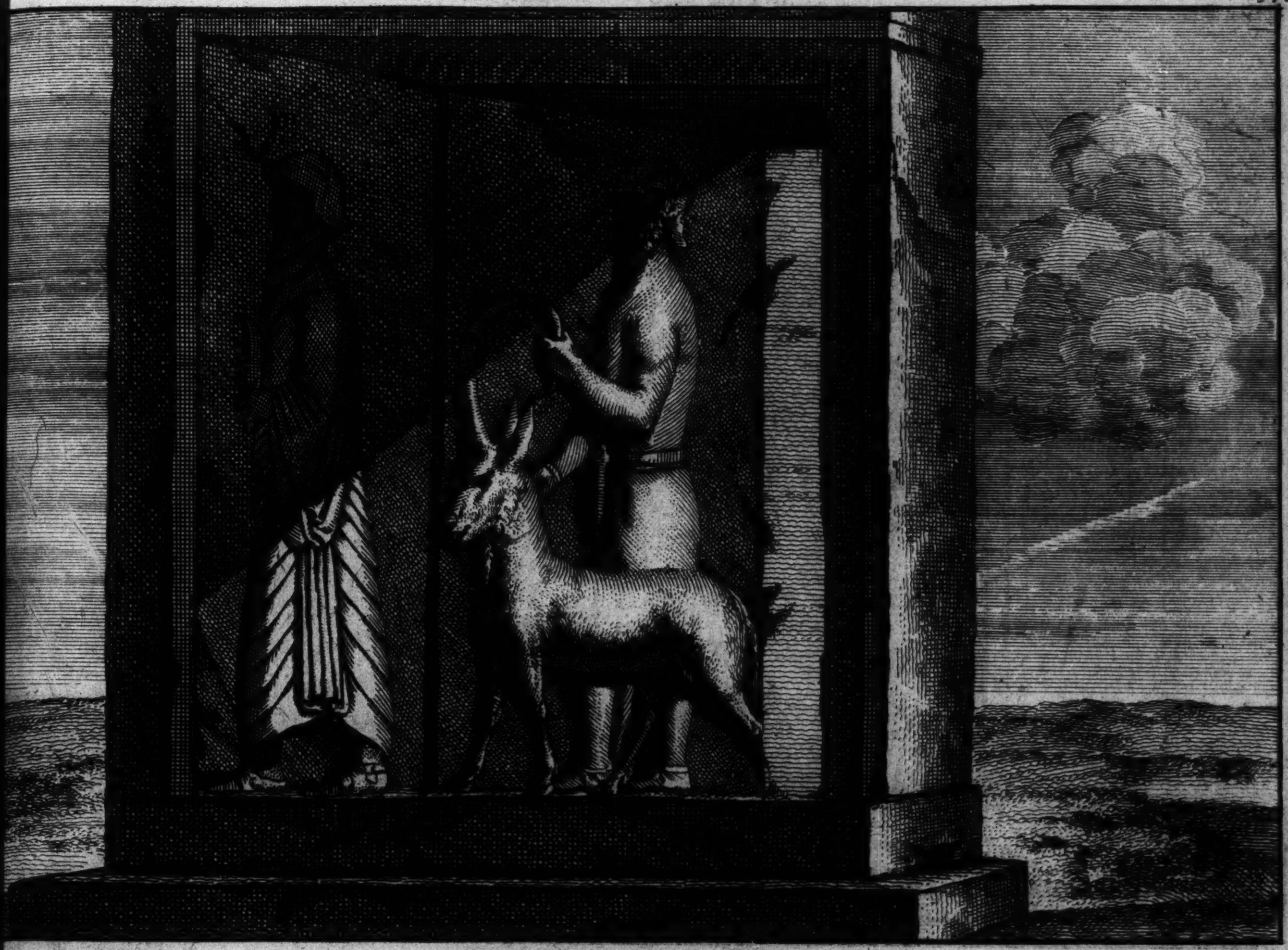


PROSPECT DE L'EDIFICE PAR DERRIERE.

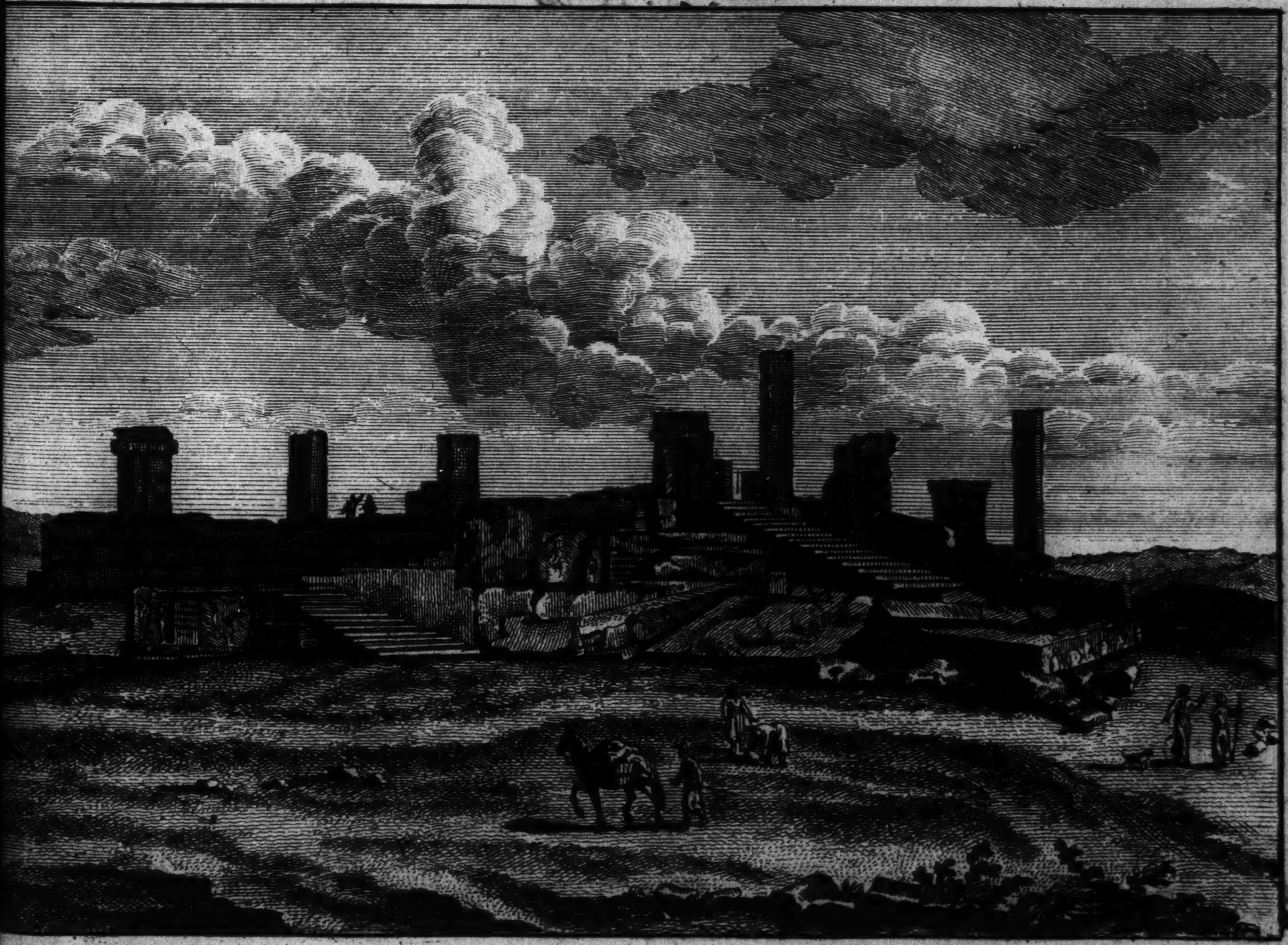


149.

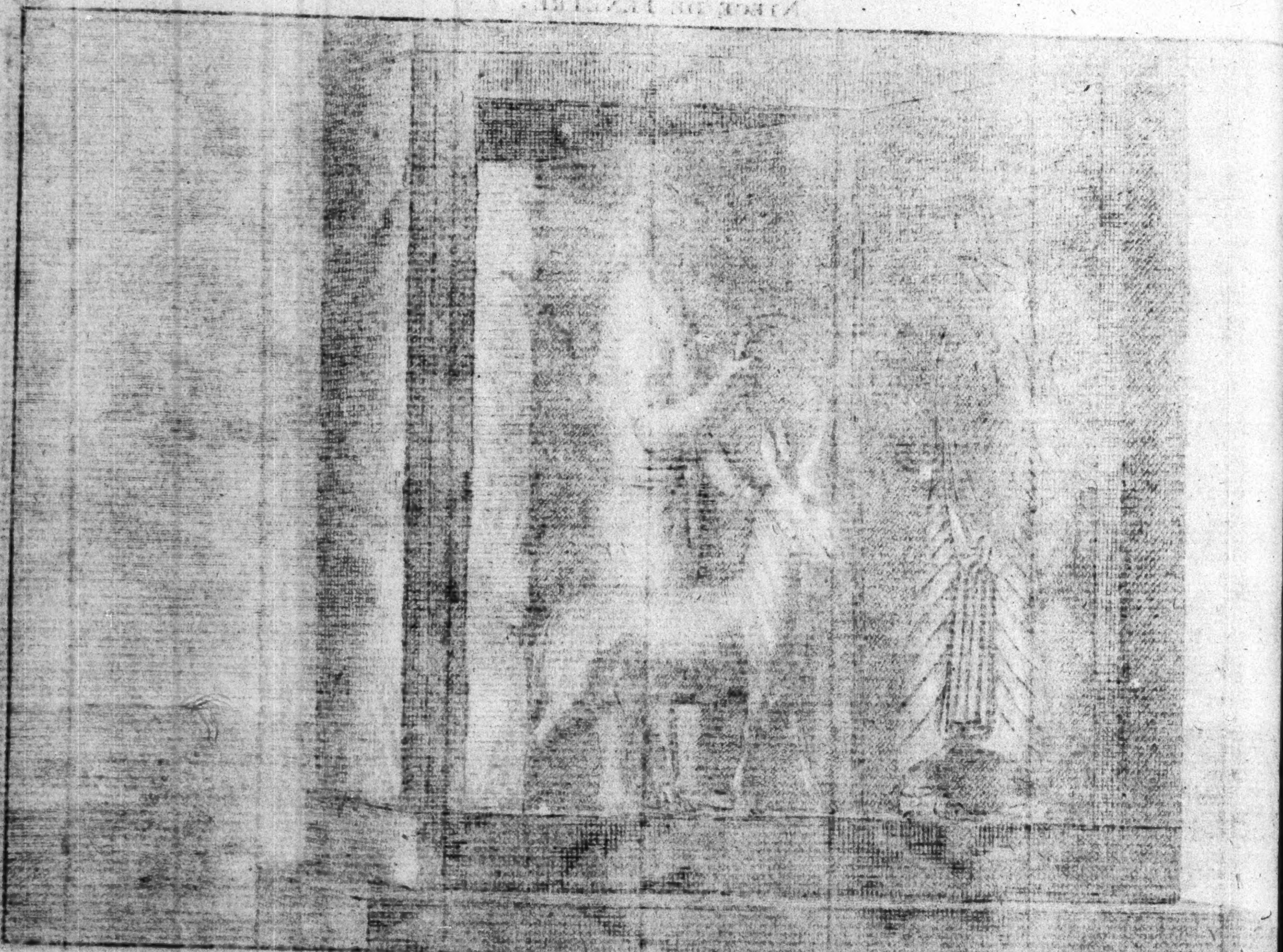
NIECE DE FENETRE. 147.



RESTES DE L'ESCALIER



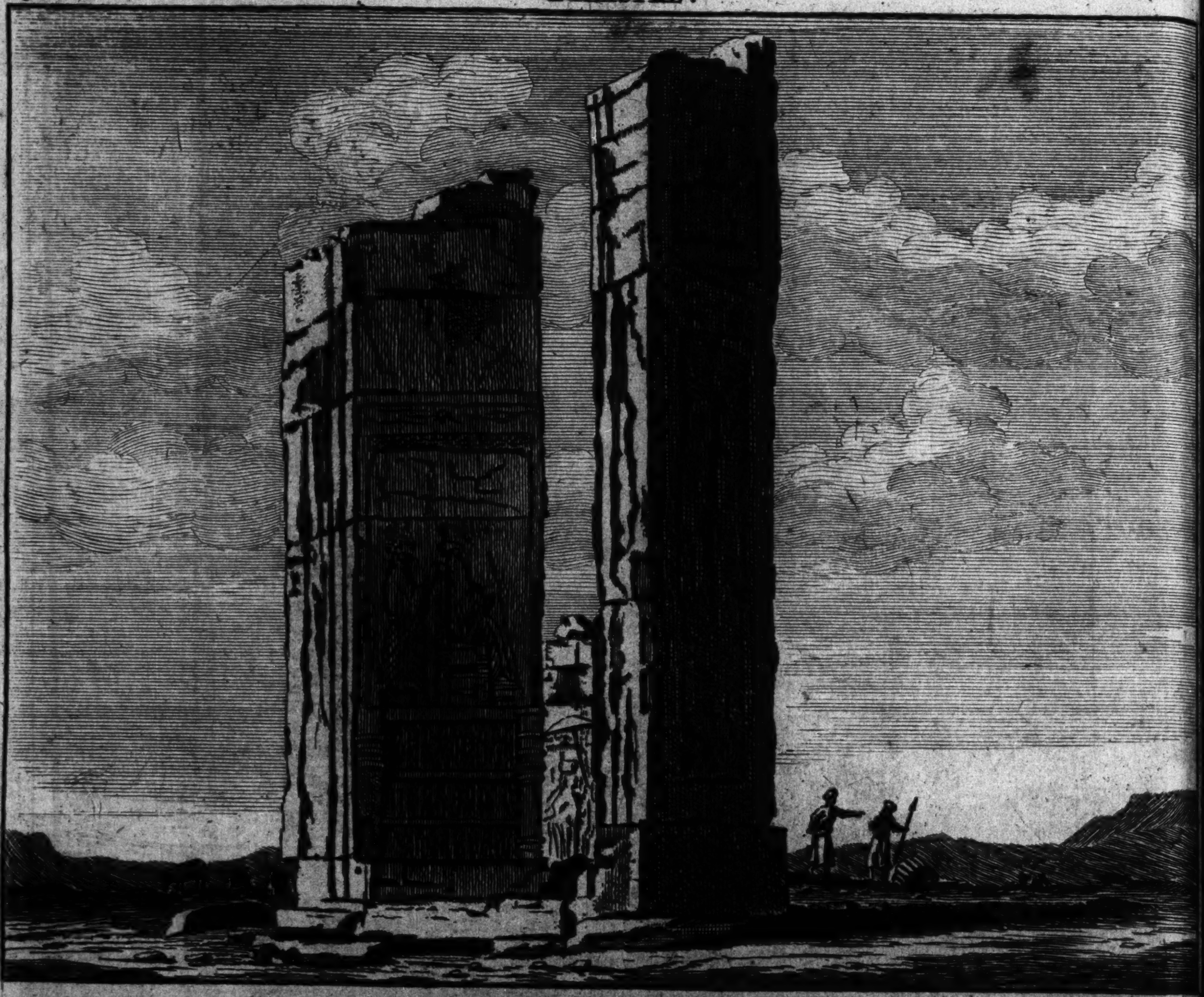
150.

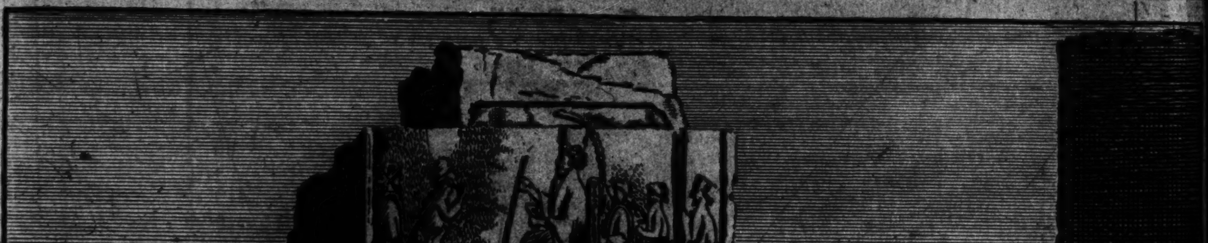


AP 53

7 AP 33

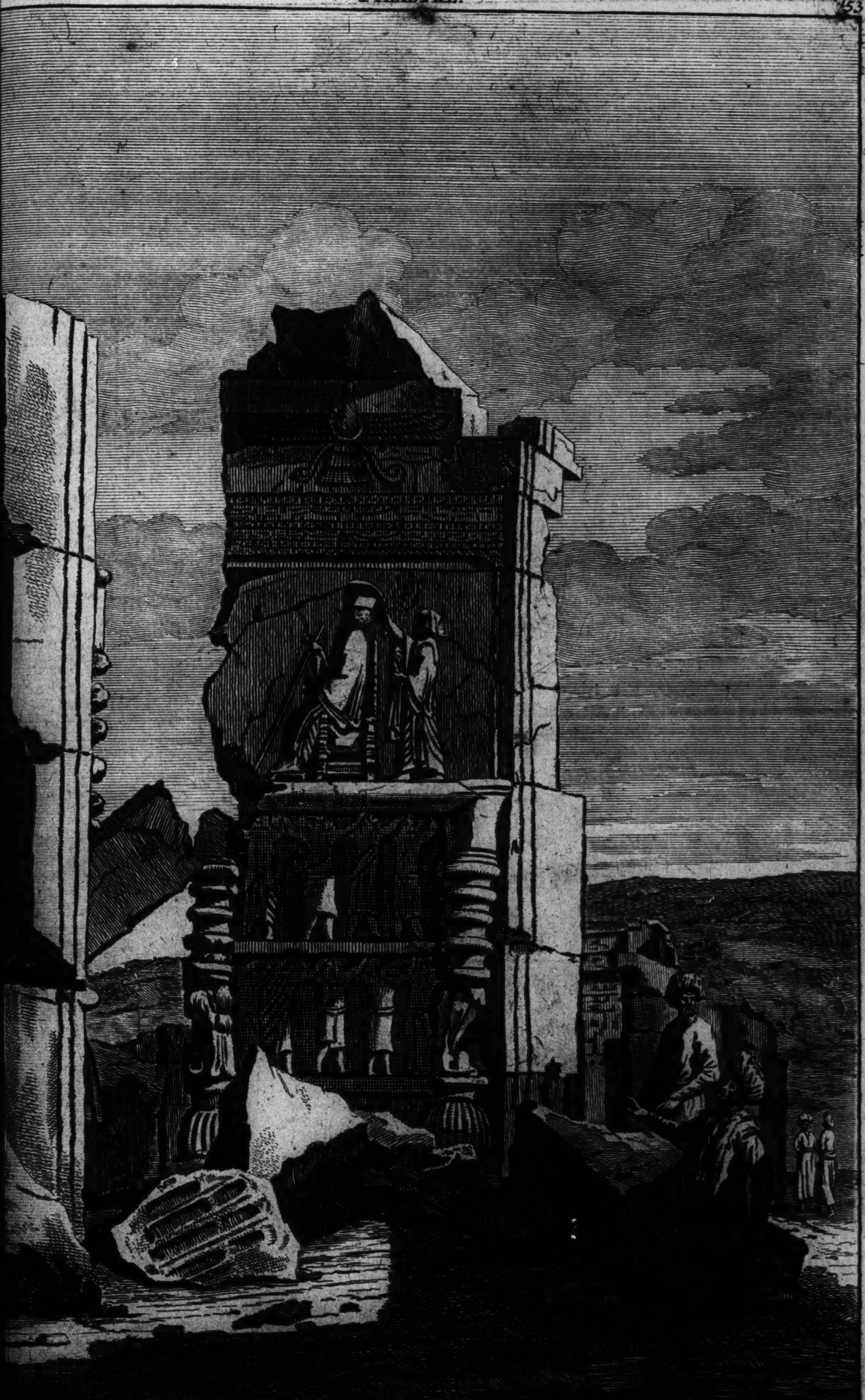
151. PILASTRE.

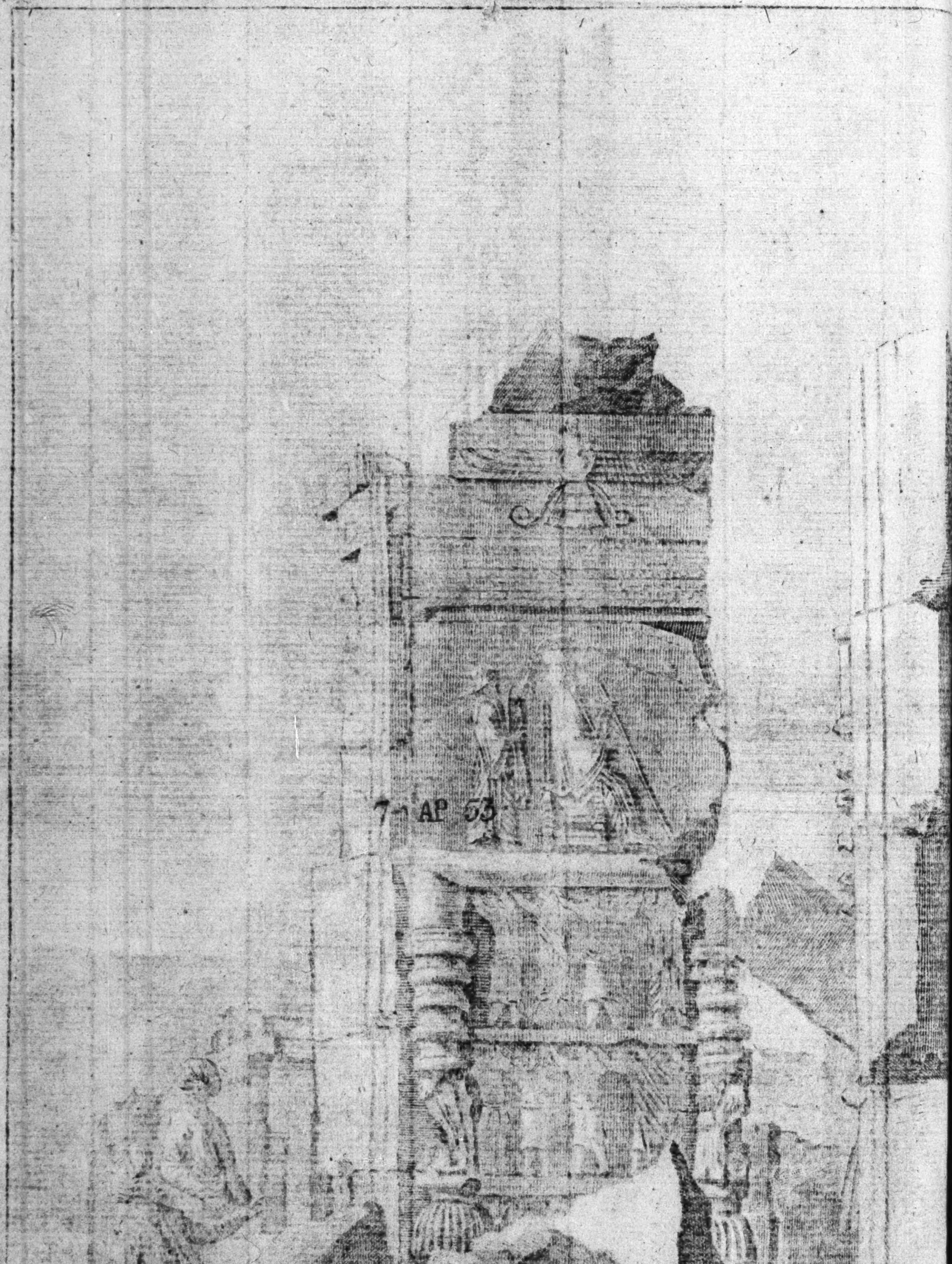




152. PILASTRE D'UN PORTIQUE, AVEC UN GRAND NOMBRE DE FIGURES.

PILASTRE.

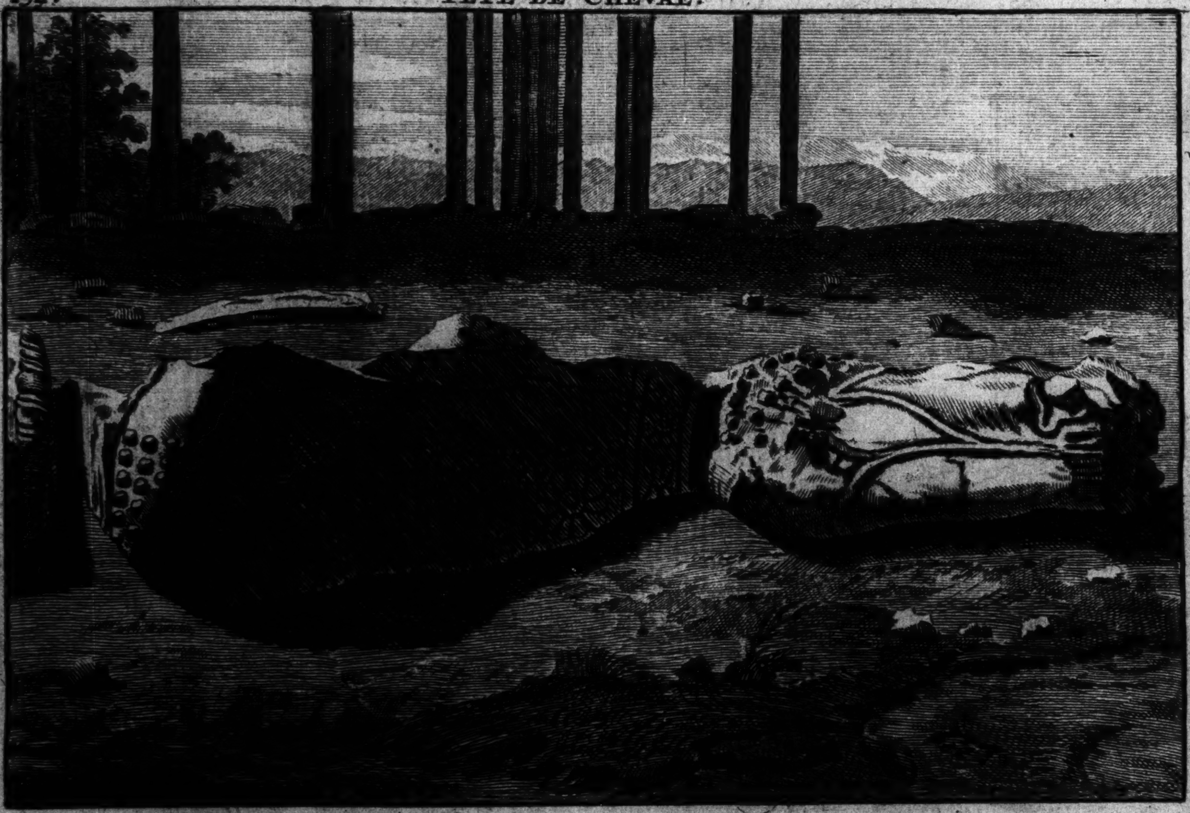




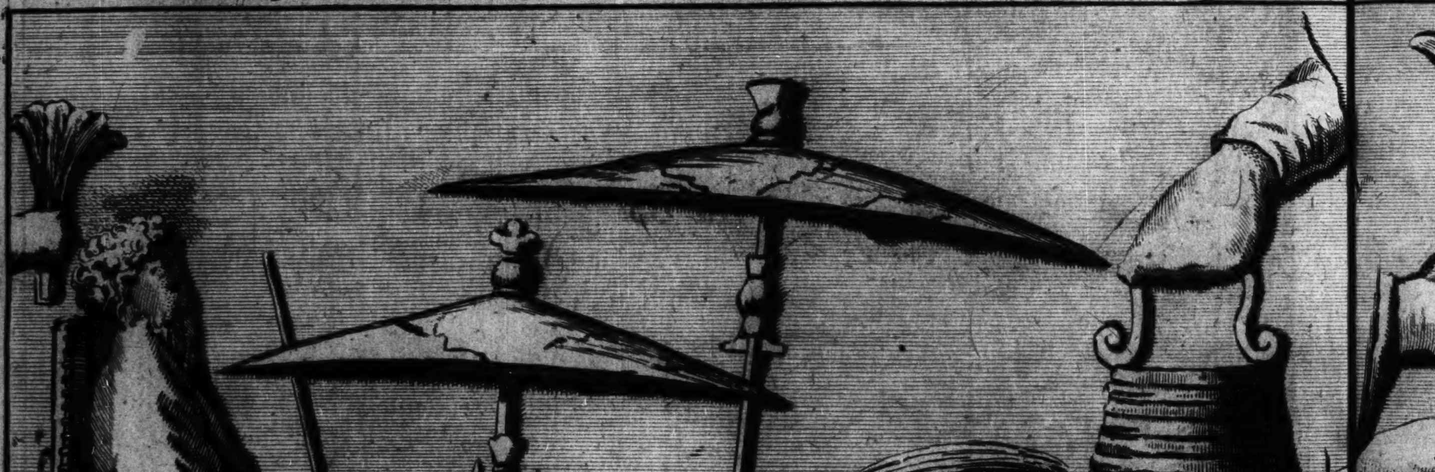
7 AP 53

7 AP 53

154. TÊTE DE CHEVAL.

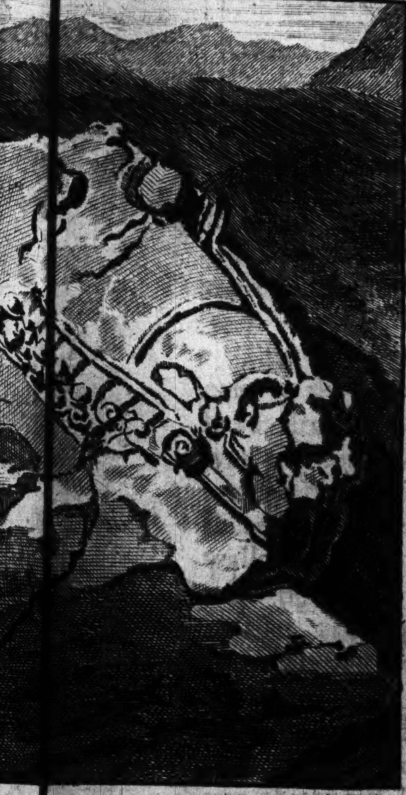


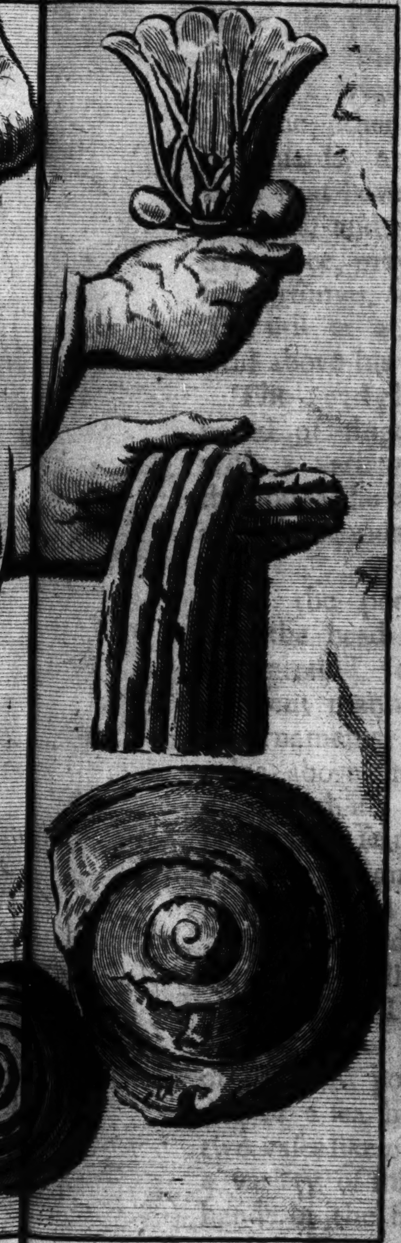
TÊTE DE



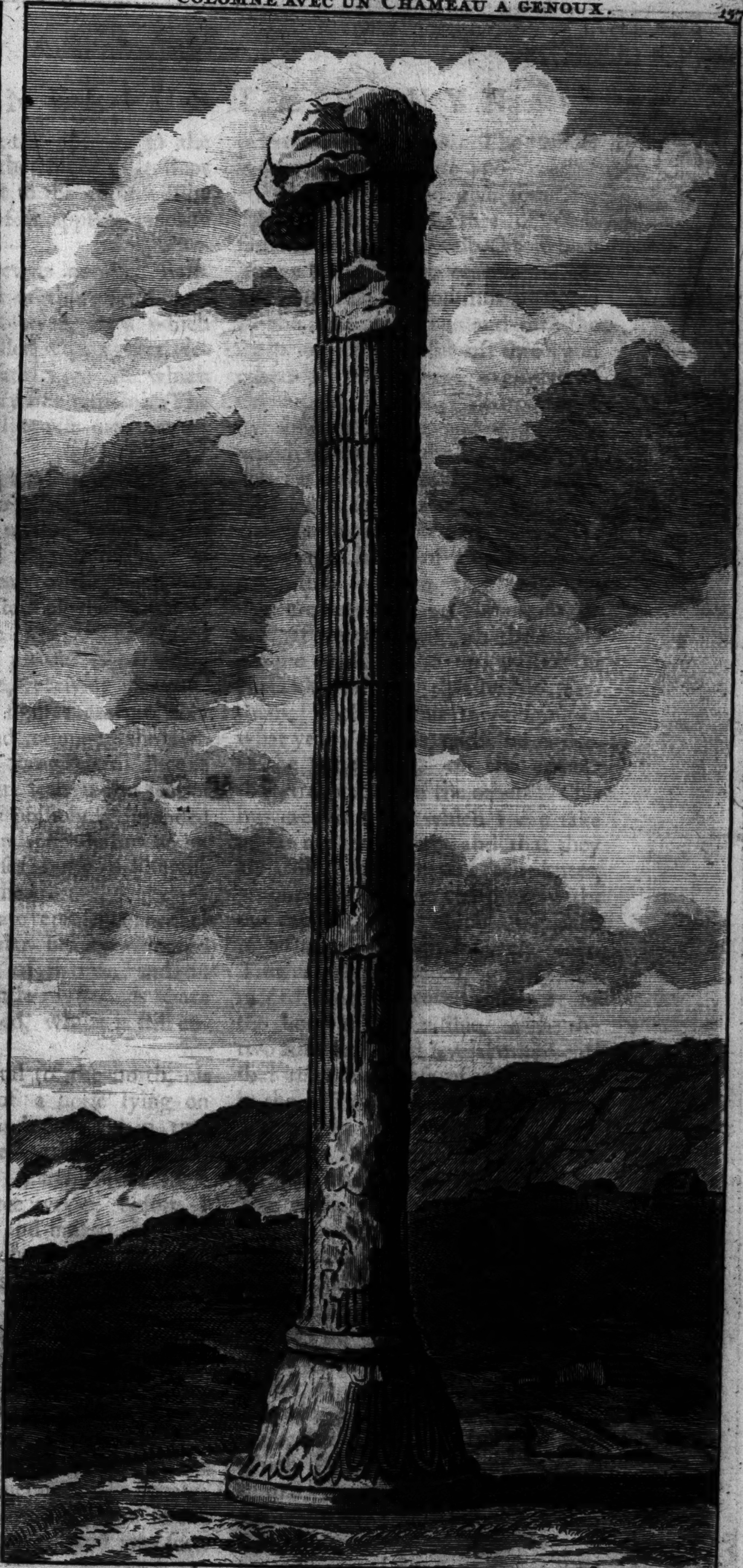
156. PLUSIEURS ORNEMENS & FIGURES DE PERSEPOLIS.

TÊTE DE CHEVAL. 155.





COLOMNE AVEC UN CHAMEAU A GENOUX. 157.



7 AP 53

comes viſible at the opening to the left; and the other flight of its ſteps was at the end to the right. The repreſentation of it appears in plate 149.

There is likewiſe another ſtair-caſe to the eaſt of this edifice, as I have already obſerved, and which was formerly filled with figures, repreſented in plate 150, of which there are ſtill very fine remains. The walls of it are likewiſe ornamented with figures

The 151ſt plate repreſents the pedeſtals of two pilaſtars in the portal of the high edifice, towards the mountains, and a great number of figures ſtill appear to the north, on one of the pilaſters of the ſame edifice, in plate 152. The ſeated figure on this pilaſter is evidently that of a prince, receiving preſents, and the other figures are probably his guards, and retinue: the two vaſes that have ſome reſemblance to ninepins, and are ſeen at the feet of the prince, may poſſibly be intended for perfumes, and odoriferous herbs. The tail of a ſea horſe is likewiſe held above his head.

The 153d plate repreſents another portal of ſingular beauty, adorned with a variety of figures, and on the top is the little myſterious figure already mentioned, which is ſtill entire.

In the portal to the north, is ſeen the head of a horſe lying on the ground, and deſigned in two different manners, with a profuſion of ornaments. I frequented theſe ruins above three weeks, before I diſcovered it; and indeed, it muſt be carefully ſearched for. The two different deſigns of this head are in plates 154 and 155.

I have added, for the greater accuracy, to all theſe ruins, ſeveral pieces which I found on the earth, on the ſide of ſome figures, in one of the laſt portals; namely, the tail of a ſea horſe; a paraſol; the two vaſes like ninepins; a fine chair; a variety of things which are in the hands of the figures, and two ſorts of round ornaments. The whole is repreſented in plate 156.

The architecture of theſe ruins.

It is now time to give ſome account of the architectnre of theſe famous ruins; with reſpect to which it may be proper to obſerve in general, that all the columns are fluted in the ſame manner; and that the ſhafts of ſome conſiſt of three, and others of four pieces, excluſive of the capital, which is compoſed of five different pieces, and of an order which varies from the five known orders, as well as from all others which I have ever ſeen.

Some writers pretend that there are winged horſes of an uncommon magnitude on the two columns that are near the two portals, on the ſide of the ſtair-caſe, in the facade of the edifice; and one author in particular affirms, that he had ſeen them, tho' without mentioning in what year; but he takes no notice, at the ſame time, of the camels that are placed on the others: This however is a fact which I can take upon me to aver, and that they are ſtill to be ſeen on their knees, on one of the nine columns, without capitals, and which are placed in a lateral poſition to each other. This camel is, indeed, greatly damaged, but, however, one part of the body is ſtill viſible, with the two fore feet, and ſeveral ornaments that reſemble thoſe of the animals in the firſt portals. One cannot be deceived in this particular, if one examines the pieces which are fallen from the tops of theſe columns. The capital of that which is repreſented in plate 157, ſeems to have been ſhaken by an earthquake, and to have ſtarted out of its place; but it ſtill preſerves its equilibrium, tho' it hangs on the ſide.

We have likewiſe been careful to mark, on two or three of the ten columns that have preſerved their capitals, a fragment of ſhapeleſs ſtone, which certainly repreſented ſome animal, though the particular ſpecies is not to be now diſtinguiſhed.

The error of a certain writer.

The writer already mentioned, declares, that he found ſixteen columns, which being added to the two of the ſtair-caſe in the facade, make eighteen in the whole. This is what I am unable to comprehend, becauſe I found no more than nineteen; but this is not the only miſtake that has been committed by him in his account. I muſt, however, acknowledge this in his praiſe, that he is the moſt exact of all whom I have read on this ſubject.

As to any other particulars, I did not obſerve any difference in theſe columns, unleſs that ſome of them have capitals, and others not. With reſpect to their elevation, they are all from ſeventy to ſeventy two feet in height, and ſeventeen feet ſeven inches in circumference, except thoſe two that are near the firſt portals, which have been already deſcribed. The baſes are round, and twenty four feet five inches in circumference, and four feet three inches high: the lower moulding is one foot and five inches thick. They have three ſorts of ornaments; but the cornice of the portals and windows are exactly the ſame, as appears by the plate.

The cauſe of this deſtruction.

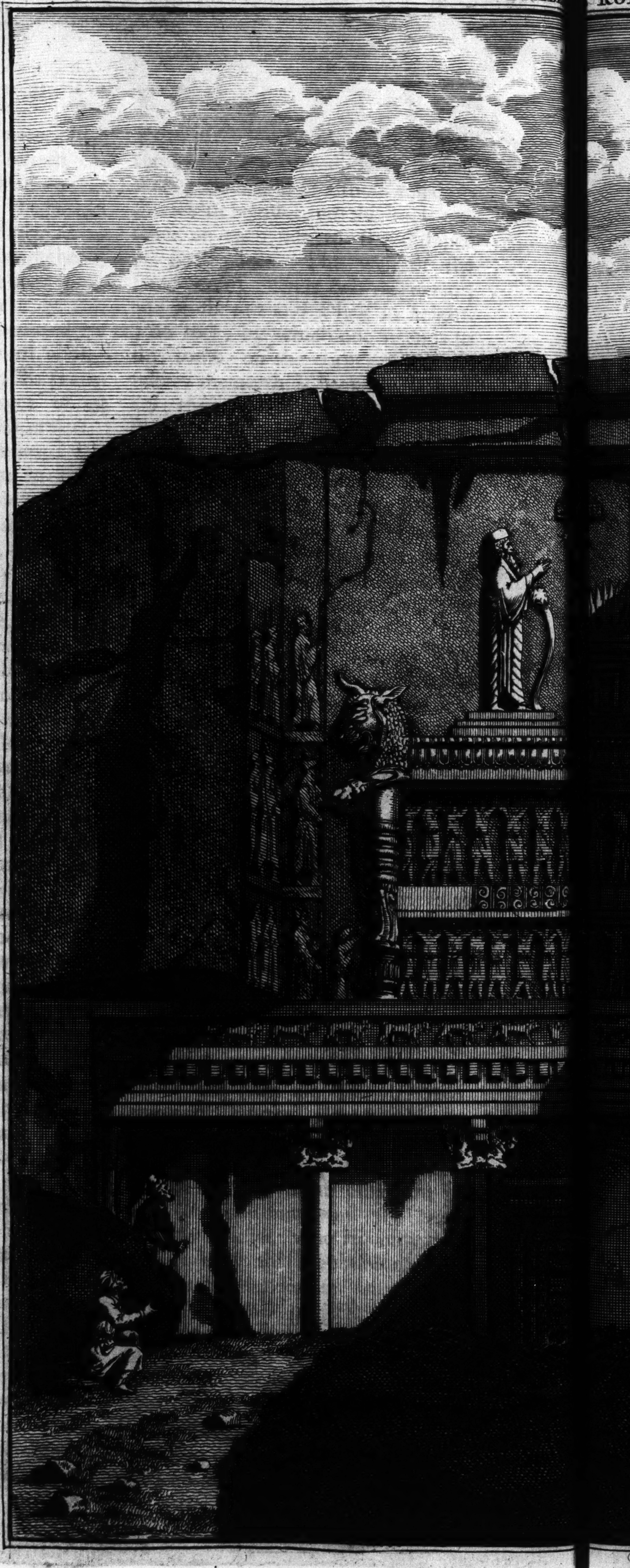
The miſerable ſtate to which theſe fine ruins are now reduced, is chiefly imputed to the governors of *Zje-raes*, and other places adjacent to *Perſepolis*, who, to avoid the expences to which they were expoſed by the great lords who came to viſit theſe ſuperb antiquities, have demoliſhed whatever was then remaining entire, to prevent their having any curioſity to come there for the future.

The royal tombs.

We ſhall now offer ſome obſervations on the two antient tombs of the kings, that have been already mentioned, and which are to be ſeen on the mountain; one to the north, and the other to the ſouth. The facade of the firſt, which is hewn out of the rock, is a noble fragment of antiquity, covered with figures and other ornaments. The form of both is the ſame, and they are about ſeventy feet wide at the bottom. That part of the tomb on which the figures are carved, is forty feet wide; the height is almoſt equal to the width below, and the rock extends on each ſide to the diſtance of ſixty paces. The wall of the facade comprehends half this extent, and is ſix feet and a half in height. The rock, by which one aſcends to this tomb, on the corner of the left ſide to the north, is broken. There are three or four little trees near this facade; and four columns below the edifice, and above theſe are ſeveral heads of oxen repreſented as far as the breaſt, with other ornaments. The gate, whoſe architrave is likewiſe filled with ornaments, is placed in the middle, but ſmall, and almoſt cloſed up; the aperture being but a foot wide, becauſe there is water within. The wall is carried out into a projection of five feet on each ſide, on which are ſeen two figures to the right and left, one above the other, and partly broken like the wall: they are five feet and ſeven inches high. Above the columns, is a cornice, which projects out to the extent of two feet and nine inches, and is about four feet high. It reſts upon four great beams, which appear above the columns, between the head of the oxen. Above this cornice are eighteen ſmall lions; nine on each ſide, and advancing toward the middle, where is a little ornament like a vaſe, and below a modillon. Above the lions are likewiſe two ranges of figures, almoſt as large as the life, fourteen in each range, armed, and lifting up their hands; and on the ſide is an ornament in form of a column, with the head of ſome animal, who has only one horn. Above this is another cornice ornamented with leaves. On the left, where the wall projects out, are three kinds of niches, one above another, and each of them contains two figures, armed with lances, and three others, on the ſide, armed in the ſame manner. There are likewiſe two on the right ſide, in the aperture of a window, with their

7 AP 53

TOMBE RO

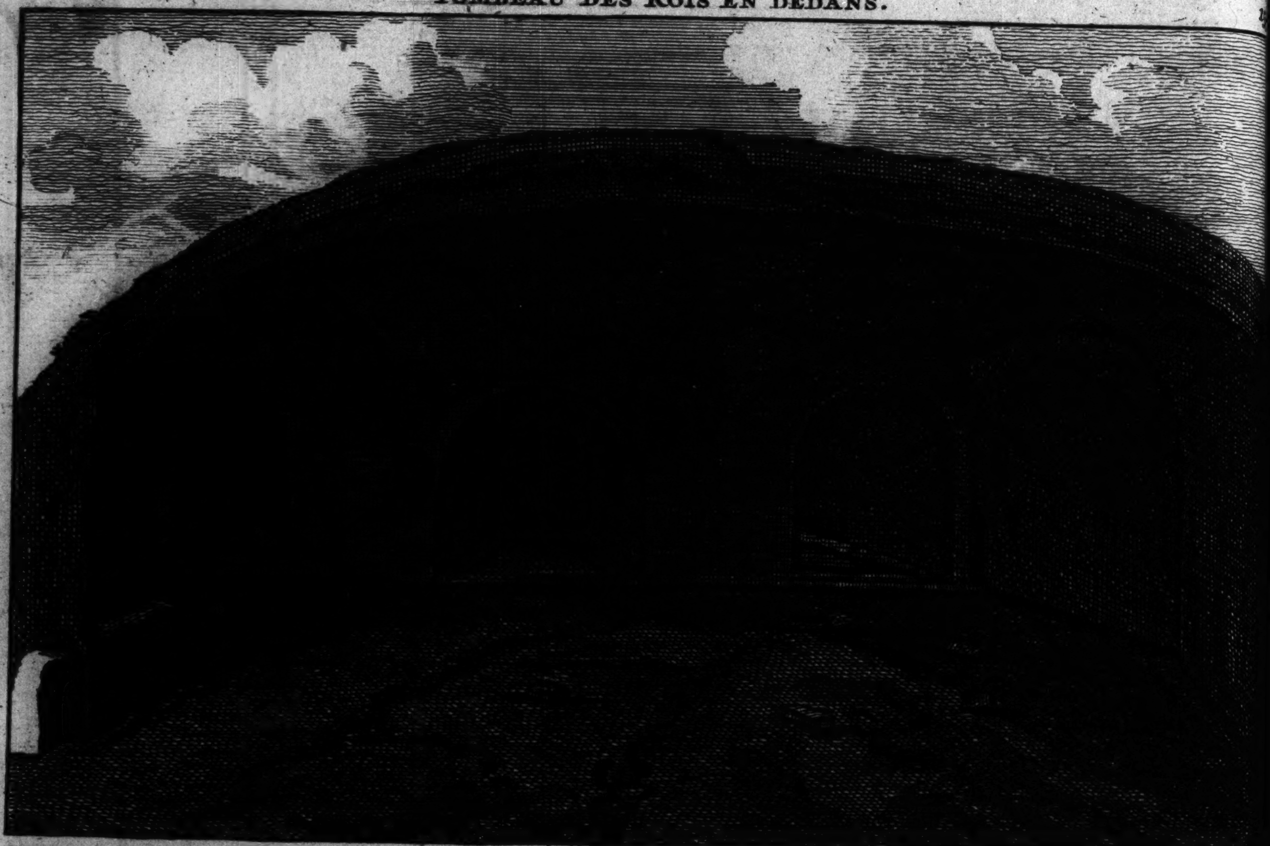


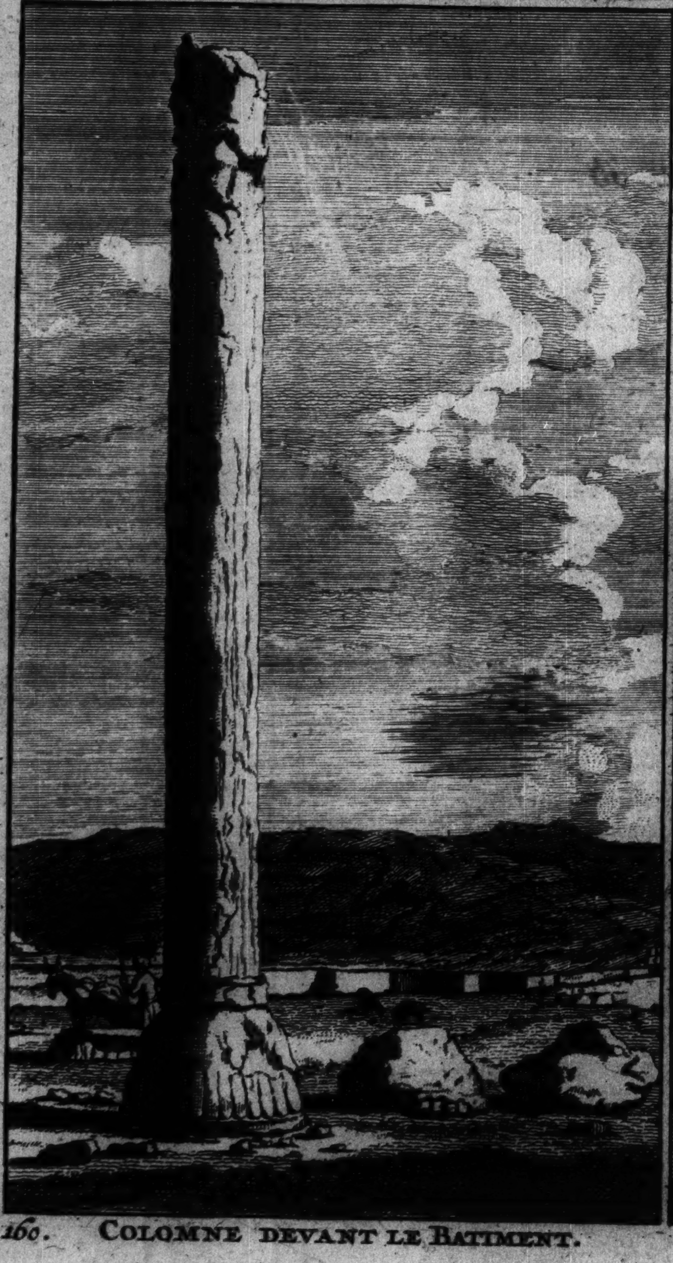
OMBE ROIS.

7 AP 53

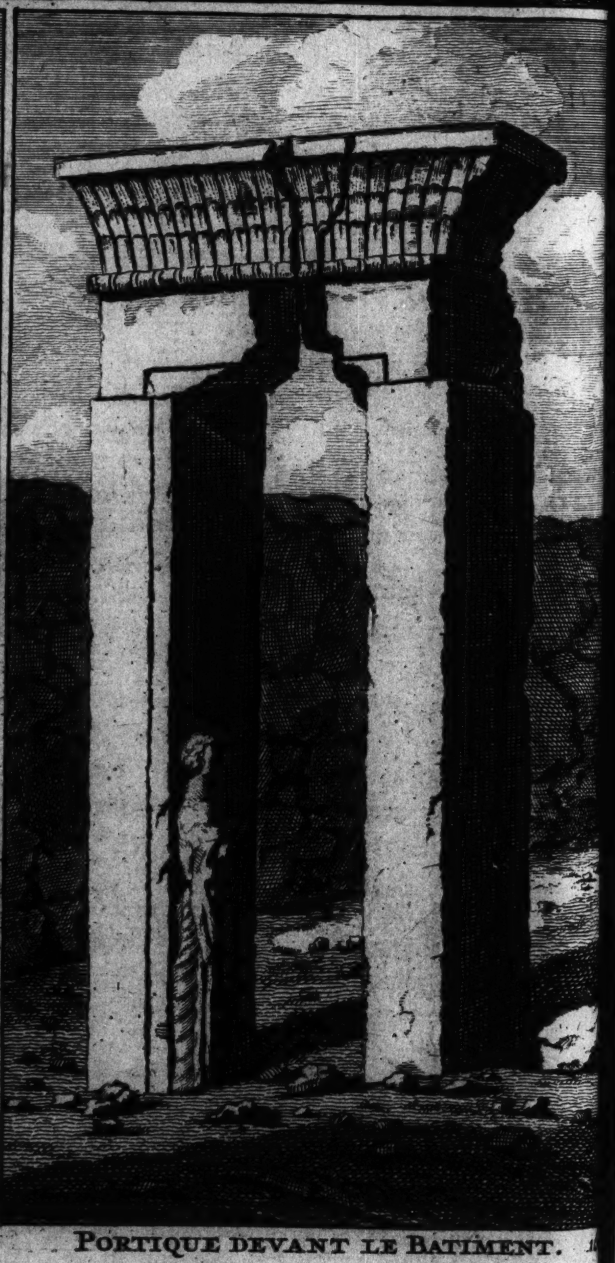
7 AP 53

TOMBEAU DES ROIS EN DEDANS.





160. COLOMNE DEVANT LE BATIMENT.



PORTIQUE DEVANT LE BATIMENT.

left hands placed upon their beards, and the right on their body; and on the ſide of theſe are three others, in the ſame diſpoſition as thoſe on the other ſide. At ſome diſtance below, and between theſe figures and the ornament that reſembles a column, is another figure very much impaired on each ſide. Above this tomb, and on three ſteps, is likewiſe a large figure, which has the air of a king, pointing at ſomething with his right hand, and holding a kind of bow in his left. On the right ſide of this figure, is an altar, on which an offering is made, and from whence the flames are repreſented as aſcending. The moon appears above this altar, and it is ſaid, that there was once a ſun, on the left, and behind this figure, but nothing of that nature is now to be ſeen. In the middle, and above all this work, appears the little myſtic figure, which has been ſo frequently mentioned, and it differs a little from the others.

The uncertainty, with reſpect to the tomb of Darius.

It cannot be affirmed, that the body of *Darius* was depoſited in one of theſe tombs, ſince authors have not taken any notice of that particular; and even *Quintus Curtius*, who wrote the life of *Alexander the Great*, in a very copious manner, only declares, that this prince ſent the body of *Darius*, who was aſſaſſinated by *Beſſus*, to queen *Syſigambis*, the mother of that monarch, to be buried in the tomb of his anceſtors.

Between theſe tombs, is ſeen a ſquare pit, fifteen feet wide, and about twenty five deep. This was undoubtedly hollowed in the rock, but there is only a ſingle tree now to be ſeen near it.

With reſpect to the tomb on the ſouthern ſide, and which is in a very ruinous condition, I had the curioſity to enter it, by creeping on my breaſt, the water being evacuated at that time. I found that the paſſage into it was two feet high, and the vault within, forty ſix feet in breadth, and twenty in depth. This cave is divided into thre vaults, which begin at half the depth of the main cavity, and are carried up ſeven feet high. On the left ſide of the entrance, a breach appears in the rock or facade, and gives admiſſion to a little light. There are ſeveral ſtones in theſe vaults, and eſpecially in that to the left. They are ſaid to contain two tombs covered with ſtones, in a demi round, and in all probability they have been wilfully broken, every perſon whatever being permitted to enter there, at ſeveral times, but at preſent there are no more than I have mentioned, and they ſeem to be 159 in number.

The rock, or wall of this facade, advances thirty feet on one ſide, and forty on the other, and has no entrance like the other. On each ſide of this facade, and in three ſeparate compartments, are the figures of two men armed with lances, and it is ſaid that ſix others are fallen down in the firſt of theſe monuments; tho' others declare there are but three, which was confirmed to me by the perſon whom I cauſed to enter therein, by creeping on his belly. On the ſouth ſide of this building, and at the diſtance of 215 paces from the corner of the facade, is the column already mentioned, part of which is now broken, in the manner it appears on its baſe in plate 160. and round it are eight other baſes, one of which is to the north, and ſeven paces from this; a ſecond is to the eaſt, at an equal diſtance; and three to the north eaſt, ten paces from the firſt; the corner to the weſt containing eighteen paces. The two to the ſouth poſſeſs a ſpace of ground twenty two paces in extent, and are eight paces from each other. Around theſe baſes are ſeveral large and globular ſtones, with three great fragments of the rock, which have evidently ſupported ſome edifice. The column lately mentioned is twelve feet and ſeven inches in diameter, and its baſe riſes three feet and ſix inches above the ſurface of the cauſey. On the ſide of the two baſes to the ſouth, are two fragments of figures repreſenting camels, which were placed, with other ornaments, on the columns.

At the diſtance of 650 paces from this edifice, to the north, is another portal, which is not one of the largeſt, and the pilaſters on the two ſides ſupport the ſtatue of a woman as large as the life. This is repreſented in plate 161.

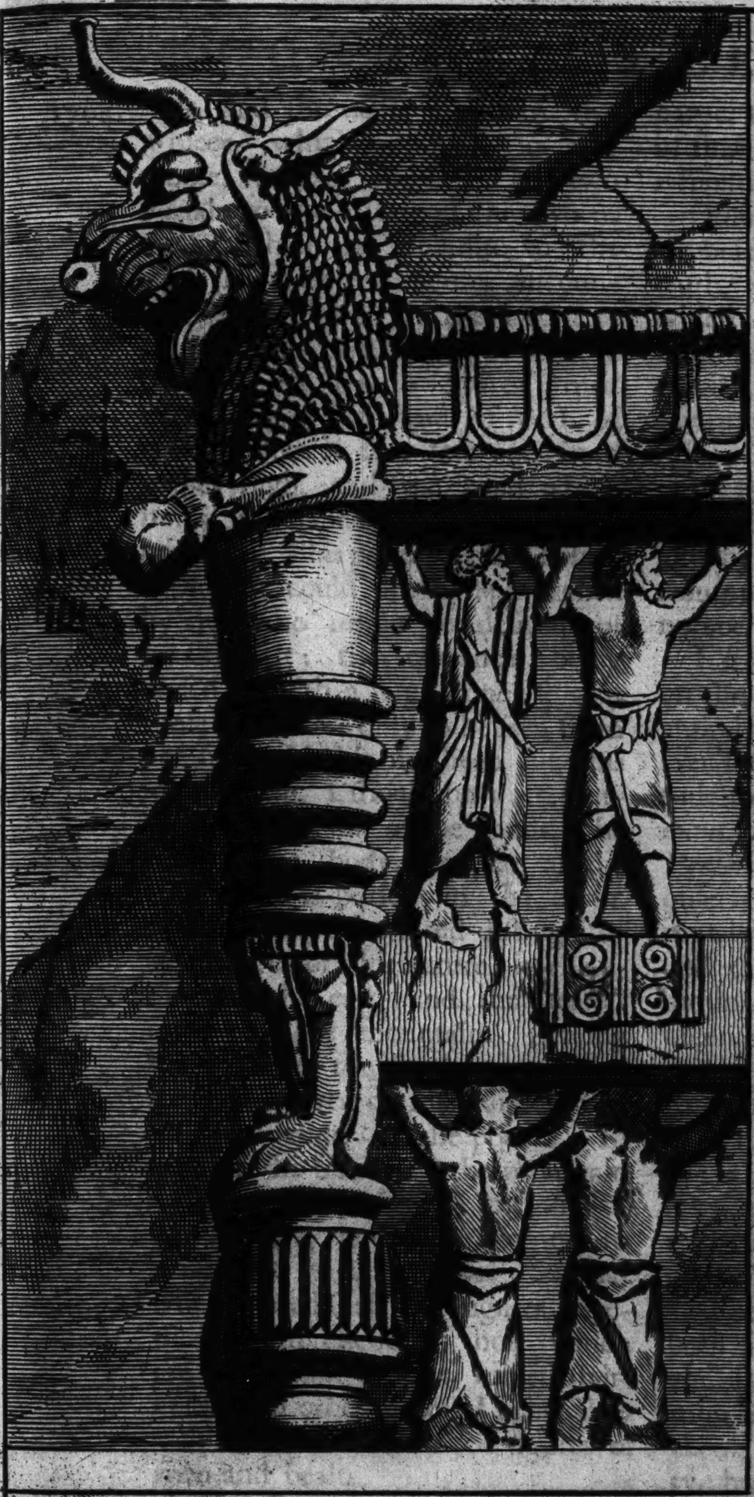
As the tombs I have been deſcribing are only exhibited in ſmall in the plate, I thought it proper to trace out their fine ornaments on the ſides, with the beautiful head above them, in plate 162. together with one of thoſe on the ſouthern ſide of the portal, in plate 163; as likewiſe the two heads of oxen on one of the columns under the cornice of the tomb, in plate 164; and laſtly, a fragment of one of the columns, on which the forefeet of a kneeling camel are ſtill diſtinguiſhable, in plate 165.

When I had travelled ſo far in ſearch of theſe fine antiquities, I employed the remainder of the time I had to continue at *Chil-menaer*, in reviewing what I had already ſeen, and numbering all the figures of men and beaſts, which are yet to be diſtinguiſhed, in order to give as perfect an idea as poſſible, of the grandeur and magnificence of theſe ſuperb ruins.

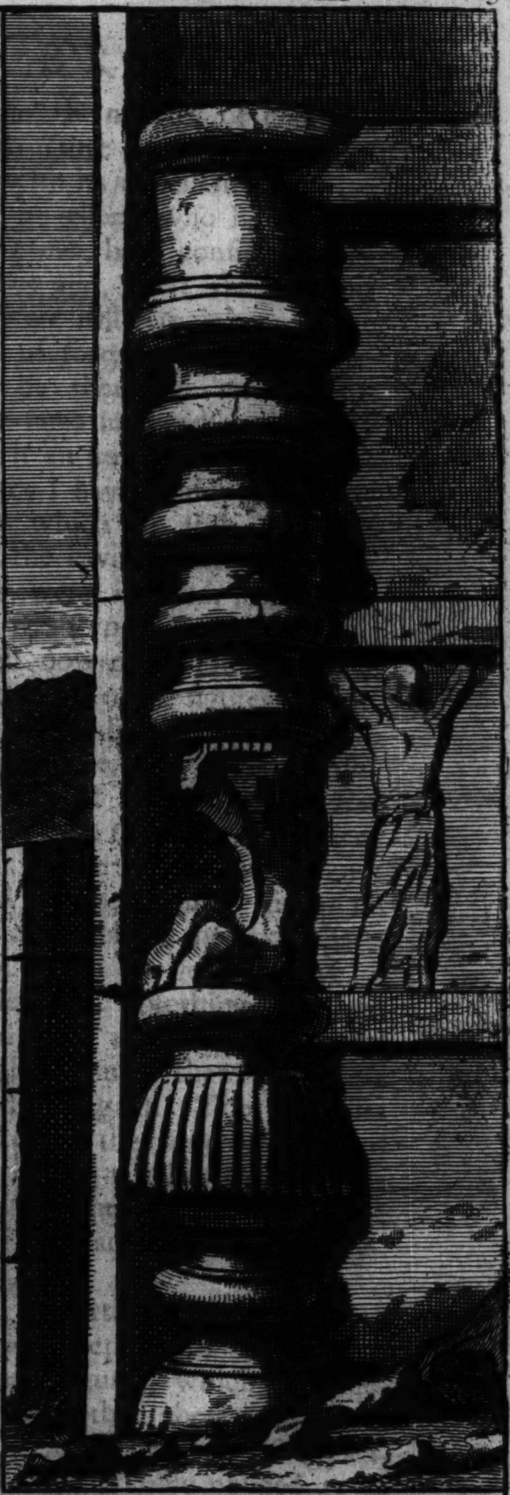
The ſecond ſurvey of theſe antiquities.

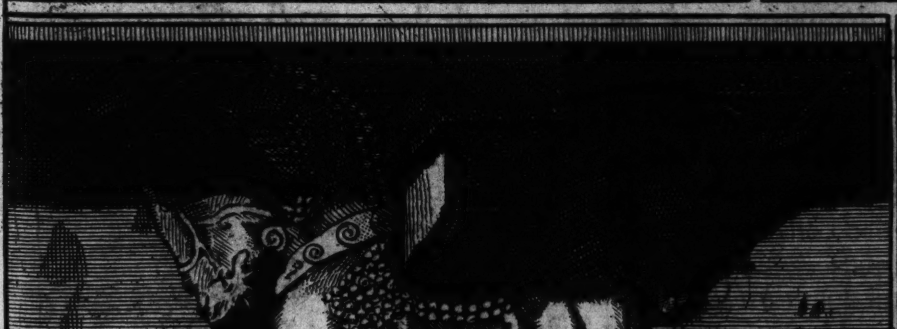
I began this ſecond ſurvey at the two firſt portals which are near the ſtair-caſe in the facade, where are the figures of four large beaſts, with the aſcent of ſteps which conduct one to the columns. The figures, which are there to be ſeen, amount to 520, beſide which there are forty two below, and round the firſt portal; they are alſo as large as the life; but thoſe of the men over whoſe heads a paraſol is held, and likewiſe thoſe which are repreſented as encountring lions, with the others that are armed with lances, are two feet taller. Eighteen figures armed with lances, are ſeen on the wall of the back facade, and they all as large as the life. There are likewiſe twenty five figures on the ruined ſtair-caſe, which, with the others, make eighty five in number. There are alſo twenty figures of women in the raiſed edifice, as big as the life, with thirty three more, that are ſomething leſs, and five pilaſters, on which the men, who are ſupported by them, are ten feet and ſeven inches high. There are two other portals, the figures of which are armed with lances, and are ſeven feet five inches in height. On the ſide of theſe portals, on the wall of the facade, and before a vacant ſpace of ground, are eighteen demi figures, armed with lances like the preceding. They are oppoſite to each other, and with the reſt amount to eighty two. Four figures of women are likewiſe to be ſeen on the wall of the facade of the ſtair-caſe belonging to the ſame edifice, to the eaſt, a little larger than the life; but they are only viſible as far as the neck, and there are eight others that reſemble theſe, on each of the ſide walls. One may eaſily diſtinguiſh, on the wings of that ſtair-caſe, thirty ſix figures two feet high, and three lions, at the entrance, encountring with bulls. There are ſixty three of theſe figures in the whole. On each of the three pilaſters of the eaſtern portals, is a figure with a paraſol; and in another portal, which is not far from the other, are ſix large figures on each ſide; and below theſe, are three ranges of little figures, a foot and ſix inches in height; nine in the upper range, as many in the loweſt, and ten in the middle, which make fifty ſix, and ſeventy one in the whole. On the top of each of theſe two laſt portals, which are toward the mountain, are ſix large figures, below which are five ranges of ſmall ones, each range containing ten, and one hundred and twelve in the whole. On the top of each of the four pilaſters of the two portals to the ſouth, are three large figures, which make twelve in all; and below theſe, are three rows of ſmall figures, the uppermoſt contain four,

162. **Ornemens.**

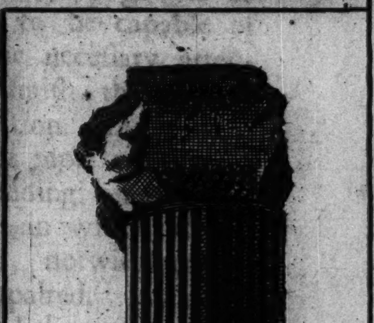


Ornemens. 163.





164.



165.

7 AP 53

four, and the other two have five a-piece, which amount, in the, whole, to ſixty eight. The two portals to the eaſt, and the two others, which are oppoſite to the weſt, have ſixteen figures encountring with lions. In the two northern portals, which are at a little diſtance, are ſeveral figures armed with lances; the head of each of theſe figures is two feet and ſeven inches high, and the hand which holds the lance, is ten inches in breadth. This piece was ſtill entire, becauſe it could not be approached by any who might be deſirous of breaking it; the entrance being cloſed up with a large ſtone, ſo that thoſe figures are only to be ſeen from one ſide. Had it not been for this impediment, I ſhould have attempted to procure one of the hands. The reſt of the body, as far as the ſtomach, is buried in the earth. I found three hundred diſtinguiſhable figures of this nature, in the edifice to the eaſt, and the neareſt of any to the mountain. Among the ruins to the ſouth are twenty ſix large figures of men and beaſts, on the pilaſters of the portals. In each of the tombs on the mountain are fifty human figures, excluſive of the animals, and they amount to a hundred in the whole. So that when we add all the figures together, comprehending thoſe which are ſtill viſible on the ruined ſtaircaſes, and other places, I belive they will amount to near 1300 figures of men and beaſts.

The *Perſians* call the remains of theſe antient ruins, *Chil-minaer*, or *Chel-menaer*, which ſignifies the *forty columns*, as has been already obſerved; and they undoubtedly received this appellation, at a time when no more than that number were remaining. The word *Chil* ſignifies *forty*, and *menaer*, a *circumference*; and it is very uſual for the *Perſians* to beſtow that name on any building which has about the ſame number of pillars; as was intimated in my deſcription of the palace of *Iſpahan*, which is called by the ſame name, tho' the number of columns in that ſtructure do not exactly correſpond with its appellation.

The negligence of travellers.

Other travellers, who have written before me, have confirmed this truth, but add, that the columns which were ſtill remaining to the number of forty, were entirely decayed; but theſe gentlemen muſt certainly have ſurveyed theſe ſtately ruins with an unpardonable inattention, ſince I have found, as well by the baſes which are ſtill viſible, as alſo by the cavities into which the columns were inſerted, that their number was formerly 205.

The habits of the figures.

The irregularity of the antient architecture.

I ſhall now make ſome remarks on the drapery of the figures, which entirely differs from all that I have ever ſeen before, and has no ſimilitude to that of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, nor even to that of the antient *Perſians*. The rules of art are not obſerved in the figures, ſince no muſcles are viſible in the naked parts and the figures in general have a motionleſs air. Nothing has been obſerved but the contours; and this neglect cauſes them to appear ſtiff and inelegant. The draperies have likewiſe the ſame defects, and the whole is a taſteleſs ſameneſs, as is evident by the plates I have made without any addition or diminution.

The proportions well kept.

The proportions, however, have been finely kept, both in the great and ſmall figures, which is a demonſtration that thoſe who made them, were not deſtitute of capacity, but were poſſibly obliged to be too expeditious, to be capable of employing all the neceſſary attentions, and to finiſh them with the utmoſt perfection. But it muſt be confeſſed, that moſt of the ornaments are exceeding beautiful, as well as the chairs in which the figures are ſeated, notwithſtanding they are much impaired. It is therefore reaſonable to believe, that there were formerly ſome very fine fragments, which have ſince been deſtroyed by time; and I am perſuaded that ſome figures have been found there completely rounded;

and that there were ſeveral things much more remarkable, and in greater perfection, in a place where ſuch ſtately remains are ſtill to be ſeen. They are now ſuppoſed to be the ruins of one ſtructure, becauſe no diſtinction appears among them. Several perſons likewiſe imagine the ſtones of the rock which compoſed it, to be a white marble, and thoſe of the ſtair-caſe black. For my part, I am perſuaded, on the contrary, that the whole has been hewn from the rock, which is the natural product of the mountain, ſo that there was no neceſſity to go to a greater diſtance for thoſe materials. It is even viſible, that great part of this edifice has been cut out of the rock itſelf in the mountain, to which the ſtructure joins; and any one will be ſufficiently convinced of this truth, by examining ever ſo little the two tombs on that mountain; together with moſt of the ſtair-caſes, the principal foundation of the walls, and the other rocky fragments that are to be found up and down, eſpecially in the northern part of this edifice. What has contributed to the propagation of this error, is, that the generality of theſe ſtones are poliſhed like a mirror, and particularly thoſe within the portal, and thoſe which compoſe the windows and pavements, that are ſtill to be ſeen. Another reaſon which cauſes them to be taken for marble, is their appearing with different colours, ſuch as yellow, white, grey, red, a deep blew, and even black in ſome places: But I impute this variety to time, and the rather, becauſe it is to be ſeen in the rock of the mountain.

The greateſt part, however, of this edifice, is a clear blue; and that a better judgment may be formed of the colours, I have been at the pains to copy them from the ſtructure itſelf, in diſtemper.

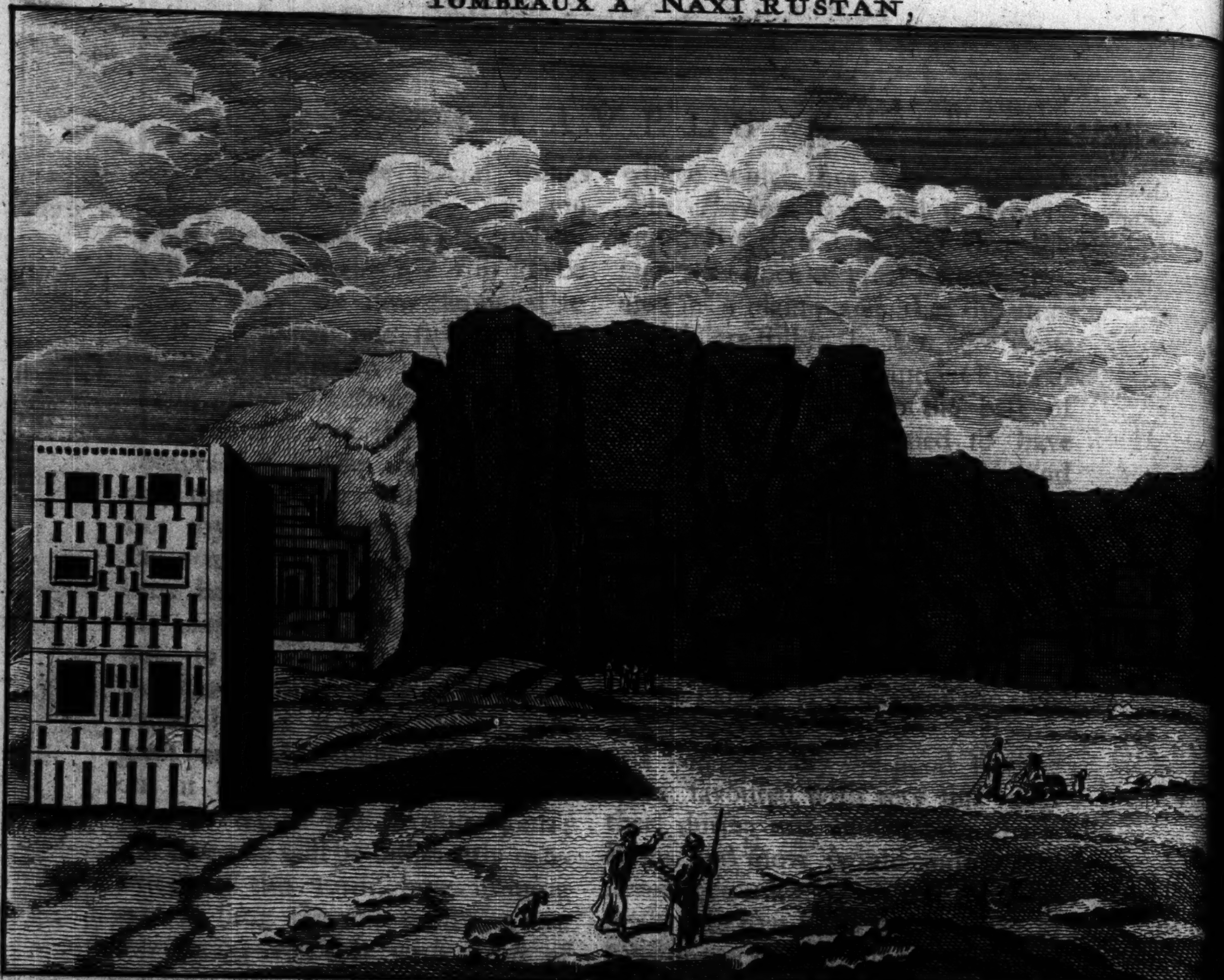
The city of Perſepolis *entirely deſtroyed.*

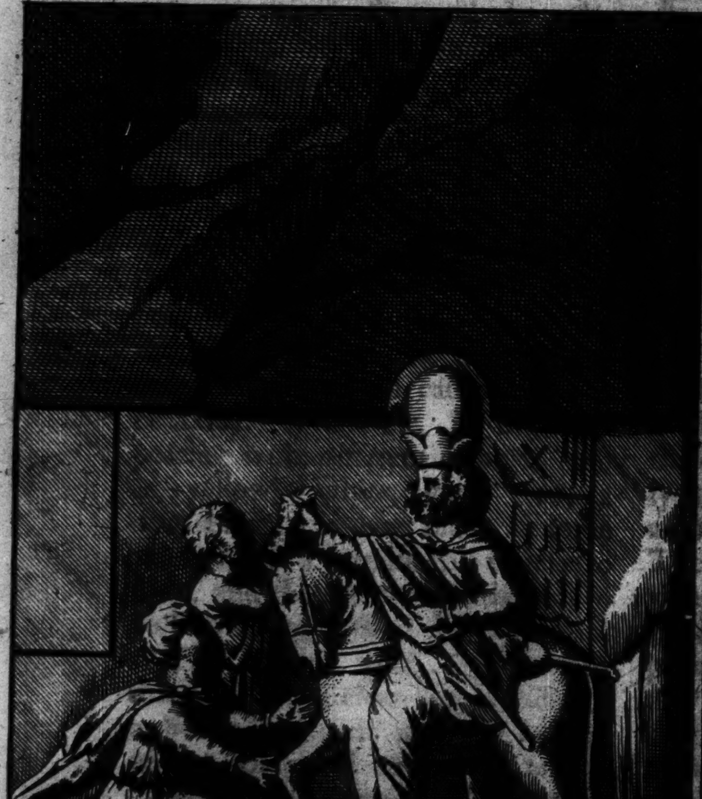
With reſpect to the city of *Perſepolis*, there are not any traces of it now remaining, only the rocks that appear on each ſide, incline one to believe that there were buildings formerly, beyond the encloſure of the edifice which has been deſcribed. The *Perſians* ſay, and it likewiſe appears by their writings, that this city was once of great extent, ſituated in a plain; and that the ruins which are ſtill to be ſeen, are thoſe of the palace of the antient kings of *Perſia*. According to the beſt of my judgment, it ſeemed to have extended along the mountain, and from thence a great way into the plain; but after all, theſe are only conjectures, ſince there are no traces of it now to be ſeen, except the column which ſtands to the ſouth, and without the incloſure of the ruins of the palace, and likewiſe the portal to the north.

I had generally the good fortune to be favoured with very fine weather, during my continuance there. Rains and ſnow would indeed fall ſometimes, and at other times it proved froſty; ſo that I was then obliged to confine my ſelf to my houſe till the weather became more favourable. I, however, viſited the ruins as frequently as poſſible, and made a kind of kitchen there; but if I had enjoyed the company of a friend as curious as my ſelf, together with a good dog, I ſhould have paſſed the night in a grot of the mountain, to ſave my ſelf the labour of returning thither every day. This is generally practiſed by the *Arabians* who live in tents, and are followed by their cattle, with which they cultivate the earth, even under the walls of theſe ruins. They came frequently to viſit me, while I was employed among theſe celebrated antiquities. The inhabitants of the circumjacent villages did the ſame, as well as their *Kalantaer*, or Bailiff. Several poor people likewiſe, induced by the curioſity to behold ſo noble a ſpectacle, came daily thither with their families, and camels, who aſcended and came down the grand ſtair caſe, as eaſily as their conductors. I took notice that theſe people examined theſe famous ruins with more curioſity than Mr. *Tavernier*, who aſſures us that twelves columns were ſtanding forty eight years ago; and adds, that theſe ruins, which are

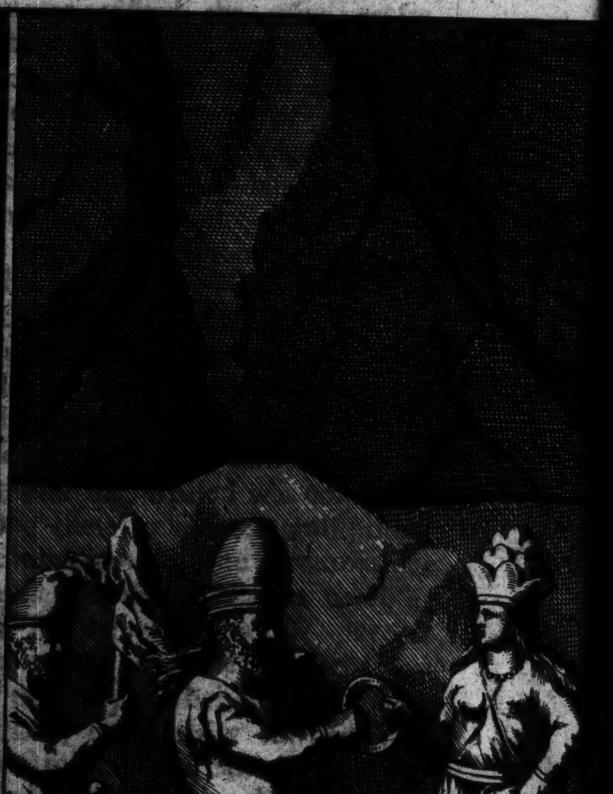
7 AP 53

166. TOMBEAUX A NAXI RUSTAN,



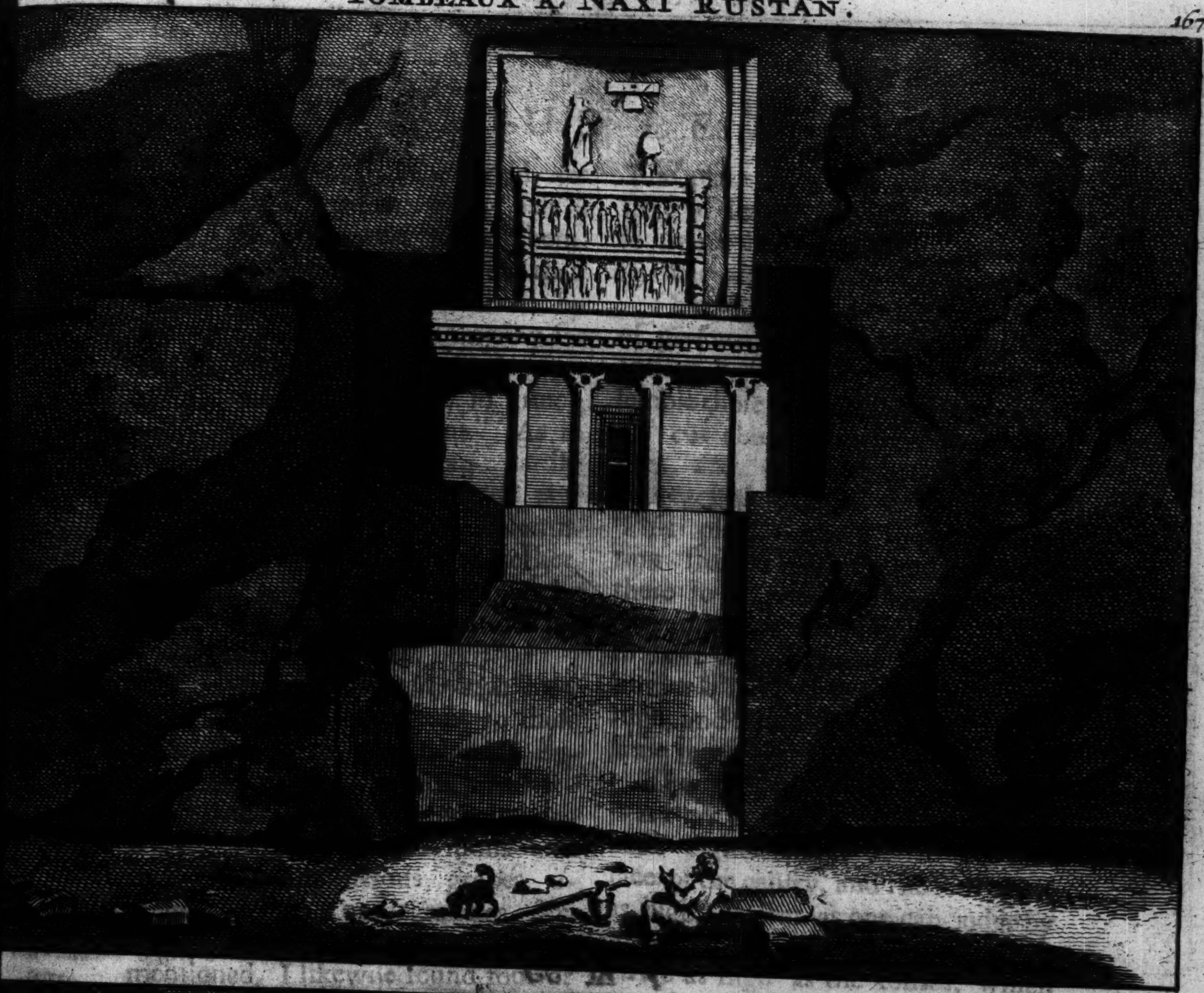


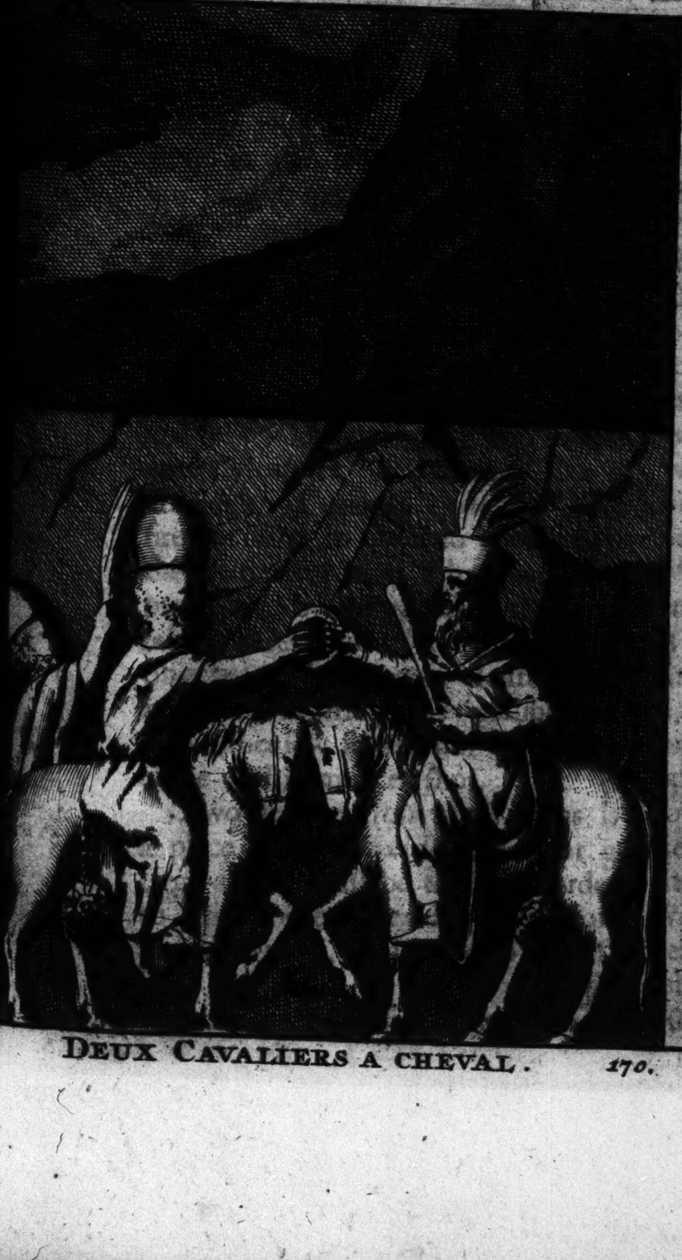
168. FIGURES ENTRE LES DEUX TOMBEAUX.



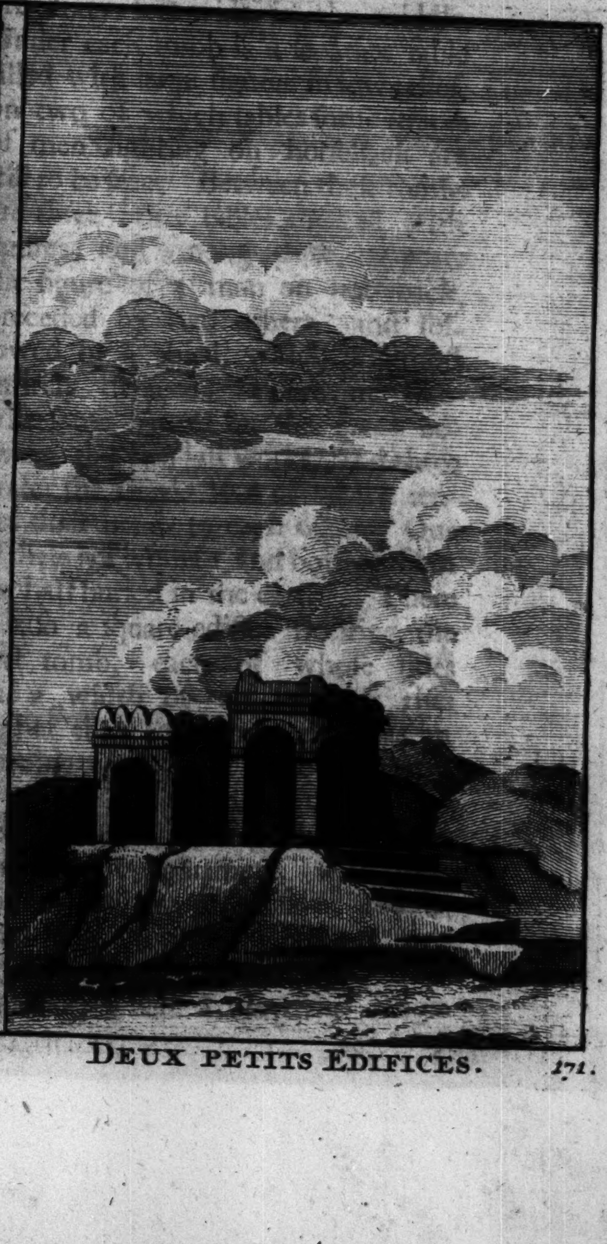
FIGURES A DEMI ENTERREES.

TOMBEAUX A NAXI RUSTAN. 167.





DEUX CAVALIERS A CHEVAL. 170.



DEUX PETITS EDIFICES. 171.

T AP 55

ſo much talked of in the world, are not worth a traveller's going half a league out of his way to ſee them. They were likewiſe more curious than a *Dutchman*, who drew them by the order of the *India* company for King *Abbas* the ſecond, and complained that he had loſt ſo much time in that employment. As to the firſt particular, I can hardly believe that Mr. *Tavernier* was ever there. There are nineteen columns now ſtanding; and as to the other, a judgment may be formed of the merit of the ruins by the deſigns which I have exhibited.

The town of *Mier-chas-koen*, which is the neareſt of any to theſe antiquities, is of a conſiderable extent, and accommodated with ſeveral *Bazars*; it likewiſe abounds with all ſorts of proviſions and fruits, eſpecially melons, grapes, oranges, citrons, pomegranates, *&c.*

Birds in the mountains.

Beſide the birds I have already mentioned, I likewiſe found four or five ſorts of little birds that continually harbour among theſe ruins, and on the mountain, and entertain the ear with the moſt agreeable melody in the world. The notes of the largeſt ſpecies have a near correſpondence with thoſe of the nightingale. Some of them are almoſt entirely black; others are of the ſize of the ſwallow, and have their bodies ſpotted; a third claſs is ſmaller and variouſly coloured; ſome are yellow, others grey, and ſeveral entirely white, and ſhaped like a chafinch. I ſhould certainly have fired at ſome, in order to have drawn them afterwards, if I had not been prevented by impatience deſire to take a careful ſurvey of thoſe other objects, which I was deſirous of knowing as much as poſſible. I ſometimes ſaw foxes, but they never come within muſket ſhot.

Two leagues from theſe ruins is a place called *Naxi Ruſtan*; but a large circuit muſt be taken in order to arrive there; becauſe a river croſſes the country, and is not to be paſſed, but over a certain bridge, which is at a conſiderable diſtance. The plain is likewiſe cut into a variety of ſmall channels, which are ſo many impediments to travellers in their way thither.

I found, in this place, four tombs of perſons of eminence among the antient *Perſians*, and they much reſemble thoſe of *Perſepolis*; only they are cut abundantly higher in the rock, and therefore are not to be approached, without the aid of cords. This place receives its denomination from *Ruſtan*, whoſe figure is there to be ſeen, and was carved to perpetuate his memory. He is ſaid to have been a potent prince, of an immenſe ſtature, being forty cubits high, and he lived, according to the ſame report, 1113 years.

The tombs, which extend upward on a ſteep rock, have their baſes eighteen feet above the ſurface of the cauſey, and riſe four times as high, as near as one can judge by ſurveying them; and the rock is twice as high as the tombs, which are ſixty feet wide in the middle. Under each tomb is a ſeparate table filled with large figures in low relief, on two of which tables ſome traces of men fighting on horſeback are ſtill to be ſeen. Between theſe tombs are three other tables covered with figures; and among theſe, appears the figure of a man on horſeback, preceded by two others, and followed by a third, which is almoſt entirely defaced. There are likewiſe ſome figures in the ſpace between the two laſt works, and three under the third, two of which tender their hands to each other. One of theſe is a woman, and both of them are half buried in the earth. There is alſo a ſquare edifice fronting the firſt tomb, each of whoſe ſides has a width of 27 feet. It riſes higher than the tomb, and has an opening over againſt it, to the north, to which I climbed with great difficulty, and found nothing but a little ſquare apartment, with four windows in two of its ſides, and ſeveral long apertures. I ſeated my ſelf on the ſouthern ſide of this building, where I drew the deſign of deſign of the whole work, as it is exhibited in plate 166; and one of the tombs in particular, as it appears in plate 167.

Theſe tombs poſſeſs an extent of 280 paces, and the little ſquare edifice is ſixty paces diſtant from the firſt of them. The figure of a man on horſeback, between the two tombs, and in the middle of the fourth niche, has his hair ſhaped according to our mode, with a crown upon his head, and a pointed bonnet riſing above it. He is habited after the *Roman* manner, and has a large ſword at his ſide, with the hilt in his left hand. His legs hang down very low, and he preſents his right hand to another on foot before him. The third figure has one knee buried in the earth, and opens the hands like a ſupplicant, and its dreſs is likewiſe in the *Roman* mode. There was formerly another figure behind the horſe, but it is almoſt entirely deſtroyed by time. They are repreſented in plate 168.

The figures that were half buried, appear on the ſide of the third tomb, and two of them have their hands placed on a kind of circle. That in the middle repreſents *Ruſtan*, in a *Roman* dreſs; he has likewiſe a bonnet, and an ornament like a crown, together with flowing hair, a large beard, and his left hand clapt upon the hilt of his ſword. Before him is the figure of a woman, and perhaps one of his miſtreſſes; her hair is repreſented floating over her ſhoulders; ſhe likewiſe wears a crown, and above it another ornament which is not diſtinguiſhable. She is habited almoſt like a *Pallas*, and ſupports part of her drapery with her left hand. The third figure repreſents a military man, with a tiara on his head, ornamented at the top, and his left hand graſps the hilt of his ſword. What he once held in his right hand, is now broken; all that I could diſtinguiſh, with relation to theſe figures, is exhibited in plate 169.

The niche, or table which follows, repreſents two other broken figures on horſeback, that ſeem to be engaged in a combat with lances. one of them has a bonnet like that of *Ruſtan*, and ſomething was originally behind it. The fifth niche has nothing entire, but there is an imperfect appearance of figures fighting on horſeback, as well as in the laſt, which is reduced to the ſame condition, and was, as I ſuppoſe, like the preceding niche. All theſe figures are carved in the rock, and the appearance they make, is odd enough.

On the weſtern ſide of this mountain, and at the diſtance of two hundred paces from the tombs, are two tables with figures, that are likewiſe carved on the rock. That to the left repreſents two men on horſeback, one of whom ſtrongly graſps a circle, of which the other has quitted his hold. It is pretended by ſome, that the firſt is *Alexander*, and the other *Darius*, who reſigns to him the empire by this action. Others ſay theſe figures repreſent two potent princes, or generals, who, after they had been engaged in a long war with each other, without obtaining any advantage, came to an agreement, that he who could wreſt this circle out of the hand of his competitor, ſhould triumph over him, and be acknowledged the victor: But there is no ſtreſs to be laid on theſe ſtories, nor in what is related of *Ruſtan*, who, they pretend, was forty cubits high, and yet he is repreſented with the common ſtature of a man, and the horſe is not larger than the uſual ſize of thoſe animals.

With reſpect to the two horſemen, who hold the circle, one has a round bonnet, out of which a ſet of plumes ſeem to flow; and he is habited in the antique manner, with a kind of general's ſtaff in his left-hand. On the crupper of his horſe is ſomething that reſembles a chain, at the end of which hangs a machine that is not to be diſtinguiſhed. The other has ſomething of the ſame nature, with a round bonnet, which riſes higher than that of the preceding figure, and behind him is another figure holding ſomething above his head, which might poſſibly have been the tail of a ſea horſe. The whole is repreſented in plate 170. On the right of theſe figures, and in the middle of another niche, is the figure of a man, who ſeems reſolved to come out of it, and graſps his ſword with both hands. The other figures, which are on the ſide of this, three to the right, and two on the left, are viſible no farther than the breaſt, and they appear behind a wall; but there is another on this ſide of the wall, with his hands croſſed upon his breaſt.

There are likewiſe two little ſquare ſtructures at the corner of the ſame mountain, and at the diſtance of 250 paces from that which has been already deſcribed. They have the air of little temples, and are near one another, being but ſix feet high, and five in width, on every ſide. There is alſo an aſcent of three ſteps to the ſouth, as may be ſeen in plate 171.

The inhabitants of the village having informed me, that there were ſeveral other tombs among the monuments of *Naxi Ruſtan*, I reſolved to viſit them with a man ſtrong enough to raiſe me up with a cord, that I might view every thing my ſelf; but when I arrived at the place where the cord was to be employed, I became ſenſible that the enterprize would be dangerous, could not prevail upon my ſelf to undertake it, by the aſſiſtance of only one man, with whom I was entirely unacquainted. I therefore cauſed another, whom I accidentally met, and who ſpoke *Dutch*, to aſcend in my place. The villager, who had frequently been there before, climbed up firſt, and then raiſed the other by the aid of the cord, which he wound about his body: this perſon, at the ſame time, exerted himſelf with his feet and hands on the ſide of the rock, by which means he ſoon attained to the place where the villager had fixed himſelf, and advanced to the firſt tomb to the weſt, which was more acceſſible than the reſt. I remained below to give him the neceſſary inſtructions, which I communicated to him with a loud voice. He then meaſured the height of the firſt platform of the ſteep rock, and found that its altitude was equal to eighteen feet: after which he proceeded inward to the diſtance of ſix feet, and as far as the bottom of the ſecond platform of the ſame perpendicular rock, which likewiſe roſe to the height of eighteen feet, and had a depth of ſeven, with a facade of fifty three feet in extent. The entrance into that in the middle was three feet and a half in height, and the rock within, was two feet and three inches thick, and as much without. He there found, oppoſite to the entrance, a tomb diſpoſed lengthwiſe, and on the ſides of it were two others, one on the right, and the other on the left. Two of theſe tombs were eleven feet in length, and the third ten, with a breadth of ſix feet, and a height of five; and its diſtance from the others is no more than a foot and a half. The vault which contains theſe tombs, is entirely formed out of the rock, and they are joined to it at the end, but diſtant from it a foot at the other extremity. Theſe tombs are hewn out of the ſame rock to which they are joined below, as is likewiſe their upper part; ſo that it is impoſſible to judge whether they have ever been opened. They are a foot thick, and no ornaments are to be ſeen upon them. The vault of this grot is ten feet high, twelve in depth, and forty in width. I have been aſſured that there have been nine tombs in the ſecond monument; ſix in the third, and nine in the fourth; but I am not certain whether they are there now, being only able to anſwer for the firſt. At ſome diſtance to the eaſt, near a village, half a league from this place, and in a plain ſurrounded with mountains, is a column, near which, it is ſaid, that there is a portal ſtill to be ſeen, like thoſe of *Perſepolis*; and the country people affirm, that there was formerly a large ſtructure in that place.

The uncertainty reſpect to theſe ruins.

It would be difficult to come to any deciſion, with regard to the ruins of *Perſepolis*, ſince there are not the leaſt remains of any ſtanding edifice, nor any building above the cornices of the portals, doors, or windows, by which any reaſonable conjecture can be formed. It muſt, however, be granted, that they have a much greater reſemblance to the members of a palace, than to thoſe of a temple, of which there is not the leaſt appearance. On the contrary, every thing correſponds with the grandeur and magnificence of a great king's palace, to which the images and figures which cover theſe ruins impart a ſurpriſing air of majeſty. It is certain, that there have been very ſtately portals and grand galleries to afford a communication with all the detached parts of that ſtructure: and moſt of the columns, whoſe remains are ſtill ſo beautiful, were evidently intended to ſupport thoſe galleries, while others might, perhaps, be merely for ornament, like thoſe of *Suzan*, or *Suza*, which is mentioned in the book of *Eſther*. The lodgings of the men and women were ſeparated from each other, according to all appearance; and there even ſeems to be ſtill ſome remains of the royal apartments. In a word, the magnificence of theſe ruins can never be ſufficiently admired, and this ſtructure muſt undoubtedly have coſt immenſe treaſures. The ſame may be ſaid of the ruins which are ſcattered thro' all *Greece*, of which ſo many noble antiquities are ſtill preſerved; and of thoſe of old *Rome*, whoſe remains ſtill diſplay ſuch inexpreſſible grandeur. Theſe laſt, however, have not been ſo entirely demoliſhed as thoſe of the ſtately palace of the king's of *Perſia*, which was the glory of all the Eaſt, and owed its deſtruction to the debaucheries and frenzy of *Alexander the Great*, who, after he had preſerved it from the ravages of war, reduced it to aſhes, at the ſollicitations of *Thais*, a *Grecian* courteſan. He, indeed, repented of his raſh action, but it proved too late. *Quintus Curtius* obſerves, that all the joinery work of this palace was made of cedar; but I ſhould rather imagine it to be ſenna, which is a wood that abounds in *Perſia*, where no cedars are to be found. This laſt is a tree with which I am well acquainted, and have deſcribed it in the firſt volume of my travels, where I offer ſome account of mount *Libanus*. I may, however, be miſtaken, and a length of time may have created a great change, with reſpect both to thoſe trees, and the ruins I have been deſcribing.

The ſituation of the palace.

Theſe latter are ſituated in the thirtieth degree, and fortieth minute of northern latitude, in the ſouthern part of *Aſia*, in the province of *Fars*, or *Farſiſtan*, to the ſouth of *Iſpahan*, and north eaſt from *Zjieraes*, or *Chiras*, according to the computation I have made both by ſea and land; and I have obſerved the ſame exactneſs through the whole courſe of my relation, where I have marked the true diſtances of places, by which means I have rectified the inaccuracies of ſeveral writers, and the generality of maps.

Different names of Perſepolis.

The *Perſians* pretend, that the city of *Perſepolis*, was formerly called *Zjie-raes*, and afterward *Fars*, from the province of that name, if this did not rather derive its name from the city. It is likewiſe called *Elymais*, in the firſt book of the *Maccabees*, where it is ſaid that *Antiochus* advanced to this city with a powerful army, after the death of *Alexander*, to ſeize the treaſures that were there depoſited, but that he could not accompliſh his purpoſe. The ſecond book declares, that this prince was ſhamefully repelled by the inhabitants, which evidently proves that *Perſepolis* is the very city which the *Hebrews* call *Elymais*. The antient annals of *Perſia* declare, that it was founded by a king named *Sjemſchid*, who reigned in that country, with the title of emperor, about 4000 years ago. They perhaps mean *Corus*, or *Cyrus*, the firſt founder of that empire, and the moſt illuſtrious of all its kings; who is mentioned in ſuch an hononrable manner by the prophet *Daniel*, and who delivered the *Jews* from the *Babyloniſh* captivity, after which he cauſed the temple of God to be rebuilt, as we find it recorded at the beginning of the book of *Eſdras*. They even pretend, that *Sjemſchid* lived a thouſand years, and comprehend in that period all the ſucceſſors of that prince, who flouriſhed to the time of *Alexander*, who is known among them by the name of *Schandar*, or *Schandar Su-alcarnaim*. This laſt name intimates that the king of *Macedonia* wore two ſorts of horns, which were the emblems of his fortitude and power. There are ſome learned men among them, who diſtinguiſh him, as I have been ſince informed, by the name of *Schandar-Feyragoes*, which ſignifies *Alexander the Son of Philip*, as he really was, and who take the wreathes of his horſes mains for horns. Others apply to them a myſtic ſenſe, and maintain, that they adumbrate the two parts of the then known world, which were the eaſt and weſt; and it muſt be acknowledged that it was cuſtomary for the orientals to give this name of *Horns*, to the verges or borders of any thing. We accordingly ſee *Alexander* repreſented in this manner, on ſome particular medals, where the treſſes of his horſes reſemble horns.

CHAP. LIII.

Particular remarks, with reſpect to Perſepolis, *and the antient authors, who have written upon that ſubject.*

The ſentiments of Perſian *authors, with relation to the founder of* Perſepolis.

MODERN writers, as well *Perſians* as *Arabians*, pretend that one of their kings, or heroes, called *Giemſchid*, or *Zjemſchid*, founded this capital of the kingdom of *Perſia*, and gave it the name of *Eſtechar*, which ſignifies *hewn out of the rock*. They likewiſe add, that this city was of ſuch a vaſt extent, that it comprehended the city of *Chiras* in its circuit: that Queen *Homai*, the daughter of *Bahaman*, built the palace of this city, called *Gibil*, or *Chilminar*; and that the tombs on the mountain owe their origin to prince *Kitſchtasb*, the ſon of the fifth king of the race of the *Cajanides*, named *Lohoraſp*. See *Herbelot*. (*a*)

The accounts of modern authors uncertain.

But as theſe relations are blended with ſo many fabulous accounts, as render them altogether incredible, and as they neither correſpond with each other in any material particular, nor with the antient *Greek* hiſtorians, or the ſacred records, we cannot repoſe any confidence on their authority.

The Author's opinion.

Theſe particulars being premiſed, I ſhall venture to affirm, with all due deference to the judgment of the learned, that the remaining ruins of *Chilminar*, their ſituation, the traces of the ſtructure, the figures and their habits, together with the ornaments, and whatever elſe is now diſcoverable among them, correſpond with the manners of the

---

(*a*) Biblioth. Orient. at the word *Eſtechar*. pag 327.

antient *Perſians*, and the deſcription, which is ſtill extant, of the antient palace of *Perſepolis*.

The obſervations of Diodorus Siculus.

Diodorus Siculus, who is ſaid to have been contemporary with *Julius Cæſar*, is the only ancient hiſtorian who has tranſmitted to us a ſketch of the famous palace of *Perſepolis*, deſtroyed by *Alexander the Great*; and this he copied from the *Egyptian* and *Greek* antiquities, which are now loſt in the ocean of time. This anthor, after he had declared that *Alexander* expoſed all this capital * of the *Perſian* kingdom, except the royal palace †, to the plunder of his *Macedonians*, deſcribes this palace, as an extraordinary ſtructure, in the following words: *This ſuperb edifice, ſays he, or the palace royal, is ſurrounded with a triple wall; the firſt, which is exceedingly magnificent, riſes ſixteen cubits high, and is flanked with towers. and a parapet. The ſecond reſembles the firſt, with reſpect to the fabrication, but has twice its height. The third is ſquare; and hewn out of the rock; it is likewiſe ſixty cubits high. Its curtins are fenced with paliſades of copper, and gates of the ſame metal, twenty cubits high; the former of theſe were intended to create terror, the latter were deſigned for the ſecurity of the palace; to the eaſt of which is a tract of land, containing two acres; and beyond that, the royal mountain, where the tombs of the* Perſian *kings are erected*[a].

* Μητρόπολις τῆς Περσῶν βασιλείας.
† Χωρὶς τῶν βασιλέων.

We can hardly be ſurprized, if the ruins of this antient Pile, which was reduced to aſhes by *Alexander the Great*, two thouſand years ago, do not exactly correſpond to the deſcription given of this palace by *Diodorus*, if we only conſider the great changes which have happened in *Perſia* ſince that time. After the death of that prince, for inſtance, it fell to the ſhare of one of his captains, who rendered it hereditary in his family. It was afterwards conquered by the *Parthians*; but the *Perſians*, in proceſs of time, regained it by the bravery of *Artaxerxes*, in the time of *Alexander Severus*, and governed it for a long ſpace of time; till at laſt the ſucceſſors of *Mohammed* made themſelves maſters of it by force of arms. I ſay, when all theſe particulars are duly attended to, it can never be thought ſurprizing, that authors ſhould have different ſentiments with reſpect to the ſubject before us; and eſpecially ſince it may be preſumed, that the devaſtations of wars, tempeſts, and earthquakes, have entirely deſtroyed a conſiderable part of this ſtately edifice, or buried it, at leaſt, in the boſom of the earth. On the contrary, there is reaſon to be aſtoniſhed, that there are now to be found ſeveral things, according to the deſcription of *Don Garcias de Silva de Figueroa*, in his embaſſy to *Perſia*, [b] which correſpond with *Diodorus Siculus*, and ſeveral other antient writers; and as my plates agree with thoſe deſcriptions, I think we may conclude that the ruins of *Chilminar* are thoſe of the famous palace of *Perſepolis*, which was deſtroyed by *Alexander the Great*.

Other Remarks of Diod. Siculus.

Diodorus Siculus declares, in the Place before cited, that there was a piece of ground, containing two acres, between the palace and the mountain, where the tombs of the kings are to be ſeen. I have made the ſame obſervation, as well as the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſador already mentioned, who concurs with my account in his deſcription of *Chilminar*, the diſtance only excepted, in which he differs a little from the *Greek* hiſtorian. For though the *Latin* verſion of that Author, to which I had recourſe, aſſigns no more than an extent of 400 feet to four *plethra*, or half acres of land, it is not to be inferred from thence, that he means the uſual feet of the *Greeks* and *Romans*. On the contrary, tho' a certain unknown author, cited by *Saumaſius*[c], affirms, that the

---

[a] Vide lib. xvii. p. m. Edit. Hen. Steph. 599. ſeq. & Wech. p. 543. ſeq.

[b] Page 144. ſeq.

[c] In Exerc. Plin.

Greek word ϖλέθρον ſignified, among the *Romans*, an extent of land, compriſing a hundred ſquare feet, it is ſtill certain, that the royal foot, which the *Greeks* call *Plethaerius*, was ſixteen inches long; and this is confirmed by the ſame (*a*) *Saumaſius*. The learned *Lipſius* judges likewiſe, that the ϖλέθρον almoſt correſponded with *jugerum agri Romani*, or half an acre of land, according to the *Roman* meaſure. And in order to be convinced of this, we need only examine this treatiſe of the military art of the (*b*) *Romans*. All theſe particulars being duly conſidered, I am of opinion, that my uſual ſteps ſufficiently agree with the relations of theſe antient writers, and this contributes to prove, that the ruins of *Chilminar* are thoſe of the antient palace of *Perſepolis*. The illuſtrious *Iſaac Voſſius* thinks to the ſame effect in his remarks on *Ponponius* (*c*) *Mela*.

Ptolemy (*d*) of *Alexandria*, an antient Geographer, likewiſe places *Perſepolis* in the height of 33 degrees and 20 minutes of ſouth latitude. *Strabo*, *Stephanus*, *Ammianius Marcellinus*, and ſome others, likewiſe mention *Perſepoiis*, but without ſpecifying its ſituation. (*e*) *Saumaſius* is of opinion, that *Ptolemy*, and his tranſcriber *Ammianius*, have taken notice of this city, as of a place which ſtill ſubſiſted, tho' he is perſuaded, that no traces of it were remaining in their time; and that *Alexander* reduced that city to aſhes, as well as the palace. *Quintus Curtius* ſeems alſo to have embraced the ſame (*f*) ſentiment. Whether the *Greeks*, therefore, and *Romans*, had travelled but little into *Perſia*, after the death of *Alexander*, or that the writings of thoſe among them, who gave any account of *Perſepolis*, have been deſtroyed, like ſeveral other works, it appears, however, by the firſt book of the (*g*) *Maccabees*, and likewiſe by the teſtimony of (*h*) *Joſephus*, that the city of *Perſepolis*, which was called *Elimais* by the antient *Perſians*, ſubſiſted, at leaſt in part, in the time of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, whether it was, that *Alexander* had not entirely deſtroyed it, as I am inclined to think, or that part of it was rebuilt ſince that time (*i*). Nor can I ſee any reaſon why we ſhould not pay as much regard to the apochryphal books of the ſacred Scripture, and the hiſtory of *Joſephus*, as we do to the pagan authors; andthe rather, as we are ſenſible, that the *Jews* were diſperſed through all parts, after the *Babyloniſh* captivity, and that ſeveral of them, after the time of *Alexander*, went to ſettle in *Perſia*, where I am perſuaded their deſendants have continued to this day.

Proofs drawn from the figures and ornaments.

But if theſe particulars ſhould not be thought deciſive in this point, yet it evidently appears, by the arms, habits, and ornaments of the figures, as well as by the hieroglyphics that are ſtill to be found at *Chilminar*, that it was an antient palace of the *Perſian* kings, and muſt certainly be that of *Perſepolis*. This I ſhall endeavour to prove, by the teſtimony of authors who have written on this ſubject.

The military habits of the Perſians *and* Medes.

The military habits of the figures no the ſtair-caſe, are partly agreeable to the mode of the *Perſians*, and partly to that of the *Medes*. Thoſe of the antient *Perſians* were of leather, with a girdle of the ſame ſubſtance, according to (*k*) *Herodotus*; bnt they changed this faſhion after the reign of *Cyrus*; and it is certain that thoſe of the figures on the ſtair-caſe are the ſame that were worn in *Perſia*, when *Xerxes* invaded *Greece*. They uſed bonnets made in the form of *Tiaras*; their robes were covered with thin plates of iron, like the ſcales of a fiſh, and their drawers were faſtened below, round the leg. They likewiſe carried of bucklers, called *Gerra*, and made of interwoven cords; and the *Romans* after-

---

(*a*) Ad Sol. p. 582. ſeq. & p. 684. ſeq.
(*b*) l. v. Dial. 2. ſub. finem.
(*c*) Ad melam de ſitu orbis. lib. 3. c. 8. p. m. 379.
(*d*) Vide lib. 6. c. 4. ſub finem. p. m. 174.
(*e*) Vid. exercit. ad ſolin. p. m. 1226 & 1228. A.
(*f*) Lib. 5. c. 23.
(*g*) Chap. vi. ver. 1. ſeq. & chap. ix. ver. 2.
(*h*) Lib. 12.
(*i*) Vide Bochart. Geog. ſacr. L. 2. c. 10. &c.
(*k*) Lib. 1. c. 71.

ward called the *Spaniſh* bucklers by the ſame name. Beſide theſe, they alſo carried arrows, which hung down on their bodies; and ſhort pikes, together with a large quiver, and javelins made of canes or reeds, with a poinard on the right ham; and they uſed theſe arms in imitation of the *Medes*. The *Ciſſiers*, or *Kiſchiers*, a people in *Perſia*, wore at that time, mitres inſtead of Tiaras, according to (*a*) *Herodotus*. The long robes without plaits, were undoubtedly *Perſian*, *Stolæ Perſicæ*, and they are mentioned by *Cælius* (*b*) *Rhodiginus*: but *Cyrus* introduced the plaited robes, after he had conquered *Aſia*, and he cauſed theſe habits to be diſtributed to the *Perſians* at his firſt offering, after he taken *Babylon*, agreeable to the mode of *Media*; and the *Perſians* had no ſuch habits till that time, according to *Xenophon*. (*c*)

An evident proof taken from the ſtair-caſe.

The ſtair-caſe, where the figures appear, is a manifeſt proof that the ruins of *Chilminar* are thoſe of the palace of *Perſepolis*, becauſe the habits and arms of the figures, which are entirely different from thoſe which are now uſed by the modern *Perſians*, make it evident, that this ſtair-caſe ſubſiſted at the time of the kings of the firſt race, and even in that of *Xerxes the Great*. Don *Garcias de Silva de Figueroa*, ambaſſador of *Spain* to king *Abbas*, mentions this ſtair-caſe, as a piece of ſculpture which repreſented a triumph, and yet it has no ſimilitude to thoſe which are now exhibited in *Perſia*. For *Xenophon* expreſly (*d*) declares, after he had deſcribed the offering made by *Cyrus* at *Babylon*, that all the kings of *Perſia* who ſucceeded that prince, imitated his manner of habiting himſelf, when he appeared in public, and that no beaſts were ever introduced, when oblations were not made. It is well known that the *Perſians* ſacrificed horſes to the ſun, and oxen to the moon. The horſes repreſented the rapidity of the ſun's courſe; and the oxen were emblems of huſbandry, over which the moon was ſaid to preſide. See (*e*) *Xenophon*, (*f*) *Heliodorus*, and (*g*) *Lewis Feburier*.

But as the figures of camels, aſſes, and goats, are to be ſeen upon this ſtair-caſe, as well as thoſe of horſes and oxen, I will venture to affirm, with all due ſubmiſſion to the learned, that the whole ſculpture of this ſtair-caſe repreſents a feſtival at the birth of a king, with the offerings preſented to him, and which is ſtill practiſed on that occaſion; when ſheep, deer, and all manner of roaſted proviſions are brought to the king's tables as an offering. See (*h*) *Athenæus*.

Theſe proceſſions are preceded by ſome perſons who wear a *Tiara*, or a kind of crown upon their heads, which was cuſtomary in the time of *Cyrus*, in whoſe reign the principal lords of his court, who were called *Æquales*, were obliged to aſſiſt at offerings and feſtivals, with crowns on their heads, becauſe it was the general opinion, that the gods were delighted to behold the magnificence of thoſe who made oblations to them, and that they received them more favourably on that account. See *Xenophon*. (*i*)

The vaſes which are carried by theſe figures, were undoubtedly filled with odoriferous herbs, and particularly with myrrh, which were preſents that the kings of *Perſia* received with pleaſure, even from their ſubjects, as *Athenæus* (*k*) declares.

The *Spaniſh* ambaſſador, who has been ſo often mentioned, is perſuaded, that the animal attacked by the lion, on the ſtair-caſe, repreſents an ox, or a bull; but I rather think it intended for a horſe or an aſs. This particular piece of ſculpture, is no more than a hieroglyphic,

---

(*a*) Lib. 7. c. 61. & ſeq. (*b*) Lect. antiq. Lib. 18. c. 29. (*c*) Cyropæd. Lib. 5. c. 22.
(*d*) L. 8. c. 26. (*e*) Lib. C. (*f*) Æthiop. Lib. X. (*g*) Edit. Pariſ. 1629.
(*h*) L. 4. p. 145. & l. 12. p. 514. ſeq. edit. Commelin. 1597. (*i*) Cyrop. l. 3. c. 22. &c.
(*k*) L. 12. p. 514.

representing *virtue* victorious over *force*; and every one knows, that the antient *Perſians* and *Egyptians*, concealed their greateſt myſteries under equivocal figures, as *Heliodorus* obſerves (*a*).

As all theſe animals, therefore, are repreſented with horns, which are not natural to them, ſome myſtery muſt certainly be intended by that ſculpture; and this ſuppoſition ſeems the more reaſonable, becauſe it is well known that horns were antiently the emblem of ſtrength, and even of majeſty itſelf; and that they have been conſigned to the ſun and moon, as well as to *Alexander the Great*; who is called *Dhulkarnam*, or the *horned*, by the *Oriental* people, becauſe he made himſelf king of the two horns of the ſun, namely the eaſt and weſt (*b*).

Juſtice repreſented by a balance.

As to the ſcales, it is well known that juſtice was held in great veneration by the antient *Perſians*, as *Xenophon* has obſerved (*c*); for which reaſon balances were carried before the king and the grandees, to repreſent that juſtice to their view. This cuſtom likewiſe prevailed among the antient *Greeks*, and afterward among the *Romans*.

Why ſphinxes were repreſented with wings.

The figures in the two firſt portals very much reſemble a horſe, both before and behind, only the head ſeems to be like that of an ape; and indeed the tail has no great ſimilitude to that of a horſe, but this may be imputed to the ornaments which are faſtned to it, and were much uſed among the antient *Perſians*. They had the name of ſphinx, becauſe they reſembled apes, and as the antients likewiſe gave this denomination to a certain bird, the *Greeks*, and undoubtedly the *Perſians*, repreſented them with wings. Some naturaliſts pretend that they are alſo emblematical of the power of fixed and volatile ſalts.

Paraſols uſed by the antient Perſians.

The paraſol was antiently in uſe among the *Perſians*, and *Xenophon* (*d*) ſeems to fix the invention of it to the time of *Artaxerxes*, the brother of *Cyrus the Younger*, and not to that of *Cyrus the Great*, in whoſe reign the *Perſians* imitated the habits, ornaments, and manners of the *Medes*, without having recourſe to any precautions againſt the heat of the ſun, or the violence of winds and ſeaſons. But this was changed in the reign of *Artaxerxes*, who addicted himſelf to wine and debaucheries, with his whole court, and ſunk into ſuch an effeminate ſoftneſs, that the ſhade of trees, and refreſhing coolneſs of caverns and grots, were no longer thought a ſufficient ſhelter from the heat of the ſun, paraſols therefore became neceſſary, and domeſtics to carry them.

The plaited robes of the Medes.

The two figures armed with lances, repreſent the *Tunicæ manicatæ*, or long plaited robes of the *Medes*, which were worn by the *haſtati*, or *lance-men*, as well *Medes* as *Perſians*, in the reigns of *Cyrus*, and ſeveral of his ſucceſſors. What theſe figures have on their heads, is a kind of bonnet or mitre, mentioned by *Herodotus* (*e*) in his deſcription of the habits and arms of the forces of king *Xerxes*, and likewiſe of the *Greeks*. *Rhodiginus* (*f*), in conjunction with this author, will ſufficiently clear up this point.

The three figures that are partly broken, and one of which has a plaited robe, and a tiara, together with his chin wrapped up with linnen, repreſents a *Perſian* prieſt. *Hyde* gives a particular account of them in his hiſtory of the religion of the antient *Perſians* (*g*).

The figure which is repreſented as bearing ſome particular offerings, exhibits a *Perſian* ſoldier, of the claſs already mentioned; and I take the other figure, which encounters a lion, and is habited like a *Mede*, to be an hieroglyphic; becauſe the *Egyptians*, from whom the *Perſians* borrowed ſeveral cuſtoms, repreſent

---

(*a*) Lib. 10.

(*b*) Vid. Abul-Pharai Dynaſt. vi. pr. p. m. 96.

(*c*) L. 8. c. 54. coll. l. 1. c. 4. & 12.

(*d*) Lib. 8. c. 53. & 55.

(*e*) L. vii. c. 61. & ſeq.

(*f*) Lect. ant. L. xviii. c. 21.

(*g*) C. 30. p. 369. Fig. 2.

ſtrength and fortitude, by the figure of a lion. The reader may conſult *Clemens Alexandrinus (a)* with relation to this particular. It may likewiſe be intended for a real combat, the *Medes* and *Perſians* having been very fond of encountring animals, as *Xenophon* obſerves in his inſtitution of *Cyrus* (*b*). Thoſe who are verſed in antiquity may judge of theſe figures as they think proper.

The figures of the pilaſter, which is half buried in the earth, are alſo arrayed after the manner of the *Medes*, as was intimated in my obſervations on the figure that bears a paraſol. There is likewiſe a *Perſian* prieſt habited in the ſame mode, againſt the window, and he is repreſented as conducting his offering, which is a goat with a bending horn. The figure is very extraordinary, in the ſtyle of the antients, who repreſent their oblations by ſtrange figures, when any myſterious conſecration was to be celebrated. *Heliodorus (c)* treats of this ſubject at large, as well as *Pignorius*, in his deſcription of the temple of *Iſis*.

The pilaſter which is covered with figures, repreſents a royal audience, where the king appears ſeated on his throne, with a foot-ſtool, after the manner of the antient *Perſians*. The book of *Eſther (d)* makes mention of this ſolemn appearance of the king on his throne; and ſo does *Xenophon* (*e*). The firſt figure, which ſtands behind the king, is habited in the *Median* mode; the ſecond in the *Perſian*; and the third like the firſt. The lances compacted together repreſent the ſtrength and concord of the kingdom; and the woman, habited in the *Perſian* manner, is the figure of a ſupplicant. The other figures, armed with lances and bucklers, are guards clothed like *Medes*, and they are ranged on each ſide, in the hollow of the pilaſter.

The pilaſter which is moſt ornamented, exhibits the figure of another king, or ſome perſon of great diſtinction, who is likewiſe habited like a *Mede*, with a kind of crown on his head, which was an ornament uſually worn by thoſe who were the king's favourites: See *Xenophon (f)*.

The figures below the Work ſeem intended as ornaments and ſupporters, and they are habited after the *Perſian* manner. The Pilaſter, whoſe pedeſtal is ſtill to be ſeen, repreſents ſomething of the ſame nature.

The tomb near Perſepolis.

The tomb, which is hewn out of the rock near *Perſepolis*, exhibits the figure of a king before an altar, flaming with the ſacred fire, which was held in ſuch great veneration among the *Perſians*, that they carried it into the army in times of war, upon a ſilver altar, as *Quintus Curtius* obſerves. (*g*) The care of this fire was committed to the *Magi*, and it was never ſuffered to be extinguiſhed, but at the death of the king. See *Diodorus Siculus (h)*.

The figure, that is ſuppoſed to be a king before the altar, is arrayed with a long robe, after the manner of the *Medes*, with a crown upon his head, and a deflected ſerpent in his hand. I am perſuaded that he is making ſome oblation, and this is the more probable, becauſe it is well known, that *Cambyſes* and *Cyrus* were *Magi*, as well as kings, and conſequently were obliged to preſent offerings in that quality. For which reaſon, when *Cyrus* accompanied his uncle *Cyaxares*, king of the *Medes*, in his expedition againſt the *Aſſyrians*, *Cambyſes* preſented an offering for his ſon and his army; and when *Cyrus* returned into *Perſia*, after the conqueſt of the *Babylonian* kingdom, *Cambyſes* aſſembled the grandees of his empire, and iſſued a decree, by which he enjoined *Cyrus* to make an offering in perſon, and in favour of his people, when he ſhould aſcend the throne of *Perſia*, after his death; and this ceremonial was to be performed by a prince of the blood, in

---

(*a*) 4 Hierogl. (*b*) Lib. i. (*c*) Æthiop. lib. x.
(*d*) Chap. v. ver. 1. (*e*) Lib. vii. cap. 25. ſeq.
(*f*) Lib. viii. cap. 12, 17, 22, 23, & 28. (*g*) Lib. iii. cap. 7. (*h*) Lib. xvii.

the abſence of the king. *Xenophon* takes notice of theſe particulars in his inſtitution of *Cyrus (a)*.

As to the ſerpent deflected into a half round, the antients intended to repreſent by this hierogliphic, a king whoſe dominion was not very extenſive; but when they would expreſs a great monarch, they delineated a ſerpent form'd into a circle, and holding his tail with his teeth, as may be found in *Orus Apollo (b)*. From whence I judge, that this ſerpent, if it be one, which the king has in his hand, adumbrates the king of *Perſia*; but if it ſhould even be a bow, my conjecture would not be leſs reaſonable, becauſe the *Perſians* affected to carry a bow and arrows, to diſtinguiſh themſelves from other nations; and this remark is confirmed by the figures on the ſtair-caſe, which are repreſented with quivers on their ſhoulders.

The little figure that appears in the air, and which Mr. *Hyde* takes for a king, in the act of flying, or for a ſoul that ſoars to the heavens, has the ſame habit and ornaments for the head, as that of the king, below it. *Strabo* declares (*c*), that the *Perſians* did not burn the offerings they preſented to the ſun, but divided them among themſelves, through a perſuaſion that the Gods were ſatisfied with the ſouls of thoſe animals that were offered to them. For my part, I think this figure may properly ſignify an oracle, becauſe it is ſeated on a tripod, as was cuſtomary at *Delphos*.

The figures on each ſide of the tomb, are alſo habited like *Medes*, and thoſe that appear between the ornaments, with lifted hands, are dreſſed after the *Perſian* manner.

The heads of animals, with a horn, are only ornaments expreſſive of the regal power, as I have already intimated.

The ſun an antient divinity of the Per*ſians.*

The ſun, that appears above the altar, repreſents the antient divinity of the *Perſians*, as *Strabo* and *Quintus Curtius* have obſerved.

In a word, one of the principal reaſons by which we are inclined to believe, that *Chilminar* was the antient palace of *Perſepolis*, is becauſe we find that the tombs which are to the eaſt, on the mountain, were antiently called the royal monuments.

As to that of *Naxi Ruſtan*, I am well perſuaded that it was built by *Darius* the ſon of *Hyſtaſpes*, becauſe the exterior part of this tomb exactly correſponds with the deſcription given of it by *Cteſias* in his hiſtory of *Perſia* (*d*), after *Herodotus*; and with that of *Diodorus Siculus*, which has been already mentioned.

The words of this hiſtorian are theſe: Darius *ordered a tomb to be built for himſelf on a double mountain, where his friends, who had an inclination to ſee him, cauſed themſelves to be raiſed up by a prieſt, with the aid of a rope.*

When all theſe particulars are duly conſidered, it muſt be granted that there is a great reſemblance between *Chilminar*, and the palace of the antient city of *Perſepolis*: But it would be difficult to aſſign the particular time when it was founded, becauſe when *Xenophon* (*e*) mentions the journey *Cyrus* took from *Babylon* to *Perſia*, to viſit the king his father, he only ſays, that having left his troops by the way, he proceeded to the city, without naming it. As to any other particulars, it is very probable, that the city of *Elymais*, which was the capital of the kingdom, was afterward called *Perſepolis*. As to the figures and ornaments that are to be ſeen at *Chilminar*, they were made in after-times by ſeveral kings.

(*a*) Lib. i, cap. 24. & lib. viii. cap. 38. & alibi.

(*b*) Nicolai hieroglyph. No. 56, 58, 60, 61.

(*c*) Georg. lib. xv. p. 732. ſeq. Edit. Caſaub.

(*d*) Vide Exerp. Phot. Segm. 15. ſeu p. 642. Op. Herodot. Ed Francof.

(*e*) Lib. viii. cap. 37.

CHAP. LIV.

Obſervations concerning the founder of the royal palace of Perſepolis, *which was deſtroyed by* Alexander the Great, *and is known at this time by the name of* Chilminar.

The Macedonians *maſters of* Perſia.

WHEN *Alexander the Great* had conquered king *Darius*, and ſeized his empire, agreeably to the prophecy of *Daniel* (*a*), that prince gave up, to the pillage of his ſoldiers, the famous city of *Perſepolis*, which was ſituated on the *Araxis*, that flows on one ſide of *Chilminar*, at a ſmall diſtance, according to the learned *Iſaac Voſſius* (*b*). He afterward made himſelf maſter of the treaſures which had been amaſſed in the palace of that capital, from the time of *Cyrus* the founder of the *Perſian* empire. Thoſe treaſures, according to antient authors, amounted to a hundred and twenty thouſand talents (*c*). To theſe muſt be added ſix thouſand talents which were found at *Paſagarda*; 50000 at *Suſa*, and 26000 at *Ecbatane*, which amount in the whole to 202000 talents, excluſive of the money that was at *Damaſcus*, *Arbela*, and *Babylon* (*d*): Tho' *Diodorus* and *Plutarch*, as well as *Juſtin*, ſay there were no more than 40000 talents at *Suſa*.

Its treaſures.

Nothing can give a better idea of the ill uſe *Alexander* made of his fortunate conqueſts, than the exceſſes he committed on the day when he celebrated their feſtival. He invited all his friends on that occaſion, and ſeveral courtiſans, among whom was a *Grecian* woman, named *Thais*, who, ſeeing him heated with wine, perſuaded him to fire the ſtately palace of that city, and, at the ſame time, ſpirited up all the gueſts, to imitate the example of that prince. His troops, who were then encamped at a very ſmall diſtance from the city, ſeeing the flames, and imputing them to chance, immediately haſtened thither to prevent the conſequences; but when they beheld *Alexander* with a torch in his hand, they threw away the water they brought, and aſſiſted him in compleating the deſtruction of that fine palace, the glory of the eaſt, and the ſeat of its kings. This event according to *Diodorus*, (*e*) happen'd about the cloſe of the fourth year of the 112th olmypiad; in the year of the world 3621, according to *Helvicus*; the 4385th of the *Julian* period, and 327 years before the birth of our Lord *Jeſus Chriſt*. It is ſaid that *Alexander* intended, by this action, to revenge the conduct of *Xerxes*, who had formerly deſtroyed the temples of *Greece*, and particularly thoſe of *Athens*, in the ſame manner. But *Arrian* cenſures the proceeding of *Alexander* (*f*), and declares this to be an improper manner of avenging himſelf on the antient *Perſians*. He adds, that *Parmenio* employed all his efforts to prevent the deſtruction of that fine palace, and told *Alexander*, that he ought to preſerve the rich acquiſitions of his valour, and that he would infallibly draw upon himſelf the hatred of the *Aſiatics*, who would imagine that his only intention was to deſtroy *Aſia*, inſtead of deriving any real advantages from his conqueſt of that country (*g*). He accordingly preſerved it, but did not enjoy it for any long time; and this empire was rent, and divided after

---

(*a*) Chap. xi. ver. 3, &c.

(*b*) Ad Pompon. Mel. cap. viii. p. m. 370.

(*c*) Vide Diod. Sicul. lib. xviii. p. 600. Edit. Steph. ſeu p. 544. Edit. Wech. Conf. Curt. lib. v. cap. 20.

(*d*) Conf. Curt. lib. vi. cap. 4. Arrian lib. iii. de exp. Alex.

(*e*) Lib. & p. c. ſeq.

(*f*) Lib. iii. p. m. 66.

(*g*) Conf. Curt. lib. v. cap. 22. ſeq.

his death among his captains. And when theſe had weakened themſelves by their continual diviſions and wars, the *Parthians*, under the conduct of *Arſaces*, made themſelves maſters of *Perſia* and ſeveral other of its dependant ſtates. But the *Perſians* commanded by *Artaxerxes*, regained the poſſeſſion of thoſe territories, in the time of the emperor *Alexander Severus*, and the *Mohammedan Khaifahs* afterward made themſelves maſters of the ſame, and then the *Sophies*, from whom the preſent king is deſcended.

Tho' *Arrian*, *Quintus Curtius*, *Juſtin*, and ſome others, call the palace of *Perſepolis*, the palace of *Cyrus*, it would yet be difficult to point out the true founder, as has been already obſerved: But if it was not built by *Cyrus* himſelf, it might poſſibly have been erected by *Cambyſes*, *Darius*, or *Xerxes*, as far as can be judged by its architecture. This conjecture is even ſtrengthened by a paſſage in *Diodorus*, *(a)* who declares, ſpeaking of the magnificence of *Thebes* and *Egypt*, that indeed the ſtructures which were raiſed there, ſtill ſubſiſted in his time, but that all the ornaments of gold, ſilver, ivory, and ſtone, had been carried away by the *Perſians*, when *Cambyſes* cauſed the temples of *Egypt* to be burnt, and that out of the ſpoils of that kingdom which were tranſported into *Aſia*, the palaces of *Perſepolis* and *Suſa* were built, and that workmen were ſent from *Egypt* to raiſe thoſe ſtructures. The ſame *Diodorus* indeed ſays in another place, that the palace of *Suſa* had been built long before the foundation of the *Perſian* empire, by *Memnon* the Son of *Tithonus*, whom *Teutamus* king of *Aſſyria*, is ſaid to have ſent to the ſuccour of *Priam* during the ſiege of *Troy*, with 10000 *Ethiopians*, together with as many troops of *Suſiana*, and 200 chariots; and that the palace was called *Memnonia* from him *(b)*. With reſpect to the city of *Suſa*, it is ſaid to have derived its name from the white lillies which grew in the adjacent parts; and it is agreed, that *Cyrus*, and the *Perſians* cauſed a palace to be erected there, after they had ſubdued the *Medes*, in order to be nearer to *Babylonia*, and the other dominions that were ſubjected to their empire; at leaſt, this is the opinion of *Strabo* *(c)*. *Pliny* however declares, *(d)* that the palace of *Suſa* was built by *Darius* the ſon of *Hyſtaſpes*; which, with what has been cited from *Diodorus*, may have occaſioned the opinion that this prince enlarged that city, and founded a palace there, eſpecially as this is confirmed by *(e) Ælian*.

The palace of Perſepolis *built, or adorned, with the ſpoils of* Egypt.

It cannot, in my opinion, be doubted, that the palace of *Perſepolis* was likewiſe built, or at leaſt adorned and embelliſhed with the ſpoils of *Egypt*, as *Diodorus* has obſerved. There might, indeed, have been a city and caſtle of that name, in the time of *Cyrus*, but it certainly had not then attained to that degree of ſplendor and magnificence, in which it afterward appeared, at leaſt it is not mentioned in that manner by any hiſtorian. And what is ſtill more to our purpoſe, *Herodotus*, *Xenophon*, and the other hiſtorians of thoſe times, do not rank even the palace of *Perſepolis* among the royal manſions of *Cyrus*. *Juſtin*, indeed, after *Trogus*, and ſome modern writers, ſlightly mention the city of *Perſepolis*, but reckon only the palaces of *Babylon*, *Ecbatane*, and *Suſa*, among thoſe of *Cyrus*. It is likewiſe certain, that the antient *Greek* hiſtorians, *Herodotus*, *Cteſias*, and ſome others, hardly take any notice of that of *Perſepolis*, and poſitively declare, that moſt of the kings who reigned after *Cyrus*, reſided at *Suſa*. Beſide, *Caſſiodorus* *(f)* ranks among the ſeven wonders

---

(a) Lib. i. p. 30. Ed. Steph. ſeu p. 43 Wech. (b) Vid. L. ii. p. 77. Edit. Stephan. ſeu p. 109. Wech. Conf. Herod. L. v. c. 53. ſeq. & L. vii. c. 1. 51. Strabo L. xv. p. m. 728. Steph. ſub voce Σȣσα. (c) L. c. p. 727. (d) Lib. vi. c. 27. Hiſt. Nat.

(e) Lib. i. c. 59. Conf. Guil. Hill. in Comm. ſuo ad Dionyſ. Orbis deſcript. Ver. 1074. p. 357. Edit. Londin. (f) Lib. vii. ep. 15.

1704. of the world, the palace of *Cyrus*, founded at *Suſa* by *Memnon*, with the utmoſt magnificence, and that the very Stones of it were riveted together with gold; and yet it cannot be deined that the ſeat of the *Perſian* empire and of all the eaſt was fixed at *Perſepolis*, in the Time of *Xerxes*, and *Alexander the Great*. See *Quintus Curtius* to that effect(*a*). The palace of this capital may have even been called the palace of *Cyrus*, and this prince might formerly have made it the ſeat of his reſidence, before that edifice had received the ornaments which were afterward added to it; but he can never be conſidered as its founder: For if it was really finiſhed with ſo much magnificence, and adorned with the ſpoils of *Egypt*, as *Diodorus* declares, it muſt have been after his death. *Cambyſes* likewiſe could not be the founder of it, any more than his father, ſince he died in his return from *Egypt*; and it is impoſſible it ſhould be *Smerdis* the *Magus*, who uſurped the crown after the death of that prince, ſince he enjoyed it but ſix months. I therefore conclude, that it was erected by the ſame *Darius* who adorned and embelliſhed the city of *Suſa*, and that *Xerxes*, the richeſt and moſt potent of all the *Perſian* kings compleated the Work. *Strabo* (*b*) confirms my opinion, when he declares, that after the kings of *Perſia* had embelliſhed the palace of *Suſa*, they did the ſame by thoſe of *Perſepolis* and *Paſagarda*, where their treaſures and archives were depoſited, becauſe they were fortified places, and had been the reſidence of their anceſtors. Beſide, the habits of the figures that are ſtill to be ſeen among the ruins of this palace, have no correſpondence with thoſe of the antient *Perſians*, but reſemble thoſe that were afterward introduced by *Cyrus* and his ſucceſſors. We likewiſe find in *Quintus Curtius*, (*c*) that after *Alexander* had recovered from his intoxication, he repented of the action he had committed, and ſaid, that the *Perſians* would have been more mortified to have ſeen him ſeated in the palace, and on the throne of *Xerxes* at *Perſepolis*, than to behold the ſame palace reduced to aſhes. But this hiſtorian is miſtaken, when he pretends, that not the leaſt traces of this palace were to be ſeen after that conflagration, except the river *Araxis*, which marked out in ſome meaſure the place where it was ſituated. For it is certain, that there are ſtill to be found at *Chilminar*, moſt of thoſe particulars, which the antients aſcribe to the palace of *Perſepolis*, though much impaired, as appears by the plates and figures inſerted in theſe travels.

CHAP. LV.

The author's departure from Perſepolis. *His arrival at* Zjie-raes, *or* Chiras. *The deſcription of that city. His arrival at* Iſpahan.

1705. AFTER I had employed almoſt three months in ſearching after all the famous antiquities of *Perſepolis*, and had fully ſatisfied my curioſity, I ſet out from thence the 27th. of *January*, 1705, and returned through the plain, where I did not find ſo much game as I had ſeen the firſt time, the ſeaſon being far advanced. When I had

---

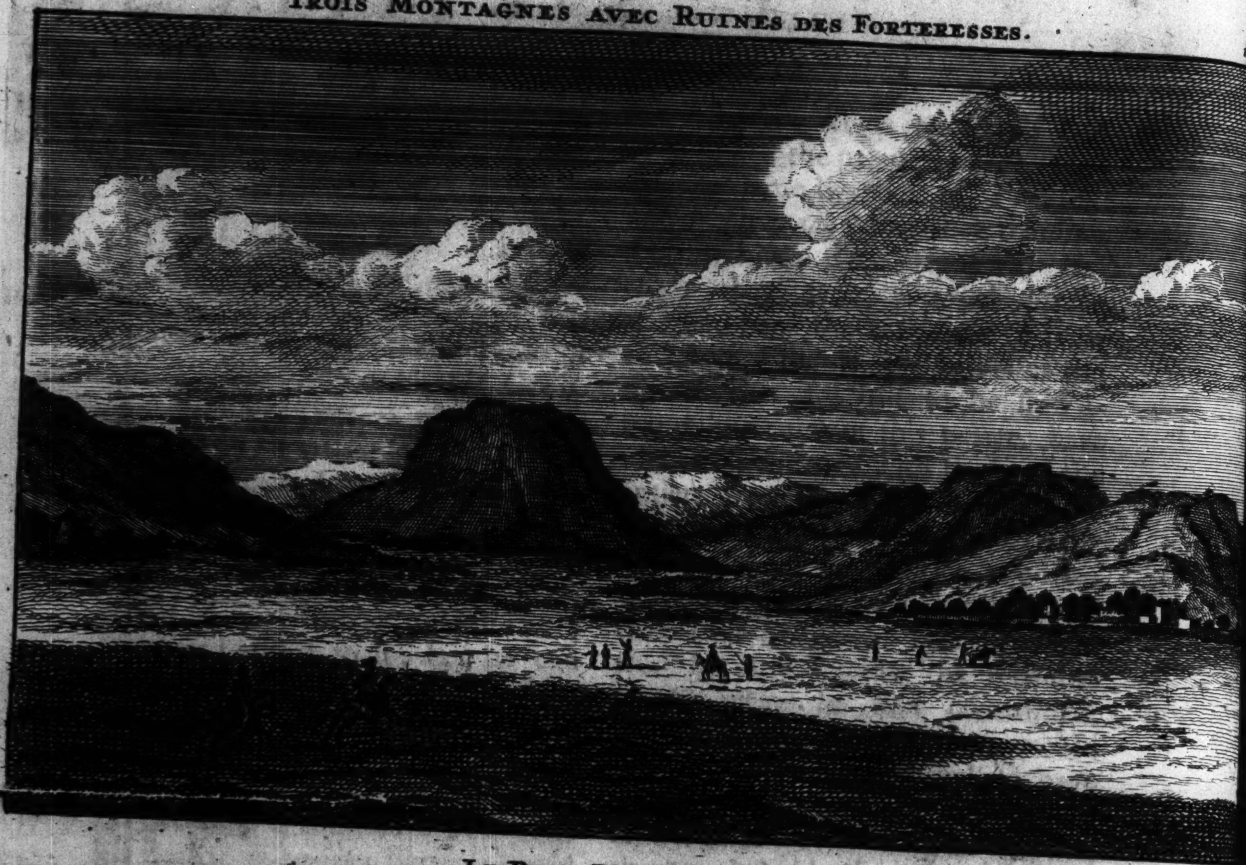
(*a*) Lib. v. c. 23.

(*b*) Cit. 528.

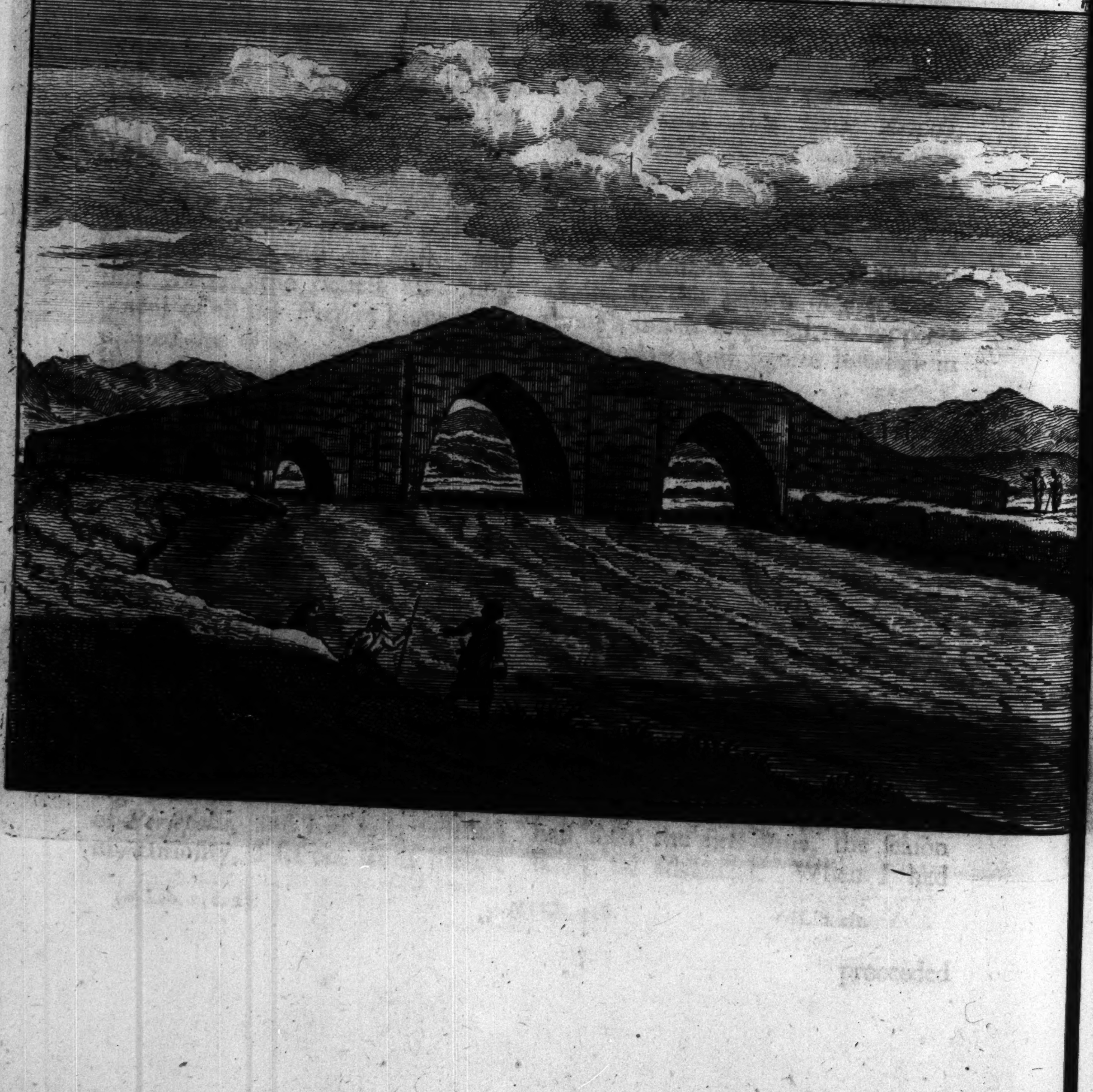
(*c*) Lib. cit.

7 AP 53

TROIS MONTAGNES AVEC RUINES DES FORTERESSES.



LE PONT POL-ZJAE-SADE.



1704. proceeded half way in my journey, I drew the three mountains, on which had formerly been the fortreſſes already mentioned. The firſt and largeſt of theſe mountains is that which ſeems divided in the middle; the two others on the right, are near the bridge of *Jeſneioen*, and the remoteſt of them is generally covered with ſnow. The repreſentation of them may be ſeen in plate 172. and with the bridge of *Pol-Chanie*, over the river of *Roetghoena*, or *Bendemir*, in plate 173. There was ſo much water in the country adjacent to *Sergoen*, that the horſes were up to their girts, which made me very uneaſy with reſpect to my papers, the horſe who carried them being frequently in danger of falling. After I had paſſed through this inundation, I left the town of *Sergoen* on my left, and advanced toward the mountains, which are very high and ſtony, and arrived there in the ſpace of half an hour. I travelled over them to the ſouth-weſt, and paſſed by ſeveral *Caravanſerai's*, and ſome burying-places ſhaded with cypreſs; and came, that evening, to *Zji-raes*, which is nine leagues from *Perſepolis*, and went to lodge at the convent of the *Carmelites*.

1705.

This city begins to be ſeen a little beyond the mountains, which are then to be left 500 paces to the right; after which we diſcovered a great number of tall cypreſs-trees, with a wall cut out of the rock, from whence a ſtream of water falls like a torrent, after great rains. The road between the rocks is deep and narrow, and leads to the city. This is ſituated to the right, and has a wall of earth on the right and left, but much impaired on one ſide. It is about 300 paces in length, and adjoins to a gate which is five paces wide at the entrance, and enlarges into ten as you advance. When we had paſſed through this gate, which is very large and lofty, we came to a narrow paſſage, called *Teng-alla-agber*, bordered with buildings, on the right and left, like the *Chiaer-baeg* at *Iſpahan*, but moſt of them are in ruins, as well as the gardens, which are filled with cypreſs and fruit-trees. At the diſtance of 1500 paces from the gate, and in the middle of the public way, is a baſon ſeventy two paces in length, and forty-ſix in breadth, lined with ſtone. On each ſide is a wall in form of a half moon, with arches and ſeats; and on the left a moſque, which extends one hundred paces in front. The bridge of *Pol-Zjae-Sade*, is nineſy paces from thence, and as many in length. It is built of ſtone, with four arches, of which that in the middle is the loftieſt. It croſſes the river *Roetgone*, whoſe ſource is between two little mountains, twelve leagues to the north of *Zjie-raes*, and diſcharges itſelf into the ſea of *Derjanemeck*, or the *Salt-Sea*. The paſs of *Teng-alla-agber* begins at this bridge, and is thirty paces wide. At the end of this the way lies through another paſſage of the ſame extent, and which is carried on to one of the oldeſt gates of the city, called *Davaſe Hanie*, or the iron gate, which is greatly impaired, and ſerves at preſent for a *Bazar*. It is vaulted, and extends to the length of eighty paces. Several *Turkiſh* characters are inſcribed on this gate, and the ruins of a tower above it. It affords a paſſage into a great ſtreet, on the left ſide of which is a burying-place, and a ruinous garden, with ſeveral edifices on the right. This ſtreet extends to the heart of the city, which is a ſmall league in circumference. In the reign of *Abas the Great*, it was governed by a certain lord, named *Eman-Coult-Chan*, who was much eſteemed by that prince, as well for the great ſervices his father had performed for the ſtate in the war againſt the *Turks*, as alſo for thoſe which he himſelf had accompliſhed, by wreſting the fortreſs of *Ormus* from the *Portugueze*, by the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*. This was a place of ſuch importance, that it formerly conſtituted a kingdom of that name, with the territories and cities that were its dependencies, and

A fine bridge.

A tragical account of a governor of Gomron.

it extended as far a *Laer*. The king, in order to recompence ſo ſignal a ſervice, honoured this lord with the title of duke, or governor of all the country which lies between this city and *Gomron*. This prince likewiſe uſually ſtyled him his grand duke, and when the *Dutch India* company firſt came to trafic in *Perſia*, under the direction of *Hubert Ulſnich*, he gave this lord full power to treat with them, on what conditions he ſhould judge moſt advantageous to the ſtate; which was a very extraordinary conceſſion in a country where the kings are ſo jealous of their authority and power; and it accordingly excited againſt him the jealouſy of the miniſters and lords of the court, who reſolved to ruin him after the death of king *Abas*, who was ſucceeded by *Sophi*, his grandſon, to whom they did not fail to render the governor ſuſpected. This prince being thus prejudiced againſt him, commanded him to appear immediately at court, under pretext of imparting to him an affair of the utmoſt conſequence, but in reality to deſtroy him. The governor reſolved to obey this mandate, contrary to the ſentiments of all his friends, who repreſented to him the danger to which he was preparing to expoſe himſelf; and that he could have nothing to apprehend, if he would continue where he was, ſince neither his enemies, nor the king himſelf, would attempt to offer the leaſt violence to him there. But as this lord was conſcious of his innocence, and, at the ſame time, was impelled by the fatality of his deſtiny, he ſet out for the court, where he was perfectly well received and careſſed. He was likewiſe perſuaded, that in caſe the king had been determined to deſtroy him, he needed only to have demanded his head, by vertue of the abſolute power of the eaſtern monarchs, which as he had not done, his mind was free from all ſuſpicion, and this occaſioned his ruin: For the king cauſed him to be aſſaſſinated in a bath, by his greateſt enemies, among whom was his own ſon-in-law; and not content with this victim, they ſacrificed to their barbarous hatred his fifty natural ſons, the eldeſt of whom they murdered, and cauſed the eyes of the reſt to be plucked out. Such was the cataſtrophe of this great man.

At the end of the ſtreet I lately mentioned, are ſeveral others, full of ſhops, and which croſs each other to the right and left. The *Indians* have a *Caravanſerai* there, and ſome *American* are likewiſe there, but the trafic which they tranſact, is not very conſiderable.

In the heart of the city is a large edifice, the facade of which reſembles that of a moſque, with portals and two fine towers, the upper part of which is impaired. This ſtructure, which is called *Madre ze Imon Couli Chan*, is a public college, where all ſorts of ſciences are ſtudied. There are ſix great moſques in this city; the firſt of which is dedicated to one of the twelve *Imans*, and has the denomination of *Ghatoen Kjeomet*; the ſecond is called *Zeyd alla dien Oſeyn*; the third, *Sjegnoerbags*; the fourth, *Zadaed mier Mohammed*; the fifth, *Chja't Zieraeg*; and the laſt, *Mad-zyd nou*, or the new moſque. There is another great city on the ſide of this, and adjoining to the bridge already mentioned, and I was aſſured by ſome perſons, that, beſide the moſques which I have named, there are three hundred more, that are ſmaller, and ſerve for chapels; and 200 baths. This city contains thirty-eight quarters, twenty one of which belong to the faction of *Heyderes*, and ſeventeen to that of *Mammet-ollaey*. There are likewiſe about 700 very poor *Jewiſh* families in this place; they inhabit a particular quarter, and are vine-dreſſers for the generality. Some of them, however, manufacture ſtuffs of gold and ſilks. They pretend to be deſcended from the antient *Jews* who were carried from *Jeruſalem* to *Babylon*, and afterward ſettled in *Perſia*. As for the *Indians* there were about a thouſand of them in this city, and they

The diſpoſition of Chiras.

acquired their ſubſiſtence by changing gold and ſilver, and likewiſe by uſury: But the number of the *Europeans* there is very inconſiderable. The principal among them are two Carmelites, one of whom is of *Milan*, and his name is *Pedro d'Alcantere de Sante Tereſe*: I may add too, that he is a gentleman with whom I have paſſed many agreeable hours. The other is a *Pole*, ſeventy three years of age, thirty ſeven of which he has ſpent in *Perſia*, where he has been three times. The name of this gentleman is *Sladiſlaus*. There is likewiſe an *Italian*, named *Franciſco*, who ſupplies the *Engliſh* merchants with wines; and a *Portugueſe*, who makes thoſe which his countrymen yearly tranſport from *Gamron* to the *Indies*.

Wretched buildings.

Moſt of the buildings of this city are in ruins, and the ſtreets ſo narrow and dirty, that they are hardly paſſible in rainy ſeaſons; and there are ſeveral places, where paſſengers are obliged to bend their bodies, in order to walk under the arches before the houſes, and eſpecially in the quarter inhabited by the *Jews*. The ſtreets are likewiſe rendered very offenſive by a number of places of eaſement, which are all without, and render the air very unwholſome, in conſequence of which the generality of the inhabitants are very lean and pale. The *Europeans* themſelves are ſubject to a certain indiſpoſition, in the ſummer ſeaſon, which frequently carries them off; and the burying-grounds lie open to the *Jackals*, or wild dogs, that are engendered by a dog and a fox. Theſe creatures often commit great diſorders in the city, and in the night-time make diſmal howlings which much reſemble a human voice.

The cypreſs-trees are the principal ornament of this city, and indeed I never ſaw any ſo fine, nor in ſo great a number, in any other place. There are likewiſe ſeveral large gardens without the city, which are filled with theſe trees, as are alſo the avenues, where care is taken to plant them with great regularity.

Tombs for Saints.

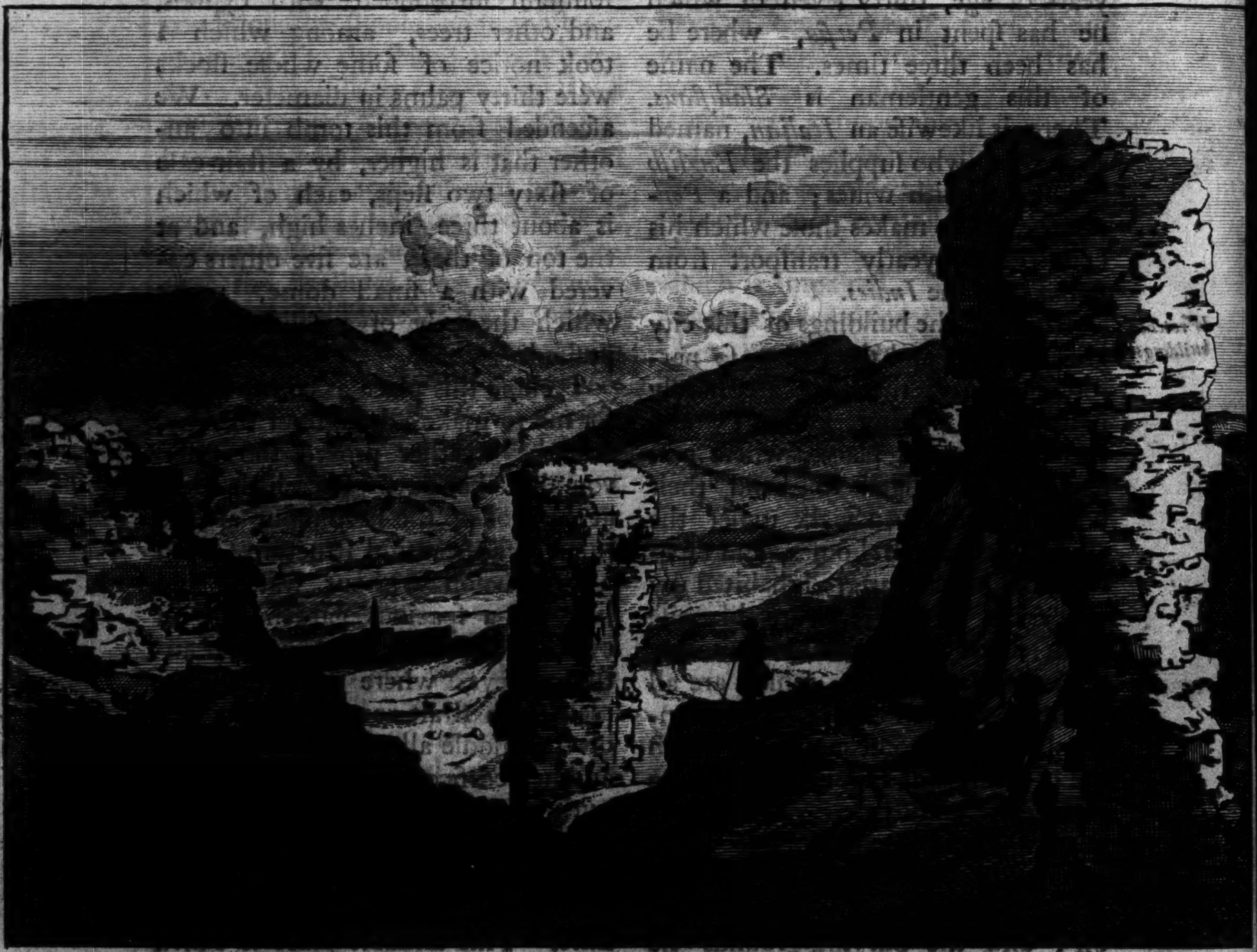
Half a league from the city, to the north, are ſeveral tombs of ſaints, in the mountains: The name of the moſt conſiderable of whom is *Baba Koej*, or the ſaint of the mountain, where he lived a long time in the utmoſt ſolitude. The *Perſians* have a ſingular devotion for that place, and daily reſort to it. Theſe tombs have ſeveral apartments; and in the loweſt of them is a court, with a fountain ſurrounded with cypreſs, and other trees, among which I took notice of ſome whoſe ſtocks were thirty palms in diameter. We aſcended from this tomb into another that is higher, by a ſtair-caſe of ſixty two ſteps, each of which is about three inches high, and at the top of theſe, are five others covered with a ſmall dome, under which the body of a ſolitary is depoſited.

A beautiful ſtructure.

I choſe this place as commodious for me to make a draught of the city, but the weather proved too unfavourable that day. On a little rock, at the foot of the mountain, are the ruins of a beautiful ſtructure, with a large baſon without water, and likewiſe a ſpacious garden full of cypreſs, and other trees, with beautiful alleys, where the trees were planted in ſtrait rows. At the end of the middle alley are the ruins of another edifice, which correſponds with the former. The garden was encompaſſed with a mound of earth, but it was all over-grown with weeds, and entirely neglected at that time. This amiable place is called *Ferrodous*, or *Paradiſe*; and two hundred years ago it was the reſidence of a king, named *Karagia*. Half a league from the city are likewiſe to be ſeen the ruins of the antient fortreſs of *Kallaey-Fandus*. I climbed up with great difficulty, and found ſome remains of a wall on the rock, compoſed of ſmall ſtones ſtrongly cemented together with a compoſition as hard as the rock itſelf. This fortreſs was once half a league in circumference, as far as can be judged by the little that ſtill remains. There was likewiſe a ſecond wall, higher than the firſt;

and as the top of the mountain is covered with heaps of ſtones, they are probably the ruins of a leſſer fortreſs, that was at ſome diſtance from the other. The rocky part of the mountain, forms likewiſe a kind of wall to the weſt; from whence one may ſee ſeveral ſtones, that have fallen from a higher wall, and the ruins of a tower, contiguous to the firſt wall. There is a very ſteep way in this place, which extends to the ſummit of the mountain, and ſome remains of a wall, joined to the tower already mentioned. I drew the annexed deſign, on the ſouth weſt, where I ſaw ſome fragments of a building on the rock; and the middle part, which is now ſeparated from the reſt, conſtituted one of the towers of the wall. I had likewiſe a view of another ruined edifice in the plain, together with the tomb of one of the greateſt poets in *Perſia*, known by the name of *Siegzady*, who lived about 400 years ago, and cauſed this tomb, which is large and well built, to be erected. He was a Derviſe, and a native of *Zjieraes*; and there are ſtill extant twenty *Arabic* books, in his manner, and two in the *Perſian* language. On one ſide of this tomb, is a large octogon baſon, the water of which is moderately warm, and plentifully repleniſhed with fiſh. The baſon is ſurrounded with a low wall, and the water flows out of it toward the city, from under a building, and then forms ſeveral other fountains, which diſperſe their ſtreams through the meadows; but no one is permitted to catch the fiſh that paſs from one of theſe fountains to another. I, however, caught a few cray-fiſh. All theſe ſtructures are ſhaded with fine

RUINES DE LA FORTERESSE KALLAY FANDUS:

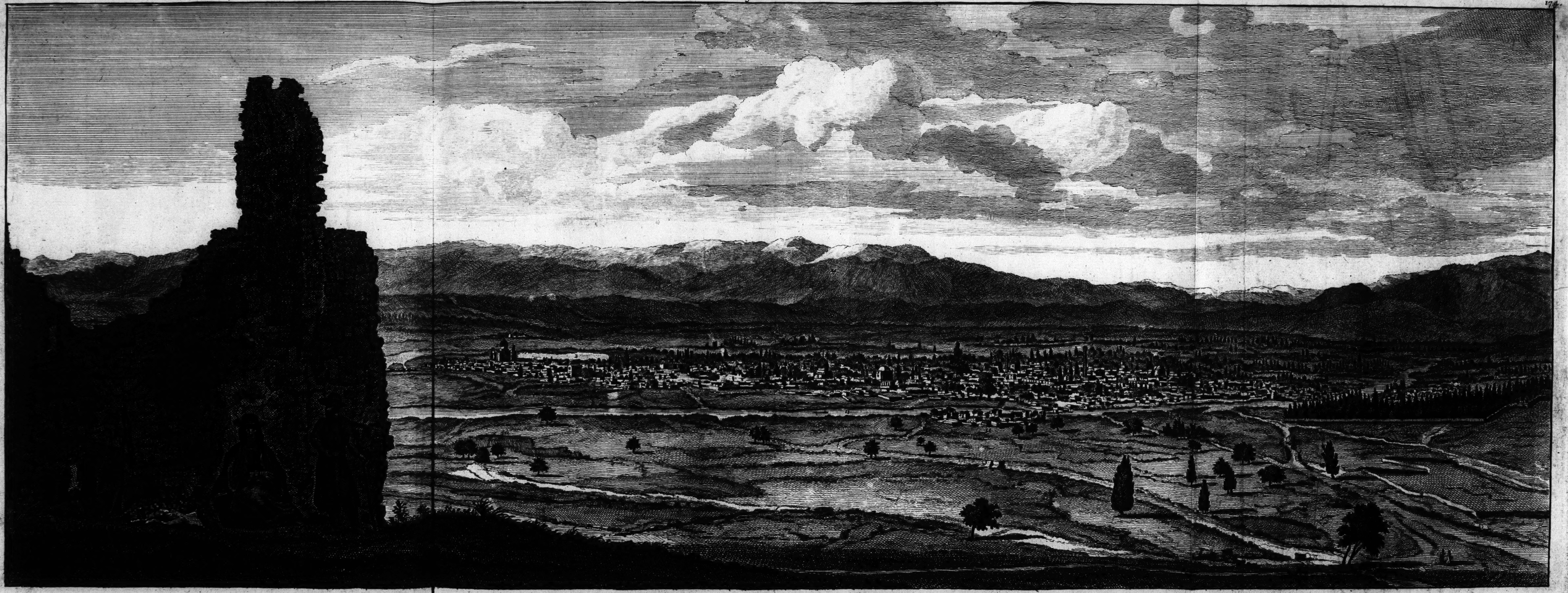


The tomb of a fine Perſian *poet.*

cypreſs

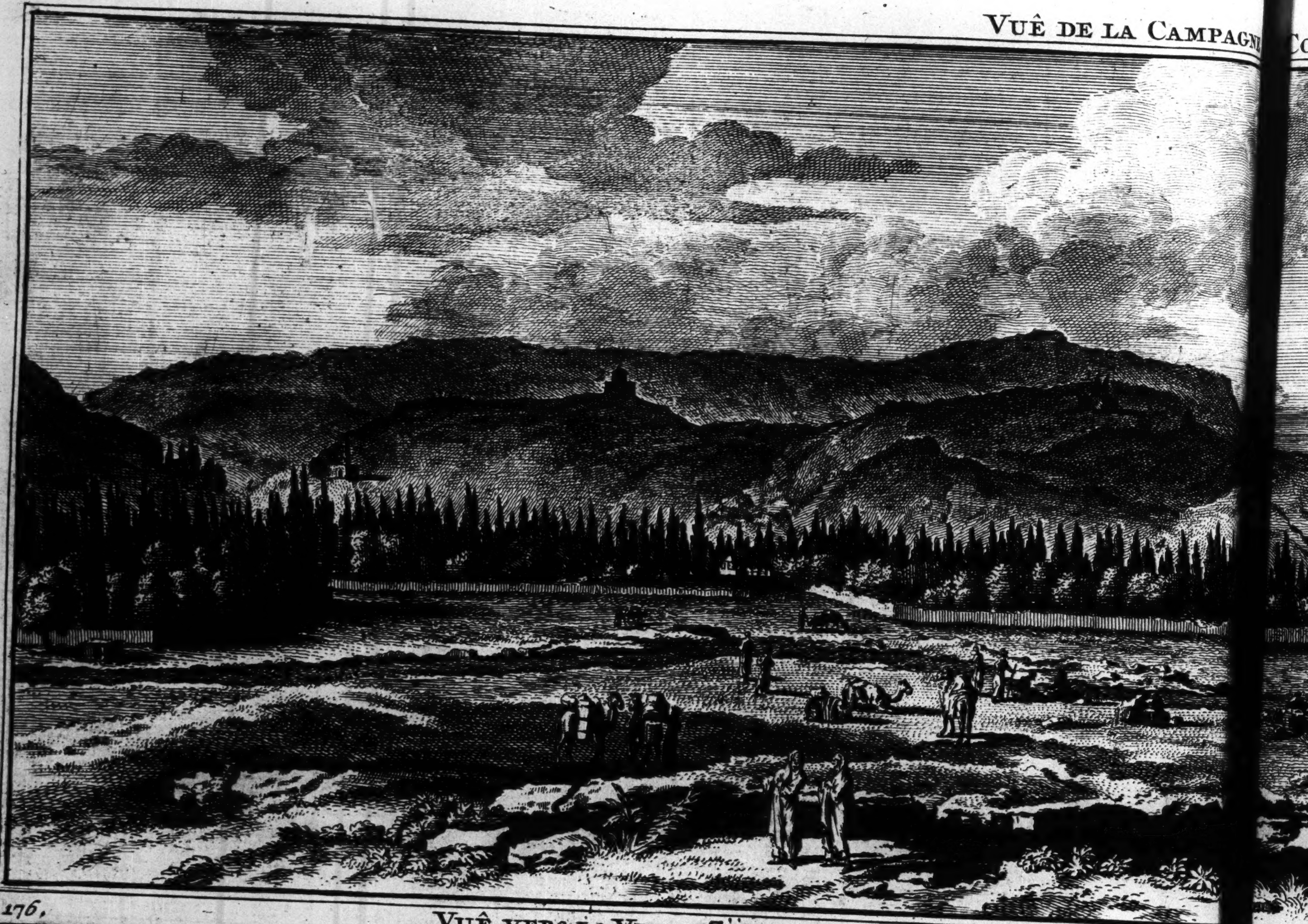
research publications

Zji-RAES.

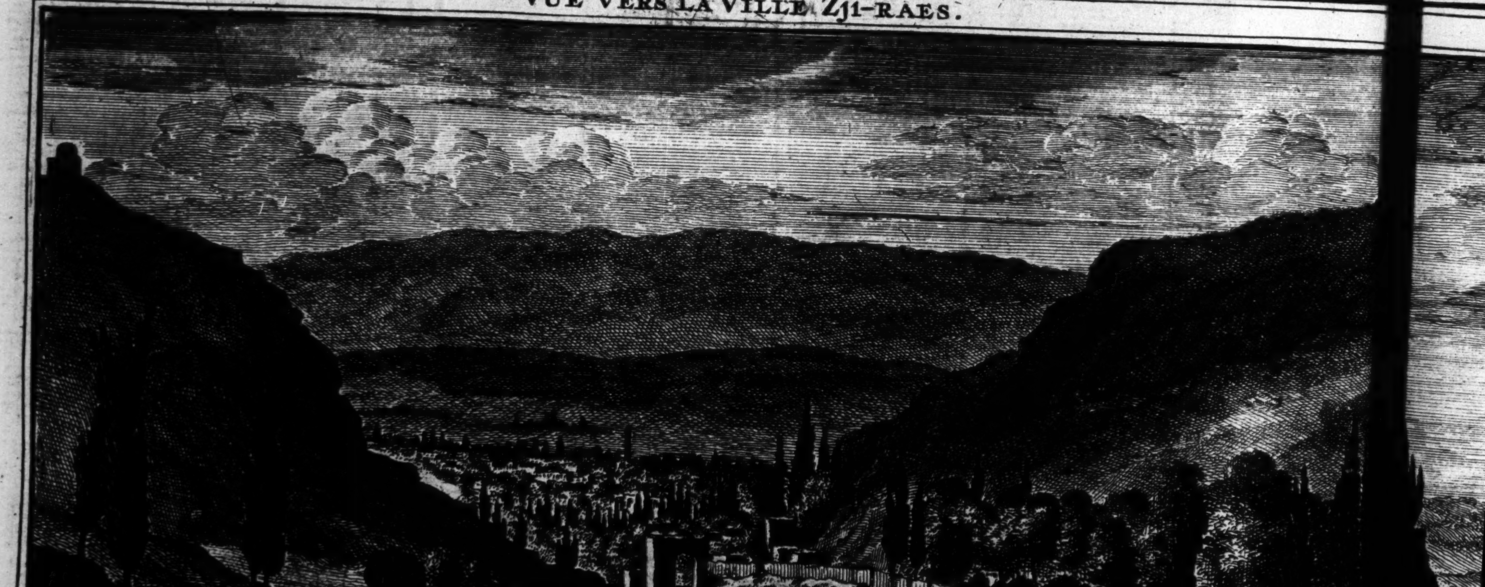


7 AP 53

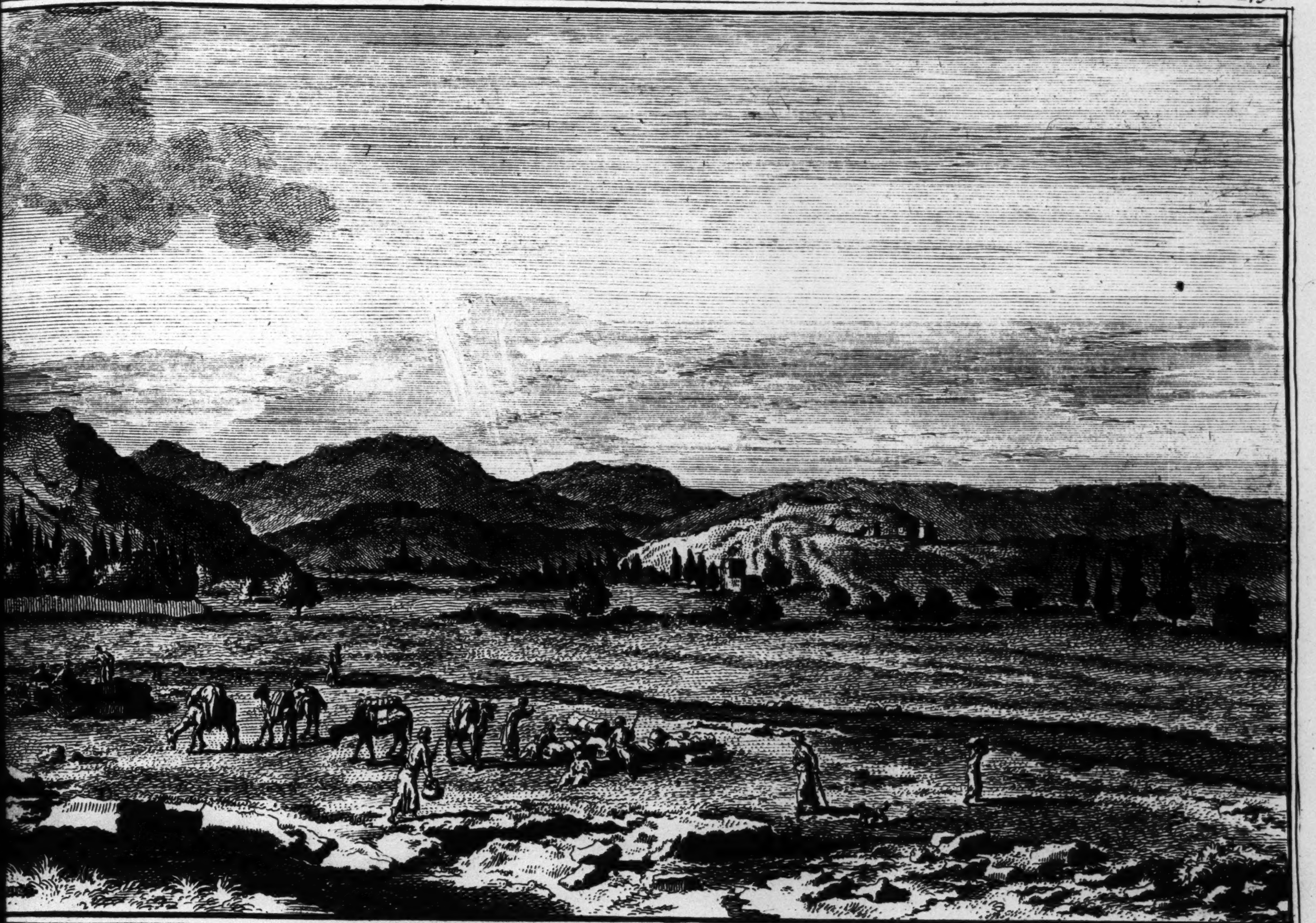
VUÊ DE LA CAMPAGNE Co



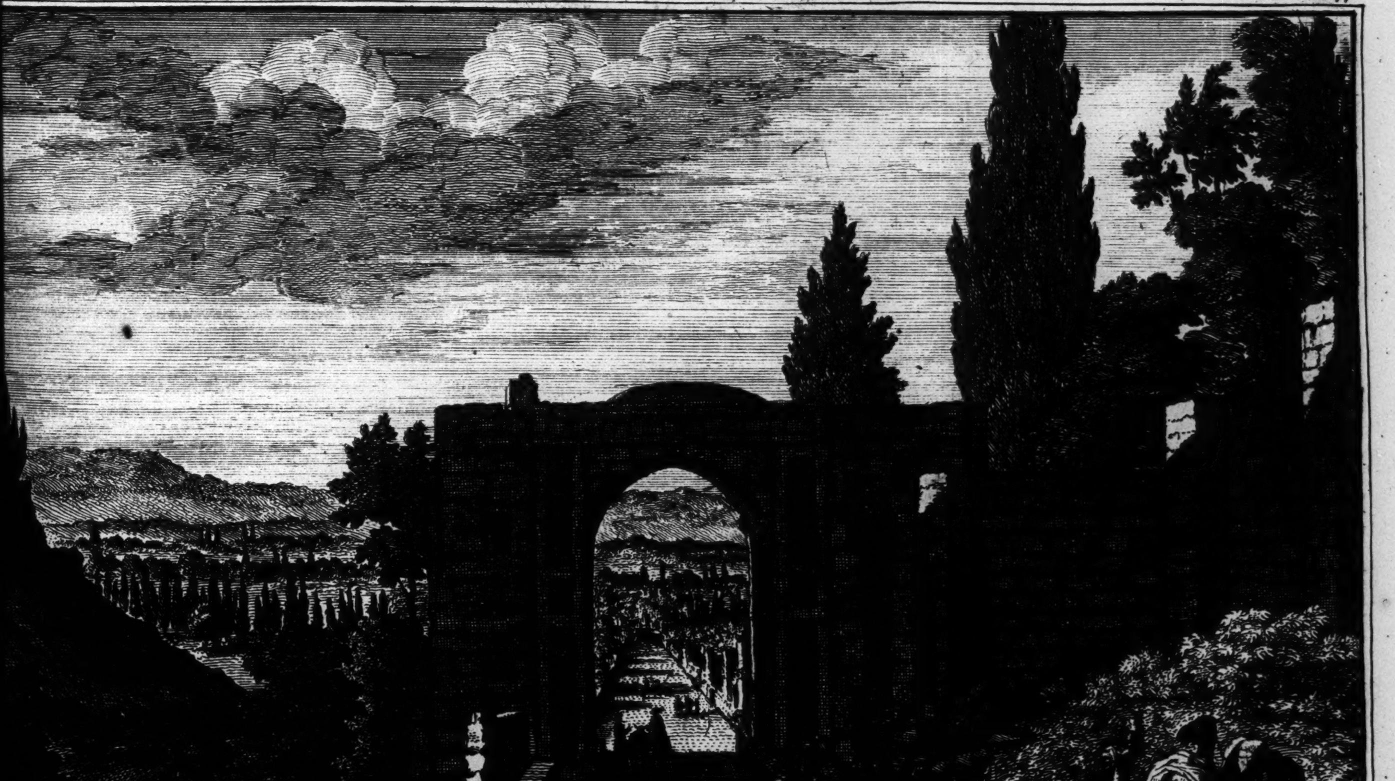
VUÊ VERS LA VILLE Zji-RAES.



COTÉ DE ZJI-RAES 175.



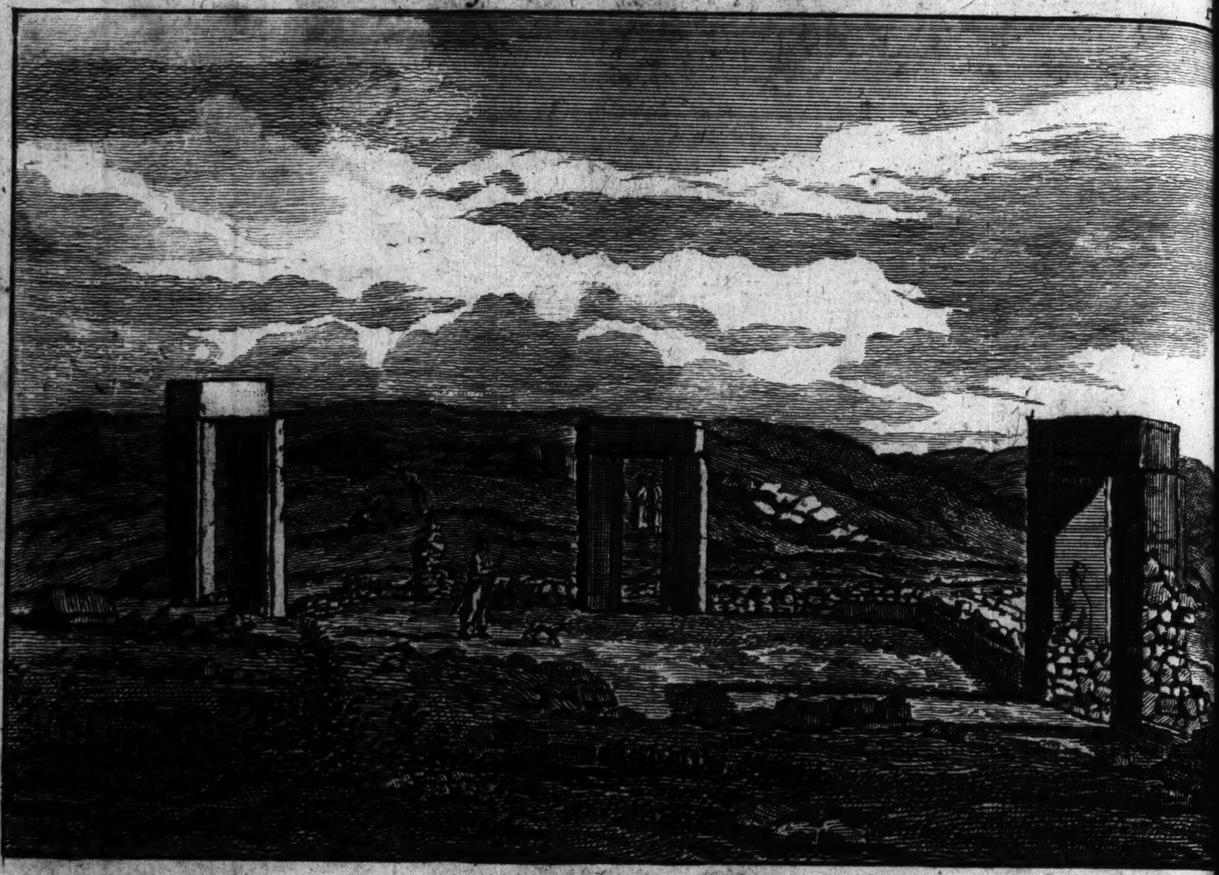
VUÊ PROCHE DE LA PORTE DE ZJI-RAES. 177.



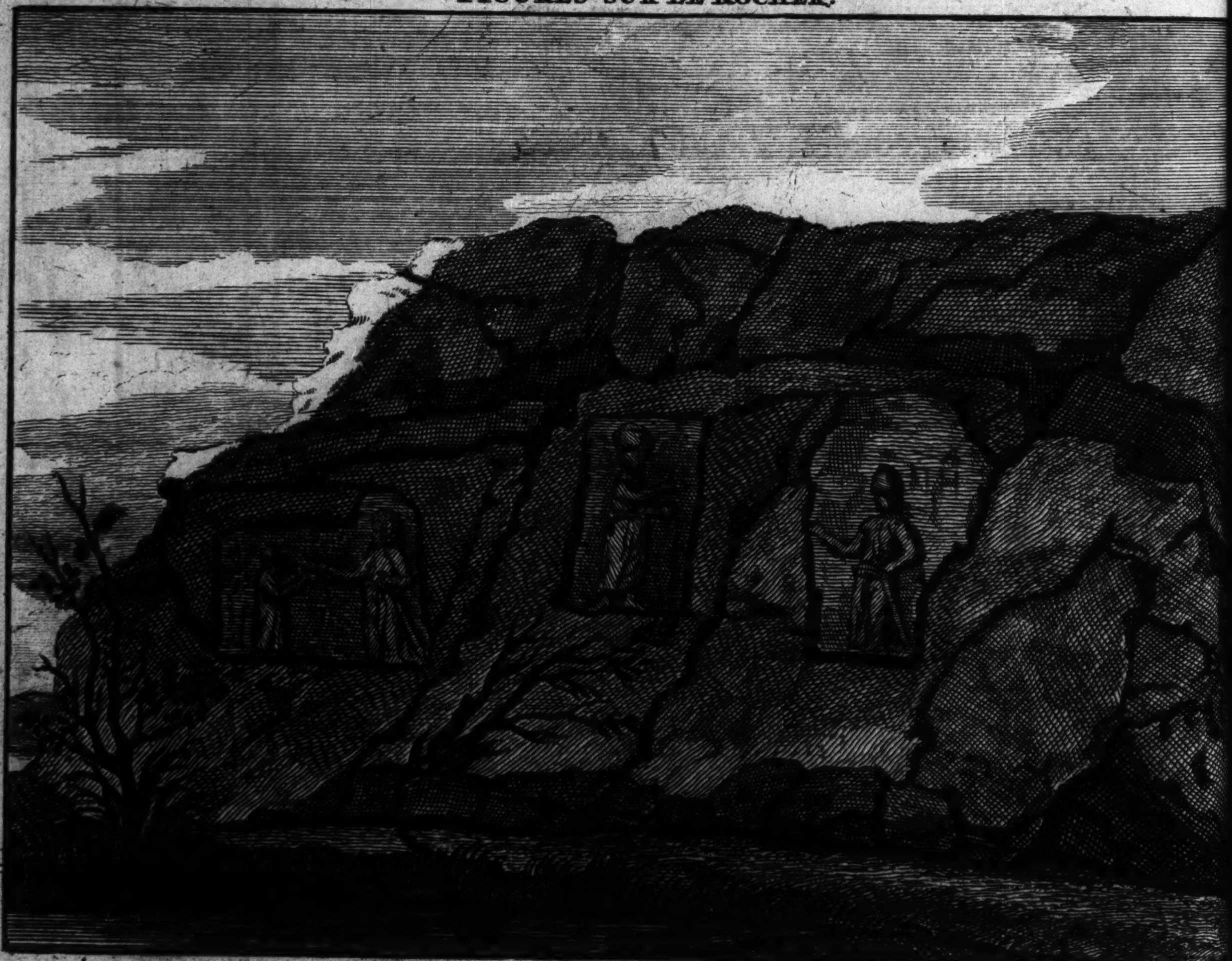
7 AP 55

7 AP 53

MA-ZJIT MADRE SULEMOEN.



FIGURES SUR LE ROCHER.



cypreſs trees; and there is a beautiful meadow, which ſerves for whitening of linnen.

As I obſerved the proſpect of the city made a more pleaſing appearance on the mountain I have mentioned, than it did on that where I firſt began to draw the intended deſign, I returned thither in a few days, to the eaſt, and completed the drawing repreſented in the plate 174. where I have marked the particular objects with numerical figures. 1. *Ghatoen Kioment.* 2. *Siegh Zyed Oddien*, a moſque demoliſhed by the *Turks*. 3. *Zeyt alla dien Oſſein.* 4. *Seig noerbags.* 5. *Zadaed mier Mohammed.* 6. *Cha't Zieraeg.* 7. *Mad Zid Nou*, or the new moſque. Between the laſt of theſe is ſeen the college already mentioned. 8. *Bibie docterroen*, a large ſtructure, where are ſome tombs. 9. *Zeyt mier alie hamſe*, near the bridge of *Pol Zja Zade*, without the wall of the city. 10. The *Chiaer-baeg.* 11 *Zey adoen*, a village, on the river of which is a bridge fifty ſix paces in length. 12. the river of *Roetgoene.* 13. *Seme Verdoneck.* 14. *Koey Sieg.* 15. *Ferradous*, or paradiſe. There is likewiſe on the mountain, where I drew the deſign of the city, an exceeding deep well, hewn in the rock, the opening into which is fifteen feet long, and eight broad.

We caſt into it ſeveral ſtones, which made a ſurpriſing noiſe in their deſcent. I had an inclination to ſound the depth, but the cords which I had procured, not being of a ſufficient length, I cauſed them to be untwiſted, and then faſtened together, upon which I found the well to be 420 feet and eleven inches deep. We afterward threw into it large balls of oiled cloth, ſet on fire, and fixed upon iron plates, in order to obtain a view of the bottom, and in what manner it was formed, but the depth was too great to afford us that diſcovery, notwithſtanding thoſe flaming balls ſhot forth a great blaze. We then threw down others, which were not faſtened like the former, and the light of them appeared, and then vaniſhed from time to time, which made us conclude that the cavity was not continued down in a ſtrait line, and that there had been ſome other entrance. It, however, was a real well, made for the preſervation of water, and there was another, ſomething leſs, in the ſame mountain.

In my return to the city, I deſired a man of letters to inform me, by whom theſe fortreſſes were built, and at what time? He aſſured me, they were erected by a *Guebre* king, named *Fandus*, and that the mountain of *Kallay Fandus*, on which they were ſituated, had received its denomination from him: that it was ſurrounded with the ſea at that time, and that 6000 years had elapſed, ſince they firſt began to build on that plain, on the ſide of *Zjie-raes*, in the reign of *Siemſchid*, who was then emperor of *Perſia*, and has been already mentioned: He added, that this prince was the founder of *Perſepolis*, which was built after *Zjie-raes*, or *Chiras.* This city is in the province of *Fars*, or *Farſiſtan*, to the ſouth weſt of *Perſepolis*, and on the river of *Roetgoen*, twelve eaſy days journey from *Iſpahan*, and about twenty four from *Gamron*; which diſtances are very ill obſerved in the maps, that place this city at an equal diſtance from *Iſpahan*, and *Ormus*.

A fine alley.

Without the gate of *Dervaſy Bagh Zjia*, to the north weſt, is the lovely alley of *Koet-Zjia-Baeg*, which extends to the King's garden, which is ninety five paces wide, and 966 in length. When we had paſſed through the lodge, at the end of this garden, we came into another beautiful alley, bordered with cypreſs-trees; this is 620 paces long, and twenty broad, and is covered over with flowers in the middle. We there ſaw a delightful houſe, ſurrounded with a charming canal; there is likewiſe a fountain at each corner of the building, which is ſquare, and they mingle their ſtreams with the water of the canal. This houſe is ſpacious, and in the middle of it is a grand hall, covered with a dome,

The king's garden.

a dome, which is filled with niches, both within and without. Before we entered the houſe we had the view of a ſquare baſon to the left, whoſe angles are eighty five paces long. This beautiful alley is bordered on each ſide with ſeventy two ſtately cypreſs trees, one of which was twenty two palms in circumference. There is likewiſe another alley, behind the houſe, bordered with cypreſs and ſena trees, and its extent is equal to that of the others. This garden is called *Baeg Siae*, or the royal garden. I was there the twenty ſecond of *March*, when the feſtival of *Nouwroes* was celebrated, and the people then reſort from all parts, for their recreation in this garden, ſo that the alleys reſembled a fair among us.

I walked round the city, without the wall, that I might have an exact knowledge of its circumference; and I ſet out from the houſe of the *Carmelites*, which is without the northern gates. I then turned to the right, and advanced to a little bridge with two arches, under which a canal flows from the north weſt, and ſerpentiſes around the city. Its ſource is half a league from the old gate, already mentioned, and it flows through the plain, and gardens. This canal is always full of water; and at the diſtance of half a league from it is another, which loſes itſelf in its approach to the city. There is likewiſe a third within the ſpace of a quarter of a league form this; and to the ſouth weſt of the city are two or three ponds, filled with reeds and wild herbage, among which a vaſt number of ducks from their neſts. Moſt of the houſes, as well within as without the city, are in a very wretched condition; but the adjacent country preſents a charming proſpect to the view, and is covered with a luxuriant growth of corn, and all other grain at the proper ſeaſons of the year, and as far as the mountains, which are diſtant about two leagues to the ſouth-weſt. The city itſelf is about two leagues in circumference; and before I returned to the fathers, who entertained me, I drew a deſign of this amiable view, which is repreſented in plate 175. where every remarkable object is diſtinguiſhed by numerical figures. As 1. the road to *Iſpahan*. 2. A little chapel conſecrated to the ſiſter of *Hali*. 3. The chapel of *Elias*. 4. The garden of *Chiar-baeg*. 5. The tomb of *Zieg-Zady*. 6. The governor's houſe. 7. The ruins of the antient fortreſſes. 8. The river, where the caravans ſtop.

The extent of the city.

I likewiſe drew the proſpect which the eye commands on the mountains toward the city, together with the garden to the right, on this ſide of the gate, and in which ſeveral *Europeans* are buried: Particularly Mr. *Blockhoven*, a member of the *Dutch India* company, who died the tweny fourth of *May* 1666. One *Dupont*, a *Frenchman*, and ſome others; among whom are four eccleſiaſtics. This draught is exhibited in plate 176, and another in plate 177, which was deſigned near the gate on that ſide.

I have likewiſe repreſented the fine alley of *Teng-alla-agber*, and the moſque on one ſide of it.

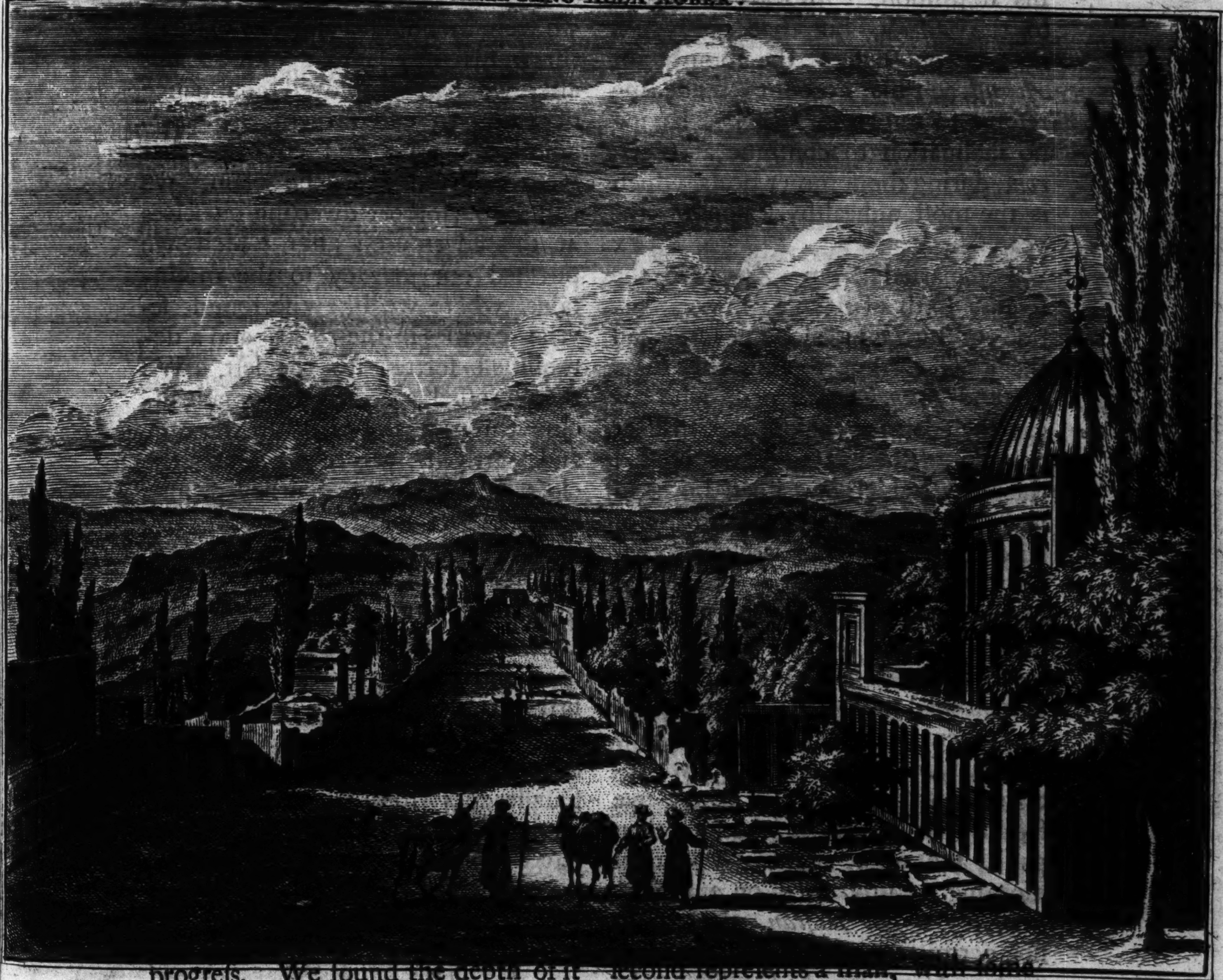
Two *Engliſh* gentlemen arrived here from *Iſpahan*, in the Month of *February*. One of them was named *Gayer*, and the other *Maynard*. We went together to take a view of a mountain, a league and a half from *Zjie-raes*, on the left ſide of the plain, and to ſee a moſque there, which is diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Ma-Zjit-Madre-Sulemon*, or the mother of *Sulemon*. It was a ſquare building, and extended about twenty paces, from one corner to the other. There are three portals ſtill to be ſeen, like thoſe at *Perſepolis*: The firſt is to the eaſt; the ſecond to the north weſt, and the laſt to the north eaſt. They are eleven feet in height, and on each of their pilaſters is the figure of a woman as large as the life, and holding ſomething in her hand, like thoſe at *Perſepolis*. Below that, to the north weſt, and on each ſide of the rock, are nine ſmall figures much impaired

The ruins of a moſque.

impaired, and half buried in the earth; and on the north eaſt is a ſtone which reſembles a tub. All the reſt is encloſed with ſtones, which were ranged there in ſome later time. Moſt of the pilaſters are out of their places, which muſt have been occaſioned by ſome earthquake; but the cornice of that in the middle is very little damaged. The repreſentation of it may be ſeen in plate 178. A quarter of a league from this place, are the ruins of a wall, which formerly encloſed this moſque; and at the diſtance of another quarter of a league, are ſeveral trees, planted along a ſtream of the moſt agreeable running water in the world, which ſprings from a little rock, and the neighbouring mountains, and then flows to the eaſt, forming a ſmall river in its progreſs. We found the depth of it to be ſix feet in ſome places. It likewiſe abounds with fiſh, which we did not ſpare, and they afforded us an agreeable repaſt, in a cool ſhade of rocks and trees. This place is called *Kadamga*, which ſignifies *a welcome unexpected*. We then proceeded half a league from thence, to ſee ſome figures carved on the rock, and diſtributed into three compartments. The firſt contains three figures, one of which has its hand on the hilt of a large ſword. The ſecond repreſents a man, with ſomething round on his head; and the third is a mitred figure, with its hand on the hilt of a ſword, like the firſt; but they are ſo disfigured, that they are hardly diſtinguiſhable. On the ſide of the rock is a little pond ſhaded with ſena, and ſome other trees, as may be ſeen in plate 179. When we had ſatisfied our curioſity in this place we returned to the city at ſun-ſet.

Antient figures.

Allee Teng-alla-agber.



We there found three *French* merchants, who came from *Gamron*, and were going to *Iſpahan*; and they ſet out ſoon afterward with the *Engliſh* gentlemen already mentioned. As to my ſelf, I received a letter from *Gamron*, the 27th of *March*, which informed me, that a veſſel arrived there from *Batavia*, the 26th of *February*; but that it was not as yet known, whether ſhe was to return thither; and that Mr. *Kaſtelein*, our director, had received his diſmiſſion, with leave to return to the *Indies*, but that he would not ſet out before the month of *Auguſt*. This account made me reſolve to return to *Iſpahan*, having no inclination to continue at *Gamron*, during the ſummer heats, which is the moſt unhealthy ſeaſon of the year.

The Author's return to Perſepolis.

I departed from *Zjie-raes* the twenty-ſixth of *March*, in expectation of travelling alone; but had the good fortune to find the *Engliſh* and *French* gentlemen, who began their journey before me, ſtill at *Sergoen*. The next day we croſſed the plain, which was floated over in ſuch a manner, that the beaſts of burden were obliged to take another way. We arrived, about noon, at *Mir-chas-koen*, but would not ſtop there, becauſe we intended to be early at *Perſepolis*, which theſe gentlemen had not ſeen. I accompanied them thither, and when they had ſatisfied their curioſity, we returned to the village, where we found our equipage, and then paſſed the night there. The next morning we proceeded on our journey, by *Naxi Ruſtan*, the floods not permitting us to keep the uſual road. After we had viſited the tombs at that place, we continued our journey to the north, over the mountain, that riſes to the eaſt, and came to a place where we ſaw twenty three apertures hewen in the rock, the largeſt of which was about three feet in depth, and as many in breadth. The others were much ſmaller, and near to each other; but we could not judge for what uſe they were intended.

We there ſaw a fine country, well cultivated, and full of villages, and flocks of ſheep and goats; and obſerved that the young were ſeparated from the others.

As ſome of us frequently alighted from our horſes, to kill game on the plain, where a great number of mares and horſes were feeding, three or four of ours began to run after them, and we found it very difficult to rein in thoſe upon which we were mounted; and one of them threw his rider into a ditch: but after we had employed abundance of pains to catch them, and readjuſt our arms and equipage that were ſcattered over the plain, we could not forbear diverting ourſelves at this adventure; after which we purſued our journey to the mountains, where we likewiſe found ſeveral cavities in the rocks, and a demoliſhed fortreſs to the left. We then croſſed a river, always advancing through the plain to the eaſt, and arrived at *Majien* at the cloſe of day, after a journey of nine leagues.

The rain, which fell that evening, and continued all night, obliged us to ſtay there the whole morning; after which we travelled by the ſide of the river, which was dry at my firſt arrival there, but was then full of water, and we came, about ſix, to the *Caravanſerai* of *Imanſada*, four leagues from the place where we had paſſed the night. The next day we proceeded as far as the *Caravanſerai* of *Aed-loen*, where we made an agreeable repaſt, with the proviſions we had brought with us, and the addition of ſome good fiſh, which we found there, and arrived, at the ſetting in of the day, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Aes-paes*, after we had travelled ſeven leagues. The wind blew from the north, full in our faces, and I never felt the cold more ſevere. We reſumed our journey on the laſt day of the month, and came by noon to the ruinous *Caravanſerai* of *Dombaeyne*, where we found plenty of water and wild fowl, which afforded a fine collation; and we arrived, about four, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Koskieſar*, after a journey of ſix leagues. We ſaw a little hill in the village, on which the inhabitants pretend that there had formerly been a fortreſs, but no remains of it were then to be ſeen. I think I never beheld any place which more reſembled that mentioned by the evangeliſt *Mark*, in the ſecond chapter of his goſpel, and where the paralytic perſon was brought into a houſe in *Capernaum*, where the Saviour of the world then was, while the four men who introduced him, uncovered the roof of the houſe, in order to let him down as he lay on his little bed.

We continued our journey, the firſt of *April*, through the plain, with greater facility than before, and ſtopped at the bridge of *Pol-Siakoe*. About one at noon, we paſſed by the *Caravanſerai* of *Kievielar*, and ſpent the night at *Egerdoe*, after travelling ſeven leagues. The next morning we proceeded to *Jeſdegaes*, where no houſes of refreſhment are to be found; and we then beheld on a mountain, ſome ruins of a wall which had formerly been part of a fortreſs. This mountain is a real rock, around which ſeveral large inverted ſtones are to be ſeen. We renewed our journey on the third of this month, and took ſome refreſhments in the town of *Anabaet*, where excellent ſugar candy is made. This town has ſtill a wall of earth, with the remains of a caſtle built in the reign of *Abas the Great*. We then paſſed by the town of *Abas-abaet*, where we ſaw two towers, which now ſerve for dove-houſes. Theſe are the firſt that are to be found in this part of the country, and the laſt in the road from *Iſpahan*. We paſſed the night at *Mag-zoet-begi*, after a journey of ſix leagues. We there ſaw another dove-houſe, and ſet out, the fourth of this month, by break of day. We croſſed a plain full of villages, gardens, and dove-houſes. Behind us were mountains covered with ſnow, and we found it warm in that quarter.

We travelled that day no more than five leagues, to the town of *Kominſia*, where we arrived about noon, and proceeded the next morning to *Majaer*, which is five leagues from thence. I ſet out, on the ſixth, with Mr. *de l'Etoile*, before day, and left my other companions behind, that I might arrive at *Iſpahan*, in two days. We met on the road with Mr. *Davoed*, interpreter to the *Engliſh* factory, who was travelling to *Zjie-raes* with two *Armenians*. We afterward proceeded to the *Caravanſerai* of *Mierſa-elraſa*, where we fed our horſes, and found an *Armenian* prieſt, who till then had accompanied the perſons we met. We came about four, to the tombs of the chriſtians, where the friends of Mr. *de l'Etoile* waited for his arrival. I likewiſe found our interpreter there, who expreſſed the utmoſt joy to ſee me, and after we had reſted there for the ſpace of half an hour, we proceeded to *Iſpahan*, and went to our director, who was ſurpriſed at my return, which I had concealed from every one but himſelf.

CHAP. LVI.

Fine gardens belonging to the king, and the queen-mother, at a little diſtance from Iſpahan. *News from the* Indies. *A demoliſhed fortreſs on the mountain of* Deif-ſelon. *The director of the* Dutch *company viſits a* Perſian *lord of great rank. The arrival of a new Director.*

I Returned to my old lodgings at the *Caravaſerai*, ſoon after my arrival, tho' the director importuned me to continue with him. I afterward went to viſit my friends, and, amongſt the reſt, Mr. *Billon*, a *French* gentleman, and miniſter of *Malta* at the court of *Perſia*. He had acted in that character only from the month of *December*, and had already obtained his audience of leave, on the twenty-ſecond of *March*, 1705. He likewiſe paid a viſit to our director, with whom he ſupped; and he regaled us, in his turn, the twelfth and thirteenth in the *Eaſter* week. On the twentieth I went to viſit, and pay the uſual compilments of the ſeaſon to, the gentlemen of the *Engliſh* factory, who entertained me at dinner and ſupper. The next day I went to ſee the *Armenian* eccleſiaſtics of that city, and likewiſe of *Julſa*, to wiſh them a happy feſtival, on the part of the director, whom they had already complimented on that occaſion. On the twenty-fifth the mourning for *Huſſein* was reſumed; two days after which I accompanied the director to the new garden, which belongs to the king, and is near five leagues in circumference; and we there paſſed the time in a very agreeable manner.

News of the battle of Hochſtet.

In a ſhort time after we received the news of the battle of *Hochſtet*, wherein the *French* were defeated by the allies, which occaſioned a univerſal joy among the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*.

The proceſſion of Huſſein.

On the firſt day of *May* the famous proceſſion of *Huſſein* was ſolemnized, almoſt in the ſame manner as it was the preceding year; but there is always ſome diverſity to be obſerved.

The king's garden.

I took a little journey on the eighth, about three leagues from *Iſpahan*, to ſee one of the principal gardens belonging to the king; the name of it is *Konma*, and it is ſituated in a fine plain filled with villages, and a variety of other gardens, which afford a charming proſpect to thoſe who view them from the mountains. Several officers of the cuſtom-houſe reſide in that quarter, to collect the duties on all mercantile commodities which paſs that way. This garden is diſtributed into two diviſions, and ſurrounded with walls. In the middle of the firſt is a large canal, on which thoſe who viſit the garden may recreate themſelves in a boat. It is likewiſe covered with birds, that make an admirable effect; and on one ſide of it is a large edifice in ruins. It is ſupplied by another canal which flows into it, after it has traverſed a long tract of land. As to any other particulars, this garden has nothing conſiderable to boaſt, except a lovely alley, and a few ſmall canals.

A deſcription of the king's garden.

The garden belonging to the queen-mother.

We proceeded from this garden to that which belongs to the queen-mother, whoſe name is *Mar-jambeek:* We arrived there at an early hour, and diverted ourſelves with fiſhing, having prepared nets for that purpoſe: And we ſucceeded ſo well, that we renewed that recreation the next day, on the river *Roetgone*, over which is a fine bridge of ſtone. We were as fortunate there, as we had been the preceding evening, and we ſent part of our fiſh to Mr. *Kaſtelein*: We likewiſe killed twenty pigeons before we returned to *Iſpahan*.

On the thirteenth of this month, the miniſter of *France* paid a viſit to our director, who kept him at ſupper. The next day we returned the viſit, and continued with him two hours.

A new general of the India company.

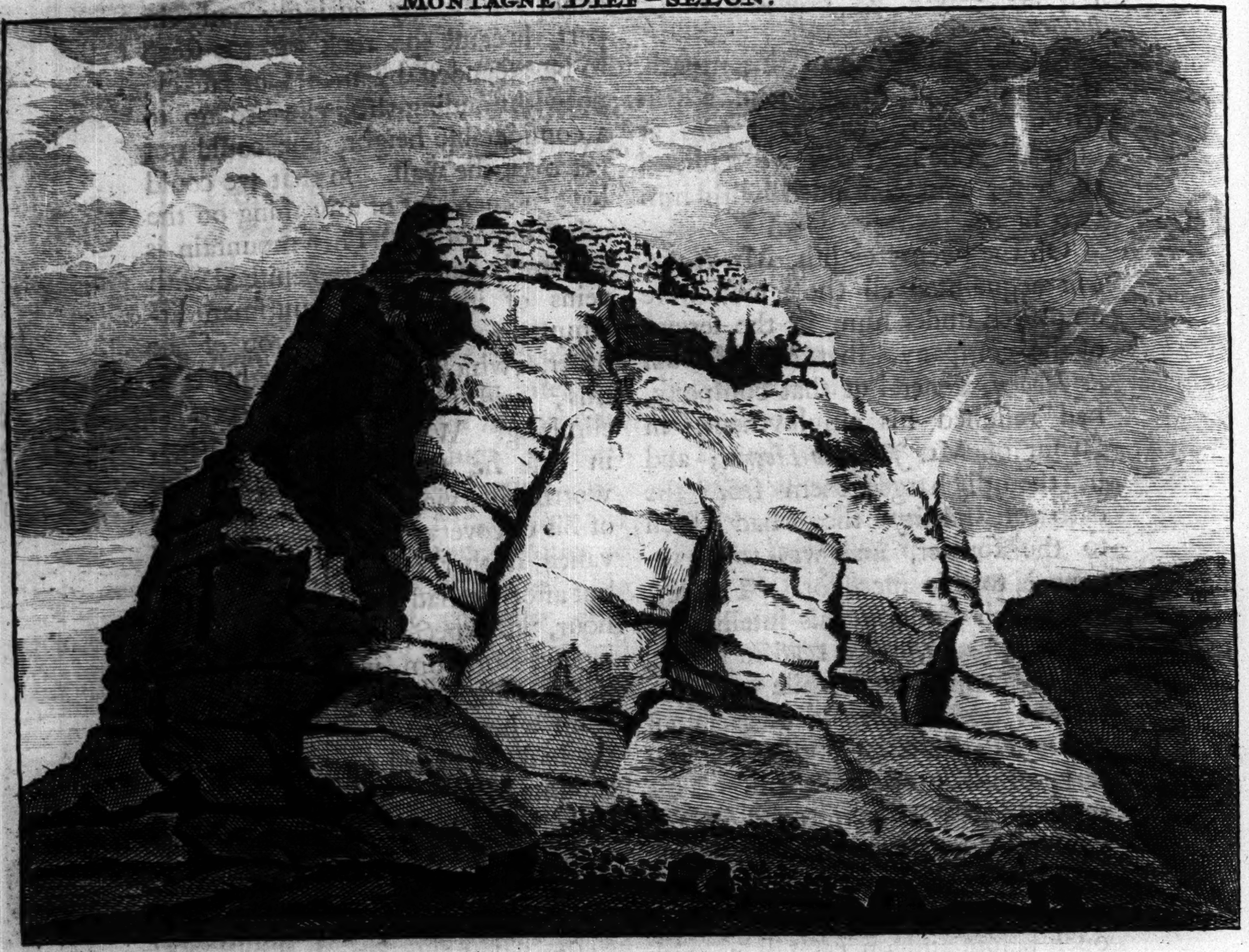
On the twenty eighth, Mr. *Kaſtelein* acquainted all thoſe who were employed under him, in the ſervice of the company, that Mr. *William de Hoorn*, general of that company, had reſigned his employment, in favour of Mr. *John de Hoorn*; and he then diſcharged them from the oath of fidelity they had taken to the former, and was to be renewed to his ſucceſſor. The letters which brought this intelligance from *Batavia*, were read in public, and the cannon fired while each letter was reading; as is uſual in all places where a company has any factory, or other eſtabliſhment. This ceremonial was performed in the garden belonging to the *India-houſe*, and under the *Talael*, which is a kind of theatre, or open gallery, open before and on each ſide, with a fountain in the middle. The reſt of the day was paſſed in drinking healths, and it concluded with illuminations, and other rejoicings; and as it was then *Whitſontide*, the director entertained us in a very ſplendid manner, according to his uſual cuſtom.

The giants mountain.

As there were ſeveral antiquities about *Iſpahan* which I had not ſeen, I determined to viſit them in order, and accordingly went firſt to the mountain of *Dief-ſelon*, to the north of the river of *Zenderoe*, where I ſaw ſeveral other mountains, ſeparated from each other in the plain. The people of this quarter imagine they were antiently inhabited by giants. The mountain of *Deif-ſelon* is ſeparated from another only by a cleft, through which a flow of water iſſues. On the ſummit of the former, which reſembles a ſugar-loaf, moſt of theſe antiquities are to be found, and on the ſouth weſt is the wall of a fortreſs that formerly ſtood there. I however could ſatisfy my curioſity only in part, becauſe the rock was too ſteep to be aſcended by me: Our lackey, notwithſtanding this, climbed up to a conſiderable height, but could not get over the wall. ſo that we could have no account of any thing on the other ſide of it. This mountain is extremely hard, and repleniſhed with veins of iron. Our huntſman attempted to aſcend to the top of the other, which riſes much higher than this, and he was very expert at climbing. We ordered him, that, in caſe he ſhould find any thing worth obſerving, to give us notice of his diſcovery, that we might advance thither ourſelves, if poſſible; but after we had waited above half an hour, in expectation of ſome intelligence from him, we returned, with much difficulty, to the place place from whence we came; and when we had deſcended to the foot of the mountain, we beheld our man greatly embarraſſed on one of the ſteep ſides of the rock, where it was ſaid to be impoſſible for any one to faſten himſelf. He however, accompliſhed his deſign, tho' in a manner that made us tremble; for he ſupported himſelf by his hands and feet, amidſt the projections and fiſſures of the rock, notwithſtanding he was encumbered at the ſame time with his gun, which hung at his back.

Deep wells.

He informed us, that he had found on the ſummit of the mountain three wells, hewn in the rock, and that the opening was about twelve feet in diameter. He alſo added, that he diſcoverd in one of them, an iron chain as thick as a man's arm, and faſtened to the rock. He likewiſe told us, that this well was ſunk the deepeſt of any, in an oblique deſcent, and that the aperture was larger than thoſe of the reſt. He further declared, that he threw ſeveral ſtones into the cavities of theſe wells, but they were ſo exceedingly deep that he could only hear the ſound of one. He aſſured us beſide, that he diſcovered the ruins of a ſtreet, built on both ſides, Montagne Dief-selon.



ſides, with a ciſtern in the middle, and two bridges that were partly demoliſhed; and over which a paſſage was ſtill practicable, they being three feet wide, and ten in length: That they had formerly afforded a communication, from one village, or neighbourhood, to another, and were carried over one of the ciſterns. He then continued to acquaint us, that the firſt object which preſented itſelf to his view, was the way or ſtreet already mentioned; that he believed it might contain 155 paces in breadth, and that ſeveral diviſions of the antient apartments, were ſtill viſible among the ruins. In a word, that the ſummit of the mountain was a level ſurface. I have drawn the repreſentation of the firſt mountain, with the wall on the top. It was inhabited ſome years ago, by a ſet of robbers, who were afterwards chaſed from thence, and all the paſſages conducting to it were deſtroyed, to prevent them from concealing themſelves there for the future.

We returned by the bank of the river, which we afterward croſſed, on a very ruinous bridge, and then threw our nets into the water with very little ſucceſs; but we had better fortune the next day; after which we returned to *Iſpahan*.

Soon after this little expedition, I attended our director to the houſe of the firſt miniſter's ſecretary, from whom he had received an Invitation to paſs an hour with him. It was then but eight in the morning, and he entertained us with tobacco, accompanied with liquors and confections: when this collation was over, they retired into another apartment, and rejoined us about half an hour afterward. A variety of proviſions and fruits were then ſerved up according to the ſeaſon, together with lemonade, ſorbet, roſe-water ſweetened with ſugar, and ſeveral other ſorts of hot and cold liquors, of all colours, and perfectly agreeable.

The author's obſervations.

We continued there till one at noon, and I was afterward informed, that this invitation was made by the order of the firſt miniſter, who had his reaſons for not receiving the viſit at his own houſe. I then began to be ſenſible, the court was deſirous that the company ſhould employ their good offices to obtain the liberty of ſome pilgrims, whom the *Moſket Arabs* had taken in the *Perſian* gulf, as they were returning from *Mecca*; and that they would likewiſe take upon them to accommodate the miſunderſtanding which then ſubſiſted between the court of *Perſia* and the *Arabs*, without any intervention of that court.

Unlucky days.

The nineteenth, twentieth, and twenty firſt of *June*, are accounted unlucky days by the *Perſians*, who then diſcontinue all affairs, and the ſhops are ſhut up.

A new director.

On the twenty ſeventh in the morning, a courier belonging to the company, arrived with a letter to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, from Mr. *Bakker*, who had lately ſucceeded him in his place, and gave him notice of his being at *Deſdagaes*, which is twenty five leagues from *Iſpahan*, where he intended to arrive the next day: Upon which Mr. *Kaſtelein* ordered his deputy, and the other officers of the company, to wait upon the new director, and congratulate him on his arrival. We ſet out, at ſeven in the evening, to the number of twenty three perſons, all on horſeback, with Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s maſter of the horſe, attended by eight couriers, at our head. We had likewiſe nine *Banians*, or *Indians*, on horſeback, with four couriers; ſo that our troop was compoſed of forty four perſons. We made a ſhort halt at the *Caravanſerai* of *Margh*, and arrived about midnight at that of *Merſa-alie-reſa*. We travelled another league, on the 27th, with two *Frenchmen*, and an *Armenian* merchant, who had joined us, but the heat was ſo ſtifling, that we were obliged to ſhelter ourſelves in the ſhade of the mountain of *Ortſjoerire*, where we ſupped in a very agreeable manner. We there found a *Perſian* lord, who had retired into a grotto to enjoy the cool air, having, for that purpoſe, quitted his tents which were ſet up in a field, where he was cauſing ſome wells to be ſunk, by the King's order. The nobleman ſent us refreſhments of fruit, and ice, which he imagined we wanted extremely, though we were well ſupplied with all accommodations of that nature; notwithſtanding which we accepted of his civility, and returned him our acknowledgments, with a preſent to his meſſenger; and likewiſe ſent him ſome of our fruits, with thrice the quantity of ice we had received from him; and for which he thanked us, but gave nothing to the perſon who carried them to him.

The arrival of the new director.

About eight at night, we perceived, on the mountain of *Marsjal*, the flambeaux of our new director, agreeable to the cuſtom obſerved by perſons of rank, who travel by night in *Perſia*. We then mounted our horſes immediately, leaving ſome domeſtics to take care of our proviſions, with an intention to return thither, provided the director would ſtop there, to wait the arrival of his lady, who had not advanced ſo far as himſelf, and this was accordingly conſented to. The lady herſelf came ſome time after, preceded in the ſame manner, by a flambeau, and we remounted our horſes, in order to proceed to the laſt *Caravanſerai*, which we had paſſed by as we came, and we arrived there at midnight.

The order of his march.

Our director and his train marched in this manner: His gentleman of the horſe was at the head, followed by a led horſe, two guides, and ſix couriers. After theſe, Mr. *Bakker* appeared, accompanied by a

French gentleman; then came the *Kaljan*, or the perſon who carries the *Tobacco*, ſeated on a Jagtan, which has been already deſcribed. This ſervant was followed by the *Bocx-adrager*, or a man who carries ſuch furniture as may happen to be wanted on the road; and a water-carrier, who has a leather bucket filled with it, under the belly of his horſe; there were likewiſe two grooms, and as many cooks, with the proper implements; as alſo another ſervant, who is charged with the care of the bedding; a valet to ſweep the chamber, beſide four *Moreſco* ſlaves, ſeventeen horſemen, and ſix couriers.

The director's lady was attended by two *Dutch* women, who were in the ſervice of the company; ſhe had likewiſe two guides, and as many couriers, with a footman who led her mule by the bridle, and was followed by another, who conducted four female ſlaves; there was alſo another ſervant ſeated on the jagtan, and likewiſe a torch-bearer. The whole Troop was compoſed of thirty two perſons, among whom were nine couriers.

On the 28th of this month, Mr. *Bakker* entertained us at dinner, and we arrived, about the cloſe of the day at *Iſpahan*, where he was received under a diſcharge of the ſmall arms of the company. His lady, who was not inclined to enter the city till night, was received in the ſame manner. She was of *Dutch* extraction, but a native of the *Indies*. Mr. *Kaſtelein* treated her with all imaginable politeneſs, and entertained her at ſupper.

On the laſt day of the month, the king's muſic was heard all night, on account of the feſtival of *Baba-ſoedſia-adien*, which has been formerly mentioned. On the eighth of *July*, that of *Mohammed* was ſolemnized; when his Majeſty's muſic played anew, and moſt of the ſhops were ſhut up.

On the 12th and 13th of *July* I made all the neceſſary preparations for my journey, and took leave of my friends, in order to ſet out the next day, with Mr. *Kaſtelein*.

CHAP. LVII.

The author's ſecond departure from Iſpahan. *The order in which he and his company began their journey. Very ſingular plants. Tombs. Vaſt ſwarms of* Gnats. *Their arrival at* Zjie-raes.

WE ſet out on the 15th of *July*, about ten in the evening, without acquainting any one with our departure, that we might avoid all ceremonials, and prevent the great number of Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s friends at *Iſpahan*, as well *Chriſtians* as *Perſians*, from accompanying us out of the city, according to cuſtom. They had, with that view, deſired him to acquaint them with the day and hour of his departure; particularly the biſhop of the *Armenians*, who had great obligations to him: But he acted with as much ſecrecy as poſſible, contenting himſelf with the unblemiſhed reputation he had acquired, during his long reſidence in *Perſia*, and with the eſteem his friends entertained for him. He therefore was only attended by his deputy, and the company's interpreter, with whom ſome *Indian* couriers joined themſelves. Our company, however, amounted at laſt to forty one perſons, thirty of whom were on horſeback. The daughter of Mr. *Kaſtelein* placed herſelf, with her waiting woman, in a *Kaſua*, which is a kind of litter. The women ſlaves had been ſent away the preceding year.

The cooks, and four other ſervants, who carried tapeſtry, quilts, and all other neceſſaries for the journey, were ordered to ſet out before the reſt of the company, that all things might be orderly diſpoſed at the place where we were to lodge.

A Kaſua *or* Perſian *litter.*

Two of Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s chief domeſtics marched on the ſides of his daughter's litter, to oblige the *Moors* whom they might happen to meet to give them a free paſſage. She was likewiſe accompanied by two couriers, one of whom, an *Armenian*, led the mule of the litter, which was lined all round with red. Theſe litters are very commodious for travelling; and there are ſome mules which carry two, in the nature of panniers. Camels are alſo employed in this ſervice; but not with ſo much convenience.

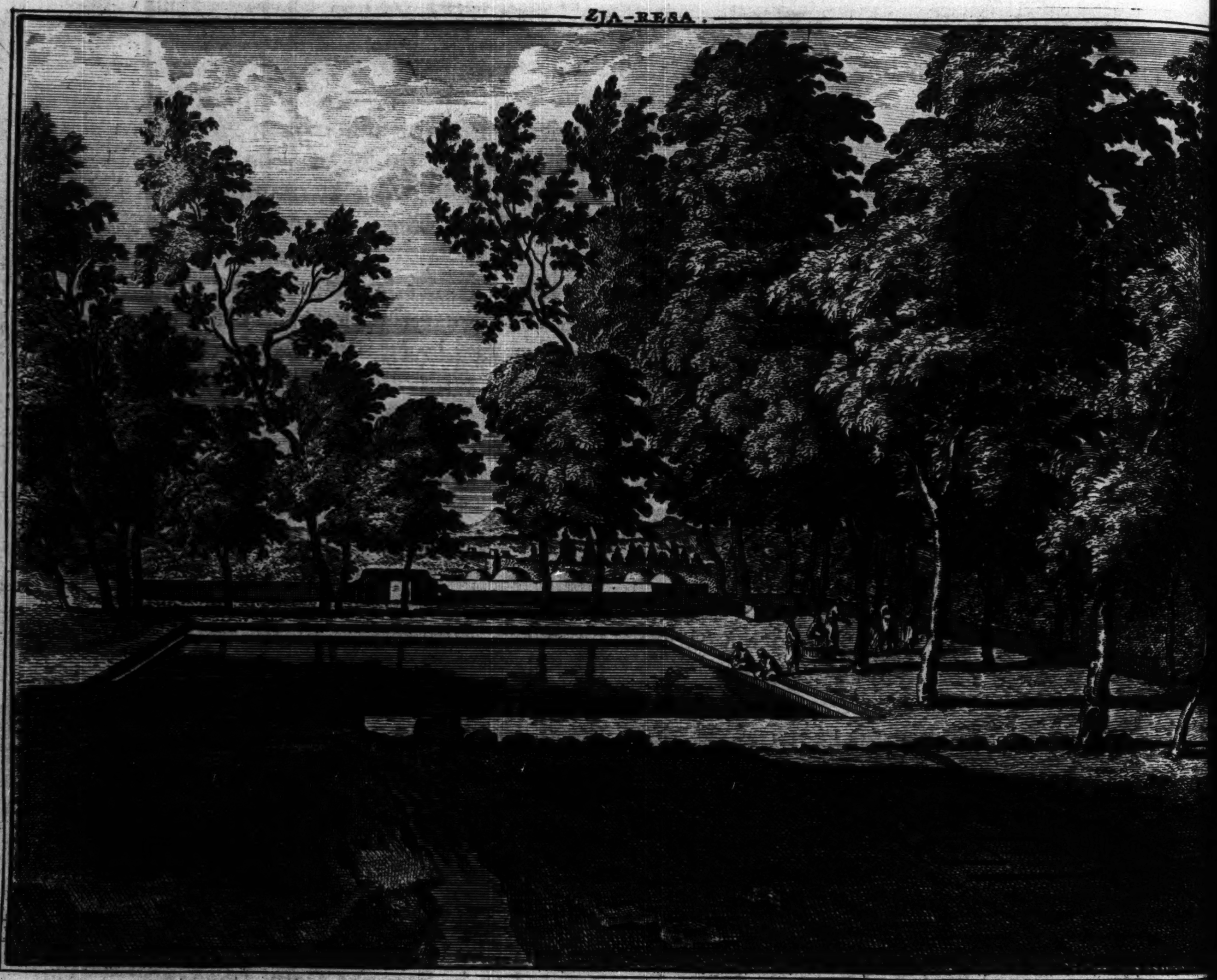
The director of the carriages never advances to any diſtance from the litter, but to ſee that nothing is wanting. The *Kaſua* generally ſets out half an hour before the reſt of the company; and as it is accompanied by a flambeau in the night, they never loſe ſight of it. Thoſe who conduct the baggage are ordered likewiſe to march before, but they are frequently overtaken in the way.

We arrived, about two in the morning, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Mierſareſaleſa*, where the interpreter *Sabid* entertained us very handſomly with ſome proviſions he had ordered to be brought from *Iſpahan*. The *Indian* couriers returned in the afternoon, and we came to *Majaer* at one in the morning, where our interpreter entertained us a ſecond time. Mr. *Oets* and he parted from us at that place, after having ſhed abundance of tears; and, indeed Mr. *Kaſtelein* had acted like a father to the firſt, who had been his deputy, and the other was his intimate friend. This ſeparation was made upon the way at ſome diſtance from the *Caravanſerai*. We ſtopt twice near a ſmall river, and arrived about midnight at the tombs of *Zia-reza*. Some domeſtics had been ſent in good time to ſecure the lodgings, which were granted us by the inhabitants,

tants, who were ſenſible they ſhould be well paid. They alſo prepared a kind of *Korog* againſt our arrival, for the accommodation of the women. We paſſed the night very quietly, and afterward diverted ourſelves in a beautiful place, where was a baſon full of fiſh. This place appeared to me ſo agreeable, that I took a draught of it, and here preſent it to the reader. We continued there till the 19th, and after having paſſed through the city of *Cominsja*, which lies all in ruins, and drank coffee in the garden of *Baba-ziel*, we ordered the flambeau to be lighted, and arrived about midnight at *Magſoet-begi*. We ſaw the next day ſeven or eight ſtags, and endeavoured to ſhoot them, but they ran from us. We paſſed the night at *Aep-nabaet*, and came the next day to *Jeſ-dagaes*, where we diverted ourſelves in a garden full of fruit.

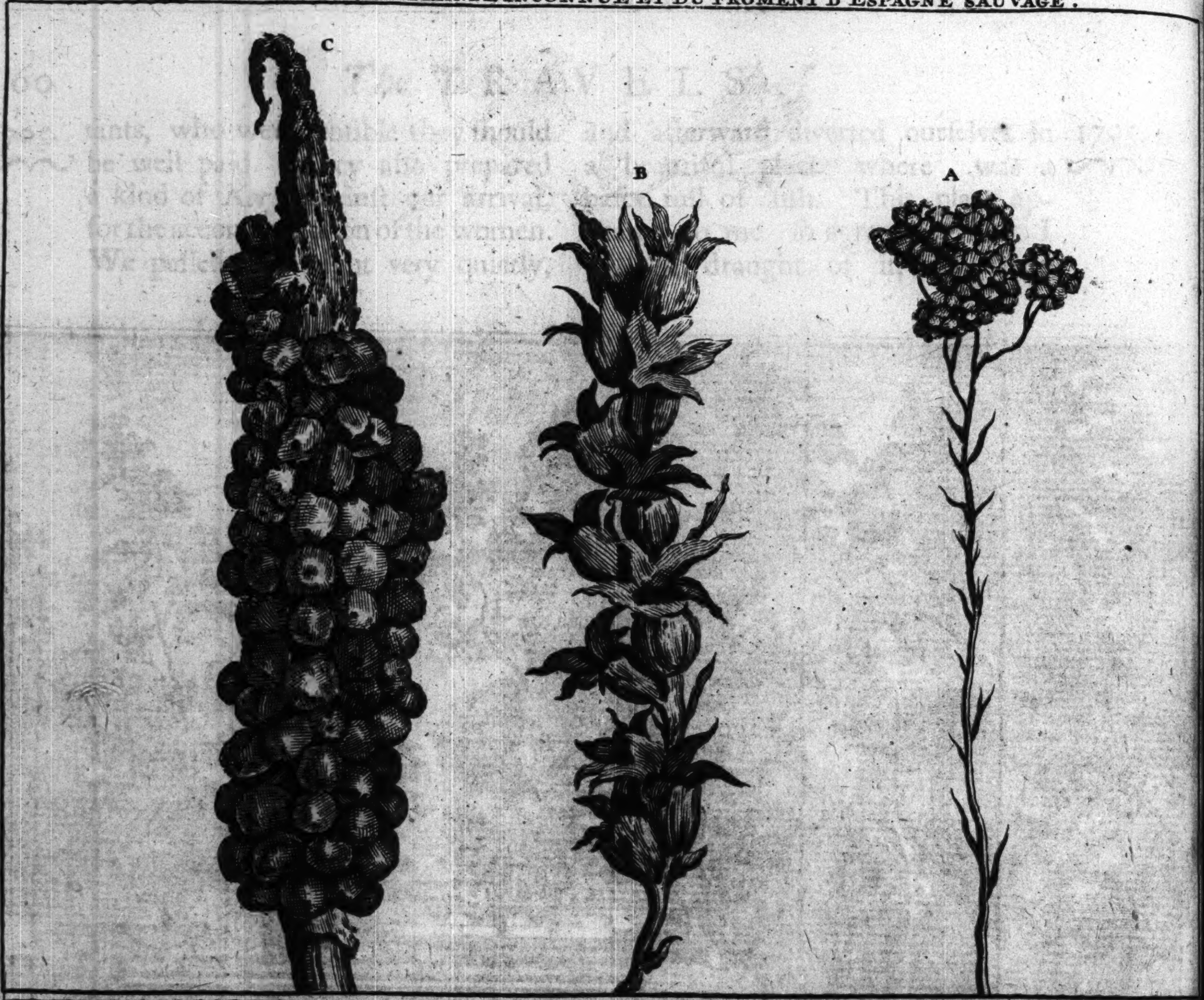
Abundance of fiſh.

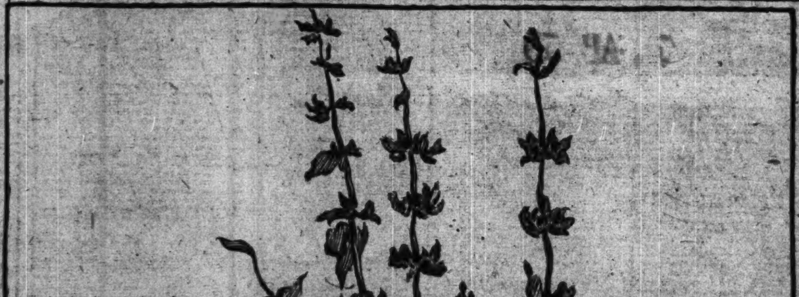
We afterward caſt nets into a ſmall river, which runs by the ſide of the garden, and at the firſt caſt drew out ſixteen large fiſhes, and a prodigious number of ſmall fry, which we cauſed to be dreſſed ſeveral ways, the fiſh in that country being extraordinary good. Five or ſix women, whoſe habitation was in that garden, entertained us very agreeably, and when we had returned them ſome marks of our acknowledgment, we repaired to the *Caravanſerai*, from whence we proceeded four leagues on the 24th, and ſtopt at the village of *Gombes-Lala*, where there are but few houſes. We ſaw abundance of deer in the mountains, without being able to approach them; but in recompence for that diſappointment, we met with ſeveral peaſants in


ZJA-RESA.

7 AP 53

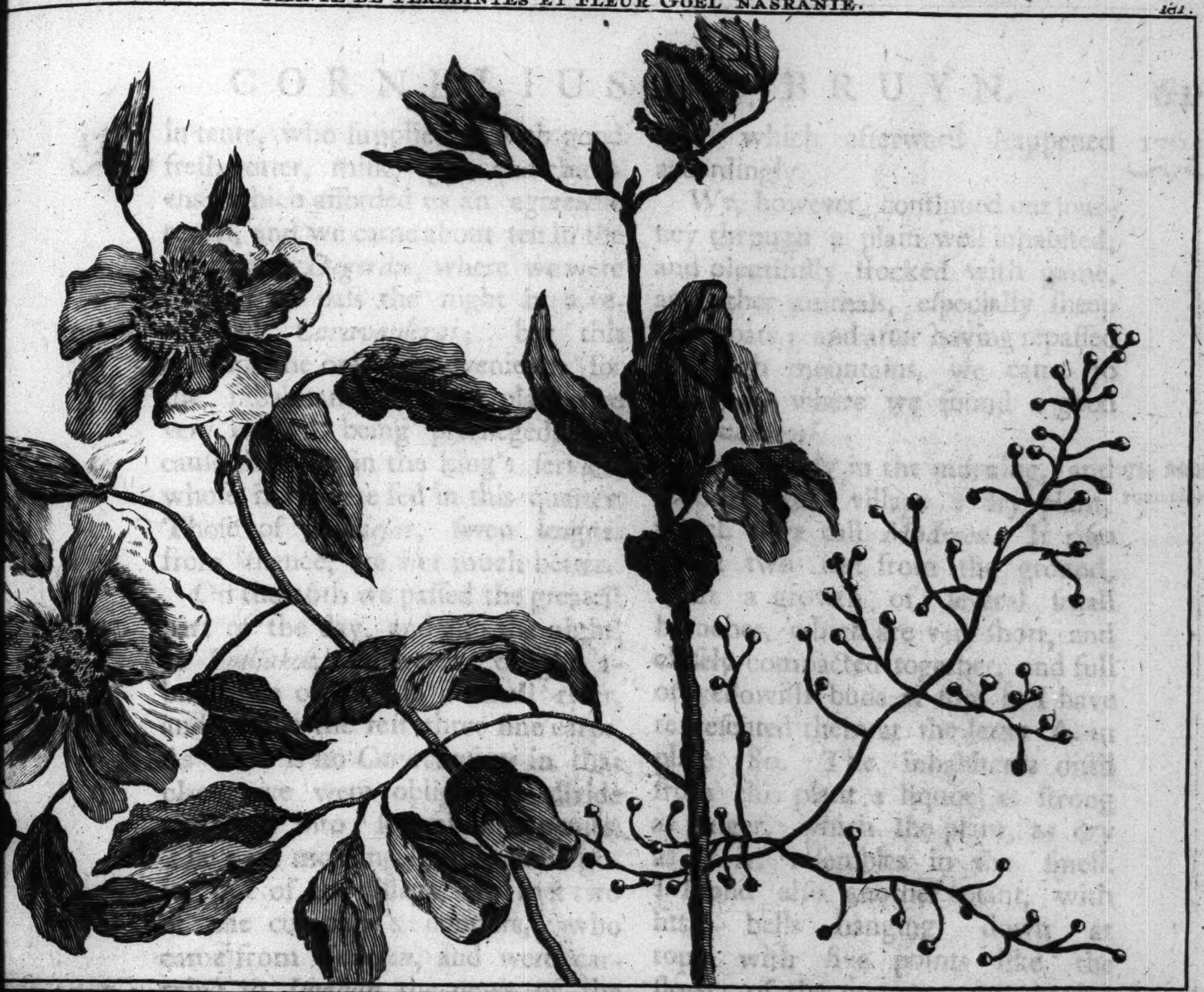
180 Plante madroen. Plante inconnue et du Froment d'Espagne sauvage.

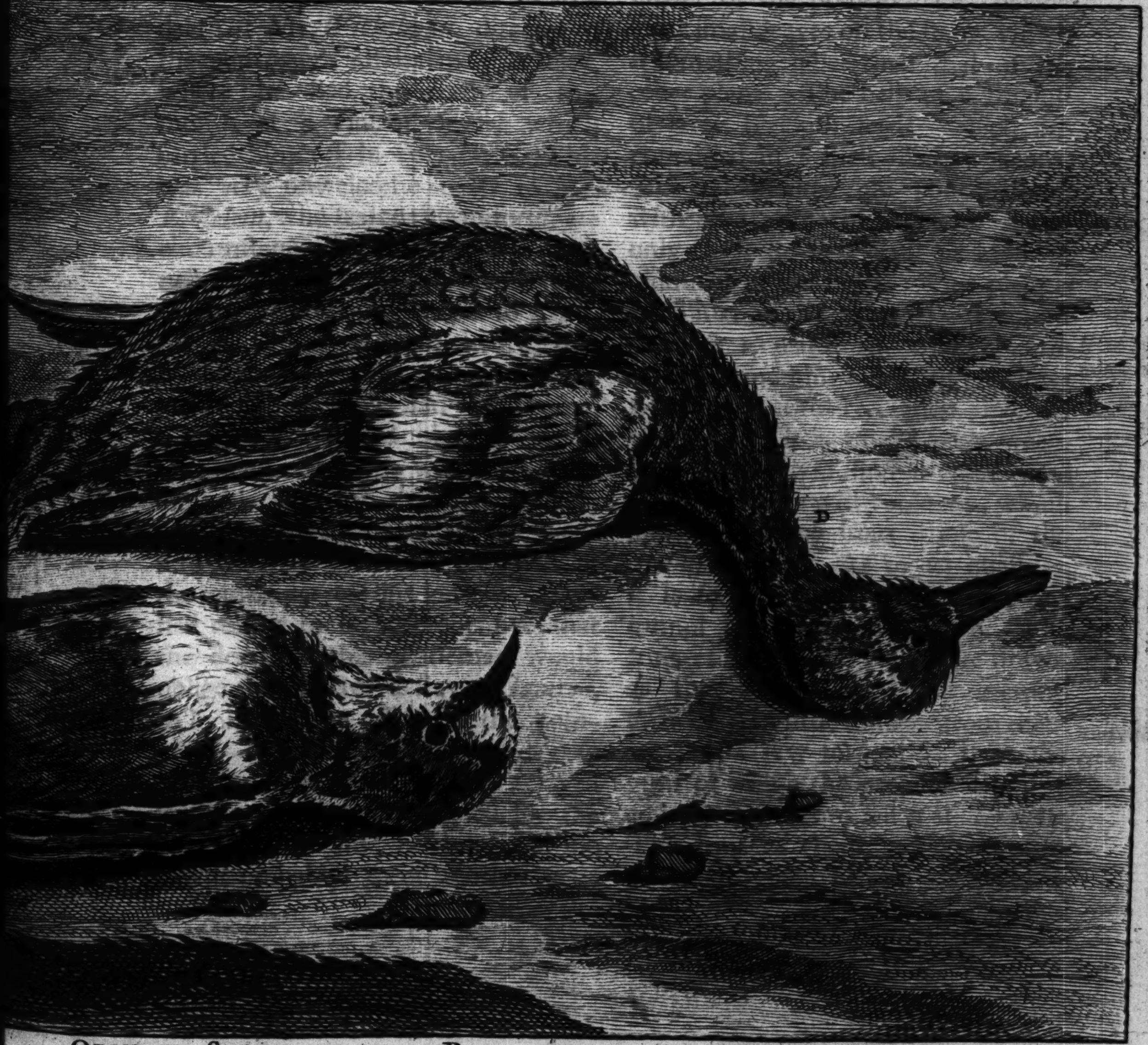




182. Plante Chef-tereck.

PLANTE DE TEREBINTES ET FLEUR GOEL NASRANIE. 181.





OISEAU SJOERAKAN, ET BECCASSINE. 183.

7 AP 53

in tents, who ſupplied us with good freſh butter, milk, eggs, and chickens, which afforded us an agreeable repaſt, and we came about ten in the evening to *Degerdoe*, where we were obliged to paſs the night in a very bad *Caravanſerai*; but this was not the only inconvenience, for the inhabitants of the place are very uncivil, being privileged, becauſe they are in the king's ſervice, whoſe horſes are fed in this quarter. Thoſe of *Koſkieſar*, ſeven leagues from thence, are not much better.

The death of the director at Gamron.

On the 26th we paſſed the greateſt part of the day, and alſo the night, at *Poelſakoe*, where we caught abundance of fiſh, in a ſmall river, and among the reſt three fine carps. As there is no *Caravanſerai* in that place, we were obliged to divide ourſelves into ſeveral companies. The next morning, as we were going out of the village, we met two of the company's couriers, who came from *Gamron*, and were carrying to *Iſpahan* the news of the death of Mr. *Wichelman*, director of the company's affairs in that city, where he died the ſixth of this month of a violent fever, which carried him off in two days. This was very unwelcome news to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who feared this unfortunate circumſtance would retard his journey to *Batavia*. He ordered theſe couriers to return with him to *Koſkieſar*, three leagues from thence, that he might have time to examine the letters which they had in charge. This news created him ſo much uneaſineſs, that he was unable to cloſe his eyes for the whole night, and it deprived us of all the pleaſure we had promiſed ourſelves in the remainder of our journey, as we had reaſon to be apprehenſive that the death of this gentleman would oblige the director to ſtay at *Gamron*, to look after the affairs of the company. He wrote the next day to *Iſpahan*, and *Gamron*, but delayed ſending the letter deſigned for the laſt place, becauſe he imagined he might probably meet another courier, which afterward happened accordingly.

We, however, continued our journey through a plain well inhabited, and plentifully ſtocked with game, and other animals, eſpecially ſheep and goats; and after having repaſſed the high mountains, we came to *Aſſa-pas*, where we found a good *Caravanſerai*.

The Madroen *plant.*

Wild Spaniſh *wheat*

Turpentine trees.

I roſe early in the morning, and found in that village a dry plant, which they call *Madroen*. It riſes about two feet from the ground, with a growth of ſeveral ſmall branches, which are very ſhort, and cloſely compacted together, and full of yellowiſh buds at top, as I have repreſented them at the letter A. in plate 180. The inhabitants diſtil from this plant a liquor as ſtrong as ginger, which the plant, as dry as it is, reſembles in the ſmell. I found alſo another plant, with little bells hanging down at top, with five points like the flower of the pomegranate, having ſome ſmall leaves on the ſtalk, which is ſomething taller than that of the other plant. The bells of it are full of large blackiſh ſeeds, which are contained in a ſhell like an acorn. The inhabitants are unacquainted with the name of it, and know only that the ſeed cauſes a kind of giddineſs in the head. This plant is exhibited at the letter B. I found likewiſe a plant of wild *Spaniſh* wheat, ſomething taller, and it glows with a beautiful red when ripe, till which time it is tinged with green. The reader will find it repreſented at the letter C, without leaves, which differ in nothing from thoſe of the *Spaniſh* wheat. As to its qualities, it is ſo hot, and coſtive, that one cannot bear it in one's mouth. The fruit of theſe three plants are drawn as they appear in their natural growth. At a little diſtance from them we ſaw a few turpentine trees, the gum of which the peaſants carefully collect, in order to ſell it at *Iſpahan*. The fruit of them, which conſiſts of ſmall green berries, is pickled, and uſed inſtead of capers. There is a bough of it in plate 181. and on one ſide of it a white flower call'd *Goel-naſranie*, the ſtem of which is pretty high, and bears a profuſion of branches, ſpotted in the inſide with yellow and red. We had a prodigious ſtorm that day, which however did not incommode us more than the duſt, as we had the wind on our backs, and were then in a large plain full of canals, marſhes, and bull-ruſhes.

Wild boars.

This part of the country is infeſted by a vaſt number of wild boars, that march in troops, and deſtroy all the ſeed and fruits of the earth, and purſue their ravages as far as the entrance into the villages. The inhabitants, in order to remedy this miſchief, ſet fire to the ruſhes which afford them a retreat, and deſtroy'd above fifty in that manner; but thoſe that eſcaped the flames ſpread themſelves all round, in ſuch a manner, that the people themſelves were obliged to have recourſe to flight, and have never diſturbed them ſince, for fear of drawing upon themſelves ſome greater calamity. They aſſured me, that ſome of theſe creatures were as large as cows. The ſame day, in the afternoon, we met upon the road the domeſticks of the duke or governor of *Laer*, with fifteen Kaſuas full of women, and we arrived about nine at *Oed-joen*.

A royal tomb.

We had diſpatch'd ſome ſervants before to ſecure us lodgings in a garden, which the king had in that quarter, where we found the tomb of *Sultan Hoſſen Mameth*, a king's ſon, whom they pretend has been buried there 280 years. This monument is in a ſmall apartment, cover'd with a little dome, and the coffin is of ſtone, caſ'd with wood, and is cover'd with a pall, which reaches to the ground, and has a turban upon it. As there were ſeveral other apartments, we were very well lodg'd. And as ſoon as the ſun appear'd above the horizon we went a fiſhing, and had excellent ſport, in a ſmall river, which runs by the ſide of the village. We returned thither the next day, and were as ſucceſsful as before: After which we ſet out out about five in the evening, and when we had croſſed the mountains of *Imanſade*, we came about nine to the town of that name, after having been expoſed to exceſſive heats all that day.

The tomb of a ſaint.

The firſt day of *Auguſt* we went to ſee the tomb of *Imon Sadde Iſmael*, who, if the Inhabitants may be believed, has reſted there 700 years; and the veneration for the tomb of this *Santon* is ſo great, that even the grandees of the court and the great officers of the army, are prohibited from approaching it, or even the town, when they are travelling, (in order to ſecure the people of the place from the inſults which others ſuffer.) This tomb, which is built of ſtone, is tolerably large; it is likewiſe cover'd with a dome, and ſurrounded with a wall, to which there is a door.

We ſet out at four o'clock, and arriv'd by eight at *Maj-ien*, where Mr. *Kaſtelein* and his Daughter took lodgings in a pleaſant garden, and we went to a *Caravanſerai*, which was not far off.

A ſingular plant.

I found in that garden a plant call'd *Cheſ-tereck*, which is about four or five feet high, and bears a great many branches, and large leaves. It likewiſe produces little berries, which contain four grains of ſeed, of a clear cheſnut brown, and has a very ſtrong ſmell, proceeding from the flower, which is ſmall, and variegated with colours of white, blew, and violet, ſtreak'd with red. This plant is in great eſteem for its agreeable odour, which is the only known virtue it enjoys. The reader will find it repreſented in plate 182.

Singular birds.

I took alſo a bird, called *Sioerakan*, very like a duck, and as big. It has a yellow head, with a red beak and feet, and is repreſented in plate 183. I caught alſo another bird, which paſſes there for a ſnipe, the plumage of which is black, grey, and white, and the feet red, the reader will find it at the letter E.

The next day we proceeded on our journey, and had a diſtant view of the mountain, mentioned before, upon which there was formerly a fortreſs.

As we continued to advance, we found the plain full of cattle, and the country people employed in cutting the corn with a crooked knife, like a ſickle; graſping as much of it as they were able in their left hand. Inſtead of threſhing it they uſe a ſmall carriage, with four wheels, which they roll ſeveral times over the corn, after they have laid it it little heaps, in order to bruiſe the ſtraw, and force out the grain; after which they toſs it up and down in the wind, and nothing is left but the grain and the ears. When this is done, they ſeparate the ears, and beat them again, in order to force out the reſt of the grain. As all the people were then come out of the villages, the country was entirely covered with tents.

In the evening, after we had croſſed the river of *Bendemir*, upon a bridge, near the two mountains already mentioned, on which a fortreſs formerly ſtood, we paſſed the night at the *Caravanſerai* of *Abgerm*, at half a league diſtance from that bridge; and from thence proceeded with our flambeaux to a mountain, at the foot of which a fine ſpring of water guſhes out as clear as chryſtal. This ſtream abounds with fiſh, that eaſily ſlide under the rock into ſeveral ſubterranean hollows. It is about three feet in depth, and the water is ſo extremely clear, that all the fiſh may be eaſily ſeen. This gave us an inclination to employ our net, and we brought out at the firſt draught twenty fiſh, three or four of which were a foot long:

The inconvenience occaſioned by Gnats.

But it was impoſſible for us to cloſe our eyes any part of the night, the *Caravanſerai* being full of gnats, which continually diſturbed us, and obliged us to quit that incommodious lodging. One of our domeſtics, who reſolved to continue in bed, was ſo ill treated, that we hardly knew him the next day. Our young lady had likewiſe her ſhare, although ſhe had taken all poſſible precautions not to be diſturbed, and was continually moving about, without once lying down. Even the very horſes were extremely incommoded by theſe noxious vermin.

We ſet out from ſo diſagreeable a place by break of day, and paſſed over a ſtone bridge, half a league in length, and built over a marſh; but as moſt of the arches are very ſmall, the waters, when they happen to ſwell, flow over the top. The plain is cut into a variety of channels, and likewiſe abounds with rice.

About ten in the evening we came to the *Caravanſerai* of *Porlegoor*, where we met with a courier from *Gamron* to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who informed us, that the widow of the deceaſed director, Mr. *Wichelman*, died the 12th of the ſame month of *June*. That place was alſo full of gnats, which rendered it impoſſible for us to read the letters which the courier brought, ſo that he was obliged to go back with us to the *Caravanſerai* of *Baeits-gaedie*, two leagues from *Zjie-raes*.

The author's arrival at Zjie-raes.

On the fourth we ſent back the courier to *Iſpahan*, where he had alſo letters to deliver; and then we proceeded to *Zjie-raes*, where we we alighted at a houſe of Mr. *Kaſtelein*. Father *Alkantera* came immediately after, and I went to viſit his companion about noon.

The next day the merchants, who traded with the company, came to wait on Mr. *Kaſtelein*, and the moſt conſiderable perſon among them, whoſe name was *Hazje Nebbie*, made him a preſent of ſeveral bottles of oil of *Santal*, together with ſome diſtilled waters, ſweetmeats, and fruits, for which the bearer was handſomely gratified. The next day we were viſited by ſeveral *Perſian* merchants, who had great dealings with the company.

That day we went in great ceremony to pay a viſit to *Hazje Nebbie*, who entertained us after the manner of the country, with hot liquors, ſweetmeats, and tobacco, by the ſide of a beautiful fountain.

His houſe was the fineſt in all that town; and he preſſed Mr. *Kaſtelein* to defer his journey for ſome days, in order to take the diverſion of the country; but he excuſed himſelf from accepting the civility. On the eighth in the morning two couriers from *Iſpahan* paſſed by with letters for *Gamron*,

CHAP. LVIII.

The author's departure from Zjie-raes. *Fertile fruit-gardens. The retreat of the* Pagans. *The author's arrival at* Jaron; *with an account of its ſituation. Abundance of dates,* &c. *Wild piſtacho and turpentine-trees. The ruins of ſome antient fortreſſes. Hot winds. The author's arrival at* Laer.

The author's departure Zjie-raes.

WHEN we left *Zjie-raes*, we entered upon a plain, and the bridge of *Pol-ſaſſa*, which is partly in ruins, and the great drought had drained all the water from under it. At a little diſtance from thence, upon the middle of the plain, is a high mountain ſeparate from the reſt, and we ſtruck to the right of it, in order to proceed to the *Caravanſerai* of *Babba-had-jie*, five leagues from *Zjie-raes*; and where we arrived at midnight.

The 9th in the morning Mr. *Kaſtelein* had a fit of a fever, which obliged us to ſtop in a garden, after a journey of four leagues. In our way thither we paſſed by ſeveral pleaſure-houſes, and fine gardens, and then began to aſcend the mountains, from whence we had a view of *Zjie-raes*, at the end of the plain. We continued our courſe to the village of *Paroe*, half a leaguee from the high road, where the garden was in which we were to ſtop; and by the ſide of it ran a ſmall river, in which we found crayfiſh. We renewed our journey the next day in the afternoon, and arrrived about 9 at the *Caravanſerai* of *Moſſe-farie*. Immediately after which we went a fiſhing with flambeaux, and caught ſome carp and cray-fiſh. This part of the country is full of villages, the inhabitants of which were out in the field under their tents, along the river ſide, with their cattle.

We purſued our journey at ſix in the morning, and paſſed by a village of extraordinary length, all the houſes of which were built with ruſhes. We then croſſed very ſtony mountains, and ſtopt at the *Caravanſerai* of *Paeyra*, which is ſurrounded with villages, and lies about four leagues from the place where we had paſſed the night. The country is watered by a ſmall river, and the mountains are full of willows, and wild fig-trees; and they likewiſe produce plenty of ſage; the figs of theſe trees are not unpleaſant, but they are very little coloured.

We continued our journey on the 12th, and found ſeveral great heaps of ſtone in the way; which the people would perſuade us were the ruins of ſome antient city; but I could not diſcover any part of its foundations. A great number of villages and gardens appear on the right, towards the mountains.

It was eleven at night when we arrived at the *Caravanſerai* of *Aſmongeer*, after having paſſed over ſeveral hills, and ſtony mountains, and ſome valleys. On the 13th the people of the place brought us ſome figs, *A wild cat.*

figs, raiſons, and citrons from the mountains. I here ſaw a ſmall catamountain coloured like thoſe of the iſle of *Cyprus*, with long legs, and ſtrait ears, that are likewiſe of a conſiderable length, and a tail like that of a rat; but I obſerved when ſhe licked herſelf, that her tongue was not ſo pointed as thoſe of common cats. We ſet out the next day at ſix in the morning, and came to ſeveral handſome houſes with gardens, in the ſhade of which we reſted ourſelves, after we had travelled three leagues, the ſun being very hot, and moſt of our company tired. Theſe gardens are ſituated in the town of *Tadawoen*, which ſubſiſts by their produce; and they are filled with pomegranate, orange, peach, and fig trees, beſide large growths of palm, and moſt of them are loaden with fruit at the ſame time. We likewiſe found abundance of melons there; and all theſe fruits are produced in great plenty by the copious ſtreams of water that enrich the ſoil. They are carried from thence to *Iſpahan*; and as this place is encompaſſed with mountains, it appears like a wood at a diſtance.

Antient grottoes.

About half a league from thence, and among ſome ſteep rocks, are ſeveral grottoes, which I went to ſee on the 14th after the heat of the day was over. I perceived before theſe grottoes ſome remains of a ſtone wall well cemented, and a ſmall tract in the moſt ſteep part of the rock, which ſlopes from the mountains on the right and left. Thro' the valley, between theſe mountains flows a river, round which a ſevere cold always reigns. The inhabitants of the country pretend that the *Guebres* retired formerly into theſe grottoes. But I ſhall hereafter be more particular in my deſcription of them, having paſſed that way on purpoſe, in my return from the *Indies*.

We were prevented from proceeding on our journey that day, becauſe Madamoiſelle *Kaſtelein* had the misfortune to be indiſpoſed with a fever, which encreaſed to ſuch a degree in the night, that ſhe became delirious; which ſenſibly afflicted her father, who loved her tenderly, and alarmed us on his account, becauſe he would not ſtir from her, though he himſelf had but a weak conſtitution, and was ſubject to ſeveral diſorders. That lady's waiting maid was likewiſe taken ill, which added to our embarraſſment, and made us reſolve to ſit up with her miſtreſs, one after another, to relieve her father, who had great need of reſt. The violence of her fever continued till the ſeventeenth, when it came to a criſis, and ſhe ſlept toward morning: It was then thought proper to have her carried in her litter, by four men, to *Jaron*, and we choſe out eight of the ſtrongeſt peaſants in the village to relieve one another.

An extraordinary fiſh.

A fiſh was brought to us that day, as big as a *Kabeliaeu*, or *Melwel*, to which it had ſome reſemblance, and a great deal of the reliſh; but I had never ſeen one ſo large in that country. We had it dreſſed after the *Dutch* manner; and as we had ſome carps, we made a tolerable good repaſt, and continued our journey as far as the mountains. As the litter, which was carried by men, proceeded but ſlowly, we did not arrive till midnight at the *Caravanſerai* of *Michgeck Sogte*, after we had travelled about three leagues.

We purſued our journey on the 18th, and paſſed over ſome craggy mountains, after which we entered into a champion country, cut out into canals, over which were ſmall bridges, and arrived at midnight at *Fagra-baet*, where we took up our lodging in a pleaſant garden full of palm-trees, with a row of ſena in the middle, and a variety of pomegranate, orange, quince, and pear trees, with many others; the fruits of which were admirable. This garden had not any conſiderable extent, but was the fineſt I ever ſaw. There was a houſe in it raiſed very high, the walls of which were extremely thick. It was likewiſe adorned with two fine fountains, and a handſome baſon in the middle, with a fountain ſpouting before the front of the houſe. The water of this baſon was conveyed by a ſubterranean channel, to the two fountains, and ſerved alſo to water the whole garden. This place belonged to the duke or governor of *Gamron*, called *Mameth-Momien Chan*, whoſe anceſtors had likewiſe been governors of that place.

The author's arrival at Jaron.

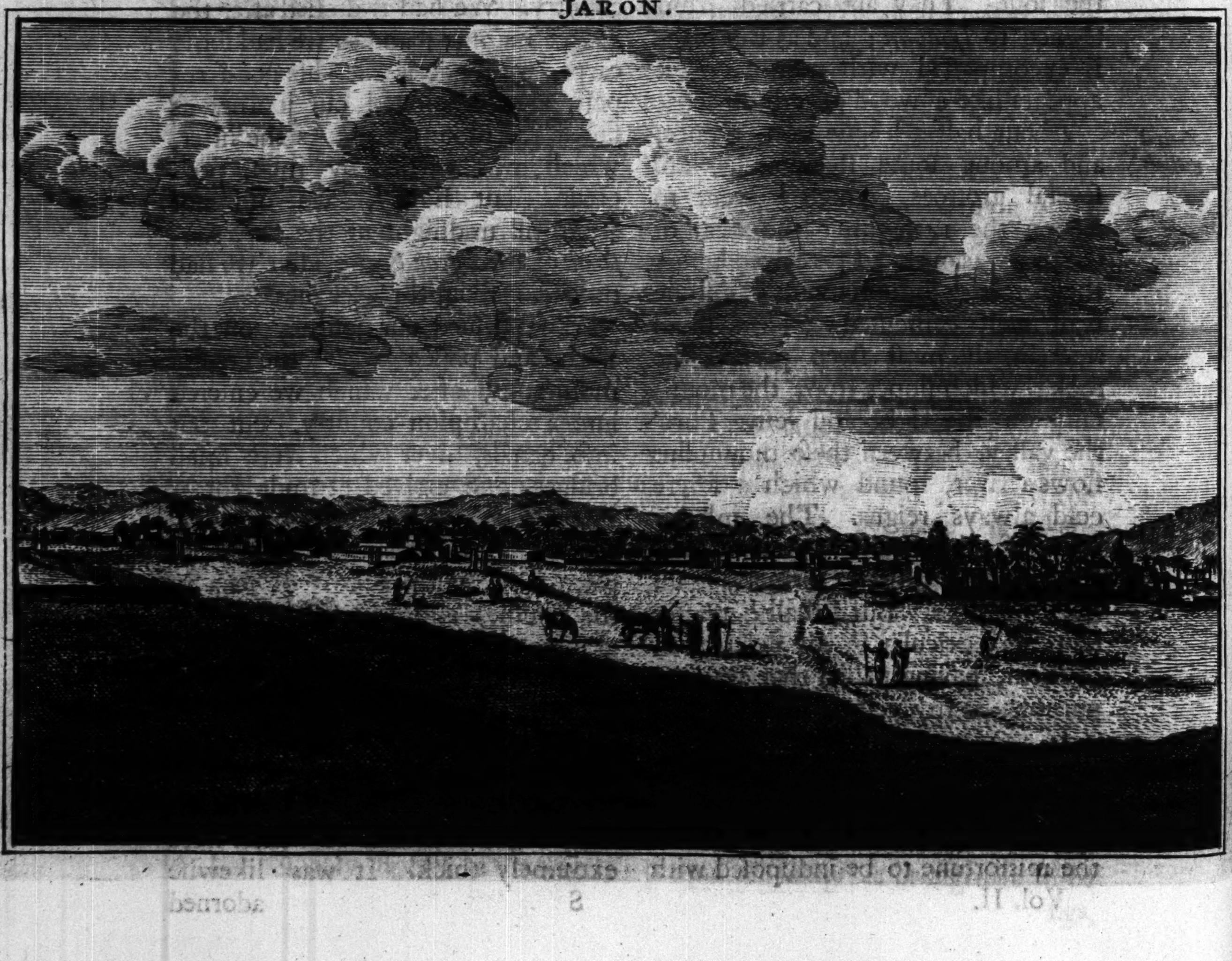
On the 19th we ſet out in the evening for *Jaron*, which is but a league from the garden, and arrived there about nine o' clock, at a *Caravanſerai* near the city, where we found a good well, covered with a kind of ſtone dome.

The ſituation of the city.

At break of day I went into the city, which is very mean, and looks more like a village, the houſes being all built of earth, and ſeparate from one another. I ſaw two or three poor little moſques, in which they were performing ſervice. As this city is full of palm-trees, it looks at a diſtance like a wood. This, of all the trees in that country, is what is eſteemed moſt, both for its beauty, and the goodneſs of the fruit, which is the beſt in all *Perſia*. They reckon the annual product of each of theſe trees at ſeven florins; and they bear, one with another, 300 pound weight of fruit, every pound being worth two farthings. They furniſh the principal revenues of this city, the inhabitants having no other trade by which they can ſubſiſt. The government belongs to *Ibrahim Chan*, duke of *Zjie-raes*; but as that lord is always at court, he keeps one of the king's lieutenants here, as well as at *Zjie-raes*. I have exhibited a view of that city, which extends from eaſt to weſt as far as the mountains. We ſtaid till the 21ſt, and hired eight freſh men (thoſe whom we employed before not being willing to go any farther) to carry the ſick lady, who continued very weak, to *Laer*. Mr. *Kaſtelein* wrote from thence to *Gamron* to order another litter to meet him.

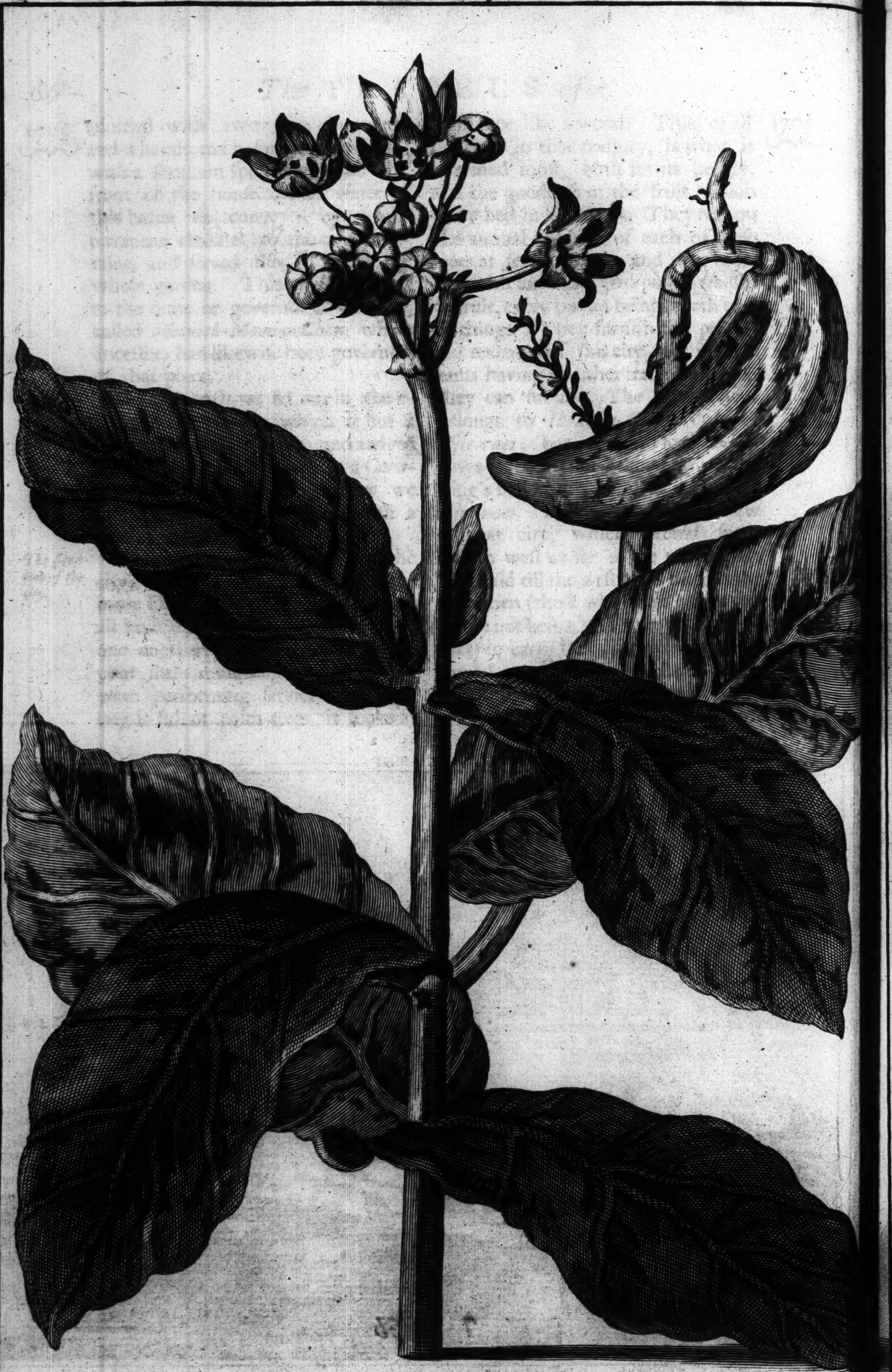
We

JARON.

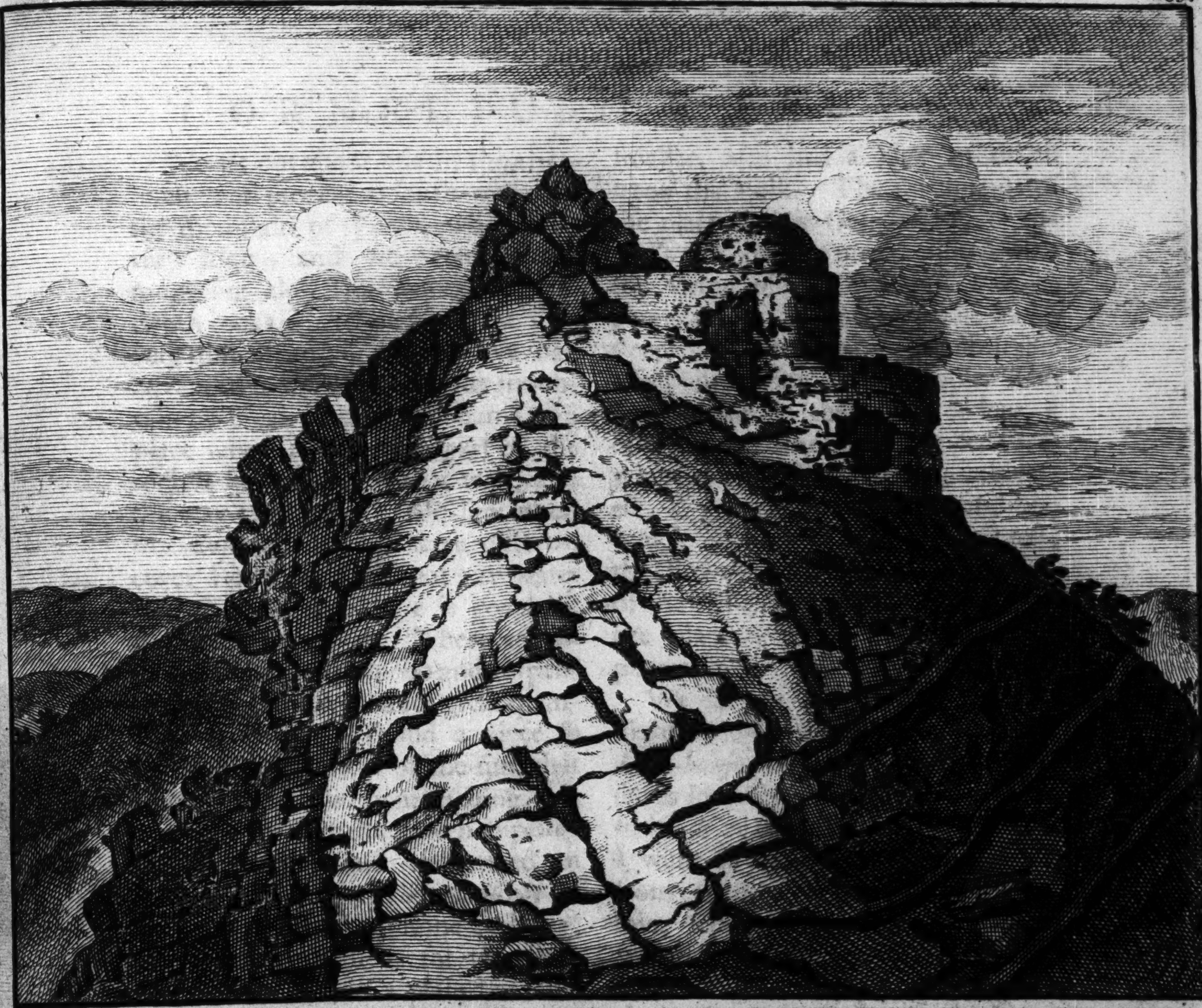


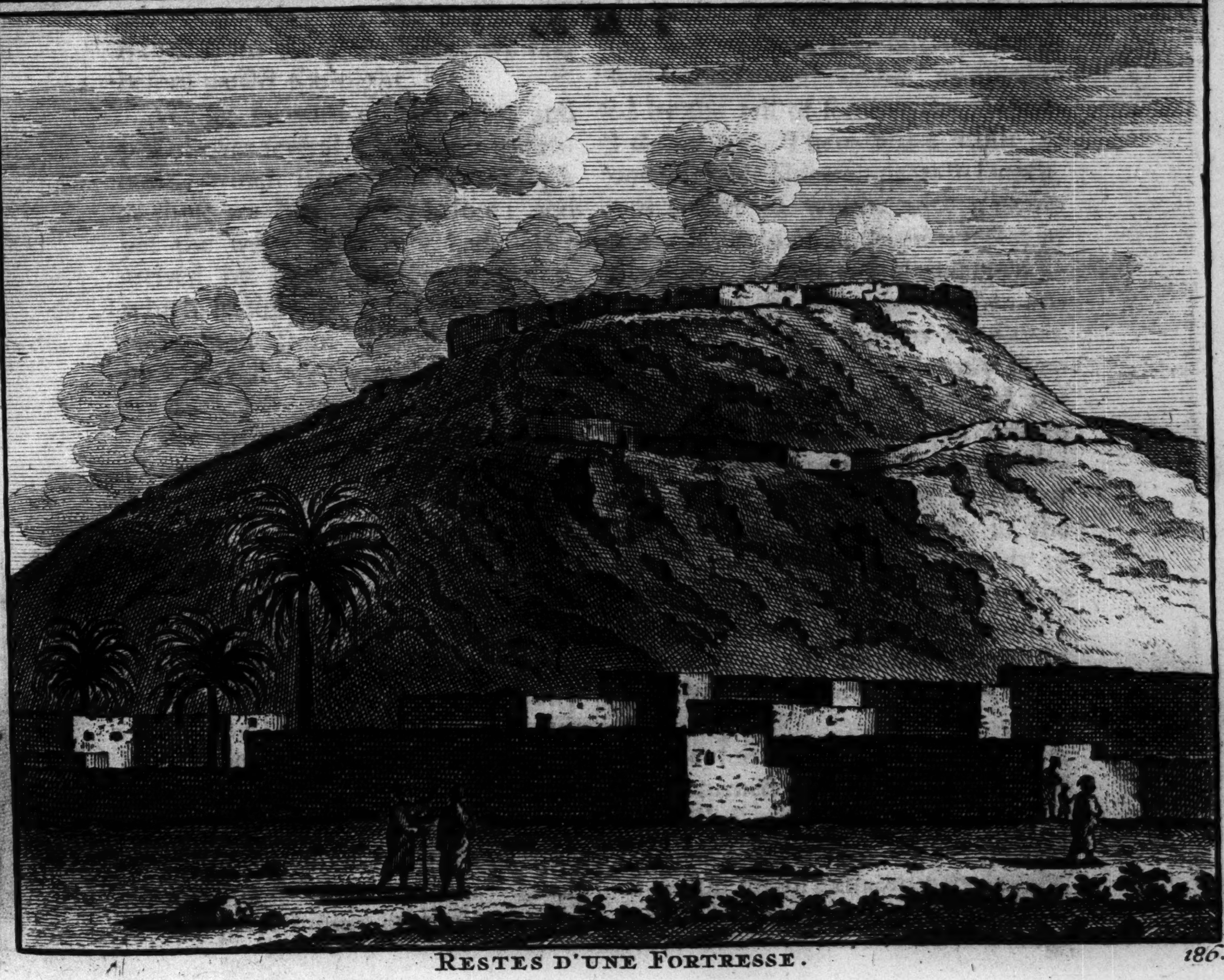
7 AP 53

PLANTE ZJA-RAEK.



RESTES D'UNE FORTRESSE. 185.





RESTES D'UNE FORTRESSE. 186.

7 AP 53

We ſet out about one in the afternoon, and proceeded ſouth-weſt over the mountain of *Jaron*, which riſes very high; and we were always mounting aloft, or deſcending between rocks,where we found the way very difficult to our horſes. We had advanced to the middle of the mountain by break of day, and came to a place where the ſteepeſt part of the rock is ſurrounded with a wall, and the way very ſtony. We ſaw upon this mountain ſeveral large ciſterns, cover'd over, and without any water at that time; but there is generally too much in winter. There are alſo abundance of piſtacho and turpentine trees, which produce great quantities of gum. I found a piece ſo hardned by the heat of the ſun, that I could keep it without melting. It was nine by that time we had paſſed the mountain; and we arrived an hour after at the *Caravanſerai* of *Ziatalle*, a beautiful ſtone building, and very commodious for travellers, ſituated likewiſe in a plain bordered with mountains, at five leagues diſtance from the place where we had before paſſed the night.

We ſet forward at midnight, and paſſed over ſeveral plains and mountains; which latter were not ſo high as thoſe we had croſſed before; and yet the ways were very bad. We arrived by day-break at a ſpring, which is ſupplied from the mountains, and from thence deſcended into a valley, through very ſtony ways.

We arrived, about eight, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Mou-ſeer*, where we found a *Carmelite*, who came from *Gamron*, and whoſe companion died on the road, by a fall which broke his leg. He had alſo been ſick himſelf for ſome time, and was going to *Iſpahan*. We ſtopped at this *Caravanſerai*, which, tho' ſmall, is tolerably commodious; a garden full of orange and other trees, furniſhed us with fruits for our refreſhment. I found under theſe trees a plant, the lower leaves of which were a ſpan in length, and half as much in breadth. Thoſe which grew higher up the tree were ſmaller, and had a kind of down upon the ſtalk. The inhabitants of the place call it *Goes-ſoutoor*, or camel's ear, but are unacquainted with the virtue of it. I found another plant, call'd *Zia-raek*, whoſe leaves ſteeped in butter have an admirable effect in curing thoſe people who have worms in their arms or legs, a diſeaſe very common about *Gamron*, where this plant is careſully cultivated. It produces only one cucumber, which is crooked and very pointed; the flowers, which riſe on the top of the ſtalk, are red and white, and the plant itſelf is repreſented in plate 184.

Perſian *Plants.*

We ſet out from thence at midnight, and arrived in the morning at *Dom-banje*, where we diſperſed ourſelves into ſeveral houſes; the *Caravanſerai* of the village lying in ruins. I went to ſee, about half a league from thence, weſtward, a mountain, ſeparate from the reſt, upon which there was formerly a fortreſs. I found upon the top a well dug into the rock, the mouth of which was ten feet in diameter, but the depth was not very conſiderable, as appeared by the fall of ſome ſtones, which I threw in. There was a vault on one ſide of it nineteen paces in length, and twelve in width, with a dome above it, containing ſeventeen feet in diameter. It was round and open atop and on the ſides, but it then appeared in a very ruinous condition. This mountain, which is very ſteep on the north ſide, has toward the ſouth-ſouth-weſt, a path of ſixteen paces in length, and a width of fourteen in the middle; it is partly cut out of the rock, and begins at the dome, from whence it extends to one ſide of the mountain; but grows much narrower at each extremity than it is in the middle, as may be ſeen by my repreſentation of it in plate 185.

The ſun being upon the decline, we returned over the plain, which was filled with ſeed, and I ſaw a field near the village with a growth of cotton, of an extraordinary height, which however was not yet in flower.

er. We found in the night a well of extraordinary good water, with which we filled our leathern jacks, that were empty before. The heat was then exceſſive, the wind being more ſultry and inſupportable than I had ever experienced it in any other country, and travellers are extremely incommoded by it. This quarter is full of villages.

Director Keits's *tomb.*

Mr. *Kaſtelein* and I reſolved to go before that night without the flambeaux, being fatigued with that troubleſome pace. We proceeded to our right, and obſerving ſome perſons ſtretched under tents, we engaged them to ſhew us the way. After we had travelled five leagues, we arrived about one in the morning at the village of *Aes Zjeraſie*; but as it was unprovided with a *Caravanſerai*, we took up our lodging at a tolerable good houſe, where we found the water a little brackiſh. Several travellers had written their names on the walls of this houſe, and among others, I read theſe words: *Mr. Director* Keits *died here in the year* 1640, *the 29th of* May. This happen'd during the travels of Mr. *Van Leenen*, counſellor extraordinary of the *Indies*, whom the company ſent at that time to *Iſpahan* in quality of ambaſſador, and to whom the director was to ſerve as a deputy. He was interr'd in that place without any ceremony, and even without a ſtone over his grave. This village is large, and contains a great number of gardens, full of palm and other trees. We here received letters from *Iſpahan* and *Gamron*, and after we had diſpatch'd the couriers who brought them, we purſued our journey the twenty-ſixth, an hour after ſun-ſet, over ſome craggy mountains, and through bad roads, and arrived about one in the morning at the *Caravanſerai* of *Bieries*, which is ſeated in a plain, and we had then travelled about five leagues. This *Caravanſerai* is a large and beautiful ſtone edifice, well built, as is alſo the reſt of the village, which is full of palm and other fruit trees. About a league from thence are the ruins of an antient fortreſs, together with a wall round the mountain, and ſome ruinous fragments upon the top. This place is call'd *Koetel-Bieries*. There is alſo a well cut into the rock. The whole is exhibited in plate 186, together with ſome palm-trees and houſes.

We ſet out the next morning before day, and arrived about ten o'clock at *De-hakoe*, a large handſome village, accommodated with a good *Caravanſerai* of ſtone, and a large growth of palm and other trees. The conductor of the beaſts of burthen entertain'd us here, and we ſet forward a little before night. We paſſed over the mountains, and then perceived a water-mill on our left hand, with a large ciſtern above it, made for the reception of part of the water which flows from the mountains through a ſtone channel. The reſt runs into the plain by other canals. The road from thence to *Laer* is full of country-houſes and gardens. We paſſed through this city, and took up our lodging on the other ſide, after we had travelled about four leagues.

CHAP. LIX.

A deſcription of Laer. *A great number of wells. The reception of Mr.* Kaſtelein. *A fine* Caravanſerai. *The author proceeds to* Gamron. *The arrival of the fleet from* Batavia. *A new governor of* Gamron. *The author's indiſpoſition.*

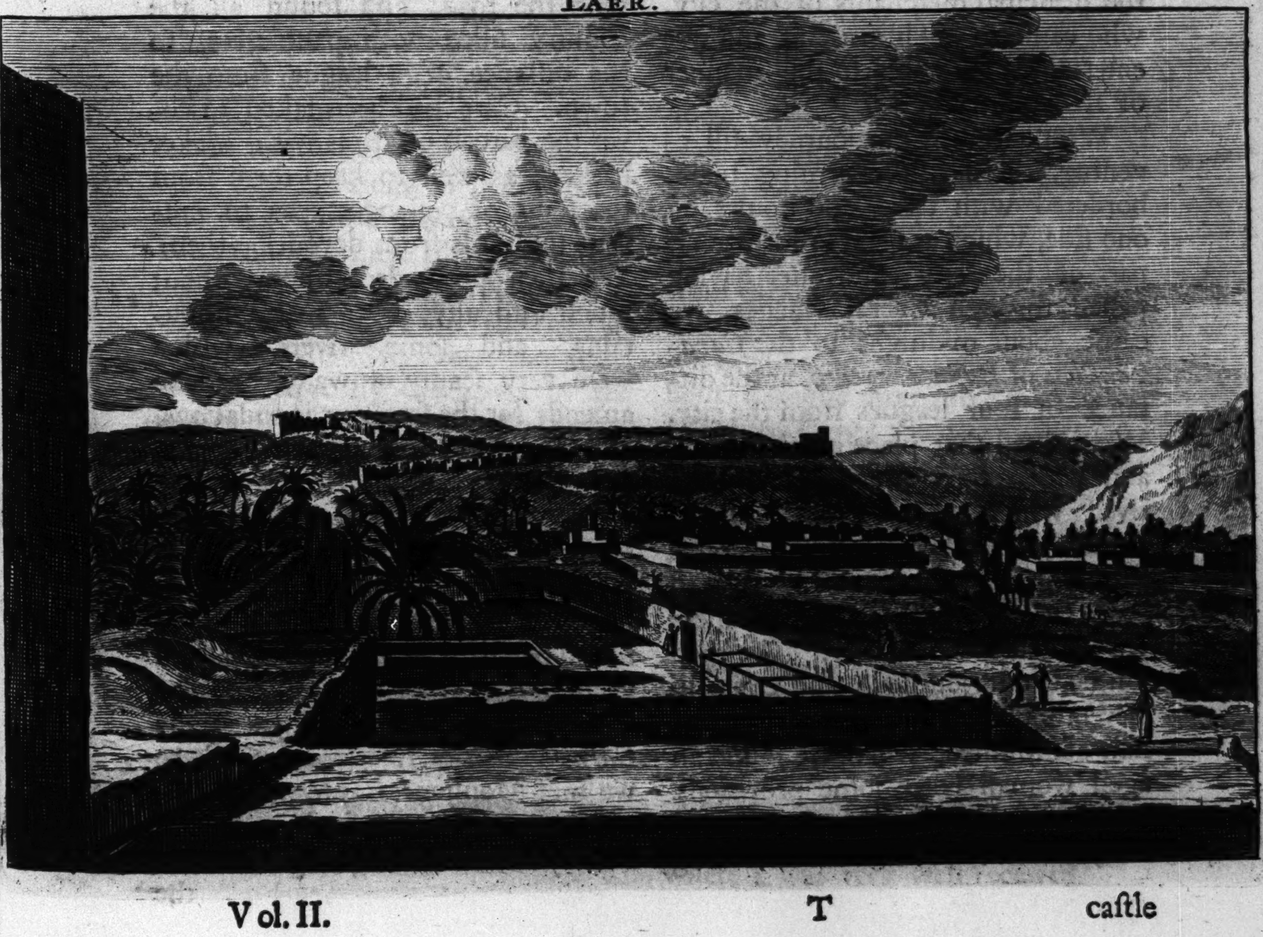
The city of Laer.

THE city of *Laer* is the metropolis of an antient kingdom, which the *Perſians* with much difficulty have reduced under their government, and it is at this day a place of great commerce. It has alſo a ſilk manufactory, and the beſt cannons in all *Perſia* are caſt here.

Its ſituation.

I found all the avenues to that city in good repair, and the houſes for the moſt part very high, among which there were many with openings for the admiſſion of air. The ſtone *Bazar*, which is in the middle of the city, is the moſt beautiful of all the buildings: It is arched over, and full of ſhops, with two ranges in the middle, and the length of it is 216 paces. At the end of this *Bazar* is a fine ſquare, and, below the gate, the *Ragoene*, or the place where the muſick of the city may be heard. Oppoſite to the *Bazar* is a large building, with a delightful entrance; and it ſerves for a manſion-houſe for the duke or governor, *Ywas Chan*. The caſtle, which is entirely built of ſtone, is ſituated on an high rock, whoſe ſummit it almoſt ſurrounds. The avenues to this city reſemble a wood, the land being covered with palm, orange, and citron trees, which almoſt ſhroud the city from the eye. I now ſhall preſent the reader with a draught of this, and likewiſe of the

LAER.



caſtle, which I took from the top of the *Caravanſerai*. It extends itſelf much farther on the left-hand than on the right, but the trees prevent it from being ſeen. It lies open like a village, and is extended very far on each ſide between the mountains. It has a great number of moſques, but none that are beautiful. The chief of them, which has a large dome, is called *Pier-Panon*, from one of their ſaints. The city is filled with ciſterns, vaulted above, to preſerve the water.

Aug. 26. The governor ſent this day, a congratulation to Monſieur *Kaſtelein*, upon his arrival, with a requeſt, that he would continue there ſome days, to afford him ſufficient time for acquitting himſelf of that duty in perſon; adding, that he ſhould not have failed in ſending before, if he had known of his arrival. Monſieur *Kaſtelein* returned him his acknowledgments for the civilities he had rendered him, and aſſured him, that his being obliged to depart immediately, gave him a ſenſible regret. A few moments after he received a handſome preſent of fruit from one of the principal merchants of the city, who came to pay him a viſit, and was entertained agreeably to the manner of the country.

We continued our journey till evening, through a charming plain, bordered with trees, and houſes on one ſide, which are ſaid to form great part of the city; and after having paſſed through ſeveral villages, we came about midnight to the *Caravanſerai* of *Baſta-paryouw*, at the diſtance of four leagues from the city. We quitted that place on the 30th, and paſſed three times over a little river, which, at that time, was very ſhallow, but forms a conſiderable ſtream in the winter; and we arrived about two hours after at *Baſiele*, where we waited for the litter. We then purſued our journey, and came in eleven hours to a little *Caravanſerai* half demoliſhed, where we found an aged woman with ſome proviſions. This part abounds with cover'd ciſterns, the water of which is exceeding good, and many people are employed to dig others, and likewiſe wells, without which neither they nor the cattle could ſubſiſt. They are alſo extremely diligent in ſearching for ſprings, as in the firſt ages of the world; of which we find an example in the firſt book of *Moſes*, where it is ſaid, that *Iſaac* repaired the wells, which his father had dug, and the *Philiſtines* had filled up after his death.

As this was the ſeaſon for hot winds, and ſultry heats, which left no room to expect any favourable change of weather, we travelled by night as much as poſſible. The laſt day of the month we paſſed over a ſtoney plain, at which time fell a thick fog, accompanied with a kind of drizling rain, which occaſion a diſagreeable ſmell, which is a common circumſtance in this country, in the night, and at that time of the year. We then paſſed over ſome mountains and rocks, and arrived about one in the morning at the *Caravanſerai* of *Gormoet*, after a journey of five leagues.

The 1ſt of *September*, we again took the road, and found all the country filled with palm-trees, to the diſtance of a league from the town. Care had been taken to cover the parcels of dates with wicker baſkets, as well to keep them from the ſight of paſſengers, as to prevent the birds from devouring them. We then proceeded, not without much difficulty, over rocky mountains, and ſome rivers, which were very ſcanty of water, to make amends for the frequent inundations, in other parts of the year. Sometime after we met the *Kaſua*, or new litter, which had been ſent for from *Gamron*, attended by twelve bearers, who were to carry it by turns. They placed in it the ſick lady, who then found herſelf more eaſy than ſhe had been in the other; and we arrived about two in the morning, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Tangboedalou*, where we met Monſieur *Bakker*, inſpector of the magazines, (of whom I have already taken notice,) together with the company's ſecretary and houſe-keeper at *Gamron*, and who were come to meet Monſieur *Kaſtelein*. A ſmall canal paſſes through the *Caravanſerai*, which is not very large, but extremely agreeable, and well-built: It is all of ſtone, and the water of the canal, which runs thro' it, flows from a little rivulet at a ſmall diſtance from it. It has likewiſe the advantage of being ſheltered from the hot winds. The earth alſo in all the adjacent parts, is filled with little ſubterranean canals, which convey the water into the ciſterns round about. All ſorts of proviſions are daily brought from the villages, to a water-mill, which is at the foot of the mountains, and near the *Caravanſerai*.

The next day we advanced eaſtward, and at midnight arrived at the *Caravanſerai* of *Goer-Baſer-goen*, after a journey of four leagues. The company's houſe-keeper at *Zypeſtein* then found himſelf ſo much indiſpoſed, that we were obliged to place him in the *Kaſua*. We arrived about eleven that night at the great town of *Koreſton*, which is ſeated in a plain, and took up our lodgings at the houſe of the bailiff, without ſtopping at the *Caravanſerai*. As it was extremely hot, I laid myſelf down under the trees, where the wind was not quite ſo ſtifling; but the heat returned towards morning. We continued there till ſun-ſet, and then paſſed over a large plain full of wild trees, and croſſed the river of *Koreſton*, which was then very low; but it frequently overflows in the winter. There is a bridge a quarter of a league in length; but entirely uſeleſs, by reaſon of its being ruinous in the middle. I found this to be ſeven paces wide; it had likewiſe ſeveral arches, and a parapet on each ſide. We arrived about one in the morning at the *Caravanſerai* of *Gesje*, after a journey of five leagues, and found ſome women there, who ſold freſh butter, with eggs, and good fowls; but the water is very indifferent.

We renewed our journey on the 5th at ſun-ſet, and arrived about midnight at the *Caravanſerai* of *Band-alie*, after having travelled five leagues. That building is open on all ſides, for the commodious admiſſion of the breezes, which blow from the ſea, and are very refreſhing; that place being not above 3000 paces diſtant from the gulf of *Perſia*, which much reſembles the main ſea.

The interpreter *Varyn* viſited us that evening, with ſome of the *Indian* courtiers, to congratulate Monſieur *Kaſtelein* upon his arrival, and preſent him with ſome refreſhments. The next day they brought us a regale of ſmelts, and ſmall pike, together with plaice; and a few little oyſters, which were none of the beſt; and theſe were accompanied with a preſent of *Engliſh* beer. In the morning I took a walk by the ſea-ſide, but found nothing worth my obſervation: It was exceeding hot; but a wind which blew from the ſea toward the ſouth, was very refreſhing. The *Caravanſerai* where we were, lies north of the *Perſian* gulf, which extends itſelf from eaſt-north-eaſt, to weſt-ſouth-weſt toward *Konge*, which ſtands upon its ſhore. From hence one may perceive the iſle of *Kiſmis* in the gulf, at ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, and at eaſt-ſouth-eaſt, that of *Lareek*, between which the ſhips uſually paſs. The way from thence to *Gamron* lies eaſtward, and partly along the ſhore. We travelled on in the evening, and about a league from that place met Monſieur *Clerk*, the deputy director, with the treaſurer; and we arrived at the town about ten in the evening, where Monſieur *Kaſtelein* alighted at the company's houſe, and I at the houſe of one of the company's ſervants. Five *Engliſh*, and two *Dutch* veſſels, were then in the harbour, with many others that were built in the country. On the 8th Monſieur *Lid*, director of the *Engliſh* factory, came to viſit Monſieur *Kaſtelein*; and I went next day to his houſe, where I was very well received.

The author's arrival at Gamron.

Monſieur Kaſtelein *made director of* Gamron.

On the 18th a yacht arrived from *Batavia*, and we were informed by thoſe on board, that ſhe was followed by five other veſſels. She brought letters from the company, who had conſtituted Monſieur *Kaſtelein* director at *Gamron*, in the place of Monſieur *Wichelman*, who had deſired to be diſmiſſed from that ſervice before his death. As ſoon as this account was made publick, the new director received the uſual congratulations, the cannon belonging to the company were fired off, and anſwered by thoſe of the fleet; and the evening paſſed in all manner of rejoicings. Our veſſels alſo diſcharged ſome volleys. The next day the director of the *Engliſh* factory came to congratulate ours on his new dignity, and on the 26th one of the *Engliſh* veſſels ſet ſail.

Octob. 2.

On the 12th of *October* one of our veſſels ſailed for *Baſſura*, and the five ſhips which were expected from *Batavia* arrived the next day; and their ſloops came to anchor about noon. They were commanded by admiral *Boer*, who hoiſted his flag on the top-maſt. The *Ellemeet* was to accompany thoſe ſhips which were to ſail for *Surat*, and had on board Monſieur *Six*, the company's deputy, to adjuſt the differences that were ariſen between them and the people of that country, and to remain there in the quality of director. The baron *de Larix* embarked in one of thoſe veſſels for *Iſpahan*, where he was alſo to continue as deputy to Monſieur *Bakker* the director.

A new governor of Gamron.

The king having about that time conferr'd the government of *Gamron* upon *Mameth Alie Chan*, great rejoycings were made for the ſpace of 3 days ſucceſſively, and the cannon of the caſtles in the city were fired off, as likewiſe were thoſe of *Ormus*, *Lareke*, and *Kiſmis*. This lord had already enjoyed that government about eight or ten years before; but he afterwards obtained that of *Kirman*, from whence they have all their wool, and where is alſo a mine of ſilver. The laſt governor of *Gamron* had been depoſed, in conſequence of ſeveral complaints which were made againſt him at Court; and it was thought adviſeable to leave his ſon there by way of precaution. *Mierſa-Moerella*, who was to command in the abſence of the governor, arrived on the eleventh, when moſt of the inhabitants went out to meet him, and he was received with a ſalute from the artillery of the caſtles. The people likewiſe received orders not to work that day, and were not permitted even to load or unload the ſhips.

The inhabitants go out to meet the deputy.

The author's indiſpoſition.

On the 12th I was ſeized with a violent fever, which continued all that night, and increaſed the next day. As ſoon as I was ſenſible of its attack, I drank a large glaſs of wormwood, which had been very ſerviceable to me two or three times before; and I then walked by the ſeaſide, in hopes that exerciſe would relieve me; but was obliged to take to my bed at my return. In the mean time the director went to pay a viſit to the king's new lieutenant, who received him with a ſalvo of the cannon that were planted before his houſe; and the ſame was done at Monſieur *Kaſtelein*'s, when the governor came to viſit him.

My fever ſtill continued, and made me delirious in the night. All the nouriſhment I then took was broth, and I drank nothing but tamarin water ſweetened with ſugar. I afterward became very laxative, which weakened me extremely. The fever left me in ten days, but it was a conſiderable time before I could recover my ſtrength.

The new-year of the Indians.

The *Banians*, or *Indians*, were at that time celebrating their new year. It is cuſtomary for the courtiers of that nation to make preſents on that occaſion, to the director, and all the officers employed under him, each in his order, even to the meaneſt, to whom they give little pieces of ſtuff flowered with gold and ſilver; and they likewiſe make illuminations. The director returned the viſit to the two principals, who are very rich; and they entertained him with artificial fire-works. Their houſe is very large, but without any manner of ornaments.

The 21ſt was attended with prodigious claps of thunder, and a very boiſterous wind, followed by ſome rain, which proved very ſerviceable to the fruits; and for which they returned thanks, by ſinging after the manner of the country.

CHAP. LX.

A deſcription of Gamron. *The air unhealthy, and very hot. The author reſolves to depart from thence.*

Deſcription of Gamron.

THIS city was formerly called by the name of *Camrang*, by the *Portugueſe*, on account of the ſmall cray-fiſh, which are called *Gamberi*, and abound there in great plenty. The *Perſian* appellation of this place is *Bander-Abaſſie*, or the port of *Abas*, who made himſelf maſter of the town, and likewiſe of *Ormus*. It is computed to be 200 leagues from *Iſpahan*; but it is certain that *Zjie-raes* is but ſeventy two or ſeventy three leagues from that metropolis; and the diſtance from *Zjie-raes* to *Gamron*, does not exceed 131 leagues, which added to the other, make in all but 186, as I found a ſecond time in my return. This city is a ſmall league in circumference: It is likewiſe open, and extends itſelf along the ſea-ſhore from eaſt to weſt, or from north-eaſt to weſt-ſouth-weſt. It has no conſiderable buildings, and moſt of the houſes have a very mean appearance on the outſide. The beſt are thoſe which belong to the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* factories, that of the governor being but indifferent. It is very incommodious for ſtrangers to reſide there: the common ſort have only a ſet of wretched huts, and even the *Bazar* itſelf is but a mean place. There are, indeed, four ſtructures which have the name of caſtles; but they are low, ſmall, and ruinous. That of the four which is fartheſt in the city, has ſome pieces of cannon to ſalute the ſhips. The poor people dwell there in cottages made of boughs, and covered with the leaves of the palm-tree, of which there is great plenty in that city. The principal houſes are furniſhed with machines to draw and receive the wind. They are made like ſquare towers of a conſiderable height, and are acceſſible to the wind on all parts, except the middle, which is cloſed up. Thoſe two ſides, which are moſt expoſed, have two or three openings, which are long and narrow, and thoſe of the other two ſides are leſs. There is likewiſe between each opening a ſmall advanced wall, which receives the wind, and turns it back into thoſe apertures, by which means the houſes are always rendered airy, when there is the leaſt gale of wind. The inhabitants generally take a ſhort nap about noon, and paſs the night upon the terraſſes during the hot ſeaſons, which would otherwiſe be very incommodious. But when theſe are over, they lie in chambers, as in other places. Theſe towers, for the reception of wind, are very ornamental to the city.

A new houſe belonging to the Dutch *factory.*

A flag is always ſtreaming upon the houſes of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch India* companies, and ſerves for a ſignal to their ſhips. The houſe which belongs to our company, is the moſt beautiful ſtructure in the city, and is built on the edge of it toward the eaſt. The firſt foundation was laid there in 1698, by Mr. *Hoogkamer*, the company's miniſter. It is very large, and furniſhed with fine magazines; the chambers too are handſome, and of a conſiderable height. There is likewiſe a very magnificent and beautiful hall in the middle of the apartments above, whoſe windows, as well as thoſe of the director's, and his deputy's lodgings, have a proſpect to the ſea, from whence theſe apartments are refreſhed with the moſt agreeable air in the world: But this houſe is not finiſhed as yet.

A view of the city.

I drew the city from one of our barks, the large veſſels lying at too great a diſtance. The reader will ſee the repreſentation of it in plate 187, and the whole is diſtinguiſhed by numerical figures. 1. The governor's houſe. 2. One of the caſtles. 3. The houſe belonging to the *French* company. 4. The *Engliſh* company's houſe. 5. That of the *Dutch* company. 6. Another of the caſtles. 7. The *Dutch* Company's new houſe.

The burying place of the Europeans.

The *Europeans* are buried in a tract of ground to the north of the city; and it is filled with lofty tombs covered with domes. One need not be ſurpriſed at the great number of them, ſince the air is very unhealthy, and the exceſſive heats carry off a vaſt multitude of people. But nothing is more pernicious than the burning fevers, which are there more common than in any other place, and frequently prove fatal in the ſpace of twenty four hours. The months of *October* and *November* are not leſs dangerous; for the air is then either very damp, or exceeding dry: The latter is the leaſt dangerous, and the water is freſher, and better to drink than in a rainy ſeaſon, the humidity giving it an ill flavour, and rendering it very unwholſome. Camels are ſent for water to *Eyſien* upon the mountains, about four leagues from the ſea, and this is the wholſomeſt water in all the country. The inhabitants likewiſe ſend for it to *Nayban*, which is a league from the city, near the ſea; but this latter is not ſo good. We had tolerable weather during my continuance there: but the heat laſted longer than uſual, and was extremely incommodious. It is ſometimes inſupportable; and I have been aſſured, that it has even melted ſealing-wax. In this extremity they throw off all their upper garments, and cauſe themſelves to be ſprinkled over with water. Our interpreter had a well, in which he paſſed a great part of the day. Theſe immoderate heats always occaſion ſevere diſtempers, as I have already obſerved, and happy are thoſe who eſcape them. But even theſe are not exempted from great inconveniencies, of which one of the moſt remarkable is the worms, which eat into the arms and legs of perſons, and which are not drawn out without their being expoſed to apparent danger, by breaking them in the fleſh. In a word, one could not find a more rigorous puniſhment for malefactors than confining them in a place like this. One, however, ſeldom fails of finding ſome people of merit and diſtinction here; whom intereſt, and the hopes of raiſing a great fortune, have drawn thither, and whom death often ſnatches away before they have attained to the height of their deſires.

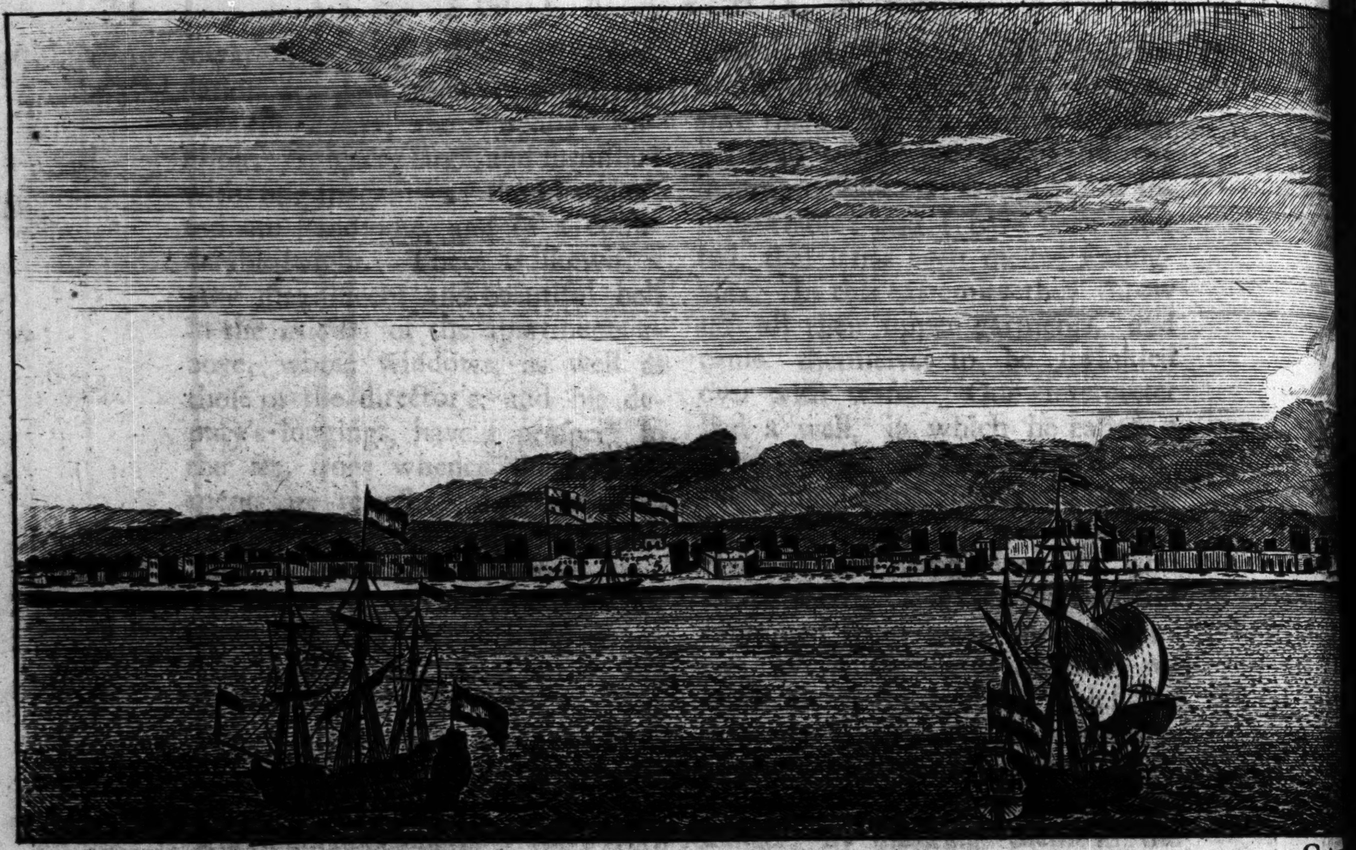
Ships in the harbour.

The veſſels anchor about half a league from the city, from whence ſmall barks are ſent to load and unload them, by the aſſiſtance of perſons appointed for that purpoſe.

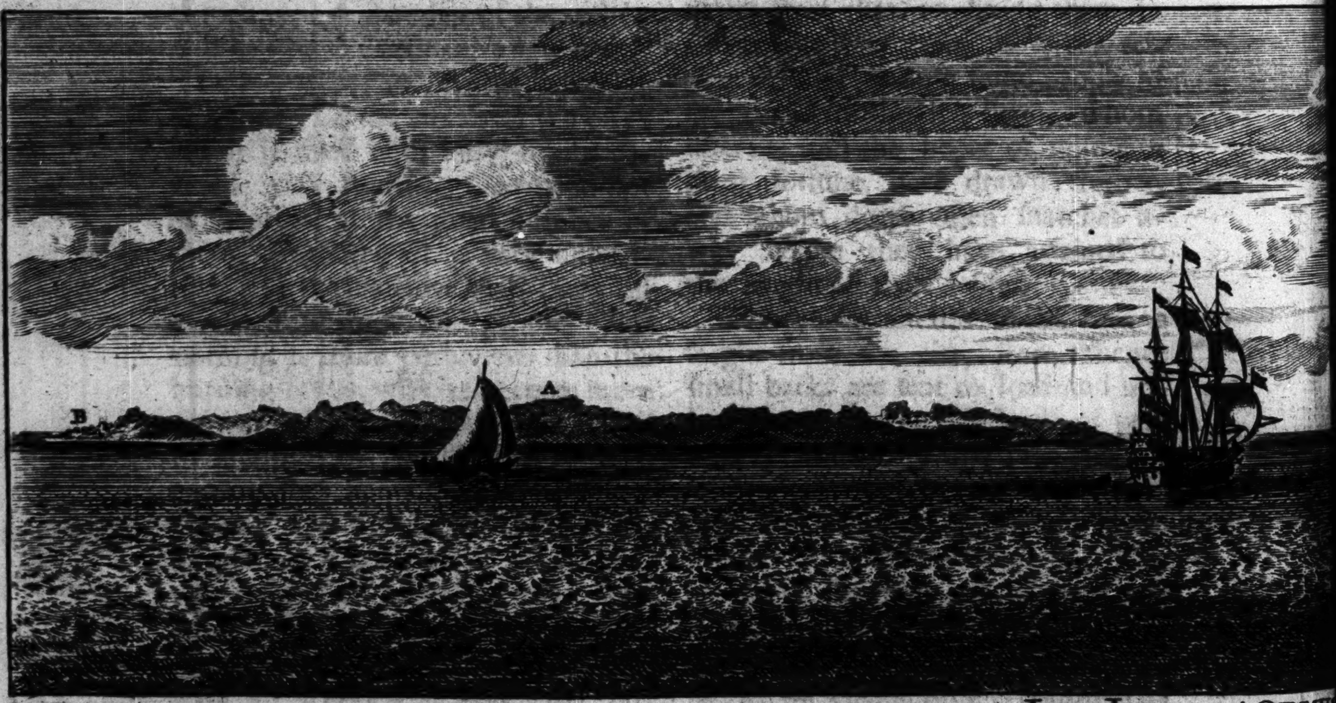
Iſle of Ormus.

The principal iſles of the *Perſian* gulf are, 1ſt that of *Ormus*, three leagues diſtant from *Gamron*. The capital of that iſle, and of the kingdom of that name, was formerly very famous among the cities of *Aſia*, for the greatneſs of its commerce; it lies at the mouth of the gulf, near the ſouth-ſide of *Perſia*, and was formerly governed by a king of its own, under the protection of the *Portugueſe*, who demoliſhed the citadel. The *Perſians*, aſſiſted by the *Engliſh*, made themſelves maſters of it in 1622; nor has the city ever flouriſhed ſince. They even yet value

7 AP. 53

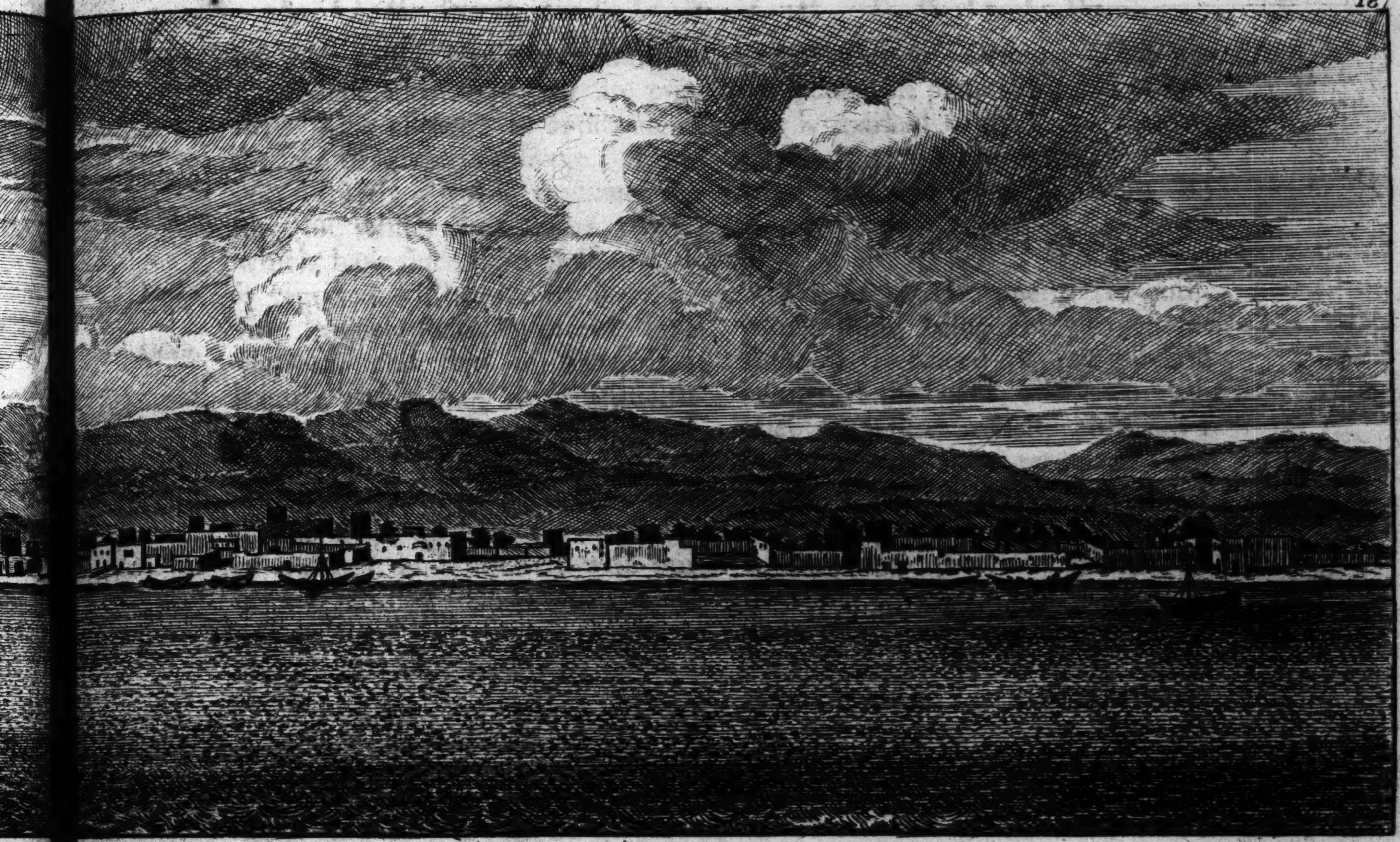


GA ON



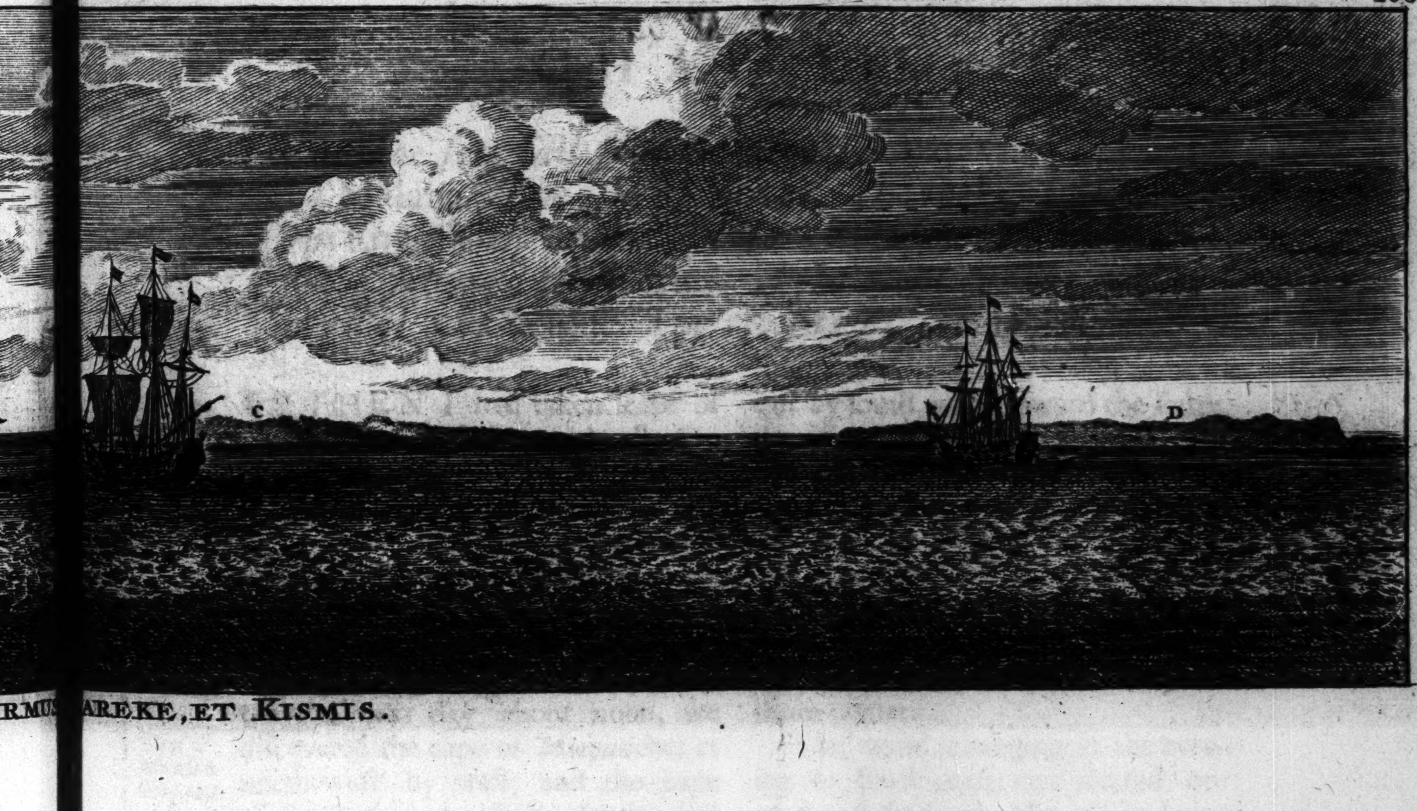
LES ISLES D' ORMUS ARI

187



GA ON.

188



RMUS AREKE, ET KISMIS.

7 AP 55

Lareke.

Kiſmis.

lue their caſtle, into which ſtrangers are ſeldom admitted: Nor are even their ſhips allowed to approach it, for fear of giving umbrage. There was formerly a bed of ſand near this iſle, on which were found pearls; which have ſince been poiſoned, as is reported. The iſle of *Lareke* is five leagues ſouth-ſouth-eaſt from *Gamron*, and that of *Kiſmis* four leagues and a half at ſouth-ſouth-weſt. This is the largeſt of the three, and about ſix or ſeven leagues in length; it ſupplies them with moſt of the wood uſed by the carpenters of *Gamron*, and likewiſe with timber for refitting foreign veſſels which put in there; it extends almoſt to *Conge*, and ſhips may paſs between them.

Each of theſe iſlands has a citadel, but none of them are conſiderable, except that of *Ormus*. They are repreſented in plate 188; that of *Ormus* is marked with A, its citadel, which is at the extremity of it toward the north-weſt, with B; *Lareke* with C, and *Kiſmis* with D.

The *Meydrecht*, one of the company's ſhips, being ready to ſail for *Batavia*, I ordered all my goods to be carried on board, and two days after embarked myſelf, although I was not then fully recovered, but found myſelf ſo very weak, that I was ſcarce able to ſupport myſelf. I, however, preferred the ſea to travelling by land, which appeared to me more dangerous, flattering myſelf that the air of the ſea would be more healthful for me, in which I was not deceived.

CHAP. LXI.

The author ſets ſail from Gamron *for* Batavia. *The coaſt of* Malabar. *The iſle of* Kover. *The rocks of St.* Mary. *An* Engliſh *ſhip at anchor before* Mangeloor. *Dolphins, flying fiſh, and other kinds. A ſea monſter. The author's arrival at* Cochin. *The civility of the governor.*

The author's departure from Gamron.

WHEN I had taken leave of the director, and all my friends, I went on board the 25th of *October*. We hoiſted ſail in the night-time, and ſteered our coaſt ſouth-eaſt by ſouth, between the iſles of *Ormus* and, *Lareke*. in the *Perſian* gulf, and between the kingdom of *Perſia*, *Arabia deſerta*, and *Felix*.

Capes of Monſandon *and* St. James.

On the next day about noon, we diſcovered the cape of *Monſandon*, at north-weſt by weſt, and the cape of St. *James* at eaſt by ſouth, and at the diſtance of about five or ſix leagues.

On the 29th, the wind being at ſouth-eaſt, with a briſk gale, we ſaw again the cape of St. *James* at eaſt by ſouth, and, toward the ſouth, the iſland itſelf, and north of the bay of wood, upon the coaſt of *Arabia* at north-weſt by weſt, and the bay at ſouth-weſt by weſt; and when we had advanced within three or four leagues of the ſhore, we found ourſelves in 25 degrees 38 minutes north latitude, at ſixty fathom water.

The wind changing in the evening to ſouth-weſt, we ſteered our coaſt eaſt by ſouth, the night being very clear. The wind increaſed the following days, and the weather continuing fine, we purſued our voyage ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, in order to reach the coaſt of *Arabia*.

The firſt of *November*, and the following days, the wind proved variable, and the ſea calm. On the 7th we came to the height of 21 degrees 10 minutes north latitude, ſteering our coaſt eaſt-ſouth-eaſt. The next day we advanced to 19 degrees 43 minutes, and on the 12th to 17 degrees 53 minutes. About noon a briſk gale roſe at north by eaſt. We ſounded, but found no bottom at 100 fathom that day, nor for ſome days after.

The coaſt of Malabar.

On the 15th, at break-of-day, we diſcovered the coaſt of *Malabar*, from ſouth-eaſt by eaſt to ſouth-eaſt, at ſeven or eight leagues diſtance from us. We then ſteered ſouth-eaſt, the wind being north-north-eaſt, and very ſtrong. We ſounded again, but without finding any bottom. After ſun-ſet, we loſt ſight of land, the air being thick and cloudy. The wind was tolerably calm in the night, and we ſteered our courſe eaſtward, and entered into the *Indian* ſea, which is between the eaſtern coaſts of *Africa*, and thoſe of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and the *Eaſt-Indies*, the iſles of *Sumatra*, and *Java*, and other ſmall eaſtern iſles, and the ſouthern continent.

On the 16th, the air being cloudy, we found ourſelves in the northern latitude of 15 degrees 12 minutes, and the 17th at 14 degrees 19 minutes. On the 18th we were becalmed, and had a cloudy ſeaſon, with ſome lightening in the night. In the morning the weather proved fine, but the wind was variable. On the 20th there was ſo great a calm, that we went backward rather than forward, the tide, which is very ſtrong at weſt by north, being againſt us. On the 22d the weather continued the ſame, and we had ſtill the tide againſt us north-weſt by weſt, while we ſteered to the north-weſt. The weather did not change the next day; and having ſounded in the night, we found from ſeventy to ſeventy five fathom water, upon a greyiſh bottom, mixed with ſand and ooze. The next day at dawn we had another view of the coaſt of *Malabar*, ſailing under the wind in fifty to fifty five fathom water the bottom being ſtill the ſame. At noon we were obliged to caſt anchor in fifty eight fathom, by reaſon of a calm, and the ſtrength of tide. We were now in the latitude of 15 degrees 35 minutes, and within ſight of land; but were unable to diſtinguiſh what particular land it was, becauſe the weather was foul and very cloudy.

The cape de Cuma.

The 24th ſome of us imagined we ſaw the cape *de Cuma* at ſouth-eaſt, and I am perſuaded we were not miſtaken, though others doubted it, becauſe the water was chang'd, and they found no bottom. We ſtood out to ſea again that day, and as the wind was eaſterly, and we were ſailing to the ſouth, the tide carried us off again from the coaſt, and we found that the ſhip had advanced fourteen or fifteen leagues to weſt-north-weſt, and that we had been driven back from the ſhore above ſixty leagues.

The point of Anchediva.

Onor.

The 25th, the weather being cloudy, we were ſurpriſed by a great calm, and came about ſun-ſet within three or four leagues of the point of *Anchediva* at eaſt by ſouth, and toward morning, within five or ſix leagues of *Onor*, likewiſe at eaſt by ſouth, in the latitude of 14 degrees 17 minutes; we continued our courſe ſouth-eaſt by ſouth in the night, the wind being north-weſt.

The iſle of Kovers.

The 27th, at break of day, we diſcovered the iſle of *Kovers*, to the ſouth-eaſt, and at the diſtance of three or four leagues, and we came within two leagues of it about noon, at eaſt by north, in the latitude of 13 degrees 50 minutes. At ſunſet we diſcovered the moſt ſouthern continent at ſouth-eaſt by eaſt, and the iſle of *Kovers*, at eaſt-north-eaſt, about five leagues from us. We continued our courſe in the night, ſouth-eaſt by ſouth, from eaſt-north-eaſt, with little wind, having from twenty-ſix to thirty fathom water, upon an oozy bottom. The next day, being about four leagues from land, we had ſome rain and a calm, which obliged us to anchor in nineteen fathom water, that we might not go back any more, becauſe the tide was very ſtrong. The 29th, at break of day, we ſounded, becauſe of the ſhoals of St. *Mary*, which were about a league and a half from us, at eaſt by north. In the mean time the calm and the tide continuing favourable to us, we remained at anchor till noon, when we ſtood out to ſea again, with very little wind, ſteering ſouth-eaſt by ſouth.

The 30th, at break of day, we diſcovered a veſſel at anchor before *Mangeloor*. We were then about two leagues from land in ſixteen fathom water, and paſſed before noon by that place, which belongs to the *Dutch India* company, and has a ſmall citadel. There are ſeveral high mountains in the inland part of the country, and one upon the ſhore. About noon a bark came up to us with ten *Malabars*, who informed us, that the veſſel we had ſeen upon the coaſt, was an *Engliſh* ſhip, and that the captain had given them a letter for ours, and deſired him to let that bark accompany us to *Kananor*; from whence the maſter was to carry by land to *Calicut*, a letter for the director of the *Engliſh* company, who reſided there. To this our captain conſented, and ordered his men to furniſh thoſe in the bark with all the accommodations they wanted.

That place is in the northern latitude of 12 degrees 29 minutes. At ſun-ſet we came within about two leagues and a half of the *White Beacons* at north-eaſt, and to the point of *Monſtadely*, which lay ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, at the diſtance of three or four leagues. The next day the *Malabars* left us, in order to proceed to *Kananor*.

Dolphins.

We had frequently the pleaſure of ſeeing and taking many ſorts of fiſh. We firſt caught a dolphin with harping irons and hooks. It is cuſtomary to fix a little bundle of feathers on them, and then caſt them into the ſea at the end of a rope faſtened to a pole. The dolphins, who take theſe tufts for flying fiſh, upon which they continually feed, follow the bait till they are taken. This is the leſs extraordinary, as thoſe little fiſh, who are apprehenſive of the dolphins, fly as long as they are able above the ſurface of the ſea; but as they are obliged frequently to plunge themſelves into the water, the dolphins, who purſue them, ſeize upon them, as I have often obſerved. I have preſerved in ſpirits of wine three of theſe fiſh, that fell as they were flying upon the deck of our ſhip; a circumſtance which often happens. We took one of theſe dolphins which was four foot long, and the head was ten inches thick. They have a yellow belly, ſpeckled with blue, up to their eyes; and the reſt of the body is tinged with a light blue, blended with ſpots of a deeper complexion, eſpecially upon the top of the head. The fins are purple, green, and white, with a ſmall intermixture of yellow near the edge. Their colour changes when they die, and reſembles that of the purple-fiſh. They have one fin upon their back, from the head to the tail, and another from the middle of the belly to their tail, two others under the body near the neck, and one on each ſide of the head: Their tail is forked, and their eye-balls are encircled with a ring of white. Their mouth and teeth are ſmall; the head of the male is much larger than that of the female, and they have but few inteſtines. The ſailors eat them dreſſed in the ſame manner as the *Cabillau*, or *Melwell*; and they afford a tolerable good reliſh.

The firſt we took was the largeſt and fineſt; but as my eyes were then out of order, I could not make a draught of it. My fever likewiſe returned, which I attributed to too great a repletion, having had an extraordinary appetite at ſea, and uſing no exerciſe. I even believe that this contributed not a little to impair my ſight. When I had continued three weeks in that condition, I recollected that I had brought from

Holland a microſcope, and ſome other glaſſes, which employed and diverted me very agreeably; and by the help of theſe I drew one of the dolphins, which the reader will find repreſented in plate 189. They likewiſe enabled me to read in the night, when I was prevented from ſleeping by an itching, and a heat which had continued upon me ever ſince my ſickneſs at *Gamron.* We took a variety of other fiſh, ſome of which were a foot long. Theſe were ſea-perches, uſually called *Pilots,* and they have ſome reſemblance to river perches. Their bodies are ſpeckled with brown and blue ſtreaks, an inch in breadth, and which grow narrower near the tail. Theſe fiſh are continually playing about the rudder of a ſhip, and are commonly accompanied by another fiſh called *Haye.* They are likewiſe dreſſed for eating like river perches. I preſerved a ſmall one in ſpirits, and the reader will find it exhibited in plate 190.

Hayes.

A ſea-monſter.

We alſo frequently ſaw on the ſide of our ſhip, a fiſh which the ſailors call the *Devil,* or ſea-monſter. It is a large flat fiſh, very like a turbot, and has a great deal of the taſte, as they told me, but is not quite ſo large, nor ſo long. His wings, or fins, are always expanded, and from his tail iſſues out a long narrow ſtreamer, which in the ſea appears white, and in its motion reſembles the undulation of a ſerpent. The reſt of his body is brown, intermixed with white ſpots, and is about twelve feet in length, and more in breadth, when his fins are extended. We endeavoured to hook him with a harping-iron, but could not ſucceed, though he appeared two or three times at the head of our ſhip. Our captain aſſured us, that he had ſtruck ſeveral times at one, but that he always made the harping-irons fly back with great violence, and without receiving any wound. Some of theſe fiſh are reported to be large, and ſtrong enough to over-ſet a ſloop.

The author arrives at Cochin.

We came within a ſmall diſtance of *Cochin* the 3d of *December,* and anchored in the evening in ſix fathom and a half water, at the diſtance of a league from the city. The gates were then ſhut; but were ſoon opened to us; and we went to wait upon the governor, to whom our captain delivered the letters he had received for him. He favoured us with a very civil reception, and obliged us to ſup with him; he likewiſe preſſed me to accept of a bed at his houſe, but I excuſed myſelf, chuſing rather to lodge with my fellow-travellers.

CHAP. LXII.

A deſcription of Cochin. *The author's departure from that city. The cape of* Komerin. *The iſland of* Ceilon. *Point* Adam. *The author's arrival at* Gale. *The taking of a crocodile. A deſcription of it. An account of ſome extraordinary animals, plants, and ſea-herbs.*

I Returned the next day to the governor's houſe, and deſired him to lend me a bark to croſs the river, that I might take a draught of the city from the other ſide, and he immediately granted me that favour. I there beheld an infinite number of trees of a ſurprizing beauty, and different from any I had ever ſeen before. From this ſituation I drew the north proſpect of of the city, as it appears in plate 191. No. 1. repreſents the company's fiſhery. 2. The ſtation appointed for the guards of the citadel, and its entrance. 3. The baſtion of *Gueldres*. 4. The port of the bay. 5. The governor's houſe. 6. The church. 7. The captain's houſe. 8. The deputy's houſe. 9. The flag hoiſted upon an old ruinous tower. 10. The company's magazine. 11. The purveyor's houſe. 12. The place where the ſailors lodge. 13. The extremity of the wall.

The ſituation of the city.

This city is about half a league in circumference, and has two gates, one of which, that fronts the ſhore, is called the gate of the bay; and the other the river gate. They have dug a canal on this ſide, where the company's barks ride, and by the ſide of it is the timber-yard. From thence one paſſes over a great wooden bridge, in order to arrive at this laſt gate, near which is a river, that flows into the ditches of the city, and bears large veſſels. The baſtions of this city have the ſeveral names of the provinces of *Gueldres*, *Holland*, *Utrecht*, *Friſeland*, and *Groninghen*; and the little baſtion, which is near the fiſhery, is called *Overyſſel*. The captain's houſe is at *Stroomenbourg*. The governor's hall, which has a proſpect to the ſea, forms alſo a kind of point or baſtion, and there are likewiſe two half-moons among the other works. The place is very agreeable both without and within; the ſtreets are ſpacious, and the houſes handſomely built with brick. There is alſo another wood-yard for refitting ſhips, and for the uſe of thoſe who come in or go out. The governor's houſe is a large ſtructure, compoſed of fine apartments. The Sieur *Moormans* is the preſent governor, and he is a gentleman of a very obliging diſpoſition. He preſented our captain with ſeveral plants that grow in that part of the country, and are eſteemed as great curioſities; and we ſent him a preſent of corn in return. They have great plenty of fiſh, and all ſorts of fleſh; ſo that a cow is ſold for three or four crowns; a hog for a crown and an half, a hen for two pence, and a duck for ſix pence. They are likewiſe as well ſupplied with rice, but the ſoil produces neither corn nor wine, nor have they any of either, but what is brought thither. *Stroomenbourg* is alſo under the juriſdiction of the commander of the city, whoſe deputy is named *Bitter*. We took up our quarters in one of the handſomeſt houſes in the city, with Monſieur *de Graef*, an enſign in the ſervice of the company. Their money is of two kinds, *viz.* *Fanums*, which are equal to a quarter of a *Dutch* ſhilling, and *Baſaroekes*, thirty two of which are equivalent to a penny.

This city, which lies in ten degrees of north latitude, is the capital of an antient kingdom of that name, and had formerly a biſhop: It is ſituated in the eaſtern part of *Aſia*, near the coaſt of *Malabar*, which extends itſelf partly from ſouth to north. It has a high mountain in the eaſtern part of it, and the ſoil is very fertile and pleaſant: A continual ſpring flouriſhes there, and the ground is always enamelled with every kind of flowers, as has been obſerved by the famous *Antonides*.

Malabar was formerly ſubject to an Emperor, whoſe dominions extended from cape *de Komeryn*, as far as *Mangeloor*, on the frontiers of the kingdom of *Chanara*: But I found in the memoirs left by the governor of *Rede* to his ſucceſſor, that this powerful empire, which formerly contained four millions ſeven hundred thouſand men fit to bear arms, was, after the death of the laſt emperor, divided into thirteen or more kingdoms, governed by the principal men of the empire. The chief of theſe princes is the ſovereign of *Cochin*, deſcended in a direct line from *Cheram-Perimal*, and from the great *Samorin*.

As I made but a ſhort ſtay in that country, I could not inform myſelf of any other particulars, except only that the flat part of the country is watered by many navigable rivers, ſome of which are very large.

The governor entertained us this day at dinner, and we embarked in the evening with much difficulty, by reaſon of the violence of the waves, which beat continually againſt the rocks. We ſet ſail in the night, and there fell a heavy rain, accompanied with thunder and lightening; after which we diſcovered ſome high mountains about two leagues diſtant from us, while we ſteered ſouth-eaſt. Toward the next evening we were again threatened with a ſtorm, and were obliged to furl the ſails. We advanced an hour before night, near the cape *de Komeryn*, when the weather grew fine again; but the wind changed, and continued againſt us all the next day. It rained part of the night; and we doubled the cape on the 8th in the morning, the wind being at north-eaſt, and we loſt ſight of it in the afternoon, ſteering to eaſt-ſouth-eaſt, and to ſouth-eaſt by eaſt. In the night we were ſurprized by a calm. However, we continued our courſe every day with a changeable wind, and diſcovered the iſle of *Ceilon* the 10th in the morning, with a high mountain in form of a ſugar-loaf, which is called the *Peak of Adam*. This peak is viſible only at ſome particular times, becauſe it is involved in clouds, which deſcend even to the bottom of it. The reader may ſee a repreſentation of it in the following plate.

Iſle of Ceilon.

Adam's Peak.

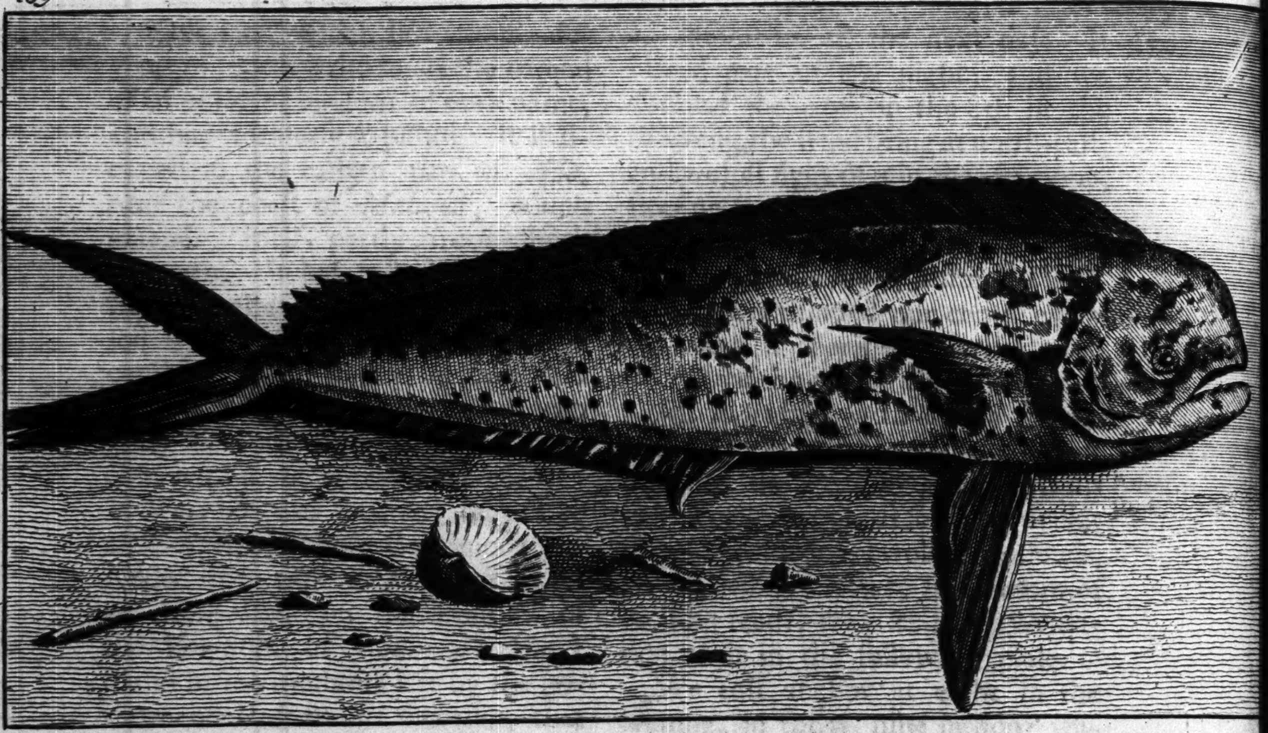
We caſt anchor at eight in the evening, in thirty nine fathom water, and hoiſted ſail again the 11th at break of day, ſo that we advanced in a ſhort time within ſight of the city of *Gale*, but were not able to arrive at it till the evening, by reaſon of a calm, which obliged us to caſt anchor a league and a half on this ſide of it in ſeventeen fathom water. The next morning, our captain ſailed in the ſloop to the city, in order to deliver the letters he had in charge. We weighed anchor about ten, but the wind being againſt us, and very ſtrong, we could not get into the harbour.

Rocks.

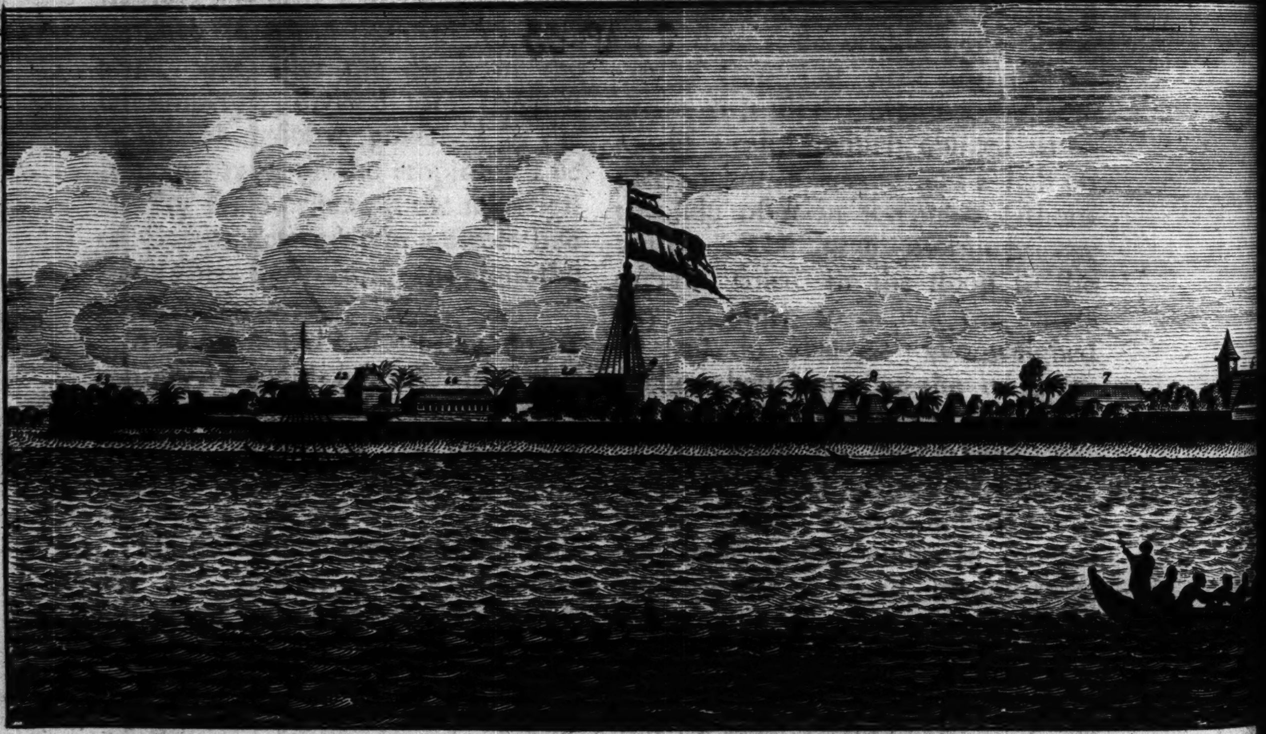
When any ſhip approaches the bay of *Gale*, a cannon is fired every half hour, to give notice to the pilots to come on board, becauſe there is no paſſing farther without being expoſed to apparent danger, from the rocks which are hidden under water; ſome ſeventeen feet from the ſurface, others fifteen and twelve, and many leſs. I went in the evening to the city with the pilot, and lodged at an inn. The next day I viſited the governor, whoſe name was *Welters*; and he received me in a very obliging manner, and offered me all the ſervice in his power. He was but newly arrived from *Krin*, where he had been director. As I intended to continue ſome time in that city, to refreſh myſelf, and recover my health, I left

7 AP 53

DAUPHIN.

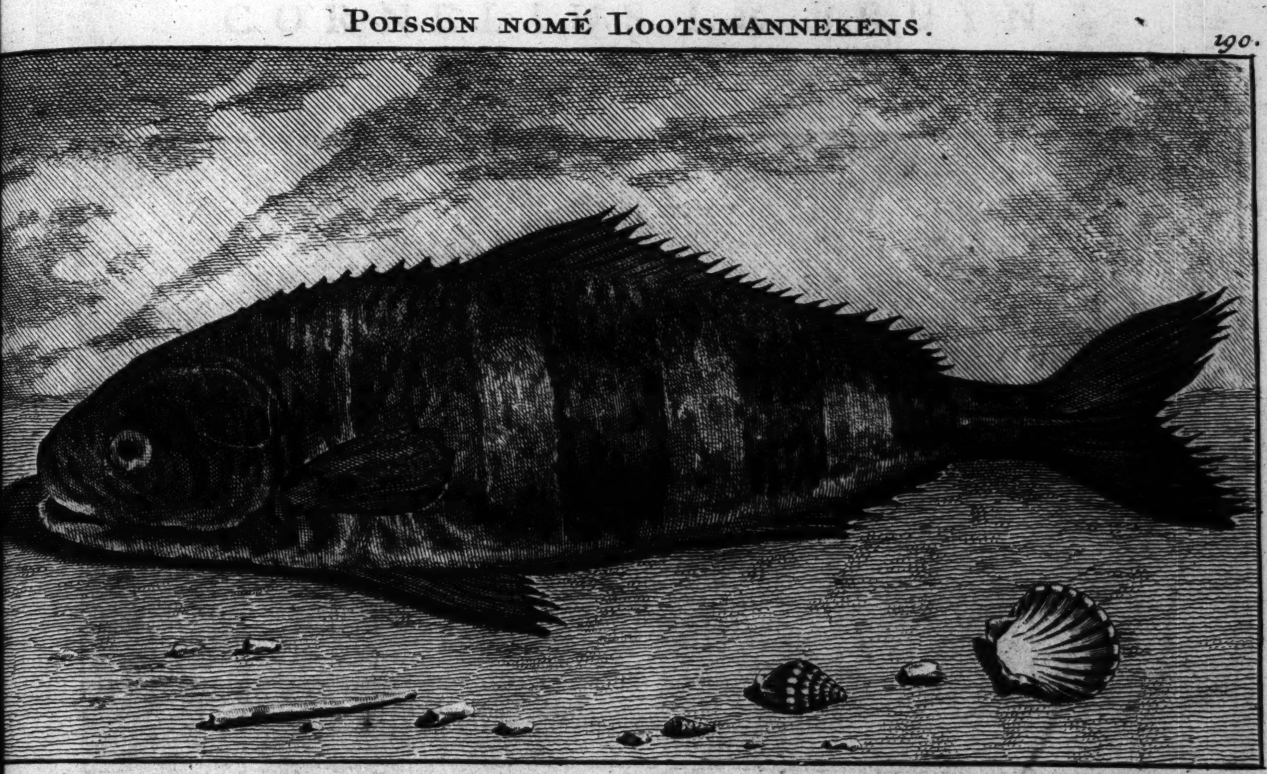


Ko N.

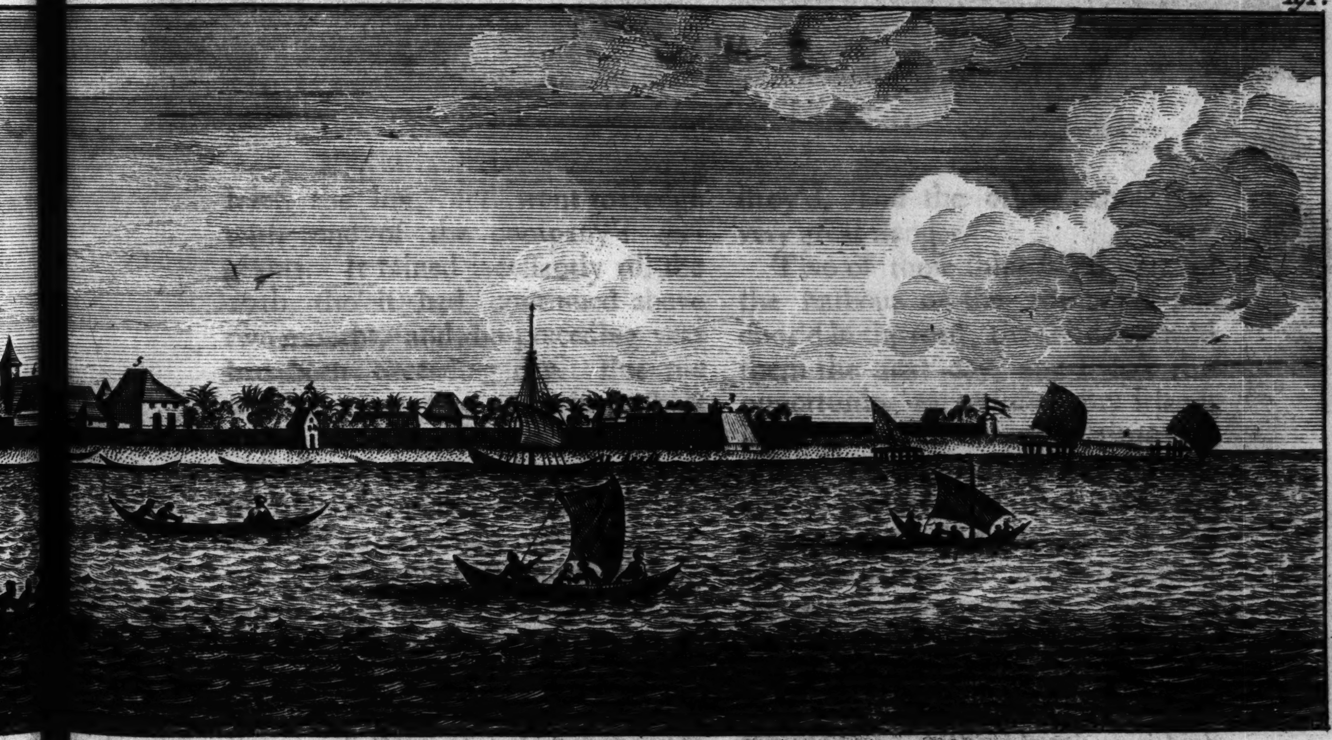


POISSON NOMÉ LOOTSMANNEKENS.

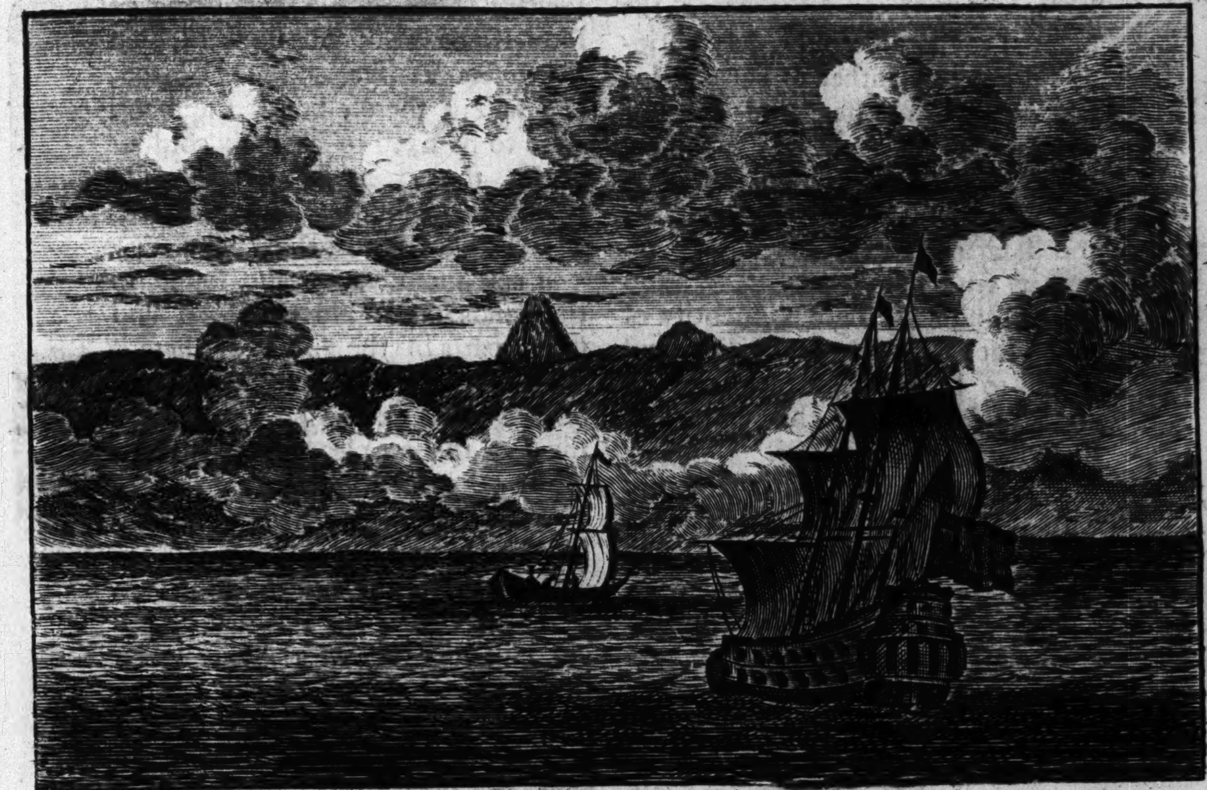
190.



191.



7 AP 53



Pic-d'Adam.

I left the inn, and went to lodge with one of the company's ſerjeants. It rained inceſſantly till the 17th, tho' it had continued above two months, and the preceding year had been exceeding dry. But the weather grew fine again in a ſhort time.

I found five of the company's ſhips in the port; three of which returned to *Holland*, and two other veſſels after arrived here from *Bengale*. On the 18th the governor gave an entertainment to thoſe who were preparing for their return to *Holland*, and above ſixty perſons were preſent; but my ill ſtate of health prevented me from being one of the number.

A terrible accident.

About midnight there happened a ſad accident. One of the men who had drank too freely, ſet fire accidentally to one of the ſhips that were to return, but they had the good fortune to quench it before the flame, which had already ſeized the rigging, could reach the powder, otherwiſe the ſhip, with all her tackling and cargo, had been inevitably deſtroy'd, and the others expoſed to very great danger.

Two of thoſe ſhips ſailed out of the harbour on the 20th, and anchor'd in the road; the third follow'd them the next day, and I took this opportunity to write to my friends in *Holland*. In the mean time the drum was ordered to beat in the city, to ſummon the ſailors on board, upon pain of being put in irons, and after the cargo had been reviewed, they ſet ſail on the 24th. The ſame day arrived a veſſel from *Amſterdam*, and two *Engliſh* ſhips paſſed by the port, ſteering weſtward. My fever returned then with a Diarrhæa, which weakened me extremely.

A crocodile taken alive

On *Chriſtmas-day* a crocodile was taken alive, fixteen feet and a half in length, and five and a half in breadth. We were aſſured that he had devoured thirty two perſons upon that coaſt, beſide ſeveral others whom he had doubtleſs deſtroy'd in different places. They had often given him chace, but to no purpoſe till then. After they had

]

killed him, they dragged the body to the governor's houſe, from whence he was ſent to the ſurgeons of the hoſpital to be diſſected. My curioſity drew me thither to ſee the inſide of that monſter, and examine whether he had not in his body ſome remains of any human creature. And we accordingly found the trunk, arms, and legs of a man, together with the ſkull, feet, and hands, and a prodigious quantity of fat, which is uſed as a medicine, and is ſaid to be excellent for the palſy, and all relaxations of the nerves, and likewiſe for rheumatiſms.

A deſcription of that animal.

It is pretended that there are ſome places where theſe animals are not injurious to any. When they lay their eggs, they place them in a hole in the ground, where they are hatched by the heat alone. As ſoon as they are opened, the parent crocodile appears, and ſwallows down all the young ones that chance to run into her mouth: the reſt jump into the water. There are ſome as big again as that I am deſcribing. They have no tongue, ſo that when they open their mouth, one perceives a frightful caſm. When they are upon land, on a ſandy ſoil, they run with ſuch a prodigious ſpeed that a man cannot eſcape them by flight; but upon a hard and ſtony ground they are not ſo ſwift, becauſe the bottom of their feet is exceeding tender. They devour cattle without any difficulty, and even a wild ox, and their teeth are ſo long, that they grind their horns to powder. But their eggs are ſcarce bigger than a pullets, and are altogether as white. Their yard is but ſmall in proportion to their bulk, and is ſlit at top wth a kind of ſmall tongue beneath. They dry'd that of this crocodile, as a preſent for me, and gave me one of the teſticles, which had a ſmell ſomething like amber. I likewiſe received from them a bottle of the greaſe of that monſter.

The manner of taking it.

They take theſe crocodiles with a large hook faſtened to a ſkain of forty or fifty ſtrong threads, which inſinuate themſelves between the monſter's teeth in ſuch a manner as renders him unable to diſengage himſelf, or break his hook, which penetrates as far as the ſtomach, and faſtens there; but if the hook were to be fixed to a thick cord or chain, the crocodile would eaſily bite them in ſunder. Theſe threads ſerve alſo to conceal the hook.

Another manner of deſtroying them in rivers.

Theſe monſters are alſo found in the ponds in the iſle of *Ceilon*, and other parts of the *Indies*. There is another manner of deſtroying them, and even of preſerving them for a ſhew to the people, which is this: They take a very dry tube, three or four feet in length, which they fill with quick lime, and faſten to a dead pullet; the crocodile, as ſoon as he perceives it in the water, never fails to ſwallow it. But when it has remained in his body for the ſpace of twenty four hours, the wood burſts, upon which the fire flies about, and then burns, and conſumes him, ſo that when he is thus filled with fire, which continually preys upon him, he leaps out of the water, and expires in an inſtant.

Their ſtrength.

One may judge of the ſtrength of theſe crocodiles by the efforts they make after they are caught with a hook, and have been opened, in order to take out their entrails, ſince, even in that condition, they riſe again, and frequently run twenty or thirty paces. I was told, upon this occaſion, that about fourteen years ago, the crew of a ſhip, called *The King of Bantam*, took a * *Haai*, that had forty five little ones in its belly, which, when it was opened, came out, and began to ſwim in a veſſel of water prepared for that purpoſe, and that the leaſt of theſe fiſh was larger than a *Merlan*.

** A large ſea-fiſh, which devours men.*

Strange creatures.

I ought to take notice here, that they preſented me with two large bottles filled with various ſorts of animals preſerved in ſpirits; among which were little crocodiles, young ſea-lizards, cameleons, ſcorpions, millipedes, a blind ſerpent, and ſeveral other creatures.

They gave me likewiſe ſome other productions of the ſea, which were not very conſiderable. I went my ſelf, but with no great ſucceſs, to ſearch along the ſhore for others, and appointed ſome perſons to do the ſame; but what they brought me was in a manner uſeleſs, and among other things were a great number of ſtones. I choſe what I liked moſt out of them, and threw away the reſt, which they had picked up without much curioſity, I not being able to accompany thoſe to whom I gave that employment, by reaſon of my weakneſs. This iſland likewiſe produces plants, and medicinal herbs, which are extraordinary good, as the inhabitants pretend; but ſtrangers ought to be well acquainted with them.

Phyſick herbs.

I ſent into the woods to ſeek for ſome of theſe productions, particularly for an herb called *Hackemelle*, of which they report wonders; and among other particulars, that if one wraps up a flint ſtone in one of its leaves, the moment any one takes it into his mouth the flint breaks into a thouſand pieces, and that the juice of theſe leaves is a ſpecifick remedy for the gravel: They much reſemble thoſe of celery, only the leaves are tinged with a deeper green. I intended to extract ſome of the ſpirits; but not having ſufficient time for that operation, I was obliged to content my ſelf with bringing away ſome dried leaves, and the exterior buds, which are uſed like tea, and are extremely good to bring down the ſtone, and diſſipate the gravel.

CHAP. LXIII.

The revenue which the India *company receives from the iſle of* Ceilon. *A deſcription of the city of* Gale. *The people converted to the Chriſtian religion. The habit of the* Singales. *Abundance of elephants. Cinnamon trees.*

THOUGH I was offered in this place all manner of information neceſſary for a circumſtantial deſcription of the iſle of *Ceilon*, and the ſatisfaction of the readers curioſity in theſe particulars, I did not make any uſe of them, becauſe my ill ſtate of health, and the little time I had to continue there, would not permit me to go far up into the country to make any diſcoveries myſelf, and to ſee thoſe pieces of antiquity which are ſaid to be there. I was likewiſe unwilling to treſpaſs upon the reſolution I had taken, not to relate any thing which I had not ſeen with my own eyes; for which reaſon I ſhall content myſelf with mentioning the principal revenues which the company receives from that famous iſland.

The company's revenues from the iſland. Cinnamon.

The moſt conſiderable is that produced by cinnamon, which is better there than in any other part of the world. As ſoon as the governor has ordered the number of cinnamon bales, required by the company, the *Chalins*, whoſe buſineſs it has always been to peel off that valuable bark for the ſovereign of the iſle, fail not to furniſh him with it at a very inconſiderable expence.

Areek.

The ſecond revenue is, that which proceeds from the *Areek*, the trading in which, without the company's permiſſion, is prohibited to all the world. The ſervants of the company are obliged to carry the rice into their magazines at a very reaſonable price; and they carry on a very advantagious trafic with the merchants of *Coromandel*, who come thither for it. Beſide which the company likewiſe frequently ſends that fruit to *Bengale* and *Surat* in their own ſhips.

Cloth.

The third is that which ariſes from the ſale of the coarſe cloth of *Madura* and *Coromandel*, which are ſold as they come from the manufacturer, without being whitened; and this commodity produces a conſiderable profit.

Elephants.

The fourth ariſes from the ſale of elephants, which are brought from *Columbo* and *Maturan*, as well as from the kingdom of *Jaffnatnam*, where they are ſold very advantageouſly to the natives of *Golcondo*, and the other *Moors*.

The manner of tranſporting thoſe animals.

The elephants, which are taken in the countries of *Columbo* and *Maturan* were formerly tranſported, with much difficulty, in the company's ſhips, to *Jaffnapatnam*. But they have found out, ſome years ſince, the ſecret of cutting a paſſage, for near fifty leagues, through a very thick and wild wood, from *Negomb* through the country of *Kandee*, as far as *Jaffnapatnam*. This difficult undertaking was accompliſhed by the aſſiſtance of the natives, who have at length performed it at a ſmall expence.

The capture of theſe elephants is alſo performed by the inhabitants of the country, under the direction of the company's officers. If I had ever had an opportunity of being preſent at one of theſe exploits, I ſhould not have failed to have given a particular account of it. But as I have never been an eye-witneſs to it, I ſhall content my ſelf with ſaying, that ſeveral perſons worthy of credit have aſſured me, that in one ſingle chace they have often taken, in the country of *Columbo*, near 160 elephants, and ſometimes more.

Pearl fiſhery.

I might here likewiſe mention the advantage which accrues to the company from the pearl fiſhery which is carried on in that iſland, and in the dependant countries, as well at *Tutucorin*, upon the coaſt of *Madura*, as in the gulf of *Arippo*, under the government of *Mannaer*. But as that revenue is altogether unſettled, and produces ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs, I cannot give an exact account of it. However, as they are continually fiſhing in one or other of theſe places, it is not to be doubted, that the company find their account in it. I have before me ſome pieces which might authoriſe me to ſpeak more exactly; for I have made it a maxim with myſelf, not to mention any particular of which I have not a certain knowledge. I ſhall therefore only ſay, that the principal revenue which the company receives from this fiſhery, reſults from a tax laid upon the ſtones which are uſed for that purpoſe; every diver who works there, being obliged to have one, to make him ſink to the bottom of the water. Each bark contains more or leſs; the largeſt of them are from ſixteen to twenty pound in weight, and the ſmaller weigh about ſix or eight pound: So that when that fiſhery ſhall be brought to perfection, and they can employ 450 veſſels, the profit will be very conſiderable.

Tax upon ſtones.

The Parruwas.

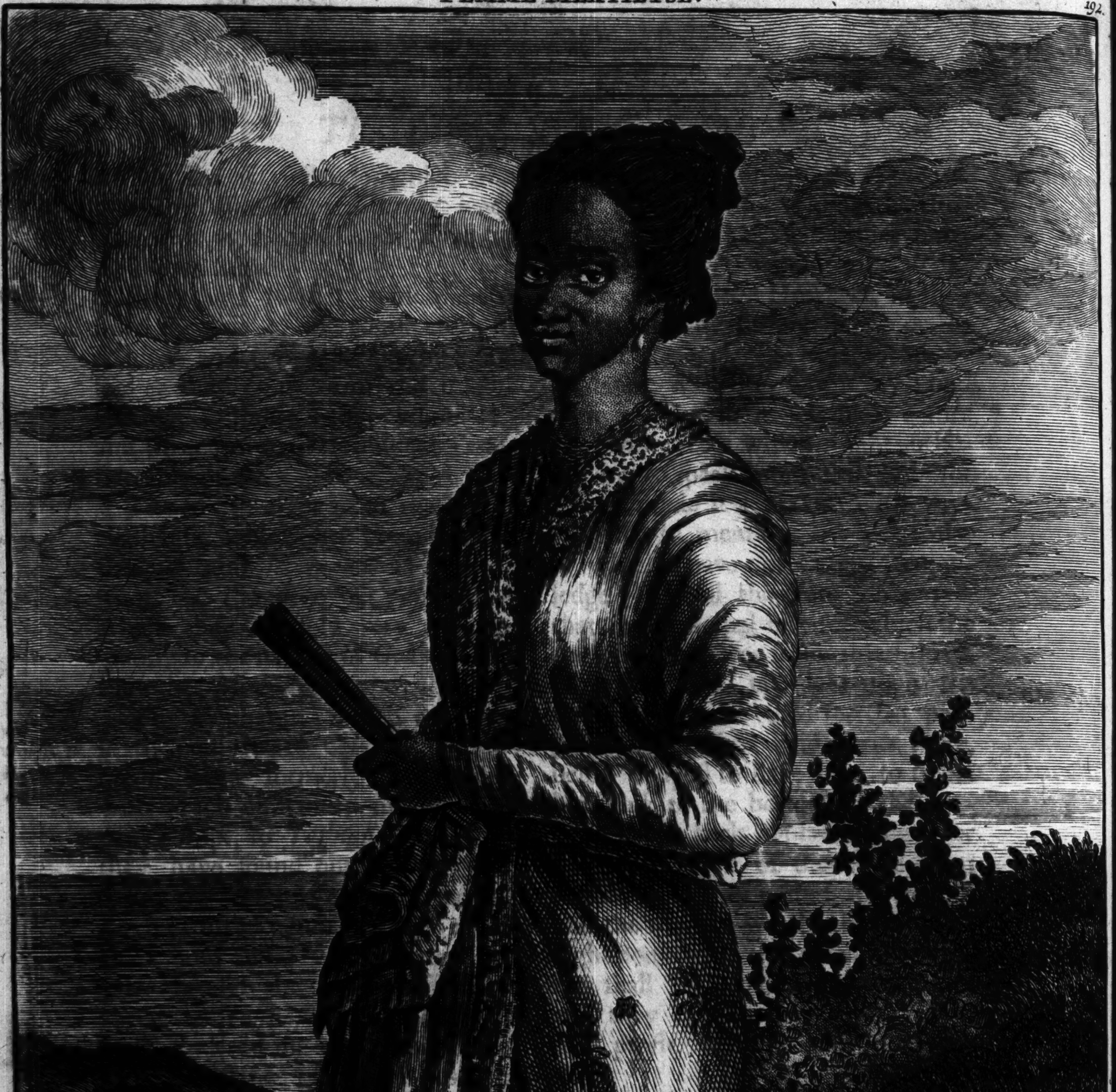
The *Parruwas*, who are thoſe that profeſs the *Roman* religion, pay ſeven rix-dollars for each ſtone; the inhabitants of the country nine and a half, and the *Moors* and *Mohammedans* twelve; a cuſtom introduced by the *Portugueſe*, and continued by the company.

A deſcription of Gale.

I ſhall now proceed to a deſcription of the city of *Gale*, which is rendered very ſtrong by its ſituation, being ſurrounded on the ſide next the ſea, with ſhelves of ſand and rocks which render it inacceſſible, without the aſſiſtance of pilots from the port, which forms a half-moon in the eaſtern part of the city, and is well provided with cannon. It has alſo ſtrong walls, and good entrenchments cut into the rock, and bulwarks in many of the angles, the principal of which bear the names of the ſun, moon, and ſtars: Between theſe baſtions are the city gates; and there are ſome other fortifications,

7 AP 53

FEMME MEXTIETSE.



Fortifications.

fications, namely, that of the *Sailors*, of *Utrecht*, of *Venus*, of *Mars*, of *Æolus*, and the *Standard Rock*. There is but one gate to the eaſt, which is that on the ſhore. The city is about half a league in its inward circumference; for there is no walking round it without. It has ſome tolerable ſtreets, which are not paved, but covered with turf, and ſeveral of the houſes make a handſome appearance, particularly that of the governor, which is ſpacious, and full of beautiful apartments: It is built upon an eminence, over-againſt the company's magazine, which is very large; but the walls which are next the water are very damp, and the upper part of the ſtructure, which is of wood, is rotted and eaten by white ants, of which there are vaſt numbers in that country. The entrance into this magazine is at the city gate, and one end of it has been formed into a church, where the *Hollanders* perform their devotion in the morning, and the *Singales* in the afternoon. The country adjacent to this city is full of gardens, ſhaded with fine trees, and formed into beautiful alleys. The mountains, which riſe in the eaſtern part of the country, are cover'd with woods, and from thence one may eaſily paſs along the ſhore to the port. Theſe woods are full of wild-goats, hares, and birds, but the market is ſeldom furniſhed with any of this food, but with reſpect

Proviſions.

to other proviſions, it is almoſt as well ſupplied as that at *Cochin*, butter excepted, which is very dear, and far from being good. When any ſhip is diſcovered out at ſea, a flag is hoiſted upon an old building ſituated on a rock, where a guard is always ſtationed.

Their money.

The money of that iſland is all of copper: The largeſt ſpecies of it amount to near two of our *ſols*, and the ſmalleſt to about a *denier*. But the *Dutch* money is likewiſe current there.

The ſchools.

They have ſeveral ſchools for the *Singales*, who are converts to Chriſtianity, and good maſters, who are inſtructed by the miniſters to inform them of the articles neceſſary to their ſalvation, and to give them a good education. Theſe miniſters viſit the ſchools every ſix months, which produces a very good effect.

Habits of the Singales.

Theſe *Singales*, who are half *Moors*, have, for their whole cloathing, but one piece of linnen wound about them from the waiſt to the knees, all the reſt of their body being naked. The women wear this habit ſomething longer; it reſembles a petticoat, and is tinged with ſeveral colours. They have likewiſe a little waiſt-coat of cloth, hanging looſe below. The better ſort of them have two of theſe waiſtcoats, with an ornament of fringe on the uppermoſt; when they appear abroad, and go to church, they put on white ſtockings, with embroidered ſlippers; but in the houſe their legs are without any covering, and they have wooden ſandals on their feet. Their heads are alſo uncovered, and their hair is tucked up behind. Their necks are ornamented with a ſmall chain of gold, to which is faſtened a jewel, which falls upon their boſom. They likewiſe wear another larger chain, which hangs down to their petticoat. They have alſo over their left ſhoulder a white flowered ſcarf, or of ſome other colour, which deſcends as far as their knees before, and is ſhort behind. The ſleeves of their waiſtcoat flow to their wriſts, around which they wear bracelets of gold, or any other metal, as repreſented in plate 192. There are among the moſt conſiderable of them ſome *Mextietſes*, who ſpeak good *Dutch*. Theſe are the off-spring of *European* and *Mooriſh* parents.

Elephants.

This iſland abounds with elephants, as I have already obſerved, and two hundred of them are ſometimes taken in one chace, with ſnares made of oſier, and which are extended to the diſtance of three leagues. Theſe captures are made every third year, after which the elephants are ſent by the company to *Coromandel*, and

Surat, as well as to other places. The largeſt of theſe animals are ſold for 2000 rix-dollars; and the others at a price proportionable to their age.

The cinnamon tree.

The tree which bears cinnamon, is the moſt conſiderable of all thoſe that grow in the iſland. The oil of it is produced by the flower, and has the conſiſtency of ſoop. It is likewiſe as white as tallow, and has not any ſmell. It is ſaid to be an excellent remedy for chilblains. Monſieur *Mode* the treaſurer, was ſo obliging as to preſent me with a quantity of this production.

Situation of the iſle of Ceilon.

This iſland of *Ceilon*, or *Ceylan*, which the inhabitants call *Lankaron*, and *Tenariſſim*, is ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Taprobane* of the antients. It ſtretches into a large extent; is almoſt round, and its fertility is very great. It lies ſouth-weſt of the *Eaſt-Indies*, north of the *Indian* ſea, and ſouth-eaſt of the coaſt of *Coromandel*, in the gulf of *Bengale*. It likewiſe comprehends ſeven different kingdoms, the chief of which is that of *Kandee*. Its moſt conſiderable cities are, *Kandee*, *Columbo*, *Punte-Gale*, *Zegombo*, *Jaffnapatnam*, and *Baticalo*.

The firſt day of the year 1706, I went to pay the cuſtomary civilities to the governor, who received me in a very obliging manner. On the third, letters arrived from the governor of *Columbo*, with orders to ſend away our ſhip without any other company, though we had agreed with two others to return together to *Batavia*. We ſet ſail on the 5th, after having taken leave of the governor.

CHAP. LXIV.

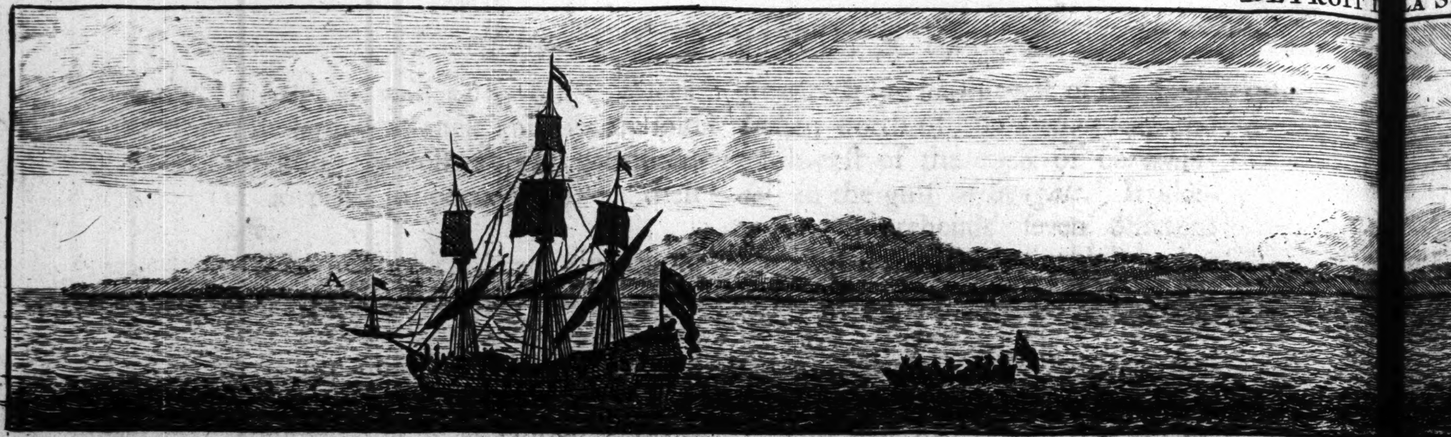
The author's departure from Gale. *The iſle of* Engano. *The coaſt of* Zillabar. *The ſtreights of* Sunda. *The author's arrival at* Batavia. *The civility of the general of the* Indies.

The author departs from Gale.

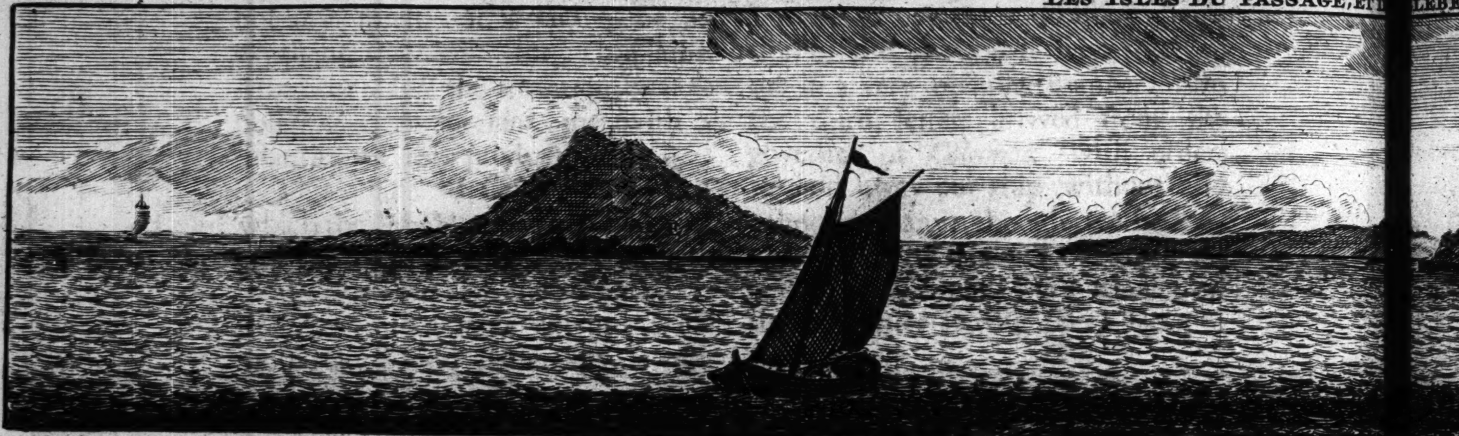
I WENT on board the 6th of *January*, about ſix in the morning; at which time the treaſurer came to take a view of our loading, and when he had ſatisfied himſelf in that particular, we weighed anchor, the wind being north-north-weſt; we ſteered, at firſt, ſouthward, and then to ſouth by eaſt, with a favourable wind, which changed in the night, and then ceaſed on a ſudden. The next day we loſt ſight of the iſle of *Ceilon*, proceeding ſouth-eaſt by eaſt, with variable weather, accompanied with rain, and ſtormy-winds, which obliged us to lower our top-maſt. On the 13th at night we had a view of the north ſtar before us, which was a very extraordinary circumſtance, becauſe it is very ſeldom ſeen by thoſe who advance toward the line; and eſpecially in bad weather. The 18th the wind ſhifted to north weſt, and we ſteered our courſe ſouth-eaſt by eaſt, and paſſed the equinoctial line to 31 minutes of ſouth latitude, and the longitude of 124 degrees, and 32 minutes. The 19th the wind being at weſt-ſouth-weſt, we continued our courſe to ſouth-eaſt by ſouth, in 38 minutes, and the 20th we came into 1 degree 45 minutes; and about morning, the wind being weſt-north-weſt, and blowing a freſh gale, into two degrees 8 minutes, ſteering our coaſt ſouth-eaſt by eaſt, favoured by fine weather, which laſted all the next day; but then changed, and continued bad to the end of *January*.

7 AP 53

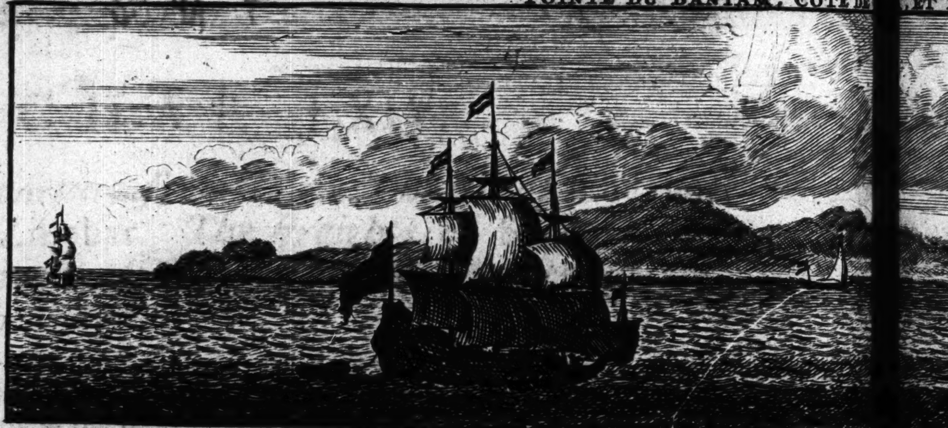
DETROIT D LA S



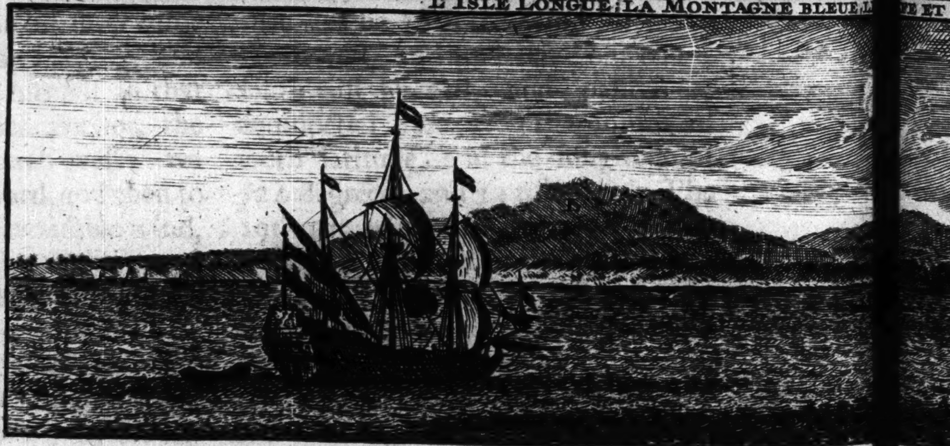
LES ISLES DU PASSAGE, ET L LEBE



POINTE DU BANTAM, CÔTE DE , ET

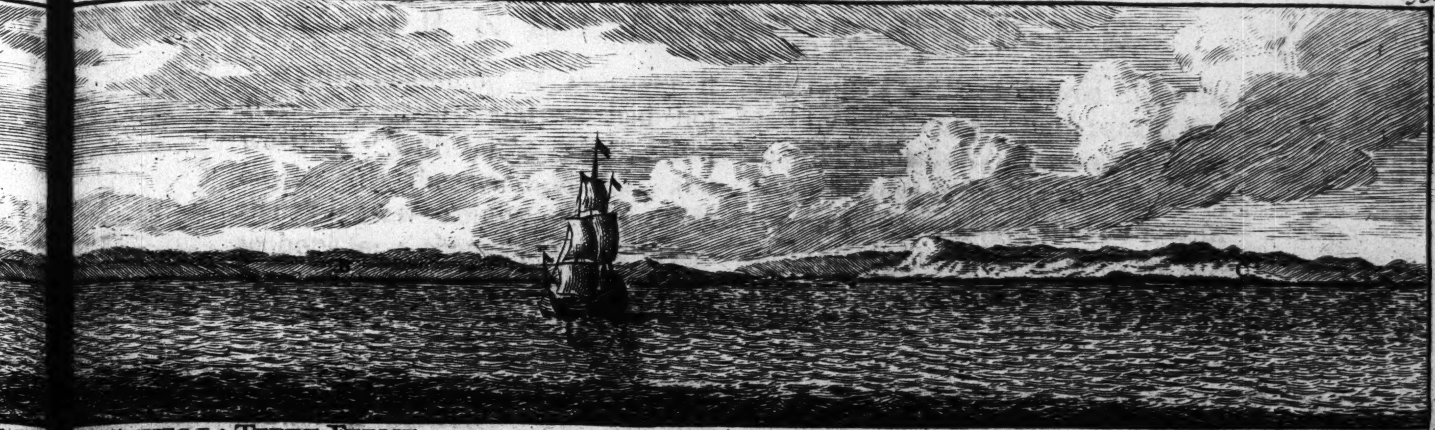


L'ISLE LONGUE; LA MONTAGNE BLEUE L E ET



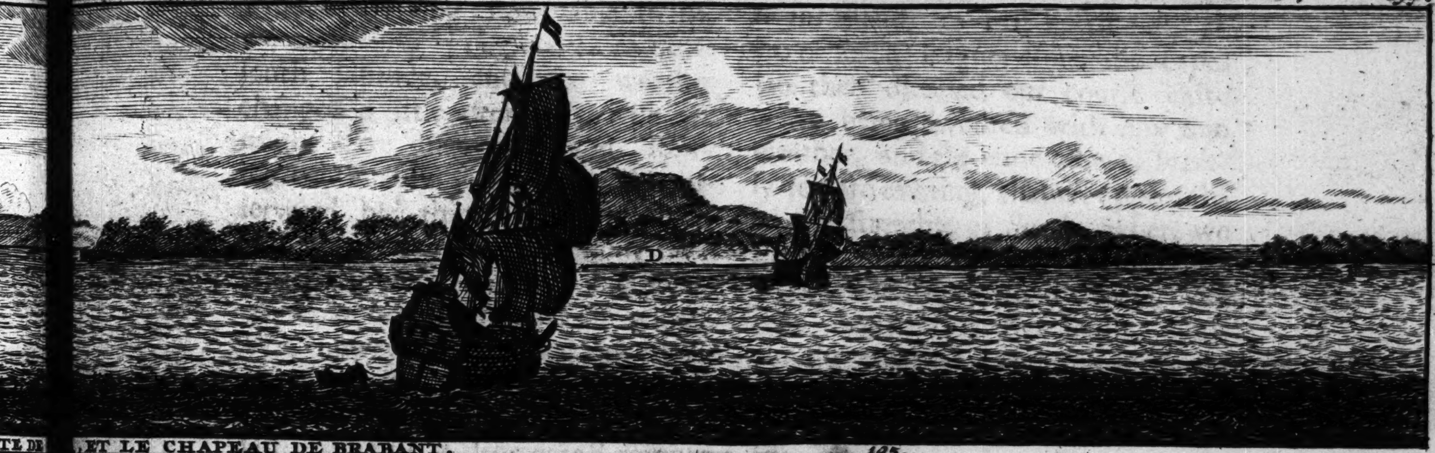
OIT LA SONDE.

193.



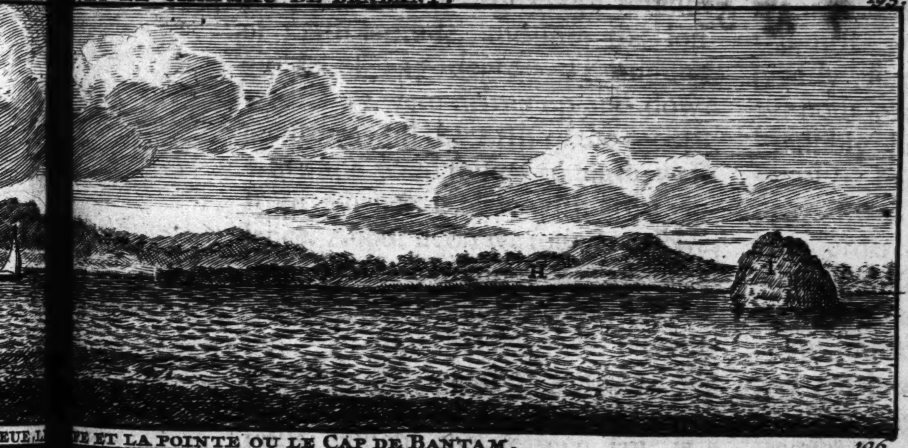
E, ET LEBE, AVEC LA TERRE FERME.

194.



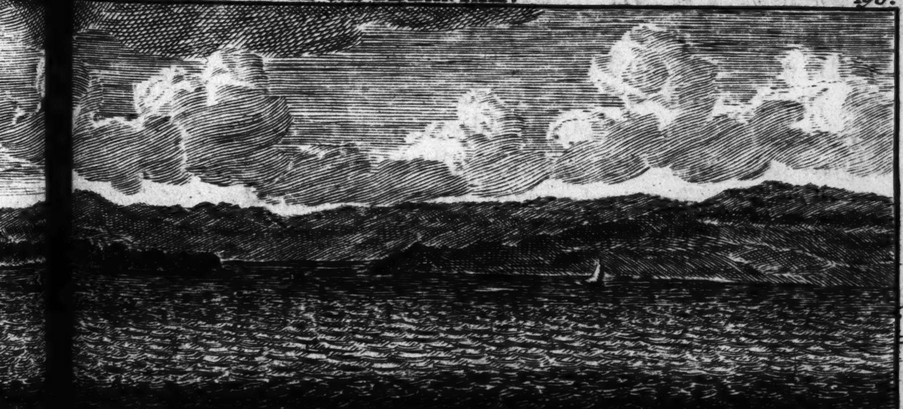
TE DE, ET LE CHAPEAU DE BRABANT.

195.



EUE, L E ET LA POINTE OU LE CAP DE BANTAM.

196.



7 AP 53

At the beginning of *February* it grew fine again, and we had hot weather, with ſome calms. But on the 4th the wind varied, and the ſky grew cloudy, which made us hope for a change; for we greatly feared the calms, which might have retarded our voyage for a long time. The wind riſing at ſouth-weſt, we continued our courſe ſouth-eaſt by eaſt. The 5th, the wind continuing favourable to us, we came into 4 degrees 32 minutes ſouth latitude, and the weather changed a little after, otherwiſe we might have diſcovered land, ſteering continually ſouth-eaſt. We afterward had thick, heavy weather, and much rain in the night, both which are very uſual on the weſtern coaſt of the *Indies* in winter. We, however, continued our courſe eaſt-ſouth-eaſt, making little ſail, becauſe we were near land: We at laſt came into 4 degrees 38 minutes of ſouth latitude, and into the longitude of 127 degrees 25 minutes, where we were driven up and down by ſtorms till the 11th of the month, when the wind ſhifted to ſouth-weſt, from whence it blew with great violence. About noon we found ourſelves in 5 degrees 3 minutes, always ſteering eaſt-ſouth-eaſt, the weather being wet and cloudy; we likewiſe ſounded, but found no bottom. We had ſeen in the evening ſome white gulls, which, the ſeamen ſay, is a ſign that one is not far from land, becauſe they never fly far from the ſhore. The next day we ſaw another, and proceeded in the night to weſt-ſouth-weſt, making but little ſail, till at length, having been toſſed about for ſome time by changeable wind, we diſcovered the iſle of *Engano* to ſouth-weſt, at the diſtance of ſeven or eight leagues, and on one ſide of us, the mountains of the high land of *Zillabar* at north-eaſt.

We continued our courſe between them with great ſatiſfaction, for having diſcovered land, after we had ſo long wiſhed for that ſight; we then ſailed firſt to eaſt-ſouth-eaſt, the weather continually changing, and being generally rainy; we then ſteered to ſouth-eaſt by eaſt; and at length to eaſt, and to eaſt by north: When we were about ſeven leagues from the eaſtern coaſt, the men ſounded, but found no bottom at eighty fathom. The 16th we diſcovered high land at north-eaſt, being about five leagues from the coaſt, and found ourſelves toward noon in the latitude of 6 degrees 15 minutes. We afterward ſaw the *Imperial* iſland, to eaſt-north-eaſt, at ſix or ſeven leagues from the cape. We then directed our courſe eaſtward, being favoured with very fine weather, and the wind blew ſo briſkly toward evening, that we approached the ſtreights of *Sunda*, where we found ſeveral pieces of floating wood, with birds upon them. We then ſteered eaſt by ſouth, with cloudy weather, and unexpectedly found ourſelves on the 17th, within a quarter of a league of the *Prince's* iſland. The maſter of the ſhip was the firſt who perceived it, which greatly ſurprized him, and not without reaſon, becauſe we ſhould infallibly have run aſhore, if the weather had not ſuddenly cleared up. Two or three men, who had been ordered to look out carefully, were puniſhed for their negligence on this occaſion. We then tacked about immediately to north-weſt, and north-weſt by weſt, and found by ſounding, that we were three leagues from the point, having been carried back by a ſtrong tide ſince the laſt ſounding, eight leagues and a half to ſouth-weſt, though we had been favoured by a good wind from the weſt during the night. A reſolution was then taken to proceed without delay to ſouth-weſt, while we had it in our power, and this was immediately put in execution. We then advanced to ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, in order to double the weſtern point, and then kept to eaſt-north-eaſt, till by ſteering in this manner, we came about two in the afternoon to the fartheſt point of the iſland of *Java*, where we found forty-two fathom water upon a bottom of thick ſand, covered with ſhells and

The Imperial iſland.

The Prince's *iſland.*

ſmall flints. The wind, by good fortune, favoured us, and had it not been for this advantage, we might poſſibly have been obliged to put into ſome neighbouring port for two or three months, in order to wait for a favourable gale.

The ſtreight of Sunda.

This ſtreight of *Sunda* is about a league and a half in breadth, within thirty ſeven or thirty eight leagues of *Batavia*; forming a paſſage from the *Indian* ſea to the ſouth, between the coaſt of the iſland of *Sumatra* to ſouth-eaſt, and the weſtern ſide of the iſland of *Java*, on which the city of *Bantam* is ſituated. When we had made ſome advance into this ſtreight, I drew the proſpect which was then preſented to me: The *Prince*'s iſland lying north of *Java*, and this latter bearing to the ſouth, beyond which is ſeen another iſland at a great diſtance, but not quite ſo high, and the name of it is the *New Iſland*. I have repreſented this view in plate 193. where the *Prince*'s iſland is diſtinguiſhed by the letter A; that of *Java* by B, and the *New Iſland* by C. The depth of water is from thirty to forty fathom in this ſtreight; but ſailors cannot find any bottom at the entrance on the other ſide, to the north of the *Prince*'s iſland, where the ſtreight opens to a great breadth. At ſun-ſet we continued our courſe eaſt-north-eaſt, about three quarters of a league from land, the wind being north-weſt, but blowing very moderately, and the tide was alſo againſt us. The wind changed in the night, after which we were becalm'd, and had ſhowers of rain. The weather likewiſe continued thick for ſome days; but this did not prevent us from proceeding to the fourth point, which lies north-eaſt about two leagues from *Krackatouw*. Some fiſhermen of that coaſt advanced toward us, and we ſent out our ſloop in order to be ſupplied with ſome refreſhments from them. Some of them came on board, and brought us ſeveral *Pampes*, a ſpecies of ſmall flat-fiſh, together with ſome *Maſbankers*, another little flat-fiſh, which is none of the beſt. They furniſhed us likewiſe with ſeveral ſorts of fruits, and, among the reſt, *Kaffers*, which are round, and red, and very like ſea-cheſnuts, only they are ſmaller than thoſe, and covered with prickles. This fruit grows in large cluſters, like grapes, with ſmall ſtalks; they have alſo a large kernel, which reſembles a plumb-ſtone, and the flavour has a ſweetneſs tempered with acidity, which is not diſagreeable to the taſte. They brought us alſo another ſort of fruit called *Lanſe*, which is very round, and its colour an intermixture of yellow and red, not unlike an *Abricot*, and it grows in the manner of grapes: beſide theſe, our fiſhermen ſupplied us with young *Areeks*, and *Betelsbladeren*, or leaves of the betel, of which I ſhall treat more largely in my deſcription of *Batavia*. The 19th we had unſettled weather, and ſteered our courſe north by eaſt, and to north-north-eaſt, and the wind and tide being againſt us, obliged us to anchor about noon in twenty fathom water. We, however, ſoon ſet ſail again with a favourable wind, bearing to north-north-eaſt, and to north-eaſt by north; but did not continue long in this courſe. We caſt anchor again on this ſide the point of *Bantam*, which lay north-eaſt by north, at the diſtance of a league and a half. The wind changed frequently in the night, and abundance of rain fell. We ſailed again in the morning, and continued our courſe to north and north by eaſt, in nineteen, twenty two, and twenty three fathom water; but were obliged to come to anchor again about noon, in ſight of ſeveral high iſlands. In the afternoon, the wind ſhifting to ſouth-weſt, we came about evening into the latitude of the point of *Bantam*, at north-eaſt by north, being then about two leagues from land. We then caſt anchor again, not daring to advance amidſt the darkneſs of the night, leſt we ſhould run upon one of the iſlands; we had likewiſe much thunder and lightening. The 21ſt, the wind blew againſt us at north-eaſt, and the tides were ſo ſtrong, that we found it impoſſible to advance. In the morning we were ſupplied by a bark from *Java*, with fruits, and a parcel of lean chickens. We had the point of *Bantam* to the north-eaſt, and the iſle called *Toppers-hoedtje*, at north-eaſt by north, about a league and a half from us. In the afternoon, the wind ſhifting to the ſouth-weſt, we ſet ſail again with a favourable tide, and ſteer'd our courſe north-eaſt by north. We came in the evening to the point of *Karackatouw*, which was about a league and a half from us to the north-north-eaſt, and about two leagues from the iſle of *Toppers-hoetd-je*. As ſoon as it grew dark, we perceived ſome fires upon land, and had ſeveral flaſhes of lightening. About ten o'the clock we were becalmed, and obliged to caſt anchor in twenty ſeven fathom water, but that calm was immediately followed by a violent ſtorm.

On the 22d I drew two beautiful proſpects, the firſt of which is exhibited in plate 194. where D marks out the iſle of *Paſſage*. E that of *Selebeſe*, and F the northern ſide of the continent of the inner weſtern coaſt. The point of *Bantam* is repreſented at the letter G, in plate 195. together with the coaſt of *Java* at H, and the *Chapeau de Brabant* at I. There is likewiſe a view of all the mountains, and iſlands filled with trees, which form a very agreeable proſpect. We had then the point of *Bantam* to the north-eaſt, and the *Chapeau de Brabant* to the north-north-eaſt, about a league and a half from us, and toward noon we perceived a *Batavian* veſſel under ſail, with a bark belonging to the company. The veſſel was a *Dutch* pink, on her return to *Europe*. As ſoon as we ſaw their flag, we hoiſted ours, and ſent our ſloop out to enquire after news; ſhe on her part ſent two pilots on board us, who did not ſtay long; and in the mean time the company's bark arrived, according to cuſtom, to examine and take an account of the ſhips which arrive in that ſea. The maſter of the bark ordered the captain of our ſhip, on the part of the magiſtrate of *Batavia*, to ſend his clerk on ſhore with the company's letters, upon which he immediately obeyed, and we then ſet ſail again with a weſterly wind. We had the point of *Bantam* at eaſt by ſouth, and the *Chapeau de Brabant* at weſt-ſouth-weſt: Advancing in thirty two fathom water, about eleven at night, we anchor'd in ſixteen fathom, beyond the point of *Bantam*, 18 leagues from *Batavia*. The 23d at break of day we hoiſted ſail again, the wind being at weſt-north-weſt, and blowing with a briſk gale. We then diſcovered the gulf of *Bantam*, which extends itſelf to a great length.

Gulf of Bantam.

On one ſide of this gulf we had a view of *Long-Iſland*, which we left on the right. We had alſo a proſpect of the blue mountain, which is very high: This is repreſented in plate 196. in which *Long-Iſland*, otherwiſe called *Pon-Panjang*, is exhibited at K, the blue-mountain at L, the gulf of *Bantam* at M, and the point of *Bantam* at N. We paſſed by that city, in which we could partly diſtinguiſh the higheſt buildings. We had *Baby* to the north-north-weſt, at the diſtance of about a league and a half, and we ſteered with a wind from north-weſt, and from ſouth-weſt, to eaſt-north-eaſt, and eaſt by ſouth, in ten, twelve, and fifteen fathom water. This part of the ſea has ſeveral iſlands, where we were often obliged to anchor by reaſon of the calms. At laſt we approached *Batavia* the 24th. The commander *Broueg* came to meet us in his bark, and brought me the agreeable news that I was expected by the governor-general, Monſieur *de Hoorn*, who had received notice of my coming by letters from Monſieur *Witſen*, burgo-maſter of *Amſterdam*.

The blue mountain.

A deſcription of that quarter.

Baby.

The commander offered me a paſſage in his bark to the city, where we arrived about ten, and were informed

The author's arrival at Batavia.

formed that the governor was gone to paſs the day at a country ſeat. M. *de Geerlogh* was ſo good as to lend me his charriot to carry me thither: The way to it was exceedingly agreeable, being bordered with trees, and pleaſure-houſes on each ſide. The houſe to which I went was not above half a league from the city. I met with good company there, and the governor in particular received me with open arms, and invited me to dine with him. In the evening we all returned to the city, and I lodged in the caſtle with him. He gave me a packet of letters, in which there was one from the burgo-maſter *Witſen*, dated the firſt of *May* 1705. After ſupper I was conducted to my apartment, where I immediately went to bed, being much fatigued, and indiſpoſed.

The civility of the general of the Indies.

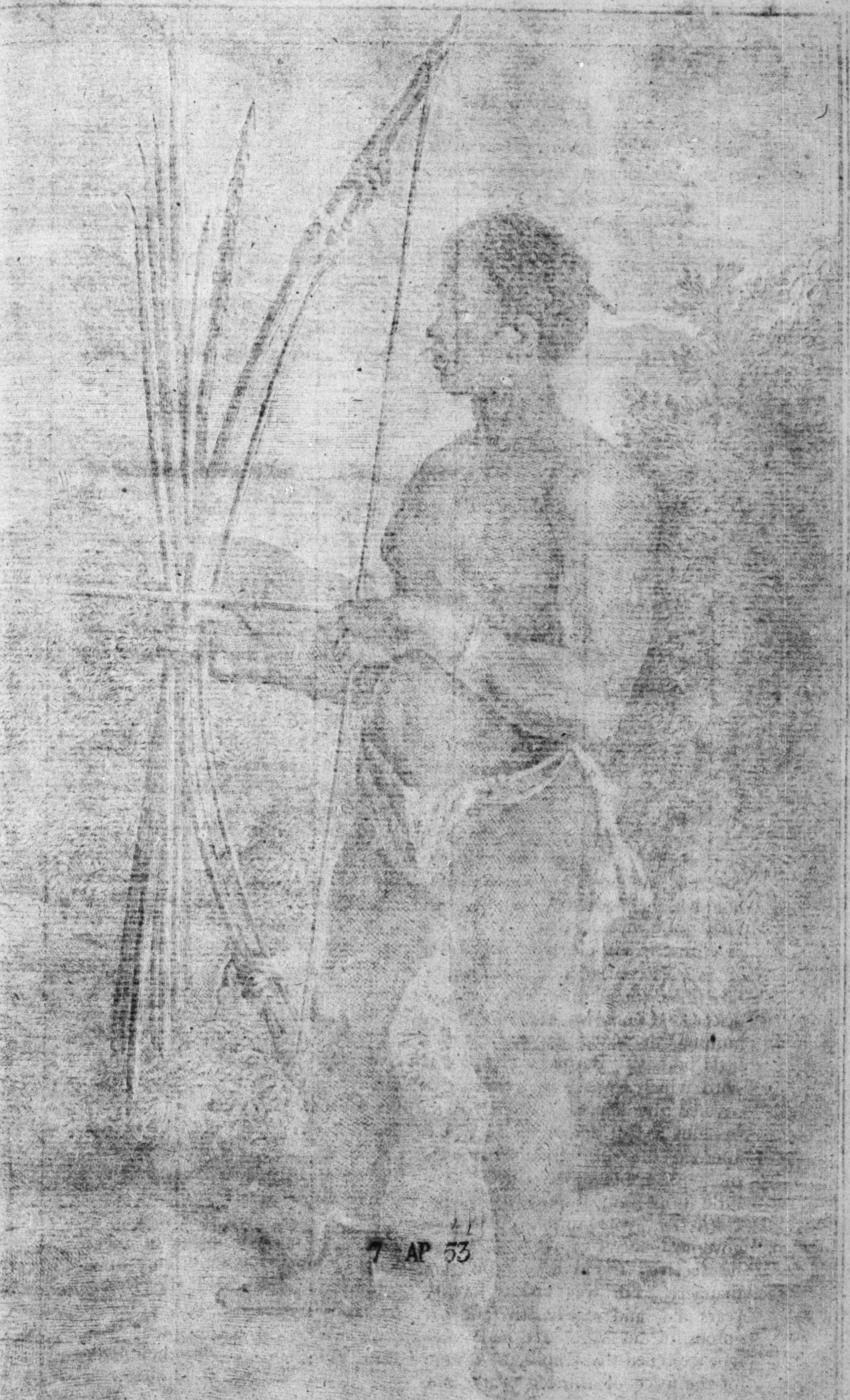
CHAP. LXV.

The author's indiſpoſition. The inhabitants of the South. A rigorous puniſhment. Extraordinary fruits. Chineſe *comedies. The director-general's pleaſure-houſe.*

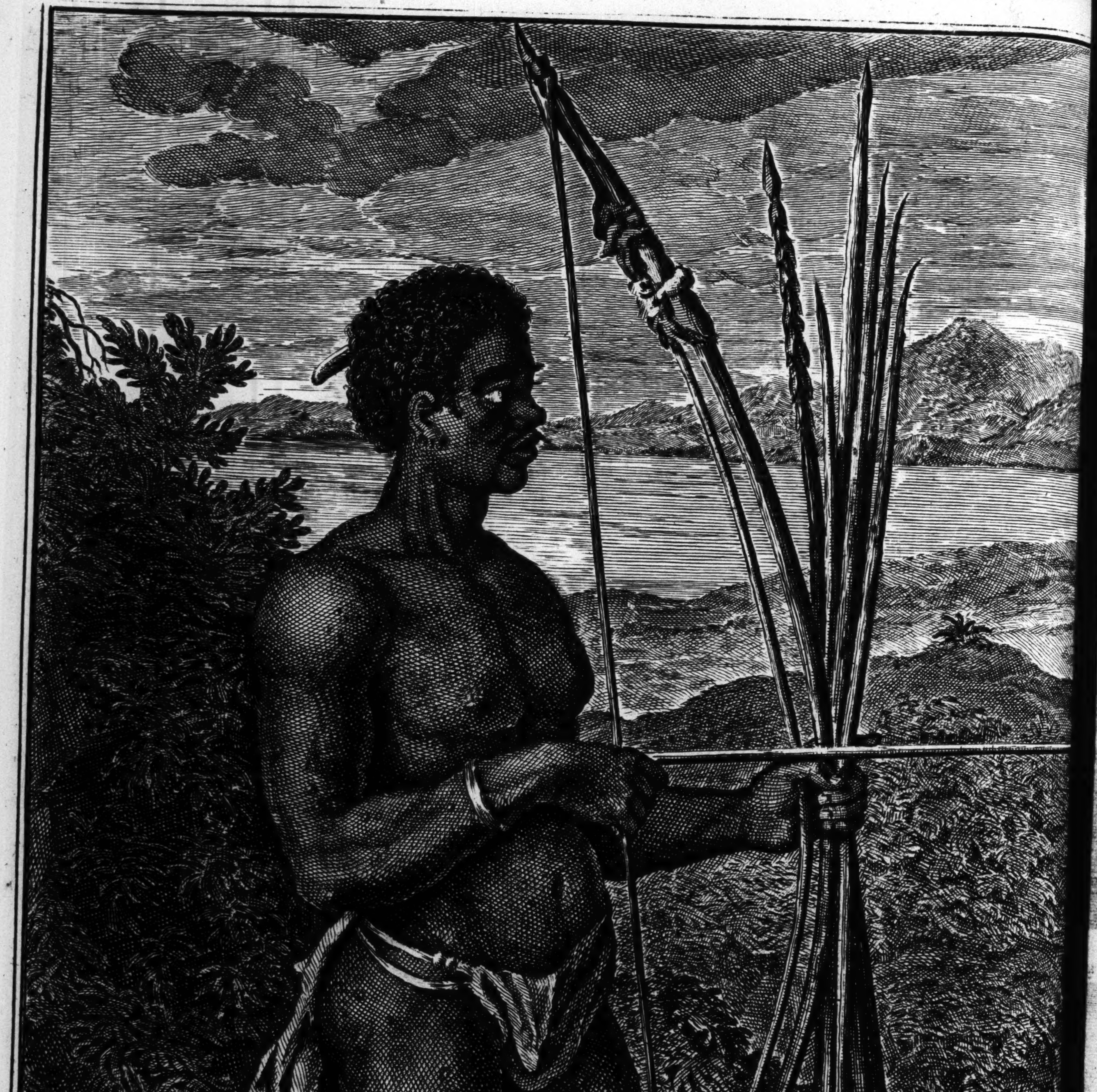
MY indiſpoſition increaſed to ſuch a degree, as obliged me to keep my chamber. M. *Brower*, the company's firſt phyſician, attended me, by order of the governor-general, and gave me hopes of recovering my health in a few days; nor was he deceived, for he had ſuch good ſucceſs, that I was in a condition to walk out the beginning of *March*. I had not the leaſt reliſh either for wine or beer ſince my ſickneſs at *Gamron*, and had drank nothing but water, and ſometimes a little brandy. But the refreſhments with which I was now ſupplied, recovered my appetite, and I began to paint ſeveral *Indian* fruits, which afforded me an agreeable amuſement. As ſoon as my health was a little improved, I went to viſit M. *Outſhoorn*, who formerly had been governor-general of the *Indies*, and he received me in a very obliging manner. He was about ſeventy years old, and very healthy and vigorous for his age. He had likewiſe exerciſed that important charge for the ſpace of thirteen years, and then quitted it with no other view than to paſs the reſt of his life in peace and tranquility. I had a long converſation with him, which proved very ſatisfactory to us both, and he made me promiſe to viſit him frequently, and ſhow him all the curioſities I had then in my poſſeſſion. I afterward viſited M. *de Riebeek*, director-general of the company, and the general *de Wilde*, together with ſome members of the council of the *Indies*; as alſo M. *Garſin*, firſt ſecretary to the company, who all received me with great civility; and eſpecially my old friend M. *Hoogkamer*, who had formerly been ambaſſador to the court of *Perſia*, and was then vice-preſident of the council of juſtice; and I took this opportunity to renew my acquaintance with that gentleman.

Savages of the South.

Some days after I went to pay a viſit to M. *de Roy*, major of the citadel, where I found four men, whom a ſhip, called the *Pincon*, had taken from the ſouthern coaſt, with two or three women, who were permitted to enjoy their liberty. Theſe ſavages, who were ſix in all, had been brought to *Batavia*,



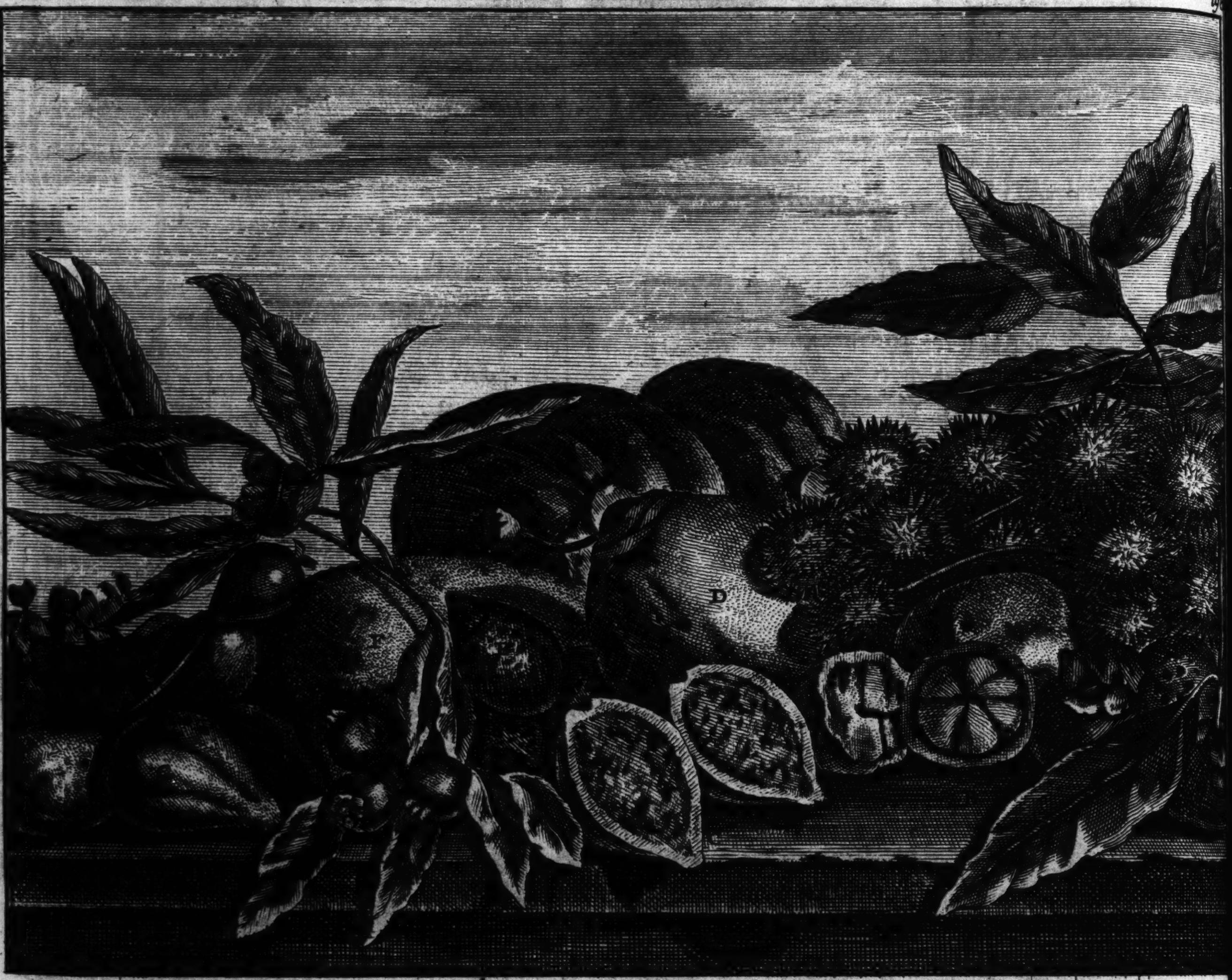
7 AP 53



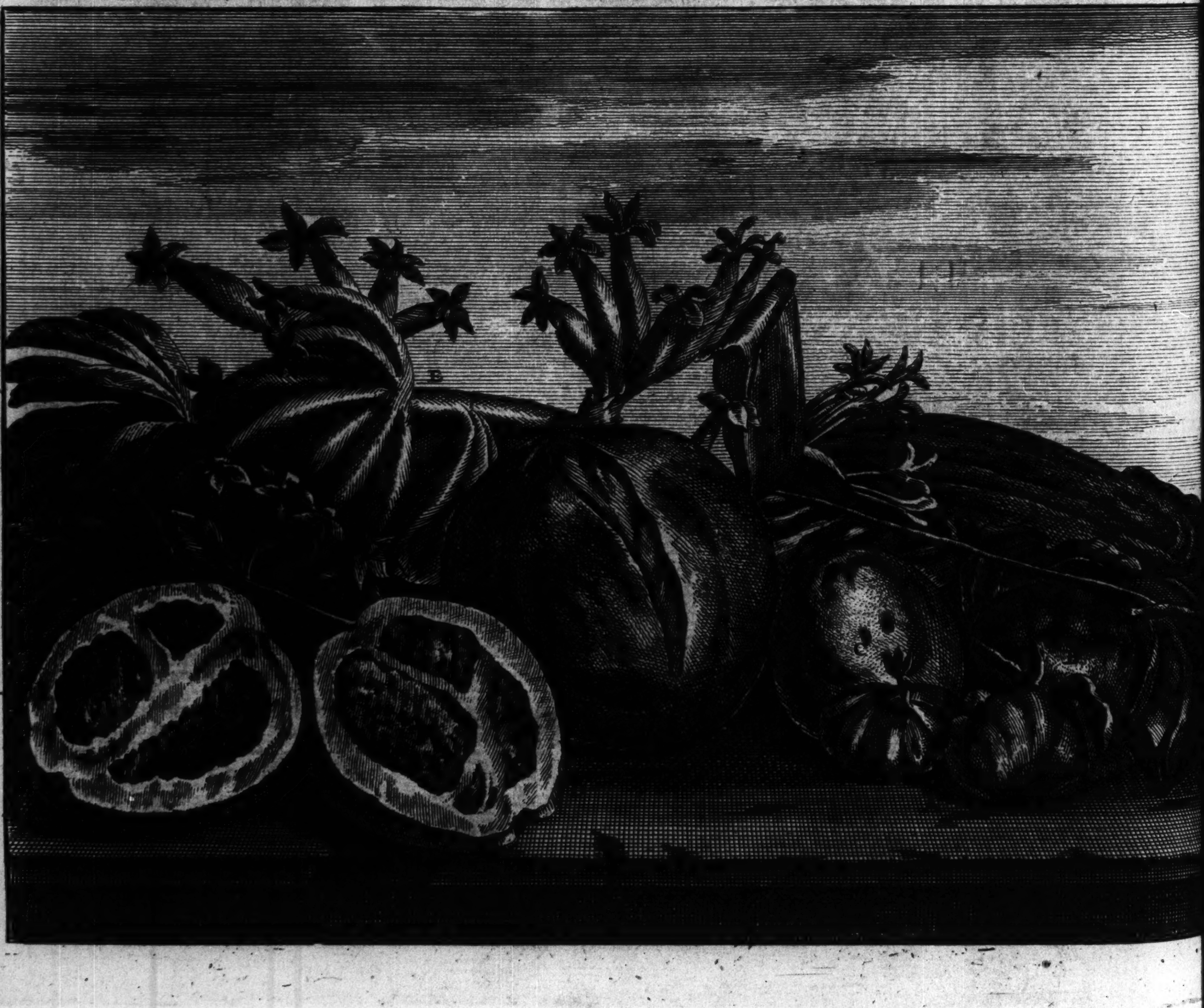
HOMME SAUVAGE DU SUD.

7 AP 53

Fruits Singuliers.



Fruits Singuliers.



from whence two of them eſcaped, and the other four remained in the ſervice of the company, who ſent them aboard their ſhips in order to learn our language, and that ſome account might be obtained from them of their own country, to which they were intended to be ſent back after they had made thoſe diſcoveries which were then wanted. They were treated in this manner, that they might have an opportunity of repreſenting the humanity of the company to their fellow natives, and to induce them to engage in a commerce with our nation; for till then they had never permitted ſtrangers to enter their country, and the ſhip of which I have been ſpeaking, was the firſt that ever arrived on that coaſt.

Theſe ſavages had ſomething ſo peculiar in their air, that I had an inclination to paint one with his bow and arrow in his hand, agreeably to their manner, and as may be ſeen in plate 197. They have no other covering than a ſlight cincture of cloth round their waiſt, and which hangs down a little before: They have alſo a ſmall ivory bracelet round their left arm. I took one of their bows, and ſeveral arrows which I have kept by me. Theſe latter are made of cane, ſome larger than others, and have a great many points which render the wounds they make very dangerous; but their extreme ſlenderneſs prevents them from flying very far.

A ſevere puniſhment

Several *Chineſe* were executed about that time, and two of thoſe unhappy wretches had their fleſh torn off with red hot pincers; after which they were broken upon the wheel.

The former governor ſent me his chariot to convey me to a pleaſure-houſe which he had without the city. I paſſed ſome hours there very agreeably, and ſhewed him part of the deſigns I had taken in *Perſia*, with which he ſeemed very well ſatisfied. In the evening I returned to *Batavia*, and on the 30th of *March* a galley called the *Noiſette*, ſet ſail from thence with the company's letters. I took this opportunity to write to my friends.

Fruits.

I had already painted ſeveral ſpecies of fruits, which the reader will find exhibited in plate 198, where A is a certain fruit called *Froete Kafri*, the flavour of which is ſweet, and the colour a beautiful red; it has likewiſe a great reſemblance to the ſea-cheſnut, and the tree bears very large leaves. B a fruit called *Manguſtangus*, which has an agreeable ſweetneſs, and is likewiſe very ſalutary: The ſize of it is equal to that of a *China* orange: It is alſo white within, and cover'd on the outſide with a cheſnut brown. C repreſents two *Gojaves* ripe and open; the fruit is red within, and it reſembles a water melon. On one ſide are exhibited others of this ſpecies, which are ſmall and green, together with their leaves. This fruit is certainly very pleaſant, and is about two inches in diameter when ripe. D repreſents another fruit called *Klapper Royal*, the juice of which is very pleaſant, and there are ſeveral ſorts; this is properly the cocoa-nut, which is about the ſize of a melon, and has a white pulp within, which adheres to the ſhell, and is good to eat. E is placed at a fruit called *Froete Rottan*, which is very grateful to the taſte, and much eſteemed; it has likewiſe a bright violet colour, ſpotted with brown. F exhibits an orange called *Piepienje*, or rather a large cucumber, with its bloſſom and leaves. G a red and white *Jamboes*, with its foliage; this fruit much reſembles a peach in its flavour; and on the ſide of it are drawn two of a ſmaller kind. A in plate 169, marks out a fruit called *Tamati*, the coat of which reſembles a ſhell. This fruit is beautifully tinged with red on the outſide, and full of kernels like a cucumber; its flavour is likewiſe agreeable, eſpecially in ſauces. B an *Annona*, whoſe outſide is grey and rough while the fruit continues unripe, but it afterwards aſſumes a violet colour, and is ſomething larger than an orange; the flavour of this

Manguſtangus.

Gojaves.

FroeteRottan.

Piepjenje.

Jamboes.

Shell fruit.

Annona.

this fruit is agreeable enough. The leaves are about the length of one's finger. C repreſents a large citron full of a delicious juice, incloſed in a very thin rind. D exhibits two *Pompelmoeſes*, one large and entire, the other opened. This fruit is red within; but there are ſome of a white hue, and which have fewer kernels. Its flavour and ſcent reſemble thoſe of a *China* orange; it is ſhaped like a melon. E repreſents a ſweet and pleaſant fruit, called *Pieſang*, which the inhabitants peel like a fig: It has a green tincture before it is ripe, but this deepens into a yellow when the fruit has attained its due maturity. It is about five inches in length, and at the top riſes a flower blended with violet and red, and which falls when the fruit is ripe. The ſtalk produces another flower a foot and an inch in length, and five inches in diameter. This flower is tinged with a violet colour, intermixed with red and blue. The leaves of the tree which bears this fruit are about two fathom in length, and one in breadth; they likewiſe glow with a deep red on one ſide; and between them and the flowers from whence the fruit ſprings, one ſees a profuſion of other long flowers, ſome yellow, others blue and red; and they form a moſt agreeable view. The trunk of the true is not above three fathom high, but the thickneſs of it is very conſiderable. The rind is full of ſap, and they ſtew the inſide like cabbage.

Pompel-moeſes.

Pieſang.

Chineſe *comedies.*

I went about this time to ſee a theatrical performance in the *Chineſe* manner: The ſtages are erected in the ſtreet, and front the houſes of thoſe who give theſe entertainments, or contribute to the expence on that occaſion. I obſerved in the veſtible of one of thſe houſes, a large high table covered with all ſorts of proviſions, finely diſpoſed, as well wild-fowl as fiſh, and among the reſt a hog's head ſplit. There were likewiſe confections, and other delicacies, on one ſide of which were a great number of round flat loaves heaped up one upon another. A little higher (for this table had the form of an altar) were all ſorts of fruits, embelliſhed with flowers, and before the table a man ſtood in the habit of an eccleſiaſtic, with an open book in his hand, adorned with very extraordinary figures; the place was likewiſe finely illuminated: The perſon I laſt mentioned frequently threw pieces of copper on the ground, and then reſumed his reading. He was likewiſe joined by a ſecond actor, who made ſeveral motions, which ſeemed to expreſs ſome of their ſacred ceremonials, and gave me reaſon to believe, that the piece they were then performing had an intermixture of religious worſhip. However, as they all continued ſilent, I went to another theatre, where the performance was already begun. This ſtructure reſembled the other, but was not altogether ſo magnificent. Eight or ten actors appeared upon the ſtage in comic habits, and among the reſt two women, who alternately ſung and ſpoke. Every one of theſe perſons uttered ſoliloquies at particular intervals, with extraodinary geſtures and contorſions of body: The performance cloſed with a circular dance, and the actors retired in good order, moving to the muſick of their own inſtruments. Among other things were ſeveral baſons, which they ſtruck one againſt another, agreeably to the manner practiſed at *Iſpahan*; theſe were accompanied with a clang of leſſer baſons, intermixed with the modulation of ſoft flutes, and the theatre was illuminated with *Chineſe* lamps and candles. When I went from thence, I returned to the place from whence I came, and where the performance was alſo begun. The actors were more numerous, and the theatre was likewiſe larger than the other. Theſe repreſentations are exhibited in moſt parts of the city, and continue all night; ſome beginning ſooner in the evening, others later, and they continue from the beginning of *March* to the end of *April*. They repreſent

ſent the adventures and hiſtory of the antients, as well in tragedy as comedy, as is the practice among us; and I was informed, that all the actors in theſe pieces were maidens in diſguiſe. I have frequently ſeen performances of this nature in the *Indies*; but am apt to think they are executed to more advantage in *China*.

The director general's country houſe.

The next day the director-general *Riebeek* invited me to accompany him into the country, and we accordingly went out of the city in a chariot, but afterward mounted on horſeback, becauſe we found the roads very bad. We paſſed over part of his lands before we arrived at his country-ſeat, which was about a league and a half from *Batavia.* I found the ſoil which lies neareſt to the city of different colours, and riſing in ſeveral little hillocks, which form a very agreeable proſpect. All the lands which belonged to the director were covered with rice, which, inſtead of being mowed, is cut down at the proper ſeaſon, with a ſmall ſickle. As this production is ſown at different times, it is ripe in ſome places before it is quite green in others. He had alſo planted a great number of fruit, and other trees, which were not yet come to perfection. His houſe was all finiſhed, except the ſtables and kitchen, upon which they were at work every day. He told me that he employed above an hundred oxen in the cultivation of his land, and other rural works. We returned in the evening to the city, along the river ſide, where a great number of delightful ſeats are built, as in our country. I found myſelf very much fatigued at my return, being ſtill very weak, and I began to be much incommoded by the heat, as well as by ſeveral ſmall pimples which came out all over my body. But this is a common diſorder in that country; it is even counted very wholſome, and I really found my ſelf better. The worſt circumſtance which attends this diſtemper is, that it indiſpoſes one from ſleeping; and, indeed, it is impoſſible for thoſe who are ſeized with it to reſt above two or three hours in a day. There is an eaſy method of curing it, but the remedy is worſe than the diſeaſe; becauſe it expoſes one to great danger, by driving the pimples in. My ſight did not grow any better, ſo that I was always obliged to uſe ſpectacles; but age, perhaps, might contribute very much to this defect.

CHAP. LXVI.

Pleaſure-houſes in the parts adjacent to Batavia. *The manners of the* Baliers. *Pepper-plants. Vaſt numbers of apes. The rejoicings occaſioned by the taking of* Batavia.

A little journey of the author's to the eſtate of Mr. Kaſtelein.

I HAD again ſome fits of my fever toward the end of *April*, but they did not prevent me from accompanying a few friends to Mr. *Kaſtelein's* eſtate. He waited for us with a coach and two horſes at a ſmall diſtance from the city, and at a place called *Wellevrei*, a little beyond the fortreſs of *Noortwick.* The domeſticks were gone before to the *Corps de garde* of Mr. *Corneille*, about three quarters of a league from thence. This is a ſquare wooden building, ſurrounded with a quickſet-hedge, and has ſome reſemblance to a fort, having a high centry-

1706.

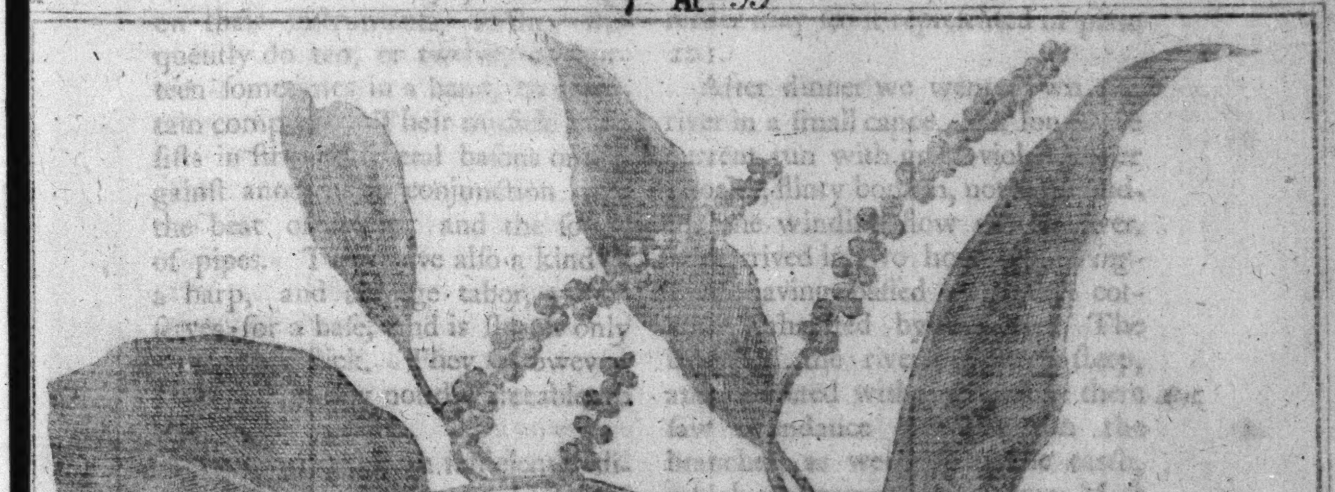
Baliers.

Mr. Kaſtelein's *country-houſe.*

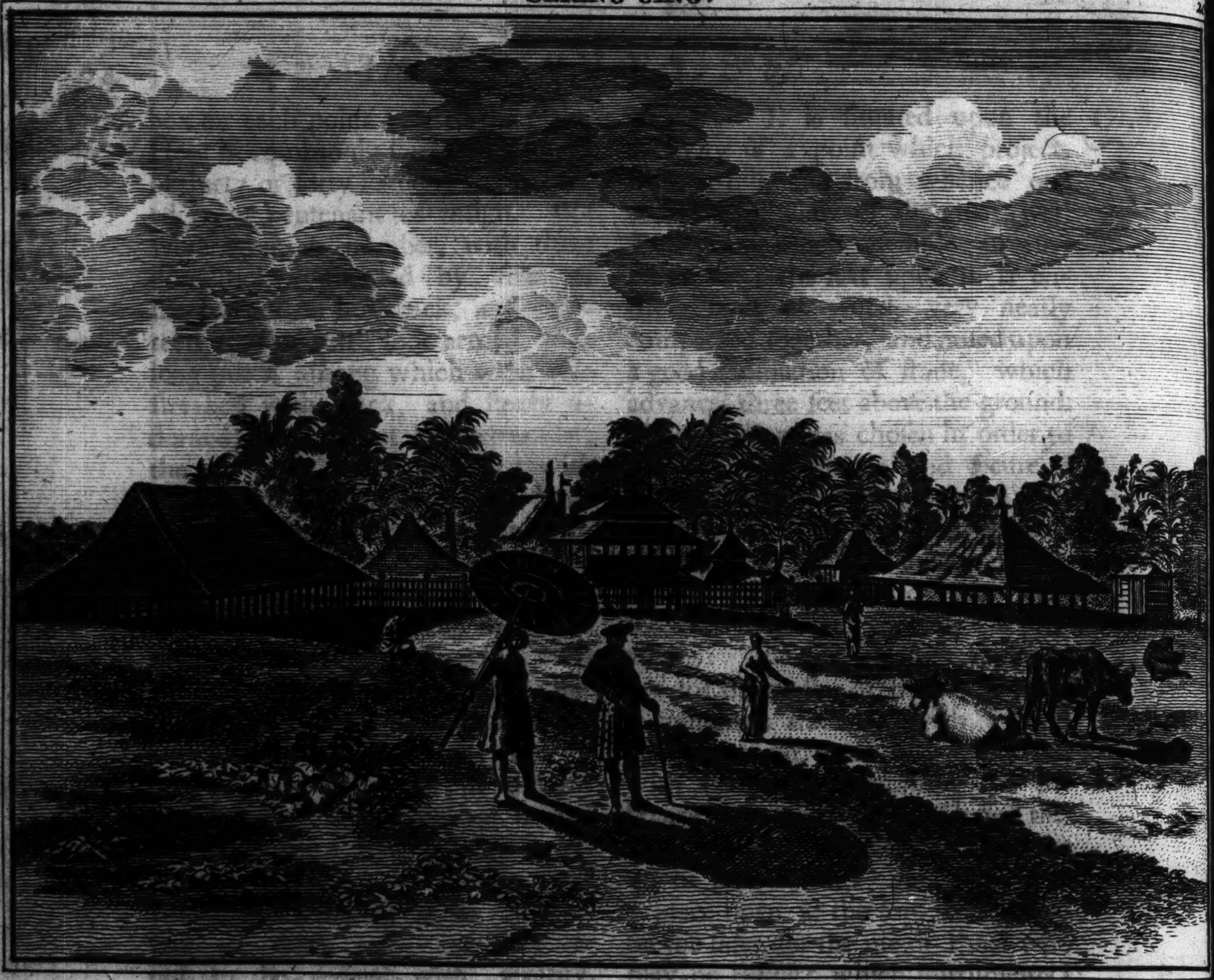
box on each point toward the plain. Here is commonly ſtationed a guard of thirty or forty ſoldiers, commanded by a lieutenant or enſign. We were ſeven in number, with three domeſticks, guarded by five or ſix *Indians* on horſeback, and eighteen *Baliers* on foot armed with long pikes, among which were two ſtreaked with black, and finely adorned with gold at the extremity; the reſt were red embelliſhed with ſilver. Moſt of them wore a large dagger at their girdle, like the *Ganſjaers* of the *Turks*. Theſe *Baliers* are natives of an iſland, which lies to the eaſt of *Java*, and they have the reputation of being the moſt warlike people of that quarter, chuſing rather to ſuffer death than ſhrink a ſtep from their enemies; forty or fifty of them will often put to flight two hundred of the *Indians* of the iſle of *Java*. This quality is accompanied with an aſſiduity, and inflexible fidelity to thoſe maſters who uſe them well; for they are not to be treated with ſeverity. When we had proceeded about half a league on our journey, we came to the ſuggar-mills of a *Chineſe* named *Tanſianko*, upon the great river *Tſulivan*, or the river of women, which in ſome places is eight or ten fathoms wide, and in others not above two. We dined there in a very agreeable houſe, with a handſome garden belonging to it, and continued there till three o'clock. I here found ſome butterflies of a ſurpriſing beauty, and have preſerved a dozen of them. We had ſent away our domeſtics and horſes before us, that they might paſs the river before our arrival there, in order to gain time, and we followed with three chariots, each of which was drawn by a buffalo, which we were obliged to change three times in an hour, the ways were ſo very bad and rugged. When we came to the river I have already mentioned, we were obliged to paſs over it in little boats, made of the bark of a tree, and, an hour after, we arrived at Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s country ſeat at *Seringſing*. It is ſituated upon the declivity of a point which projects from a hill, and from whence one enjoys a full view of the great river. This point much reſembles an amphitheatre; the ſeat upon it is entirely built of wood, very neatly compacted together, and raiſed upon a good foundation of ſtone, which advances three feet above the ground. This ſituation was choſen in order to preſerve the building, and ſecure it from rotting, and being infeſted with white ants. The houſe is two ſtories high, the firſt of which is inhabited by the domeſtics, and is uſed as a conſervatory for all the proviſions: The ſecond ſtory is reſerved for the maſter of the houſe; and it contains a fine hall, with a ſmall apartment on each ſide; together with a large one fronting the entrance into the court. Under this is a room furniſhed with ſeats, for the uſe of the ſervants; and over it is a place open at the top, and glazed on the ſides, for the uſe of thoſe who play on *Baliers*, which inſtruments I ſhall hereafter deſcribe. This edifice is ſquare, and ſurrounded with wood painted green. On each of its ſides is another building, one of which ſerves for a kitchen, and has likewiſe two ſmall chambers for the ſlaves. The other is the magazine, where the rice is depoſited; and it has likewiſe two ſmall chambers for the ſervants. Behind the magazine is a large hen-houſe, and a ſtall for cattle. There is likewiſe a ſpacious yard for poultry, ſurrounded with a quick-ſet hedge, and a fine gate is intended to be built at the entrance into this place. On the right of this yard, is a piece of ground covered over, for the accommodation of paſſengers with a ſhelter; and the chariots and other carriages are likewiſe ſet up here. The garden is on the eaſt-ſide of the houſe, and has a deſcent of thirty-ſix feet toward the river; together with thirty ſix ſteps divided into three flights: The firſt conſiſts of fourteen ſteps, and is furniſhed with ſeats for the conveniency of thoſe who

1706.

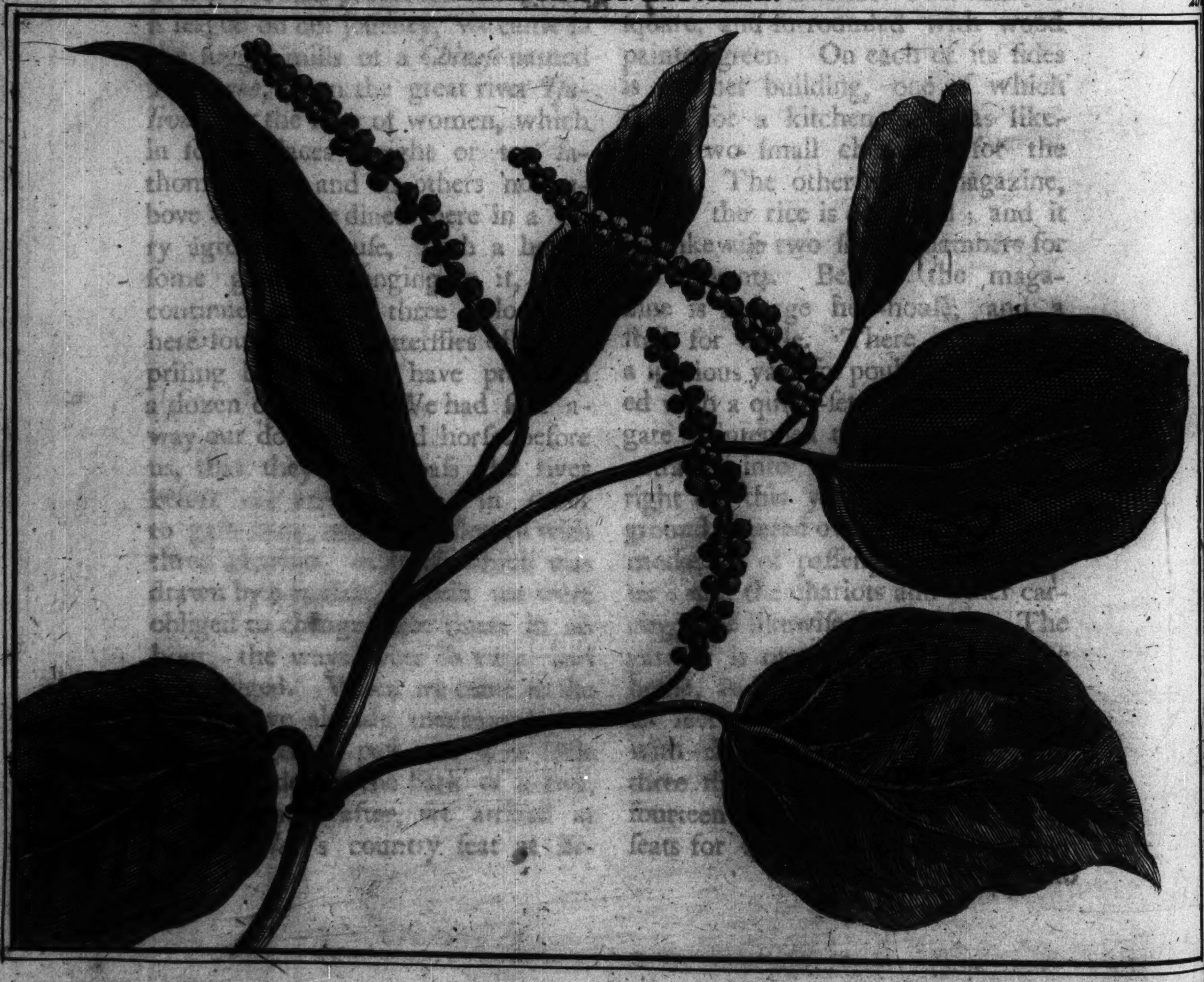
7 AP 53



SERING-SING.



PLANTE D'UN POIVRIER.



who have an inclination to reſt themſelves. The ſecond has twelve ſteps, the ſeats like thoſe of the former; and the third has ten, at the bottom of which is a paſſage over a little bridge, to a place of eaſement on the river. Theſe ſteps are railed on each ſide in a very elegant manner. There is likewiſe another deſcent, like that already deſcribed, toward the river, and on] the north-ſide of the houſe, together with ſteps of the ſame ſtructure with the others. On the edge of the water is a ſummer-houſe, and at the end of the garden a fine hall, where the maſter of the houſe uſually dines, and which commands an inchanting proſpect. There is likewiſe another hall raiſed on pillars, upon the bank of the river, and from whence there is a communication with the preceding by a ſmall bridge, handſomely railed, and a deſcent to the river is alſo formed by a flight of ſteps. This ſeat is repreſented in plate 200. There is a place over the gate, where the muſicians ſeat themſelves when they perform upon their inſtruments, as they frequently do ten, or twelve, or fourteen ſometimes in a band, to entertain company. Their muſick conſiſts in ſtriking ſeveral baſons one againſt another, in conjunction with the beat of drums, and the ſound of pipes. They have alſo a kind of a harp, and a large tabor, which ſerves for a baſe, and is ſtruck only with one ſtick. They, however, form a harmony not diſagreeable to the ear.

After we had been ſufficiently diverted in this place, we mounted our horſes, in order to accompany our hoſt to his eſtate at *Manpang*, and *Depok*, which lie ſouthward of the ſeat I have been deſcribing. In our way thither, we paſſed over ſeveral fields full of ſugar, and *Seringſing*, a ſmall plant like a reed, from whence the country received its name, and which ſhoots out even on the trees. We then entered a wood newly planted, and covered with ſhort graſs, that makes the moſt agreeable appearance in the world; it is likewiſe diſpoſed into beautiful alleys. When we had travelled a league, we came to the ſource of a ſmall river ſhaded with thick trees, where travellers often ſtop to enjoy the freſh air, and repoſe themſelves. Half a league from thence we entered upon the lands of *Depok*, in a valley through which the great river flows. I there ſaw two pepper plants, which grow round poles, or green props, like beans in our country, at the diſtance of ſix feet from one another, and the poles are about eighteen feet high.

Pepper plants.

As the rays of the ſun cannot penetrate their foliage, one may walk in their ſhade during the greateſt heats. The pepper ſprings out in cluſters that reſemble a growth of gooſberries, and the grains are green at firſt, but afterward aſſume an orange colour, which proceeds from a ſhell that enfolds them, and which peals off when rubbed in the hands, the pepper which then remains being of a white hue. I gathered a ſmall branch from this plant, and the reader may ſee it repreſented in plate 201.

After dinner we went down the river in a ſmall canoe, and found the current run with great violence over a rocky, flinty bottom, notwithſtanding the winding flow of the river. We arrived in two hours at *Seringſing*, having paſſed by ſeveral cottages inhabited by *Negroes*. The banks of the river are very ſteep, and bordered with trees: We there ſaw abundance of apes, on the branches, as well as on the earth, which was covered with them. Moſt of theſe animals are grey, but we ſaw a few that were black. Several of the ſame ſpecies are likewiſe to be found in the woods.

Apes.

Baliers.

I drew two *Baliers*, who were ſlaves to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, with the dreſs they wore in this as well as in their own country. They fold part of their habit, which is uſually made of a ſtriped ſtuff, round their waiſt, to which they faſten it by one end, and ſuffer the reſt to flow down to their feet. The upper part of their attire, which is of a different colour, covers their breaſt, and then deſcends to their knees. They generally have a handkerchief in their hand, and their hair is plaited into a point on the upper part of the head. Their arms and feet are naked, as may be ſeen in plate 202. The 203d plate repreſents them in the habit they wear on horſeback; a black mantle being caſt over their body, and their head covered with flowered linnen, and a red hat. They have likewiſe a handkerchief in their hand, on this as well as on other occaſions.

The author's returns to Batavia.

When we had paſſed ſome time in that place, I took my leave of Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who was ſo obliging as to lend me two ſlaves, who were to be my guides, one on foot, and the other on horſeback. I again croſſed the river, in order to proceed to *Batavia*, through the woods, which is the beſt way, *Sering-ſing* being but five leagues diſtant from that city. At my return a blaſt of thunder fell upon a houſe, which received great damage from that caſualty.

The author's reſolution.

I determined at that time not to engage myſelf any farther in the *Indies*, contrary to my firſt intention, which was to viſit all the coaſt of *Coromandel*, in order to diſcover the antiquities, cuſtoms, and religion of thoſe parts. But I found my ſelf too weak for an expedition of that nature, and was likewiſe apprehenſive of a relapſe into my former illneſs, having had ſome fits of my fever at *Sering-ſing*. I was therefore in no condition to bear the fatigue and inconvenience of ſo long a voyage, and had need of reſt for the recovery of my health, and to qualify me for my return by land. I had alſo ſome other reaſons, which ſhall be mentioned by and by.

Rejoicings on the anniverſary the taking of Batavia.

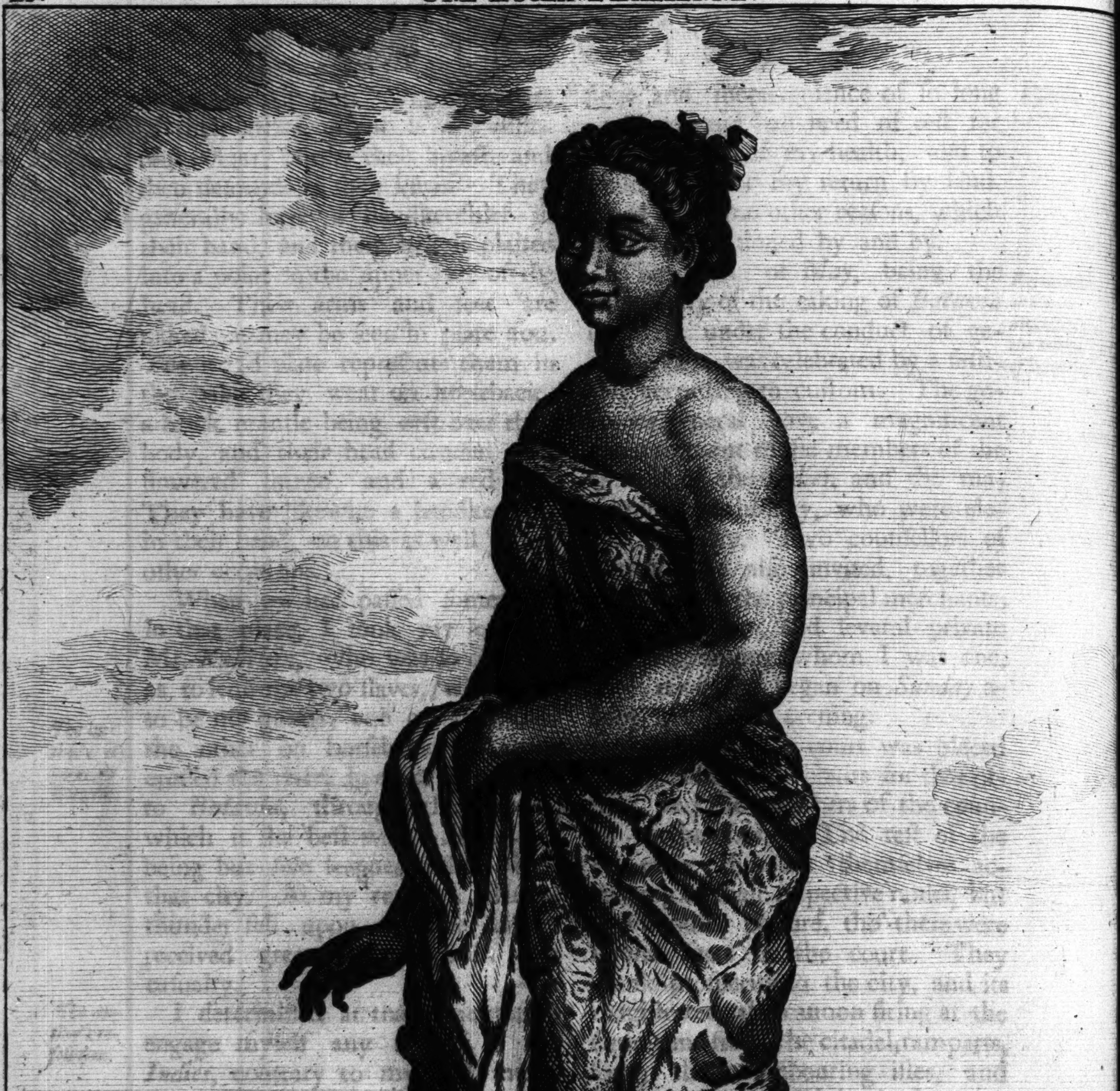
The 30th of *May*, being the anniverſary of the taking of *Batavia* in 1619, under the conduct of general *Koen*, was celebrated by a feſtival, according to cuſtom. The governor-general gave a magnificent entertainment to the members of the council of the *Indies*, and the magiſtrates of the city, who were elected that day. Two counſellors of juſtice were alſo invited, together with two of the principal merchants; four miniſters, and ſeveral private perſons, among whom I was one. The rejoicings began on *Sunday* about five in the evening.

In the general's court was placed a long table, with chairs for that officer, and the members of the council of the *Indies*: The reſt of the company diſpoſed themſelves according to their reſpective ranks, but in a ſtanding poſture, tho' there were ſeveral ſeats in the court. They drank proſperity to the city, and its magiſtrates, the cannon firing at the ſame time from the citadel, ramparts, forts, the neighbouring iſles, and from the ſhips which lay in the road. Part of the citizens alſo appear'd under arms, fifteen in each company, with colours flying, and there were ſix of theſe companies in the whole. There was alſo a body of horſe, headed by the proper officers. The company at laſt broke up, after they had partaken of a very ſplendid entertainment.

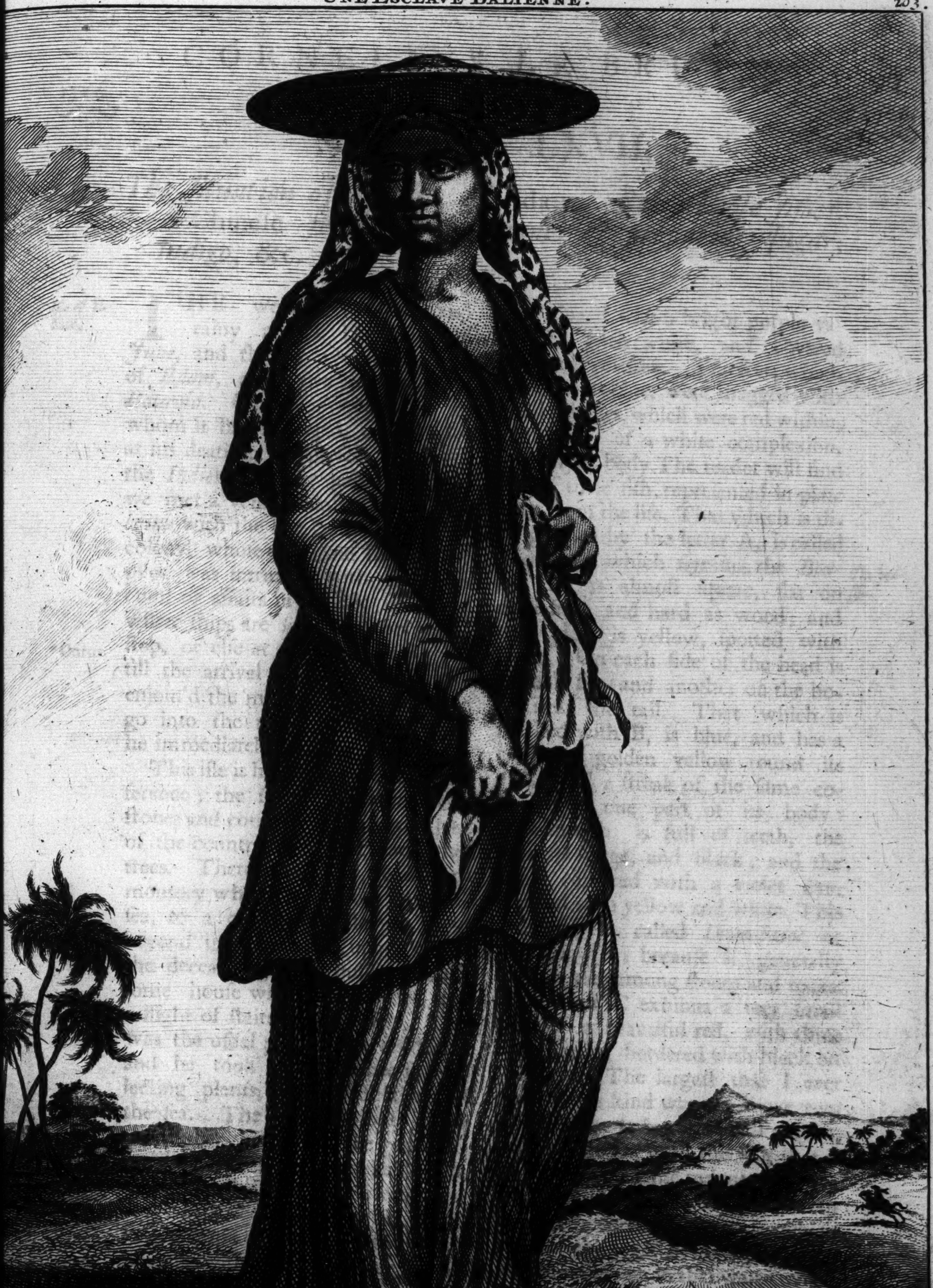
CHAP.

7 AP 53

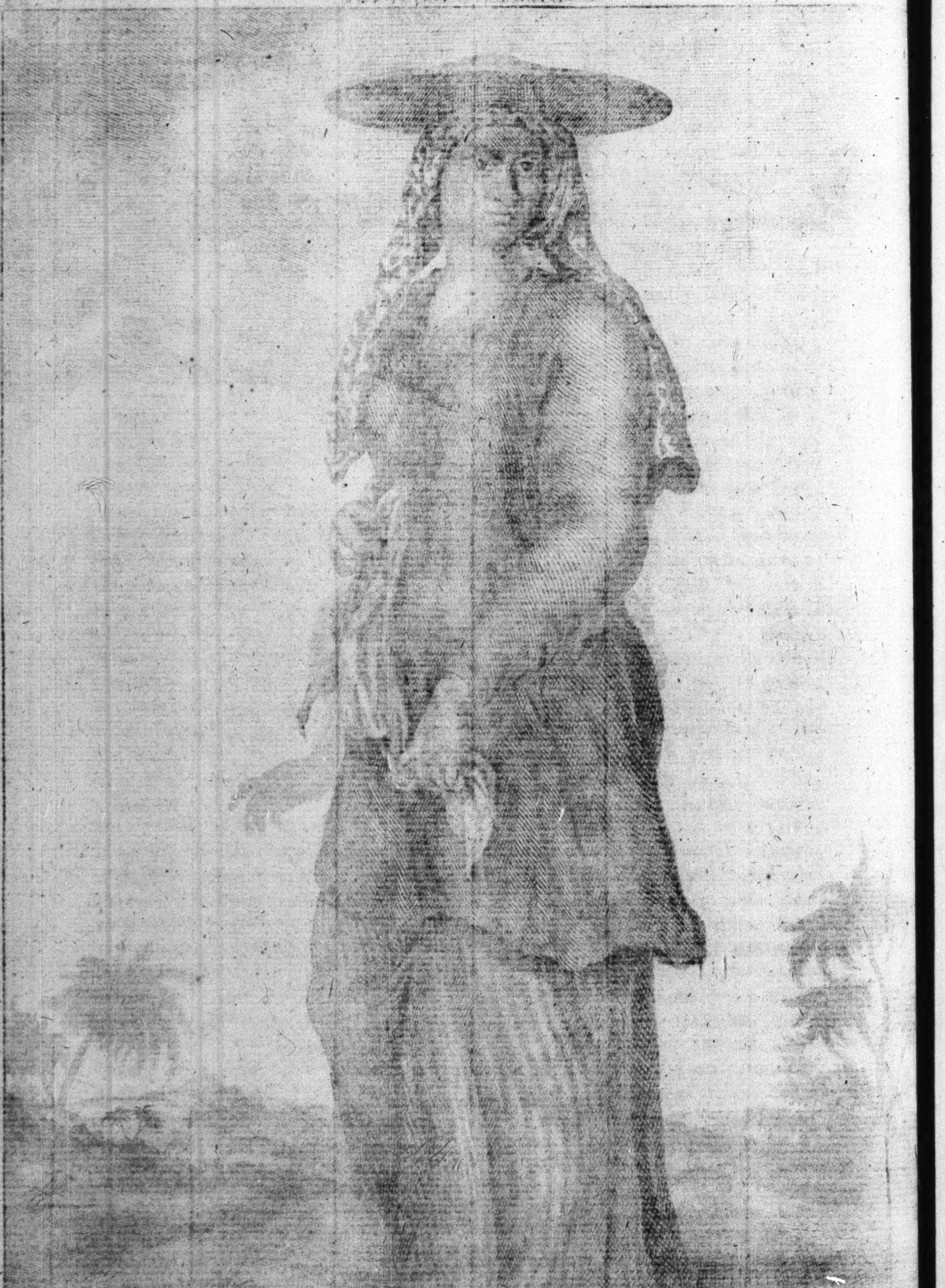
UNE ESCLAVE BALIENNE.



UNE ESCLAVE BALIENNE.



[illegible]



7 AP 53

CHAP. LXVII.

The ſituation of the iſle of Edam. *Remarkable fiſhes. A* Chineſe *feaſt. The manner of preparing ſugar, indigo,* &c.

Iſle of Edam.

THE weather was hot and rainy at the beginning of *June*, and then I went to the iſle of *Edam*, about five leagues from *Batavia*. General *Kamphuiſen*, to whom it had belonged, conſigned it at his death to the preſent general of the *Indies*. In our paſſage thither we met a veſſel coming from *Amboyna* with the late governor of that colony, whoſe name was *Coyet*. Our pilot was intruſted with the direction of affairs in the iſle of *Edam*, where ſhips are ſometimes obliged to ſtop, or elſe at that of * *Sans-repos*, till the arrival of new orders. He enjoin'd the maſte rof that veſſel to go into the road of *Batavia*, and he immediately obeyed.

*Onrus.

Remarkable fiſh.

Sea-cray-fiſh.

A crab.

The box-fiſh.

This iſle is half a league in circumference; the ſhore is covered with ſtones and coral, and the inland part of the country with fruit and other trees. There is alſo a good promontory which ſhoots out into the ſea, to a conſiderable length, and beyond it is another, upon which the deceaſed general built a handſome houſe with two facades, and a flight of ſtairs on each ſide. This was the uſual place of his reſidence, and he took great pleaſure in collecting plants, and productions of the ſea. The ſame curioſity drew me thither, and I had the good fortune to take ſome remarkable fiſh, which I failed not to delineate, having provided myſelf with cloth, and colours for that purpoſe, and likewiſe with ſpirit of wine for the preſerving theſe creatures. I took, among others, a ſea cray-fiſh of a ſurpriſing bigneſs, a beautiful colour, and finely ſpotted; together with a crab near the ſame ſize, coloured with a blewiſh brown, intermixed with white ſpots: The two claws were tinged with a bright purple variegated with white, and covered with little prickles. The feet, which were almoſt blue, were ſhagged with ſmall prickles, which were red within, and others of a white complexion, roſe on the body. The reader will find five of theſe fiſh repreſented in plate 204, from the life. That which is diſtinguiſhed by the letter A, is called *Ikam-peti*, which ſignifies the *Box-fiſh*. It is almoſt ſquare, flat on each ſide, and hard as wood; and the colour is yellow, ſpotted with black. On each ſide of the head is a ſmall fin, and another on the body near the tail. That which is marked with B, is blue, and has a circle of golden yellow round its eyes, and a ſtreak of the ſame colour upon one part of its body: The mouth is full of teeth, the eyes are large, and black; and the tail is coloured with a violet dye, blended with yellow and white. This little fiſh is called *Ikam-batoe*, or the *Stone-fiſh*; becauſe it generally ſhrouds itſelf among ſtones and rocks. The letter C exhibits a very ſmall fiſh, of a beautiful red, with three blue ſtreaks, bordered with black on the body. The largeſt that I ever ſaw of this kind was not above two inches long. It has one ſmall red fin, which, together with the tail, that is coloured in the ſame manner, makes a very beautiful effect. My fiſherman brought me three of this ſpecies, which uſually ſwim together in that number, and are eaſily ſeen in that water, which is altogether as clear as chryſtal, and the bottom itſelf may be diſcovered without any difficulty. This fiſh is not called by any particular name. D ſhews another ſmall flat fiſh, whoſe length exceeds his breadth; the body has a bluiſh caſt on

The rock-fiſh.

Carp.

Stone-bream.

Saw-fiſh.

Bird-fiſh.

the upper part, and toward the belly, but all the reſt of it is brown. Round the head is a black circle, out of which the eyes project; the throat is black both within and without; and all the ſpace between the mouth and eyes is of a beautiful yellow, as is alſo the tail. It is without a name, as well as the former. That which is exhibited at the letter E, is called *Ikam-kajoe*, or the *Wood-fiſh*, becauſe it delights in ſtreams ſhaded with trees: It is of a bright blue, but has the back tinged with yellow; the body is likewiſe mark'd with four large brown ſtreaks, which are not extended to the belly. It has alſo one pointed fin upon its back, another between that and its tail, and two at the belly. A, in plate 205, marks out a ſmall round fiſh, called *Ikam-batoe*, or the *Rock-fiſh*, and it reſembles one of the former. It is of a reddiſh blue, and has ſeven or eight little blue ſtreaks on the body, the nether part of which is black. Its ſhort and white tail is formed like a pair of ſciſſars, with a little red ſtreak toward the end; on each ſide of its head is a fin dyed with yellow and blue. The body of this fiſh, which has ſome reſemblance to a plaice, is a dusky blue; the flavour of the fleſh is very agreeable, and the ſkin is extremely thick. B marks a *Ikamtamar*, or kind of carp; the colour of whoſe body is an intermixture of red and white, and part of the head glows with a fine red. Out of the mouth iſſue two points, which are two inches in length; it has two red fins under its belly, and a third extends from thence to the tail. There are likewiſe two upon the back with ſharp points, and one on each ſide of its head, red and white like the tail, which parts into ſeveral ſharp extremities. This fiſh is about a foot and four inches long, from which one may judge of the others, that are repreſented in miniature in the ſame plate. C points to an *Ikam-Kapak*, which ſignifies a *Stone-bream*. This fiſh has the top and each ſide of its head of a fine red, and the under part mixed with blue and white; the body is blue, with large ſtreaks of a violet hue, and red fins. D marks an *Ikam-gargaſie*, or *Saw-fiſh*, the body of which is of a clear blue, ſtreaked with brown and black; the belly is white, and the mouth yellow, as are alſo the fins, eſpecially that which is upon the back; the whole is ſprinkled over with black ſpots, and the points of its fins are as ſharp as a ſaw. It has likewiſe a yellow tail, ſpotted with black. E is an *Ikamboeron*, or *Bird-fiſh*, which is white, and formed like a plaice, with two large black ſtreaks on the body, from between which there comes out a white kind of a ſtreamer, pointed at the end, and a foot in length; the lower part of the body and the tail are yellow, as are alſo the fins, which grow out from the black ſtreaks; the head is ſmall and pointed. There are but few fiſh of this ſpecies.

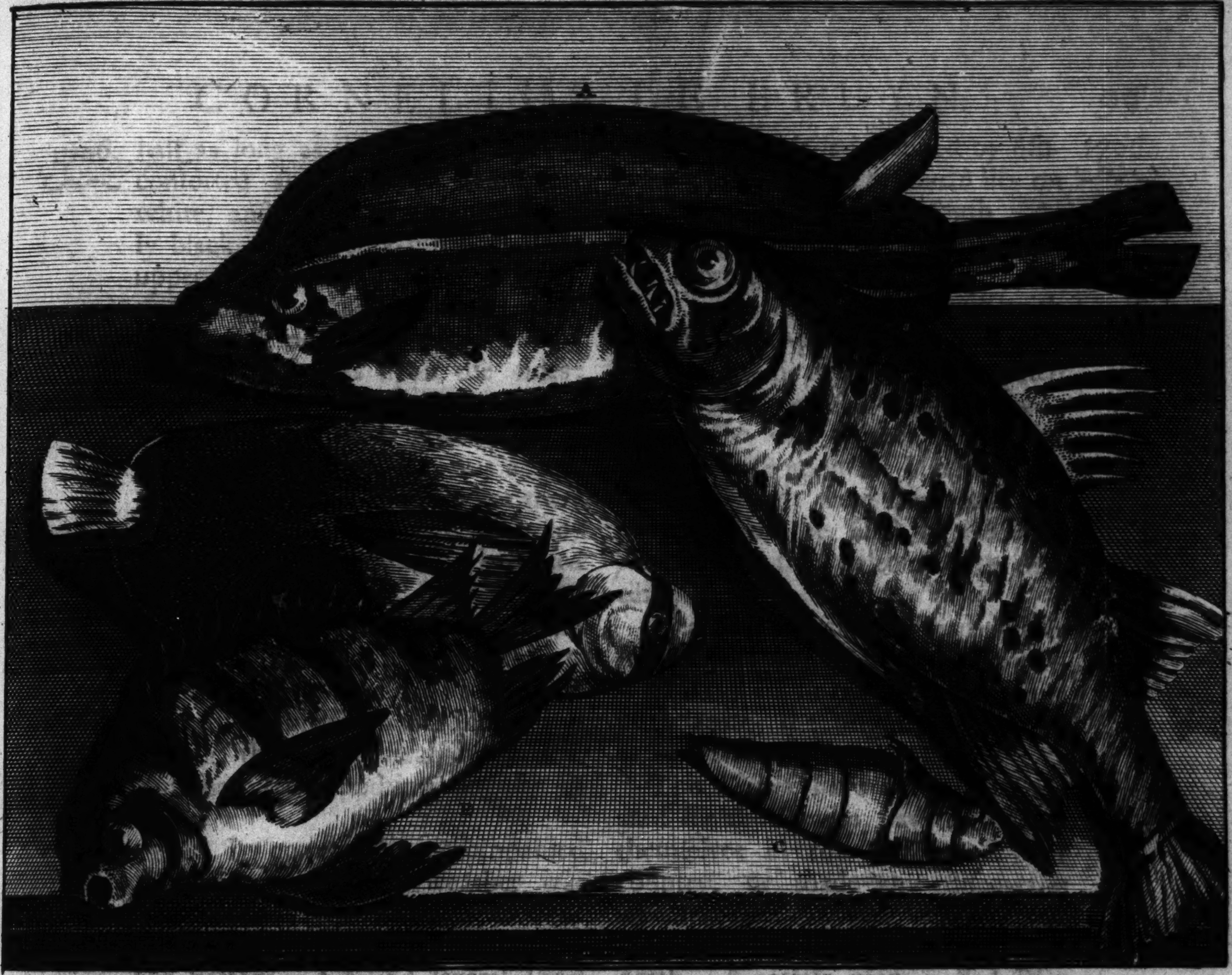
Gold-fiſh.

F marks an *Ikam-maes*, or *Gold-fiſh*; it is of a bright blue, with red ſtreaks along its body, and ſpotted with yellow, which looks like gold; the fins and tail are red, yellow, and white, and the top of the head all red.

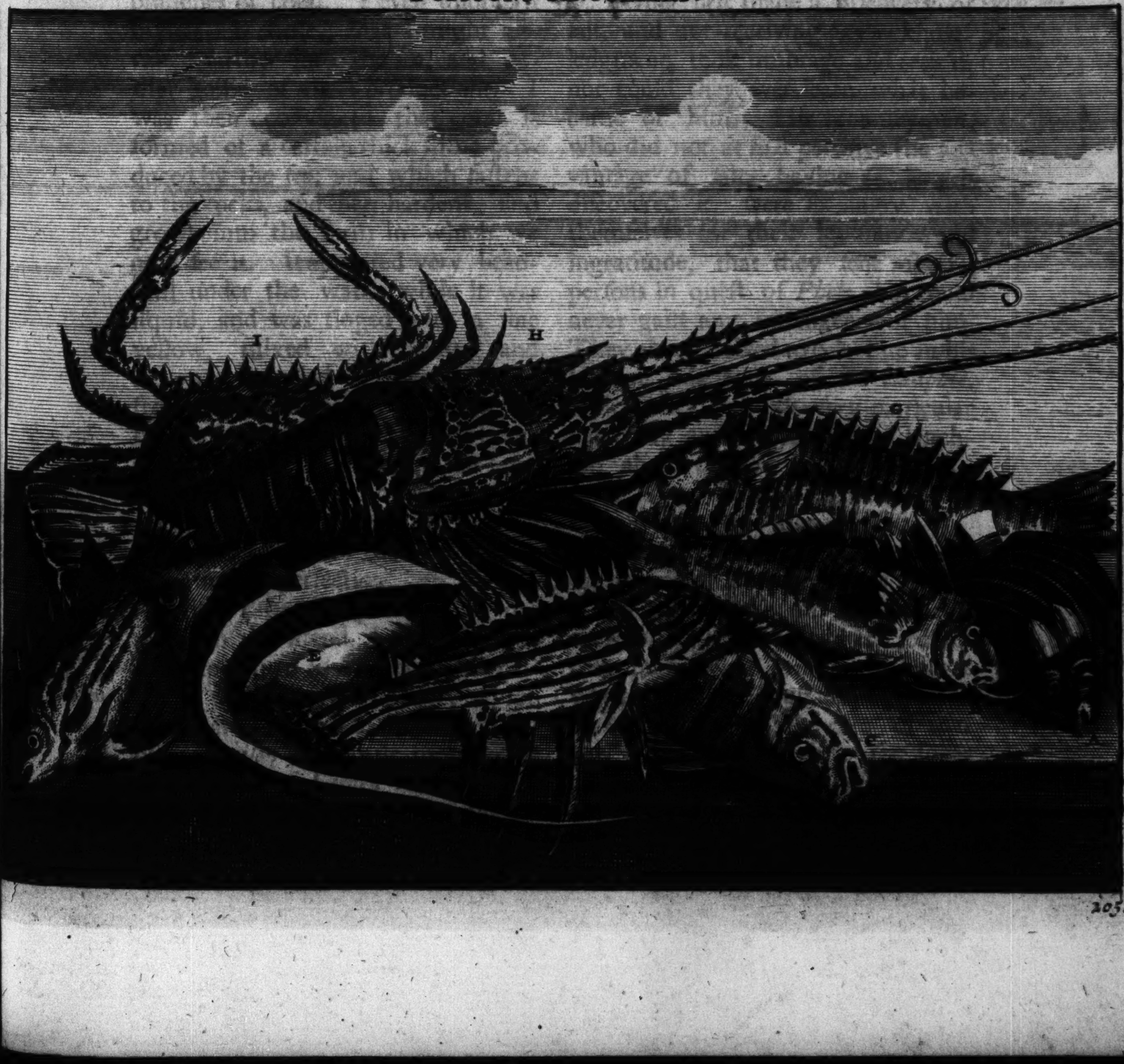
Ikam-kakatoua.

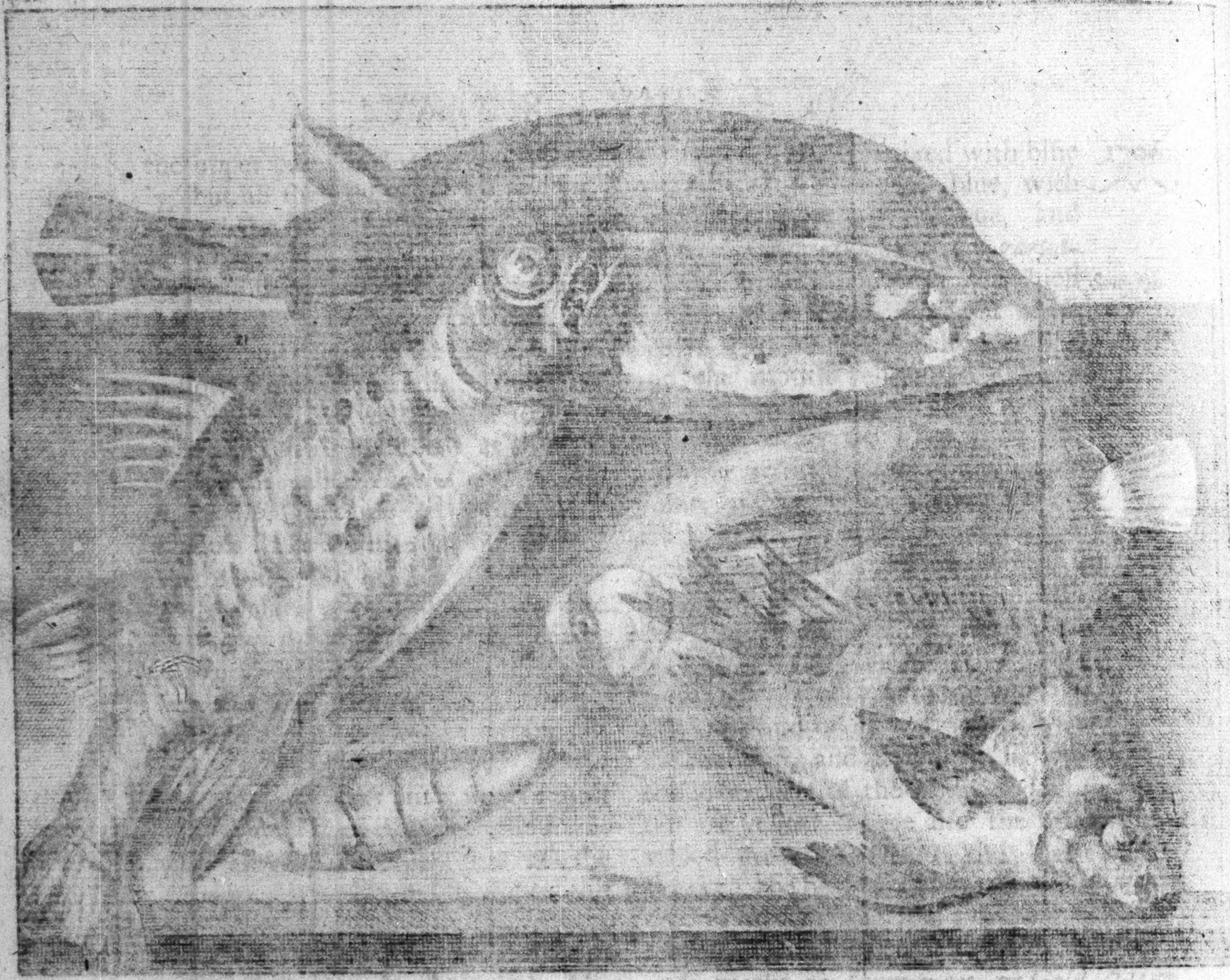
G repreſents an *Ikam-kakatoua*, ſo called from a bird of the ſame name and colour: It is of a tranſparent bluiſh green, and has ſeveral reddiſh ſpots, which reſemble net-work, and a yellow ſpot on each ſide the head, which is red and green: The fin upon the back is of a fine green, intermixed with blue and yellow; thoſe on the ſides are green and blue like varniſh, and that which is under the body has a yellow caſt. I omitted taking notice that the cray-fiſh I mentioned before was all green, except the tip of the head, which was red, as were alſo the two large horns which come out of it, and are four inches long, and three quarters of an inch in breadth; at the extremity of theſe are two other horns, which are a foot and ſeven inches long, and likewiſe another pair, which are but

Poissons Singuliers.

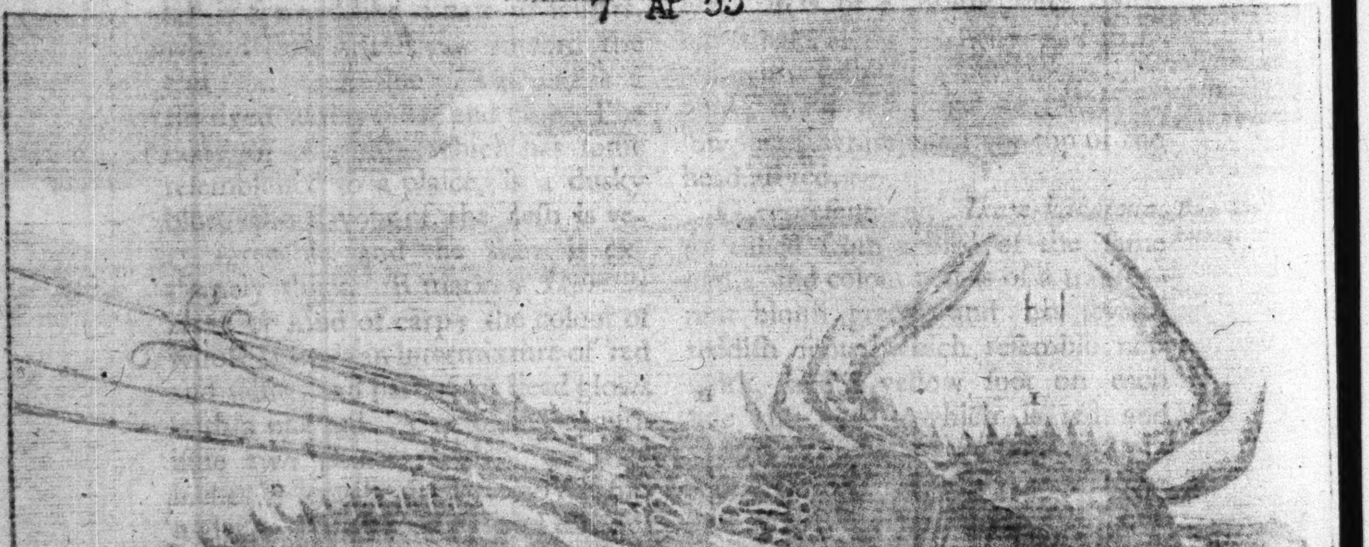


Poissons Singuliers.





7 AP 53



half as long as the former, and are contorted at the end, one being white, and the other almoſt entirely black. This cray-fiſh had all the upper part of his body full of black and white ſpots and ſtreaks, as well as the tail, and two large yellow and white ſtreaks upon the ſides: The feet were long and pliant, and finely ſtreak'd with green, black, yellow, and white. It was a foot and five inches in length; but there are ſome of a ſmaller ſize, and they afford an admirable reliſh. I painted all theſe fiſhes from the life, and have preſerved ſome of them in ſpirits. This cray-fiſh is repreſented at the letter H, and the crab at I. I found alſo ſome flying inſects in this iſland, and among the reſt ſeveral butterflies. But they have nothing ſingular in them.

As I commonly accompanied the fiſhers, when the weather was fine, and as the water is ſo clear and tranſparent, that one may ſee the bottom, I found ſeveral ſhort branches of coral. I even undreſs'd myſelf ſometimes, that I might advance farther into the ſea, and gather ſome of theſe productions. I was then convinced that coral is formed of a certain thick ſlime produced by the ſea, and which faſtens to the rocks, and then hardens, and grows into the form in which we now ſee it. It appeared very beautiful under the water while it was liquid, and was tinged with a fine yellow, mixed with white and brown; I pulled off ſeveral pieces from the rocks in that condition, in hopes they would preſerve their beauty and colour by drying in the ſun; but the event proved otherwiſe, and they changed to a deep dirty brown; nor could I attain to the art of drying them in any perfection.

The iſles of Alcmaer, Enkhuiſen, *and* Leiden.

After I had diſpatched all my affairs in this iſland, I embarked, in order to return to *Batavia*, and paſſed by the iſland of *Alcmaer*, which lies neareſt to that of *Edam*. That of *Enkhuiſen* lies a little more to the ſouth, that of *Leiden* in the midway, and that of *Hoorn* over-againſt this laſt. This is inhabited by fiſhermen, and the iſle of *Smith* lies on one ſide of it toward the ſouth. As the wind was fair for us, I arrived in a ſhort time at *Batavia*.

Of Hoorn *and* Smith.

At my return I took a walk with our governor-general through the city, to ſee ſome new buildings, which he had lately cauſed to be erected; and in the way thither I obſerved green boughs upon the houſes of the *Chineſe*, which were ſhut that day, by reaſon of the feaſt of *Phelonaphie*, which they celebrated at that time.

The feaſt of Phelonaphie *among the* Chineſe.

I had before obſerved in the port, ſeveral neat barks full of *Chineſe*, who were all in motion on account of the feaſt; the origin of which is as follows.

The *Chineſe* have a particular regard for thoſe who have ſignalized themſelves in the ſervice of their country, or made any diſcoveries advantageous to the publick, and celebrate their memory after their death. A certain man, called *Phelo*, having firſt made a diſcovery of ſalt, and not receiving any acknowledgment, took umbrage and retir'd, nor could they ever learn what became of him. His countrymen, who did not at firſt perceive the advantage of ſalt, having at length diſcovered it, were ſo angry with themſelves for their ignorance and ingratitude, that they ſent ſeveral perſons in queſt of *Phelo*, but could never gain any intelligence of him. They then reſolved to celebrate in his honour this feaſt of *Phelonaphie*, which they do with very particular ſolemnity and devotion, by lanching about the ſea in ſeveral barks, as if they were in expectation of finding that great man.

The diſcovery of ſalt by one Phelo.

A plantation of Mr. Kaſtelein.

Soon after Mr. *Kaſtelein* invited me to one of his plantations, where I ſaw them make all the preparations of ſugar. He had erected for that purpoſe a mill, which was worked by two buffalos. A man was ſtationed to take care of that part of the mill where the ſugar canes were depoſited; and which in the firſt working are only bruiſed, and

A ſugar-mill.

and then drawn through an aperture on the other ſide. The juice flows into a well, and paſſes from thence thro' a ſubterranean gutter to the place where the ſugar-pots are, and the boilers. At the ſecond operation a larger quantity of ſugar is drawn out of theſe canes; and the reſt at the third. It is then boiled and poured into earthen pots peirc'd thro', in order to diſcharge the groſſer particles; and the mouth of the pots are ſtrongly cloſed up with freſh clay. This is the firſt and beſt part of the ſugar. They afterward draw out a ſecond juice, and then a third: I found the ſugar-canes were like thoſe I had ſeen in *Egypt*, being about ſeven or eight feet in length, and three or four inches thick.

Indigo.

This place likewiſe furniſhed me with the ſight of indigo, which grows on ſmall ſhrubs, that have ſeveral little branches twined together. They commonly ſhoot up to the height of a foot and a half from the ground, and the leaves, which are preſſed in order to extract the indigo, are ſmall. The ſeed grows in long and ſlender cluſters, agreeably to the repreſentation in plate 206.

Coffee.

The letter B exhibits a branch of the *Kauwa*, or the pods which contain the berries of coffee, which are green before they have attained their maturity; yellow when half ripe, and of a reddiſh violet colour when their growth is completed. The flower very much reſembles that of *Jeſſamine*, having ſix long pointed leaves, which are yellow in the middle. Theſe pods were brought from *Arabia* ſome years ſince; but the beſt plants were deſtroyed in 1697, by an earthquake, which ſhook the whole city of *Batavia*, and overturned all the gardens around it, in ſo deſtructive a manner, that nothing was left in the general's garden. But ſome curious people having afterward diſcovered a few ſhoots of this plant, were induſtrious to cultivate it anew, and ſucceeded ſo effectually, that there is reaſon to believe theſe plants will be rendered very numerous in a few years. Thoſe perſons therefore are very much deceived, who imagine that this fruit grows in no country but *Arabia*, and that the trees which produce it cannot be cultivated in any other climates.

Leaves of a wild tree which grows in the woods.

At the letter C the reader will find a repreſentation of the leaves of a wild plant which grows in the woods: Some of theſe leaves are red, others white; but the plant bears only one red flower. The three branches which are there exhibited, are almoſt as large as they appear in their natural ſize. Here is likewiſe a growth of cocoa, of which chocolate is made. This fruit has a charming appearance on the tree: It is red and yellow, and one often ſees five or ſix of them one above another, and about ſix inches in length. The leaves are large, and long; ſome of them are tinged with yellow, others with red. The tree itſelf is repreſented in plate 207.

Cocoa.

Citrons of China.

I likewiſe obſerved a growth of *China* citrons, ſhaped in a peculiar manner, and ſhooting out ſeveral points. They have ſome reſemblance to thoſe which I have deſcribed in that part of the firſt volume of theſe travels which treats of *Rama*, but they are not ſo large. This fruit has not any kernels, and is of a beautiful yellow. It flouriſhes to great perfection in this ſoil, and is exhibited in plate 208.

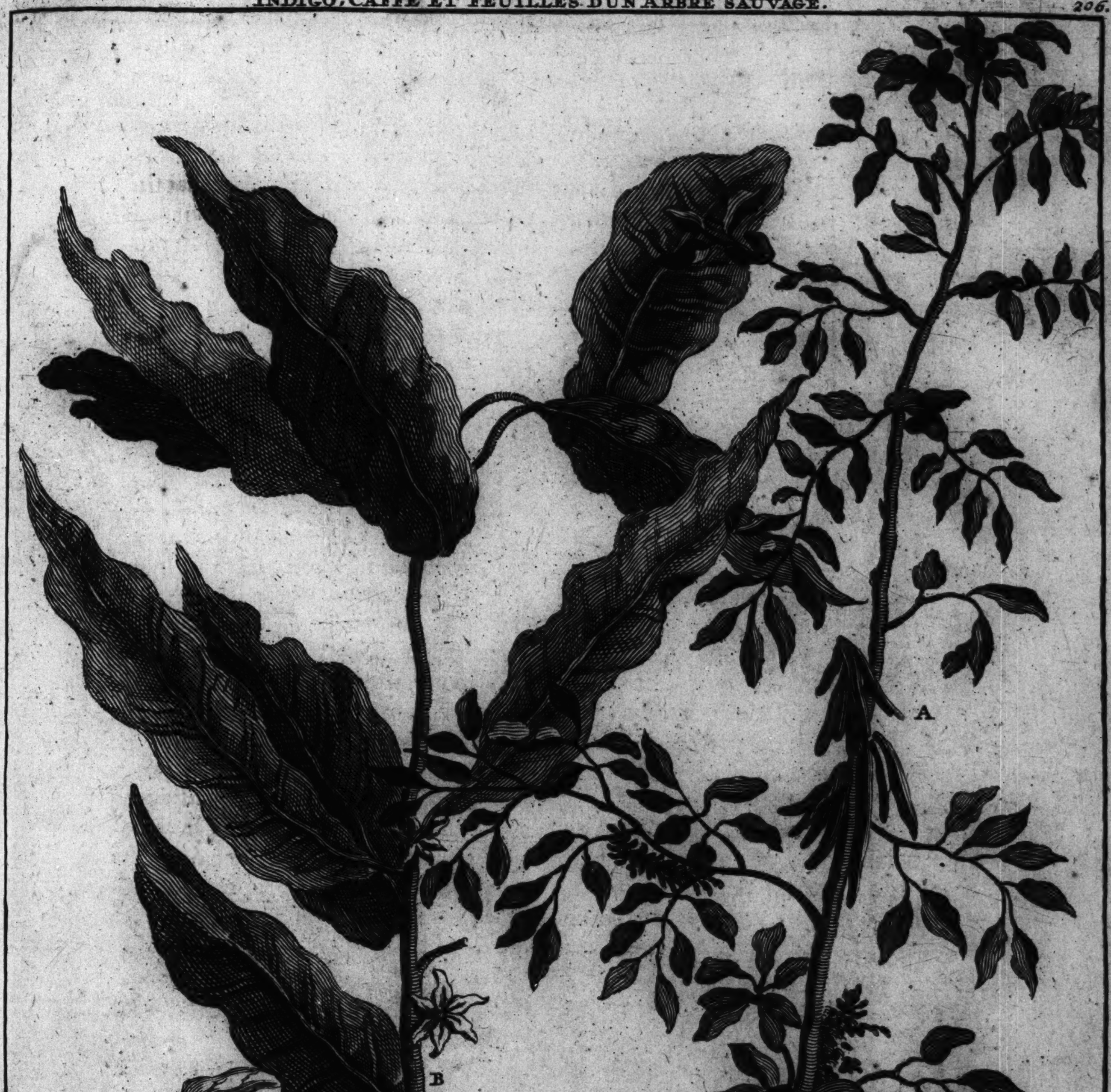
Jaka.

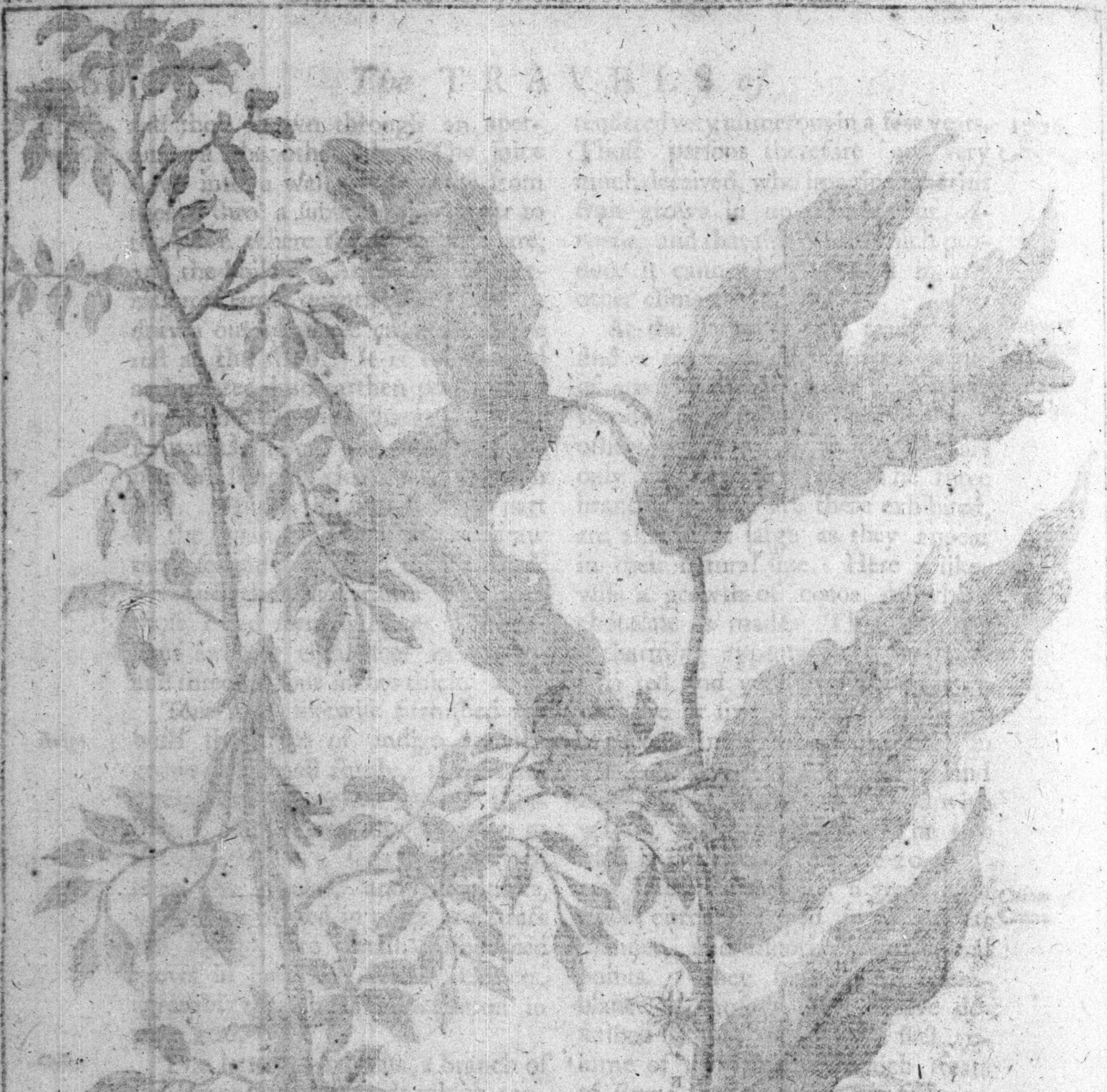
I ſaw likewiſe another fruit, which the *Portugueſe* call *Jaka*; the *Indians Nanka*, and the *Dutch Soorſaeke*. It is very large, and ſomething like a bagpipe; the colour is of a reddiſh green before it is ripe, but it changes to a duſky, as it advances to its maturity. This fruit incloſes ſeveral other large fruits of a yellow complexion, and which contain white kernels. As the flavour of it is ſweet, it pleaſes moſt people, and is reckoned very wholſome. Two of them are repreſented on a tree, in plate 209.

Namnam,

There is alſo another fruit called *Namnam* by the *Portugueſe*, and *Poekie anſjeng* by the *Indians*. The

INDIGO, CAFFÉ ET FEUILLES D'UN ARBRE SAUVAGE.

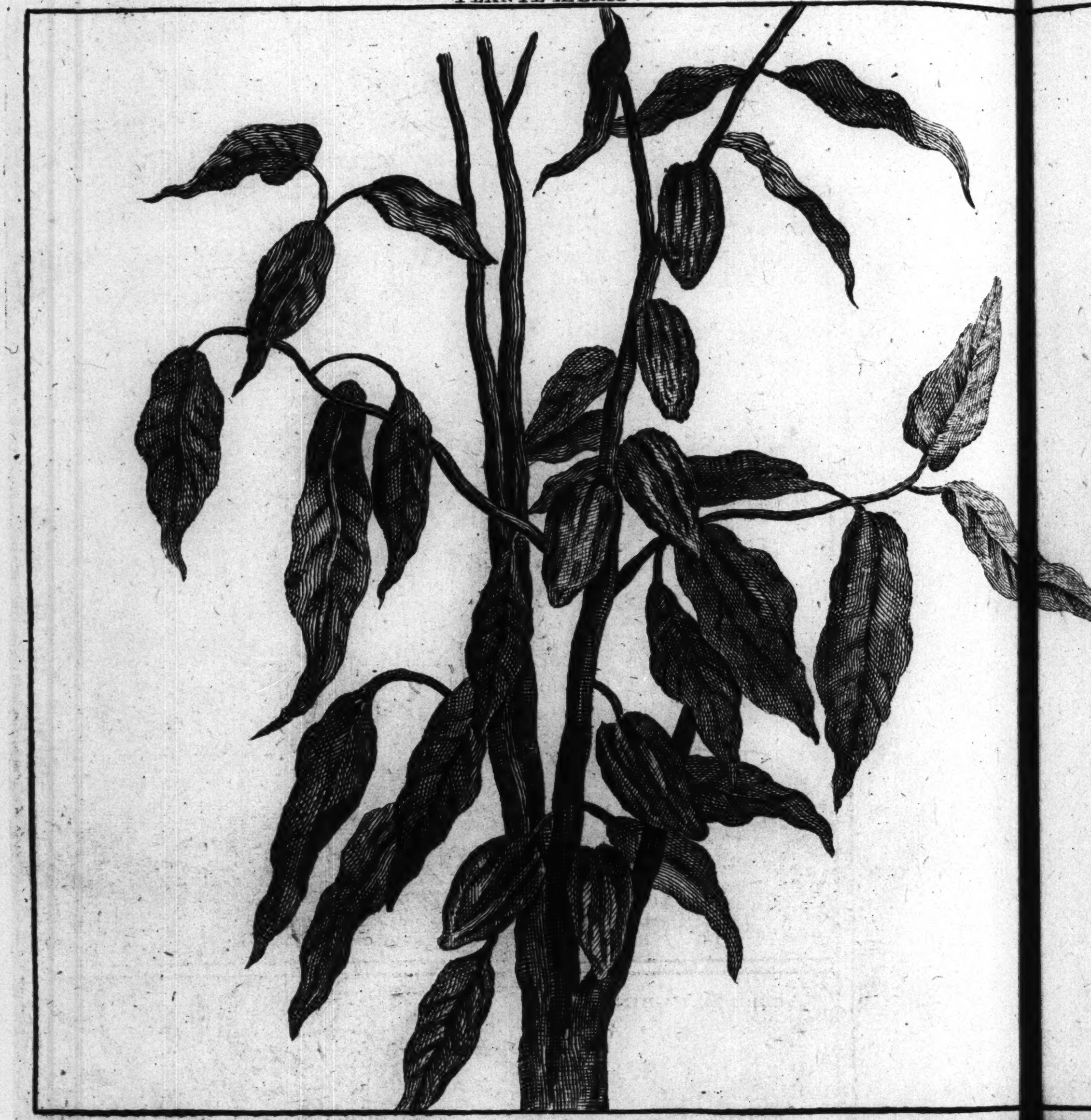




7 AP 53

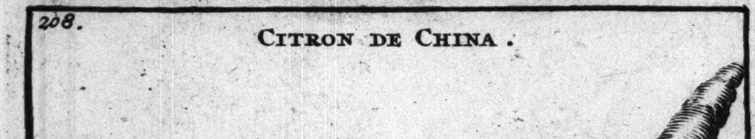
7 AP 53

PLANTE KAKAO.



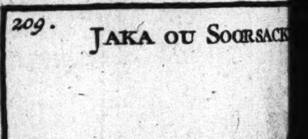
208.

CITRON DE CHINA.



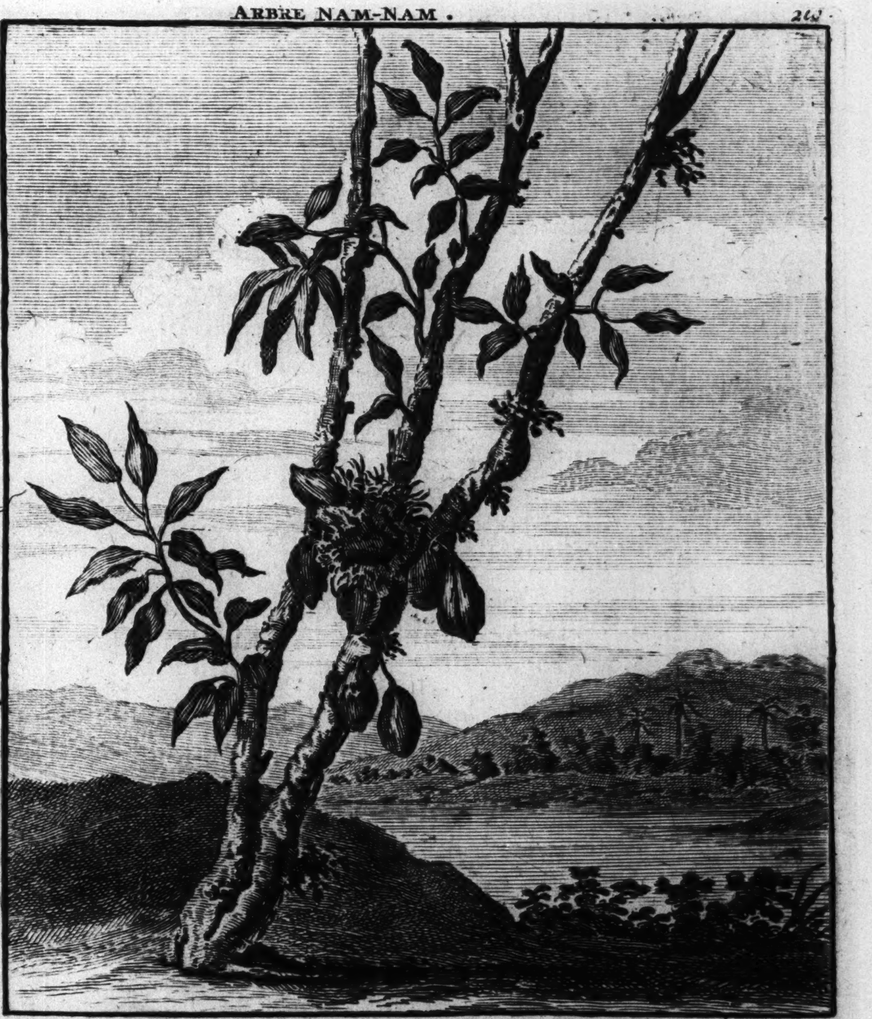
209.

JAKA OU SOORSACK



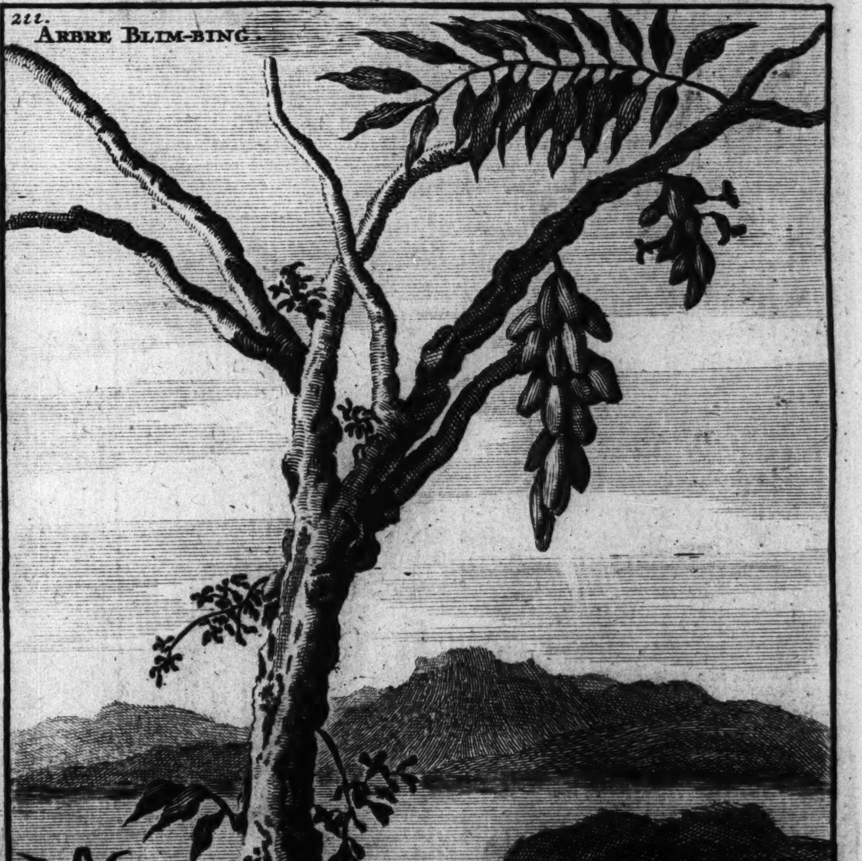
210.

ARBRE NAM-NAM.



211.

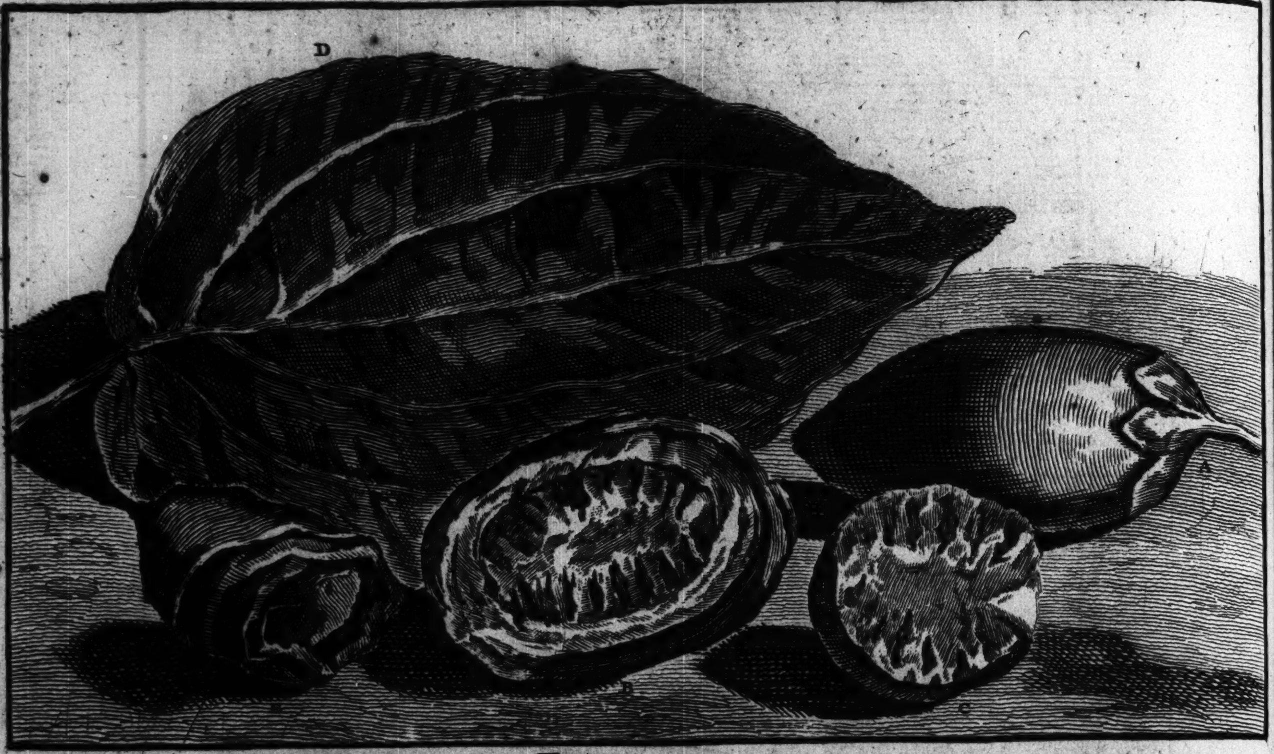
ARBRE BLIM-BING.



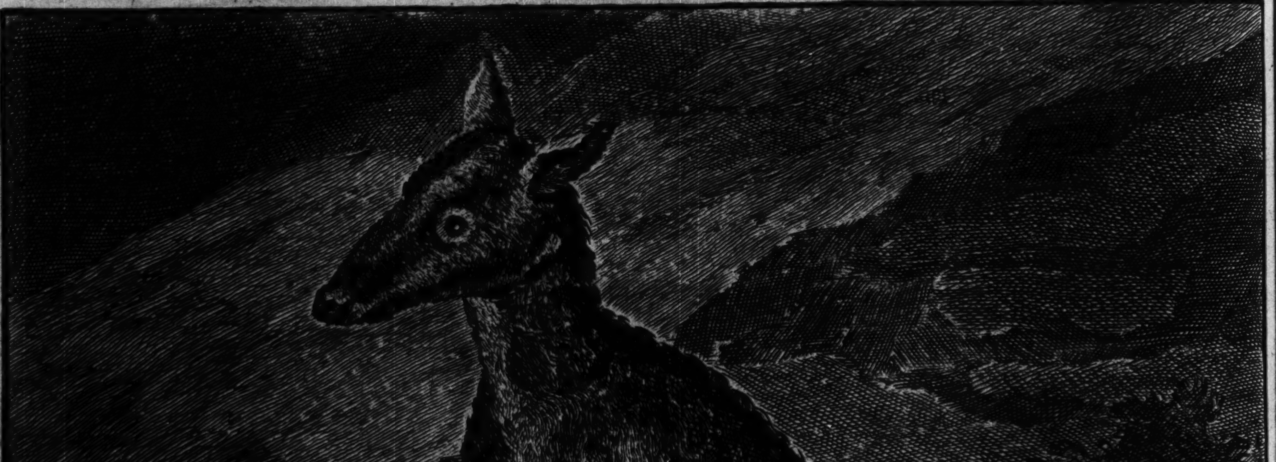
7 AP 53

7 AP 53

L' AREEK & FEUILLES DE BETEL. 212.



FILANDER. 213.



taſte of it is agreeable; it is likewiſe coloured with a greyiſh yellow, and greatly reſembles a pear. The flower is red, yellow, and white, and grows in cluſters; the leaf and form of it are repreſented in plate 210. The *Blimbing* is alſo a plant, the fruit of which is large, and long: Its flavour reſembles that of a gooſberry, and the flower of it is red. Where any perſon has corroded his mouth, with vinegar, or any other acid, he cannot have a better remedy than this fruit, which is repreſented on a tree in plate 211.

Areek. The *Areek* is a fruit which grows in thick bunches, on a large high tree, the bark of which is very thin, and the leaves long. It is of univerſal uſe, not only with the natives of the country, but alſo among ſtrangers. It is ſhaped like a plumb, and grows yellow in ripening. I have repreſented one of them mark'd with A in plate 212: Another, which is ripe, with B, and half a one without the outward rind. They divide this half into ſeven or eight parts, which they wrap up in the leaves of *Betel*, rubb'd with a red of *Siam*, or elſe with white lime. This is chewed till the ſaliva becomes as red as blood; and this they pretend is an excellent remedy to preſerve the teeth and gums. But I could never be prevailed upon to uſe it, finding ſomething very diſagreeable in the flavour; beſide which it often happens, that thoſe who are not accuſtomed to it, find themſelves indiſpoſed, and faint away; though theſe circumſtances never happen but when they take a bad ſort. This leaf of *Betel* grows like thoſe of *French* beans, and the reader will find ſome of them repreſented at the letter D. It is commonly of a dark grey; but there are ſome of a green tincture, and theſe are the beſt. The manner of wrapping this fruit in the leaf may be ſeen at the letter E.

Filanders. When I was at our general's country ſeat, I ſaw a certain animal called *Filander*, which has ſomething very extraordinary in it. There were ſeveral that ran looſe with rabbits, and had their holes under a ſmall hill, encompaſſed with a rail. This animal which I have repreſented in plate 213, has its hind leggs much longer than the fore, and has the ſame ſkin as a large hare. It has a head like a fox, and a pointed tail; but what is moſt extraordinary in it is, that it has a bag under its belly; into which the young ones retreat even when they are very large. One may frequently ſee their heads and necks extended out of the bag, but when the dam runs, the young are not viſible, but keep at the bottom of the bag, becauſe ſhe leaps very much in her ſpeed. Some days after I went to ſee a review of a company of *Bougis*, in preſence of the governor and the general *de Wilde*. The officers firſt ſaluted them, and then fixed their pikes in the ground, and drew their daggers, with which they performed ſeveral exerciſes, crying out at the ſame time with loud voices, that they would kill all enemies that would preſume to confront them. They afterward, to ſhew their vigour and addreſs, made ſeveral motions with their bodies, which were more like contorſions of wreſtlers, than an exerciſe of military men. They likewiſe found themſelves animated with freſh ardour by being well ſhod, inſtead of which they were formerly accuſtomed to go barefooted. The airs they gave themſelves in their march, were ſufficient to create a hearty laughter, and the general *de Wilde* could not help ſaying to me, *They give money among us to ſee comedies and farces, but can there poſſibly be a more diverting ſight than this?*

Bougis.

Their habits. The ſoldiers were all habited in different manners: Some had large bonnets, ſmall waiſtcoats, and ſhort breeches; others had hats with broad brims made of the bark of certain plants twiſted together. There were ſome, who had bonnets in the form of ſugar-loaves, others who had only a cloth twiſted round their heads: Some had machines on each ſide their heads, like gilded horns, which formed a very ridiculous ſpectacle: Some were even covered with armour; they were likewiſe armed with firelocks, daggers, and pikes, longer than thoſe of the officers, who had all piſtols at their girdles.

Their arms.

While theſe were employ'd in performing their exerciſes, there paſſed by ſome other companies of ſoldiers, who were to take their arms, in order to embark in ſome veſſels deſigned for the kingdom of *Samaran*, upon the eaſtern coaſt of the iſle of *Java*, about ſixty leagues from *Batavia*, under the government of king *Pangeran Poega*, who had been depoſed by his nephew, and afterwards re-eſtabliſhed by the company's forces. And as *Ade-Patti*, the nephew of that prince, had eſcaped, and endeavoured to create his uncle freſh troubles, theſe troops were ſent in purſuit of him.

The governor having informed me ſoon after, that a veſſel would ſhortly ſet ſail for *Bantam*, which I was deſirous to viſit, I embraced that opportunity, and he was ſo good as to give me letters of recommendation to the governor of that place; and likewiſe to the adminiſtrator of the company.

CHAP. LXVIII.

The author's voyage to Bantam. *A deſcription of that kingdom. The author is admitted to an audience of the king.*

The author's voyage to Bantam.

THE 11th of *July*, after I had taken my leave of the general, I went on board the *Munſter*, a veſſel of twenty ſix guns, and ſixty ſeven ſailors, all *Europeans*, with a reſerve of ten *Indians*; and we advanced about noon, into the latitude of the iſle of *Hoorn*. As the wind ſtood fair, we preſently after paſſed by thoſe of *Amſterdam*, and *Middlebourg*, which lay ſouth between two rocks, that are about ſix or ſeven feet under water; and are always viſible, by reaſon of the clearneſs of the water.

The iſlands of Hoorn, Amſterdam, *and* Middlebourg.

We advanced weſtward toward the iſles of *Combuis*, which we ſaw on the right, and found ourſelves about five o'clock near the iſle of * *Anthropophagi*, four leagues from *Bantam*. The night, which was very dark, obliged us to caſt anchor, but we continued our courſe at break of day, in cloudy damp weather. We doubled the point of *Pontang* at eight o'clock, and coaſted along the great *Poelemadi*, which we had on the right, and a little after by a ſmall iſland of the ſame name, where we found but four fathom water; and after having touched at the iſles of *Poeledoa*, we came about ten into the road of *Bantam*, and about noon to the city. I went directly to the houſe of the commander, Monſieur *de Rheede*, who received me with a great deal of civility, as alſo did Monſieur de *Wys*, adminiſtrator of the company.

Of Combuis.

**Men-eaters.*

Iſle of Poelemadi.

Poeledoa.

I took a walk the next day with an intention to take a view of the city both within and without, in order to which I went out by the water-gate, where there is always an advanced guard. It is a ſmall gate of the old wall, near the point or baſtion of *Speelwick* toward the north; and from thence I proceeded along the ſea-ſhore, by a way which is often floated over with water when the tide is high, and it was then ſo wet that I was obliged to ſtrike into another road bordered with trees between ſeveral gardens.

A deſcription of Bantam.

I ſaw a range of wretched houſes, covered with leaves, and inhabited by fiſhermen, who go to *Batavia* to ſell their fiſh. The firſt place one meets with in this quarter, is the baſtion of *Caranganto*, rebuilt with ſtone in a ſquare form, with a battery of ten pieces of cannon. There are ſix other baſtions on the ſide next the ſea, another toward the eaſt, and three ſmall ones toward the weſt. From thence there is a paſſage over a draw-bridge, and another of ſtone, under which runs a river that derives its ſource from the mountains, and diſcharges itſelf into the ſea. It flows at the extremety of the city, on the ſide next the ſea, and near the *Bazar*, which is full of *Chineſe* ſhops, where fruits, and other proviſions are ſold. On one ſide of the *Bazar* is a large *Chineſe* building, where the captain or chief of that nation lives; and on the ſea-ſhore are erected a great number of fiſhermen's huts, and ſome ſalt-houſes. The *Dutch* landed near this place on the 7th of *April* 1682. In the way as one returns back, a road is ſtruck out between the two baſtions of *Caranganto* and *Speelwick*, to the Palace, where a ſtone bridge is built over the river already mentioned. The king commonly diverts himſelf the laſt day of the week with running at the ring in this place, and over the bridge, with the lords of his court: The great moſque called *Mit-zid*, is at the end of this bridge on the right hand.

The author demands audience of the king.

I was informed at my return, that they had already weighed and counted out the pepper money, which the veſſel in which I came was to carry to *Perſia*; and that the prime miniſter of ſtate was to go at four o'clock to the commander's houſe to receive it. I took this opportunity to deſire that miniſter to introduce me to the king; and as our commander had already told him (in purſuance of the order he had received from the general) that I was greatly deſirous of the honour of paying my duty to that prince: He aſſured me, that he would not fail to repreſent my requeſt to his majeſty that very day, and return me his anſwer as ſoon as poſſible. That lord, who was named *Pangeran*, prince of *Pour-ba-nagara*, was accompanied by ten inſpectors of pepper, and he ſeated himſelf in a chair between the commander and chief inſpector of the barriers. The others were placed on the contrary ſide, after the manner of the orientals. He came by water to *Speelwick*, attended by ſixteen domeſtics. The commander entertained them with confections, and fruits, accompanied with bread, cheeſe, tea, and tobacco. They afterward counted the money, and ſealed it up in bags of 1000 *Spaniſh* rials. The commander then took the prime miniſter by the hand, and conducted him as far as the river. The next day about nine o'clock the chief inſpector of the barriers came to acquaint me, that I ſhould be admitted to an audience of the king at two in the afternoon, and that his majeſty was gone for that purpoſe to a pleaſure-houſe, which he had about a quarter of a league from the city. He aſked me, if I would accept a horſe, or chooſe to go on foot, upon which I thanked him, and gave him to underſtand, that I preferred walking. He came to me at the appointed hour, and we were attended by M. *Kaeſ*, who had been the company's reſident at *Bantam*, before they had poſſeſſed themſelves of that place, and had returned thither about three months, in order to tranſact ſome negotiations, by virtue of which he was admitted to the audience with me. We were likewiſe attended by a ſecretary, who was to be our interpreter. We found at the gate of the city four led horſes, which the king had ſent us, but we did not uſe them. The prime miniſter waited for us at the entrance into the palace, in order to introduce us to his majeſty; and we proceeded by a ſtone conduit raiſed about two or three feet above the ſurface of the ground, in which is a leaden pipe, which extends from the pleaſure-houſe, where the king then was, as far as his palace. This conduit had been made about two years, and is ſupplied with water from the mountains, which riſe at the diſtance of about two leagues from thence; and this water diſcharges itſelf into a river, which flows through the country. It was three o' clock when we arrived there; and after we had waited ſome time, a lady of the court came to acquaint us we might enter. We ſaw, as we were paſſing along, one of the king's lodges, in which ſtood three coaches, the drivers of which were *Hollanders*, who were habited in ſcarlet after the *Dutch* manner.

His arrival at one of the king's pleaſure-houſes.

When we had paſſed over a wooden bridge, railed on each ſide, we entered by a ſmall door into a veſtible, where the king was ſeated on a couch, on the ſide of which were five or ſix ordinary chairs. He tendered his hand to us, and received us in a very favourable manner; after which he ordered us to ſit down, which I accordingly did, after having paid him my compliments. The prince was ſeated at the upper end of a table, and we placed ourſelves on each ſide of him, and were immediately ſerved with confections, fruits, and other refreſhments; after which tea, tobacco, and pipes were brought to us upon ſilver ſalvers, with two lighted candles. Some time after we were entertained with hot proviſions, ſuch as *Pilau*, ragouts, chickens, roaſt-meat, and fruits; together with hard eggs, and radiſhes cut into ſlices. Every one had his napkin, and a plate filled with meat. What appeared to me moſt extraordinary was a large diſh full of a particular food, which reſembled ſtarch, and ſlices of pears, the taſte of which I found to be admirable; but as for liquor, we had nothing but water, which was poured out of a beaker, as well for drinking as waſhing of hands.

Is admitted to the king's preſence.

Nothing ſurpriſed me more than our being ſerved by none but women: The prime miniſter was ſeated on the ground, at the lower end of the table, with his legs croſſed after the manner of the eaſtern people. His wife ſerved at table, like the others, and even I had the honour to be waited upon by that lady. Monſieur *Kaef* was ſeated on the right hand of the king, and ſerved by three or four women of the firſt rank. There were others behind him, ſeated on the ground, and among the reſt one who held a firelock in her hand; her companion graſped a ſmall pike, and a third held the king's cane, varniſhed with black, with a ſilver apple. They roſe from time to time, as I ſhall afterward relate more at large.

Behind theſe were five or ſix of the king's youngeſt ſons, from three to ſix years of age, all very beautiful, and of a tolerable good complexion. This prince had no children by his firſt conſort, but had eight by his ſecond, who was his couſin german, and the widow of his brother, who had no children by her. The eldeſt is about thirteen years old, and the king has ſeveral other children by his third wife. This numerous off-ſpring did not prevent him from eſpouſing a fourth, who has not the title of queen. This prince has likewiſe forty concubines, and 850 women who wait upon him in his palace.

Fifteen or ſixteen ladies were behind theſe young princes, and three or four other companies of women appeared in the veſtible; ſo that above 200 of them were then in motion. All of them had their necks uncovered; their arms and legs were likewiſe naked; a kind of petticoat was faſtened to their waiſt, and a ſmall piece of linnen above their boſom; their hair was alſo plaited back on the top of their heads.

The habit of the king.

The king wore that day a ſmall bonnet about five inches deep, the white borders of which were about an inch in breadth; the reſt was of a violet colour. His veſt was ſhaped after the *Turkiſh* faſhion; it was likewiſe of a brown colour, and the buttons of it were ſilver. It was girded about him with a ſmall ſaſh of a violet colour, the ends of which hung down before. He likewiſe wore a dagger ſtudded with gold; his legs were naked, but he had red ſlippers after the *Dutch* faſhion.

When the diſhes were removed from table, the king offered us tobacco, and asked me, if I had an inclination to take any: I anſwered in the affirmative, but added, that I could do very well without it. I alſo took the liberty to ask, whether the king ſmoked, and they anſwered yes, but that it was very moderately. He then enquired of me, if I would ſmoke provided he did? To which I reply'd, that this would be too much honour for me. He asked me likewiſe, if I had any tobacco? becauſe he thought mine might be better than his own. As I happened to be provided with ſome, I filled a pipe, and had the honour to preſent it to that prince, who ſmoked half of it, and then gave the reſt to his ſecretary, who had none.

His affability.

This prince, who is very affable and curious, asked me ſeveral queſtions concerning the countries thro' which I had paſſed, and the moſt remarkable things I had ſeen. In particular, he enquired, who were the moſt powerful kings on earth; what was the extent of their dominions, what the manners of the inhabitants, and which were the largeſt and moſt famous rivers in the world? I then related to him all the particulars of the *Nile* and *Wolga*, which I had meaſured both at their ſources and outlets, and afterward gave him a deſcription of ſeveral other rivers.

In ſpeaking of the world in general, he asked me how long the *Chriſtians* thought it had ſubſiſted, and how much longer they believed it would continue? To which I returned him the beſt anſwers I was able to make. The king took ſuch pleaſure in my replies, and the other particulars with which I had the honour to acquaint him, that he deſired me to tranſmit them to him in writing from *Batavia*, and I accordingly promiſed to obey him.

The king informed me, in his turn, that all the inhabitants of that country were formerly pagans, and that it was about three hundred years ſince they embraced the doctrines of *Mohammed*, at the ſolicitation of one of his anceſtors, whoſe name was *Soeſoehoenan Aboel Machaſin*, who was reckoned a ſaint by the people, and to whoſe empire they ſubmitted themſelves. He then converſed with me about *Turky*, the *Holy-Land*, and *Jeruſalem*. He alſo cauſed a *Turkiſh* merchant of *Bethlehem*, to be introduced, whom chance had brought into that part of the world, after he had loſt all his cargo at ſea.

We had a long converſation together, with which the king was ſo well ſatisfied, that he often ſhook me by the hand. He deſired me likewiſe to viſit him again the next day at nine in the morning in his palace, and to bring with me the journal of my firſt voyage, for I am informed, ſays he, that your book is in the hands of Mr. *de Wys*. He then turned to Mr. *Kaeſ*, and told him, that he had no need to give himſelf the trouble to come again, for the letters which he was to carry to *Batavia* ſhould be delivered to him the next day, and that he might depart immediately after.

The king conducted me into every part of his pleaſure-houſe, which conſiſted of three ſtories, each containing a variety of apartments. He likewiſe informed me of his ſentiments, with relation to the grandees of ſtates, and the counſellors of princes; and in what manner they ought to be rewarded, or puniſhed. He highly extolled virtue and fidelity, and added, that a prince could never ſufficiently repay the ſervices of his ſubjects; and whenever they committed any faults, to which human nature is obnoxious, it was incumbent on princes to pardon them, in conſideration of their paſt ſervices; and that inſtead of uſing violent remedies, every circumſtance ſhould be ſoftened as much as poſſible. He added, that kings ought not to ſuffer themſelves to be ſwayed by their paſſions, nor to act with precipitancy and inconſideration. To which he ſubjoined, that he was not ignorant of the miſchief which jealouſy occaſions in courts. I afterward took the liberty to tell him my ſentiments, which I ſtrengthened by ſeveral examples drawn from hiſtory and the antients.

Situation of the king's pleaſure-houſe.

The ſituation of the houſe where we then were, is charming as well on the land ſide, as on that next the ſea; and it is likewiſe ſurrounded with a beautiful canal, the bottom of which is paved. While the king conducted me from place to place, and diſcourſed with me in the manner I have related, he was attended by the ladies armed as I have already deſcribed. As the night drew on, I took my leave of his majeſty.

We found three coaches at the gate, in one of which the king deſired me to place myſelf. He then mounted his horſe, with three or four of the young princes, and the ladies of the court placed themſelves in the other coaches. I was informed that queen *Ratoe-anoem* was among them, and that ſhe diverted herſelf with fiſhing with the women of her train, while we were with the king. The other women returned on foot, every one loaded with baggage. There were likewiſe two hundred guards armed with pikes, who followed the king. Thoſe who are neareſt his perſon are called *Kajorans*, and the others *Souranagaras*. All the ſubjects of this prince are *Javanites*, and the ſtrangers who reſide in his dominions are *Malayans*, *Makaſſares*, and *Baliers*. When they are not in his ſervice, they are obliged to retire out of the way while he paſſes with his women, after the manner of the orientals. We arrived by night at the caſtle, where we took leave of his majeſty, and were conducted to our habitations with two large lanthorns.

The author takes leave of his majeſty.

CHAP. LXIX.

The author is admitted into the King's preſence a ſecond time. Comic dancers. He takes leave of the King. The language of the Javanites. *Their worſhip. The Origin of the Kings of* Bantam.

A ſecond audience.

I Failed not to go the next day at the appointed hour, with ſecretary *Gobius*, to the prime miniſter's houſe, in order to wait there for the lady who was to conduct me to the palace. I was very much ſurpriſed at the plainneſs and ſimplicity which appeared in the houſe of that great lord. The lady, for whoſe arrival we waited, came ſoon after and conducted us to the king, whom we found upon the caſtle wall over the great gate, employed in viewing a chariot which the magiſtrates of *Batavia* had preſented to his majeſty, and it arrived there the preceding evening in a bomb-veſſel.

As ſoon as we were ſeen by that prince, he made a ſign to us to come up where he was. He was ſurrounded by women, who ſupported ſix paraſols behind him. From thence we were conducted into the hall of audience, which is ſeparate from the reſt of the building. This hall was alſo full of women, among whom were three dancers, the principal of whom was perfectly beautiful, and dreſſed in a very elegant and ſingular manner. There was here alſo, as on the foregoing day, a large table covered; at the upper end of which the king placed himſelf, and ordered me to ſeat my ſelf on his right hand, and the ſecretary to ſit next me.

They preſented us at firſt with tea, and preſently after the queen appeared, and placed herſelf on the left ſide of the king. As ſoon as we ſaw her come in, the ſecretary and myſelf roſe, and made a profound reverence, but the king obliged us to ſit down again. We were afterward ſerved with ſeveral ſorts of proviſions, and among the reſt, a plate of *Dutch* cheeſe, which the queen placed by me, thinking to pleaſe me, for which I teſtify'd my acknowledgment, by eating a piece of it, and likewiſe taſting of every diſh upon the table. The king, who ſaw this with pleaſure, asked me if the ſauces were to my liking, and what I thought of their manner of dreſſing their meat, to which I anſwered, that I thought every thing exceeding good, and that I could not give a better proof of that opinion, than by eating as I did. The king ſmil'd, and ſeemed contented. Then the dancers began to exerciſe themſelves. The queen *Ratoe-Anoen*, who is the ſecond of his majeſty's wives, and the moſt conſiderable of them all, and whom I have already mentioned, was in the flower of her age; her perſon was very amiable and genteel; her complexion was admirable, her air majeſtic, and her behaviour perfectly agreeable and engaging. She was habited after the manner of the country, like the reſt of the ladies of the court. This princeſs returned in an hour's time, and after the tables were cleared, the king read over part of the relation of my voyage, which I had brought by his order, and explained it to him as well as time would permit. In the mean time the king ordered one of his concubines to come in, and placed her over againſt me. This lady was fat, and very fair, with fine light hair, but her cheeks were bloated, and her eyes half ſhut. She asked me of what country I took her to be; I reply'd that I did not know, but if ſhe allowed me to gueſs, I thought ſhe might be a *Ruſſian*, ſince I had ſeen ſome ladies of that country like her at *Conſtantinople*. However, I was miſtaken; for ſhe was a mountaineer of the iſles ſituated ſouth-eaſt of *Ternate*, the inhabitants of which are called *Kackerlackes*. Theſe people have a much longer night than day, and cannot bear the light of the ſun, which makes them always keep their eyes half ſhut, and they ſeldom appear in the day; this lady was ſo fat that one could hardly ſee her eyes. The king then ordered ſix of his children to be brought in, and they were placed upon the table, two by two in a chair, becauſe they were yet very little, and they were his majeſty's children by that queen whom I laſt mentioned. They were beautiful, and finely ſhaped, and their complexions were as white as ſnow. There were two princes and four princeſſes, the eldeſt of whom was nine years of age. At length the king asked, if I was ſatisfied with the reception he had given me, and I replied, that his majeſty had been pleaſed to honour me infinitely more than I deſerved. Upon which this prince added, *You are the firſt* European *whom I ever admitted to my hall of audience; and it is an honour which I have never granted to the counſellors of the* India *company, nor even to the commander; nor ſhould I have accorded it to you, if you had not been a ſtranger in whom I diſcover ſomething agreeable and entertaining. This I tell you with my own mouth, that you may have no reaſon to doubt of the truth of what you have now heard.* I then roſe, and made a pro-

A deſcription of the queen.

One of the king's concubines.

The king's children.

a profound reverence to his majeſty, and humbly thank'd him for all his favours, upon which he again did me the honour to preſent me his hand. The ſecretary had already told me, when the queen appeared, that it was a favour, which the king had never granted to any perſon; and that when the commander and his lady came to pay their duties to her majeſty, ſhe thought it ſufficient to receive them in an upper apartment, that princeſs never apearing before ſtrangers in publick. In the mean time we amuſed ourſelves with ſmoking, and the principal dancer began to dance. She wore a crown of gold, with a chaplet of flowers, which hung down as far as her waiſt; her head was likewiſe graced with a variety of other ornaments. She was clothed with a beautiful veſt, and a rich petticoat; her arms were all naked up to her ſhoulders, except thoſe parts of them which were ornamented with large golden bracelets. But what appeared to me moſt extraordinary, was, that ſhe had green ſpots on her cheeks, and eye-brows of the ſame colour. Her dance conſiſted in certain movements of the body which bended forward to her waiſt, without any air, or agreeableneſs; and ſhe advanced very ſlowly, and almoſt without moving her arms. She afterward took two drawn daggers, one of which ſhe placed with the point toward her throat, continually dancing with ſurpriſing gravity. The other dancers had black ſpots like flies, upon their faces; and all their habits conſiſted only of a veſt, with drawers over their ſhifts. They performed a comic ſcene, and acquitted themſelves with great perfection. One repreſented a *Dutchman*, and the other, who had ſome ſmattering of our language, complained that he gave to others what was juſtly her due. She gave herſelf a variety of airs, and made a thouſand grimaces, and motions that were not very decent, with a ſurpriſing agility, which raiſed the laughter of the whole company.

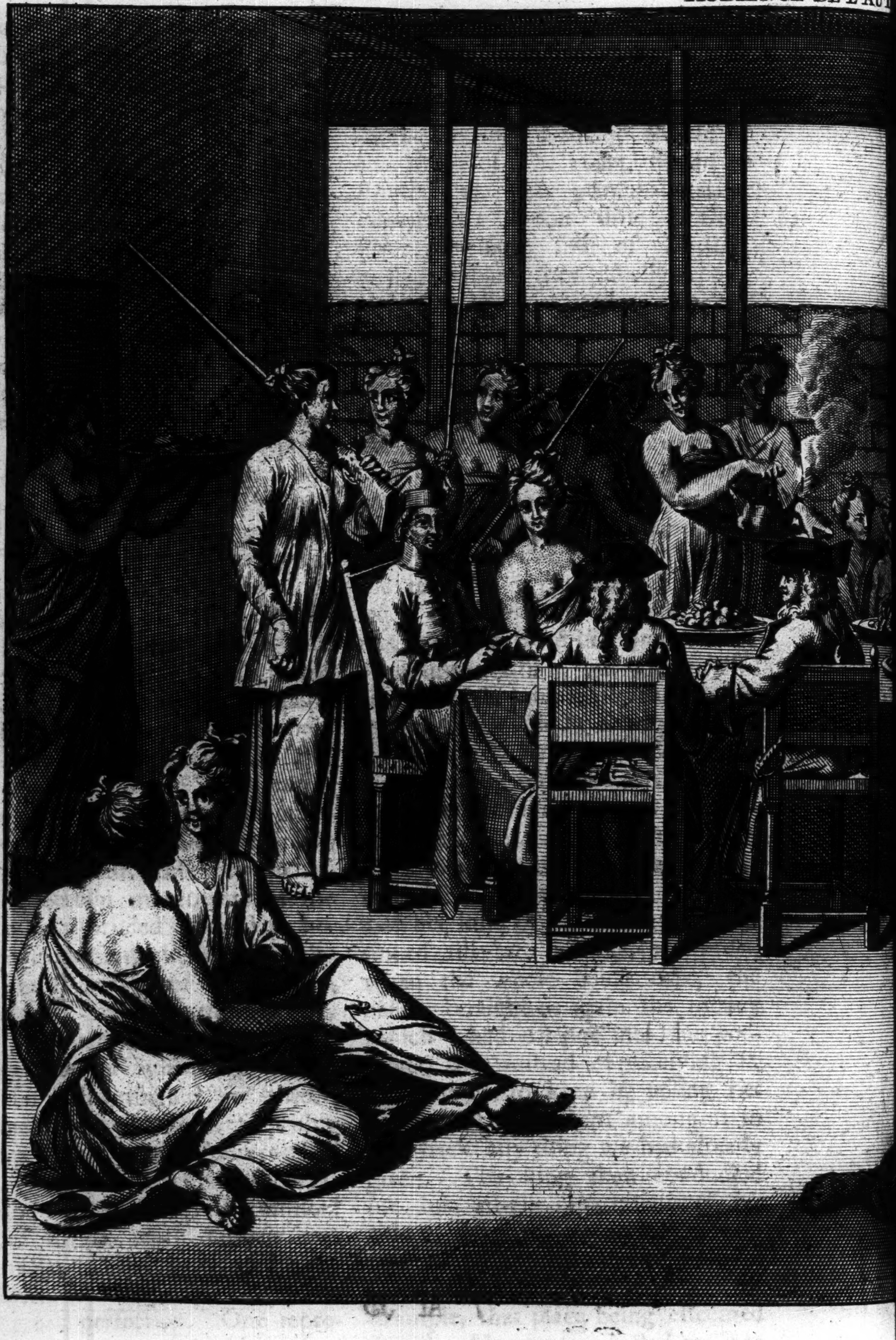
Dwarfs.

Two of the king's dwarfs then appeared, and endeavoured to imitate, and turn into ridicule, that dance. The king had married the leaſt and moſt diverting of them, to one of the ladies of the court, whom he ſhewed me. The principal dancer appeared a ſecond time with a ſilver porringer full of *Pieſang*, a fruit which they uſually chew, and has been already mentioned. She preſented it to me and the ſecretary, upon which we took ſome of the fruit, and put money in the place of it, as is cuſtomary. While the farce was repreſenting, they brought in hot ſlices of meat, wrapped up in green leaves, and the king gave one to the dancer who expreſſed the moſt humour in the part ſhe performed. She pulled it to pieces in a very odd manner, and then filled her mouth with ſeveral morſels of it, but without diſcontinuing her diſcourſe, though ſhe uttered her words in a very imperfect manner. While ſhe threw one piece into her mouth in this manner, ſhe drew out another, and then approaching us, as if ſhe intended to ſpeak to us, ſhe diſtorted her face into horrible grimaces.

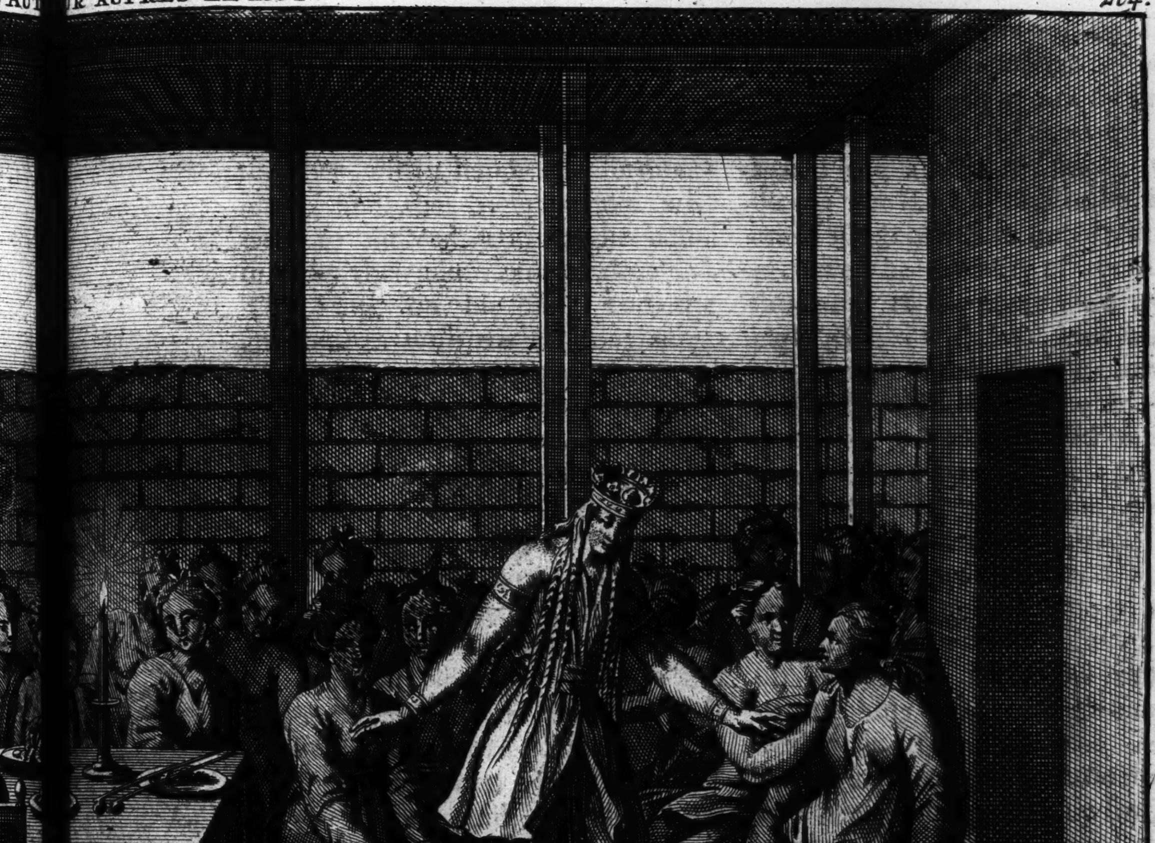
This kind of entertainment continued till two in the afternoon, when the whole being over, the dancer brought us again the money which I had juſt put into the porringer, but inſtead of receiving it, I deſired her to keep it, telling her it was not the cuſtom among us to take back any thing we had already given. The king then conducted me into all the apartments of his palace, from the top to the bottom, after he had pulled off his ſhoes in order to go up, and we followed his example, that place being eſteemed ſacred. He even conducted me into the queen's apartment, the chambers of which were very ſmall. Having at length had the honour to entertain his majeſty with various ſubjects of converſation, and for a conſiderable time, he took his leave of me, and deſired me to pay his compliments to the general. I returned my

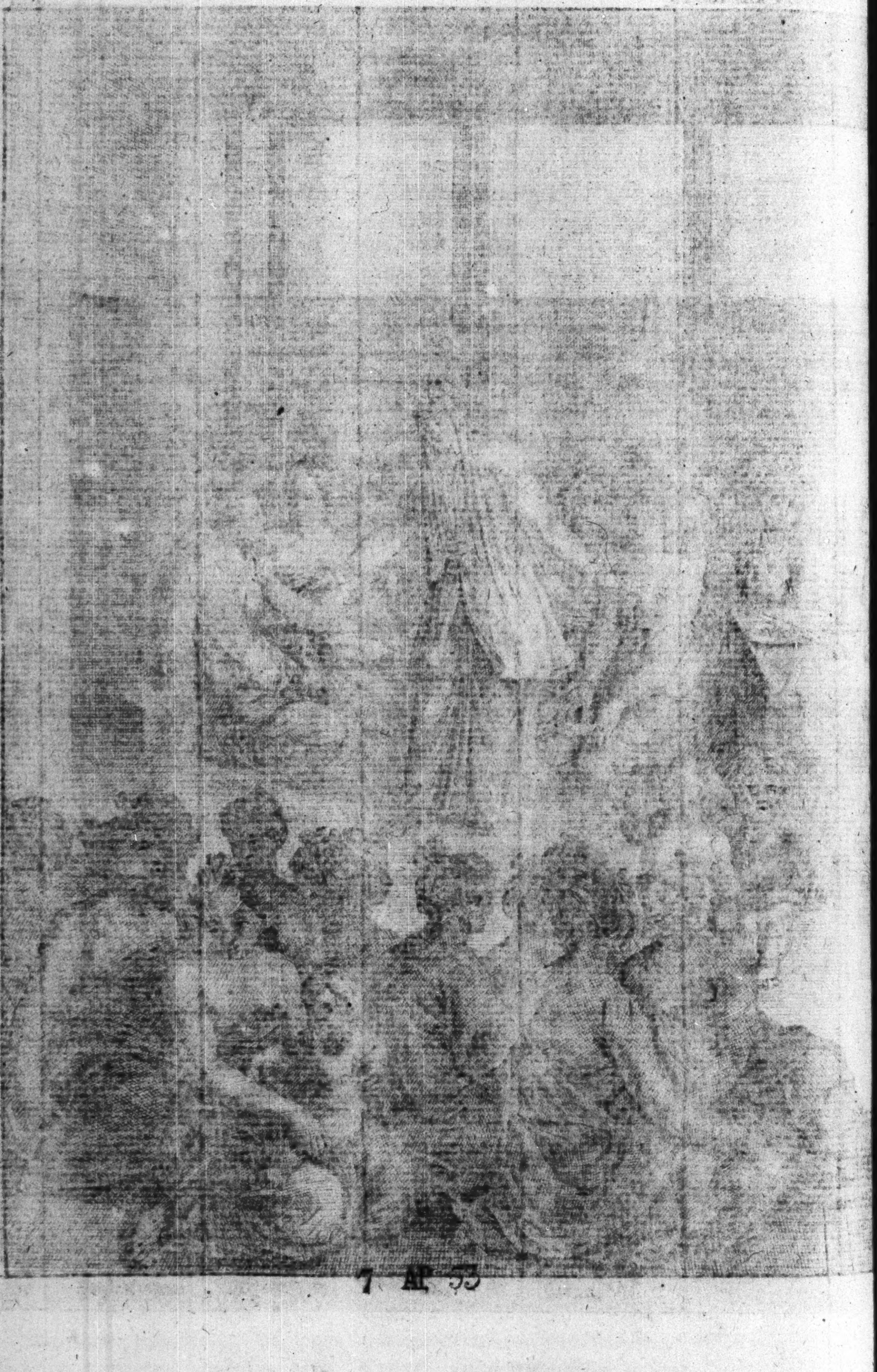
7 AP 53

AUDIENCE DE L'AUT UR AU



’AUT UR AUPRÈS LE ROY.





7 AP 53

my acknowledgments to his majeſty, for the honour which he had vouchſafed to afford me, and wiſhed him the enjoyment of a perfect health, together with a happy and fortunate reign, and that thoſe princes who were to ſucceed him, might equal in glory their illuſtrious predeceſſors. The king, on his part, had the goodneſs to wiſh me all imaginable proſperity, and a happy return to my native country, and then conducted me through a wooden gallery into another edifice, having been accompanied thither by the two eldeſt damſels, who advanced no further. When we were come down the king put on his ſlippers, and we our ſhoes. I then took leave of that good prince, who again did me the honour to tender me his hand, after which I returned to my lodging.

The author takes leave of the king.

The perſon of that prince deſcribed.

The complexion of this prince is very brown and ſanguine, and there is ſomething noble in his mein: His eyes are brown, his eye-brows almoſt black, and the muſtachos he wears are ſmall. I have already ſufficiently deſcribed his habit. He was then about thirty three years of age, and had as many children.

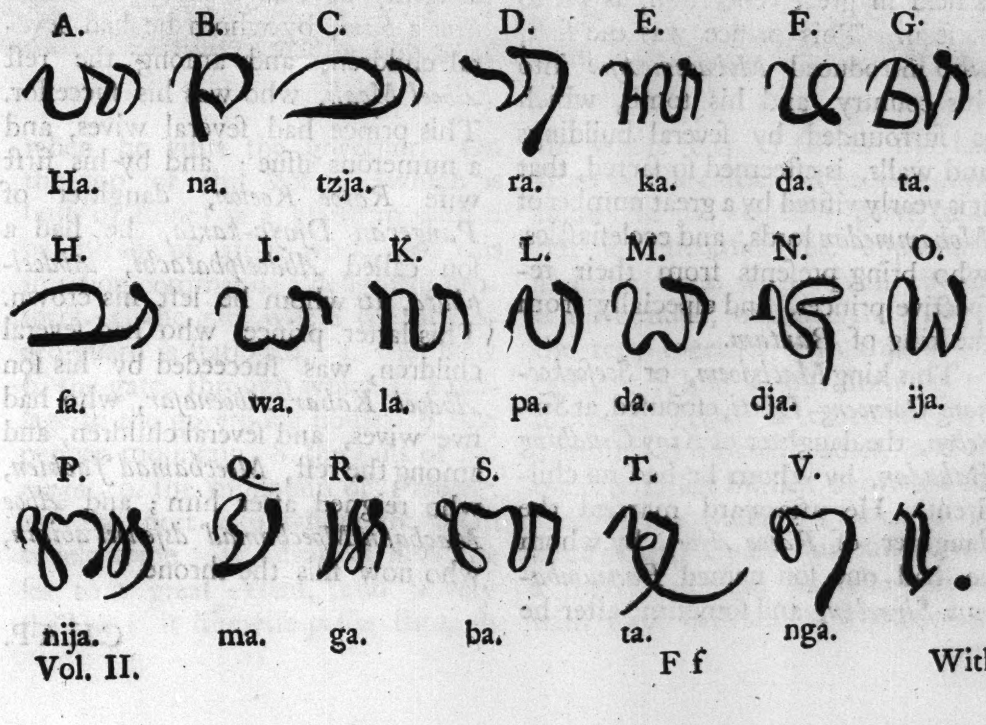
The reader will find in plate 214 all that appeared moſt remarkable in the hall of audience, where the king received and entertained me. I drew a ſketch of the whole ſcene upon the ſpot, without being obſerved, becauſe I was thought to be writing down particulars of the audience, that I might not forget any of the honours I had received. For I had acquainted the king, that I ſhould not fail to publiſh the inſtances of his goodneſs to me, in order to preſerve the memory of them; and the ladies of the court were exceedingly pleaſed with this declaration.

The enſigns of the king.

I ſhall now deſcribe the ornaments and enſigns of honour with which the king is accompanied when he appears in publick. Theſe are generally near his perſon, and are ſupported by ten ladies of quality; 1. a *'Tſjelor*, or ſword of ſtate; 2. a *Sawoeniggaling*, or golden cup; 3. an *Ardawilika*, or wooden bird gilt, upon which are borne the veſtments of the king; 4. a *Serypienangdoor*, which is found in the *Maldive* iſlands; 5. a *Lante*, or little meaſure; 6. a *Souaſſe-kuiſpidoor*, or ſmall cane made of the root of a tree; 7 and 8. two carabines; 9. a *Sjaratan*, or ſmall drinking can; 10. a bowl of *Souaſſe*. Theſe are the ornaments, or ordinary enſigns with which the king is uſually accompanied, and which he changes, increaſes, or diminiſhes at his own pleaſure.

The Javaneſe alphabet.

As I am unacquainted with the language of the *Javanites*, I ſhall content myſelf with exhibiting their alphabet, which conſiſts of twenty characters.



Their religion.

With reſpect to their religion, that of *Mohammed* prevails more than any other, in the iſland of *Java*, where it has been eſtabliſhed for the ſpace of 300 years, as I have already intimated; but the inhabitants of the eaſtern ſide are nothing near ſo zealous as thoſe of the weſtern. The king who governs theſe laſt has aſſumed, with the *Chirebomes*, the *Arabian* title of *Sultan*, which the king who rules the people that inhabit the eaſtern ſide of the iſland has ever refuſed to this day. It is even ſaid, that there is ſtill a third part of the iſland which has not ſubmitted to the *Mohammedan* doctrines, but ſtill retain the worſhip of idols, after the manner of the antient *Javanites*, whoſe deſcendants ſtill inhabit the iſle of *Baby*.

The origin of the kings of Bantam.

King *Machdoem*, or *Soeſoekoenang-Goenoeng-Diati*, who has been already mentioned, was, according to the chronology of the *Bantamites*, grandſon of king *Bani Iſrael*, who reigned in *Arabia*. This prince, who had an inclination to ſee the world, paſſed through *China*, in order to arrive at the iſland of *Java*, where he landed at a place called *Damack*. After he had continued there for ſome time, he proceeded to *Sirrebon*, where his intereſt was eſpouſed by many of the inhabitants. He dy'd, and was buried there, and it is reported that his tomb, which is held in great veneration, is yet to be ſeen. This prince was the firſt, who introduced *Mohammediſm* into this country, and his tomb, which is ſurrounded by ſeveral buildings and walls, is eſteemed ſo ſacred, that it is yearly viſited by a great number of *Mohammedan* lords, and eccleſiaſtics, who bring preſents from their reſpective princes, and eſpecially from the king of *Bantam*.

A royal tomb.

This king *Machdoem*, or *Soeſoekoenang Goenoeng-Diati*, eſpouſed, at *Sirrebon*, the daughter of *Kiay Giudhing Babadan*, by whom he had no children. He afterward married the daughter of *Ratoe Ayoe*, by whom he had one ſon named *Paneumbaham Sirrebon*, and ſometime after he eſpouſed another daughter of the ſame *Ratoe Ayoe*, and the younger ſiſter of the former, by whom he had a ſon called *Haſanodin*, *Pang*, or *Depati Socraſowan*, whom he declared his ſucceſſor, and who, after the death of that prince was known by the title of *Soeſoehoenang*, or *Pangeran Seda Kingkingh*. This *Haſanodin* quitted *Sirrebon*, and cauſed himſelf to be declared king of *Bantam*, by the name of *Pangeran*. His father had married him to a daughter of the king of *Demack*, called *Pangeran Ratoe*, by whom he had ſeveral children. He afterward eſpouſed a daughter of *Radja Indrapora*, who had for her dowry the country of the *Sillabars*, a people of *Banca Houlon*, on the weſtern coaſt of *Pollowbang*, and he had two children by this princeſs. I omit thoſe he had by other wives, and by his concubines. He died at the age of 120 years, and left his crown to his ſon *Joſoeph*, who took the name of *Pangeran Paſſareean*. This prince had ſeveral wives, who brought him a numerous off-ſpring, and he was ſucceeded by his ſon *Machomed Pangeran Seedangrana*, who had likewiſe ſeveral wives and children, and left his crown to *Aboema Vacher Abdul Kader*, the ſon of one of his concubines, who was the firſt that aſſumed the title of *Sultan*. He married *Ratoe Adjoe*, daughter of *Pangeran Aria Ranga Singa Sari*, by whom he had ſeveral children, and among the reſt *Aboel Moali*, who was his ſucceſſor. This prince had ſeveral wives, and a numerous iſſue; and by his firſt wife *Ratoe Koelon*, daughter of *Pangeran Djaya-karta*, he had a ſon called *Abdoelphatachi*, *Abdoelphata*, to whom he left his crown. This latter prince, who had ſeveral children, was ſucceeded by his ſon *Abdoel Kahar Aboenaſar*, who had five wives, and ſeveral children, and among the reſt, *Moechamad Jachien*, who reigned after him; and *Aboe Machaſin Moechamad' dsjenoel abidin*, who now fills the throne.

Firſt king of Bantam.
Second king of Bantam.
The third.
Fourth.
Fifth.
Sixth.
Seventh.
Eighth.
Ninth.

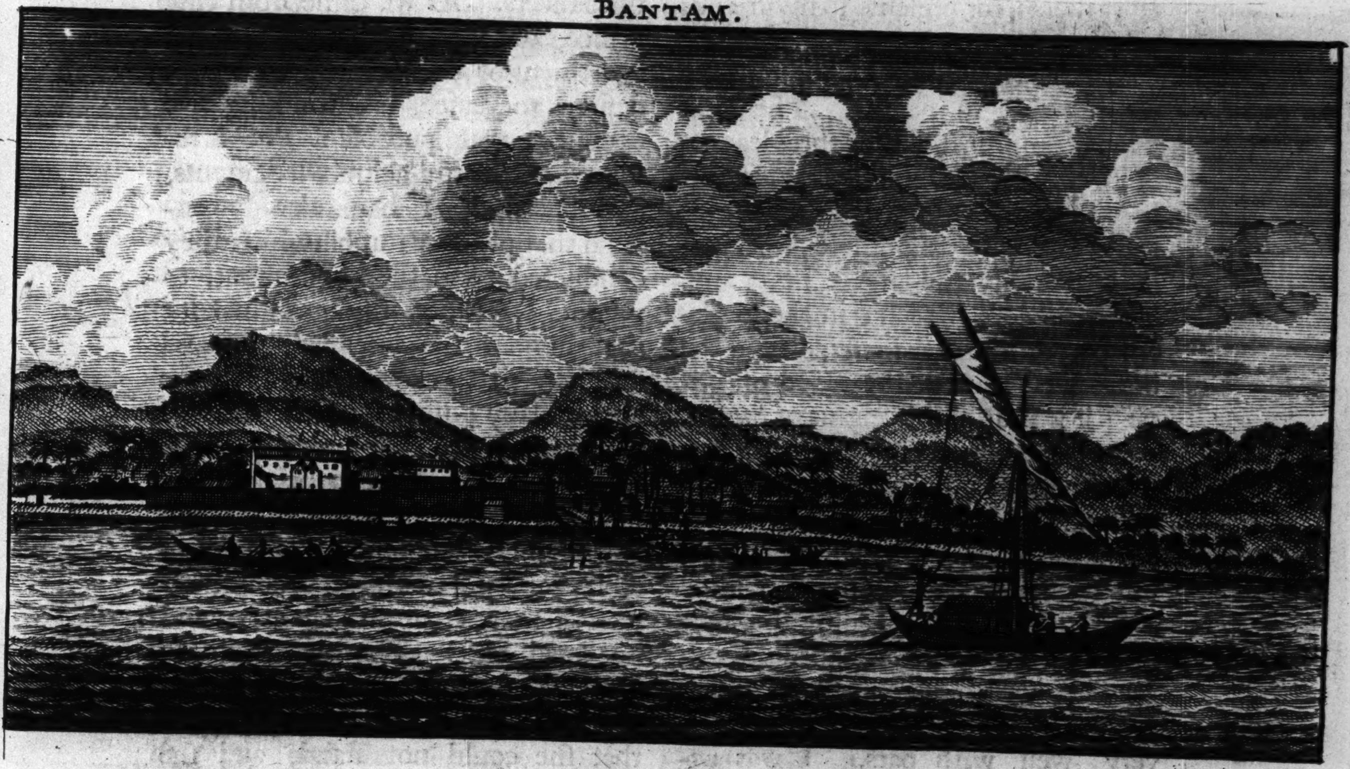
CHAP. LXX.

The ſituation of Bantam. *A lady of an extraordinary age. The author's departure from* Bantam, *and return to* Batavia.

The profil of Bantam. AFTER I had ſatisfied my curioſity at court, I reſolved to take the ſide proſpect of the city of *Bantam*, and the governor lent me a bark for the more commodious execution of my deſign, in the road which lies on the north ſide of the city. Number 1. marks out the governor's houſe; which is white, and covered with red tiles. 2. the guard at the baſtion of *Speelwick*. 3. the houſe at the corner of that point; this is an agreeable manſion, where the king generally diverts himſelf when he viſits the governor. On the top of this houſe, (which is built of ſtone) is a platform with a balluſtrade of lattice-work, and this ſituation commands a delightful proſpect. 4. the gate where the advanced guard is ſtationed. 5. the wall. 6. the gate, through which is a paſſage to the governor's houſe. 7. the pepper mountain. 8. the hills of *Seringa*. 9. the mountain of *Pienang*. 10. the port into which the ſmall veſſels come. It advances into the ſea to a great extent, and is very ſhallow; it likewiſe paſſes through the whole city as far as the back front of the caſtle. The few ſmall houſes in the adjacent parts, make but an inconſiderable appearance, and the trees with which the city is ſurrounded, obſtruct the view of the reſt, together with that of the caſtle. While I was drawing this proſpect, I ſaw a crocodile, who appeared at different times, and frequently raiſed himſelf above the ſurface of the water. The caſtle is a *The caſtle.* large oblong ſquare, ſurrounded with a high wall, and likewiſe fortified with four baſtions, and two half-

moons

BANTAM.



moons between them. It is near a quarter of a league in circumference, and is well furniſhed with artillery, together with a *Dutch* gariſon of 400 men.

A deſcription of the city.

The city is built upon the ſea-ſhore, and is two good leagues in circuit. Moſt of the houſes are wretched buildings, being made of the branches of trees, and covered with leaves. There are alſo ſuburbs, and cottages along the coaſt of the ſea, and on the land ſide. It is very populous, and the number of children there is very extraordinary.

Eels.

I here found very good eels, and in great numbers, with which I fill'd ſeveral pots, for preſents to my friends at *Batavia*.

Trade.

Canoes.

All the commerce of that quarter conſiſts only in pepper. The great haven comprehends near three leagues in circumference, and is as wide as it is long at the entrance, ſo that ſhips ride there with all poſſible ſecurity; it is likewiſe the largeſt I ever ſaw. This kingdom, which is in the ſouthern part of the *Eaſt-Indies*, lies in the north-weſt tract of the iſland of *Java*; it is near the ſtreights of *Sunda*, and at the diſtance of about twenty-five leagues from *Batavia*, which is weſtward from it. I took the diverſion of the water in a canoe, which is a ſmall veſſel of that country, pointed at both ends, and made of the hollowed trunk of a tree called *Bayer-ſouriam*, which is generally of a ſurpriſing thickneſs. Theſe boats go very well with oars. I was accompanied by a *Pruſſian*, who had been ſettled ſome time in that country, and was well acquainted with the language and all the cuſtoms of it. We went to a place called *Carame*, which is filled with tombs. It lies about a league from *Bantam*, upon the bank of the great river, which flows from the mountains. Theſe tombs were erected for the families of the kings of *Bantam*. The chief ſtructure is entirely ruinous; all the reſt are inconſiderable, and diſpoſed in covered places. Several bodies are to be ſeen, ranged by each other, without any tombs, and only covered with earth raiſed to a ſmall height above the ſurface of the ground, with little ſtones joined together in the form of tombs. This place is ſurrounded by a ſingle wall. We went to bathe ourſelves at our return, in the river near the garden where the king ſometimes reſorts to refreſh himſelf in the ſame manner.

A lady of a very extraordinary age.

We landed at a little diſtance from the city, in order to viſit a lady who was 130 years old. She had been mentioned to me by the king, who likewiſe ordered me to go and ſee her. She lived with the king's great aunt, who had the direction of all the dancers. As we came from that prince, we were introduced into the apartment of the women, who were deſired to dance, as thinking we came for that purpoſe: But I returned them my acknowledgments, and declared, I had already enjoy'd that pleaſure; upon which they conducted us to the king's aunt, to whom I teſtified my gratitude for the honour ſhe intended me, and told her, that I only deſired to ſee the antient lady; upon which ſome of her women, who were curious to ſee me, took upon them to be my conductors. I found her in a very mean apartment, ſeated upon a kind of table, covered with grey cloth, after the manner of the country, and her head bare. She was yet very freſh, and had a tolerable ſtrong voice, but her legs were ſo weak that ſhe could not ſtand, and ſhe was reduced to meer ſkin and bones. As the day began to cloſe, I deſired a candle might be lighted, and when I had taken it in one hand, I held the other before it, and asked the old lady, if ſhe could diſtinguiſh the light. *How ſhould I*, reply'd ſhe, *ſince you hold your hand before it?* She, however, was incapable of diſtinguiſhing the features of a face. I then asked her, in order to try her memory, from what country ſhe came? *I am a native of* Jackatra, ſaid ſhe; (this was the antient name of *Batavia*, before it was taken by the company ninety ſeven years ago,)

1706.

and I came, when I was young, to dwell at Bantam, *where I have known ſeven kings*, whom ſhe particularly named; ſhe always ate with a good appetite, but grew childiſh at ſome particular times, when ſhe no longer asked for food, upon which occaſion care was always taken for her ſupply. Her eyes were ſunk deep in her head; her hair was entirely grey, and very thin; and her great age had bent all her fingers inward. After we had ſatisfied our curioſity, we took leave of the king's aunt, and thanked her for the civility with which ſhe had treated us.

I employed the next day in making preparations for my departure, the enſuing evening, in one of the barks of the country, having no inclination to return in the veſſel that brought me hither, and which ſet ſail the preceding day, becauſe contrary winds frequently retard the courſe of theſe veſſels, for a conſiderable time, in that ſeaſon of the year. I deſired Mr. *de Wys* to hire me one, but he was ſo good as to lend me his own, which was larger and more commodious than the common ones, and I embarked about ſeven in the evening with Mr. *Kaef*, who returned with me. The governor and Mr. de *Wys*, gave me their anſwer to the general, and I returned them my acknowledgments for all their civilities. The governor would even accompany me out of the city gate, where I found Mr. *de Wys*, and the ſecretary, who waited to take their leave of me.

1706.

The author's departure from Bantam.

The haven on that ſide is neither broad nor deep, the ſailors therefore were obliged to uſe a pole to puſh the bark forward, which is very tireſome, becauſe they make but a ſlow advance. As ſoon as we were got out, we were obliged to caſt anchor, in order to wait for a land-wind, which roſe ſoon after. We made ſuch way in the night, being favoured by a fine moon-light, that at break of day, we gained ſight of the veſſel which ſet ſail in the evening, and had the wind againſt it. Thus by continually coaſting, and paſſing between the iſlands, we arrived about three in the afternoon at *Batavia*, where I ſurprized the general, who did not expect me ſo ſoon. I acquitted myſelf to him of the compliments, with which I was entruſted on the part of the king, and gave him the letters I had for him. I likewiſe entertained him with an account of whatever had happened to me, and with which he appeared very well ſatisfied. I then went to pay my duty to the old general, who was overjoyed at the good ſucceſs of my voyage.

His arrival at Batavia.

Strange birds.

I carried with me from *Bantam* ſome little birds, which I put into ſpirits of wine to preſerve them. The moſt beautiful of them had a violet ſpot upon the top of his head; his breaſt and tail were tinged with a fine red, and all the reſt of the body was green. There were alſo ſeveral other ſmall birds with red breaſts and tails, and others that had thoſe parts of a grey complexion.

CHAP. LXXI.

The manner of receiving the letter of the king of Bantam. *Wild fruits. A preſent, and letters from the emperor of* Java. *The arrival of captain* Dampier.

The manner of receiving the letter of the king of Bantam.

THE letter of the king of *Bantam*, which Mr. *Kaef* had in charge, being arrived in the road of *Batavia* the 19th of *July*, Monſieur *Sabandhaer*, maſter of the ceremonies, was immediately ſent, with ſeven or eight principal officers of the company, and ſome of the chief merchants, to receive it. This letter was placed in a large ſilver diſh, covered with yellow damask, richly flowered, and borne by a halberdier, accompanied by a ſlave in livery, who ſupported the damask covering. When they were come to the caſtle, they paſſed between two ranks of ſoldiers of the gariſon under arms, and who were poſted from the great gate, as far as the governor's apartment, with enſigns diſplay'd, and drums beating. A treble volley of ſmall arms, and the cannon of the caſtle, were then diſcharged, and a magnificent entertainment was prepared in the hall of the council of the *Indies*, where the governor, and the general of the company were ſeated; the ſecretary appear'd ſtanding, and the halbadiers were diſpoſed round the table.

A preſent from the emperor of Java.

The company received on the 23d a preſent of thirty three horſes from *Soeſoenang Pakocboana*, emperor of *Javá*; theſe were ſucceeded on the 26th by letters from that prince, which were received with the ſame ceremony as thoſe of the king of *Bantam*. This preſent was accompanied by fifteen or ſixteen young female ſlaves. This is the ſame emperor, whom the company replaced on the throne the preceding year, after having driven out his nephew *Adepattie*, who had poſſeſſed himſelf of the kingdom of *Matarme*. This empire, which is called *Sematarm*, is on the eaſtern coaſt of *Java*, about ſixty leagues from *Batavia*. The war laſted three years, but the depoſed prince could never prevail upon himſelf to give up his pretenſions: Time, however, decided them at laſt.

Fruits.

I received, much about that time, a preſent of wild fruits, which are found in the woods, and I took a draught of ſix different ſpecies of them on paper. The *Atap*, or *Piek*, of which they eat the inſide, grows in cluſtres, about a foot and a half in diameter; the leaves are long and narrow, as may be ſeen in plate 215. The *Froete Mieri*, is a fruit with white kernels, ſo very malignant in its nature, that no one can taſte it without immediate death. The reader will find one, open, with ſome of the leaves at the letter A, in plate 216. The *Froete Tiackou*, is alſo a fruit, of which they eat the inſide; it is green, and incircled with eight leaves, and is as large as it appears at the letter B. The *Kandeke* is a long fruit, the flower of which bears no ſeed, but they ſet the branches of it. The leaves are very beautiful, and agree with the repreſentation at the letter C in plate 217. D marks a fruit, the name of which I could not learn; it is of a beautiful red when ripe; the leaves are long, and narrow, and cloſe to one another. The 6th is the *Baple Kammie*, a fruit of which they eat the kernels, of the middle part, which are very large: They are likewiſe planted, becauſe they contain the ſeed of the fruit, which is very ſoft. The leaves reſemble thoſe of ivy, and the fruit is repreſented in plate 218, as it grows naturally. I have alſo added in plate 219. a fine red flower, which ſomething reſembles a roſe, though it is formed

Piek.

Froete Mieri.

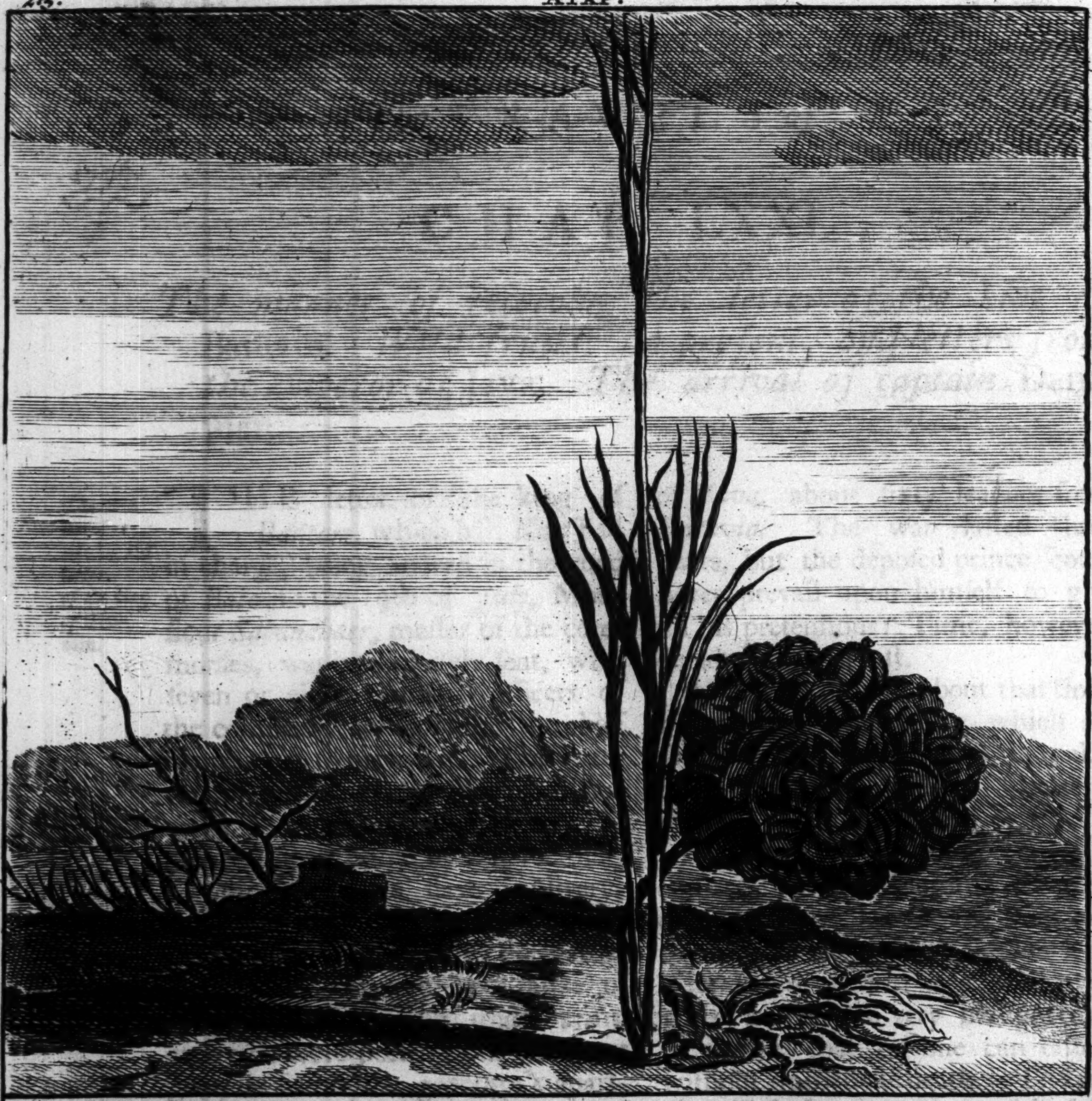
Froete Tiackou.

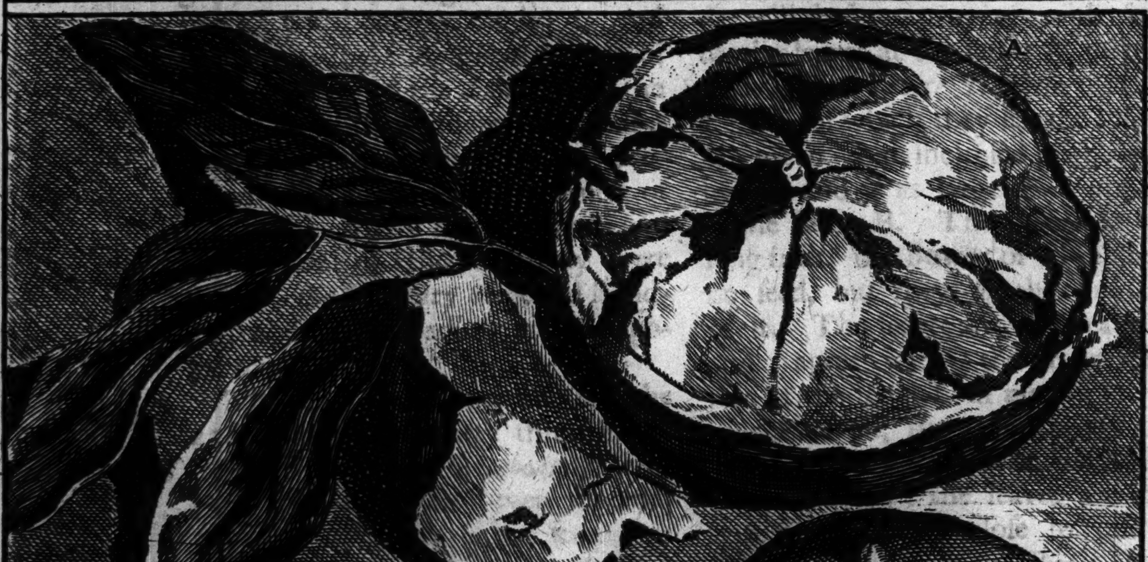
Kandeke.

Baple Kammie.

7 AP 53

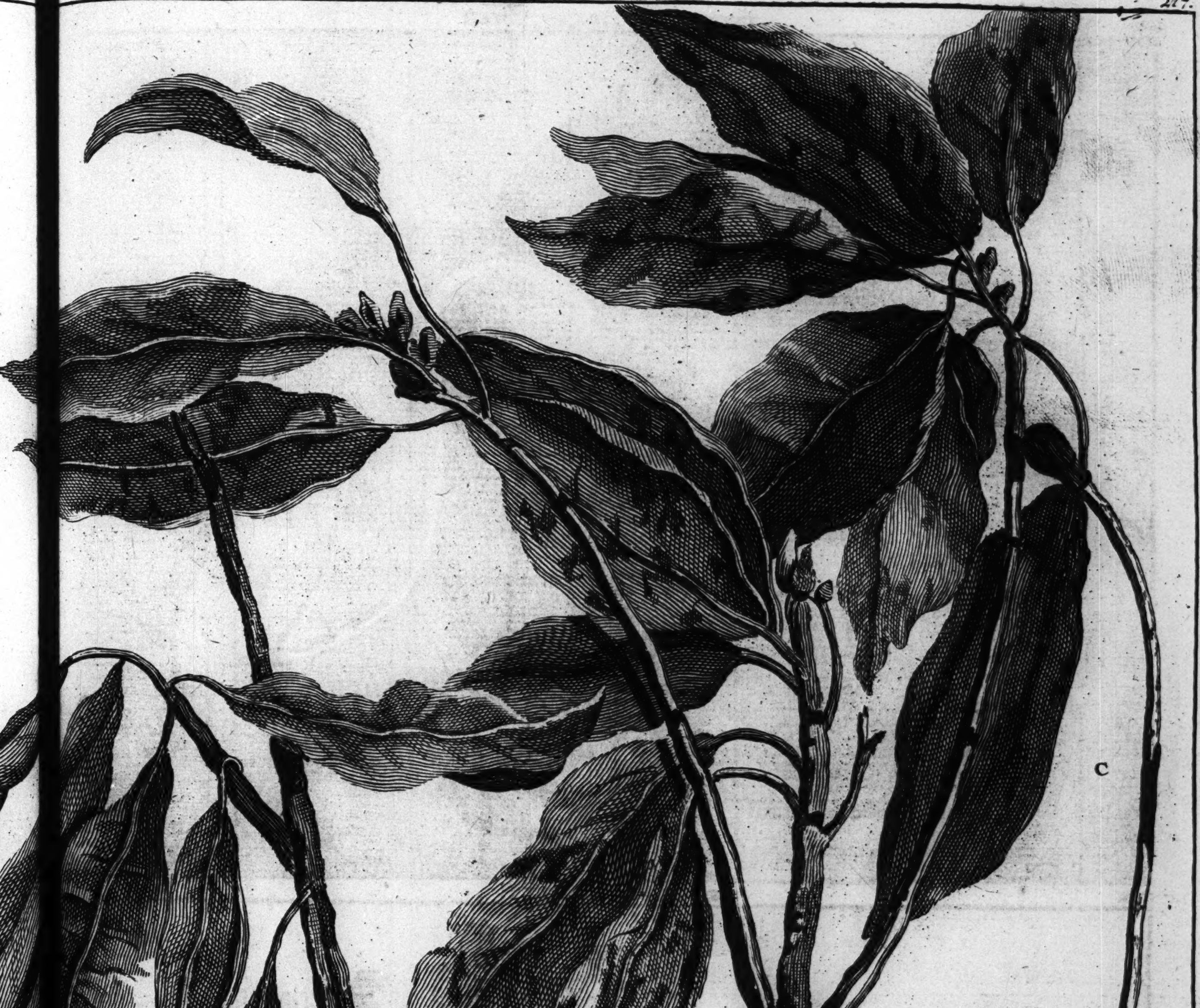
215. ATAP.



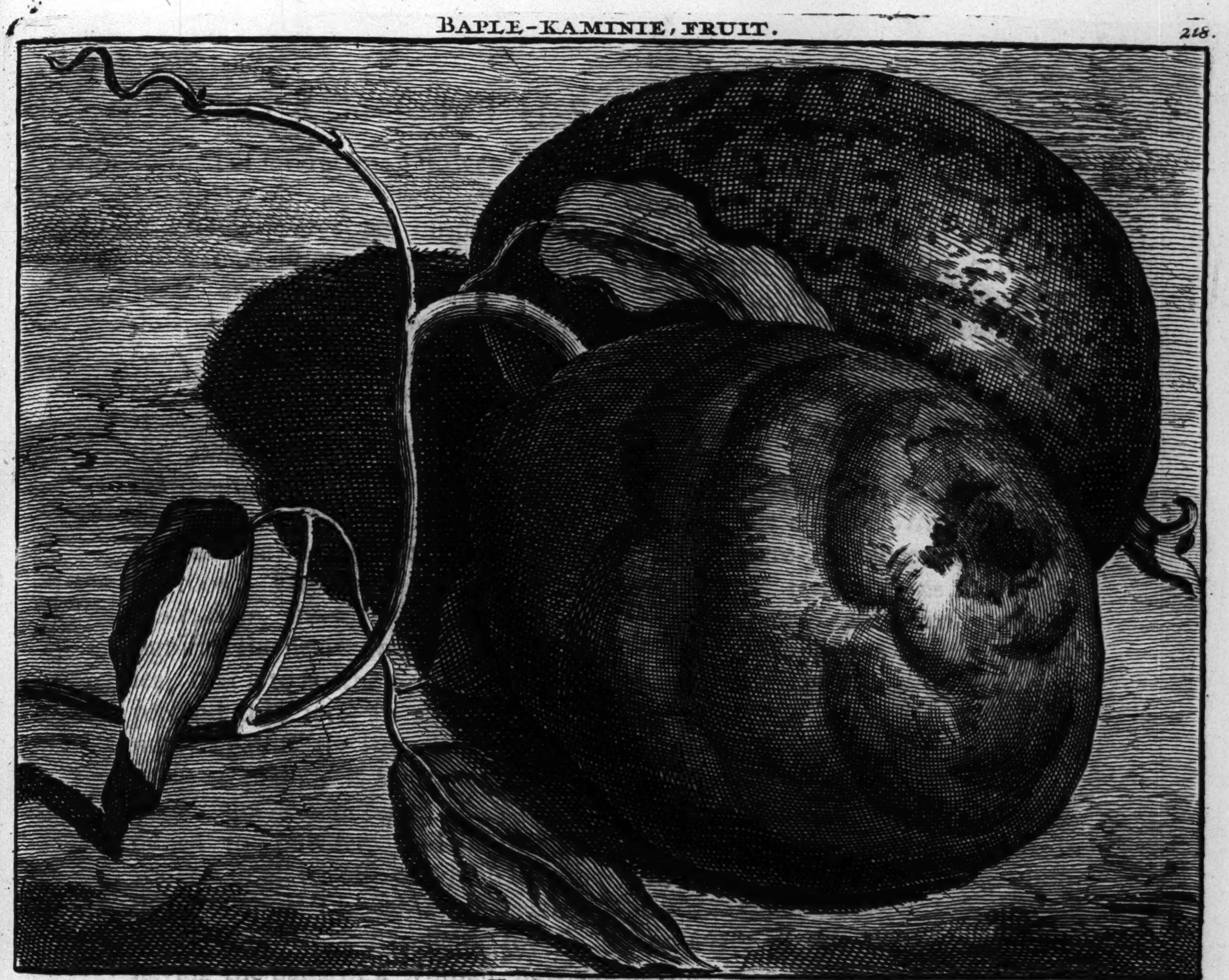


216. FROETE MIERL ET TJACKOU.

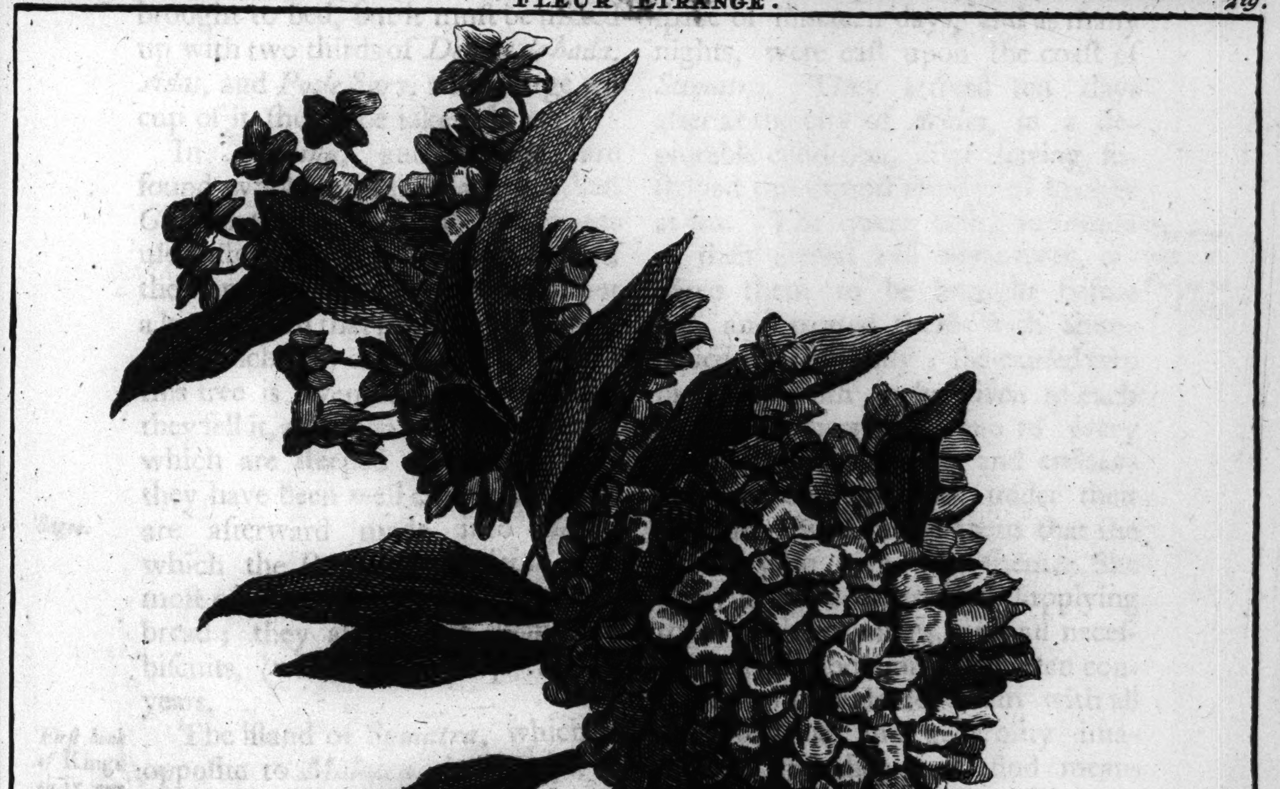
KANDEKE FRUIT INCONNU.



BAPLE-KAMINIE, FRUIT. 218.



FLEUR ETRANGE. 219.



7 AP 33

formed of ſeveral ſmall flowers joined together.

Mineral productions.

An extraordinary plant.

An admirable remedy.

I likewiſe received, among ſeveral other curioſities, a parcel of gold, ſilver, antimony, chryſtal, and gold duſt, taken from the mines of *Cillebaer*, on the weſtern coaſt of *Sumatra*, together with a ſea-plant, which is found at *Amboina*, and called by the *Indians Akkar-bahaer*, a name compounded of *Akkar*, which ſignifies a root, and *Bahaer*, which ſignifies the ſea, as if one ſhould ſay a ſea-root. The *Arabs* call this plant *Kalbahaer*, the firſt ſyllable of which ſignifies the heart, and the ſecond the ſea, that is to ſay the *Sea-heart*. They pretend that it is an admirable remedy againſt the ſtrangury; and in order to prepare it for that purpoſe, theſe branches, or roots, muſt be reduced to powder, and infuſed in water, a ſmall tea cup of which is then to be taken: The ſame preparation is alſo ſaid to be excellent for relieving the pains of a woman, newly brought to bed, but it muſt be mixed up with two thirds of *Den-ty de bada*, *Adas*, and *Poole Sary*, and a large tea cup of it ſhould be taken thrice.

Sagoe.

In *Amboina*, and *Ternate*, are found whole foreſts of a tree called *Gabbe-gabbe*, which the inhabitants uſe inſtead of rice. They cut off the ſtem and branches, and take out a kind of pith that reſembles a ſponge, and which they dreſs like rice. When this tree is ſeven or eight years old, they fell it, and then cut it into pieces, which are ſteeped in water, after they have been well cleanſed. Theſe are afterward made into *Sagoe*, which the *People* of *Amboina*, and moſt of the orientals, uſe inſtead of bread; they alſo make them into biſcuits, which will keep ſeveral years.

Firſt book of Kings *ch.* ix. *ver.* 28.

The iſland of *Sumatra*, which is oppoſite to *Malacca*, is thought to be the place from whence ophir was formerly brought, and where both the *Syrians* and ſervants of *Solomon* gained ſuch large treaſures, as I have obſerved in my firſt voyage. There is ſtill to be ſeen a ſmall iſland before *Malacca*, and which the inhabitants call *Ophir*; but ſailors and geographers diſtinguiſh it by the name of the *Red Iſland*. There is alſo found, both on the eaſt and weſt ſide of the iſland of *Sumatra*, abundance of gold, of which I ſaw ſeveral pieces almoſt round, and very near as big as a pigeon's egg, and others longer, without any mixture of ſtone.

The city of Achim.

North-weſt of the iſland of *Sumatra*, lies the city of *Atchem*, or *Achim*, where the queen keeps her court; that territory, as I was informed, being governed only by women, who derive their principal revenue from the mines. The *Dutch* company had formerly a factory there, but it has been removed for ſome time.

A melancholy accident.

The generoſity of the queen of Achim.

A *Dutch* veſſel, called the *Waveren*, being accidentally ſet on fire in 1691, ſeventy perſons, among whom was a young *Dutch* lady, ſaved themſelves in the ſloops, and after having been upon the ſea for the ſpace of nineteen days, and as many nights, were caſt upon the coaſt of *Sumatra*. They arrived ten days after at the city of *Achim*, in a deplorable condition, after having ſuſtained the utmoſt ſeverity of hunger at ſea. The queen being informed of their arrival and adventures, ordered them to be brought before her, and treated them with abundance of humanity; ſhe cauſed two pieces of cloth to be given to each of the officers, and one to every ſailor, to cover them, and endeavoured to comfort them under their calamity, by aſſuring them that ſhe would take care of them. She likewiſe gave orders for ſupplying them with proviſions, and all neceſſary accommodations, and even continued to provide for them with all the goodneſs and generoſity imaginable, till they could find means to tranſport themſelves to *Malacca*, from whence they went to *Batavia* in the company's veſſel.

The arrival of captain Dampier.

The laſt day of the month, the famous captain *Dampier* arrived at *Batavia* from *Ternate*, with twenty eight of his crew on board one

1706. of the company's veſſels. He ſet ſail from *England* in *September* 1703. with two ſhips, and after he had coaſted along *Braſil* to ſixty degrees ſouth latitude, he doubled the cape of *Hoorn*. The tenth of *Februry* he advanced as far as *Ilka de Fernando*, where he met a *French* veſſel, with which he had a ſharp engagement, but was obliged to quit it, becauſe he ſaw two others making up, and he then made all the ſail he could toward the coaſt of *Chili* and *Peru*. At length being come into eight degrees north latitude, he landed with a few men at the river of *Saint Mary*, but was repulſed from thence; after which the ſhip which accompany'd him, and was called the *Cinque Ports*, left him near *Panama*, and from that time he never heard any thing of her. Toward the middle of *May* one of his pilots fled from his ſervice, together with twenty of his ſailors, in a *Spaniſh* veſſel which he had taken in the bay of *Nicaya*; and while he was abandoned in this manner, he met a large veſſel of *Manilkas*, with which he fought a whole day without being able to make himſelf maſter of her. Theſe diſaſters created a miſunderſtanding between him and his factor, and likewiſe his ſecond pilot, and the reſt of the crew; and it roſe to ſuch a height, that the factor and the pilot, accompany'd by thirty two ſailors, forſook him, and went to the *Indies*, in a *Spaniſh* prize in 1705. In this condition he arrived at *Amboina* the twenty-eighth of *May*, from whence, after he had ſold his veſſel called the *St. John*, which was no longer capable of being ſerviceable to him, he embarked in one of the company's ſhips, in order to proceed to *Batavia*, and from thence into *Europe*. He had taken at different times, and before his ſecond ſhip left him, thirteen or fourteen veſſels, and ſome *Spaniſh* barks in the *South-Sea*, without acquiring any conſiderable booty. Finding his company, therefore, reduced to twenty-eight men, after he had been forſaken by part of his crew a ſecond time, he continued ſtill to cruiſe for ſome time, and took four prizes, till at length, his ſhip, the *St. George*, being no longer in a condition to keep the ſea, he left her, and went into one of the barks he had taken, and to which he gave the ſame name. He alſo reſolved to ſail through the *Indian* ſea, and at laſt arrived in a very bad condition at the iſland of *Bathan*, where he ſold his veſſel, and proceeded from thence to *Ternate*, and then to *Batavia*, where he embarked for *England*, with ſome of his men, in a ſhip of that country, and the reſt, who greatly diſagreed with him, went after in the company's ſhips which were returning to *Holland*. 1706.

His adventures.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXII.

A deſcription of Batavia. *The caſtle or citadel. Agreeable pleaſure-houſes. Strange nations. A great number of* Chineſe. *Wild animals. Abundance of fiſh, plants, and pulſe.*

A deſcription of Batavia. THE city of *Batavia*, formerly called *Jacatra*, was reduced under the government of the united provinces of the *Low Countries*, in the year 1619, as has already been intimated. The governor-general *Koen*, who made himſelf maſter of it, rebuilt it by the advice of his council, and added a citadel to it, with an intention to make it the ſeat of government of all the countries and places which were in ſubjection to the united provinces in thoſe parts; and the company from that time gave it the name of *Batavia*.

Its ſituation. This city is in *Aſia*, ſouthward of the *Eaſt-Indies*, and in the weſtern part of the iſland of *Java*. It is ſituated in 6 degrees and 16 minutes of ſouthern latitude, and in the longitude of 127 degrees 15 minutes; it has likewiſe a fine port, and a good road.

Its arms. Its arms are a ſword of azure in an orange field; the point of the ſword is raiſed, and paſſes through a crown of green laurel. The borders, and juriſdiction of this city, are extended eaſtward, as far as the kingdom of *Sirrebon*, weſtward to that of *Bantam*, ſouthward to the *South-ſea*, and northward over all the neighbouring iſles in this part of the ſea.

Religion. The reformed religion is eſtabliſhed in all the places which have any dependance upon the company, in the ſame manner as it is in the united provinces, and all other doctrines are prohibited from being taught, under very ſevere penalties. The *Sunday*, and all the feſtivals, are obſerved there in the ſame manner as they are in *Holland*.

The beauty of the city. The city has a delightful ſituation, and I was aſſured that it has been very much embelliſhed within by ſeveral beautiful ſtructures, and the country round about it by a variety of fine pleaſure-houſes, within the ſpace of ſix years. All the avenues are bordered with fine trees, and ſmall canals, and yet the natural beauty of the country, which is covered with a continual verdure, ſurpaſſes all the ornaments of art. The city of *Batavia* is a league and a half in circumference, and the ditch from twelve to fifteen fathom in breadth. The walls, which are of brick, are twenty one feet in height, and the rampart a fathom and a half in thickneſs; there are likewiſe five gates, namely, that which fronts the water, to the north, that of *Utrecht*, to the weſt; that of *Dieſt*, and the new gate, to the ſouth; and that of *Rotterdam* to the eaſt.

The citadel or caſtle. The citadel has two gates; one toward the land, on the ſouth-ſide, and the other next the water, on the north. It is a quarter of a league in circumference, and is fortified with four baſtions, called the *Ruby*, the *Diamond*, the *Pearl*, and the *Saphir*. Theſe are all well provided with braſs cannons, and have handſome ſtone walls of a conſiderable height, together with large magazines, ſtored with ammunition, proviſions, and mercantile commodities. The entrance by the land-gate opens into a large ſquare, ſurrounded with handſome houſes; of which that which belongs to the governor-general takes up the greateſt part of one ſide of the ſquare. That of the director-general is over-againſt it, and the chappel of the citadel between them.

them. There is a communication, by a gate, between this and the houſe of the governor, who has a ſeat next the pulpit. There is likewiſe another for the director-general, the general of the troops, and the members of the council of the *Indies*. The reſt are ſeated according to their rank and dignity: There are alſo chairs oppoſite the pulpit, for the women who belong to the citadel, and whoſe number is inconſiderable. General *de Wilde*, and two or three other members of the council of the *Indies*, are placed next the director-general. The paſſage into the large ſquare lies between ſeveral magazines, over which are ſome apartments. The water-gate opens into a ſquare which had ſome reſemblance to the former, and where is alſo a range of houſes inhabited by the two principal merchants of the caſtle, and other of the company's officers. On the ſide of this gate, are ſeveral magazines like the former, together with the chancery, into which there is a paſſage by a back door of the governor-general's houſe. This is what is moſt remarkable in the citadel. At the entrance by the land-gate is a flight of ſtairs, which aſcend to the apartment of the major of the place; as likewiſe to the arſenal, and the quarters of the ſoldiers of the gariſon; and from the top of this place a delightful proſpect opens every way to the view.

The governor's palace.

The governor's palace has a handſome ſtair-caſe, baluſtraded on each ſide with ſtone; its front is likewiſe very beautiful, and built after the *Italian* manner. At the entrance into it is a fine veſtible, where the halberdiers are ſtationed, and ſome apartments on the right hand, which front the ſquare, and on the left hand a handſome gallery, with large beautiful windows on the right, which look into a court, on the other ſide of which are ſeveral apartments. At the upper-end of the gallery is a hall, where the governor gives audience, and over the gallery is another hall of much the ſame ſtructure, together with a range of apartments. The top of the building is ornamented with a fine tower, which commands a delicious proſpect. The principal officers of the palace are lodged on the other ſide of the court, which I juſt now mentioned, where is alſo the kitchen. Beyond the veſtible is a ſmall garden, which affords a paſſage to the council-chamber, which is a large apartment, adorned with the pictures of all the governors in full length, except the preſent one, and his predeceſſor, which I was reſolved to paint, notwithſtanding the diſorder in my eyes; but I could not finiſh that of the laſt, by reaſon of his indiſpoſition, and ſome diſappointments which happened at that time.

I ſhall now ſet down a liſt of the governors general, who have been employed in the ſervice of the company, and have exerciſed that important charge.

A catalogue of the governors.

The firſt was *Peter Both*, elected by the chamber of ſeventeen in the year 1609. he poſſeſſed this place till the year 1615, and died the ſecond of *January* in the ſame year, in his return to *Holland*. His ſucceſſor was *Gerard Reinſt*, who died of a bloody flux at *Jacatra*, the 7th of *December* in the ſame year.

The 19th of *June* 1616, the council of *Ternate* nominated in his place *Laurent Reael*, who was recalled the 25th of *October* in the following year. He was ſucceeded by *John Peter Koen*, who ſet out from *Holland* in 1618, made himſelf maſter of *Jacatra* the 30th of *May* 1619, and gave it the name of *Batavia*, the 21ſt of *Auguſt* 1621. He returned to *Holland* the 2d of *February* 1622, and left in his place *Peter Charpentier*, who returned to his own country the 12th of *November*, 1627.

The 25th of *September* in the ſame year, Mr. *Koen* returned to the *Indies* a ſecond time, in quality of governor-general, and died there the 20th of *September* 1629. His ſucceſſor was *Jacob Spelx*, who returned to *Holland* the 4th of *December* 1632.

Henry Brower ſucceeded him, and returned to *Europe* the 31ſt of *December*, 1635. His office was conferred on *Anthony Van Diemen*, who died the 9th of *April* 1645.

He was ſucceeded by *Cornelius Vander Lyn*, who returned to his own country the 11th of *June* 1650, and was ſucceeded by *Charles Reyniers*, who died the 18th of *May* 1653. *John Martſuyker* was nominated to this important charge, and confirmed in it the 16th of *June*. He died the 4th of *January*, 1578. *Ryklof Van Goens* ſucceeded him; but having voluntarily reſigned his generalſhip, was ſucceeded by *Cornelius Speelman*, who died the 11th of *January* 1684.

The ſame day was employed in the proviſional election of *John Kamphuiſen*, who was confirmed the 7th of *Auguſt* 1685. He laid down his poſt the 27th of *November*, 1691, and died the 18th of *July* 1695.

His ſucceſſor was *William d'Outshorn*, who reſigned it the 15th of *Auguſt* 1704; and it was given the ſame day to *John Van Hoorn*, who quitted it the 29th of *October* 1709, and had for his ſucceſſor *Abraham de Riebeek*.

As the hall where the pictures of theſe governors were hung was antient, it was thought adviſable to pull it down, and workmen are now employed in rebuilding it. The council in the mean time aſſembles in the hall which fronts the fiſhpond: This apartment is very ſpacious, and riſes on an eminence above the pond; it has likewiſe a cabinet which affords a fine proſpect. On each ſide of the hall are ſmall gardens full of fruit-trees, with a low wall on the ſide next the pond.

In the paſſage from the citadel through the land-gate to the city, is a large ſtone bridge, built over the ditch, and the *Eſplanade*, beyond it, leads to a pleaſant road bordered with trees. At the end of it is a *Corps de Garde* upon the bank of a river, which has a bridge over it, and a gate in the middle, where a centinel is ſtationed.

The governors ſtables, and grooms lodges are on the other ſide of this river, oppoſite to the *Corps de Garde*; and not far from thence is a ſcaffold, on which are executed thoſe who are condemned by the courts of juſtice of the citadel; but thoſe who are condemned by the magiſtrates of the city, are executed in a ſpacious ſquare before the town-houſe. This was a large building of a conſiderable height, and adorned with a beautiful front; but the whole ſtructure was ſo very antient, that they are at preſent employed in pulling it down, in order to rebuild it. Leaving this edifice on the left hand, the paſſage lies through the new ſtreet, and from thence into the ſuburbs, which are to the ſouth. About the diſtance of one hundred fathom from thence is a reſervoir, the water of which falls from the mountains, and is conveyed to this place by ſtone gutters; and as this water is very good to drink, it is tranſported to the city in ſmall barks. The paſſage is continued, with this reſervoir to the left, and five powder mills, together with ſeveral beautiful gardens; and on the right a large number of brick and lime kilns, to the left of which runs a ſmall river, which turns the mills, and the river *Carrot* flows to the right.

The advanced guard of *Ryſwick* is a league from thence, and half a league from a fine eſtate or farm of the director-general of *Riebeek*; it is diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Tanna-aban*, or red-land; the red-lands already mentioned, beginning at this place, four leagues from *Sering-ſing*, and twenty from the blew mountain.

After paſſing through the ſame gate, and leaving the great river on the right, one comes into a charming road bordered with trees, and fine gardens. This leads to the fort of *Jacatra*, near which are the tombs of the *Chineſe*; and at a little diſtance from theſe is the governor-general's garden. *Nordwick* houſe, which belongs to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, is not far from this place; and beyond it is another guard near a place called *Struiſwick*.

A league from the gate of *Rotterdam* is a ſmall gulf, and the fort of *Anſjol*, where a gariſon of thirty *European* ſoldiers is ſtationed. There is likewiſe an oyſter-fiſhery in this place, and the gulf muſt be croſſed in order to go to *Tanjonpree*, where there is a noble houſe, with beautiful gardens and fiſh-ponds, from whence a fine proſpect opens to the ſea. This eſtate belongs to the heirs of captain *Egberti*.

A paſſage along the ſea-ſhore leads to the two *Marondes*, which were formerly the reſidence of the rebel *Jonker*. This place, which is three leagues from *Batavia*, ſupplies all the wood which is burnt in that city, and there is no proceeding farther, by reaſon of the thickets which fill this part of the country.

In paſſing through the gate of *Dieſt*, one advances half a quarter of a league to the eaſt, where the road then turns to the weſt, and leads to two little forts, one of which is half, and the other three quarters of a league from the city. At a little diſtance from hence is the canal of *Mooker*, which flows from *Tangeran*, and was made by the bailiff of *Mook*, who has been re-imburſed his expences, which amounted to a very conſiderable ſum. The money, however, may be conſidered as loſt, ſince no uſe can be made of the canal. If, indeed, it could be rendered navigable, it would prove of vaſt advantage to the city, that quarter producing a plentiful growth of wood. *Tangeran*, to which this canal extends, is five leagues from *Batavia*, and ſeparates the territories of that city from thoſe of *Bantam*.

From the gate of *Utrecht* one may proceed in the ſame road, to the north, as far as a place called the *Flute*, where a guard of fifteen ſoldiers is ſtationed, with a ſergeant and two corporals. This guard is on the weſtern point of the ſea-ſhore, by which means it renders any farther paſſage impracticable.

All the out parts of the city are filled with beautiful gardens and fruit-trees, and are very populous as well as the ſuburbs, ſome of which extend to a great length, and on the ſide of them are ſeveral agreeable canals.

Chineſe.

Every quarter of the city is full of *Chineſe*, who are an indefatigable people, and very ingenious, eſpecially in imitating whatever they ſee performed. Theſe people cultivate moſt of the landed eſtates in the country, and have the direction of all the ſugar-mills, and thoſe other places where arrack and brandy are made. They likewiſe keep all ſorts of ſhops, dreſs proviſions, and ſell liquors: Their houſes therefore are always filled with ſailors. Malt-ſpirits being a very profitable commodity, a vaſt quantity is accordingly conſumed.

When I came to this city, I found thirty veſſels in the road, and there were almoſt as many when I left it, excluſive of the barks which belong to that country.

Canals.

Streets.

Churches.

Miniſters.

No appearance can be more agreeable than that of the canals, which are bordered with trees, and adorned with the fineſt houſes imaginable. The canals of moſt note are the *Tygerſgarſt*, the *Jonkerſgragt*, the *Kaeimanſgragt*, and the *Rhinoceroſgragt*, and that which is formed by the great river; the reſt are not ſo conſiderable: The largeſt ſtreets are thoſe which are diſtinguiſhed by the names of the *Prince*, the *Lords*, and *Newport*. There are three churches, namely, the *Dutch*, the *Portugueſe*, and the *Malayan*, where ſervice is performed in thoſe languages. There are alſo ſeveral other miniſters, who are ſent to thoſe places where the *Dutch* have any ſettlements.

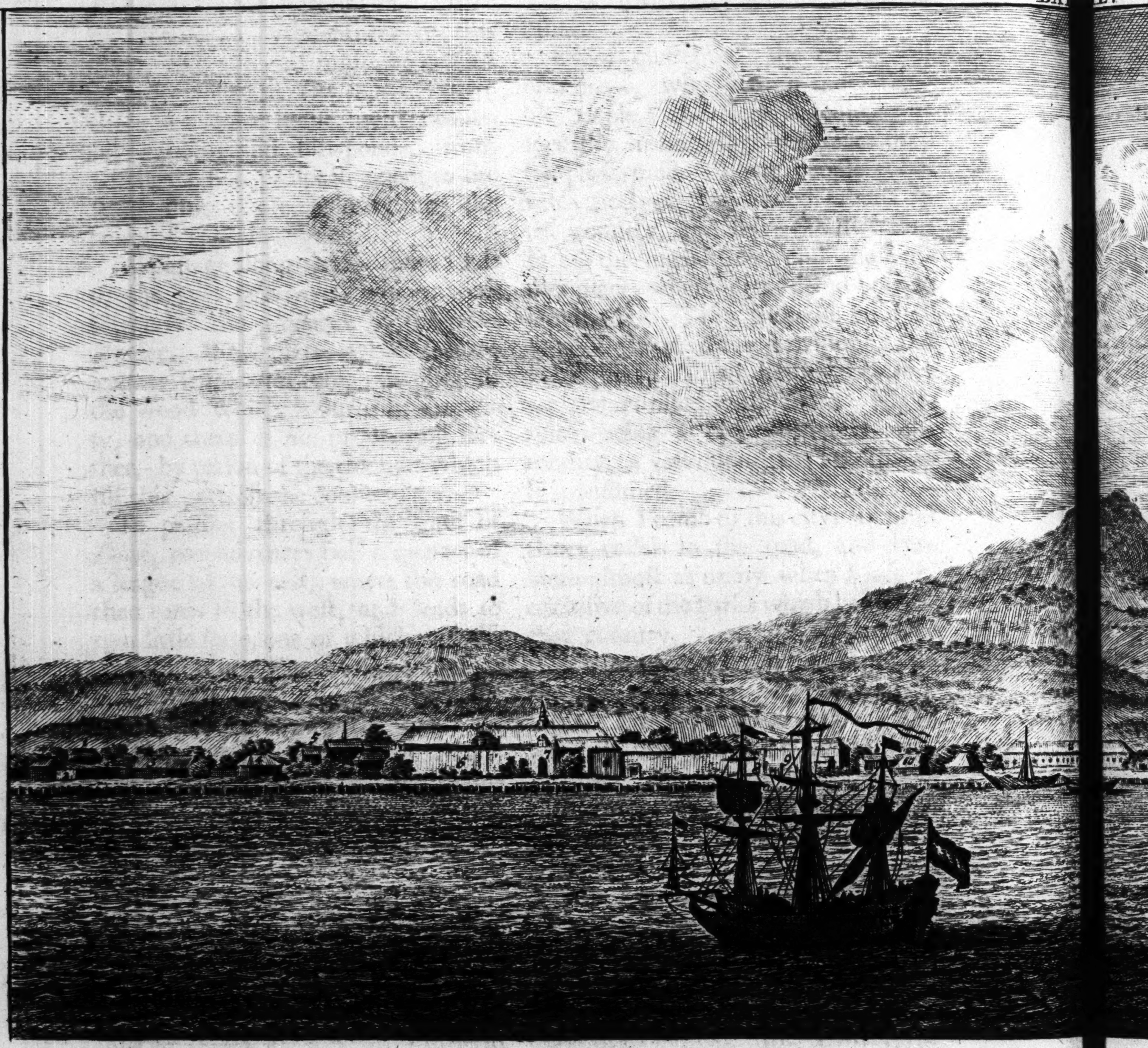
Strange nations.

Chineſe habits.

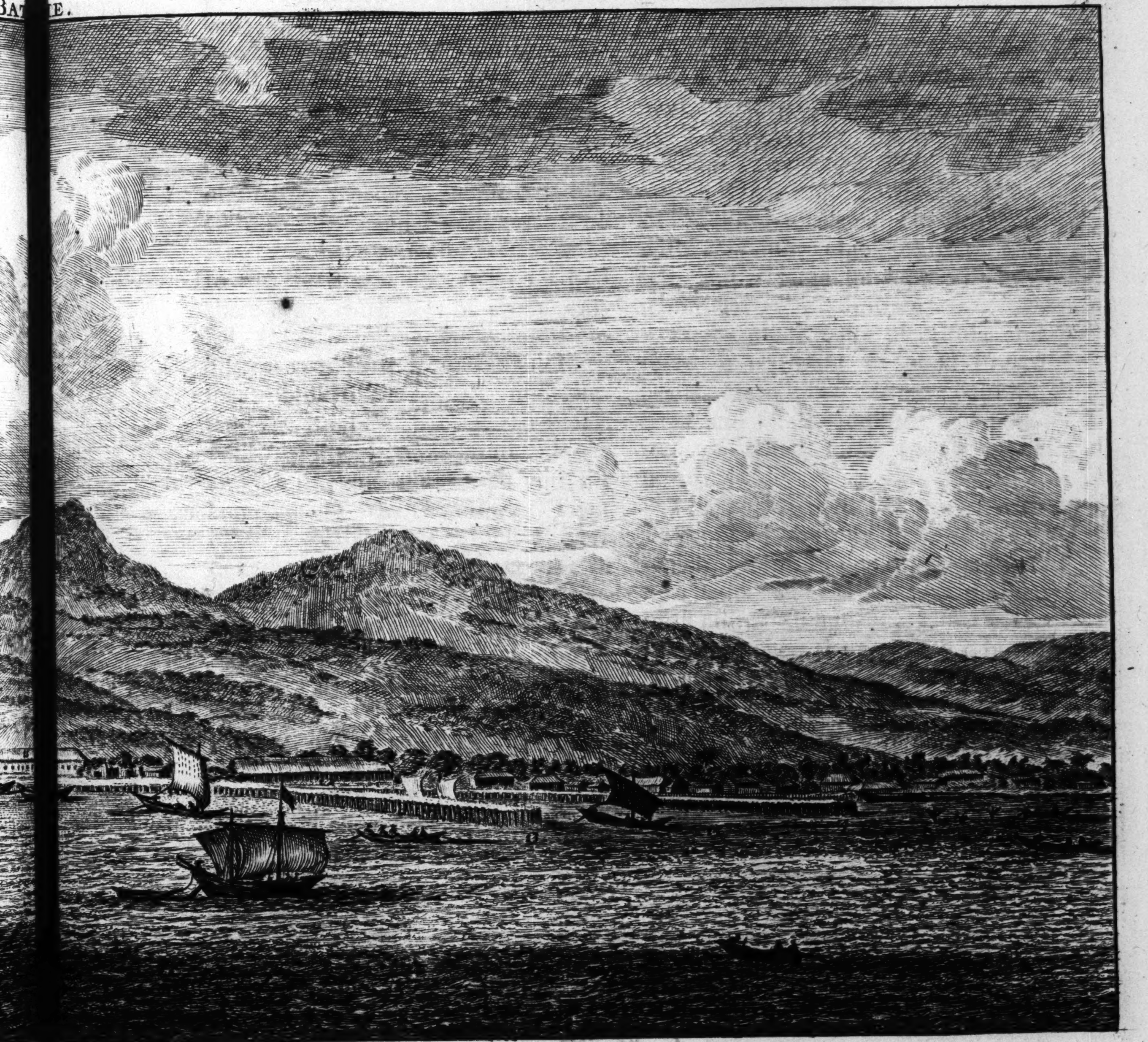
This city is inhabited by a great number of ſtrangers, ſome of whom are habited in a very particular manner, while others are almoſt naked. The *Chineſe*, who are moſt numerous, wear a kind of ſhirt, and under it a ſtrait pair of drawers, which hang down to their feet. Some of them have wide ſleeves to their ſhirts, others thoſe which are very narrow, and

7 AP 53

BAT IE.



BAT IE. 220.



7 AP 53

and buttoned on their wriſts: Their legs are naked, and they wear ſlippers: Their hair is plaited round a bodkin, on the top of their heads, like that of women, and they always go bare-headed, and carry a fan in their hand. Their wives are habited after the manner of the country. There are alſo abundance of *Metiſs*, who are a people deſcended from *Moors* and *Europeans*. The *Kaſtietſes* have a nearer reſemblance to the *Europeans*, or *Whites*; and there are a third ſort of them, called *Poeſtietſes*, whoſe complexion differs very little from ours. They ſpeak broken *Portugueſe*, and pretend it is their natural language. Moſt of them underſtand *Dutch*, and are likewiſe acquainted with the language of the country. Their habit reſembles that which I have deſcribed before in my account of the iſland of *Ceilon*. The other ſtrangers whom one finds at *Batavia*, are *Makaſſares*, *Bougis*, *Baliers*, *Malayans*, and *Moors* of *Amboina*, or *Ternate*.

Proviſions.

With reſpect to their proviſions; their meat is not extraordinary, eſpecially their beef, which is very lean, and they have no mutton but what is brought from other places. The ſmall quantity of milk which their cows yield is very ſurpriſing; but theſe defects have ſome compenſation in the abundance of ſmall game in the woods. But the conſumption is not conſiderable, tho' they are brought to market. Their chief food is pullets, which are brought from the coaſt of *Java*, together with ducks and geeſe, and ſometimes deer, and elkes. The circumjacent woods are full of wild boars; and they likewiſe harbour Tigers, and Rhinoceroſſes, with great numbers of apes, and other animals.

Fiſh.

This city is plentifully ſupplied with fiſh, the largeſt of which are moſt eſteemed; namely, the *Kakap*, the *Jacob Evertſen*, the *Bream*, the *Cabillau*, the *Royal Fiſh*, and the carp. There are alſo ſmelts, ſoles, and a kind of plaice, &c. together with cray-fiſh, crabs, oyſters, and eels, and a large kind of cray-fiſh, whoſe flavour is admirable.

Herbs.

Herbs are equally plentiful; and there is no want of good *French* beans, green peas, carrots, parſnips, large and ſmall raddiſhes, and potatoes, of which ſome people make bread.

The profil of Batavia.

I have preſented the reader with a profil of the city in plate 220, which I took in one of the company's barks, and the whole is marked with numerical figures; 1. ſhews the ſtructure where the great bell is hung; 2. the advanced guard; 3. the magazines of oil; 4. the ſtores of wood; 5. the place where rice is depoſited; 6. the caſtle, or citadel; 7. the gate which fronts the water; 8. a gate of lattice in the caſtle wall; 9. a ſmith's ſhop; 10. the wood-yard; 11. the magazine for cloves; 12. the free port; 13. the eaſt cape or point; 14. the weſtern cape; 15. the river; 16. the ſea-mark, called the duke of *Alva*, erected upon a bank of ſand at the mouth of the river. As this city is very low, one can ſee nothing on the ſide next the river, but the land which lies above it, together with one ſide of the citadel, and the mountains which are covered with trees.

CHAP. LXXIII.

The retinue of the governor-general of the Indies. *The dignity which attends that employment. The difficulties inſeparable from it, as well as from thoſe of the other directors. The author reſolves to return by land. A recital of the honours he received.*

I Shall now give ſome account of the honours which are rendered to the governor-general of the *Indies*; who, in the name of the company, governs all the territories they poſſeſs in this country.

The governor's train.

He uſually devotes *Wedneſday* and *Saturday* to his recreation, at one of his country ſeats, on which occaſion he is preceded by a quarter-maſter, and ſixteen horſemen, together with a trumpet, and two halberdiers on horſe-back. He is ſeated in a light coach, made after the *Spaniſh* faſhion, and drawn by two horſes. His maſter of the horſe rides by the ſide of it, followed by ſix other halberdiers, who ride two in a breaſt. Theſe are ſucceeded by two other coaches, in which are thoſe who accompany the governor, and the proceſſion is cloſed by forty eight horſemen, with their captain, two quarter-maſters, and a trumpet at their head. He is attended almoſt in the ſame manner when he paſſes through the city, only his guard is then compoſed of foot; but his maſter of the horſe, and the halberdiers, are always on horſeback, unleſs he be going either to a wedding or a funeral; for then the halberdiers march on foot with their partiſans in their hands. But the maſter of the horſe rides always beſide the chariot.

The manner in which the troops are exerciſed.

On *Sunday*, after divine ſervice, he cauſes his guards to parade in the court of the citadel before his palace. Firſt appears a led horſe richly capariſoned, and led by the bridle by an *European*; next a company of cavalry, armed with cuiraſſes, and attended by a trumpet; then a company of granadiers, followed by a battalion of fuſiliers, pikemen, and muſquetiers, armed with head-pieces, and preceded by ſix hautbois. They march twice round the place in good order, and are well acquainted with every branch of their exerciſe.

The arduous ſtate of a governor.

Theſe marks of grandeur contribute in ſome meaſure to ſoften the fatigues of ſo weighty and arduous a charge; for this great officer has never any reſt or vacation, as among us. He is harraſſed with letters and pacquets, from the moment day begins to break, and is continually employed in the affairs of the company, by reaſon of the vaſt extent of the country which is under his juriſdiction: Beſide all which, he has a variety of buſineſs to tranſact with the ſhips that yearly come from *Holland*. The ſun is no ſooner riſen than the two principal merchants, the commander of the citadel, the major, the architect, the chief engineer, and ſeveral others, come to give him an account of what paſſes, and to receive his orders. About eleven o'clock the *Sabandhaer* waits upon him, to give him a particular account of the barks, merchandiſes, and perſons that are arrived, and the place to which they are bound; after which he diſpatches the neceſſary paſs-ports, and muſt likewiſe give audience to thoſe who have any affairs to tranſact at the palace.

Theſe attentions engage him till dinner-time, when he has not above half an hour's reſt, and he even employs part of that time in talking of buſineſs; after which he returns to the duties of his province till ſupper. So that to form a true judgment of things, without being influenced by outward appearances, one muſt needs pronounce him a meer ſlave, who has not a moment to himſelf, and dares not paſs one night out of the citadel. He is likewiſe obliged to give the company an account of all that paſſes on the coaſt of *Java*, and its dependent territories. Every member of the council is obliged to do the ſame by a courier, with reſpect to thoſe affairs which are under his direction.

The aſſembling of the council.

The council aſſembles conſtantly twice a week, and ſometimes oftner, as any extraordinary occaſion may require. Foreign miniſters who arrive at *Batavia*, are not permitted to depart from thence before they have been conducted to an audience of the governor.

Theſe conſtant employments, which were always preſented to my view, cauſed me to recollect the manner in which I had paſſed my time at *Moſcow*, where, when I asked my friends, how long their feſtivals and rejoicings were deſigned to be continued, they immediately replied, that their diverſions began with *January*, and ended with *December*. How different is this manner of living, from that of perſons of diſtinction in this country! I was therefore ſo far from envying their grandeur and proſperity, that, on the contrary, I thought myſelf very happy in being able with a moderate fortune to enjoy a pleaſing tranquility of mind, in conjunction with a ſtate of liberty, without which all other advantages are of no ſignification.

The director-general.

The moſt important charge next to the governor's, is that of director-general, which is altogether as fatiguing; ſince he is obliged by his ſtation to buy up, and diſpoſe of all the merchandiſe of the company, of what nature ſoever it be, and to what place ſoever they ſend them; beſide the other employments incident to this office. In a word, he has the management of every particular that relates to commerce; and all the merchants and officers of the company render an account to him of what paſſes, and receive from him the keys of the magazines, the charge of which is conſigned to his care. This director alſo iſſues his orders with reſpect to the particular cargo each ſhip is to take on board.

The general of the company's troops.

During my continuance at *Batavia*, no one was more eſteemed than Mr. *de Wilde*, general of the company's troops, and the third officer in their ſervice. He is alſo a member of the council of the *Indies*, and a perſon of extraordinary merit. I ſhall not give any particular account of the members of the council, nor of thoſe who poſſeſs inferior ſtations, ſince what relates to them is ſufficiently known in our country. For which reaſon I ſhall only add, that I do not believe there is any place in the world where they write ſo much as in the offices belonging to the company, where a number of extraordinary penmen are employed.

A miſunderſtanding between the Mogul *and the company.*

As I had no longer any affairs to detain me at *Batavia*, I thought of returning home by *Perſia*, and found myſelf the more inclinable to undertake that journey, becauſe I was informed about that time, that four *French* men of war were cruiſing on the *Indian* coaſts, and had taken the *Phœnix* on the coaſt of *Coromandel*, in her return from *Bengale*, and two *Engliſh* ſhips in the beginning of the year; beſide which there was ſome miſunderſtanding between the great *Mogul* and the company, in conſequence of which that monarch would no longer permit them to trade on the coaſt of *Coromandel*. As it therefore was impracticable for me to go thither without hazard, I reſolved to return by land as ſoon as poſſible, though I was adviſed to the contrary, and was alſo preſſed to take the opportunity of embarking in one of the ſhips that were returning, to which I had no manner of inclination. The governor-general, perceiving my reſolution was fixed, informed me, that in

1706. eight or ten days he ſhould diſpatch two ſhips for *Perſia*, and that I might have a paſſage in one of them. I then deſired a paſs-port from the director-general, which he granted me immediately, telling me at the ſame time, with all imaginable civility, that he was ſorry to loſe me ſo ſoon, and before I had ſeen one of his eſtates, which he intended to have ſhewn me.

A pleaſure-houſe belonging to the governor-general.

I, however, went to divert myſelf once more at *Struiſwick*, with the governor, and general *de Wilde*, together with other perſons of diſtinction. This place, which belongs to the governor, is beautified with the fineſt avenues and moſt delightful walks in the world. It is likewiſe full of fruit-trees, and watered by the great river, which runs on one ſide of it. The houſe is built of wood, and contains a ſpacious hall, with a variety of other apartments. We breakfaſted here, and went afterward to another houſe belonging to this lord, where we arrived before noon, and found ſome members of the council of the *Indies*, with other friends, and were entertained in a very elegant manner. The governor told me in the evening, that the director-general was to go the 11th of *Auguſt* to the iſle * *without reſt*, and that I might take this opportunity to ſee it. The director likewiſe was ſo obliging as to deſire me, two days before his departure, to accompany him thither, and ſent me the following order the ſame day.

Thoſe who have the command of the ſhip called the Prince Eugene, *are hereby authoriſed to receive on board the perſon and baggage of* Cornelius Le Bruyn, *in order to conduct him into* Perſia; *and they have orders to lodge, and entertain him in the captain's cabbin.*

Given at the caſtle of *Batavia*, the 6th of *Auguſt*, 1706.

A. DE RIEBEEK.

I failed not to go at the appointed time to the director's houſe, where I found above twenty perſons, who were to accompany us to the iſle *without reſt*, which is about three leagues from *Batavia*. We ſet out on this little progreſs with the ſound of ſeveral trumpets, and hautboys, and all the ſhips in the road hoiſted their flags and ſtreamers, which afforded a very agreeable proſpect. We arrived there about eight o' clock, and took a view of the iſland, and the fort, which is well provided with cannon, and has a good gariſon. They make in this iſland all things neceſſary for refitting ſhips, and there is ſuch a continual noiſe of hammers and anvils, that it is juſtly called the iſland *without reſt*. It is ſurrounded with banks of ſand, which prevent the approach of larger veſſels, and none but ſmall barks paſs between that and the iſle of *Kuiper*, which is over-againſt it, at a ſmall diſtance. I went over to it, and took from thence a draught of the former. While I was thus employed, the director viſited ſome of the members of the council, and about noon they gave me notice by a ſloop, that it was dinner-time. I had then juſt finiſhed my work, which the reader will find in plate 221. The galley in which we came appears at the point of the iſland, and upon the bank are three cranes with ſeveral ſmall veſſels.

Several fiſhes of extraordinary beauty were ſhewn me at my return; and as dinner was not then ſerved up, I haſtened to the ſhore, in order to take a draught of the iſland of *Kuiper*, which is exhibited in plate 222, for I was very ſenſible that the company would not part with me after dinner, becauſe it was the director's lady's birth-day, for which reaſon they intended to devote that time to pleaſure. We were entertained in a ſplendid manner both with fleſh and fiſh, under a tent, and there was no want of wine upon that occaſion. General *de Wilde*, and

[*] Ourust.

and five members of the council of the *Indies* were there alſo. About the middle of the entertainment ſome *Dutchmen* made their appearance; two of them were habited like women, and they diverted us with ſeveral agreeable fancies. We returned in the evening to the ſame place, where we continued our diverſions, and drank the governor's health, which was accompanied with a diſcharge of the ſhips cannon, and the ſound of the trumpets, and hautbois. About ſeven we arrived at *Batavia*, and went to congratulate madam *de Riebeek* on her birthday.

As the time of my departure drew nigh, I went the next day to take my leave of the members of the council of the *Indies*, and to return them my acknowledgments for all their civilities. General *de Wilde*, preſſed me with his uſual complaiſance to dine with him, and I ſhall always retain a grateful remembrance of the obliging manner in which he treated me: I muſt add too, in juſtice to his character, that I never ſaw a more polite gentleman than himſelf.

CHAP. LXXIV.

Tombs of the Chineſe. *Their funerals. An entertainment given by the governor-general. His civility to the author.*

Chineſe *tombs.*

TWO days before my departure, I went with the governor's maſter of the horſe, to take a view of ſome *Chineſe* tombs; and I made a draught of them, which the reader will find in plate 223. Theſe tombs are all built in the ſame form, only ſome are larger, and more ornamented than others.

Their ſentiments with relation to their tombs.

The reaſon they aſſign for this uniformity in the ſtructure of their tombs, is, that all Men are alike ſhut up in the womb of their mothers, and therefore there ought to be no diſtinction between them after their death. They firſt dig a grave in proportion to the coffin, which is longer, but not deeper than ours, and is likewiſe very thick, and varniſhed over. They cover it at the ſame time with paper, and bind cords about it. After which they caſt money into the grave, more or leſs, according to the rank and eſtate of the deceaſed perſon, and place the coffin upon it. They then make the cement which is to be employed in building the tomb, and is compoſed of the whites of eggs, and other ingredients, which render it ſo hard, and binding, that it is impoſſible either to break or remove it from its place. The top of the tomb is raiſed ſome feet above the earth, in a round form, and encompaſſed with ornaments that reſemble ſteps. They place likewiſe on the forepart ſeveral branches, and ſome ſquare baſes, upon which they fix the heads of beaſts, ſuch as lions, tygers, &c. painted in green, with a ſmall intermixture of red, by way of ornament. They likewiſe raiſe, on the middle of the ſteps which lead up to the tomb, a ſmall work in form of an altar, with a red border in the middle of the front, and ſome *Chineſe* characters in gold. The pavement which is laid before the tomb, is of the ſame maſonry with the reſt of the work; it is likewiſe white, and divided into three compartments ſeparate from each other, with a little elevation on the backpart. There is another altar on the right, in the front, with a kind of a niche in the middle.

The expence of theſe tombs.

Theſe tombs coſt ſometimes two, three, or four hundred crowns; but there are ſome which have no ornaments beſtowed upon them. The maſonry and form of the work is the ſame in all, becauſe it is thought that the dead, by theſe means, will repoſe in perfect ſafety.

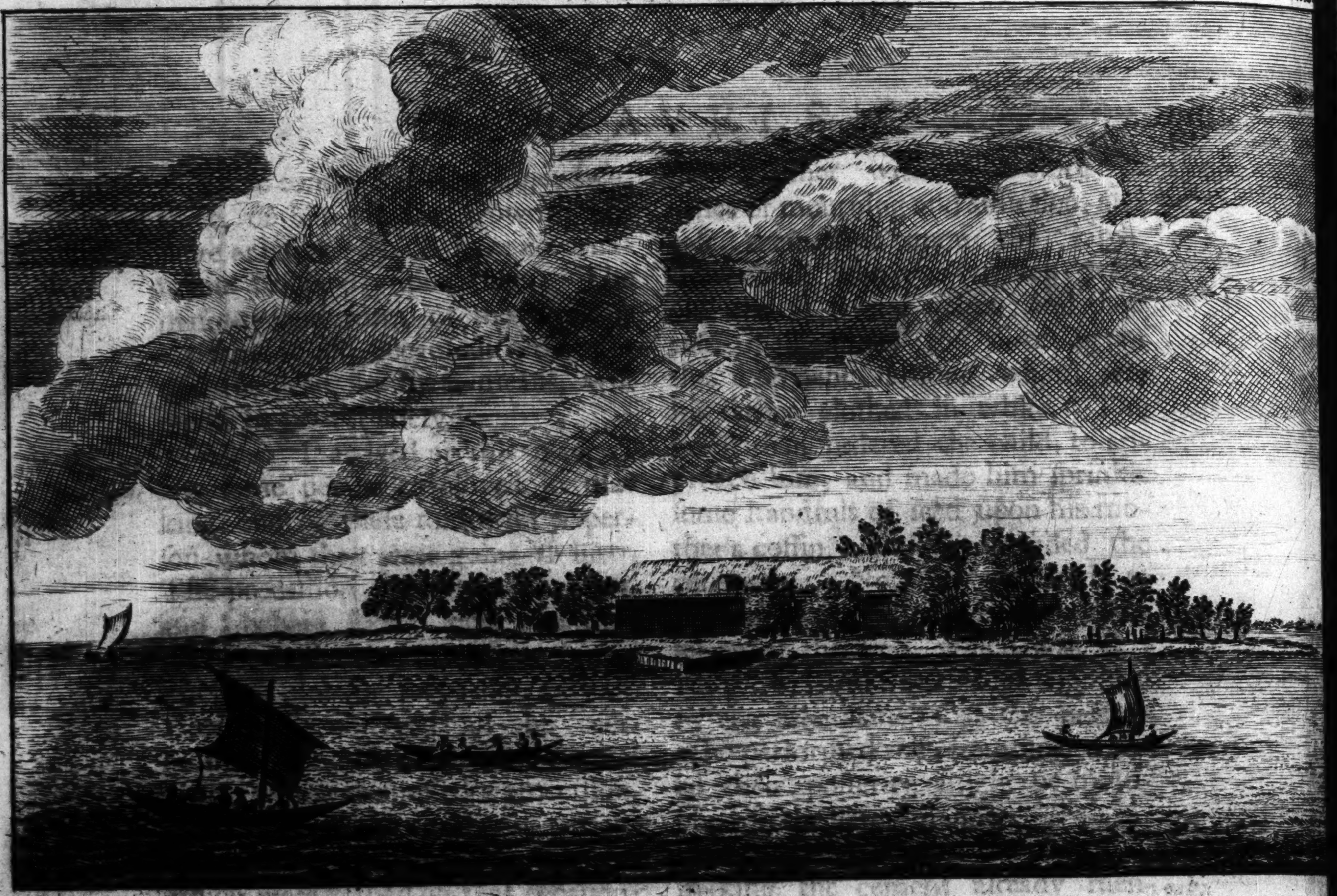
A funeral proceſſion.

When I arrived at this place, I ſaw ſome people employed in making one of theſe tombs for a perſon whom they were going to inter. The proceſſion advanced ſoon after, and I beheld ſeveral tents furniſhed with every thing neceſſary for a kitchen, and for preparing a repaſt. I carefully obſerved all the ceremonials practiſed by the funeral train, which reſembled a proceſſion, with reſpect to the number of perſons that compoſed it, and the ornaments which were carried on that occaſion; ſuch as ſtreamers, paraſols, and canopies, under one of which was carried one of their ſaints, known by the name of *Joosje*; and I likewiſe heard the ſound of ſeveral bells. When they came to the place where the corpſe was to be laid in the earth, every thing was diſpatched with great expedition, and in very good order. Over-againſt one of theſe tombs was a pavilion, and ſeveral paraſols, under one of which I obſerved a large table covered with all ſorts of proviſions brought from the city, and among the reſt a raw hog, and a he-goat, which were to be offered to the ſaint I have already mentioned. In the mean time thoſe who attended the funeral threw money into the grave; and then the corps was let down. A prieſt, who ſtood at one end of the grave, held a book in his hand, in which he read, and by the ſide of him ſtood another, who held a ſilver plate full of ſeeds, of which he threw now and then a handful toward the attendants, as likewiſe upon the coffin, and the deceaſed woman's child, who ſtood on the other ſide of the tomb, covered with a robe of unwrought flax, which flowed over his head after the manner of the antients, who covered themſelves in this manner with ſack-cloth in times of mourning and affliction, and caſt themſelves upon the earth. This child, who was but ten years old, did ſo ſeveral times, and then roſe up again by the direction of the attendants, among whom was his father clothed in white. The prieſt then ordered the child to approach him, and made him ſprinkle ſome handfuls of ſeed upon his mother's coffin, which concluded the ceremony. Nothing appeared to me more extraordinary then the ſcattering of the ſeed, which was certainly emblematical, and ſignified to the attendants, that the perſons who performed the ceremonial wiſhed their poſterity might be multiplied in the ſame manner.

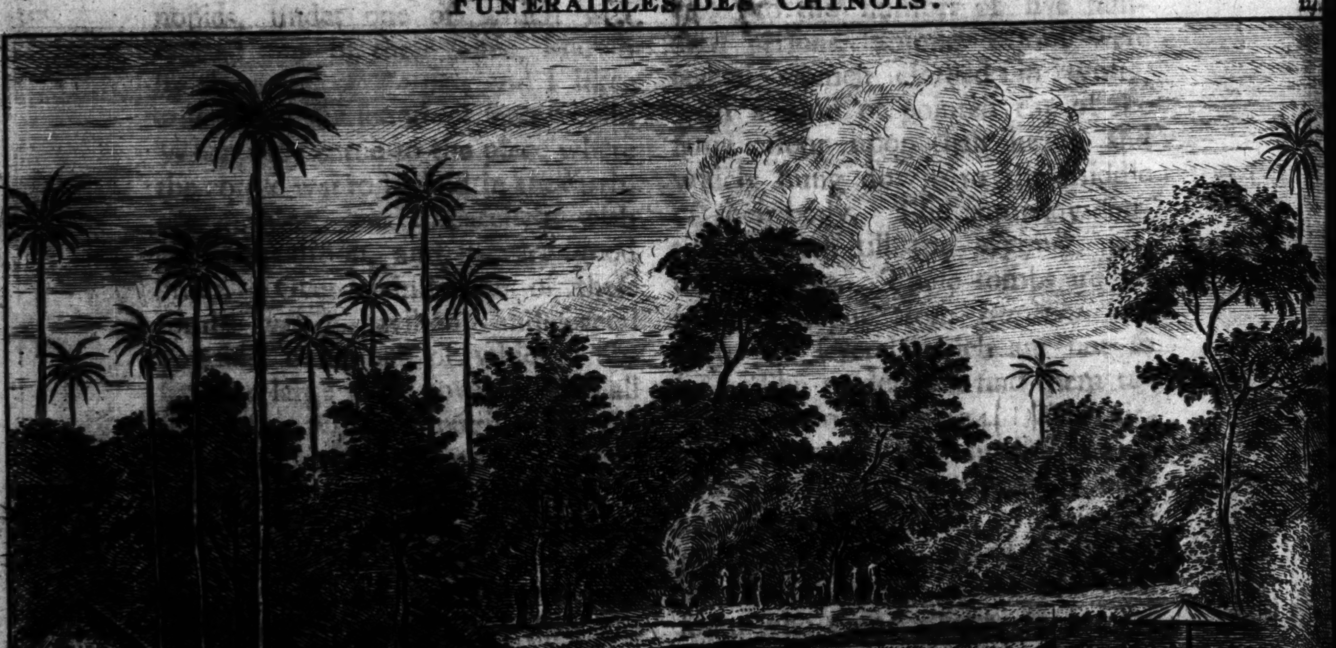
The funeral repaſt.

While ſome were employ'd in making the cement already mentioned, the reſt ſeated themſelves at table, to the number of five hundred perſons, among whom were ſeveral women clothed in white, with a kind of pointed cap of the ſame colour upon their heads, and which hung down to the middle of their body. The company continued there till the evening, under the trees. Theſe tombs are but a ſmall league from *Batavia*, and there are ſeveral which are not ſo far. The reader will find them repreſented in plate 224. The circumſtances of this funeral repaſt correſpond with the cuſtom I have elſewhere mentioned, of bringing proviſions to the tombs of the dead in other places. There are even ſome who come thither to ſmoke, or drink coffee, *&c.* others to pay their devotions, as I have ſeen practiſed at *Chiras*, or *Zjie-raes* in *Perſia*. They frequently make theſe repaſts, ſoon after the interment of the body, upon carpets ſpread on the earth. This ceremonial is practiſed among the oriental Chriſtians, namely, in *Georgia*, *Armenia*, and among the *Greeks*, who pour out their lamentations around the tombs of their anceſtors, as has been obſerv'd in the account of *Iſpahan*. The more ſorrow they teſtify on theſe

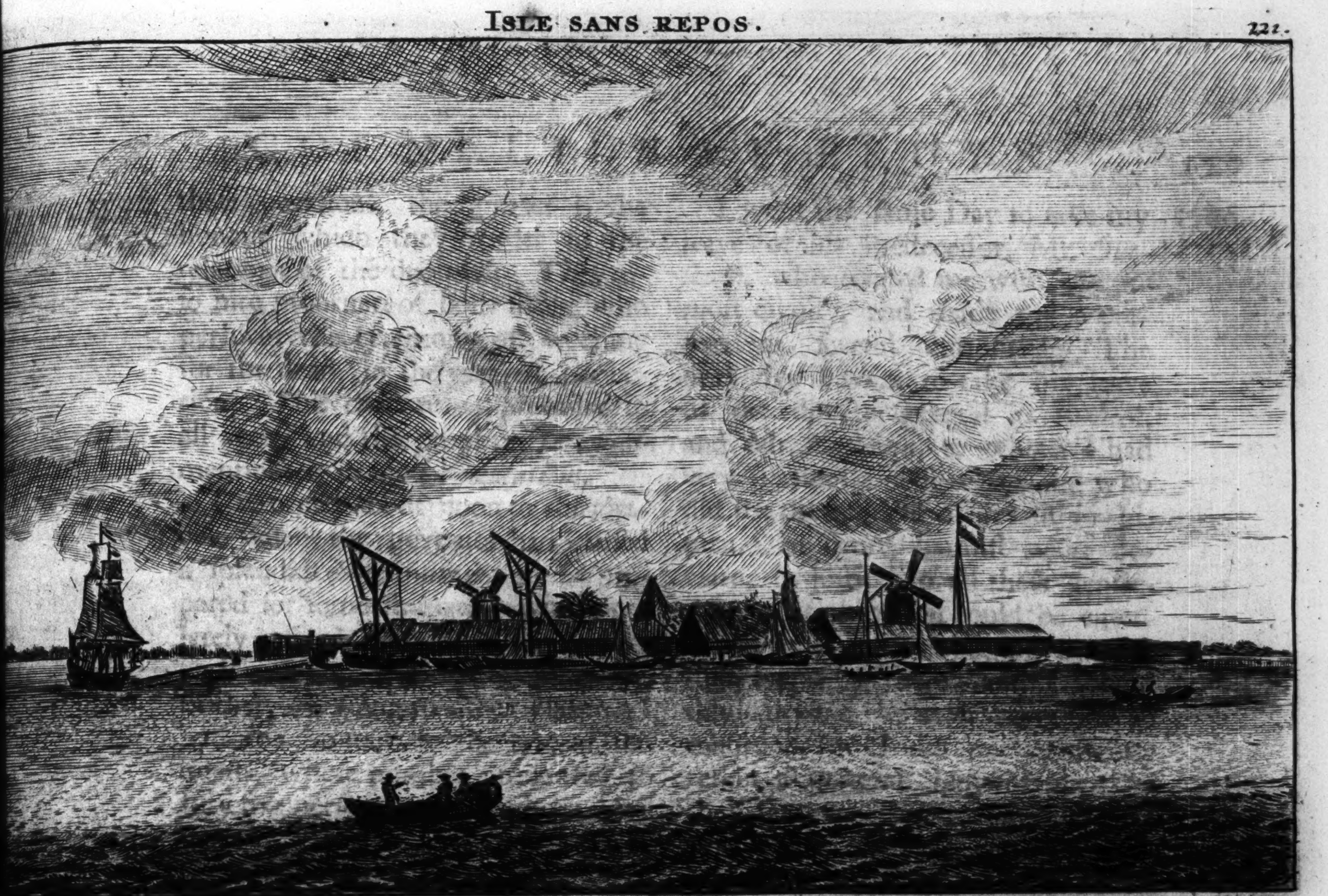
L'ISLE D'KUYPER.



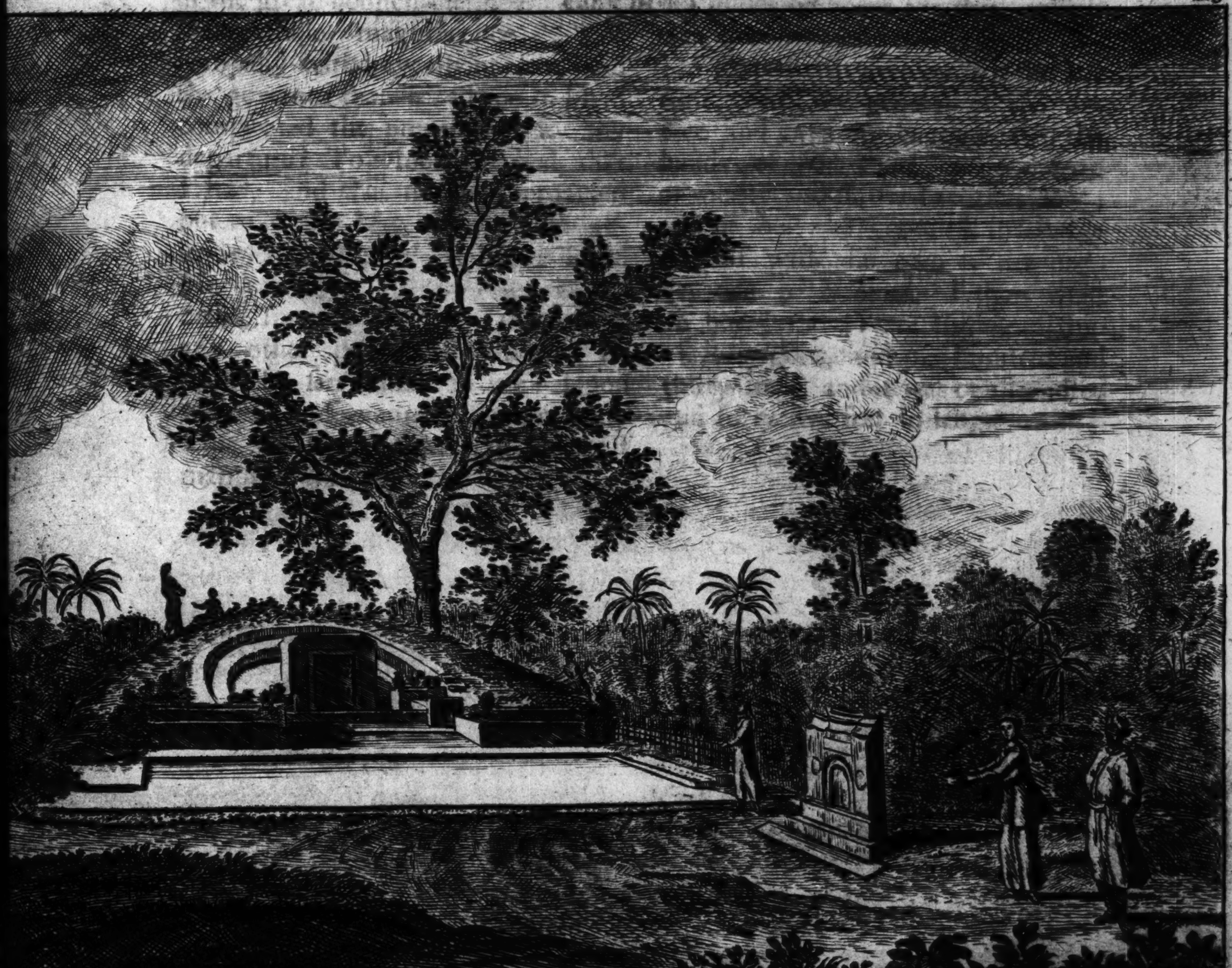
FUNERAILLES DES CHINOIS.



ISLE SANS REPOS. 221.



TOMBEAUX DES CHINOIS. 223.



theſe occaſions, the greater is the honour which they render to the relations of the deceaſed. They alſo hire mourners of both ſexes, who perform the ceremony of weeping for the dead, in the greateſt perfection. This cuſtom has prevailed in all ages; and the prophet *Jeremiah* mentions it in his *Lamentations*.

I returned about noon to the citadel, where the governor had cauſed a ſplendid entertainment to be prepared for ſome ſtrangers, who were lately arrived from *Holland*, as well as for thoſe, who were returning thither, or going to other places. I had the honour to be one of the gueſts, whoſe number amounted to fifty five perſons, among whom were general *de Wilde*, ſeven members of the council of the *Indies*, and moſt of thoſe who conſtitute the council of juſtice. The feaſt was ſerved up in the great council-chamber, with inexpreſſible magnificence. The company withdrew about five, and the governor then asked me if I had compleated the preparations for my departure? To which I replied, that I had, and that nothing remained but to return him my humble acknowledgments for all his civilities. He was again ſo obliging, as to deſire me to tell him, if there were any other particulars wherein he could be ſerviceable to me? Upon which I endeavoured to expreſs my ſenſe of his goodneſs in the beſt manner I was able.

I went the ſame Day to take my leave of his Predeceſſor, Mr. *Outſhorn*, who treated me with the utmoſt civility, and made me a preſent of ſeveral curioſities. The next day I went to take my leave of the director-general *de Riebeek*, and Mr. *Kaſtelein*, to whom I had very particular obligations, and who did me the honour of a viſit in his turn. In ſhort, I muſt again declare, in juſtice to all theſe gentlemen, that no perſon could be entertained in a more obliging manner than I was by them; and I ſhould think myſelf the moſt ungrateful of mankind, if I did not conſtantly retain a grateful remembrance of their favours. I went alſo to take my leave of my old friend Mr. *Hoogkamer*, vice-preſident of the council of juſtice, whoſe memory I ſhall always honour; I then embarked my goods on board the ſhip, which was to convey me to *Perſia*.

I ſupped that evening, for the laſt time, with the general of the *Indies*, and gave my baggage into the hands of Mr. *Pauli*, a gentleman of merit, and ſteward to that lord; and he had the goodneſs to charge himſelf with the care of its conveyance to *Holland*. I then went on board the *Prince Eugene*, a ſhip of forty guns, and one hundred and thirty men, and it was one hundred and forty five feet in length.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXV.

The author's departure from Batavia. *Obſervations on the water near the Line. The ſouthern coaſt of* Arabia Felix. *His arrival at* Gamron.

The author ſets ſail from Batavia.

We ſet ſail the 15th of *Auguſt*, in company with another veſſel called the *Monſter*, from which we had orders not to ſeparate ourſelves, by reaſon of the war of which I have already ſpoken; and we met the *Beverwick*, and ſeveral other ſhips coming from *Holland*. A calm obliged us to anchor in the evening near the iſles of *Combuis*, in eleven fathom water. We continued our courſe at break of day; but were obliged to ſtop again in the evening, and anchor in ſeventeen fathom water. The next day we did nothing but ſhift up and down, the wind being againſt us to the weſt, and a ſmall bark came up with us in order to ſell us fruits, and other proviſions. We caſt anchor again, toward evening, in twenty three fathom water, and continued our courſe at day-break, ſteering weſt-ſouth-weſt, with the wind ſouth-ſouth-eaſt. That day the captain of the *Monſter* came on board us, to agree with our captain, on the ſignals to be uſed in the voyage. About evening we caſt anchor again near the ſecond point of *Java*, and ſailed again at day-break. We were obliged to anchor again between the ſecond point and the *New Iſle*, in twenty four fathom water. We found here a ſmall *Engliſh* veſſel that ſet out from *Batavia* before us, and we ſent her to fetch water from the corner of the *terra firma* of *Java*, where it is very excellent. I made a draught of the *New Iſle*, which the reader will find in plate 225, as alſo of the *Prince's Iſland*, oppoſite to it, and which is exhibited in plate 226.

The New Iſle, *and that called* Prince's.

The next day we continued our courſe, and left the *Engliſh* veſſel at anchor, which by all circumſtances, was to take in pepper, inſtead of water, in that place. As the wind was ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, we paſſed on in the evening, at the diſtance of two leagues from the weſtern point of *Java*, which lay ſouth-eaſt of us. We ſteer'd weſt-ſouth-weſt and by ſouth, and ſoon loſt ſight of land, the wind blowing a freſh gale. That night, and the two following days, the wind continued ſouth-eaſt, and we had exceeding good weather. The third day we ſteered weſtward, the wind being eaſt-ſouth-eaſt. The firſt of *September* the captain of our ſhip went on board the *Monſter*; and as it appeared in the evening, that we were advanced into the longitude of 104 degrees, and 45 minutes, it was reſolved that we ſhould ſteer weſtward, as far as 89 degrees, and forty or fifty minutes longitude, and 9 degrees ſouth latitude, and then proceed northward, paſſing the line to the tenth degree of northern latitude; and from thence, north-north-weſt, as far as the cape of *Raſalgato*, or toward the coaſt of *Arabia*. On the fourth, the *Monſter* hoiſted her flag upon the main-maſt, and we took down ours toward evening, and diſcharged a cannon, as had been before agreed. The fifteen days, in which we were to have the lead, being expired, we lay by, to let her advance before us; and as ſhe was a very bad ſailor, we were obliged to do ſo very often, without being able to take the opportunity of the wind, which at that time ſtood fair for us. This circumſtance created us much uneaſineſs, ſince we were apprehenſive it would prove a great impediment to our voyage.

The 5th we loſt ſight of the *Monſter*'s lanthorn, during the night, but continued our courſe directly weſt, with few ſails up. The 6th in the morning, we perceived her ſouth-weſt of us, at a vaſt diſtance, upon which we ſteered that courſe, and ſhe came up within two leagues of us. On the 8th ſhe made a ſignal for changing the courſe, and advancing weſt-north-weſt, and on the 9th the weather was changeable. On the 10th ſhe made another ſignal for ſome of us to come on board her, and we advanced northward in the evening. The next day we had a view of her to the north-weſt, at the diſtance of two leagues from us, and in the ſouthern latitude of 6 degrees 42 minutes, and 88 degrees 30 minutes longitude. On the 12th, about noon, having advanced about 25 degrees northward, we came into 5 degrees 2 minutes of ſouth latitude, ſteering north, and north-weſt, in order to come up with the other ſhip, which, in the evening, was within a league of us to the weſt.

The water very ſalt near the line.

The 15th we drew near the line, and found the water much ſalter there than in other parts of the ſea, not only to the taſte, but even to the ſight, the waves which beat againſt the prow of our ſhip leaving a thick foam of a whitiſh complexion, and full of ſalt. Some people have formerly been deceived with this appearance, in their approaches to the line, and imagined that it was occaſioned by the ſhallowneſs of the water; but they were ſoon convinced of their error by ſounding, without finding any bottom. The 16th we advanced twenty three leagues north-north-weſt, as far as fourteen minutes north latitude, and 88 degrees 21 minutes longitude on the other ſide the line. The diſtance from *Batavia* to this place is computed to be 686 leagues, and from the line to *Gamron* 480. The wind blew weſt by north, and weſt-north-weſt, and weſt by ſouth in the night. On the 18th we came into 2 degrees 31 minutes of northern latitude, and 88 degrees of longitude. The *Monſter* took down her flag in the evening, and we hoiſted ours the next day, with a diſcharge of cannon, and found ourſelves about noon, in 3 degrees 44 minutes of northern latitude, and in the longitude of 87 degrees 21 minutes. The other ſhip was three leagues from us, and we were obliged to lie by and wait for her. The following days we ſaw ſeveral ſmall red cray-fiſh playing round our ſhip. On the 23d we ſteered our courſe north-north-weſt, with little wind, which blew from ſouth-ſouth-eaſt. The 24th we changed our compaſſes, from the fifteenth to the tenth degree north-weſt, and advanced on the 26th to the north by weſt, after having given the ſignal. We here ſaw a flight of land birds, together with ſome grey ſwallows, and afterward a white butterfly. We took one of the ſwallows, but reſtored it to its liberty again.

On the 27th, I obſerved an extraordinary greenneſs in the ſea, together with a ſhoal of ſmall fiſh, and a parcel of floating eggs. At the ſame inſtant appeared a large fiſh, very different from any I had ever ſeen before. His head was ſix feet or more in length, and he immediately diſappeared.

The captain of the *Monſter* came on board us that day, and we were then, by agreement, to ſteer north by weſt, till we ſhould come within ſight of the *Arabian* coaſt. They ſounded twice in the evening without finding any bottom. A little after the *Monſter* made a ſignal to notify that land was ſeen. As it was very high, we ſoon perceived it likewiſe, from weſt-ſouth-weſt, to north-weſt by north, having ſailed ſeventeen leagues ſince noon to north by weſt. We then ſteered north-eaſt by eaſt, till morning, when we perceived the weſtern coaſt riſing very high, and ſteep toward the weſt; and alſo another tract of land of the ſame form, to the north-weſt; and to the north a round hill like an iſland, about three

1706. leagues from us; the greateſt appearance of land was toward the weſt, and weſt by north. This was the coaſt of *Arabia Felix*, near the cape of *Curia Muria*, according to the maps. I drew the plan of it in the morning, and perceived to the north-weſt, a kind of gulf between lofty mountains, and in the middle of it an iſland, as it appears in plate 227. The mountains which appear on the other ſide of it are repreſented in plate 228. Before theſe mountains is ſeen an iſland which riſes to a conſiderable height, but is not taken notice of in the maps, any more than the gulf itſelf. One can ſee there only two or three points, without any appearance of the iſland: As the weather was a little cloudy, we could not have a diſtinct view of the land. We afterward advanced, between the *Red Sea* and the *Perſian Gulf*, ſteering firſt ſouth-eaſt, and then ſouth-eaſt by eaſt, the wind being ſouth-weſt by weſt, and weſt-ſouth-weſt. About ten in the morning we ſaw the laſt appearance of that land, to the north-north-weſt, and at the diſtance of about four or five leagues from us. Our bowſprit then happened to break, and we were obliged to repair it as well as we could. About noon we came into 17 degrees 12 minutes of north latitude, ſteering directly eaſt, without ſeeing any land. We afterward directed our courſe eaſt-north-eaſt during the whole night, the wind being weſt-ſouth-weſt. On the 30th the wind ſhifted to the ſouthward, and we ſteered north by eaſt at break of day: About noon we found ourſelves in 18 degrees 8 minutes of northern latitude, and 81 degrees 15 minutes longitude, having ſailed but twenty five leagues north-eaſt by eaſt, in twenty four hours; and as we did not diſcover any land, we ſteered to eaſt-north-eaſt. In the evening the *Monſter* fired a gun, and kindled a blaze upon her ſkuttle, being weſtward of us; ſhe likewiſe fired a ſecond time, and we ſaw again the fire upon her ſkuttle. This was the ſignal to ſound, upon drawing near to land; but we found no bottom at 150 fathom depth. 1706. We lay by till the ſecond watch of the night, with two lanthorns lighted, that the other ſhip's crew might ſee us; but as we heard nothing of them, nor ſaw any light, we continued our courſe, eaſt-north-eaſt, as before, the wind being ſouth-weſt, and weſt-ſouth-weſt, and the ſky very clear. In the mean while we ſounded ſeveral times without finding any bottom. The firſt of *October* we entirely loſt ſight of the *Monſter*, and imagining that ſhe had changed her courſe, we reſolved to continue our voyage without waiting for her, and advanced to the north-eaſt by north, the wind being ſouth-weſt, and came about noon into 20 degrees 8 minutes of north latitude.

The 3d in the afternoon we diſcovered land, and a range of high mountains, to the north-weſt, advancing continually north-north-weſt. In the evening we ſaw the weſtern coaſt, to the weſt by ſouth, about eight leagues from us: We likewiſe found a change in the water in the night, and advanced eaſtward upon that account. On the 4th there was a fog, which prevented us from having any diſtinct view of the land; and about noon we perceived a ſhip to the weſt-north-weſt, about three leagues from us: We immediately fired our cannon, and ſtruck the ſkuttle ſail twice, a ſignal which had been agreed upon between us and the *Monſter*, and ſhe did not anſwer, ſo that we concluded it was not her.

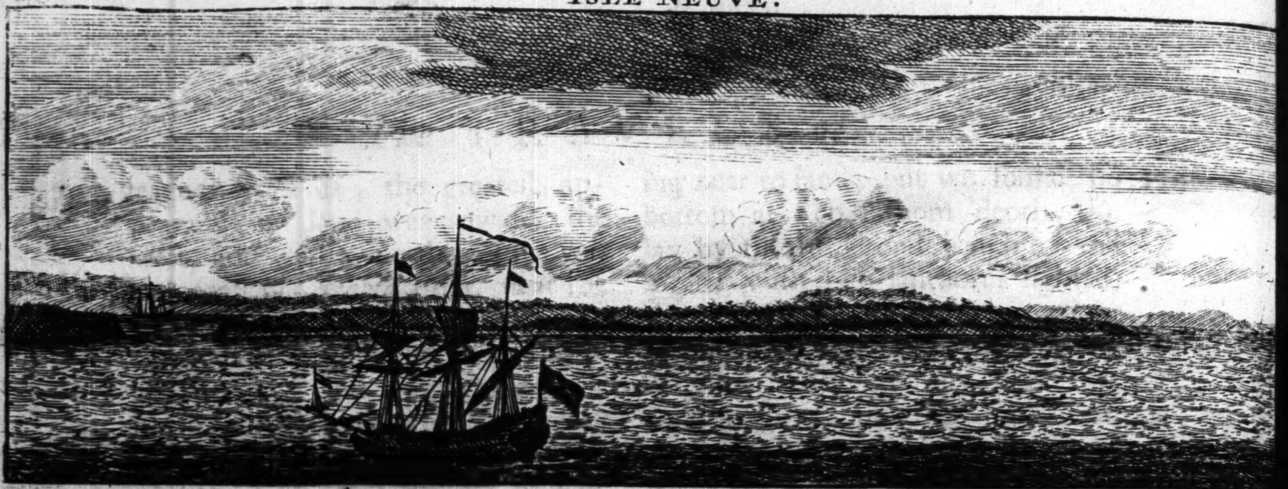
The cape of Raſalagata.

We were ſoon after ſurprized by a calm, and at ſun-ſet we ſounded, about eight or nine leagues from the high cape of *Raſalagata*. As we had ſcarce any wind, we came near the ſhip I mentioned, and found it to be the *Monſter*. About noon we came into 23 degrees 30 minutes northern latitude, under the tropic, and found at ſunſet that land was not above ſix leagues from us. During the night we ſteered weſt-north-weſt, the wind being eaſt-ſouth-eaſt. The next

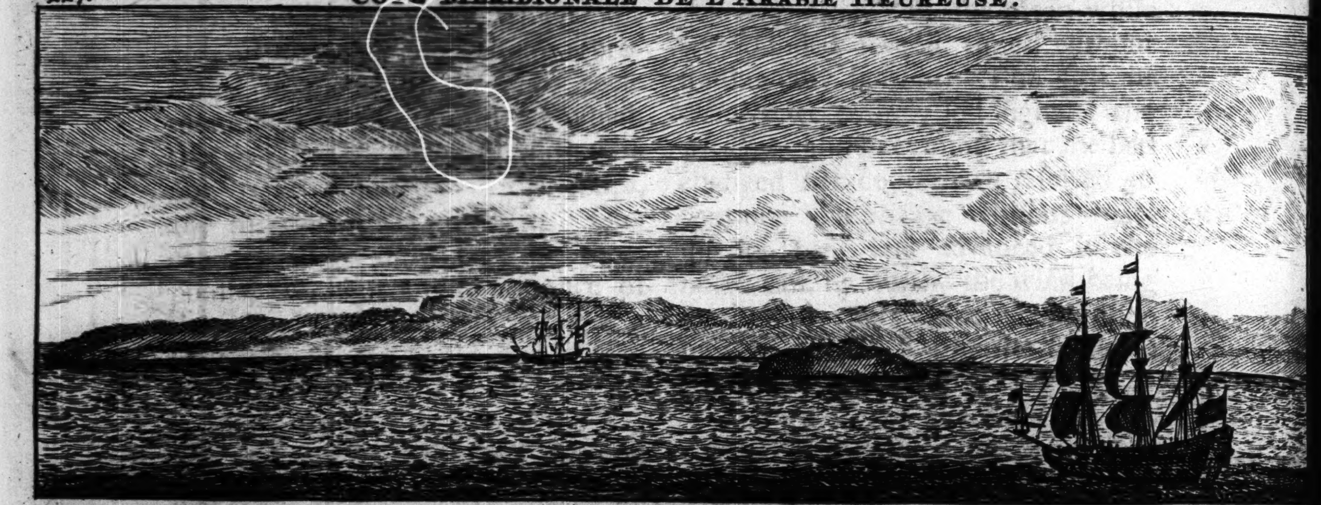
day

7 AP 53

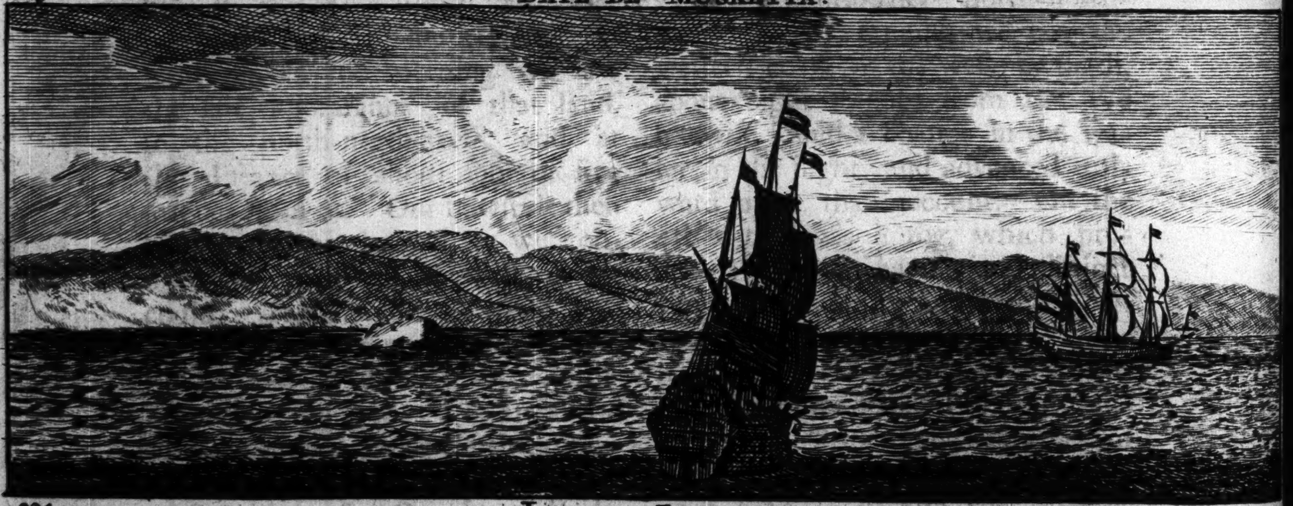
225. ISLE NEUVE.



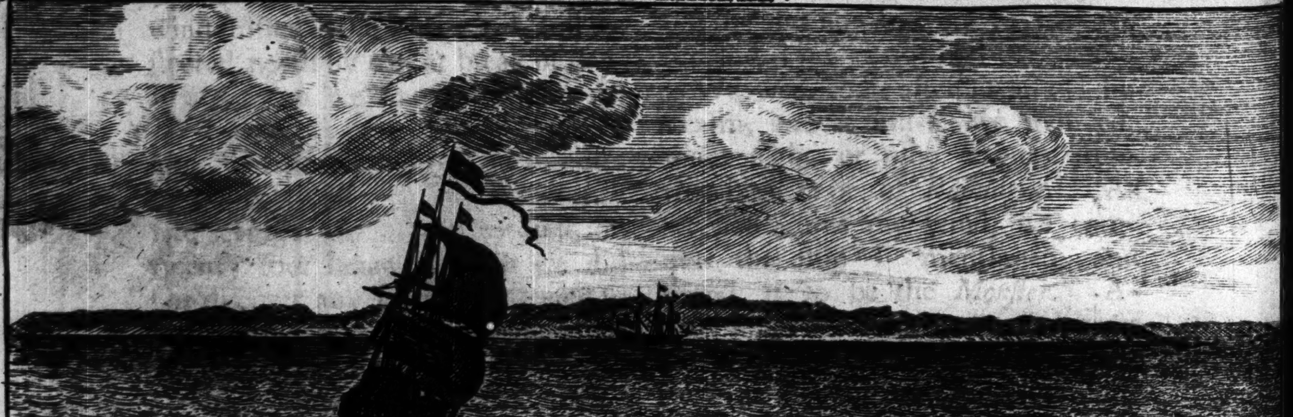
227. CÔTE MERIDIONALE DE L'ARABIE HEUREUSE.



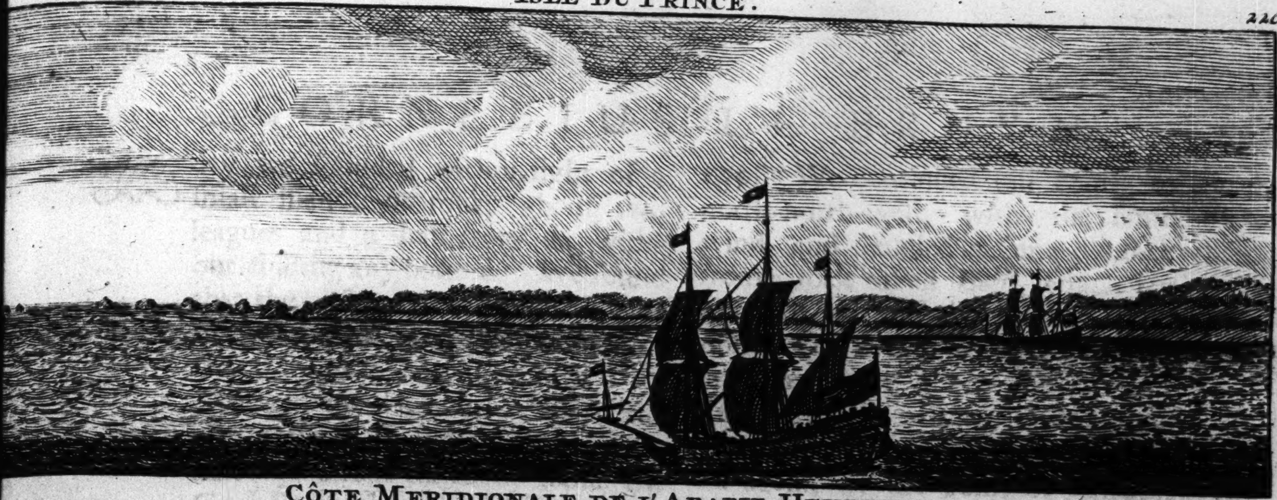
229. BAYE DE MUSKETTA.



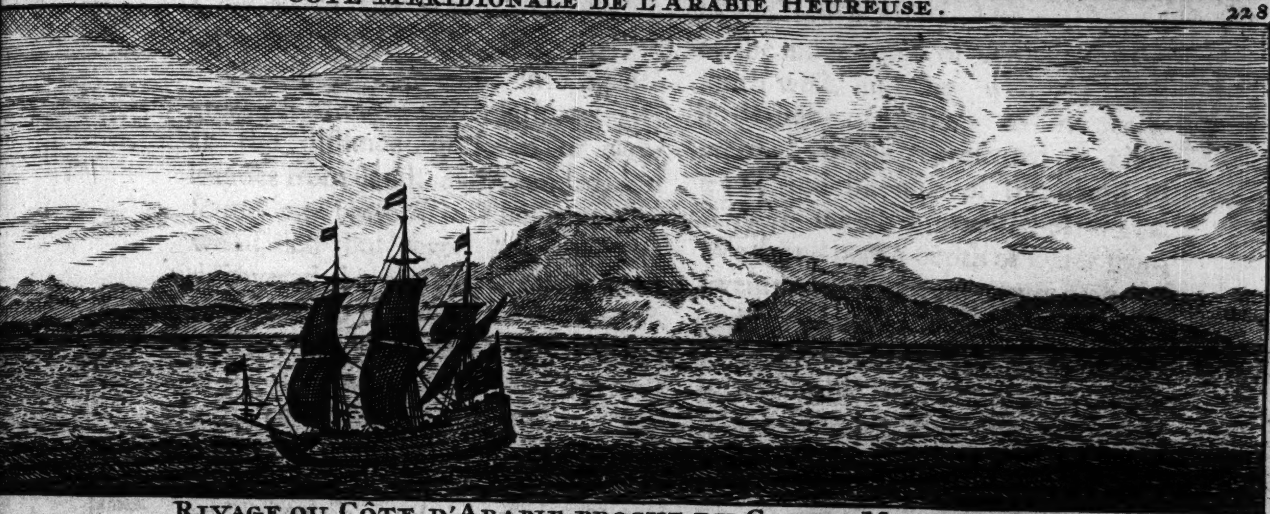
231. ISLE DE LAREKE.



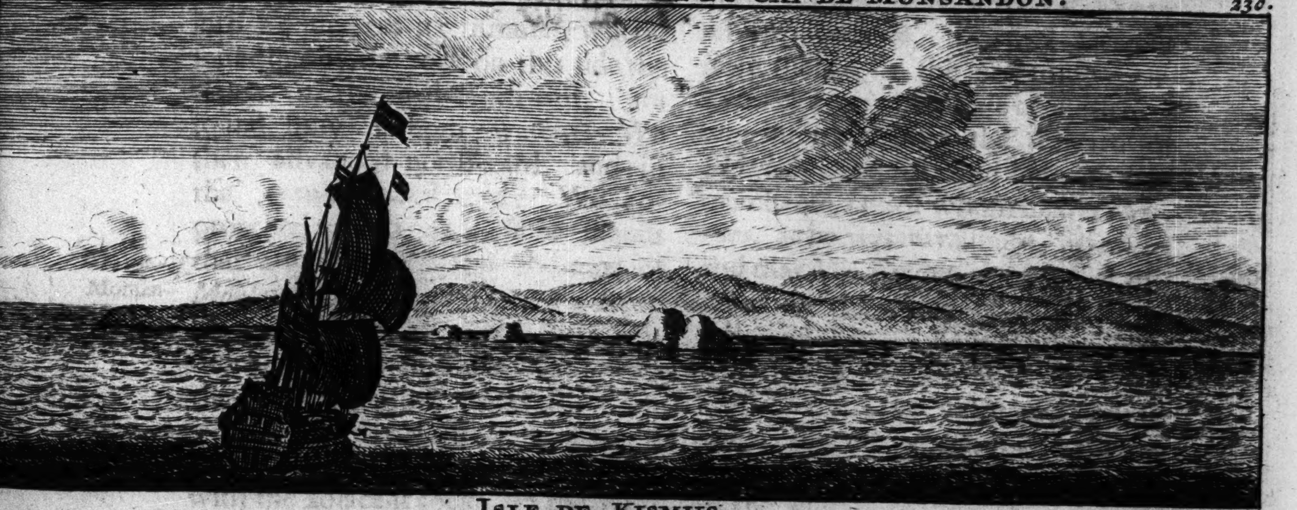
ISLE DU PRINCE. 226.



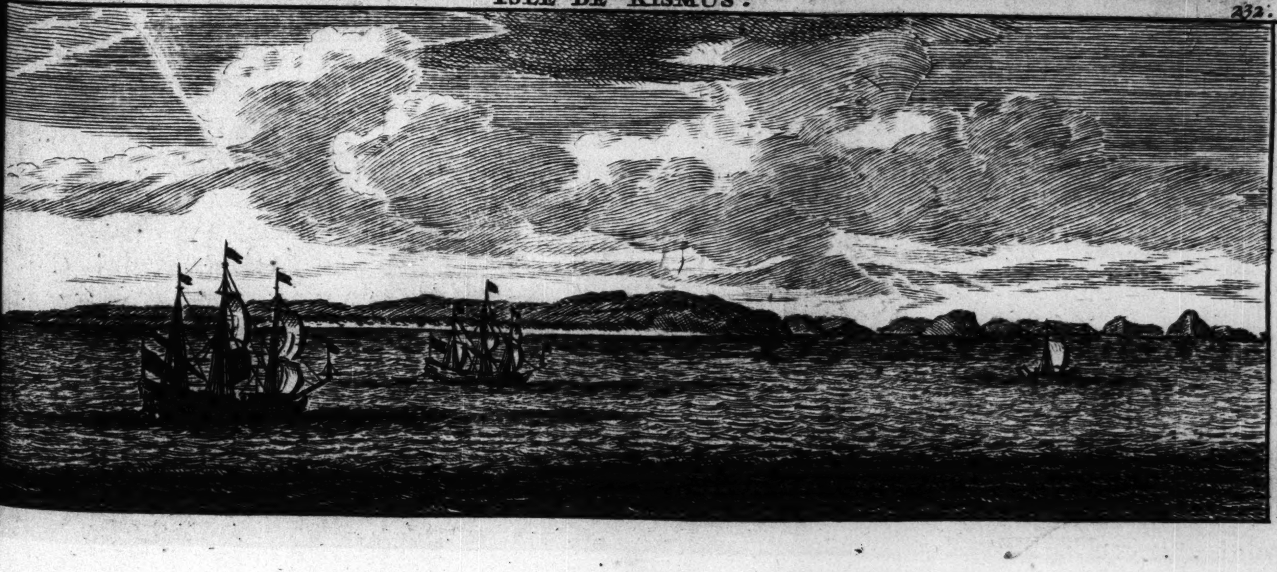
CÔTE MERIDIONALE DE L'ARABIE HEUREUSE. 228.



RIVAGE OU CÔTE D'ARABIE PROCHE DU CAP DE MONSANDON. 230.



ISLE DE KISMUS. 232.



.7 AP 53

day we ſounded within ſight of a ſmall iſland, or rock, about two leagues and a half from us, without finding any bottom. We found that the diſtance between the cape of *Raſalagata*, and the bay of *Musketta* is not ſo conſiderable as is repreſented in the maps. This little iſle, or rock, is directly oppoſite to that bay, and is called by ſome the *Grey-Rock*; the reader will find a repreſentation of it in plate 229.

The grey-rock.

On the 7th, we came into 24 degrees 26 minutes north latitude, and at the diſtance of ſeven or eight leagues from land, and ſounded, but found no bottom. The next day we ſailed but ſeven leagues, and diſcovered the coaſt of *Arabia*, from the ſouth to the north-weſt by weſt.

The next day we found ourſelves in 24 degrees 35 minutes, but ſtill without finding any bottom. On the 11th, we ſounded in the latitude of cape *St. James*, to the north-eaſt and by north, and about noon came into 25 degrees 25 minutes, where, ſounding by the rock on this ſide the cape, to the eaſt-ſouth-eaſt, we found ſixty fathom water. We then advanced northward, and in the evening weſtward: We approached in the night ſome iſlands that are ſituated before the cape of *Monſandon*; where we found a depth of water from ſixty to forty fathom, and ſteered to the north, with the wind at ſouth-ſouth-weſt.

Cape St. James.

The cape of Monſandon.

The next day I made a draught of the *Arabian* coaſt, near the cape, with the adjacent rocks, in the manner as the whole is exhibited in plate 230. We continued our courſe to north-north-weſt, with the ſame wind, and ſounded at ſome diſtance from a rock called *Leeſt*, which lay north of us, and the iſle of *Ormus* north-north-weſt, toward which we advanced in a direct courſe, and found there from forty to thirty fathom water. About noon we ſounded again, at the point of *Ormus*, to the north-eaſt and by north, and at the inner point of *Kiſmus* to the ſouth-weſt, and by weſt. I took a draught of *Lareke* to the eaſtward, as it is repreſented in plate 231; and likewiſe of the iſland of *Kiſmus*, which appears in plate 232. We found here a depth of water from twenty-four to twenty-two fathom, and being come, about evening, into four fathom two feet, we thought it adviſeable to caſt anchor; after which I landed, and went to the new lodge, where the director, and other of the company's officers then reſided. They were ſurpriſed at my return, becauſe, when I ſet out from thence, in the preceding year, I was in a very bad ſtate of health. I was informed that the ſteward of *Sypeſtein* was dead, and likewiſe two merchants, one of whom died at *Zjieraes*, as he was travelling to *Iſpahan*; and that Mr. *Preſcot*, the *Engliſh* miniſter at the court of *Perſia*, had followed them. I have given a repreſentation of the iſle of *Ormus*, as it appears from the lodge at *Gamron*, when the air is clear and ſerene, with the caſtle on the extreme point to the left.

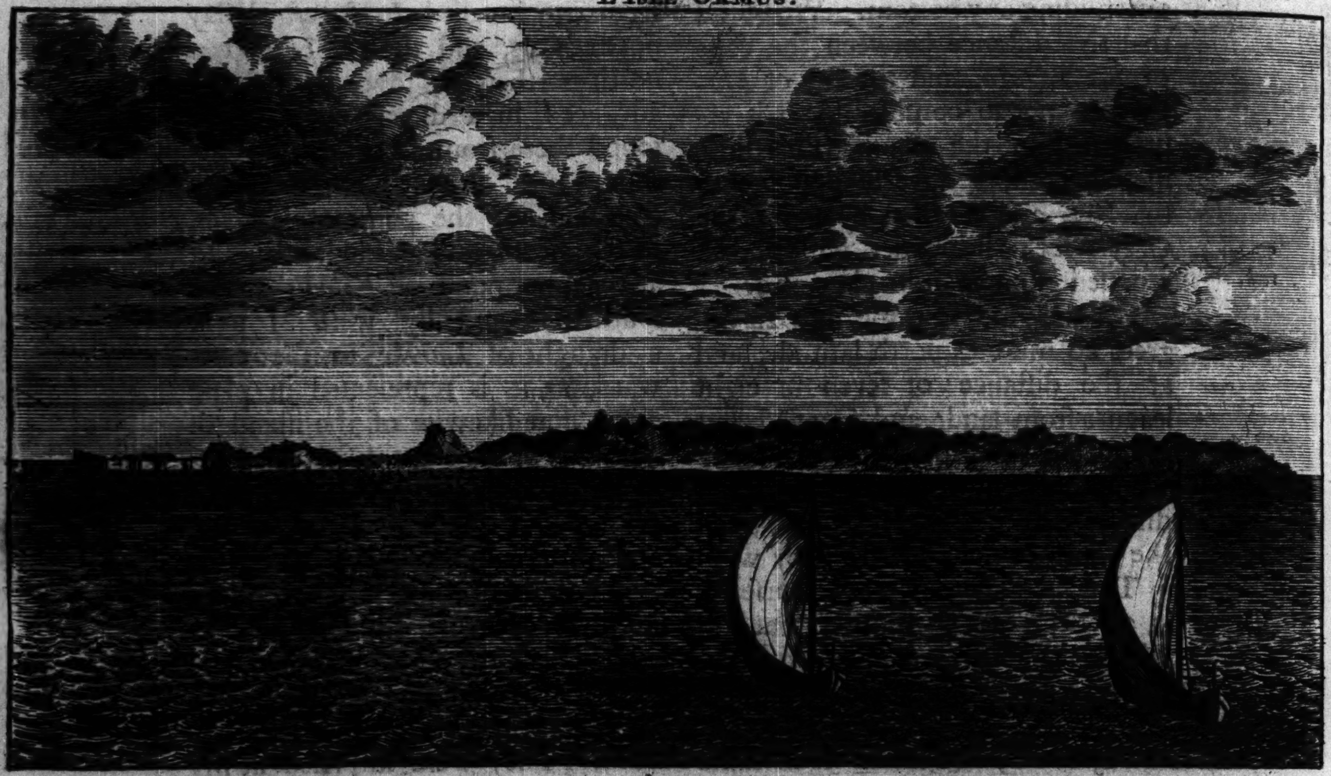
The coaſt of Arabia.

Iſle of Ormus.

Iſles of Lareke *and* Kiſmus.

CHAP.

L'ISLE ORMUS.

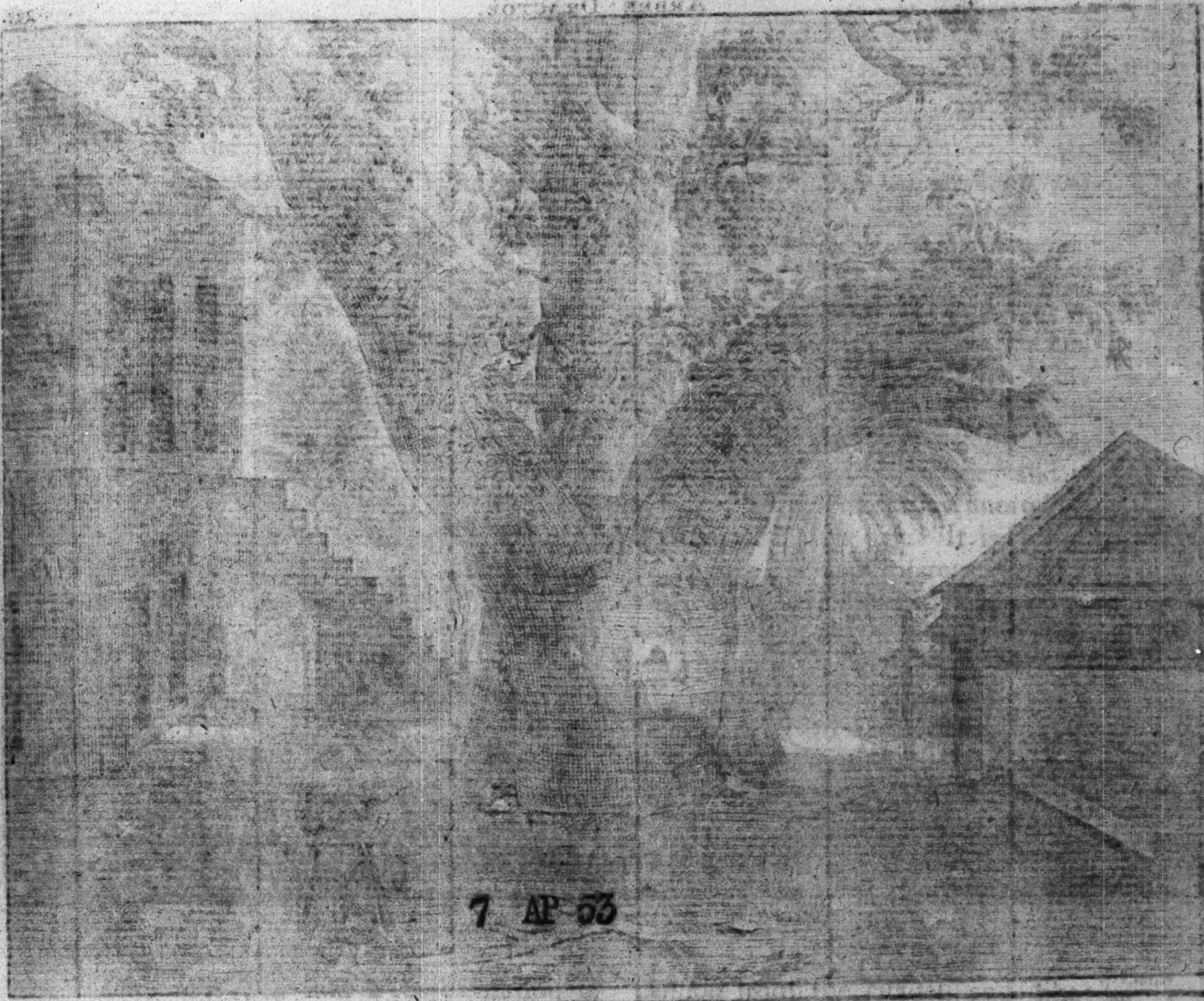


CHAP. LXXVI.

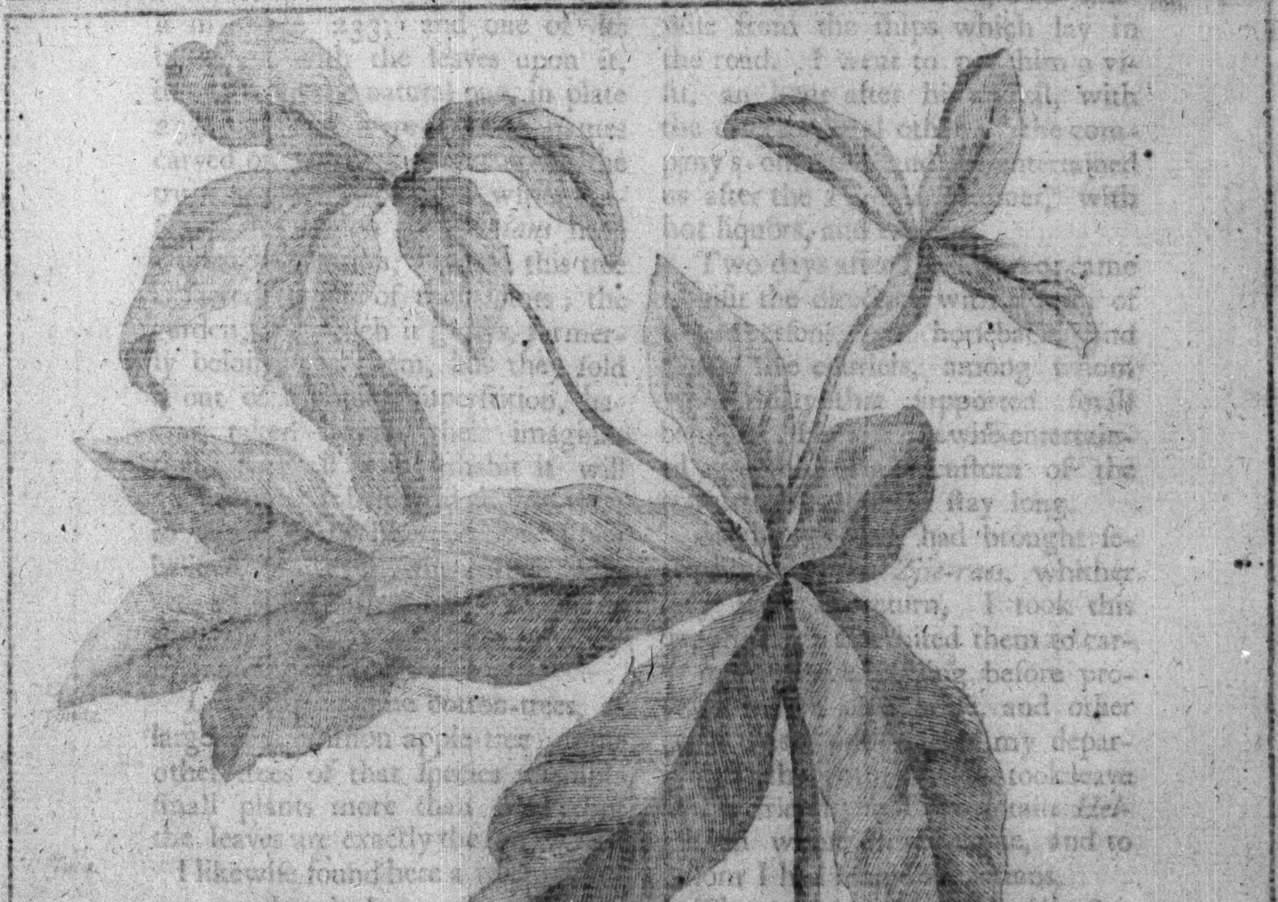
Remarkable things at Gamron. *The ſituation of* Eſſin. *Cotton-trees. Extraordinary plants. The arrival of the governor of* Gamron. *The author's departure from thence. His arrival at* Laer, *and* Jaron.

THOUGH I had determined to go immediately to *Iſpahan*, I was obliged to continue ſome days at *Gamron*, to wait for the carriages from *Zjie-raes* or *Chiras*; I therefore accompanied the director to his country-houſe at *Naeibaen*, which is ſituated not above a mile from the city, at the foot of a mountain, from whence there is a very beautiful proſpect both to the ſea, and toward the city. Near this place is the tree greatly commended by Mr. *Tavernier*, but which is far from correſponding with his account of it. All that can be ſaid is, that the branches bend down to the ground, and ſome have taken root, and ſhoot out like young trees; as to any other particulars, the tree is not very lofty, nor does it afford a large ſhade. I have ſeen ſeveral of the ſame ſpecies in the *Indies*, near *Malakka*, and upon the coaſt which goes by the name of *Paſsjaer*. There is in this place a ſmall houſe, which ſerves for a retreat to the *Banians* in the night. In our return we met with ſome courtiers of that nation, who were diverting themſelves in the open field with two of the dancers of the country, and other buffoons, who performed ſeveral ridiculous feats, by torch-light, for the ſun

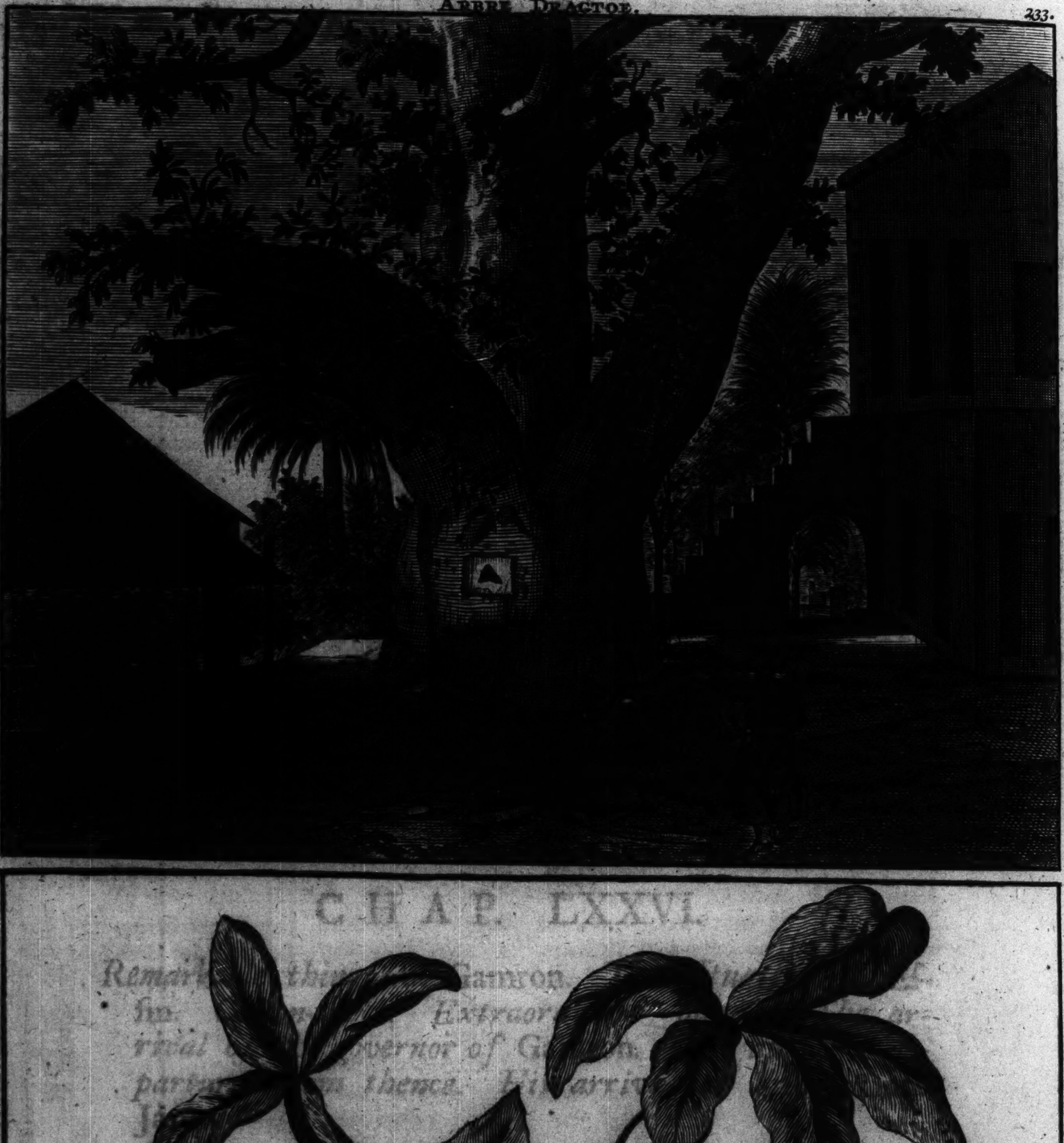
A miſtake of Mr. Tavernier.

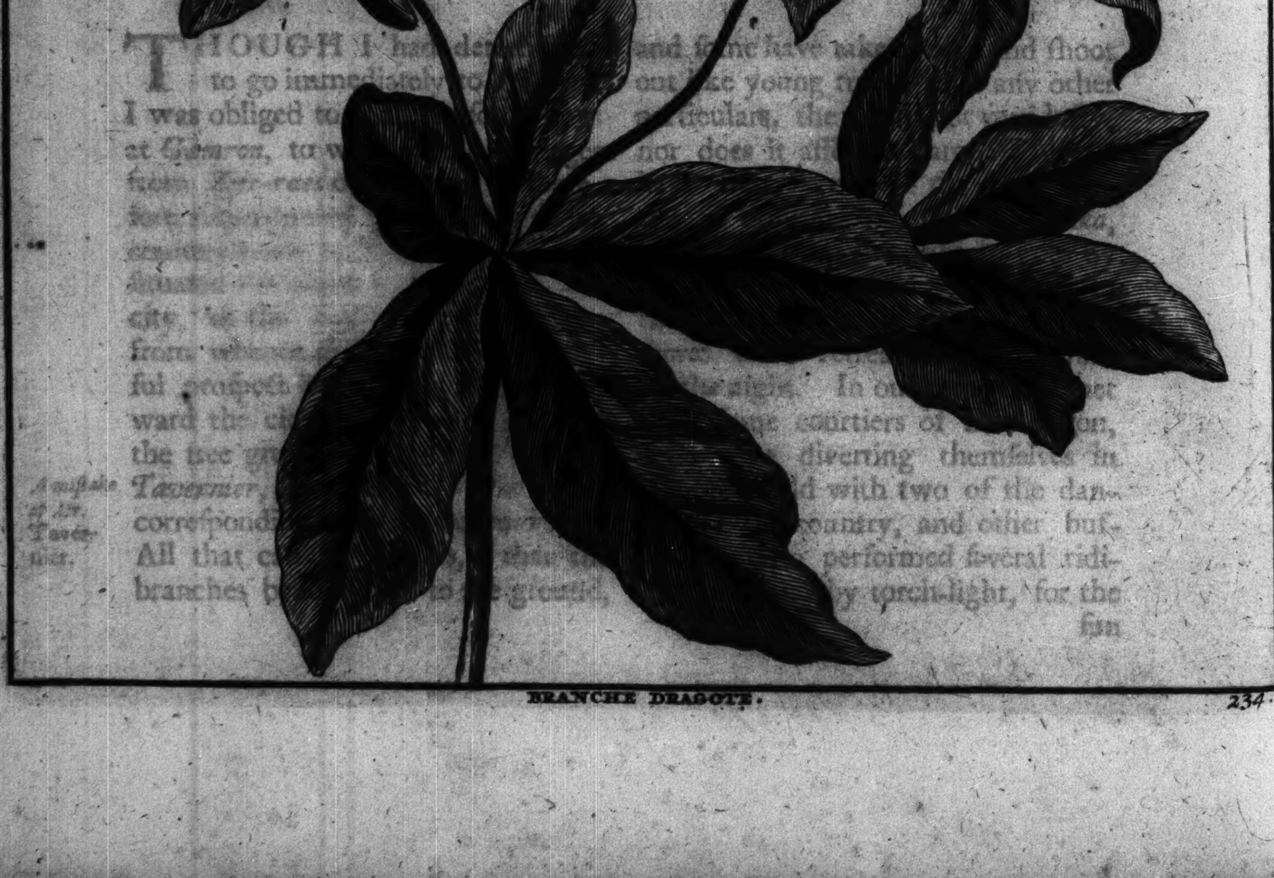


7 AP 53



ARBRE DRAGONE. 233.





BRANCHE DRAGONE. 234.

ſun was down. We went to them, and they entertained us with hot liquors, confections, and other delicacies.

On the 23d, I hired two men, and as many aſſes, according to the cuſtom of thoſe parts, together with a guide, to conduct me to *Eſſin*, where he himſelf dwelt, and from thence to any other places which I ſhould be inclinable to viſit. This place is three leagues from *Gamron*, and ſeated on a plain, half a league from the mountains. It chiefly conſiſts of gardens, and little huts, inhabited by poor people. There is a houſe here belonging to the company, which ſupplies *Gamron* with the beſt water that is to be found there.

An extraordinary tree.

The moſt remarkable thing I obſerved here, was a tree, the trunk of which was fifty two ſpans in circumference: It was ſtrait in the middle, and full of branches of a proportionable bigneſs, with ſmall leaves.

This tree is called *Dragtoe*, and it bears a kind of a wild apple. The reader will find a repreſentation of it in plate 233, and one of its branches, with the leaves upon it, drawn from the natural one, in plate 234. There were ſeveral names carved on the bark; and upon the trunk is a ſmall piece of white maſonry, for which the *Banians* have a great veneration, becauſe this tree is ſacred to one of their ſaints; the garden, in which it grows, formerly belonged to them, but they ſold it out of a fooliſh ſuperſtition, having taken it into their imagination, that all who inhabit it will die young. It belonged at that time to the *Engliſh* interpreter. They believe, however, that thoſe who are afflicted with a fever, or any other diſeaſe, may obtain a cure, by making a pilgrimage thither.

Cotton plants.

I ſaw here ſome cotton-trees, as large as a common apple-tree; moſt other trees of that ſpecies reſemble ſmall plants more than trees; but the leaves are exactly the ſame.

Juca.

I likewiſe found here a white flower, or rather the leaves of a plant, or tree, known by the name of *Juca*, and which the *Perſians* call *Golie-kielie*. This plant, which comes from *Surat*, has a ſtrong, but very agreeable odour; and the inhabitants pretend that it attracts ſerpents. The flower of it is nine inches in length, and grows in bunches incloſed in the leaves of the plant, which are ten inches long: This flower produces ſeveral others in its middle part. I have kept one, which was preſented to me, and it ſtill preſerves its fragrancy, notwithſtanding it is now dry. It is five or ſix inches in circumference, with the leaves that enfold it.

I returned the next day to *Gamron*, through a rocky road, the tracks of which are ſo narrow and bad, that there is no paſſing but upon aſſes, which are ſmall, but very ſwift. They are ſomething like thoſe in *Egypt* in the country adjacent to *Grand Cairo*.

The arrival of the governor of Gamron.

Alie Chan, duke or governor of *Gamron*, arrived there the next day, and was ſaluted with a diſcharge of cannon from the citadel, and likewiſe from the ſhips which lay in the road. I went to pay him a viſit, an hour after his arrival, with the director, and other of the company's officers; and he entertained us after the *Perſian* manner, with hot liquors, and tobacco.

Two days after the governor came to viſit the director, with a train of forty perſons, on horſeback, and thirty five couriers, among whom were thirty that ſupported ſmall banners. He was likewiſe entertained agreeably to the cuſtom of the country, but did not ſtay long.

As the governor had brought ſeveral mules from *Zjie-raes*, whither they were to return, I took this opportunity, and hired them to carry my baggage, having before provided myſelf of a horſe, and other neceſſaries; and I fixed my departure for the 30th. I then took leave of my friends, and of captain *Helma*, in whoſe ſhip I came, and to whom I had many obligations.

The next day I gave the director the letters which I had written to the governor-general of the *Indies*, and others of my friends at *Batavia*; after which I took my leave of him, and all the other officers belonging to the company.

The author's departure from Gamron.

We went in the evening to the *Engliſh* lodge to aſſiſt at the funeral of Mr. *Crown*, director of the *Britiſh* company, and I ſet forward at the ſame time, in order to arrive that evening at *Bandalie*, three leagues from *Gamron*, in the road to *Iſpahan*; being accompanied only by a muletier, and one footman, becauſe I had ſent my equipage before. I renewed my journey at three in the morning, and proceeded as far as the *Caravanſerai* of *Getjie*, after having travelled five leagues: We paſſed the day there under a tree, and ſet out again in the evening, when we paſſed over a large plain, and advanced as far as the old *Caravanſerai* of *Koreſtan*, which is ſix leagues from the former.

We arrived, about ten in the morning, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Goer-baſer-goen*, after a journey of four leagues, and the next day, at the ſame hour, at that of *Bilon*, which is five leagues from the former, and where we found no company, which had likewiſe been our fate at that of *Goer-baſer-goen*; but the peaſants brought us pullets, and other proviſions. This quarter, which conſiſts of ſtony plains ſituated between mountains, is very unfertile: We found there, under a tree, our ſmall caravan which came from *Gamron* before us, and ſet out again on the fourth of *November*. We followed it about three or four hours after, and arrived about nine at the *Caravanſerai* of *Germoet*, after we had travelled five leagues. I there drew part of the village, and a well covered with a ſtone dome, as may be ſeen in plate 235.

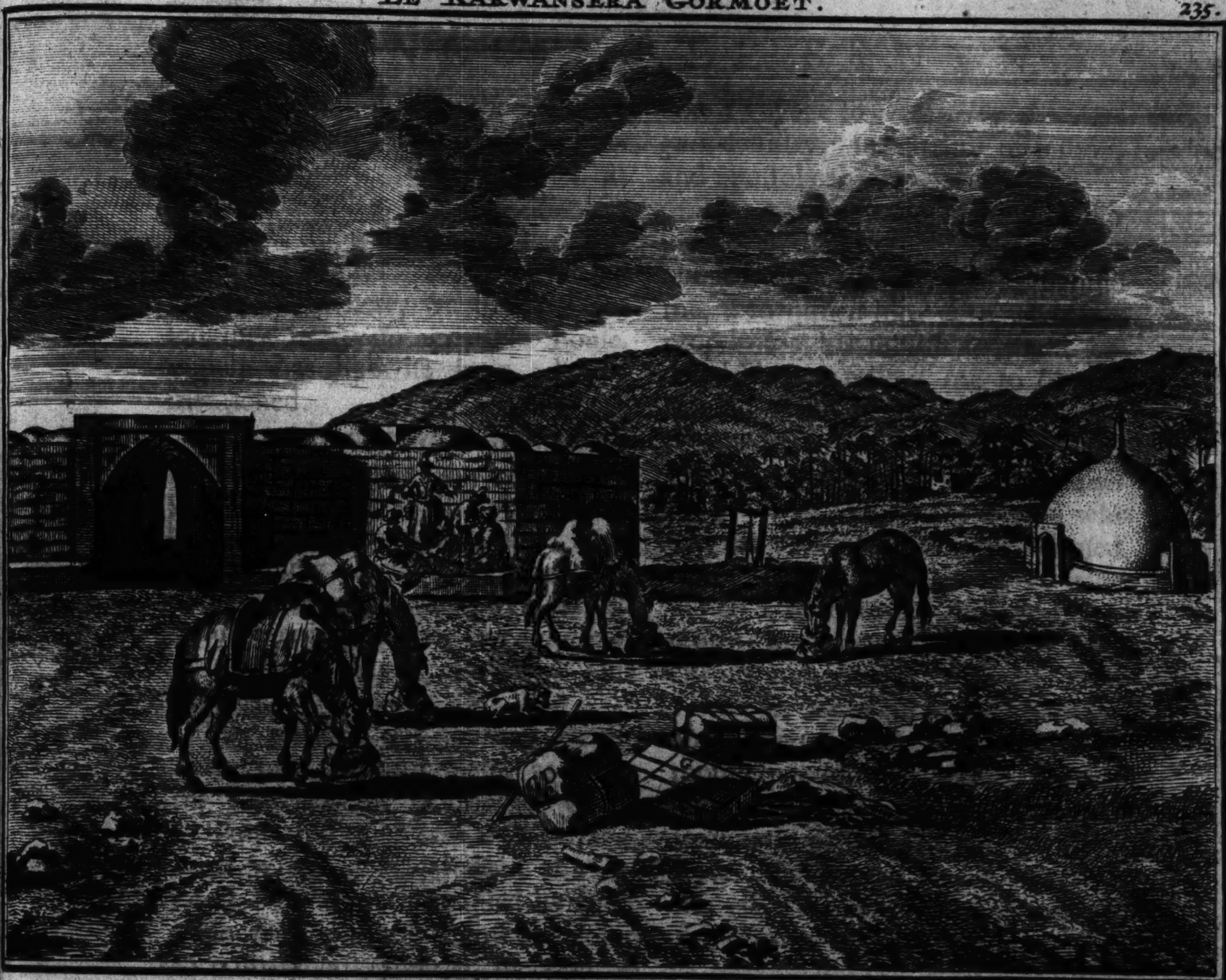
We continued our journey next day with the *Caravan*, and found the water of that quarter to be very bad and ſalt. But travellers commonly provide themſelves of a ſufficient quantity at places where it is good: After we had travelled ſix leagues farther, and paſſed over ſeveral plains, we arrived about evening at the *Caravanſerai* of *Samſomgien*, where we paſſed the night. It was very hot during the day, and cold in the night.

The next day we paſſed over a beautiful plain full of villages and gardens, as far as *Laer*, where we reſted after we had travelled ſix leagues. We found here ſeveral travellers, and a caravan from *Zjie-raes*, loaded with wine, for the members of our company at *Gamron*. We continued here till the 8th, and then purſued our journey over a plain, at the end of which, and oppoſite to the mountains, we found a reſervoir of water, with a building, near which we had paſſed the night, when we travelled that way before; the water is conveyed hither by a canal walled in, and which runs croſs the mountains; the reader will find a repreſentation of it in plate 236. From thence we paſſed over ſome high and ſteep mountains, and then deſcended into a beautiful plain, where we ſaw a handſome ſtone *Caravanſerai*, and a few houſes inhabited by huſbandmen. After we had paſſed over this plain, which is two leagues and a half in length, we entered among the mountains, and paſſed the night at the *Caravanſerai* of *Dekoe*, a conſiderable village, full of trees and gardens, and ſituated upon a plain of a roundiſh form, and partly cultivated into arable land.

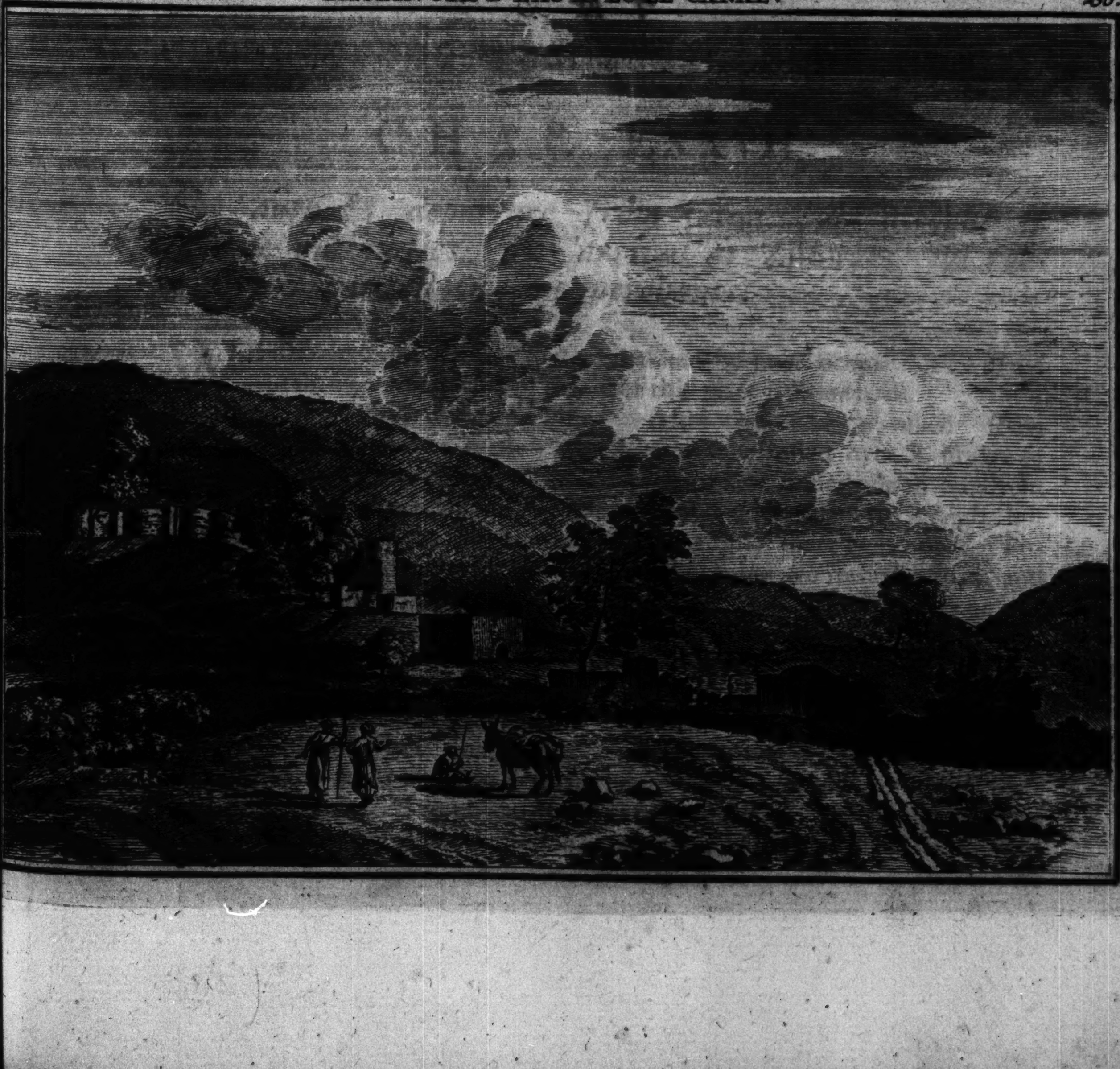
The next day we proceeded three leagues farther to *Bieries*, a large well-built town, which ſurpaſſes ſeveral of their cities. We there found a handſome *Caravanſerai* of ſtone, from whence there is a proſpect of a ruined caſtle, which has been already mentioned, and is ſituated on a neighbouring mountain.

My courier was taken ſo ill there, that I was upon the point of leaving him behind; but finding himſelf better the next day, he followed us upon an aſs. After we had paſſed over the moununtain, we came into a beautiful plain, where we ſaw ſeral flocks of ſheep, and a ruinous

Le Karwansera Gormoet. 235.



Reservoir d'eau avec le canal. 236.



7 AP 53

Caravanſerai, where there were ſome caravans, with camels, horſes, and mules. We advanced as far as the village of *Aes-Zjieraſie*, where we ſtopped after we had travelled five leagues. As there was no *Caravanſerai* here, we took up our lodgings in a very agreeable houſe, which has likewiſe been already mentioned.

The next day we paſſed over a plain, which was ſandy in ſome places, and cultivated in others: In the midſt of it is a rock, and a large ciſtern finely ſhaded by a ſingle tree which grows near it. We arrived about evening at the *Caravanſerai* of *Dedomba* having travelled four leagues.

We purſued our journey on the 12th, over the ſame plain, as far as the *Caravanſerai* of *Mouſel*, where I found father *Pedro d'Alcantara*, with whom I had lodged at *Zjieraes*; he was accompanied by three other *Italian* monks, and was going to embark at *Gamron*, in order to take a voyage to *Sicopolis* in the *Moguls* country, in quality of biſhop, and apoſtolical vicar.

The next day we continued our journey in the afternoon, but as I was obliged to leave my courier behind me, I furniſhed him with what was proper for his ſubſiſtence, and ordered him to follow me to *Iſpahan* as ſoon as his health would permit him. After we had travelled five leagues, we ſtopt at the *Caravanſerai* of *Zatal*, where the perſon who had the care of it being indiſpoſed, deſired me to give him a little wine, which I very readily did, and he in return made me a preſent of ſome citrons and oranges.

We ſet out again in the afternoon, and after we had paſſed over the mountains, or rocks of *Jaron*, which are very dangerous, the bad roads frequently obliging travellers to alight from their horſes, we arrived late at the city of *Jaron*, having travelled five leagues that afternoon.

CHAP. LXXVII.

The author's departure from Jaron. *An account of ſome antiquities. His arrival at* Zjie-raes. *A robbery committed on ſome merchants.*

The author's departure from Jaron.

WE ſet out from *Jaron* on the 15th, and when we had paſſed through the city, we came into a beautiful plain, full of cattle; we paſſed the night in a pleaſant garden, which was walled in. The roads are very good in this quarter, and the plain is cut into ſeveral canals, over which we paſſed on ſmall bridges of ſtone.

We met on the road ſeveral troops of aſſes laden with rice for *Laer*. I ſaw alſo a tower of a conſiderable height, but unaccompanied with any other building; there were likewiſe ſeveral tombs entirely ruinous, and a few ſmall houſes inhabited by poor people: The name of this place is *Demonaer*.

Demonaer.

After we had travelled ſome leagues, we paſſed over a bridge of ſeven arches, under which a current of water flows when it is high, but at that time there was none. Toward evening we forded a river, and after we had travelled about ſix leagues, arrived at the *Caravanſerai* of *Moogack*.

The next day we met two of the company's couriers, who were carrying letters from *Iſpahan* to *Gamron*. We left the common road at this place, in order to go to *Tadurwan*, along the river ſide; and we kept this road near an hour, before we arrived at that village, which is very difficult of acceſs on this ſide, and the ways are ſo bad that ſome of our beaſts of carriage fell down, one of which we were obliged to unload.

This village very much reſembles a wood, by reaſon of the trees, and incloſed gardens all around it. It is ſituated on the river-ſide, upon a ſmall hill, and ſurrounded by gardens walled in, which latter was a very uncommon circumſtance.

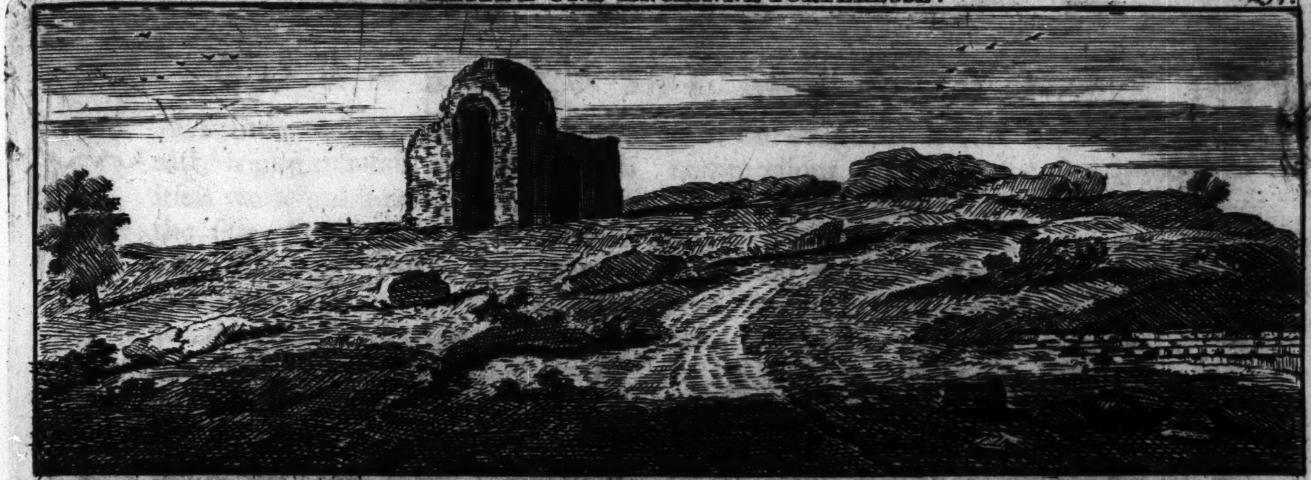
At the end of this village is a paſſage over the river, which flows by the ſide of the mountains, and upon their decline to the north. I had formerly been here with Mr. *Kaſtelein*, but we came in on the other ſide, where the entrance is much eaſier. However, I had an inclination to viſit it a ſecond time, having found at *Batavia* in the memoirs of Mr. *Cuneus*, ambaſſador to *Iſpahan* in 1652, that he had found ſeveral curious pieces of antiquity near this village, together with ſeveral ſubterranean paſſages that extended as far as *Zjie-raes*, or *Chiras*, which is twenty five leagues from that place; and a well of an extraordinary depth.

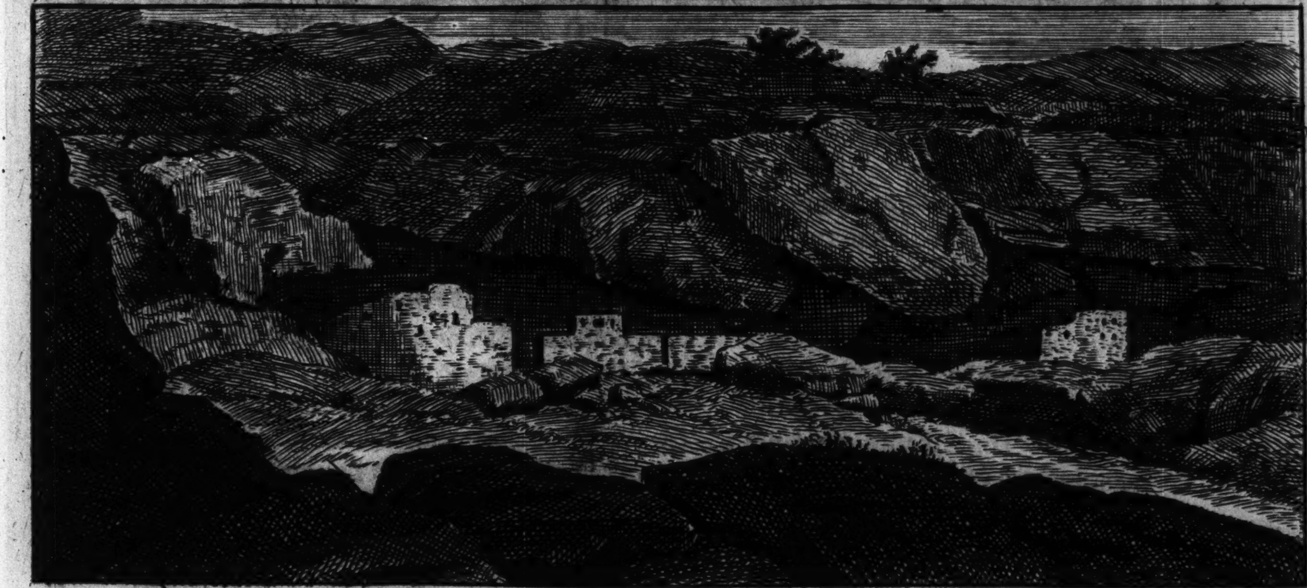
A grotto.

Buildings of a peculiar ſtructure.

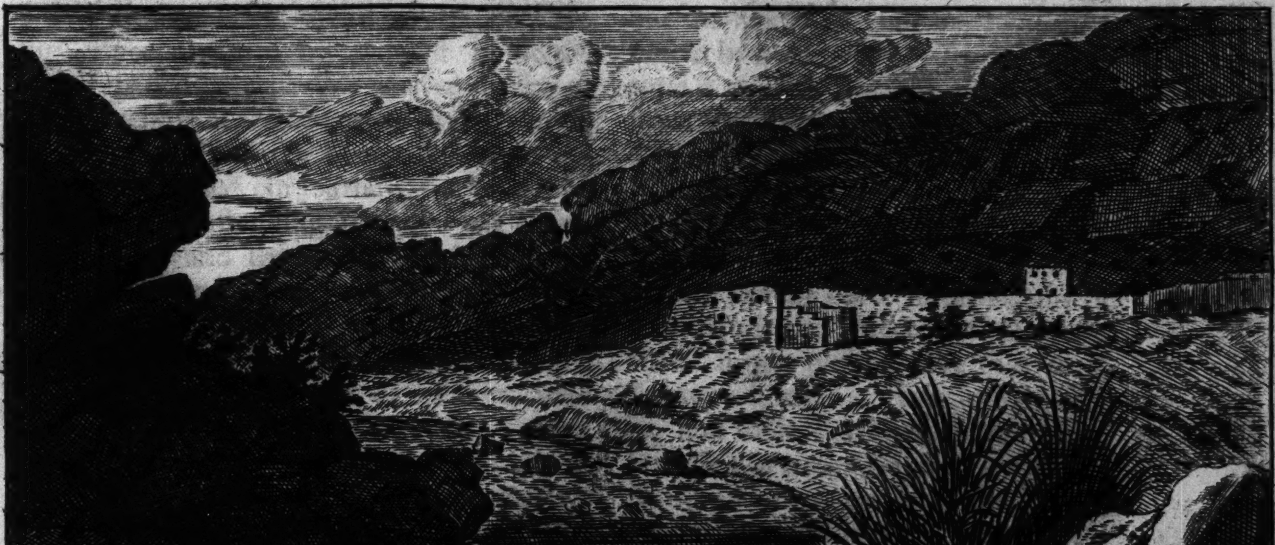
I ſet out early the next morning, with a ſervant belonging to the caravan, and one of the inhabitants of the town, in order to take a view of thoſe curioſities. I went much farther than I had done before, and found a grotto in the rock, with an aperture at the top, into which I made the countryman enter. As the bottom was viſible through two or three openings near to each other, I could eaſily ſee him, and perceived that he was at the end of the grotto after he had gone about thirty paces. We met again in the common road by the river ſide, where I enquired of him which was the way that led to *Zjie-raes*, and found that thoſe perſons from whom I had the deſcription, had only taken their account upon truſt, without examining the truth of the fact. It was the ſame with regard to the well upon the mountain, which I took the trouble to aſcend on the north ſide. I found that there had formerly been a fortreſs in that place, of which a few ruins are ſtill to be ſeen, together with ſome remains of the walls, and upon the ſummit, a ſmall ſquare building covered with a dome, agreeably to the repreſentation in plate 237. As for the prodigious fiſſure which is mentioned in the ſame memoirs, it is nothing but an uncommon gap on the eaſt ſide of the mountain, where the height is very conſiderable, and the declivity as ſteep. The river flows on one ſide of it. The buildings which have been raiſed on the ſide of this mountain by the *Pagans* or *Guebres*, are of ſo ſtrange a ſtructure that one knows not what to make of them, and I believe nothing like them was ever ſeen. They are built on the ſteepeſt part of the rock, on each ſide, and there is ſtill to be ſeen a ſmall aperture. I have exhibited a repreſentation of them in plates 238 and 239, as they appear on the eaſt ſide, where a proſpect opens on the river between the mountains, on the higheſt part of which is a canal full of reeds. It is pretended that theſe people ſtretcht iron chains from one ſide of the mountain to the other, that they might ſecure a communication one with the other in time of war; it is alſo ſaid, that on the other ſide of the mountain to the weſt, is another aperture like that which I have already mentioned. As to other particulars I was unable to obtain any certain information from the inhabitants of the village, who call this place *Goenegabron*, or the habitation of the pagans. They likewiſe declare, that this place was founded by giants, who lived 1300 years ago, under the government of one *Ruſtan*; but they have no foundation for this pretence, as has been already obſerved in my account of *Perſepolis*. This place is about half a league from the village, and the ſubterranean paſſage, which has already been mentioned, a full league.

RESTE D'UNE ANCIENNE FORTERESSE. 237.





BÂTIMENS ANCIENNES. 238.



BÂTIMENS ANCIENNES. 239.

7 AP 53

1706. A little on this ſide, toward the eaſt, is a water-fall, which extends itſelf weſtward among the lands, on the ſide of the village. There is great plenty of fruit in this quarter, and ſome admirable melons; the weather was ſo exceſſive cold that we were obliged to have a fire.

We ſet out the next day at another part of the village, where we found the river much eaſier to be paſſed; and about a league from thence, we came into the high road, where we found a *corps de garde*. We then entered upon a beautiful plain, and arrived late in the evening at the *Caravanſerai* of *Aſ-mongeer*. The greateſt part of the land which lies adjacent to it, was cultivated, and the country people were employed in making canals for the diſtribution of the water. This place is about four leagues from the other that was laſt mentioned.

We continued our journey the next day, over the plain, where we ſaw many tents covered with black, and alſo met ſeveral families, the women and children of which were mounted on camels and aſſes; ſome caravans alſo, with ſeveral *Perſians*, accompanied by women in litters, paſſed by us. We arrived in the evening at the *Caravanſerai* of *Payra*, after a progreſs of five leagues; and continued our journey, the next day, notwithſtanding the cold was exceſſive, and the wind very boiſterous; but had ſcarce travell'd 300 paces, when we were informed by two couriers, that the road was infeſted by a great number of robbers, who were well furniſhed with arms. This information made us think it adviſable to return from whence we came, and wait till evening for ſome caravans which we had left at the *Caravanſerai*. We ſet out together at one in the morning, and met a carravan at break of day, but heard nothing of the robbers, whom we had eſcaped, and we arrived about eight at the *Caravanſerai* of *Moeſafarie*, where we found ſo much company, that there was not room to lodge above half of them, tho' the *Caravanſerai* is very large and commodious. We continued there till midnight, and then proceeded on our journey, the moon ſhining exceeding bright. We met on the road ſome *Perſians*, and a troop of aſſes, laden with rice; and after we had paſſed over a beautiful valley, we arrived at the *Caravanſerai* of *Babasjie*, which is ſeven leagues from the former. 1706.

We found there a caravan, and a *Perſian* lord, attended by ſeven or eight domeſtics, and going to *Gamron*; we continued our journey at ſeven in the morning, and arrived about three at *Zjie-raes*, after we had travelled five leagues.

I took up my lodging, as uſual, in the convent of *Carmelites*, where I found the old father, and the *Flemming*, whom I met the preceeding year, in my journey to *Gamron*; and they were extremely glad to ſee me: my old friends Mr. *Latoul*, and Mr. *Batar*, a *French* clock-maker, came to congratulate me upon my return. The people were ſtill employed in their vintage. I acquainted the conductor of the caravan with my inclination to ſet out the next day, but he happened not to be quite ready. In the mean time a courier brought me a letter from the baron *de Larix*, dated the 28th of *November*, at *Mahyn*, which is three days journey from *Zjie-raes*. As he was deſirous to ſee me, he had ſent another by the way of *Perſepolis*, having been informed by a letter from the director of *Gamron*, that I might poſſibly take that road. I wrote him an anſwer immediately, and took horſe two hours after, with a *Carmelite* of the *Low-Countries*, in order to meet the baron, whom we found in a garden near the mountains, from whence we returned together to the city, where Mr. *De Larix*, who had a large train of ſervants, took up his lodgings with the man who prepares the companies wines. On the ſecond of *December* we paid a viſit to Mr. *Hasjie Nebbie*, a famous merchant, whom I formerly mentioned. We went thither on horſeback, attended by a numerous train of ſervants, mounted on fine horſes, of which thoſe that belonged to the baron, and myſelf, had their bridles and houſings all embroidered. We were entertained in a very polite manner, and continued there till noon. That *Perſian* had already viſited Mr. *de Larix*, and had ſent him preſents. This gentleman did me the honour to ſup with me in the convent, where we paſſed the greateſt part part of the night in a very agreeable manner. The next day he continued his journey, and I accompanied him ſome leagues from *Zjie-raes*, and Mr. *Latoul* as far as *Gamron*. We purſued a deer, which the hunters who belonged to Mr. *de Larix* afterward took.

The moſque of Solomon's mother.

I changed the deſign I had formed of going by the way of *Perſepolis*, and reſolved when I came five or ſix leagues from *Zjie-raes*, to travel through a place called *Mazyt-Madre-Sulemoen*, or the moſque of *Solomon*'s mother; tho' I am not able to comprehend by what means the knowledge of that prince extended as far as *Perſia*; for I could never learn from the *Perſians* themſelves, how they came to erect a temple in honour of his mother, ſince neither the ſcripture, nor any hiſtorian, has once intimated that he was ever in *Perſia*, or that he ever travelled out of the *Holy-Land*. It is therefore very probable that this ſtructure was only dedicated to the mother of one of their kings, whoſe name was *Solomon*. I had indeed often heard the ruins of this place mentioned by Mr. *Hoogkamer*, and likewiſe by Mr. *Bakker*, who had been his ſecretary, and had taken a draught of part of this building, which is of ſtone, and higher than all the reſt.

There is ſtill to be ſeen a large apartment, which has no tomb in it, and there are ſome other buildings raiſed about it. At the diſtance of two musket ſhots from thence toward the north, upon the plain, there are alſo ſome ruins, and a large portal without any figure, and two leagues and a half from thence a wall, built with large ſtones round a mountain, on whoſe top there appears to have been ſome ſtructure in antient times, but it is impoſſible to form any judgment of it, by the little which is now left. Theſe ruins are about a league from the village of *Seſahoenia*.

A robbery committed on ſome merchants.

I was informed, at my arrival at *Zjie-raes*, that it was not long ſince twenty robbers, in the middle of the night, and near the village of *Mayien*, attacked a caravan that was coming from *Iman-ſade*, in which were three chriſtian merchants, from whom they took 13300 ducats, and even their rings from their fingers. The merchants defended themſelves with great bravery for ſome time, being provided with fire-arms, and each of them having a ſervant, who was likewiſe armed: They killed one of the robbers, who having no fire-arms of their own, attacked with their ſabres the merchant who had ſhot their companion, and killed him on the ſpot, after which they retired with their booty.

Meſſieurs *Latoul* and *Batar*, whom I lately mentioned, were of the number of this caravan: The former was director of the *French* company, though he was an *Armenian* by birth, and for that reaſon thoſe unhappy merchants had placed themſelves under his protection. But the director and his companion had recourſe to flight, the moment the robbers appeared, and about an hour after rejoined the caravan, where they found matters in the condition I have related. If they had ſtood firm to each other, this calamity might, in all probability, have been prevented, ſince they were furniſhed with fire-arms, whereas the robbers were only armed, ſome with ſabres, and others with clubs. One of theſe merchants was a native of *Aleppo*, the other two of *Diarbekir*, the capital of *Meſopotamia*, and they were trading to the *Indies*.

In reality they had acted very imprudently, having counted, and changed their money, in a publick manner, in the *Caravanſerai* at *Iſpaban*, *pahan*, where ſome of this gang of robbers happened to be preſent, and obſerved upon which beaſt the money was laid. This accident, and ſome others of the ſame nature, obliged me to keep the high road, and not truſt my ſelf to any perſon. The youngeſt of theſe merchants retired hither, and the other went to *Iſpahan*, to try if he could obtain any intelligence of his money, and of thoſe who had taken it. For my part, I agreed with one of the maſters of the caravan, who furniſhed me with two horſes to carry me to *Iſpahan*, with a courier, whom the baron *de Larix* had given me.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

The author's departure from Zjie-raes. *Remarkable fortreſſes. His arrival at* Iſpahan. *The departure of the king and court from thence.*

The author's departure from Zjie-raes.

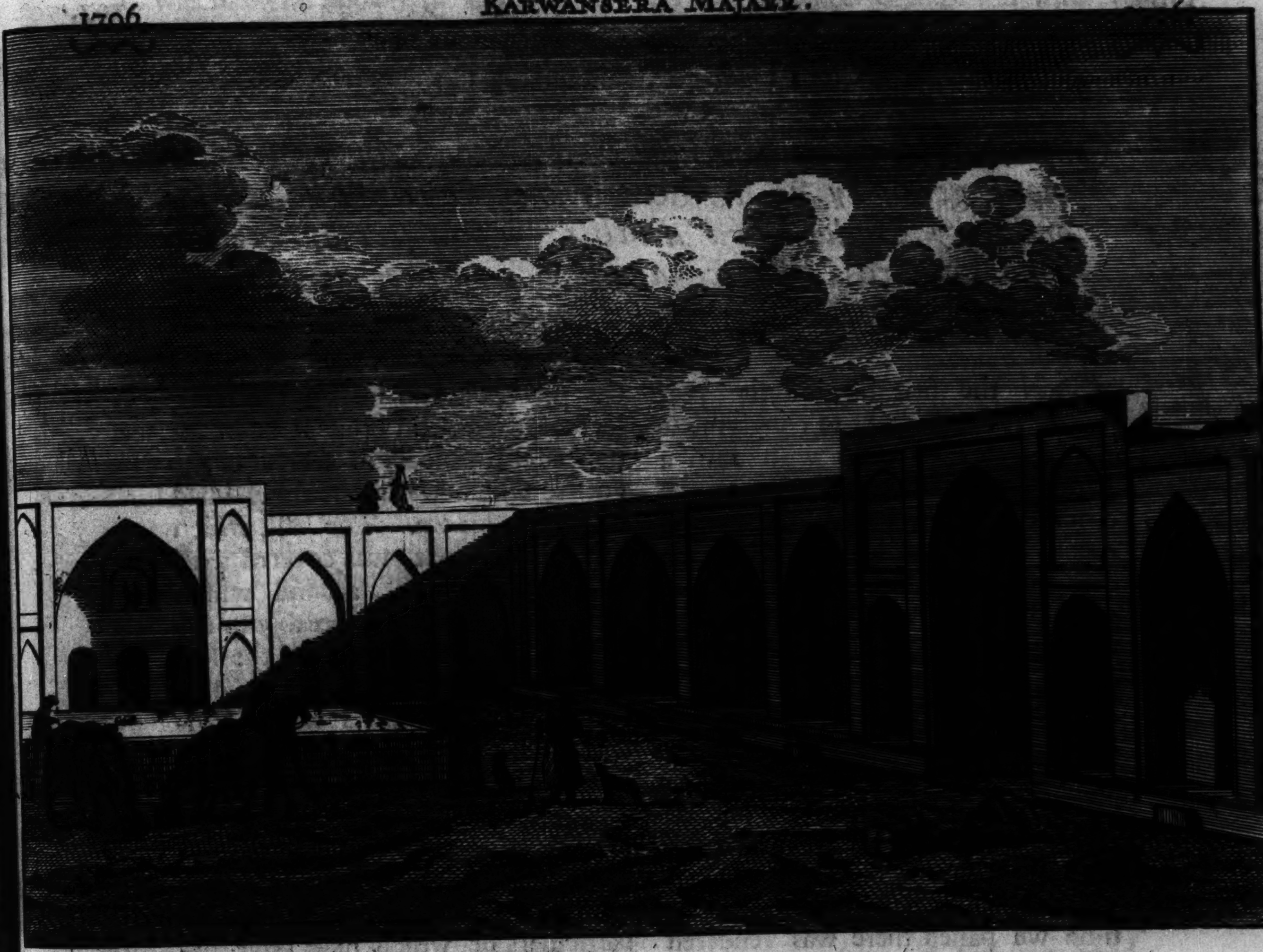
ON the 4th in the evening, I purſued my journey, and was accompanied by ſome friends as far as the garden, where we went to meet Mr. *de Larix*; and I arrived, about two in the morning, at the *Caravanſerai* at *Baet-ſiega*, three leagues from *Zjie-raes*; from whence I ſet out at break of day, to take the advantage of the morning light, ſince the nights were very cold; for this reaſon I had no inclination to accompany the caravan, which commonly travels in the night. When I had paſſed over ſome mountains, and a valley, no water was to be found; I entered upon the plain of *Sergoen*, leaving on my right hand, the village of that name, and the bridge of *Pol-chanie*. I was much ſurpriſed at not finding a drop of water in the plain, which is commonly floated over. I afterward forded a river, becauſe it was the ſhorteſt way, and arrived about evening at the *Caravanſerai* of *Abgergm*, after I had travelled 8 leagues. I proceeded on my journey the next day, and at the diſtance of a league from thence, paſſed over a large ſtone bridge; near which are two mountains, on whoſe top was formerly a fortreſs. I was accompanied that day by a caravan, which durſt not travel in the night, by reaſon of ſome robbers who infeſted that quarter. We paſſed over two or three marſhes, in order to ſhorten the way, leaving on our left hand another mountain, upon which a fortreſs had formerly been erected, and I then, for the firſt time, had a diſtant view of ſnow upon the mountains. We afterward paſſed a river, which was dry, and arrived about noon at the town of *May-ien*, after a journey of five leagues.

I there found a *Perſian* lord, with a numerous train of ſervants, provided with fire-arms, which he was pleaſed to ſhew me; but they were not then charged, and had very bad flints, notwithſtanding he was provided with thoſe that were very good. He afterward ſhewed me a fine muſquet, of *European* make, and to which I fitted a good flint. I then gave him a ſight of my arms, which conſiſted of a good fuſee, and two pair of piſtols, one for the pomel of my ſaddle, and the other for my girdle. That lord ſet out ſoon after for *Zjie-raes*; and as the caravan, which had accompanied me the preceding evening, did not move faſt enough for me, I went before, and paſſed over a rock, where the way was ſo bad, that I was obliged to alight, and lead my horſe by the bridle. One of the horſes that carried my baggage, fell down two or three times. I here met three travellers, who were likewiſe going to *Iſpahan*, and when we had paſſed over the rock, we deſcended into the plain, and arrived about three at the *Caravanſerai* of *Oedsja*, after a journey of ſeven leagues. We ſet out from thence at break of day, and found the water frozen over in a fine plain that was well cultivated, and full of villages; we ſtopped at the town of *Aſſepas*, about five leagues from the place where we had paſſed the night, and found a caravan loaded with wine for our director at *Gamron*. The next day we continued our journey, and ſaw a vaſt number of ſmall birds in a field ſowed with rice, and a little farther, in a marſhy ground, ſeveral ſnipes, ducks, lapwings, and ſtorks: We arrived in good time at the *Caravanſerai* of *Koes-kieſar*, after a journey of ſeven leagues.

The next day we paſſed through a fine plain, that was cultivated, and full of villages, and little hills. We here met ſome *Perſian* lords, with a train of twenty-five ſervants, who were all well armed, and afterward ſeveral caravans. We arrived about three at the *Caravanſerai* of *Dedergoe*, ſeven leagues from that where we had paſſed the night. The next day we paſſed by a ruinous caſtle, which was ſituated in a place full of little hills, and then continued our journey over mountains, that were very difficult of acceſs, and where we were frequently obliged to alight. We deſcended, with inexpreſſible difficulty, into the plain of *Jeſ-dagaes*, where we reſted ourſelves at the *Caravanſarai* of that name, being much fatigued, though we had not travelled above ſeven eagues. The next day about noon, we arrived at *Magſoebegi*, where I found Mr. *St. John*, who came from *Iſpahan*, and was going to *Gamron*, in quality of director of the *Engliſh* company: He was accompanied by Signior *Franciſco*, who had the management of that company's wines at *Zjie-raes*. He continued his journey in the night with the caravan, and I mine at break of day, over a beautiful plain, full of incloſed gardens, and dove-houſes, as far as *Cominſja*, which is a large town, and furniſhed with ſeveral very commodious *Caravanſerais*, and by the ſide of it runs a river. The next day I paſſed over another plain, which was likewiſe full of gardens, and houſes, and is watered by a canal, that extends to *Majaer*, where we arrived about two in the afternoon, after a journey of ſix leagues. I there drew the inſide of the beautiful *Caravanſerai* of *Majaer*, from my chamber window, which opened toward the great gate. I have already given given a deſcription of the outſide of this ſtructure, and of the country around it, and have repreſented it in a plate. I departed from this place at break of day, and paſſed by *Mierſa-Elraſa*, which is two leagues beyond it, and three from *Iſpahan*, where I arrived about three in the afternoon. I alighted at the convent of the *Capuchins*, where I was very well received by the father guardian. I choſe this retreat, that I wight be a little at eaſe, beſide which, I did not intend to tarry long in that city. I was informed at my arrival, that the king went from thence the 28th of *Auguſt*, and ſtopped at his garden of *Sadets-abaet*, till the 16th of *September*, and afterward at that of *Koes-gonna*, and the 24th at *Douwlet-abaet*, three leagues from this metropolis. He was accompanied by all the grandees of his court, and likewiſe by his concubines: the principal deſign of his journey was to viſit the frontiers of his kingdom, agreeably to the cuſtom of the antient kings his predeceſſors. He conſigned the regency, in his abſence, to the eunuch *Sefi-Coelic-Aga*, whom he inveſted with an abſolute authority.

The next day after my arrival, Mr. *Bakker*, the director, did me the honour to ſend his ſteward to congratulate me upon my return, and to invite me to dine with him, from which I excuſed myſelf, with a promiſe to viſit him in the evening. He received me with great civility

Karwansera Majaer.



vility and friendſhip, and offered me an apartment in his houſe, for which I returned him my thanks, and went back to the convent.

The next I paid a viſit to Mr. *Locke*, the *Engliſh* agent, who was alſo ſo good as to offer me his houſe. My friends came to welcome me, and among the reſt Mr. *Joſeph*, an *Italian* ſurgeon and phyſician, who arrived at *Iſpahan* ſince my departure for the *Indies*.

I afterward wrote to my friends at *Batavia*, particularly to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, and the baron *de Larix*, by a courier who was ſetting out for *Gamron* with ſome diſpatches. I then went for my diverſion into the country with the director, to the garden of *Koes-gonna*, where the king had ſtopped for ſome time, after his departure from *Iſpahan*.

There is a noble building in the middle of this garden, with a large hall, very finely painted. From the top of this ſtructure, the eye commands a proſpect of all the country around; and there is a ſeparate ſeraglio, diſtributed into ſmall apartments. I paſſed the night at the company's houſe, where ſeveral other perſons, as well as myſelf, were entertained the next day with the utmoſt civility.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Congratulations on the new year, &c. *An entertainment given by an* Armenian *merchant. The extraordinary conduct and death of a miniſter of* France. *The* Guebres. *Their calculation of the world's duration. Their opinions and manners.*

Firſt of January *congratulations.*

ON the firſt day of the year 1707, I went to congratulate the director, and to wiſh him a happy year, in conformity to the cuſtom of the country. He preſſed me to dine with him that day in company with father *Antonio*, burgo-maſter of *Julfa*, together with moſt of the principal *Armenian* merchants, and the greateſt part of the *European* monks: Abundance of rain fell this day.

I went likewiſe, on the 6th, to pay my compliments to the *Engliſh* agent, who provided an entertainment for the ſame company as dined the firſt day at the director's. The time we paſſed there was rendered very agreeable by the ſound of ſeveral inſtruments, and the diſcharge of five ſmall pieces of cannon.

On the 7th, the *Perſians* ſolemnized the laſt day of their grand faſt, which had continued a whole month. A few days after the director honoured me with a viſit, and we went the next day to dine at *Julfa*, with Mr. *Gregory Sumael*. As we were paſſing over a plain on horſeback, the director's horſe fell with him into a ditch full of ſnow, from whence we drew him out with great difficulty. When we came to the *Armenian*'s houſe, we found the patriarch there, together with father *Antonio Deſtiro*; the ſecond director of the *Engliſh* company, ſome *French* eccleſiaſtics, and a great number of *Armenian* merchants, in all above fifty perſons. We were entertained at firſt with ſweetmeats, hot liquors, cordial wawater, and tobacco; and afterward with all ſorts of proviſions. When the patriarch had bleſſed the table, he took a loaf, and broke it, and then preſented the pieces to ſeveral of the gueſts, which was a ceremony I had never ſeen before. The hall, which was very ſpacious, was covered with a carpet of cotton, around which we placed ourſelves, agreeably to the cuſtom of the country; and the ſervants were very diligent in ſupplying each of the gueſts with proviſions and wine. We drank to the health of all the gueſts, and of ſeveral perſons who were abſent, and the company parted about the cloſe of day. On the 17th, was ſolemnized the baptiſm of the croſs, the particulars of which have been formerly related.

The death of a French *ambaſſador.*

Much about this time we were informed that Mr. *Fabre*, who came to the *Perſian* court, in the quality of a *French* ambaſſador, died at *Erivan* the 20th of *Auguſt*; and that he had left no more than four ducats behind him, though he had contracted debts to the amount of above a hundred thouſand livres at *Conſtantinople*, where was likewiſe his wife, who was a *Grecian*: It was alſo ſaid, that he had brought another wife from *Paris*, and that ſhe repaired to *Iſpahan*, where ſhe had the boldneſs to aſſume the character of the deceaſed, and made her entry on horſeback, habited like an *Amazon*, and bare-headed; which was a conduct directly oppoſite to the manners and cuſtoms of the country. The event of this affair was impatiently expected, when intelligence came that Mr. *Michel*, ſecretary to the *French* embaſſy at the *Port*, was to ſet out for *Perſia*. It

was

1707. was likewiſe known, by the way of *Aleppo*, that his moſt chriſtian majeſty had ſent orders to apprehend Mr. *Fabre*, and ſend him priſoner to *France*; but this misfortune was prevented by his death.

We afterward underſtood by letters from *Erivan*, in the month of *February* 1707, that a quarrel ariſing between the ſervants of that ambaſſador's retinue, and the inhabitants of the city, on ſome difference which was ſaid to be entirely owing to the ambaſſadreſs, the contending parties came to blows, and ſeveral *Perſians* being killed in the fray, the inhabitants were ſo provoked, that they immediately ſlaughtered a conſiderable number of the *Frenchmen*, and dragged the reſt of them to priſon; among whom were found ſome *Armenians*, who were all beheaded. It was afterward reported, but without any certainty, that the court of *Perſia* had given orders for ſending back the ambaſſadreſs; but I ſhall give a more particular account of this affair in the ſequel.

The author's converſation with a prieſt of the Guebres.

I was very deſirous at that time, to converſe with ſome prieſts of the *Guebres*, and was favoured with an opportunity of that nature by means of the *Engliſh* agent, a man of merit and learning, and in whoſe friendſhip I had the honour to enjoy a conſiderable ſhare: He procured me a viſit from one of theſe prieſts, who was attended by an interpreter, that ſerved him in the quality of ſecretary, and we enter'd into diſcourſe together. I firſt ask'd him, his opinion of the creation of the world, and of God's omnipotence: To which he reply'd, that he conſidered God as the Being of Beings, and a ſpirit of light, above the comprehenſion of human faculties; that he is immenſe, and preſent in all places; almighty, and from all eternity, and will exiſt to eternity; that nothing can be concealed from him, or done in oppoſition to his will. They have likewiſe a tradition amongſt them, that ſome of the angels rebelled againſt God, and had the inſolence to wage war with him; and that one of thoſe *Angels*, named *Ablies* before his fall, and after it *Zeyloen*, or *Devil*, was thrown headlong into the *Doeſag*, or *Hell*, which they ſuppoſe to be in the center of the earth. They ſay, that God created the earth in ſix periods of time, which they call *Mey-deſerem*, *Mey-doesjem*, *Peti-esjaeyhem*, *Eoos-aen*, *Meydie-jeriben*, and *Ammaeſpas-miediehem*. He could not inform me whether theſe were years, months, weeks, or days; but was inclinable to ſuppoſe they might be days. He added, that after God had created the world, he likewiſe created man, and called him *Babba-Adam*, from whom all his deſcendants have received the name of *Adam*, but in a more particular manner amongſt the *Perſians* and *Turks*: That this *Adam* was formed out of the four elements, fire, air, water, and earth: That God afterward created his ſpirit, which they imagine to be a wind, and then extracted from the left ſide of *Adam* ſome part of his body, and a portion of his ſoul, with which he formed woman, in the image and reſemblance of *Adam*: That likewiſe in proceſs of time, ſome one, with whoſe name they are unacquainted, preſented to *Adam* a certain ſpecies of corn, larger than a melon, whereof he ate, and for that offence was expelled by the deity from the ſeat which he had granted him for his habitation. He likewiſe told me, that when man was firſt created, his eyes were placed on the uppermoſt part of the head, and that they did not deſcend below his forehead, till after he had eaten the fruit. This notion makes it evident, that they believe his view was directed toward heaven before the fall, and after it to the earth. He added, that *Adam* afterward preſenting himſelf before God, the lord demanded of him, what he had ſeen at his firſt creation? To which he replied, that he had beheld his creator; and God having further enquired what he then ſaw, he anſwered, 1707.

ſwered, that he then ſaw himſelf in a deplorable ſtate. The prieſt likewiſe declared, that he knew not in what manner *Adam* and his wife afterward conducted themſelves, but was certain that they had multiplied their kind, and peopled the earth: That there appeared, a long time after this, a prophet, whom they call *Zaer-ſios*, and that the *Perſians* to this very day take him for *Abraham*: That this prophet recommended to mankind the practice of virtue, and the deteſtation of vice: That mankind murmured at him, ſaying, *Why do you enjoin us the performance of this, and why forbid us the other?* To which he anſwered, *I come by the command of God*: They then returned, *If your aſſertion be true, draw yourſelf through the gold and ſilver we are preparing to melt*; *if you do that, without receiving any injury, we will readily believe you, and yield obedience to your injunctions.* This experiment he conſented to ſubmit to, and performed it with ſafety: from this circumſtance they gave him the name of *Zaer-ſios*, or *Zaer-ſioeſt*, which ſignifies a perſon waſhed with melted gold or ſilver: He then gave them the books of their law, that they might be inſtructed in the performance of his precepts, with reſpect to God and their neighbour: Theſe laws obliged them to reverence whatever was above them, namely, the ſun, the fire, the water, and the earth, without paying adoration to them: The prieſt added, that many perſons thought they worſhipped the four elements, though in reality they entertained a veneration for fire, only on account of the many advantages they derived from it; for water, becauſe it afforded them drink, and purified them; for air, becauſe it furniſhed them with light, namely, the luſtre of the ſun and moon, which they honoured for their beneficial brightneſs, and paid the ſame regard to the earth, becauſe they proceeded from it. Their veneration for fire is deduced from the antient *Perſians*, in the days of *Cyrus*, *Darius*, and *Alexander*, who eſteemed fire as ſacred and eternal, and carried it on ſilver altars before their armies. They alſo bore the image of the ſun in a chryſtal veſſel, and placed it over their tents, that it might be ſeen by all. The prophet *Ezekiel* had this practice in view when he ſaid, *Your images of the ſun ſhall be thrown down.*

The food they are forbidden to eat.

They are not permitted to eat crows, ſerpents, nor camels; and even the blood of thoſe creatures is prohibited them, as is alſo the hog, unleſs they have kept them two or three months in their own houſes, and prevented them from eating any impure food.

Their cuſtoms, with regard to the birth of infants.

As to births, the third day after the infant's nativity, they ſend for a prieſt, who pours holy water into the child's and the mother's mouth. At the ſame time he gives the infant the name of one of his predeceſſors, after which he invokes the aſſiſtance of God, who created the heaven and the earth, and entreats him to grant a long life to the child, together with all things neceſſary for its accommodation. They have no circumciſion.

Their marriages.

When a virgin becomes marriageable, and has been ſolicited to enter upon the nuptial ſtate, ſhe makes choice of ſome perſon of her own ſex, whom ſhe authorizes to appear in her name, and with witneſſes, before the judges of the place; when this commiſſion has been diſcharged, the judges enquire of the witneſſes, whether the pretenſions of the man are well ſupported? After which the intended bridegroom appears, and is thrice asked by the judge, whether he be inclinable to eſpouſe that woman? To which the man having replied in the affirmative, he is ordered to pay forty *tomans* in ſilver, and five in gold, which amount to 1575 livres, in caſe the woman ſhould require it; and this ſum is uſually paid in jewels; but if his circumſtances ſhould not permit him to advance it, his wife may diſpenſe with the payment.

When theſe preliminaries are ſettled, the ſuitor goes with five or ſix of his oldeſt relations, to the houſe of his intended ſpouſe, who is accompanied by ſeveral women. The perſon whom ſhe had authorized to act for her on this occaſion, then takes her by the hand, and preſents her to her huſband, upon which all the relations take each of them a candle, and conduct her to the habitation of her ſpouſe, and into the chamber where the marriage is to be conſummated; but perſons of quality have no interview with each other before the celebration of their nuptials. When a woman happens to prove barren, the huſband may eſpouſe another wife with the conſent of the former.

Their burials.

When a perſon is at the point of death, it is uſual for a prieſt to attend on that occaſion, and he then reads what is ſuitable to the condition of the ſick perſon, and when death has done its work, the body is conveyed to a place appointed for that purpoſe, and called *Leſcona*. There they leave it for the ſpace of 4 or 5 hours, while they aſſemble the relations of the deceaſed. After the body has been dreſſed in white linnen, and wrapped up in a ſheet, it is placed on an iron bier, in order to be carried to a certain mountain, that contains an apartment, formed into ſeveral diviſions, in one of which the corps is depoſited while ſome paſſages are read out of a certain book. When this ceremonial is compleated, the body is left in that ſepulchre for the ſpace of a year; at the end of which the bones are collected together, and buried in the earth. Theſe people are of opinion, that the moment the ſoul quits the body, it paſſes into another world, where it continues excluded from the ſight of God till the day of judgment: At which time it makes its appearance before him, in order to be conſigned either to heaven or to hell, as it ſhall appear to have been innocent or guilty.

Their days of prayer.

They never obſerve any day of reſt, but have four days of prayer in each month, and aſſemble themſelves in their temples, for the celebration of their ceremonies. They have their ſtated prayers three times a day, namely, at ſun riſe, noon, and evening; and they curſe *Mohammed*, whom they account a falſe prophet.

Theſe *Guebres* have been driven from their own country by the fatalities of war, and are now reduced to an inconſiderable number. They are likewiſe diſperſed in ſeveral cities of *Perſia*, in which places they enjoy more liberty than is allowed them at *Iſpahan*, where they who have ſettled themſelves at *Julfa*, are now obliged to embrace the *Mohammedan* doctrines. In the reign of king *Abbas* they enjoyed the ſame liberty as was granted to the *Armenians* and *Chriſtians*, and they were treated with this indulgment in order to prevent them from ſettling on the frontiers of *Turkey*. They had likewiſe lands given them to cultivate, as well there as in other places. With reſpect to other particulars, theſe *Guebres*, or *Gaures*, are all reduced to a low degree of poverty. Their women are clothed after the *Arabian* manner, and always go with their faces uncovered, in conformity to the antient cuſtom of that nation: They have a language peculiar to themſelves, and the characters of it entirely differ from thoſe of the *Perſian*.

Their calculation of the years of the world.

They compute the years of the world's duration from *Adam*, whom they call by that name, as we do; but they give other denominations to his deſcendants. They ſay, that when he had attained to the 30th year of his age, *Ouſchyn* was born, and they conſider him as the chief of a family; the next perſon in their genealogy of this race of mankind, they call *Siem-ſiet*, and pretend that he was their firſt king. They add, that he lived 700 years, and was ſucceeded by *Soobaet*, who lived a thouſand years, and left his crown to *Freydoem*, who reſigned it to *Pſoom*, at the age of 500 years. As to this laſt, they neither know in what manner he lived, nor how he

Kings of the Guebres.

1707.

conducted the reins of government. After him they place *Mamoet-ſieher*, who reigned 120 years, and then *Nouſar*, who reigned twelve, and was depoſed by *Aeſ-raeſſia*, a *Tartar*, who ſeized the *Perſian* crown, and reigned fifty years. His ſucceſſors, according to their computation, were *Khekobaet*, who reigned 120 years; *Khekodoes*, 150; *Loraes* and *Goſtaes*, 120 together; *Baman* ninety-nine, and *Homa*, the daughter of *Baman*, thirty. This princeſs was ſucceeded by *Darop*, the ſon of *Darius*, who reigned fourteen years and three months, and had for his ſucceſſor the ſon of *Baman*, who reigned but twelve. *Sebandaz-roemie*, or *Alexander the Great*, enjoyed the kingdom after him, and reigned fourteen years, as theſe people think; for they repreſent them all as kings, after the two firſt fathers. The ſucceſſors which they aſſign to that conqueror, are *Aſht*, the ſon of *Aſht-poes*; *Nieroeſſein-Coſſoro*, ſon of *Ardewoen*; and *Babokoen*, who reigned 265 years; *Ardiſjier Babokoen* forty one years; *Armoos*, the ſon of *Siapoer*, five; *Baroen Senogormoes* three years and three months; *Pieroes-ger* ten years; *Baroem*, the ſon of *Baroem-mioen*, four years and five months; *Narſie*, the ſon of *Baroem*, nine years; *Ormoes*, the ſon of *Narſie*, likewiſe nine years; *Sapoer*, the ſon of *Sapoer*, five years and four days; *Zaardezjer aſzia*, ten years; *Zia-poer*, the ſon of *Zia-ardezier*, eleven years; *Jeſdegerd* thirty years; *Baroem-migier* ſixty ſix years; *Jeſdegerd*, the ſon of *Baroem*, eighteen years and four months; *Fhiroes*, the ſon of *Jeſdegerd*, fourteen years; *Narſia*, the ſon of *Fhieros*, ſeven years; *Bellaes*, the ſon of *Fhieros*, five years; *Cobaet-Sinneferoes* forty years; *Nouſeer-woen*, the ſon of *Cobaet*, a very juſt and equitable prince, forty ſeven; *Ormoes*, the ſon of *Noſjeva*, twelve; *Coſroes*, the ſon of *Ormoes*, thirty eight; *Cobaet*, ſon of *Coſroes*, ſeven months; *Aerde-ſjier Sinnecobaet*, eighteen months; *Aſermien*, the daughter of *Coſroes*, ſix months; *Koſwar-bonee*, another daughter of *Coſroes*, one year; *Jeſdegerd* twenty years.

Theſe were ſucceeded by a race of *Mohammedan* princes. This computation of years ſince *Adam*, excepting thoſe of the princes who have been mentioned, and whoſe age is not known, amounts to 3632 years, one month, and five days; to which 1135 years, from the coming of *Mohammed* to the preſent time, being added, the total amounts to 4767 years, one month, and five days.

This is all the information I could obtain, with reſpect to the *Guebres*, and the princes of that race, who have governed *Perſia*, as theſe people pretend. I will now ſubjoin an exact liſt of the *Perſian* kings, who have reigned ſince the time of *Alexander the Great*, and ſhall offer a few conciſe remarks, that are neceſſary for the illuſtration of this ſubject.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXX.

A liſt of the Perſian *kings, who have reigned in ſucceſſion, from the death of* Alexander the Great, *to the preſent time; extracted from the antient* Greeks, *and modern* Perſians.

AFTER the death of *Alexander the Great*, who poſſeſſed the empire of *Aſia* for the ſpace of 7 years, great diſſentions aroſe between the captains of that conqueror, with reſpect to the ſovereign power, to which they all formed pretenſions. In order, therefore, to prevent the effects of ſuch a competition, they unanimouſly agreed to give the crown to *Aridæus*, the brother of *Alexander*, and the ſon of *Philip* by *Philene:* But as this prince was not maſter of thoſe qualifications that were requiſite for ſuſtaining ſo great a weight, the regency of the ſtate was conſigned to *Perdiccas*; and the government of ſeveral kingdoms and provinces, was conferred upon the other princes and lords, who acted at firſt in the name of the new king, but ſoon aſpired to the ſovereign power: As theſe facts are known by all the world, and have been largely treated of by ſeveral hiſtorians, I ſhall think it ſufficient to preſent the reader with an exact liſt of all the *Perſian* kings from that time.

It may be neceſſary to obſerve, that the *Greeks* did not long continue maſters of the *Perſian* empire. Their diſunion, and continual wars, contributed not a little to the declenſion of their power. We find, however, in antient authors, a ſucceſſion of *Macedonian* princes, who governed this kingdom. *Alexander* conferred the government of it on *Peuceſtes*, during his life, and he retained it after the death of that prince, till he was dethroned by *Antiochus*, a natural ſon of *Philip*, and brother of *Alexander*, after the defeat of *Eumenes*.

1. *Antiochus* therefore was the firſt *Macedonian*, who, after the death of *Alexander*, aſſumed the title of king of *Perſia*. He had been inveſted before with the government of *Aſia Minor*, and after the defeat of *Eumenes*, he made himſelf maſter of *Aſia*, together with *Syria*, *Babylon*, *Perſia*, and all the provinces that depended upon them. But this prince was vanquiſhed in his turn, by *Seleucus Nicanor*, who conquered *Perſia*.

2. *Seleucus Nicanor*, or *Nicator*, which name ſignifies a conqueror, governed this fine kingdom for the ſpace of thirty years.

3. *Antiochus Soter*, or the preſerver, who ſucceeded him, reigned twenty one years.

4. *Antiochus Theos* fifteen years.

5. *Seleucus Callinicus*, eighteen years.

Hiſtorians differ, with reference to the time when the *Parthians* revolted. Some place this event in the reign of *Antiochus Theos*, and others in that of *Callinicus*. I ſhall not multiply remarks on this difference, which has but little affinity with our preſent ſubject; and ſhall therefore content myſelf with obſerving, after *Scaliger*, and ſome others, that this revolt was carried on under the conduct of *Arſaces* (who, according to *Strabo*, was a *Scythian* by birth, though others will have him to be a pyrate) in the 12th year of the reign of *Antiochus Theos*, and the 3d of the 132d Olympaid; or, according to *Helvicus*, the 3700th year of the world, and 248 years before the nativity of *Jeſus Chriſt*.

We, however, are not to infer from hence, that *Arſaces* aſcended the throne of *Perſia*, immediately after this revolt, ſince there are reaſons to believe it was at that time when

Seleucus Callinicus was engaged in a war againſt his brother *Antiochus Hierax*, or the *Rapacious*, and about the 17th year of his reign. But it is generally agreed, that the *Parthians* made themſelves maſters of *Perſia*, in conſequence of that revolt, and poſſeſſed it for the ſpace of 479, or 476 years.

I ſhall now preſent the reader with a liſt of the *Arſacides*, or kings who aſſumed the name of *Arſaces*, in honour to the memory of that prince. I have likewiſe added the number of years they reigned.

Kings of Perſia.

	Years of their reign.
1. *Arſaces* I.	
2. *Arſaces* II. reigned	20
3. *Pampatius*, *Phraates*, or *Arſaces* III.	12
4. *Pharnaces*, or *Arſaces* IV.	8
5. *Mithridates*, or *Arſaces* V.	47
6. *Phraates*, or *Arſaces* VI.	28
7. *Artabanus* I. or *Arſaces* VII.	2
8. *Pacorus* I. or *Arſaces* VIII.	
9. *Phraates* II. or *Arſaces* IX.	
10. *Mithridates* II. or *Arſaces* X.	
11. *Orodes*, or *Arſaces* XI.	
12. *Phraates* III. or *Arſaces* XII.	
13. *Tiridates*, or *Arſaces* XIII.	
14. *Phraataces*, or *Arſaces* XIV.	
15. *Orodes* II. or *Arſaces* XV.	
16. *Boaones*, *Vonones*, or *Arſaces* XVI.	

His ſon *Meherdates* did not reign after him, another family having aſcended the throne.

17. *Artabanus* 2. or *Arſaces* XVII.
18. *Bardanes*, *Vardanes*, or *Arſaces* XVIII.
19. *Gotarzes*, or *Arſaces* XIX.
20. *Vologeſes* I. or *Arſaces* XX.
21. *Artabanus* III. or *Arſaces* XXI.
22. *Pacorus* II. or *Arſaces* XXII.
23. *Coſores*, or *Arſaces* XXIII.
24. *Vologeſes* II. or *Arſaces* XXIV.
25. *Vologeſes* III. or *Arſaces* XXV.
26. *Artabanus* IV. or *Arſaces* XXVI.

This *Artabanus* was the laſt of the kings of *Parthia*, who ruled over all the ſtates of the *Perſian* monarchy, and maintained long wars with the *Romans*. This prince was aſſaſſinated by a *Perſian*, named *Artaxerxes*, who ſeized the crown in the 5th year of *Alexander Severus* the emperor, according to *Agathias*, or, as others ſay, in the 10th: That is, according to *Scaliger* and *Helvicus*, 228, or 232 years after the birth of *Jeſus Chriſt*; and in the year of the world 4176, or 4179. It is pretended that this *Artaxerxes* was the ſon of *Pavecus* a tanner; or, that this *Pavecus*, who had no child, and was ſkilled in aſtrology, having found by his conſultation of the ſtars, that the offspring of *Sannus* a certain ſoldier, who lodged in his houſe, ſhould become illuſtrious and fortunate, he perſuaded his wife to receive him to her bed, in conſequence of which ſhe became the mother of this *Artaxerxes*. It is at leaſt certain that this prince underſtood magick, and that all the kings of *Perſia* who have reigned ſince his time, are deſcended from him. The princes in the following ſeries are ranged as I find them in *Agathias*, and other authors, who have tranſcribed the *Perſian* records.

The deſcendants of Artaxerxes.

	Ye.	*Mo.*
1. *Artaxerxes* I. who reign'd	14	10
2. *Sapor* I.	31	
3. *Hormiſdas* I.	1	
4. *Varanes* I.	3	
5. *Varanes* II.	16	
6. *Varanes* III. ſurnamed *Seganeſna*	4	
7. *Narſes*	7	9
8. *Miſdates*	7	9
9. *Sapor* II.	70	

He was declared king while he was in the womb of his mother, on whoſe body the crown was placed.

	Ye.	*Mo.*
10. *Artaxerxes* II. the brother of *Sapor*, reign'd	4	
11. *Sapor* III. ſon of *Artaxerxes*	5	
12. *Varanes* IV. ſurnamed *Kermenſat*	11	

13. *Iſ-*

	Ye.	Mo.
13. *Iſdigerdes* I. to whom the emperor *Arcadius* conſigned the guardianſhip of his ſon *Thodoſius*, according to *Procopius*	21	
14. *Varanes* V.	20	
15. *Varanes* VI. or *Iſdigerdes* II.	17	4
16. *Perozes*	20	
17 *Valens*, brother of *Perozes*, or, according to others, *Obalas*	4	
18. *Cabades*, ſon of *Perozes*.		

This prince being deſirous to introduce a law, which ſhould authorize every man to enjoy as many women as he pleaſed, whether virgins, or married women, was depoſed, in the eleventh year of his reign, and impriſoned in a caſtle. His brother *Zambaſes*, or *Zamaſper*, ſucceeded him, and reigned but four years, others ſay two. *Cabades* having been preſerved by the aſſiſtance of the queen his wife, who for his ſake expoſed herſelf to the fury of his guards, retired among the *Euthalites*, and eſpouſed the daughter of their king, with whom he returned into *Perſia*, and reſumed the crown, which he had enjoyed thirty years before, ſo that *Zembaſes* and he reigned in all forty one years.

19. *Coſroes the Great*, and the ſon of *Cabades*, ſuſtained furious wars againſt the emperors *Juſtinian* and *Juſtin*, and reign'd 48 years.

	Ye.	Mo.
20. *Hormiſdas* II.	8	
21. *Coſroes* II.	39	
22. *Siroes*	1	
23. *Ardiſher*		7
24. *Baras*, or *Sarbaras*		6
25. *Baram*, or *Barnarim*	1	7
26. *Hormiſdas* III.	2	
27. *Jezdegird* II. or *Jazdgerd*	1	8

The *Arabs*, and modern authors among the *Perſians*, aſſign other names to theſe princes, that correſpond with the genius of their reſpective languages; but I ſhall not multiply remarks upon them, ſince I am deſirous of avoiding all prolixity, and eſpecially as an account of them may be ſeen in the abridgment of the *Perſian* kings, *p.* 702, *&c.* written by *D. T. V. Y.* one of the gentlemen of the bed-chamber to the moſt chriſtian king. This work is entitled, *An Account of all the ſtates, empires, kingdoms, and principalities, in the world.*

Perſia had ſuffered greatly under the adminiſtration of the laſt ſix kings, and was at laſt ſubjected to a foreign yoke. *Mohammed* the impoſtor was born in the 802d year of the *Alexandrian Æra*, the 22d day of the month *Niſan*, which correſponds with the 22d of *April*, in the 572d year of the *Chriſtian Æra*. He publiſhed his falſe prophecies, in the year 611, in the 40th year of his age, and was driven out of *Mecca*, in 622; upon which he retreated to *Medina*. In time, he won, by force of arms, *Chaibar*, *Mecca*, and the better part of *Arabia*, and died of the falling ſickneſs, accompanied with a fever in the year 634, and the 11th of the *Hegira*, or his eſcape from *Medina*. After his death, *Abubecr*, or *Abudaker*, the ſon of *Amer* and *Salma*, and father of *Aijiſcha*, *Mohammed*'s third wife, was proclaimed *Khalifah*, or chief of the *Mohammedans*, in ſpiritual and temporal affairs, and was ſucceeded by *Omar*, or *Homar*, the ſon of *Elkateph*, who drove out *Jeſdegird* in the year 640, and made himſelf maſter of the city of *Madajina*, where *Coſroes* had held his court, and he afterward conquered the greateſt part of *Perſia*. This prince kept his court at *Bagdad*, and was aſſaſſinated in the 4th year of his reign, by *Abululua*, a *Perſian* of mean extraction. The Khalifah who ſucceeded him was *Othman*, or *Oſman*, the ſon of *Affan* and *Biſa*, who challenged and ſlew *Jeſdegird*, who had partly reinſtated himſelf in his dominions. This event happened in the 31ſt year of the *Hegira*, and the 651ſt of *Jeſus Chriſt*; after which this prince continued in the peaceable poſſeſſion of all the ſtates of the *Perſian* monarchy, which the deſcendants of *Artaxerxes* had enjoy'd for the ſpace of 461 years, or, as others ſay, 457. I ſhall now inſert a liſt of the *Khaliſahs*, or *Mohammedan* kings of *Perſia*, and they are here collected from the *Perſian* authors, namely, *Mirkond*, *Abul Pharajus*, &c.

Kings of Perſia, *deſcended from the Khaliſahs, called* Ommiades.

	Ye.	*Mo.*
1. *Othman* or *Oſman* III. Khaliſah, reckoning from *Abubecr*, and the firſt king of *Perſia*, reign'd	11	4
2. *Ali* IV. Khaliſah	4	9
3. *Ali Haſſen*, or *Acem*		6
4. *Muavi*, or *Mauvia* I.	19	6
5. *Jezid*, or *Yhezid* I.	3	8
6. *Muavi*, or *Mauvia* II.		4
7. *Abdalla*, 8. *Marwan* I. together,	1	
9. *Abdomalic*	21	1
10. *Walid*, or *Oelid* I.	9	8
11. *Solyman Ben Abdolmalec*	2	6
12. *Omar*, or *Homar*	2	5
13. *Jezid*, or *Yhezid* II.	4	8
14. *Ochon*, or according to others, *Hiſham*, *Haſchan*, *Heſchan*, or *Evelid*	19	8
15. *Walid*, or *Oelid* II.	1	2
16. *Jezid*, or *Yhezid* III.		6
17 *Ibrahim*, or *Ebrahem*		3
18. *Marwan* II.	5	

The 6th of theſe *Khaliſahs*, who was the 4th king of *Perſia*, named *Muavi*, or *Muaviah Ben Abu Sofian*, deſcended from an *Arab* of quality, named *Ommiah*, and for that reaſon this prince and his ſucceſſors were ſtyled *Ommiades* by the authors of that time, down to the reign of *Marwan* II. But the deſcendants of *Ali* called them, in deriſion, *Faraena Beni Ommiah*, the ſignification of which is *Foraoos*, or tyrants, of the race of *Ommiah*. *Marwan* II, and the laſt king of the *Ommiades*, was defeated in *Syria* by the *Abbaſſides*, after which he was taken and put to death in *Egypt*, in the 130th, or the 132d year of the *Hegira*, which accords with the 747th, or 749th year of the Chriſtian account. This *Khaliſah* was ſucceeded by *Abul-Abbas-Saffah*, an *Abbaſſide*, deſcended in the fourth degree from *Abas*, the ſon of *Abdalmothleb*, grandfather of *Mohammed*. His ſucceſſors reign'd 500 years.

Khaliſah's named Abaſſides.

	Ye.	*Mo.*
1. *Abul-Abas-Saffah*, the ſon of *Mohammed*, grandſon of *Ali*, the ſon of *Abdallah*, and great-grandſon of *Abbas*, uncle to *Mohammed* the impoſtor, reign'd	4	9
2. *Abugiafar*, the ſon of *Almanzor*, brother of *Saffah*	22	
3. *Mahadi Billa*, the ſon of *Abugiafar*	3	1
4. *Hadi*, or *Eladi Billa*, the ſon of *Mahadi*	1	3
5. *Harum Raſchid Billa*, the brother of *Hadi*	23	2½
6. *Abu Abdalla Amin*, the ſon of *Harum*	9	9
7. *Al Mamum*, the brother of *Amin*	20	8
8. *Abu Ezach Motaſſem*, or *Matacon*, the ſon of *Harum*	8	8
9. *Harum Waiec*, the ſon of *Motaſſem*	5	9
10. *Al-Moto Wakkel*, the ſon of *Motaſſem*	14	9
11. *Montaſſer*, the ſon of *Moto-Wakkel*		6
12 *Ahmed Abul-Abas Muſtain*, the ſon of *Motaſſem*	3	9
13. *Motas*, or *Almatez Billa*, the ſon of *Moto-Wakkel*	3	
14 *Mothadi Billa*, the ſon of *Wathec*		11
15 *Ahmed Abul Abas Motamed Billa*, the ſon of *Moto-Wakkel*	23	
16. *Motadhed*, or *Motazed Billa Ahmed*, the ſon of *Muaffic*, and grandſon of *Moto-Wakkel*	9	9
17 *Moctafi Billa*, the ſon of *Motadhed*	6	7½

1707. 1707.

	Ye.	Mo.
18. *Giafar Abul Fadlus Moctader Billa*, the ſon of *Motadhed*	24	11
19. *Mohammed Al Manſur Al Kaher Billa*, the ſon of *Motadhed*	1	5
20. *Ahmed Al Radhi*, or *Razi Billa*, the ſon of *Moctader*	6	10
21 *Ibrahim Abu Iſhacus al Moctaſi Billa*, the the ſon of *Moctader*	6	11½
22 *Abdalla Abulcaſin Moctacſi*, the ſon of *Moctaſi* I.	1	4
23. *Fazele Abulcaſin Mothi Billa*, the ſon of *Moctader*	29	6
24. *Abdel Kerim Abubecr Al Thai*, or *Thayaha*, the ſon of *Mothi*	17	10½
25 *Ahmed Abulabbas Al Kader Billa*, the ſon of *Iſhac*, and grandſon of *Moctader*	41	4
26 *Abdalla Abugiafar Al Kayem, Beamryla*, the ſon of *Kader*	44	6
27. *Al Moctadi Billa*, the ſon of *Mohammed*, and grandſon of *Kayem*	19	5
28. *Ahmed Al Moſtadher* or *Moſtazer Billa*, the ſon of *Moctadi*	25	6
29. *Al Moſtarſhed Billa Abu Manſur*, the ſon of *Moſtadher*	17	7
30. *Abu Jaafar Al Manſur*, ſurnamed *Al Raſhed Billa*, the ſon of *Moſtarſhed*	2	
31. *Mohammed Al Moctaſi Beamrilla*, the ſon of *Moſtadher*	24	11
32. *Iſſuf Al Moſtanjed Billa*, the ſon of *Moctaſi*	11	
33. *Abu Mohammed Al Haſſan Al Moſtadhi Beamrilla*, the ſon of *Moſtanjed*	9	8
34. *Aleman, Al Naſer Ledinilla*, the ſon of *Moſtadhi*	40	11
35. *Al Dhaer Billa Odatoddin Abu Nazr Mohammed*, the ſon of *Al Naſer*		9½
36. *Abujaafar Almanzur Al Moſtanſer Billa*, the ſon of *Al Dhaer*	18	11
37. *Al Moſtazem Billa*, the ſon of *Moſtanſer*	11	7

This prince was defeated and put to death, together with his ſons, by *Hulacu Chan*, emperor of *Mogul* or *Tartary*, in the 654th or 656th year of the *Hegira*, or 1256th or 1258th of the *Chriſtian Æra*, and was the laſt of the *Kalifahs* of *Bagdad* or *Bagded*, who reigned in *Perſia* to the number of fifty ſeven, without including *Mohammed* the falſe prophet. It is neceſſary to obſerve, that the *Khalifahs* had already loſt one part of their dominions in the reign of *Ahmed Al Rhadi*, whoſe ſucceſſors ſcarce retained the title of ſovereigns; though *Tarik Al Abas*, *Akhbar Beni Al Abas*, and *Abdalla Ben Huſſan*, in his book, intitled *Aſſas Fiſadhl beni Abas*, always gives them the ſtyle of kings of *Perſia*. In the mean time the *Tartars* of *Mogul*, who had made great devaſtations in *Perſia*, *Armenia*, and the *Leſſer Aſia*, in the reign of the *Khalifah Al Naſer*, were driven out of *Perſia*, under that of the *Khalifah Al Monſtanſer Billa*, in the 623d year of the *Hegira*, and in the 1226th of our Saviour. But *Hulacu Chan* made himſelf maſter of all this monarchy in 1258. The following is a liſt of the *Tartarian* kings, who reigned in *Perſia* ſince the beginning of their conqueſt, according to *Abul Pharajus*, *Maraſche*, or *Marakſchi*, *Mirkond*, *Edward Pocock*, and ſome others.

Kings of Perſia of the Tartarian or Mogul race.

1. The firſt was *Gingiz*, or *Jingiz Chan*, whoſe conqueſts were interrupted in the year 1226, by the valour of the *Khalifah Abujafar Al Manſur*, *Al Moſtanſer Billa*, who diveſted him of the greateſt part of

Perſia. This prince reigned, as well over his proper ſtates as in *Perſia*, for the ſpace of twenty five years.

	Ye.	*Mo.*
2. *Oktaji*, or *Jogtai Chan*, his ſon	13	
3. *Gajuk Chan*, the ſon of *Oktaji*	1	
4. *Manchuk Chan*, the ſon of *Tuli*, and grandſon of *Jingiz Chan*,	9	
But, as others ſay	13	
5. *Hulacu*, or *Holagu Chan*,	6	
Or, according to others	9	
6. *Abaca*, or *Haib Kai Chan*, the ſon of *Hulacu Chan*	17	
7. *Ahmed*, or *Hamed Chan*	2	2
8. *Argun Chan*	7	
9. *Caichtu Chan* (to whom *Texeira* and ſome others give the name of *Ganiatu*) the ſon of *Abaca*, reigned about	4	7
10. *Baidu Chan*, the ſon of *Targihi*, or *Targai*, and grandſon of *Hulacu Chan*	1	
11 *Kazan Chan*, or *Gazun* the ſon of *Argun Chan*	8	10
12. *Giyathoʼddin Chodabendè Mohammed Chan*; whom other call ſimply *Mohammed*, or *Alyaptu Chan*, the ſon of *Argun*	12	9
13. *Abu Said Bahadur Chan*, the ſon of *Mohammed Chodabendè*	19	
Others ſay that he reigned no more than	9	

This prince was the laſt of the race of *Gingiz Chan*, though *Maraſchi*, in his hiſtory of *Mogul*, adds another, whom he calls *Arba Chan*, the ſon of *Senghi Chan*, and grandſon of *Malec Timur*, who was the ſon of *Artak Boga*, grandſon of *Tuli*, and great grandſon of *Gingiz-Chan*, and to whom this author aſſigns a reign of about five months. Thus this race of the kings of *Perſia* was extinct about the 736th year of the *Hegira*, that is to ſay, 1335 years after the nativity of *Jeſus Chriſt*. For after the death of *Bahadur*, or *Arba Chan*, the governors of the provinces arrogated the ſovereignty to themſelves. This laſted till the time of *Timur*, ſurnamed *Lenc*, or *the Lame*, and who is known by the name of *Tamerlan* among the *Europeans*. This prince aſcended the throne of *Tartary* in the year 771 of the *Hegira*, which correſponds with the year 1369 of the *Chriſtian Æra*, and ſeventeen or eighteen years afterward, he made himſelf maſter of *Perſia*, and was ſucceeded by the following princes.

Kings of of Perſia *of the race of* Tamerlan.

	Ye.	*Mo.*
1. *Timur Lenc Sultan*, reigned over *Tartary* and *Perſia*	30	
2. *Shah Ruch Bahadur Sultan*, the ſon of *Timur Lenc*	43	
3. *Al Malec, al Said, Mohammed Ulug Beg*, the ſon of *Shah Ruch*	2	9
4. *Abdoʼllatif Mirza*, the ſon of *Ulug Beg*		6
5. *Mirza Abdollah*, the ſon of *Ibrahim*, and grandſon of *Shah Ruch*	1	
6. *Mirza Sultan Abuſayd*, the ſon of *Mohammed*, grandſon of *Miran Shah Gurga*, and great-grandſon of *Timur*	18	
7. *Mirza Sultan Mohammed*, the ſon of *Abuſayd*, or, as others ſay, of *Baiſankor*, the ſon of *Shah Ruch*	28	
8. *Mirza Babor Sultan*, the ſon of *Omar Scheikh*, and grandſon of *Abu Said*		
9. *Mirza Al Malec*, or, as he is called by others, *Mohammed Sultan*, the ſon of *Abu Said*, and great-grandſon of *Timur Lenc*	20	

	Ye.	Mo.
10. *Sultan Hoſain Mirza*, the ſon of *Manzur*, and grandſon of *Baikra*, the ſon of *Omar Scheickh*, ſon of *Timur*, reigned about	28	
11. *Mirza Badio'zzaman* or *Badi Abzaman*, the ſon of *Hoſain*, reign'd with his brother, *Mirza Modhaffer*		
12. *Abu'l Mahan Mirza*, and *Gil Mirza*.		

Theſe two princes are the laſt of the race of *Tamerlan*, who reigned in *Perſia*. This race did not poſſeſs all the *Perſian* monarchy; but enjoyed only a part of it, like thoſe who ſucceeded them; for it appears, there were in the fifteenth century two other races, deſcendants of the *Turcomans*, who have likewiſe reign'd over one part of *Perſia*, and for that reaſon are ranked in the number of its kings. The firſt race was called *Kara Koyunli*, or the *Black Sheep*, whence all the following kings are deduced.

Kings of Perſia *of the firſt race of the* Turcomans.

1. *Kara Iſſuf*, or *Joſeph* the black.
2. *Amir Scandar*, the ſon of *Iſſuf*.
3. *Joon-xa*, or *Jean Shah*, the ſon of *Scandar*.
4. *Acen Ali*, the ſon of *Joon-xa*.

Theſe two laſt princes, the father and ſon, were deſtroyed by *Haſan Al Tawil*, of the race of the *Turcomans*, whom the authors of that time call *Ak Koyunli*, or the *White Sheep*. The kings of that race are,

Kings of Perſia, *of the ſecond race of the* Turcomans.

1. *Tur Ali Beg*.
2. *Phacro'adin Koſli Beg*, the ſon of *Tur Ali*.
3. *Karah Ilug Othman:* He was killed in the war he undertook againſt *Amir Scandar*, at the age of ninety years, and about the 809th year of the *Hegira*.
4. *Hamzah Beg*, ſon of *Ilug Othman*, reigned about thirty nine years.
5. *Jean Gir*, the ſon of *Ali Beg*, and grandſon of *Othman*, reigned twenty four years.
6. *Haſan' Al Tawil*, or the *Long*, whom *Texeira* calls *Ozun Azenbek*; and *Leunclavius*, in his *Turkiſh* Hiſtory, *Uſun Chazan (Uſun* ſignifies *Long* in the *Turkiſh* language*)* was alſo the ſon of *Ali Beg*, and brother of *Jean Gir*. It is ſaid that he eſpouſed *Deſpina*, the daughter of the *Greek* emperor, *Calo-Jean*, who reigned at *Trebiſond*, and in *Pontus*. This *Haſan* dy'd the 883d year of the *Hegira*, and the 1478th year of the *Chriſtian Æra*, after he had reigned about eleven years.
7. *Chalil Beg*, whom *Texeira* calls *Sultan Kalil*, the ſon of *Haſan*, reigned but ſix months and a half.
8. *Yacub Beg*, the ſon of *Haſan*, and brother of *Chalil*, was a learned prince, and a fine poet; he reigned twelve years and two months.
9. *Maſih Beg* IV. the ſon of *Haſan*, did not long enjoy the crown, becauſe of the diviſions which prevailed among the nobility, one party of whom placed *Ali Beg*, the ſon of *Chalil* upon the throne; and the other, *Bai Sankar Mirza*, the ſon of *Yacub Beg*, and who was but twelve years of age, and was killed in a battle, after a reign of one year and eight months.
10. *Ruſtan Mirza*, or *Roſtmbek*, the ſon of *Makſud*, and grandſon of *Haſan*, reigned five years and ſix months.
11. *Sultan Ahmed*, or *Hagmed Beg*, the ſon of *Ogurlu Mohammed*, and grandſon of *Haſan*, reigned about a year.
12. *Alwan Mirza*, whom *Texeira* calls *Alwen Bek*, the ſon of *Yuſeph*, or *Iſſuf Bek*, and grandſon of *Haſan*, reigned likewiſe a year.
13. *Mozad*, the ſon of *Yacub Beg*, reigned about ſeven years.

This *Mozad* was the laſt king of that race, and was diveſted of his dominions by *Shah Iſmael*, in the 194th year of the *Hegira*, and the 1507th of the *Chriſtian Æra*; ſince which event *Perſia* was governed by another race of princes, for the ſpace of 200 years ſince, as appears by the following liſt.

Scheich Haidar, the ſon of *Jonaid*, who is ſaid to have deſcended from *Ali*, the ſon-in-law of *Mohammed*, was the firſt of this race. His father *Jonaid*, or *Gioneid*, is ranked among the ſaints, as is his great-great-grandfather *Scheick Sefi*, or *Saffio'ddin*, the ſon of *Gabriel*, and a deſcendant from *Hoſſein*, the ſon of *Ali*. This *Jonaid* had acquired ſo extraordinary a reputation, and was followed by ſuch a number of ſectaries to *Ardevil*, in the province of *Adherbeſjan*, that the king *Joon-xa*, of the race of *Kara Koyunli*, or the *Black Sheep*, grew jealous of him, and oppoſed the adherents to *Jonaid*; who was ſo exaſperated by this proceeding, that he retired, with his followers, to *Diarbekir*, in the country adjacent to *Bagdad* and *Moſul*, where he obtained a favourable reception from the king of the country, whoſe name was *Haſan Al Tawil*, *Azenbek*, or *Uſun Chaſan*, who gave him either his daughter or ſiſter in marriage; for authors vary in this particular. The name of that princeſs was *Kadija Katum*; ſhe had one ſon by this marriage, named *Scheich Haidar*, who is conſidered as the chief of that race. This *Jonaid*, and his followers, paſſed afterward into *Gurgiſtan*, where he obliged all thoſe who were unable to oppoſe him, to join with his party, under a pretence of zeal and ſanctity. They likewiſe made themſelves maſters of *Trebiſond*, whoſe king they ſlew, and then placed *Haidar*, the ſon of *Jonaid*, on the throne. His father or brother-in-law, *Haſan* or *Azenbek*, made himſelf at the ſame time, maſter of the greateſt part of *Perſia*, after having defeated and ſlain *Joon-xa* the king, and his ſon *Acen Ali*; and *Jonaid*, animated by the ſucceſs he had obtained in *Gurgiſtan*, advanced with his followers, into the province of *Schirwan*, ſituated on the *Caſpian-Sea*, where he was deſtroyed by the inhabitants, who hated him. It is ſaid, that his ſon *Haidan*, after having eſpouſed another daughter of *Hazan*, named *Alemcha*, ravaged all *Gurgiſtan*, with an army he received from his father-in-law, or which he himſelf levied in haſte, and that having afterward attacked *Feroxhzad*, king of *Schirwan*, in order to revenge the death of his father, he himſelf periſhed in the battle with all his ſons, except *Iſmael* and *Yar Ali*, whom others call *Ali Parcha*, and who were impriſoned by their uncle *Yacub Beg*, after the death of their father. They, however, recovered their liberty in the reign of *Ruſtan Mirza*, the ſucceſſor of that prince, on this condition, that they ſhould continue at their father's tomb, habited like poor people. This condition they complied with till the death of *Ruſtan*, of which they no ſooner were informed, than they fled from that retreat, being apprehenſive of *Ahmed Sultan* his ſucceſſor. At length *Iſmael* having found means to raiſe an army of the followers of *Ali*, in the reign of *Alwan Mirza*, defeated this prince and his ſon *Morad*, together with the kings of *Schirwan*, *Diarbek*, *Bagdad*, and ſome others, and made himſelf maſter of all *Perſia*, which his poſterity poſſeſs to this day: He aſſumed the name of *Sophi*, an *Arabic* word, which ſignifies a perſon dreſſed in wool, and a zealous *Muſſulman*; perhaps likewiſe to denote the ſtate to which he had been reduced. He was but fourteen years of age when he aſcended the throne, and he reigned as many. The kings deſcended from this prince are,

1. *Shah Iſmael Sophi*, who reigned twenty four years.

2. *Shah Tahmaſp*, or *Xa Tahmas*, who was poiſoned by the queen his wife, by whom he had a ſon named *Haidar*. This happened in the year of our lord 1576, in the ſixty eighth year of that prince's age, and after a reign of fifty four years.

3. *Shah Iſmael* II. the ſon of *Tahmaſp*, reigned but one year and ten months, and died in 1578.

4. *Shah Mohammed Chodabendè*, the ſon of *Tahmaſp*, and brother of *Iſmael*, died in 1585, after he had reigned ſeven years, or, as others ſay, ſix.

5. *Shah Abas*, the ſon of *Chodabende*, a prince of great abilities, died in 1629, at the age of ſixty three years, and after a reign of forty five.

6. *Sam Myrza*, the ſon of *Sefi Myrza*, (who was put to death by his father *Abas*, becauſe he was the darling of the people) aſcended the throne, and aſſumed the name of *Shah Sefi*, as the king his grandfather had deſired. He died in the year 1642, having reigned twelve years.

7. *Shah Abas* II. the ſon of *Sefi*, died in 1666, after a reign of twenty four years.

8. *Shah Selim*, the ſon of *Abas* II. died in 1694, and reigned twenty eight years.

9. *Shah Selim* II. or *Soliman Huſſain*, his ſon, ſucceeded him on the throne, and is the prince who now reigns.

I ſhall now return to the continuation of my travels, till my return to *Holland*.

* * *

CHAP. LXXXI.

The author's departure from Iſpahan. *His arrival at* Cachan, Com, *and* Sauwa. *Meets the* French *ambaſſador. A deſcription of* Casbin *and* Sultania. *His arrival at* Zim-gan, *and* Ardevil.

ABOUT this time the river of *Zendoroe*, near the bridge of *Alla Werdie Chan*, was begun to be dug by five or ſix hundred men: The intention, however, was to employ 70000 men in that work, of which number the *Armenians* of *Julfa* were to furniſh 6000 at their own expence. The work was undertaken in order to facilitate the courſe of that river, which frequently overflows, and lays all the plain under water. The banks were accordingly raiſed, to prevent that inconvenience for the future; but as nothing more than earth and ſlime were employed on this occaſion, all the labour that had been beſtowed, was ſoon rendered ineffectual by the violence of the waters, and the country was again floated over as uſual, as ſoon as the rain and melted ſnow had ſwelled the river.

On the 25th of *February* we received intelligence from *Tauris*, that Mr. *Michel*, the *French* ambaſſador, whom I have formerly mentioned, was arrived thither from *Conſtantinople*, together with the miſtreſs of Mr. *Fabre*: This miniſter had received orders from the court to ſeize this woman at *Erivan*, from whence ſhe was to be conveyed to *Aleppo*, and from thence to be tranſported into *France*: But as ſoon as ſhe heard he was coming to that city, ſhe retired to *Tauris*, and placed herſelf under the protection of the governor, who allowed her thirty *Mamoedies*, or two ducats, *per* day, to enable her to purſue her journey. It was likewiſe reported, that ſhe was accompanied by a *French-man*, and had a train of thirty of the governor's domeſticks. This affair made a great noiſe, and the event was expected with impatience. I intend to relate it at large in the ſequel of this work.

The author's departure.

In the mean time, as the day of my departure drew near, I went to take leave of all my friends in the city, and at *Julfa*, after having firſt wrote to *Batavia* and *Gamron*. I went then and waited on our director, who engaged me to ſup

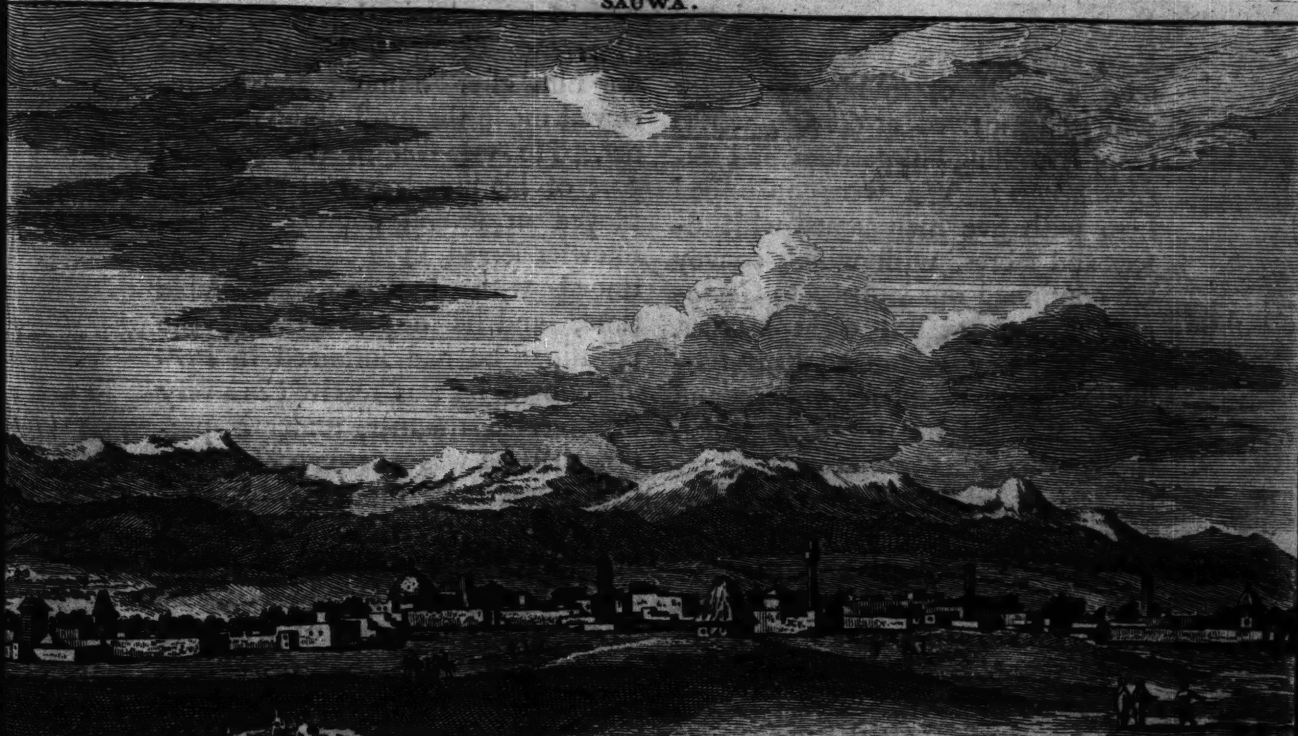
1707. with him. The next day, his deputy accompanied me, with ſeven couriers, as far as the *Caravanſerai* of *Koeſgonna*, oppoſite the king's garden. We ſupped there by the light of torches, and after my friends were returned to the city, I likewiſe went to repoſe myſelf a little, being exceedingly diſordered with a cold. I was joined the next day by two *Armenians*, one of whom, who ſpoke *Dutch*, intended to accompany me in my travels.

We ſet out the 2d of *March*, at nine in the morning, and found the plain all under water: We, however, advanced forward by the aid of ſeveral ſmall bridges, and arrived in about three hours, at the *Caravanſerai* of *Riek*, after a journey of five leagues. The wind blew very cold, and the mountains were, for the moſt part, cover'd with ſnow. Our caravan conſiſted of nine perſons on horſeback, and eight beaſts of burthen, beſide ſervants. I had three horſes, and the others belonged to two *Armenians*, who had three couriers to accompany the baggage. We had likewiſe two *Armenians*, who had a conſiderable charge of merchandiſe; the reſt of our company conſiſted of ſome *Georgians*, and the conductor of the caravan. As we had agreed to travel by day, and repoſe ourſelves during the night, by reaſon of the cold, and to avoid many other inconveniences, we proceeded in our journey at ſeven in the morning, and found two *Caravanſerais* at the end of the plain. From thence we entered the mountains, and arrived about night at *Sardahan*, after having travelled eight leagues. We there paid eight pence for every beaſt of burthen, as is cuſtomary in that place. The next day we came to a garden belonging to the king, and called *Garſtasjabaet*, whence there is a proſpect of many other gardens and villages, and a great plain bordered with mountains, which we left on the right hand. We found the water frozen over in moſt places, and arrived about two at the *Caravanſerai* of *Gaeſ*, five leagues from that, where we had paſſed the night. We renewed our journey at four in the morning over a large and beautiful plain, and advanced as far as the *Caravanſerai* of *Baeſabaet*, which is five leagues from the laſt. As yet we had not ſeen many pleaſure-houſes, but the ways were exceedingly fine. The next day we met two *Georgian Mohammedans*, accompany'd with a retinue of thirteen or fourteen perſons, well provided with fire-arms, lances, bucklers, bows, and arrows. They were travelling in order to join the king, and diverted themſelves with drawing the bow, and running races on horſeback. We made a ſhort halt to obſerve them, and likewiſe to wait for our beaſts of burthen, and we arrived about two at *Cachan*, after a journey of ſix leagues. I walked into the *Bazars*, where I purchaſed ſeveral pieces of ſilk, which are exquiſitely fine, as has been remarked before, and eſpecially with reſpect to the colours.

The great faſt of the *Armenians* began on the 7th of this month, and continues forty nine days, during which they are not permitted to eat either fleſh, fiſh, butter, eggs, or milk, not even on a journey. As this is expreſly the injunction of their patriarch, they never violate it, but limit their diet to bread, rice, oil, herbs and fruits, which are very unſuitable food for a traveller; but they have a full allowance to drink wine.

We continued our journey the next day, over the ſame plain, where we ſaw ſeveral country-houſes, and met a ſecond time the *Georgians* I mentioned before, over againſt the town of *Sieſin*, where we breakfaſted, having the mountains in our rear, and we arrived about four at the *Caravanſerai* of *Abbi-ſiſierien*, after having travelled ſix leagues. The next day we met ſeveral caravans, and advanced to *Gaſſum-aba*, five leagues from the place where we lodged the preceding night. The day following we found the field full husbandmen, whoſe ploughs were drawn by two oxen; and we arrived at *Com* about noon. We continued there no longer than the break of day, and then renewed our journey over the plain, which is interſected by ſeveral ſtreams, into one of which two of our ſaddle horſes fell, thro' the careleſſneſs of the guides; but we had the good fortune to diſengage them from the danger, and did the ſame good office by an *Armenian* ſervant who fell from his horſe. We returned thanks to God, for preſerving us in that manner, but were frequently expoſed to the ſame hazard, our horſes being very reſtive, and I was frequently obliged to lead the horſe that carry'd my baggage, to prevent it from being wet, though I had taken care to cover my cheſts with waxed cloth at *Iſpahan*. At length, after having croſſed many other canals, we arrived at a place where we found ſeveral black tents, and in about three hours we came to the town of *Sauwa*, which is very large, and reſembles a city, being encompaſſed with a wall of earth. We there ſaw a number of fine towers, and a large moſque cover'd with a blue dome, and a ſpacious church-yard without the gates. At a diſtance this place reſembles a foreſt, on account of the trees with which it abounds, and whoſe effect on the eye is extremely agreeable in the ſummer. The repreſentation of it is exhibited in the following plate.

SAUWA.



It was formerly a fine city, but is entirely ruinous at preſent, like many other cities in *Perſia*: Yet we found ſeveral *Caravanſerais* that were commodious enough, and we there payed twelve pence for every beaſt of burthen.

We were informed by an officer of the cuſtom-houſe, who came from court, that the miſtreſs of Mr. *Fabre* was arrived there, and had em-

embraced the *Mohammedan* religion.

A Georgian robbed.

It was likewiſe reported, that the *French* king had made the king of *Perſia* a preſent of this woman.

We were alſo informed in that place, that the roads ſwarmed with robbers, and we had in our *Caravanſerai* a *Georgian Chriſtian*, who had been robbed of all he had: We ſupplied him with what was ſufficient to carry him back again to *Cachan*; and the governor of the place gave us two horſemen for a guard, there being no ſoldiers there: He likewiſe favoured us with a letter to the magiſtrate of the firſt village we were to paſs through, with an order for him to furniſh five or ſix armed perſons for our ſafe conduct. We remained here till the fourteenth, to reſt our horſes, and then renewed our journey, croſſing over a range of mountains, after which we arrived at *Gangh*, where there is nothing but gardens and *Caravanſerais*: We were furniſhed here with five men armed with fuſees and ſabres, with which convoy we continued our journey to *Goskaroe*, having travelled eight leagues. The next day we entered the mountains, that were full of water, and at noon paſſed by the place which the robbers uſually make their retreat, after which we diſmiſſed our convoy, and proceeded by the *Caravanſerai* of *Hoſkaroet*, where robbers frequently ſkulk. I entered it alone, and found it empty, and obſerved ſeveral apartments that were altogether in ruins. We travelled on from thence in order to paſs our night at *Alla-Sang*, a village full of gardens. The next day we proceeded over a plain bordered with villages and gardens, and croſſed ſeveral ſmall rivers, having mountains covered with ſnow frequently in our view to *Abbeſabath*. When we paſſed on from this place we found the country full of ice, and a valley abounding with villages and gardens, whoſe proſpect muſt certainly be delightful in ſummer, though the mountains are always covered with ſnow. About eleven we croſſed a river, together with ſeveral bridges, and proceeded through a large paved way. We afterward met a caravan of camels, and paſſed another river, where one of our ſervants fell into the water, but was immediately drawn out. We found another ſpacious road paved like the former, with two canals on the right and left hand, but all the way was over-flow'd as far as *Casbin*, where the ground riſes higher. We arrived there very late, having travelled eight leagues.

The author's arrival at Casbin.

The day following, the interpreter of Mr. *Michel*, the *French* ambaſſador, whom I have ſo often mentioned, came to me by the order of his maſter, who underſtood that an *European* was arrived in that city, where he had been detained for the ſpace of ſeveral weeks. I went to wait on him after dinner, and he received me in the moſt obliging manner. He was ſtill in the youthful part of his life, but had been employed in ſeveral courts, and had likewiſe ſerved in *Poland*. I continued with him a conſiderable time, and he informed me of the uneaſineſs he had ſuſtained in *Perſia*, where he was received in a very diſagreeable manner, under a pretext that he was not inveſted with the character of the king his maſter. He, however, aſſured me, that he was the firſt miniſter who had been ſent thither by the court of *France*; and the truth of what he declared was rendered evident not only by his credentials, but alſo by the rich preſents he had in charge, and of which he favoured me with a ſight. He likewiſe ſhewed me a letter written from *Paris*, by Mr. *Fabre*'s miſtreſs, wherein ſhe intreats his permiſſion to accompany him in his journey, though it were only to waſh his linnen, and take care of his other apparel. He added, that ſhe was received at the court of *Perſia*, though ſhe had conducted herſelf in a very exceptionable manner in her journey thither, and that the court had refuſed to deliver her up to him, in order to her being ſent into *France*, agreeably to the command he had received from the king his maſter, and that he himſelf was not permitted to make his appearance at court. This miniſter, however, ſet out from hence with an intention to proceed thither, notwithſtanding all the obſtacles that were created in his diſfavour, and departed by night without the leaſt noiſe, leaving two or three ſervants in the tavern where he lodged. A report was current, that twenty perſons on horſeback were diſpatched after him; but this was what he had no occaſion to be alarmed at, becauſe he was attended with eighty domeſtics well armed. We were obliged to continue three days at *Casbin*, our horſes not being in a condition to go any farther. We ſold one ſet of them, and bought others in their ſtead.

The ſituation of Casbin.

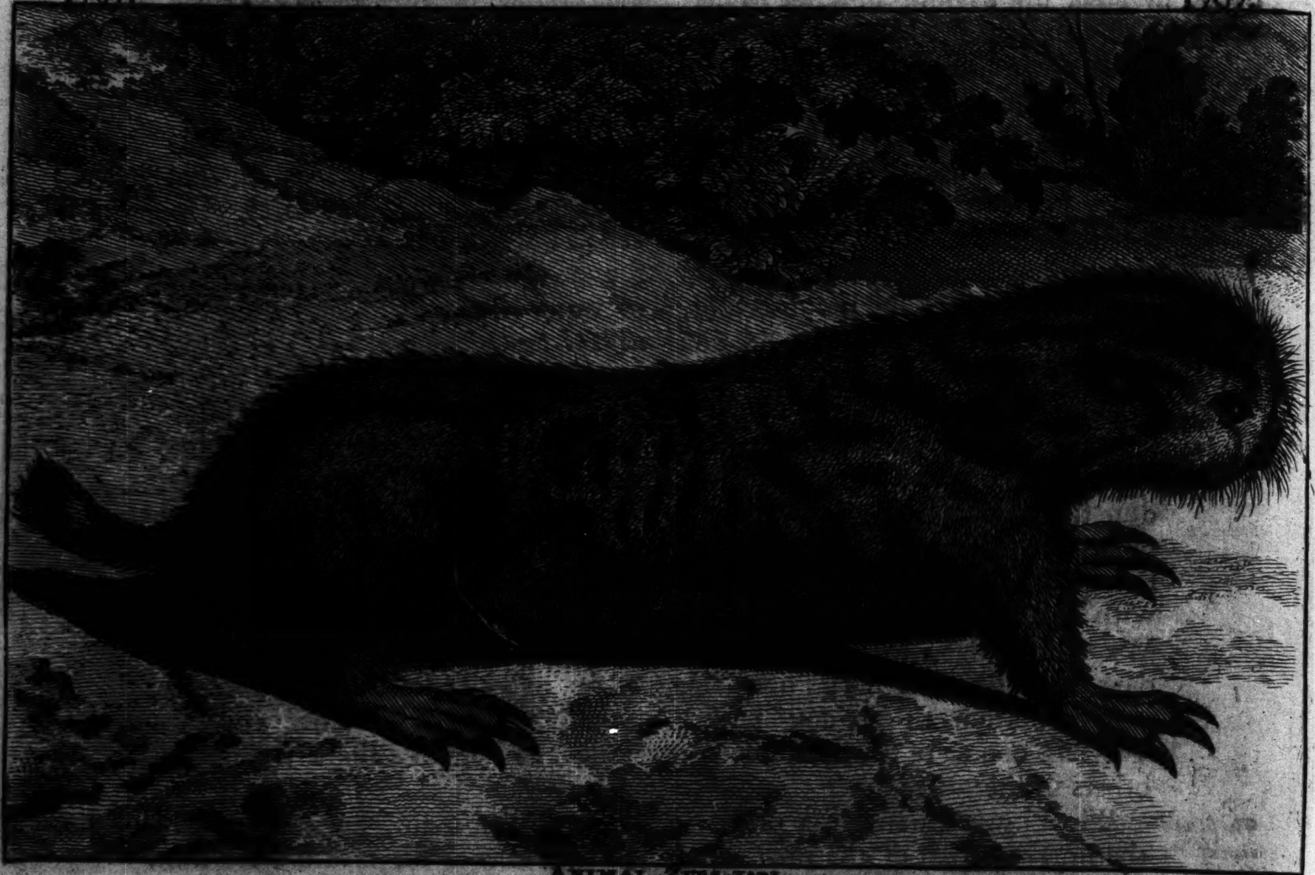
This city is ſituated in a plain, in the northern part of the province of *Yerak*, to the north-weſt of *Iſpahan*, and one league northward of the mountains. The extent of it is very conſiderable, and it abounds with plantations of ſena and other trees.

Its principal moſque, which is that of *Jumma Mat-zjit*, or the ſabbath, has a fine cupola of a blue colour, well glazed, with two walks around it, and a beautiful portal, like thoſe at *Iſpahan*. There are likewiſe two or three others, which are very agreeable, and ſeveral that are more common. The royal palace is a very large ſtructure, but the *Chiaer-baeg* is ſmall, and bordered with ſena-trees. The *Meydoen*, or great ſquare, has nothing in it conſiderable: the ſhops of it are perfectly mean, and moſt of the houſes are in a ruinous condition, as well as the *Caravanſerais*. The perſon at whoſe houſe we lodged had four large ſena-trees in his court-yard, with a canal of running water. The *Armenians* reſide in this city, and have a little chapel of a moderate height, and which, at a diſtance, reſembles a dove-houſe. There are likewiſe a number of poor *Jews* in this place, and a houſe where the king's muſick is heard at particular times.

We purſued our journey on the 22d, through a plain filled with villages. Toward noon we entered among the mountains, and travelled but five leagues that day. We found, the day following, abundance of water in the plains, and advanced as far as *Corondara*, which is ſix leagues from the *Caravanſerai* where we had paſſed the night. We afterward proceeded through arable lands, and met ſeveral caravans: About four, we had travelled a league beyond *Sultania*, and we paſſed the night at the *Caravanſerai* of *Kara-boelag*, after a journey of eight leagues. A greyhound of mine caught in that plain, a ſmall animal called *Zits-jan*, which he brought me alive, and likewiſe another in a ſhort time after, and I cauſed the entrails to be taken out of them, in order to preſerve them. This creature is a kind of field-rat, about the ſize of a ſquirril: Its tail is ſhort, and it has the hair and colour of a young rabbet, whom it likewiſe reſembles in ſhape, only it has a larger head, and the two under teeth are half as long again as thoſe in the upper jaw. The two fore-feet of this little animal are ſhorter than the hinder; they likewiſe end in four large claws, and one that is ſmaller. The hinder feet have five, which much reſemble thoſe of an ape. This animal is exhibited to view in the following plate.

The author's arrival at Zingan.

We arrived next day at *Zingan*, where we found the *Caravanſerai* in ſuch a nauſeous condition, that we were obliged to take up with a ſtable, at the other end of the city, and were compelled by the badneſs of the weather to continue there all the next day. *Zingan* is a mean place, where nothing remarkable is to be found. Upon our ſetting out from hence, we croſſed a plain full of water, having the mountains at ſome diſtance on our right and left. We likewiſe paſſed a kind of torrent twice, into which one of our horſes



ANIMAL ZITS-JAN.

horſes fell, and as he was loaded with coffee, we were obliged to dry it. We arrived, about noon, at *Muhul*, where the bad weather obliged us to halt, and the cold was ſo exceſſive in the night, that I found it very difficult to preſerve my ſelf from it: I was covered all over with furs, and had likewiſe two good blankets, and a large fire in a cloſe place.

The next day about ten, we arrived at the mountains, and were unable to proceed farther than *Serg-Abeth*, which is four leagues from the place where we lodged the preceding night. We here ſuffered as ſeverely by the cold as we did the day before, our courſe being directed to the north, and the wind being equally violent; but we were lodged more commodiouſly at a private houſe. The next day proved rainy, and we travelled but four leagues, as far as *Agkaut*, having paſſed over high mountains, and thro' valleys filled with water. I was indiſpoſed with an ague a little before night, and immediately went to bed, after having drank a little burnt wine ſweetened with ſugar, in which ſome particular herbs were infuſed. In ſhort, we were obliged to continue in that place till the end of the month, in order to reſt our horſes. When we ſet out from this place, we continued to paſs over ſome mountains, and plains that were overflowed, and about noon began to aſcend mount *Taurus*, which the inhabitants call *Caſeluſan*. I have already given ſome account of it, as likewiſe of the river *Kurp*, and the bridge over which one paſſes at that place. When we had croſſed another, named *Kurpu-koebaey*, we halted in the mountains, after a journey of five leagues.

We advanced on the firſt day of *April*, into another mountain, where we ſaw the tombs of the inhabitants of the adjacent villages, and were obliged to ſtop for ſome hours at a track of arable lands, becauſe our horſes were quite fatigued with the journey. We there met ſeveral travellers, and a large caravan, well provided with arms. In the mean time I then advanced, with ſome others, as far as *Paggeſjiek*; but the reſt of the company, and all the beaſts of burden, continued in the mountains. Our caravan paſſed by us the next day, and we were informed that they had loſt ſome horſes. We rejoined it about noon at *Ries*, where we continued till the next day; and as we afterward paſſed by a certain village, we had ſome diſpute with the cuſtom-houſe officers, whoſe demands we were obliged to ſatiſfy. Notwithſtanding which, we met others of them on horſeback, armed with lances, who exacted the ſame duty from us which we had ſo lately paid. It was to no purpoſe for us to tell them, that we had already diſcharged all dues of that nature, and we were forced to give them ſome *Mamoedies*, in order to get rid of them. We then paſſed on by a ſmall lake, whoſe borders were enamelled with a thouſand flowers, and full of ſmall blue hyacinths, which is a very extraordinary circumſtance in that quarter, where moſt of the plants have a withered appearance. We arrived about ſix at the ſmall *Caravanſerai* of *Koereien*, where my ague returned upon me, and obliged me to continue there till the next day, during which time the *Armenians* ſet out for *Ardevil*. I followed them the day after, and got thither at three in the afternoon. The *Georgian*, who came with us from *Iſpahan*, died there in the night; and it created no little ſurprize, when he was found to be a *Mohammedan*, and circumciſed.

The author's arrival at Ardevil.

Some days after the mourning for *Huſſein*, which I have frequently mentioned, was renewed. The weather proved exceſſive cold, and all the ground was covered with ſnow. We were obliged to wait in this city for the arrival of a large caravan, which ſet out from *Iſpahan* before us, this quarter being much infeſted with robbers, and eſpecially the country of *Mogan*: Notwithſtanding which ſeveral *Armenians* went to *Gilan*, in order to proceed from thence to *Aſtracan*, by the *Caſpian Sea*. I commiſſioned one of theſe people to buy me ſome pieces of ſilk, which are there made in great perfection. This city is ſix days journey from *Ardevil*, where alſo they make fine ſilk, but not comparable to that which is manufactured at *Gilan*.

CHAP. LXXXII.

The author's departure from Ardevil. *The injuſtice of the officers of the cuſtoms. A melancholy accident. The rivers* Kur *and* Aras. *The author's arrival at* Samachi. *Violent proceedings of the* Perſians. *A fertile country.*

The author's departure from Ardevil.

WE ſet out from *Ardevil* the 17th of *April*, in order to proceed to *Mieraſiraeſ*, and at our arrival there went to lodge at the houſe belonging to the conductor of the caravan. The next day we advanced as far as *Sabbad-daer*, which is but two leagues from *Ardevil*. We found the ways very bad, and met a large caravan. But nothing is ſo incommodious, in that quarter, as the ſmoke, which has no outlet but the door. On the 19th we paſſed over a great ſtone bridge on the river *Karaſſoe*, whoſe ſtream is exceeding rapid. The cuſtom-houſe officers came thither, and obliged us to pay a *Mamoedie* for every horſe, tho' I had already paid three for mine at the gate of the city, and two for my baggage before I left the *Caravanſerai*. We, however, were obliged

The way full of robbers.

obliged to ſubmit to this impoſition, notwithſtanding they had no right to demand it. When we had travelled the length of three leagues, we ſtopped by the ſide of the village of *Koroet-ſiaey*, where we ſtayed till the dawn of day, and then proceeded three leagues farther, having no place but the open country for our lodging. The next day we paſſed over the mountains as far as *Barſand*, a country neither under the juriſdiction of *Ardevil*, nor under that of *Mogan*, for which reaſon we were obliged to pay three *Mamoedies* there for every beaſt of burthen. We travelled but two leagues the day following, by reaſon of the bad weather, and halted on the bank of a little ſtream, where proviſions were brought us from *Baesje-Zaboran*, at the entrance into the territory of *Mogan*. As the peaſants of this place paſs for great thieves, we always were upon our guard; and the next day we paſſed over the river of *Balbaroe*, whoſe current is very rapid, and we proceeded along the bank of it for a conſiderable time, finding tents and cattle where-ever we came. We alſo met a caravan coming from *Samachi*, and going to *Iſpahan*. Nothing can form a more agreeable proſpect than the meadows enamell'd with various flowers on each ſide of this river: We there fed our horſes; which is a convenience rarely found in that country. The next day the *Armenians* ſolemnized their *Eaſter*, having provided a lamb for that purpoſe; after which we continued our journey, and were favoured with very fine weather.

A *Perſian* merchant of our caravan fell from his horſe, and unhappily broke all his ribs, and the violence of the hurt was ſo great, that it at once deprived him of ſpeech and reaſon. We uſed all poſſible means to ſave him, and apply'd *Mummy* to him, (of which I alone was provided) but to no purpoſe; for he died in the night, and was carry'd to *Ardevil* to be interr'd.

The author's arrival at Samachi.

We advanced but two leagues on the 27th, and were obliged to lodge in the open country. As the air was ſerene, we had the pleaſure of viewing the mountains of *Schirwan*, and arrived about eight the next day on the banks of the *Kur* and *Aras*, and where theſe rivers unite their ſtreams. I there found a great alteration in the banks, all the reeds which formerly rendered them inacceſſable, having been cut down. That day was employed in conveying our baggage over to the other ſide, as we had done when we came that way before. On the 29th we made a conſiderable progreſs northward along the river, and then to the eaſt, and again paſſed the night under a fine ſtar-light, but without any water. The laſt day of the month we found a good ſpring, which flowed from the rocks within the mountains, and we arrived about night at *Samachi*. I went to pay my compliments to a *Ruſſian* nobleman, whoſe name was *Bories Fedowits*, and with whom I became acquainted at *Aſtracan*, where he had a regiment: He was at preſent conſul in this city, and treated me with great civility, acquainting me at the ſame time, that he was preparing for his return to *Aſtracan* by the way of *Nieſawaey*, and therefore deſired we might travel together.

Violences committed by the Perſians.

The *Perſians* at that time committed great acts of violence againſt the jeſuits, whoſe convent they would have demoliſhed; but it happened by good fortune, at that very inſtant, that one of theſe fathers, who was a good phyſician, and well known to the people, had likewiſe eloquence enough to perſuade them to return, without executing their intended deſign. They, however, came a ſecond time, but without doing any injury. Theſe violent proceedings frequently happen, thro' the indulgence of the governor, who is a man entirely abandoned to his pleaſures, and particularly to wine, which he pretends the king has authoriſed him to drink.

Such an example as this, which the inhabitants very readily conform to, occaſioned the diſorder I have mentioned, and expoſes ſtrangers to all ſorts of impoſitions, and to ſuch a degree, that they cannot paſs the ſtreets without having ſtones thrown down on their heads. This obliged me to keep my chamber during my continuance in that city; but my precaution did not entirely ſecure me from inſults, which are there practiſed with impunity, the laws being altogether diſregarded: Whereas the preceding governor was an equitable man, who made himſelf feared, and faithfully diſcharged all the duties of his office. Another inconvenience which contributes much to theſe licentious proceedings, is, that the troops receive no pay, and ſubſiſt by rapine alone. The *Muſcovites* who live here are expoſed to the ſame injurious treatment, and are yet perpetually repreſenting the eaſy manner in which the *Czar* might revenge the injuſtice they ſuſtain, by invading that part of the country; to which the others reply, that ſuch a revolution would not be diſpleaſing to them, ſince they ſhould be more happy under the government of the *Czar*, than under that of their natural prince. They even make no ſcruple to declare, that they would attempt nothing in their own defence, but pray to *Mohammed* that this may be the event; and it is certain, that it would be no difficulty for the *Czar* to accompliſh it. This, however, is a conſiderable government, and yields large revenues, on this ſide the *Aras*, which divides it from the other territories of the *Perſian* monarchy. Thoſe likewiſe which produce the ſilks of *Gilan*, together with the cottons and ſaffron, are well known. The ſoil alſo produces excellent wines, red and white, which are ſtrong indeed, but exceedingly agreeable when tempered with water, eſpecially the white. It likewiſe affords very fine fruits, ſuch as apples, pears, cheſnuts, &c. to which I may add, that excellent horſes and cattle are bred there. In a word, it is a very fine country, and exceeding fertile on the ſide of *Georgia*; but there are not a ſufficient number of inhabitants to cultivate it in a proper manner. It abounds, however, in game, rice, and grain, and the bread which is made there is excellent.

The country fruitful.

Baggu likewiſe affords a commodious haven. The governors of this province never fail to enrich themſelves in a ſhort time, and it would certainly prove a very commodious acquiſition to his *Czarian* majeſty, ſince it lies contiguous to his dominions, and is very advantageous to thoſe of his ſubjects who traffic there for any conſiderable time. It might likewiſe be preſerved without any difficulty, after it had once been conquered, by erecting forts there.

Before my departure from this city, I wrote to my friends at *Iſpahan*, and gave my letters to the jeſuit I have mentioned before, and from whom I received all poſſible civilities; nor could I help deploring his hard fate, and that of his brethren, who are obliged to live in a place where they are expoſed to the outrages of a populace, who are always inſolent and implacable to the *Chriſtians*.

1707.

1707.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

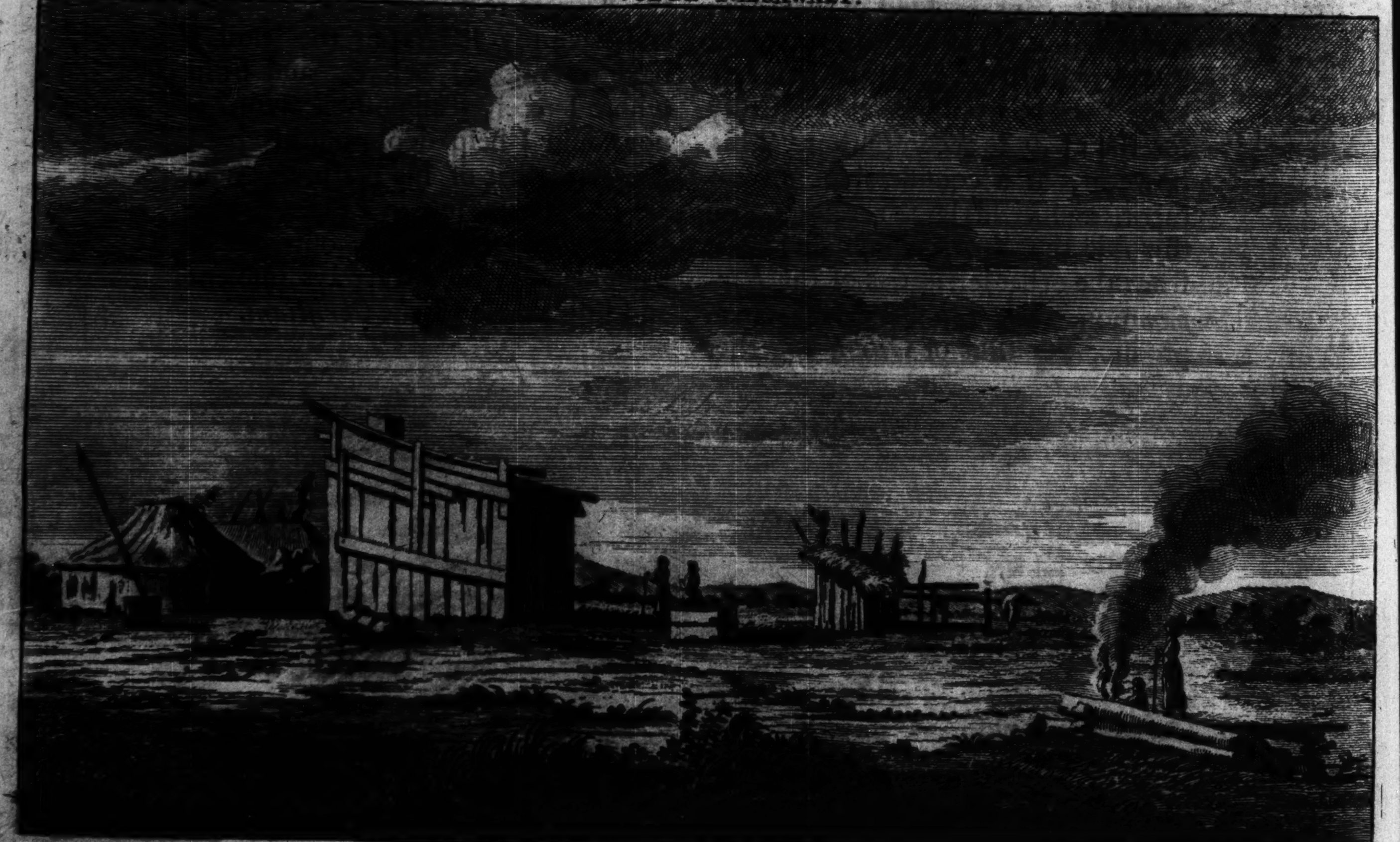
The author's departure from Samachi, *and arrival at* Nieſawaey, *from whence he proceeds to* Aſtracan.

The author's departure from Samachi.

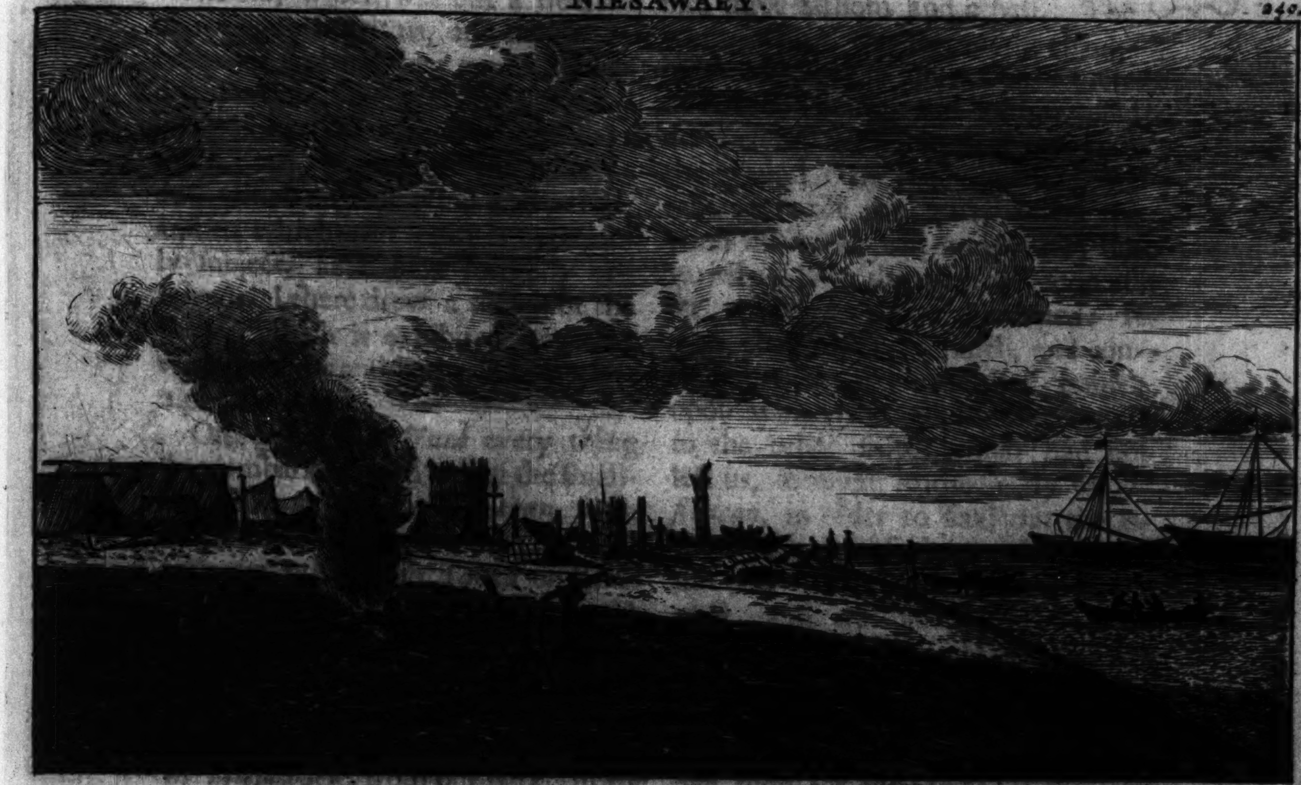
ON the 24th of *May*, I left *Samachi* in the evening, the *Ruſſian* conſul, and thoſe of his retinue, having ſet out before us, but I overtook them in the mountains about a league from the city, in company with ſeveral *Armenians*, and ſome *Indians*. We began our journey at break of day, and paſſed by a demoliſhed building, that reſembled an antient monument, being full of tombs. We then croſſed a river, together with ſome leſſer ſtreams, and continued our journey over mountains that were covered with ſmall wild trees, and a variety of green plants; and at eight in the evening we halted on the brink of a canal. The next day we followed the courſe of the river, which conducted us to the mountains, and there we croſſed it a ſecond time, and paſſed the night on its bank, after travelling eight leagues. From hence we proceeded into a plain, that fronts the *Caſpain Sea*, and where we had a diſtant proſpect of ſeveral villages, and arable lands, and likewiſe of other parts of the country that were overflowed: About ſeven we diſcovered the downs, and the ſea itſelf, along the ſide of which we continued our journey toward night, and paſſed over a ſmall gulf which it forms up the country, and where I found ſeveral touchſtones. At ten we arrived at *Nieſawaey*, where we rejoined the *Ruſſians*, who had taken another way. We there found ſix *Ruſſian* barks, together with a great number of tents along the ſhore, and under which ſeveral mercantile commodities were depoſited. The *Ruſſians*, who were to paſs the winter in that place, had made themſelves barracks of trees, and the others ſheltered themſelves under tents. I drew the proſpect of this place, which is repreſent- in the following plate.

His arrival at Nieſawaey.

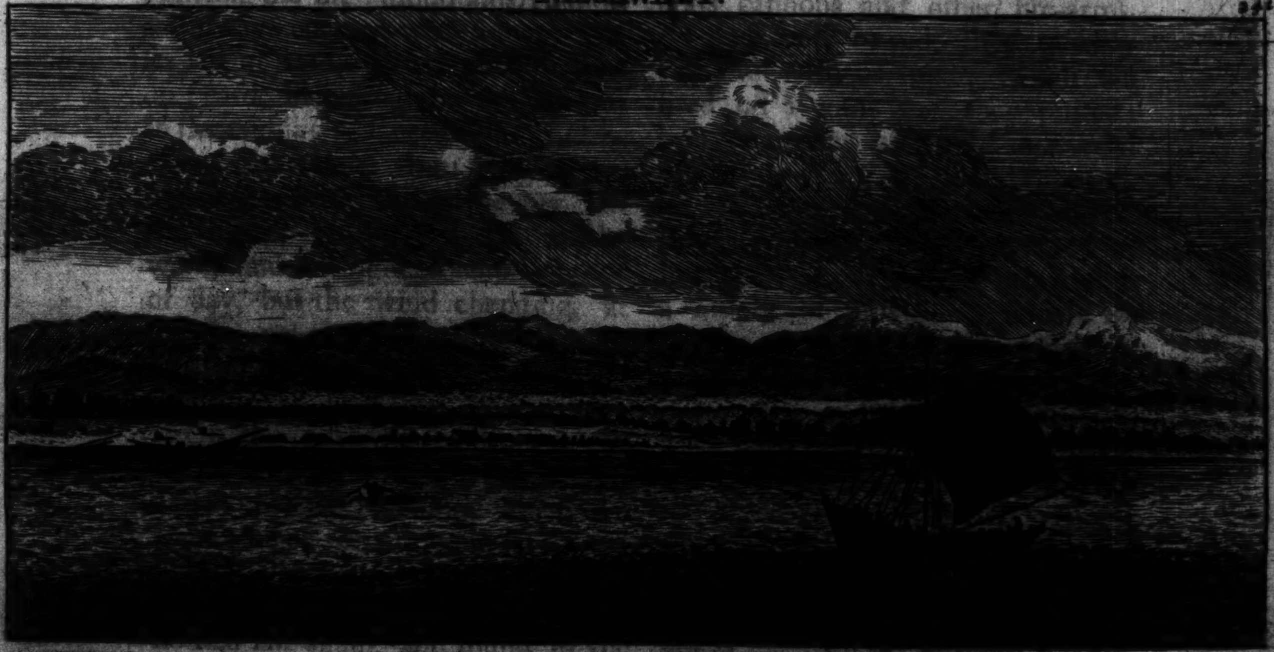
Vuë de Niesawaey.



NIESAWAEY. 240.



NIESAWAEY. 241.



7 AP 53

Three days after we advanced to the ſhore, which was but a quarter of a league from us, and they then began to embark their goods, which conſiſted of ſilks and rice; but we were obliged to continue ſome days there, on account of the violent duſt which an eaſt wind had raiſed, and to which this coaſt is extremely ſubject, as I have formerly obſerved. I there drew a ſketch of the ſhore, which is exhibited, together with the tents and barks, &c. in plate 240.

On the 8th of *June* every thing was embarked, and one of the ſmalleſt veſſels ſet ſail for *Aſtracan*, from whence two were juſt then arrived, and one other from *Tarku* or *Tirk*. I went in the evening on board the leſſer of theſe veſſels, with the conſul, and ſome *Ruſſians*, together with three or four *Armenians*. I drew, the next day, another proſpect of *Nieſawaey*, from our bark, in the manner it appears in plate 241. not omitting the high mountains, which are always covered with ſnow. We ſet ſail at two, with eighty perſons on board, including the ſailors, and in the evening advanced as far as *Derbent*, five leagues from *Nieſawaey*, but without diſcovering the city. In the night, we ſail'd to the northward, and loſt ſight of land by break of day, but the wind changing, at ſun-ſet, we came to anchor near the coaſt of *Tirk*, in a depth of thirty fathom.

On the 14th we continued our courſe with an eaſterly wind, which laſted only till evening, when we were obliged to caſt anchor a ſecond time. The 18th, the wind tacked about to eaſt-north-eaſt, when we hoiſted ſail again, and found in the evening from ten to nine and eight fathom water, and from ſeven to ſix toward morning, and four about noon, when the water was whiter and freſher than before. We likewiſe met a bark bound from *Aſtracan* to *Nieſawaey*, and the conſul ordered a gun to be fired as a ſignal for the commander to lie by. At four we found the water freſh enough to be drinkable, and then came into three fathom and a half. The wind, which was frequently changing, obliged us to anchor once more in ten foot water, and as our veſſel drew eight, we often ſtruck againſt the ground. In that condition we remained till the 21ſt, when the wind ſhifted to eaſt-north-eaſt; but varied again in the evening; ſoon after which we were becalmed: It then changed to the north, and continued three days at that point; upon which the conſul ſent orders to the other ſhip, which had not left us, to repair immediately to *Aſtracan*, in order to ſend out the other veſſels, in caſe the weather ſhould not alter: But the wind veer'd to the weſt, and was accompanied with thunder and rain; and the ſea was not above eight foot deep in that place. The 27th in the afternoon we diſcovered three veſſels, which we took for pirates, and therefore ſtood upon our guard, having two braſs cannons and other fire-arms. As they only rowed, they quickly came up with us, upon which we fired off a gun, and they retired; but when they afterward advanced toward us again, we found them to be the ſame that we had ordered from *Aſtracan*, which rejoiced us not a little, becauſe they brought us a ſupply of proviſions, which we greatly needed: And yet our firſt apprehenſions were not altogether without reaſon, it being very uſual to meet pirates in that ſea, who never ſpare thoſe who are ſo unfortunate as to fall into their hands. They come from the mountains, and are commonly *Samgales*, intermixed with *Ruſſian* rebels.

Pirates.

On the 30th we weighed anchor, the wind being ſouth-weſt, and ſteered to the ſouth, in eight foot water; but the uncertainty of the wind obliged us to anchor again; and we were incommoded to ſuch a degree, with flies in the night, that I was forced to make uſe of my net.

Trouble-ſome flies.

On the 2d of *July* I embarked in a ſmall veſſel, to be more at my eaſe, and becauſe my proviſions grew ſhort, and I had no inclination to rely any longer on the wind. We employ'd oars and ſails, directing our courſe to the north, in ſeven, ſix, and five foot water, and toward noon diſcovered land, at north-north-weſt, with the four red mountains, which I have formerly mentioned, and whoſe diſtance from each other is almoſt equal. The coaſt is not ſo high on this ſide, as it is toward *Perſia*.

As we approached the gulf, we found ſeveral veſſels that are authorized to ſearch the cargoes of ſhips, the banks likewiſe of that gulf are entirely covered with reeds. We continued there at anchor part of the night, becauſe of the calm.

Arrival at Aſtracan.

On the 3d we came to a dock, or place made for fiſhing, where ſhips are ſearched a ſecond time, and at noon came to another, where there is ſo little ground, that it proves very difficult to land there. I here ate a plate of good fiſh. We came about four to the third dock, where we lay at anchor all night, the wind being contrary, and the ſea running very high. On the 4th we ſet ſail again, the bank being all covered with water, and arrived at *Aſtracan* about ten. I went to pay my reſpects to the governor, *Peter Jwanitz Gawanske*, who was the *Knees*, or prince, and a man of generoſity and merit, who had been governor of this place above twenty years. When he had read the letters I delivered to him, he treated me with abundance of civility, and offered to ſerve me to the utmoſt of his power, during my continuance in that city; but I returned him my thanks, and only requeſted him to favour me with a lodging in a private houſe, where I could live more commodiouſly than in a *Caravanſerai*, and he immediately obliged me in this particular.

Our ſhips arrived at the city on the 11th, and the governor ordered my baggage to be ſent to me, without ſo much as ſearching it; but I had the misfortune to hear that all my friends, together with the governor *Timaſe Jvanewitz Urſoſſkie*, and colonel *de Wigne*, had been maſſacred in the rebellion of the *Strelſes*, in 1705, and that no more than three or four perſons were ſaved, who ſet out three days before for *Moſcow*, namely, the governor's ſon and his wife, together with the conſul I lately mentioned, and likewiſe captain *Wagenaer*, and a certain chirurgeon; and that all the ſtrangers with their wives and children, loſt their lives in this fatal maſſacre; ſince which his *Czarian* majeſty ſent ſome regular troops thither, and cauſed moſt of the *Strelſes* to be executed, as well as thoſe who had joined with them in this inhuman ſlaughter. For my part, I returned thanks to God that I quitted *Perſia* before this fatal accident. The governor's wife, who eſcaped the fury of the *Barbarians*, had the misfortune to loſe all ſhe had in her voyage to *Moſcow*, the ſhip wherein ſhe was to ſail having taken fire: her grief at this misfortune coſt her her life ſoon after her arrival at *Moſcow*.

Veſſels loſt by negligence.

At my return to *Aſtracan*, I was informed that fourteen veſſels had foundered through the negligence of captain *Meyer*, whom I have often mentioned, and who likewiſe periſhed in this diſaſter. But five others arrived three months after, under the conduct of *Laurence Van der Burgh*, a man of merit and capacity, who had entered into the ſervice of his *Czarian* majeſty, and was then employed in weighing up the ſhips that were ſunk, and refitting them, ſo as to be ſerviceable on the *Caſpian Sea*.

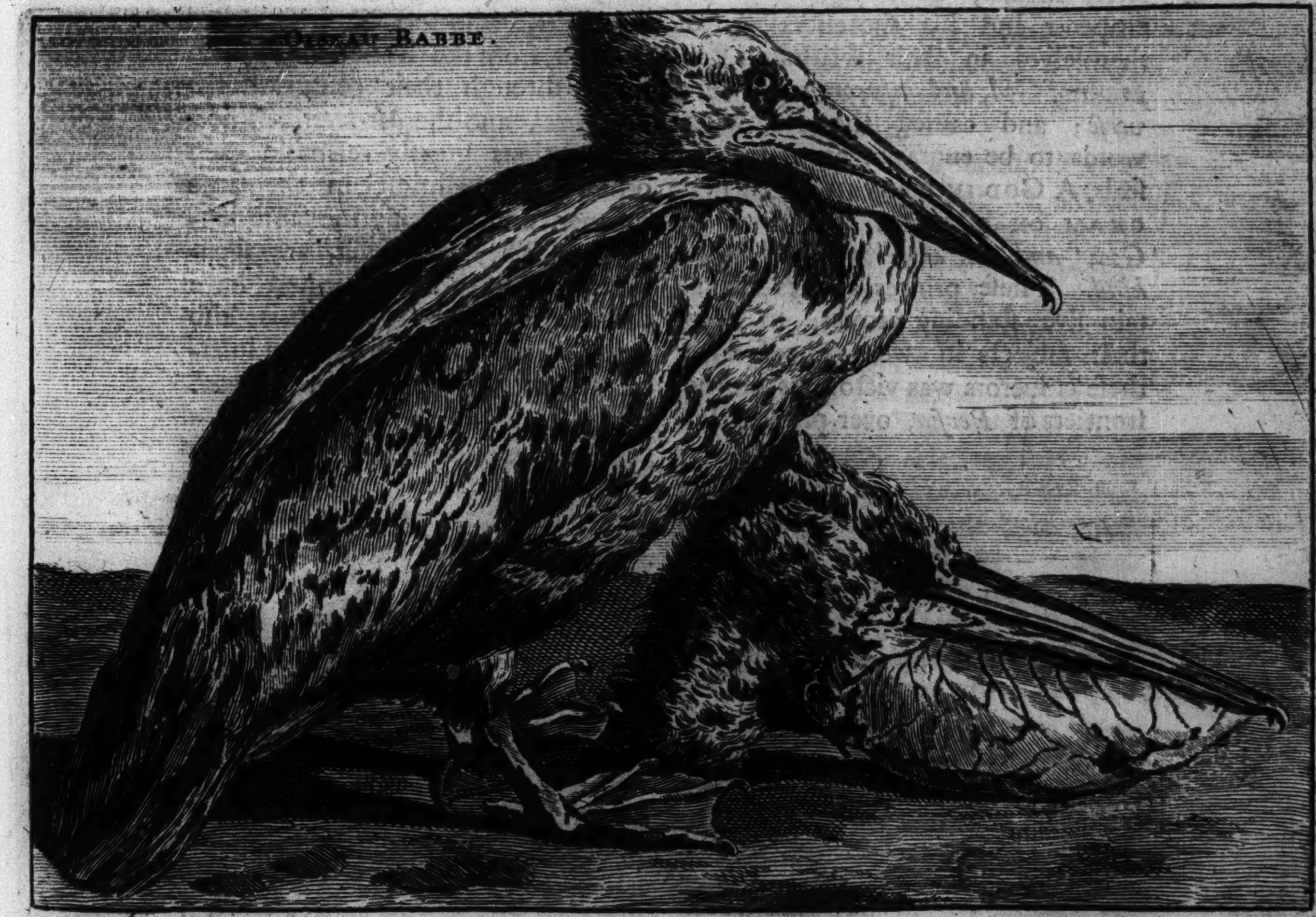
Several *Hollanders*, who had ſerved in thoſe parts, daily arrived at this place, and I had the affliction to hear, that Mr. *Meynard*, an *Engliſh* gentleman, with whom I had been acquainted at *Zjie-raes*, had loſt his ſight, and the uſe of ſome of his limbs, and had ſet out in that condition for his own country.

An extraordinary adventure.

One evening, when I had company in my apartment, the miſtreſs of the houſe where I lodged was brought to bed of a ſon, without my knowing any thing of the affair, tho' her chamber was over mine. We indeed had taken notice, that ſeveral women came there; but as ſuch viſits are very frequent, I thought there could be nothing particular at preſent, and was therefore the more ſurprized, when my friends were gone, to hear what had happened. When the huſband, who was one of the commiſſioners of the chancery, came home, I made him a preſent of ſome piſtacho nuts, dates, and almonds, to treat his gueſts. Toward evening they all began to ſing in a tone that ſeemed to reſemble their church ſervice; and, as I had never heard any thing of that nature before, I asked my footman, who underſtood the language of the country, what could be the meaning of this behaviour? To which he replied, that they were all intoxicated with liquor, as was cuſtomary on thoſe occaſions: But I was extremely ſurprized the next day, to find the woman who had been brought to bed, ſitting at the ſtreet door, with the child in her arms. In the evening ſhe treated the women who had aſſiſted her at her labour, with *Aqua vitæ*, and drank very freely of it herſelf, as is uſual in this country.

A very ſingular bird.

As I was walking one day through the market, I bought a bird, which the *Ruſſians* call *Babbe*, or the *Water-carrier*, of which I had frequently heard people ſpeak, but could never procure one till now, though I had often inquired for it both in this country, and at *Iſpahan*. I offered it fiſh, which it would not eat, nor any thing elſe, and I could not make the creature extend its neck, which it kept in a deflected poſition, and ſeemed to be half aſleep. The reader will find the repreſentation of it in the following plate. The bird was young, though four


Oiseau Babbe.

times as large as a gooſe, which it partly reſembled in ſhape and plumage; the bill was fifteen inches long, and two in breadth, and ended in a yellow hook, like that of a parrot. The bag in which it carries its water contains above four pints, and the legs of the creature are ſhort. I cut off the head and part of the neck, on which I left the bag, as it appears in the plate.

Fires frequently broke out in this city, during my continuance there, but eſpecially in the ſuburbs of the *Tartars*, who were very induſtrious to extinguiſh the flames. As I have already ſufficiently ſpoken of theſe people, I ſhall only add a particular concerning them, which did not come to my knowledge before.

In the year 1246 they choſe for the chief of *Tartary*, a certain *Kuine*, to whom they gave the ſurname of *Gog Cham*, which ſignifies king, or emperor, and the people call themſelves *Moales*, or *Mongales*. This emperor and his ſucceſſors ſtyled themſelves in their writings, *The power of God, and emperors of the univerſe*; and cauſed the following words to be engraven around their ſeals, A GOD IN HEAVEN; A KUINE CHAM ON EARTH; *The power of God, and the emperor of all mankind.* Theſe princes always maintain five ſtanding armies, to keep their ſubjects in awe. The firſt of theſe emperors was victorious on the frontiers of *Perſia*, over prince *Bajothnoy*, who had made himſelf maſter of all the *Chriſtian* and *Saracen* territories, as far as the *Mediterranean*, and to an extent of two days journey beyond *Antioch*; and deprived him of fourteen kingdoms, which comprehended all the tract from thence to *Perſia*. The proper name of this prince was *Bajoth*; *Noy* being a word expreſſive of his dignity.

A renowned emperor of Tartary.

The *Tartars* were never governed by a greater prince than *Bathii*, whoſe army conſiſted of ſix hundred thouſand men; namely, a hundred and ſixty thouſand *Tartars*, and four hundred and forty thouſand *Chriſtians*, excluſive of all the infidels who ranged themſelves under his banners. This army was divided into five bodies.

Mongal.

This country, which lies to the eaſt, is called *Mongal*, and has four different nations for its inhabitants; namely, the grand *Mongales*, or *Moals*; the *Saniongals*, or maritim *Mongales*, who are likewiſe called *Tartars*, from the river *Tartar*, which flows through their country; the *Merkates*, and the *Metrites*. Theſe four nations greatly reſemble each other, living almoſt in the ſame manner, and ſpeaking the ſame language. They, however, are ſeparated from one another, and have different chiefs. Mention is alſo made of certain *Gingis*, who inhabit the country of *Jeka* in *Mongal*.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

The author's departure from Aſtracan. *Is ſhip-wrecked on the* Volga. Tartarian *pirates. His arrival at* Zenogar, Zaritza, *and* Saratof.

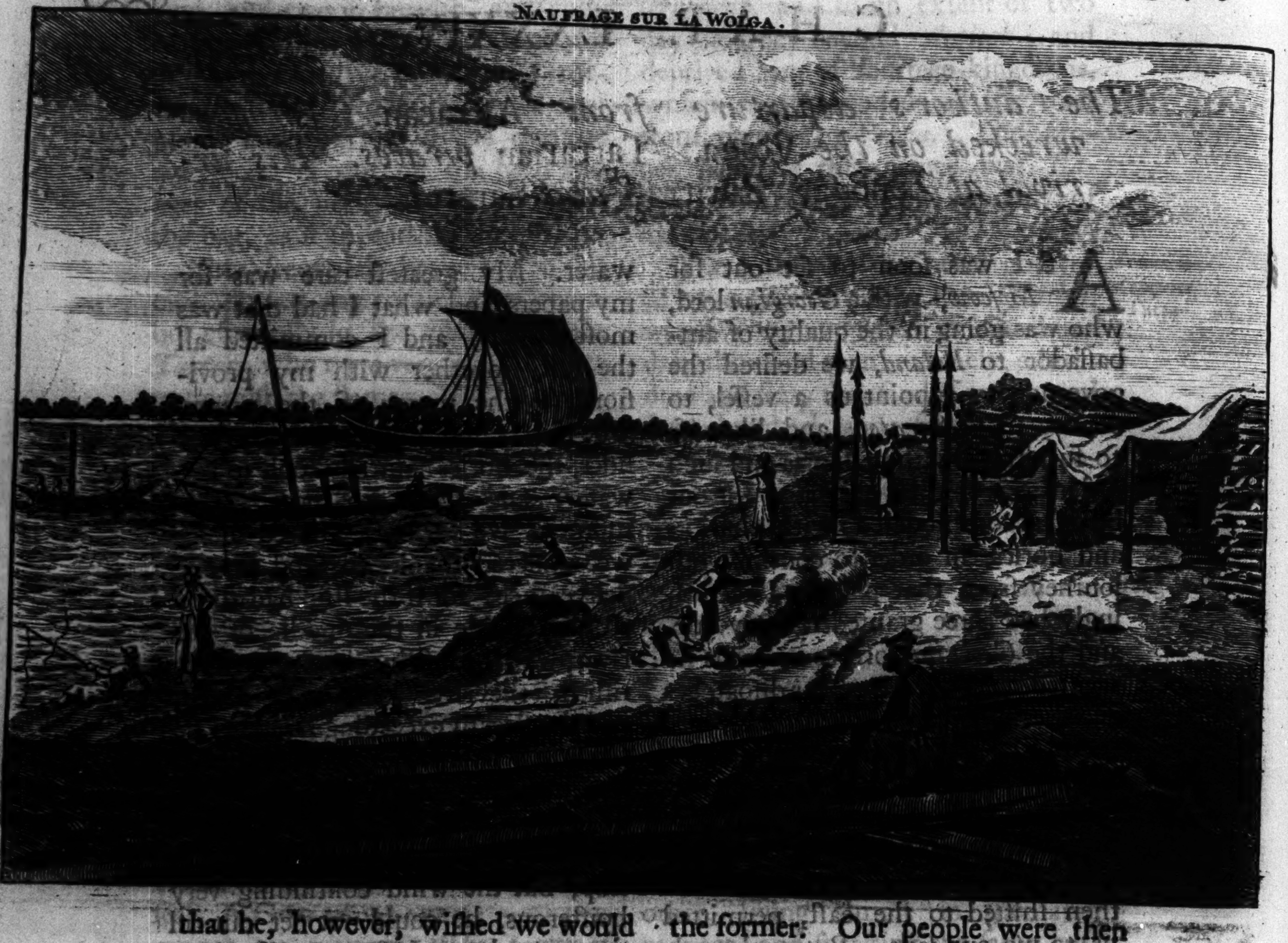
The author's departure from A*ſtracan.*

Is ſhip-wreck'd.

AS I was ſoon to ſet out for *Moſcow*, with a *Georgian* lord, who was going in the quality of ambaſſador to *Poland*, we deſired the governor to appoint us a veſſel, to convey us to *Saratof*, and likewiſe to furniſh us with paſſports and ſuch orders as would be neceſſary for our being accommodated with chariots and horſes, in order to continue our journey from that place. I accordingly had three granted for my uſe, and the *Georgian* lord as many as he wanted. We received our diſpatches on the nineteenth of *Auguſt*, and found the veſſel ready equipped for ſailing. The next day we embarked, after taking leave of the governor, and began our voyage with the towing-line, till the wind, which then ſhifted to the eaſt, permitted us to uſe our ſails. But as the gale was very ſtrong, and our ſhip rolled from one ſide to the other, we began to be apprehenſive of ſome diſaſter. Some were for ſending for another veſſel, others for throwing in more ballaſt, but none of them came to any fixed reſolution. For my part, when I obſerved that our greateſt danger proceeded from the ill ſtructure of the ſhip, I inſiſted on their making the beſt of their way toward land, ſince I had reaſon to fear our veſſel would founder. The number of perſons on board amounted to above thirty; the *Georgian* had likewiſe two horſes, and the ſhip was one of the ſmalleſt. It was therefore ſoon filled with water, near the powder-mills, which are ſeven or eight *Werſtes* from *Aſtracan*, at a place where an ancient city formerly ſtood; and we had the utmoſt difficulty to ſave our ſelves and our baggage, with the aſſiſtance of ſome ſailors, who threw themſelves into the water. My greateſt care was for my papers, and what I had that was moſt curious, and I committed all the reſt, together with my proviſions, to the mercy of the waves. The ſhip being thrown on one of her ſides, the horſes naturally took to the water, and ſwam to ſhore. The moment we ourſelves arrived there, we rendered thanks to God for our deliverance; for if the ſhip had turned on her ſide in the middle of the river, we all muſt inevitably have periſhed, the river being very broad, and the ſtream exceeding rapid. The *Georgian* miniſter immediately ſent his interpreter to *Aſtracan*, in a ſloop, to inform the governor of what had happened to us, and to deſire a new ſhip, but the wind continuing very boiſterous, he could not ſet out till the next day. I ſent my footman with him to buy me a freſh ſupply of proviſions, and to deliver a letter I had written to the commander *Van der Burgh*, wherein I deſired him to procure us another veſſel as ſoon as poſſible, and in caſe he ſhould not be able to find one ready for ſailing, that he would ſend me a ſkiff, to convey me back to *Aſtracan*, till we could have a more favourable opportunity for continuing our voyage. During the time I waited for his anſwer, I drew a ſketch of the place where we had ſuffered ſhipwreck; the two banks of the river are likewiſe comprehended in the proſpect, and the whole is exhibited in the following plate.

The commander *Van der Burgh*, came to me in the evening in his own ſloop, and aſſured me that the governor had teſtified an extreme concern at the accident that had befallen us, and would not fail to ſend us a better ſhip as ſoon as poſſible;

Naufrage sur la Wolga.



that he, however, wiſhed we would endeavour to ſet our own a floating, in order to its being ſent back to *Aſtracan*. This we accompliſhed toward morning, but it immediately ſunk to the bottom a ſecond time, in a very deep part of the river, and we could ſave nothing but the tackling. We were viſited again the next day by the commander, who aſſured us, that the veſſel we expected had already ſet ſail, and that it was much better and larger than the other we had loſt. He likewiſe informed us, that the veſſel which the governor had diſpatched the day before our departure, and which was laden with fruits, and other refreſhments, for his *Czarian* majeſty, had likewiſe been loſt in a ſtorm; but that her crew been ſaved, and were now on their return to *Aſtracan*, after having been robbed by the *Tartars*. Our new ſhip arrived the next day, and we found it much better and more commodious than the former. Our people were then employed in carrying all things on board, that we might ſet ſail the next day.

The powder-mills, which I mentioned before, are but ſeldom uſed, and we ſaw no more than ſeven or eight workmen there.

Robbers.

The *Georgian* ambaſſador happening to advance a little beyond the reſt of the company, about eight or nine in the evening, ſaw eight or ten perſons, whom he took for robbers, advancing toward him; but they immediately had recourſe to flight, when they heard him call his people to his aſſiſtance; and they were not to be overtaken. The governor of *Aſtracan* ſent us fifteen Soldiers in the new ſhip, with orders for them to tend the tackle, and two of them were to be upon duty in the night. In this manner we continued our voyage, being towed along by ten of our ſoldiers. The river was half a league broad in that place, and little more than a quarter at the diſtance of two leagues from thence, and where we heard that another ſhip had been wrecked in the late ſtorm. She was ornamented with flags and ſtreamers, and belonged to a citizen of *Aſtracan*. Our Veſſel was decorated in the ſame manner, and had two pieces of cannon, with ſeveral fire-arms, and a number of bows and arrows; and we likewiſe found her very commodious. As I have already given a ſufficient deſcription of this river, it will be needleſs for me to add any other particulars. I ſhall only obſerve that it is frequently neceſſary for ſhips to be towed up the ſtream, unleſs the wind ſhould happen to prove very favourable. They are likewiſe obliged to lie at anchor, when the wind is either tempeſtuous, or contrary; the *Calmucks* likewiſe appear from time to time on the banks.

We paſſed on the 28th, by a *Corps de Garde*, ſituated on a point of the river, to the right, where the *Volga* pours itſelf through a canal, into the *Caſpian Sea*. Another guard is likewiſe ſtationed on board a veſſel in the middle of this river, and eſpecially in the night, in order to viſit all ſhips that paſs. We ſaw a conſiderable number of *Calmucks*, who were fiſhing with lines along the bank, and we threw them out ſome bread, which they ſwam for, and then carried it to ſhore. We likewiſe ſaw ſeveral camels with two bunches riſing on their backs, and this place is full of thoſe birds that are called *Water-Carriers*, one of which has been already deſcribed. As we were always obliged to be towed along, the men who were employed in that ſervice, went ſometimes on one ſide of the river, and ſometimes on the other, to avoid the *Tartars* who frequent that quarter. Two days after we croſſed another gulph which is formed by the *Volga*, and as we happened then to go on ſhore, we found ſeveral *Calmucks*, as well men as women, who ſurveyed without ceaſing my manner of dreſs, which appeared very extraordinary to them, as they had never ſeen any thing like it before. As they go bare-legg'd, and have very ſmall feet, they meaſured them with mine, and likewiſe their legs, which are very ſhort. Their wives are alſo very little, and plump, like the men. I was obliged to uncover my boſom to them, in order to ſatisfy their curioſity; and having then given them to underſtand that I was deſirous to ſee theirs, they immediately laughed, and gave me that ſatisfaction without any difficulty. All the habit worn by theſe people, is a kind of petticoat made of ſheep-skins, which they change according to the ſeaſon, and wear no cloathing on any other part of their body in ſummer. Moſt of the young men among them go entirely naked, and have their hair plaited like that of the women. Others of them wear a kind of bonnet, together with a waiſtcoat and a pair of drawers, but no ſhirt. They have all broad and flat faces, ſwoln cheeks, and long eyes. They asked me for ſome tobacco, which the women as well as the men thruſt up their noſtrils, and likewiſe chew.

We continued our voyage on the eaſt ſide of the river, in order to avoid the *Tartars* on the other ſide, who are great thieves: We frequently met ſeveral veſſels, and were from time to time obliged to croſs ſmall gulphs, where we found companies of fiſhermen, and very good fiſh.

On the 2d of *September* we anchored near the place where the chief, or governor of the *Calmucks*, reſides. This officer had lately cauſed a party conſiſting of eighty men, to croſs the river, in order to purſue a body of *Tartars*, who had newly carried off a great number of his horſes, and ſeveral of his ſubjects, but they had not the good fortune to come up with the *Tartars*. We were likewiſe informed that this quarter was infeſted by *Coſſacks*, who are alſo great robbers, and this intelligence made us think it neceſſary to be upon our guard.

The author's arrival at Tzenogar.

We approached *Tzenogar* on the 7th, and caſt anchor on the hither ſide of this place, the wind being contrary and very tempeſtuous, but we ſent for a ſupply of proviſions. A great ſtorm aroſe in the night, and our cable dragged to ſuch a degree, that we were driven back to a conſiderable diſtance by the courſe of the river, before we could faſten our veſſel to the ſhore with ſtrong ropes. Every one then betook himſelf to reſt, but I was unable to cloſe my eyes, having the idea of our late wreck very ſtrong in my remembrance.

It had always been my cuſtom to give a glaſs of brandy to each of our ſailors once a-day, but I diſpleaſed the ambaſſador by this proceeding, and he gave me to underſtand by his interpreter, that they were a ſet of wretches altogether undeſerving of any ſuch civility. My anſwer was, that I had made a ſufficient proviſion for that purpoſe, and that we might happen to have occaſion for their beſt ſervices; to which I added, that I was ſenſible by frequent experience, that nothing gained upon thoſe people ſo much as civility, and that we ought therefore to make a virtue of neceſſity. When we approached the city we diſcharged a ſalvo of our fire-arms, and ſaw a great number of ſhips there.

We continued our voyage two days after, but the weather proved ſo exceſſive cold, that we were obliged to cover ourſelves with furs, which was a very extraordinary circumſtance in that ſeaſon of the year. As the *Ruſſians* are very bad ſailors, our ſhip frequently ran a-ground, and we loſt our anchor by their neglect. No manner of order is obſerved among them, and the meaneſt ſoldier had as much to ſay as the pilot, which gave me great uneaſineſs. We were likewiſe obliged to call the ſailors ten or twelve times before they would riſe; and I generally found the centinels aſleep, nor was it without great difficulty that we prevailed upon the men to work the ſhip when the weather proved tempeſtuous. I never failed therefore to return thanks every day to Almighty God, for preſerving us in the night, and eſpecially from the *Corſairs*.

His arrival at Zaritſa.

We arrived, on the 16th, at the city of *Zaritſa*, where the church, which is all of white ſtone, had been newly built, as well as the city, which was reduced to aſhes the preceding year, and all the buildings were not then finiſhed. We continued here two days in order to change our ſailors. In the evening, a veſſel arrived here from *Saratof*, but ſhe had been robbed in her paſſage, by the *Ruſſian Coſſacks*, and her crew informed us that the river ſwarmed with theſe pirates, who ſailed out by hundreds in ſmall veſſels. I hereupon deſired the *Georgian* ambaſſador to apply to the governor for a guard, which would not be refuſed provided the requeſt was accompanied with a preſent; for nothing is to be obtained in this country without money. The miniſter, however, was deaf to all I could ſay on this head, though I offered to pay my part of the expence. At laſt the owners of two other veſſels, which were to ſail for *Saratof*, as well as ourſelves, came to acquaint us, that they would accompany us in the voyage for our mutual ſecurity, having obtained the governor's permiſſion for ſo doing. There was likewiſe a third ſhip, which ſet out before us, and her we found afterward a-ground: due care was however taken to ſet her a-float again; and after her merchandize had been dried, ſhe joined us, as the reſt had done.

We paſſed, on the 19th, by two ſluices, in a part where the river was very narrow, and where we were told the greateſt danger was to be apprehended with reſpect to pirates. This obliged us to be upon our guard in the night, for the ſoldiers who had towed us along in the day-time, wanted reſt. Toward morning we met a veſſel which had been plundered by four pirates, and ſaw three others, which alarmed us at firſt, but when they were near enough to be diſtinguiſhed, we found they belonged to

Saratof and *Caſan*, and were carrying ſoldiers to *Aſtracan*. We afterward croſſed a ſmall gulph, which affords a retreat to pirates, and we therefore thought it neceſſary to be upon our guard at night; after which we continued our voyage, being towed along as before, and ſoon ran aground: But we were ſet a-float again by a gale which ſprung up in the eaſt; and it likewiſe wafted us to the other ſide of the river, where we caſt anchor, and continued till eight in the morning, when we ſpread our ſails to a favourable wind, and were accompanied only by one veſſel, the others having ſet ſail before us.

Toward noon we found another gulph to the weſt of the river, and ſaw ſeveral merchandizes on ſhore, which the pirates, who had taken them out of the ſhip already mentioned, had not been able to carry off. We afterward ſaw two barks which were worked with oars; theſe we at firſt took for pirates, but they were only fiſhermen.

Toward evening another veſſel, which came from *Saratof*, ſailed by us: ſhe ſet out before us from *Aſtracan*, and was now returning thither. We afterward met *Peter Matfewitz Apraxim*, governor of *Aſtracan*, and he was accompanied by thirty ſail, ſeven of which were large ſhips. His own was covered with red cloth, and ornamented with ſtreamers, together with two white flags on the ſtern, and top-maſt head. There were likewiſe ſeveral others, ſome blue, others red and white, like ours, and ſome with two eagles, which are the arms of his *Czarian* majeſty. We kept near the land while this little fleet paſſed by us, making a very beautiful effect, and there were likewiſe ſeveral women on board. The ambaſſador ſent ſome water-melons to the governor, who returned his thanks for that preſent by ſome perſons of his retinue who came on board our ſhip, in a ſloop, built after the *Dutch* manner. This fleet is exhibited in plate 242, without ſails, becauſe the wind was contrary when the ſhips paſſed by us.

We in this place had a view of a mountain which ends in a flat ſummit, and is called the mountain of robbers; becauſe they formerly made it their retreat. The wind having favoured us at laſt for ſome time, we arrived, on the 28th, at *Saratof*, where we landed with great pleaſure, being extremely fatigued with our voyage, and we took up our lodgings in the quarters which were aſſigned us by the governors of the place.

CHAP. LXXXV.

The civility of the governor of Saratof. *The manner in which the* Calmucks *live. The author ſets out from* Saratof, *and arrives at* Petroskie, Pinſa, Inſera, Troitskie, Dimik, Kasjemo, Wolodimer, *and* Moſcow.

I WENT, the day after my arrival, to pay my duty to the governor, and preſented him with ſome water-melons that I had brought from *Aſtracan*; I likewiſe delivered to him the letters I had for him, and deſired him at the ſame time, to order me thoſe things that would be neceſſary for me in my journey by land to *Moſcow*. This requeſt he granted, in the moſt obliging manner imaginable, and accompanied this inſtance of his goodneſs with a number of other civilities. The next day ſent me an invitation to viſit him, by his interpreter, and I then intreated his permiſſion to paſs over to the other ſide of the river of the *Calmucks*, to which he immediately conſented, and ordered me a veſſel for that purpoſe. I found the bank covered with theſe people, as well men as women, while that on the city ſide was bordered in the ſame manner by *Ruſſians*, who were furniſhed with all ſorts of proviſions, ſuch as rice, bread, *&c.* They had likewiſe large quantities of cloth, little cheſts and boxes, and a variety of other things, with which they trafick with the *Calmucks*, for horſes, cattle, beer, and other productions of their country. I made a draught of this view, which the reader will find in plate 243, where the *Calmucks* are repreſented on the bank, and the city on the other ſide of the river. I advanced half a league into the country, in order to ſee their tents, which I found in a wretched condition, and ſaw nothing remarkable among them; their moſt conſiderable people had indeed quitted this part of the country three days before. They were encamped in troops, like the *Tartars*, in the parts adjacent to *Aſtracan*, but in a much poorer condition. When I returned to the city, I received an invitation from the governor to take part of a collation with him at his houſe; where I found the *Georgian* miniſter, and we were regaled in a very elegant manner. We continued longer in this city than we at firſt intended, the governor having ſent out moſt of his people to purſue as well the robbers who infeſted that quarter, as ſeveral perſons who had eſcaped out of priſon; we were therefore obliged to wait till the 6th of *October*. We, however, cauſed the chariots we wanted, to be prepared, and covered like our calaſhes, to ſecure us from cold and ſnow, as well as rain and winds, for they are all open at the top. Theſe coverings muſt be made ſo as to be eaſily removed and placed on other chariots, becauſe they are all changed with the horſes. We cauſed four to be covered in this manner, out of twenty three that were ordered for our uſe, and of which the *Georgian* miniſter had nineteen. We then began our journey, after we had taken leave of the governor, and returned him our thanks for all his civilities.

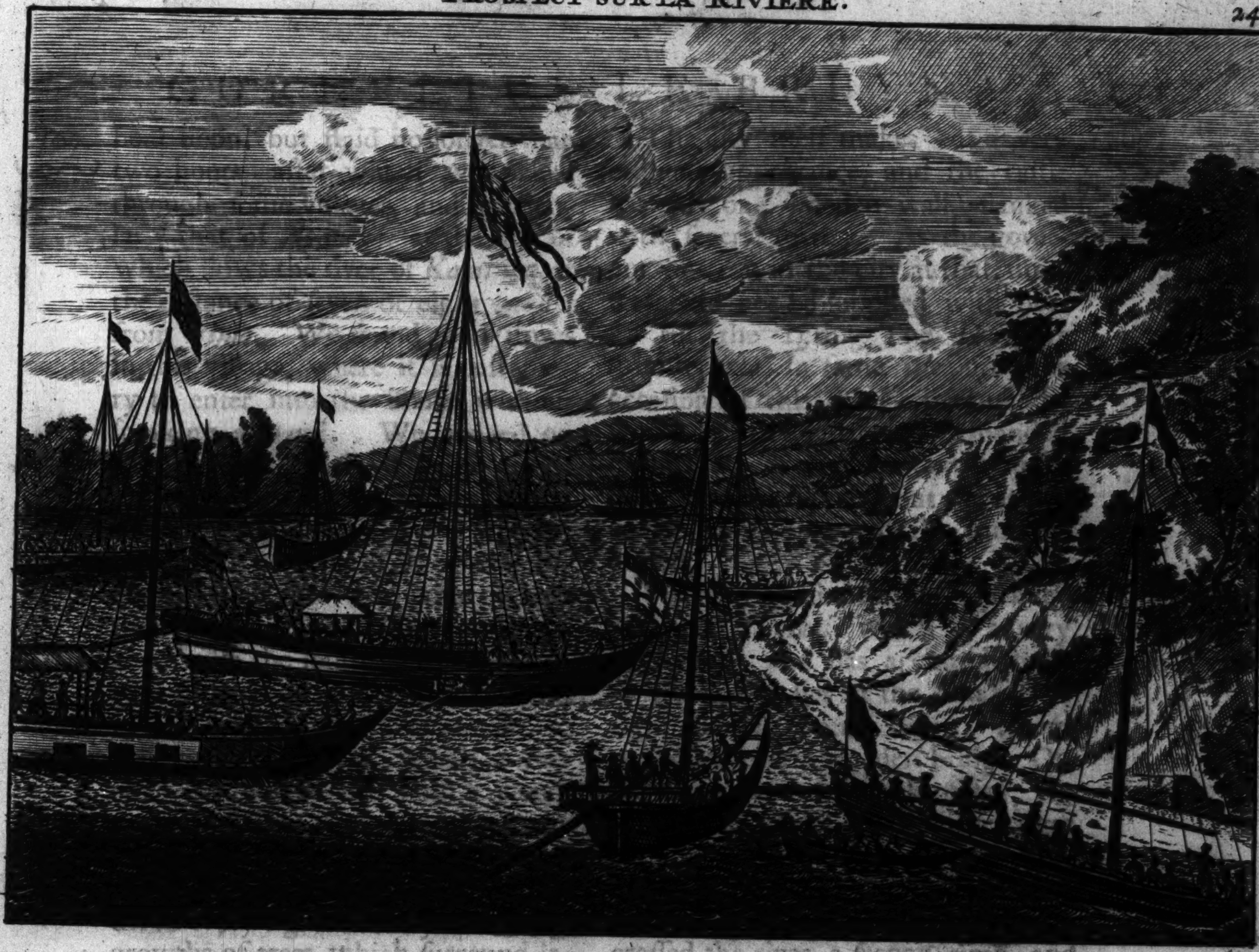
We found the ways perfectly good in this part of the country, but the weather was exceedingly cold and windy, and we arrived about noon at a * *Cabac*, built of wood, where they made us a good fire, which we greatly needed. We, however, did not continue long in this place; and after we had paſſed over a mountain and ſome hills, we came to another *Cabac*, having then travelled thirty *werſtes*, and through ſuch ſteep ways, that three of our chariots were overturned. We renewed our journey before day, and found the earth covered with ſnow, and were likewiſe obliged to dine in the open country. We indeed found plenty of wood, of which we made a good fire, and arrived about five at *Petroſkie*, where the governor ordered quarters to be aſſigned us. This city has a conſiderable extent, and is ſurrounded with a wall of wood, of which all the houſes are likewiſe built, agreeably to the manner of the country, and there are ſeveral churches of the ſame kind of ſtructure. The city gates are at ſome diſtance from it; the ſtreets are likewiſe ſpacious, and covered with a very hard clay. We here changed our chariots and horſes, and ſet out the next day at three in the afternoon. A little river flows by the city, and we croſſed it by means of a large wooden bridge, which is a league in diſtance from the city; we likewiſe paſſed the night in the open air, after a journey of ten *werſtes*. We ſheltered ourſelves as well as we could with our chariots, kindled a good fire, and continued our journey at two in the morning, in very froſty weather, croſs a great marſh; but had afterwards fine roads as far as *Konde*, which is a large town, and we arrived there about

The author's arrival at Petroſkie.

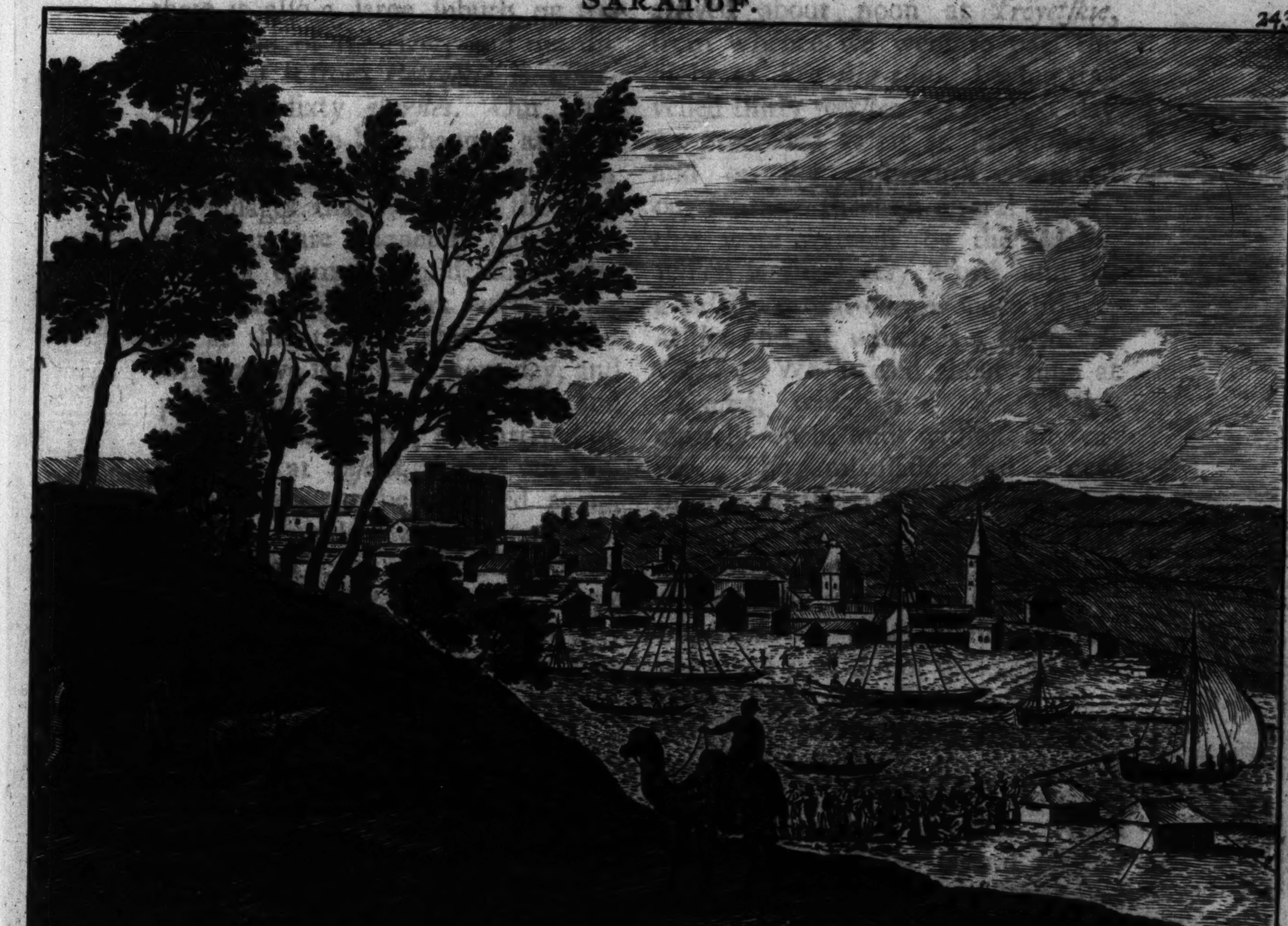
---

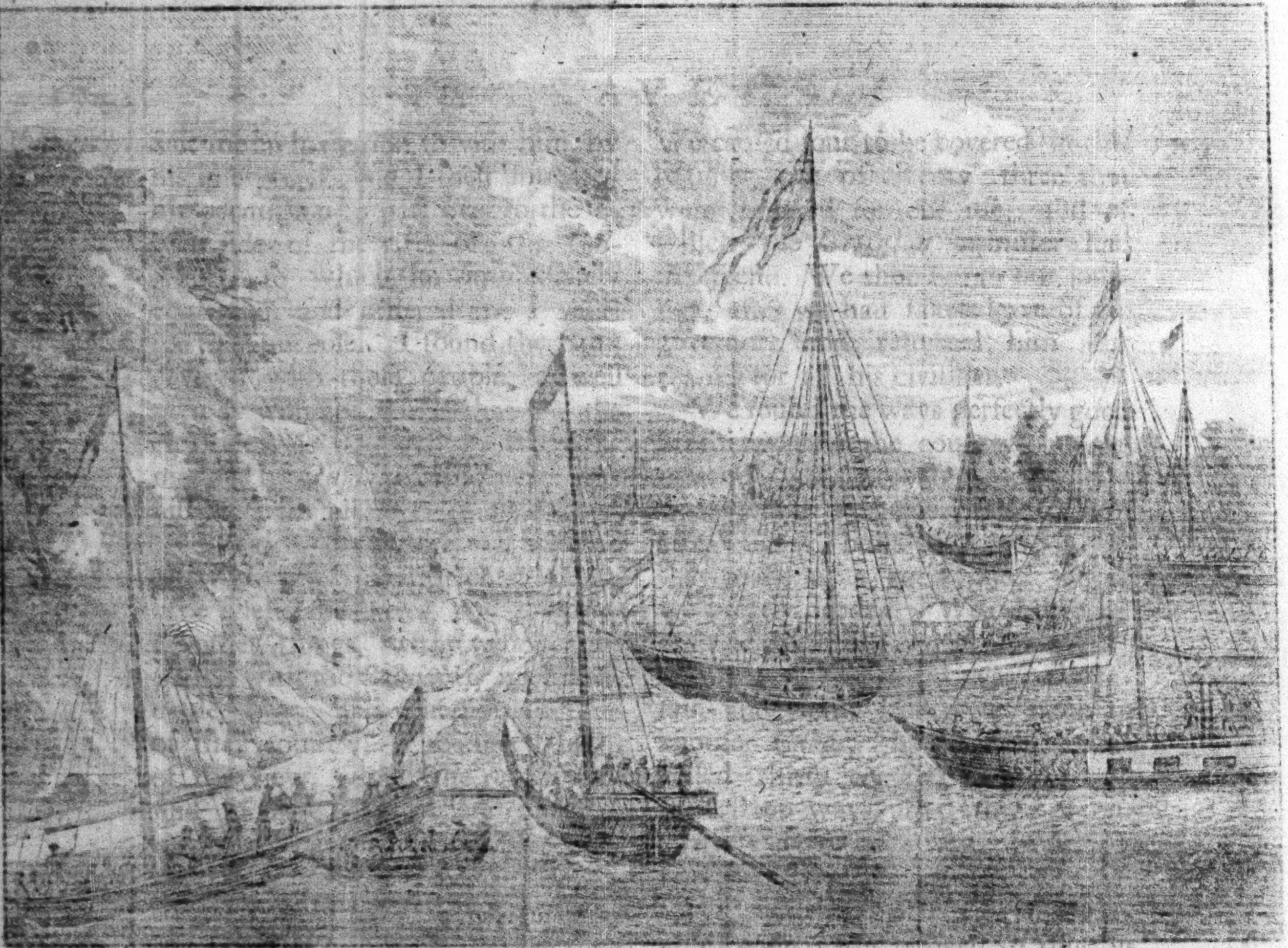
* *A houſe where liquors are ſold.*

Prospect sur la Riviere. 242

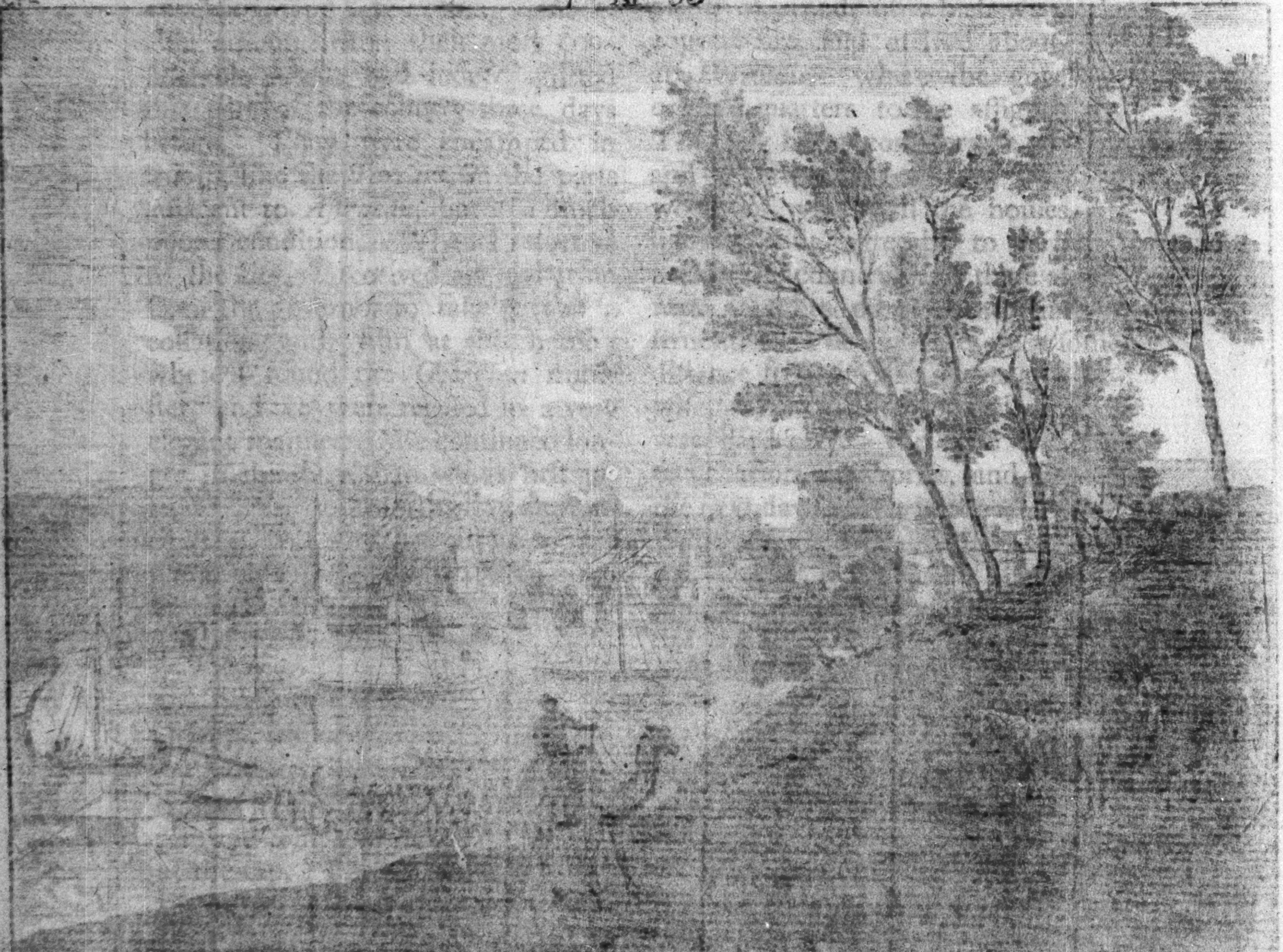


Saratof. 243.





7 AP 53



At Pinſa.

Its ſituation.

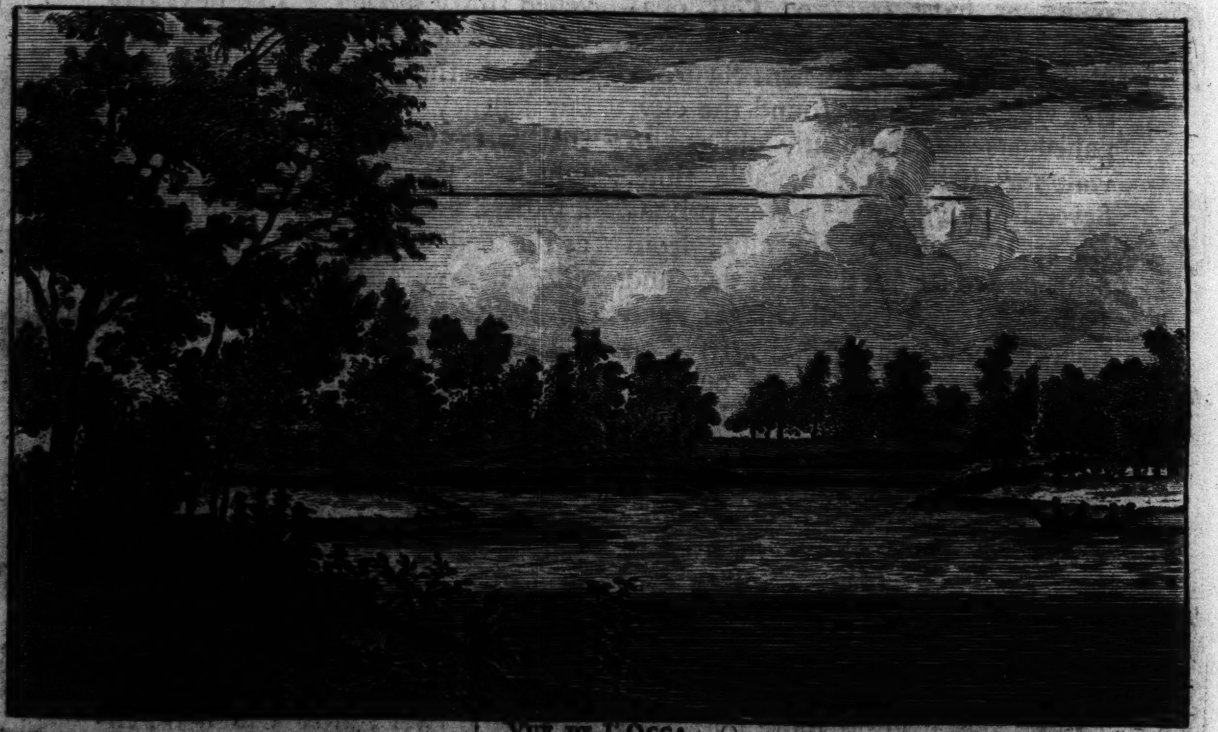
At Inſera.

bout noon, but ſtaid no longer than two hours, after which we paſſed through ſome villages, and particularly that of *Apaneka*, at the ſide of which flows the river of *Kaminka*, at the diſtance of ſeven or eight *werſtes* from *Pinſa*. We found good ſtoves in this village, where it is cuſtomary to enter into the houſes without ſpeaking a word. We arrived on the tenth, at *Pinſa*, which is a large city, and where we croſſed the little river of that name, over a wooden bridge. The river of *Kaminka* diſcharges itſelf into this, after which their united ſtreams flow croſs the country to the ſouth-weſt. This city is ſituated on the ſouth-weſt ſide of the river, under a mountain, as is likewiſe the caſtle, which is very large, and ſurrounded with a wooden wall. The ſtreets are broad, and there are ſeveral churches built of wood. This city is likewiſe rendered very agreeable by the large growths of trees which ſurround it; there is alſo a large ſuburb on the other ſide of the river, and the diſtance of it from *Petroſkie* is computed at ſixty *werſtes*. Our chariots were to be changed at this place; and as they are ſent for from the villages that lie round the city, paſſengers are frequently obliged to wait for them a conſiderable time. Several *Swediſh* officers were priſoners at this time in the city; from whence we ſet out the next day, and paſſed through ſeveral villages, and tracts of arable land, and arrived on the 30th at *Inſera*, where our carriages were to be changed again. We here found proviſions very cheap, as they had been in every other place, ſince we paid but a penny for a large pullet, and no more for twenty eggs, of which even forty or fifty may be purchaſed at ſome particular ſeaſons, for the ſame price. I there bought a good *Turky* for three pence, and paid no more for a pig; I likewiſe gave but twenty pence for a large hog. A ſheep may be had for ten pence, a lamb for five, a gooſe for two, and bread in proportion.

The ſituation of the city.

The city itſelf makes but a very ordinary appearance, and the caſtle has only one wooden wall, flanked with ſeveral towers. As the governor was not in the city at that time, we could not be ſupplied with horſes till the 15th. The *Georgian* miniſter was in ſome meaſure the occaſion of this delay, becauſe he would not pay what was demanded of him, under a pretext that it ought to be there defrayed; but he at laſt conſented to pay half the ſum required.

We then continued our journey as far as *Jemskoi*, which is a very large town, and has a church built of wood. It lies at the diſtance of eight *werſtes* from *Inſera*, where we paſſed over a wooden bridge. On the ſeventeenth by break of day, we paſſed the *Mokſa*, which diſcharges itſelf into the *Occa*; and then continued our journey through a wood, and ſeveral villages, after which we croſſed the river a ſecond time, and arrived about noon at *Troyetſkie*, from whence we went to paſs the night at *Belt-ſoja-tsjas*, having travelled thirty *werſtes*. The next day we proceeded as far as *Miegaloſkie*, and on the eighteenth continued our journey through ſeveral woods, that were watered by the *Mokſa*, which is there very broad, and has a paſſage over it on a wooden bridge, at the end of which is a *Corps de Garde*. We arrived about nine at *Demnik*, which is a poor village, entirely open, and without any caſtle. The ambaſſador had a new diſpute on the 20th with the inhabitants of the place, who refuſed to furniſh him with horſes, without money, and this cauſed us to loſe abundance of time, which highly provoked me, I not daring to proceed in my journey without him: But they at laſt came to an agreement, and we continued our journey along the river; after which we entered the woods through which it flows, and met ſeveral *Ruſſian* travellers. From hence we had very bad ways as far as the village of *Vedenapina*, where we paſſed the night. At break of day we ſtruck into the woods a ſecond time, and croſſed the river again, over a wooden bridge; after which we came into very bad roads among the trees, and ſeveral axle-trees of our chariots were frequently broken, ſo that it required time to mend them with the branches of trees. The night then approaching, we were obliged to halt near a ſmall chapel, where ſeveral eccleſiaſtics had their reſidence. We there made a good fire, and kept a ſtrict guard till the dawn of day, when we continued our journey by the ſide of the river, which we afterward croſſed, by means of a little bridge of boats, on which no more than two chariots could proceed at one time, and the river was two hundred paces in breadth. We found on the other ſide a little plain, before a wood, and travelled as far as *Koelekove*, a village ſituated on a riſing ground, from whence we deſcended into a hollow way, filled with water, which was then frozen. On the 23d, and by break of day, we again croſſed the ſame river on a bridge of wood, and afterward found the ways extremely bad, and filled with little bridges, under which the waters flow. We then proceeded through the town of *Aloſſa*, and paſſed the night at *Zawata*, where two of our domeſtics, who had intoxicated themſelves with brandy, continued with their chariots, and were treated very ill by the *Ruſſians*, who had taken away their cloaths and bonnets. When they afterward rejoined us in that condition, we had a long conſultation whether we ſhould return, but the negative prevailed, and we proceeded on our journey. We afterward croſſed the *Occa*, on little bridges of boats, like thoſe I have already mentioned. I there drew the courſe of the river to the ſouth, where it forms a very ſpacious gulph, which extends from eaſt to weſt, as far as I could judge by my eye, having loſt the needle of my compaſs. The repreſentation of it is exhibited in the following plate.



VUE DE L'OCCA.

Our time was taken up in paſſing this river, till two in the afternoon, after which we travelled along the ſide of it to *Monſo*, a village ſituated on an eminence, and at the diſtance of fifteen *werſtes* from the place where we had croſſed the river. The next day we pro-

The city of Kaſiemo.

Wolodimer.

Its ſituation.

The author's arrival at Moſcow.

proceeded to *Kaſiemo*, where we changed our horſes, in order to go to *Zerbalova*, which lay about fifteen *werſtes* from it, and where the ways proved ſo bad, that moſt of our chariots were overturned, which loſt us abundance of time. The *Georgian* miniſter continued his journey with ſome perſons of his train, but I had no inclination to follow him, during the darkneſs of the night: I therefore waited for the riſing of the ſun, and arrived about nine, at *Nova dereeſna*, on the other ſide of the wood, and twenty five miles from *Zerbalova*; and from hence I proceeded as far as *Jikeſoway*, where I paſſed the night. The two next days we made but little progreſs, the ways proving very bad, and my chariot happening to break. On the 30th we found the roads full of water, and about noon had a view of the city of *Wolodimer*, which is ſituated on a mountain, where it makes a very fine appearance, on account of its numerous churches, which are white. We afterward croſſed the *Cleſma*, which flows by it to the ſouth, and diſcharges itſelf into the *Volga*. The city, which is the capital of the dutchy of that name, is very large, and ſituated on ſeveral hills, ſeparated from each other, along the river. Seven or eight of its churches are built of ſtone, but there are ſeveral others of wood; and the diſtance of this city from *Moſcow* is but 150 *werſtes*. We continued there no longer than the firſt of *November*, and then paſſed thro' ſeveral villages, and croſſed the river *Wortſa*, where we found the governor of *Pinſa*, who did us the honour to dine with us, and then ſet out for *Moſcow* before us, being not incumbered with baggage like ourſelves. We followed him about four, and were accompanied by ſeveral perſons armed with clubs, whoſe extremities were pointed with iron. We advanced on the third as far as *Sallopokro*, a large town, in which is a fine church built of ſtone. We there found great plenty of proviſions, together with good beer, and white bread, but every thing was much dearer than in other places through which we had paſſed; a pullet being ſold for four pence, and all the reſt in proportion. As we proceeded on our journey, we paſſed through ſeveral villages; croſſed ſome rivers on little bridges, and went to lodge that night at *Sjeleva*. The next day we croſſed the *Cleſma* again, on a float of timber, on which I received a fall that cruſhed my leg to a violent degree; but when we came to *Ragoza*, I rubbed it with mummy, which I had brought from *Perſia*, and then continued my journey, tho' I was unable to move my leg. The next day we arrived at *Moſcow*, into which the *Georgian* miniſter would not make his entrance that day. For my part, I returned to my old quarters in the *Slabode*, where I made uſe of my mummy a ſecond time, and then finding my leg much eaſier, and being capable of walking a little with my cane, I cauſed myſelf to be conveyed in a ſledge to the houſe of Monſieur *Hulſt*, the *Dutch* reſident: But my leg was inflamed to ſuch a degree the next day, that I was obliged to keep my chamber above fifteen days, the motion which I had undergone in ſo unſeaſonable a manner, having prevented the mummy from producing its effect: I therefore found it neceſſary to ſend for a Chirurgeon, and I could not walk as formerly, in leſs than the ſpace of ſix weeks.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

A puniſhment inflicted on rebels. The arrival of the Czar *at* Moſcow. *New buildings. Fire-works. The departure of his* Czarian *majeſty.*

The author viſits prince Bories,

I WENT on the 29th, with our reſident, to the country houſe of the *Knées*, or prince *Bories*, (whom I have frequently mentioned) in order to thank him for his favourable recommendations to the governors of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*. This lord received us in a moſt obliging manner, and would not ſuffer us to return till we had dined with him. The next day I paid a viſit to Mr. *Witworth*, the miniſter of *Great-Britain*, who treated me with the utmoſt civility, and likewiſe obliged me to dine with him. He even did me the honour to come to my lodgings, to ſee the curoſities I had brought from *Perſia* and the *Indies*.

And the Engliſh *envoy.*

An execution.

On the firſt of *December* thirty perſons were beheaded, for being concerned in the maſſacre at *Aſtracan*. This execution, which was performed about noon, laſted but little more than half an hour, and was accompliſhed without any diſorder, the malefactors laying their heads very quietly on the block, without being bound with cords.

Three days after prince *Menſikof* gave a ſplendid entertainment at the houſe of the deceaſed general *le Fort*. The company preſent on this occaſion were the princeſs, his majeſty's ſiſter; the *Czarina*, and the princeſſes her daughters; together with the *Czar* of *Georgia*, who was depoſed by his brother, and had taken refuge at the court of *Moſcovy*, where he is entertained with his ſon the prince, who entered into the ſervice of his *Czarian* majeſty, and was taken priſoner by the *Swedes*, at the ſiege of *Narva*. Several lords and ladies of the court were likewiſe preſent at this feaſt, as were likewiſe the *Engliſh* envoy and conſul, together with moſt of the merchants of that nation, and a great number of *Germans* and *Hollanders*. The men and women placed themſelves ſeparately in two different apartments, and ſeveral healths were drank to a diſcharge of cannon and ſome bombs. This entertainment was ſucceeded by a ball, and ſeveral curious fire-works were played off in the evening.

The arrival of the Czar *at* Moſcow.

On the 6th the *Czar* arrived at *Moſcow* about noon, under a diſcharge of all the cannon on the ramparts, and was received with univerſal joy, after an abſence of two years. Two days after I went to pay my duty to that prince at his palace of *Repreſenſke*, where I found him going out in a ſledge. He received me very graciouſly, and aſſured me he was greatly pleaſed to ſee me again in his dominions. He was then going to viſit the princeſs, his ſiſter, and I had the honour to follow him. This princeſs preſented with her own hand, to every one of his majeſty's retinue, a little vermillion glaſs of brandy, and then placed herſelf by the *Czar*, who made a ſign to me to approach him, and commanded me to give him a ſuccinct relation of my travels, particularly of the court of *Perſia*, and the ladies of the ſeraglio. He likewiſe expreſſed the ſame curioſity with reſpect to the court of *Bantam*, and explained to the princeſs, and the ladies of her train, all the particulars I had the honour to relate to him in *Dutch*. After which her highneſs preſented another glaſs of brandy to all the company around; and I entreated the *Czar* to grant me a paſſport, that I might quit his dominions without any moleſtation, to which he immediately conſented. He returned to his palace about four, and I to my *Slabode*, with a heart full of gratitude for the goodneſs I had experienced from that prince.

On the 23d a *Poliſh* biſhop was exchanged for the *Knees Fenderowitz*, who had been taken priſoner at *Narva*. Intelligence was likewiſe brought of the death of the *Great Mogul*, who had lived above a hundred years.

The death of the Great Mogul.

New buildings.

It will not be improper for me, before my departure from *Moſcow*, to mention ſome buildings that were erected there, ſince my journey to *Perſia*. The moſt conſiderable of theſe is a large ſtructure of ſtone, which was begun ſeven years ago, and was intended for the officers of the mint; but within the laſt year and a half it has been converted into a diſpenſatory for medicines. It is a very fine and lofty building, with a beautiful tower in the front. Its ſituation is to the eaſt of the caſtle, and on the ſpot where formerly was a market for fowls. The paſſage to it lies through a large baſe court, at the end of which is a great ſtaircaſe, that conducts to the firſt apartment, which is vaulted, and very lofty, and contains fifteen feet in depth, and twenty in breadth. People were employed in painting it in diſtemper at that time. The ſide walls are embelliſhed with fine croſs work, and the others are to be decorated with *China* ſyrup-pots, and other vaſes, on the top of which the arms of his *Czarian* majeſty are enamelled. There are two doors to this apartment, one of which affords a paſſage into the magazine of medicinal herbs; the other opens into the chancery, or office of accounts belonging to the houſe. There are alſo very beautiful halls finely vaulted, particularly two, which entirely correſpond in ſtructure, one of which ſerves for a laboratory, and the other for a library, wherein extraordinary plants and animals are likewiſe preſerved. Beſide theſe apartments, there are ſeveral others, particularly that of the preſident or doctor; and another which belongs to the apothecary and his domeſtics. The doctor has alſo the direction of the chancery, and has under him a vice-chancellor, and ſeveral commiſſioners, and he has even power to puniſh with death thoſe who are under his direction, whenever they merit ſuch a treatment. All the phyſicians, chirurgeons, and druggiſts, receive their ſalaries in this office of chancery. Eight apothecaries are employed in this diſpenſatory, and they have under them five boys, and above forty workmen; and from hence his majeſty's troops and navies are ſupplied with all the drugs and medicines they want.

The director of this houſe is doctor *Areſkine*, a *Scotchman*, and firſt phyſician to his *Czarian* majeſty, who allows him a yearly penſion of 1500 ducats. He has been four years in the ſervice of this prince, who has a great eſteem for him, on account of his capacity and perſonal merit, and he has gained the affection of all the court by his polite and obliging conduct. His majeſty made him a preſent of two thouſand crowns when he engaged in this great and arduous work. He ſeemed to be perſuaded, when I left *Moſcow*, that every thing would be compleated in the ſpace of a year; and he was then employed in collecting from all quarters, and diſpoſing with the utmoſt elegancy on paper, all the principal herbs and flowers, which are uſeful in medicine, and of which he had already filled a book. He likewiſe ſhewed me a large piece of petrified brown bread, and aſſured me that he intended to ſend into *Siberia* for a collection of ſimples, flowers, and plants. This diſpenſatory has two gardens.

I likewiſe found, at my return from *Perſia*, that an hoſpital had been built at *Moſcow* for ſick perſons. This ſtructure is built of wood, on the bank of the river *Jonſa*, and in the *German Slabode*. The hoſpital is divided into two parts, in each of which are ſeven beds on one ſide, and ten on the other; each bed being

1707. ing intended for two perſons, and there are nine in the middle range, for ſingle perſons. There are three ſtoves in each of theſe diviſions, and the chamber appropriated to anatomy is between them. The ſecond ſtory contains ſeveral little apartments, where the phyſician, apothecary, and chirurgeon of the hoſpital lodge. The diſpenſatory conſiſts of three chambers; two for the medicines, and a third for the herbs of which they are compoſed.

On the ſide of this hoſpital is a manufactory of cloth, under the direction of a draper, who was ſent for from *Holland*; and on the other ſide of the river *Moſcua*, is a glaſs-houſe, where looking-glaſſes are made, among which I ſaw ſome that were above three ells in length. Workmen were likewiſe employ'd in repairing the caſtle, together with the red wall of the city, and eſpecially to the eaſt and north; nor muſt I omit, that the three Jeſuits who reſide in this city, two of whom are *Germans*, and the other an *Engliſhman*, have built a little church in the *Slabode*, and painted the inſide of it in diſtemper.

1708. The firſt day of the year 1708, was celebrated with rejoicings, and a fine fire-work, in the great ſquare, where his *Czarian* majeſty gave an entertainment in the lodge that has been formerly mentioned. Some days after, this monarch gave another in the houſe of Monſieur *le Fort*, which at preſent belongs to the prince of *Menſikof*, who has greatly enlarged and embelliſhed it. His majeſty, when the repaſt was over, paid his uſual viſits to the foreign merchants, and began with our reſident, in the manner that has been formerly deſcribed. He continued with that miniſter for the ſpace of two hours, after which he made ſeveral other viſits, being on the point of ſetting out for the army. Monſieur *Grundt*, the *Daniſh* miniſter, arrived at that time; and moſt of the merchants of *Archangel*, at the latter end of the month, as is uſual.

Rebels executed.

On the ſixth of *February*, ſeventy more of the principal rebels of *Aſtracan* were beheaded; five were broken on the wheel, and forty-five were afterward hanged.

When I had obtained my ſecond paſſport, I took leave of our reſident, and all my friends, in order to ſet out on the tenth, having already ſecured all the carriages I had occaſion for, as far as *Koningsberg*. I then waited on the envoy of *Great Britain*, in whoſe apartment I found all the merchants of that nation. We paſſed the evening in a very agreeable manner, after which I went to prepare for my ſetting out that night in a ſledge.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

The author's departure from Moſcow, *and arrival at* Waeſma, Dorgoboes, Smolenſko, *and* Boriſof. *Villages burnt by the* Muſcovites. *The author's return to* Moſcow.

The author ſets out from Moſcow.

His arrival at Waeſma.

At Dorgoboes.

At Smolenſko.

WE ſet out at one in the morning, and arrived about eight at *Weſomke*, which is thirty five *werſtes* from *Moſcow*. We were ſeven in company; namely, four *Engliſhmen*, two *Germans*, and myſelf, and each of us had a ſledge to ourſelves, and two for our ſervants, beſide poſt-horſes, in caſe any accident ſhould hapen to us on the way, as is very cuſtomary. We had likewiſe taken care to ſend others to *Smolenſko*, eight days before we began our journey, that they might reſt there till our arrival. After we had travelled forty nine *werſtes*, to *Modenovo*, we paſſed through ſeveral villages, and over a plain, where we met a great number of ſledges, at midnight, and arrived about noon at *Oſtroſjok*, a village ſituated in a wood, at the diſtance of forty *werſtes* from the laſt place; and there are thirty ſeven from thence to *Waeſma*, where we arrived on the thirteenth. It is a large city, and has a caſtle built of wood, and ſeveral ſtone towers. We ſet out from thence about noon, and came to *Dorgoboes*, on the fourteenth, having travelled ſixty nine *werſtes*. This is a poor village, around which hemp grows in great perfection. We there paſſed the *Nieper*, as we did a ſecond time at *Phova*, which is forty four *werſtes* from thence, and we arrived at *Smolenſko*, on the 15th, after a journey of thirty ſix *werſtes*. We were there obliged to ſhew our paſs-ports to the governor, who received us in a very obliging manner, and not only diſpatched others to the frontiers, but appointed us a guard for our ſecurity. In return for theſe favours, we preſented him with a ſmall caſk of wine. This city, which is very large, is a biſhop's ſee; it has likewiſe ſeveral churches built of ſtone, and many others of wood.

The author's arrival on the frontiers of Poland.

At Copies.

We ſet out about five with poſt-horſes we had ſent thither, and found the ways full of water. In a ſhort time after we came to an encloſure, with a gate, where a guard was ſtationed; and from thence we proceeded as far as *Krano-ſelo*, where we paſſed the night, after having travelled forty four *werſtes*. We continued our journey at ſeven in the morning, the weather being very froſty, and met the baggage of the prince of *Menſikof*, and ſome coaches, in one of which was the princeſs, his conſort, who was going to *Smolenſko*. About noon we arrived at the frontiers of *Poland*, and two hours after at *Dobrooſna*, after a journey of twenty three *werſtes*. We continued there till nine in the evening, and came about three in the morning to the city of *Copies*, which is within ſix leagues of *Germany*, each league containing five *werſtes*, as I formerly obſerved; for the way from *Smolenſko* is computed by leagues.

We ſhewed our paſſports in the morning to general *Allert*, a *Scotchman*, who received us in the moſt engaging manner imaginable, and gave us to underſtand, that it would be difficult for us to proceed by *Koningſberg*, on account of the *Swediſh* troops, who were on their march from thence; upon which we reſolved to take the road of *Wilda*. As all the houſes were filled with ſoldiers, we took up our lodging with doctor *Areſkine*, who was then in the city, and we paſſed a very agreeable evening with him and general *Allert*. The *Ruſſians* had thrown up lines round the city, and the *Nieper*, which flows by the ſide of it, in order to oppoſe the *Swedes* who were expected in that quarter.

At Boriſof.

We continued our journey on the 18th, through woods that were full of fir-trees, with which that part of the country abounds, and arrived, about ten, at *Kroepka*, where a body of five hundred men were poſted. From thence we proceeded to *Boriſof*, which is a poor village, the houſes of which are ſcattered up and down without the leaſt regularity. It however has a wooden caſtle, which is ſurrounded with a wall of earth. Monſieur *Keiſerling*, the *Pruſſian* miniſter, was there at that time. We ſhewed him our paſſports, and ſet out from thence at two in the afternoon, but loſt our way for ſome time in the woods, which are very thick: However, we arrived, in the evening, at *Julejewa*, and continued our journey from thence at one in the morning, with a guide, who conducted us to *Belaroes*, where there is a large houſe, which belongs to a *Poliſh* lord. We afterward paſſed through another village ſeated in a plain, where we ſaw a regiment of ſoldiers, and arrived at *Kraſnaſel*, after travelling twelve leagues.

The calamitous ſtate of the peaſants.

A perplexing conjuncture.

We continued our journey on the 21ſt, and came about three in the afternoon to the village of *Mollodeſna*, from whence prince *Alexander* had ſet out in the morning. The *Ruſſians* had lately made great devaſtations there, and in other places, by fire, to prevent the *Swedes* from finding any ſubſiſtence in thoſe parts. Theſe ravages preſented a horrid ſpectacle to our view: All the woods around were filled with the poor peaſants, who fled thither to ſecure themſelves from the rage of the exaſperated ſoldiers, and to conceal the little they had been able to ſave. We ſaw ſeveral of thoſe unhappy people, who were viewing this diſmal ſcene with eyes drowned in tears, and hearts racked with anguiſh. Others were trembling in expectation of the enemy, from whom they apprehended nothing leſs than deſtruction. Our conductors were ſhocked to ſuch a degree, at what they ſaw, that they intreated us with tears in their eyes, to permit them to return. Our compaſſion for them obliged us to conſent to their requeſt, and we determined to continue our journey without them, ſurrounded as we were with flames. We, however, bought two of their horſes, to carry us to *Wilda*, which was ſixteen leagues from thence; but the moment our guides were gone, we found ourſelves in a perplexity that ſeemed to be inextricable, when we began to conſider, that if we proceeded forward, we ſhould be in danger of falling into the hands of the *Walachians*, who were in the ſervice of *Sweden*; and that if we ſhould endeavour to return from whence we came, we ſhould inevitably meet the marauders of the ſame nation, who were intermixed with the *Muſcovites*, and are a people who treat friends and enemies alike, and never ſpare even their neareſt relations. They are a ſet of ſavages, who receive no pay, and ſubſiſt by nothing but rapine and depredations. There were likewiſe in this part of the country a great number of *Tartars*, and *Calmucks*, who are altogether as bad as the others. We therefore continued where we then were, till noon, not knowing what courſe to take, ſince the flames encircled us from all quarters; but we at laſt reſolved to commit ourſelves to the providence of God, and continue our journey without guides. We had no ſooner quitted the village, than we met a party of horſe, compoſed of *Coſſacks* and *Walachians*, in the *Muſcovite* ſervice, with an officer at their head. They immediately ſtopped us, upon which we ſhewed them our paſſports, which they entirely diſregarded, ſaying we were traitors, who intended to go over to the enemy. We were in this condition, when a young *German*, who was among them, advanced forward, and repreſented to them with great freedom, that they acted a wrong part, and treated us in a very injurious manner; upon which one of them gave

1708. him a ſevere ſtroke with a whip, and the other returned it with uſury. He then deſired us to fear nothing, ſince a general was advancing to us with great expedition, at the head of a great body of horſe. His companions, who were ſenſible this intelligence was true, retired as faſt as poſſible, and left us to ourſelves. We were not ſurpriſed at this proceeding, being very ſenſible that theſe people, who appear very reſolute when they have an opportunity to rob, are meer daſtards where they meet with the leaſt reſiſtance, and betake themſelves to their heels the moment they ſee one of their companions drop. The body of horſe, which the young *German* mentioned, came up to us in leſs than a quarter of an hour, and was commanded by two lieutenant-generals, one of whom was an *Engliſhman*, and the other a *German*. The *Engliſh* officer, who knew us, had the goodneſs to treat us with the greateſt civility, after which we acquainted him with our late adventure, and deſired him to inform us, whether he thought it poſſible for us to continue our journey in ſafety? He aſſured us, that it was altogether impracticable, becauſe the *Ruſſian Coſſacks* were ſtill employed in burning all the remaining villages, and in breaking down the bridges, and that it would likewiſe be impoſſible for us to eſcape thoſe who were in the ſervice of *Sweden*, and plundered where-ever they came, not ſo much as ſparing the lives of thoſe who had the misfortune to fall into their hands: for which reaſons he adviſed us to return with him, and we found it neceſſary to take that reſolution. This gentleman likewiſe diſpatched a trooper after our guides, who rejoined us with their horſes; ſo that as we had two horſes to each ſledge, we ſoon overtook the party who had treated us with ſuch ill language; and the *Engliſh* officer gave the commander of it ſeveral laſhes with his whip, in order to inſtruct him in his duty.

We were likewiſe informed, that 1708. the *Swediſh Coſſacks* were within four or five leagues of us, and we arrived ſoon after at the houſe of a *Poliſh* lord, which was ſet on fire at nine in the evening. Three leagues from thence we found another, which reſembled a fortreſs, and there was likewiſe a body of troops, commanded by colonel *Geheim*, who adviſed us to paſs on without halting, becauſe the *Swedes* were expected there. We then proceeded through ſeveral places, where troops were ſtationed, and arrived about three at the palace of *Leſcova*, where prince *Alexander* of *Menſikof* then was. We were in hopes of waiting on him immediately, and with that view had ſeparated ourſelves, with a guard of four troopers, from the great body of horſe. This prince received us in a very gracious manner, and we intreated him to inform us, whether there was no other road, through which we might continue our journey in ſafety; or whether he would be ſo good as to diſpatch a trumpet to the *Swediſh* army, in order to procure us a ſafe paſſage? His anſwer was, that, with reſpect to the firſt particular, it would be impoſſible to proceed on our journey, the *Swediſh* troops having ſpread themſelves over all the country; and that it would be of no effect to ſend a trumpet to their army, becauſe they would not admit any ſuch perſon to an audience, having already maſſacred two or three, and ſeveral drummers; for which reaſons the prince adviſed us to return to *Moſcow*, and recommended it to me in particular, ſince he knew that I had ſeveral curioſities which I had brought from *Perſia* and the *Indies*. I returned him my humble acknowledgments for his goodneſs, after which I gave him a ſuccinct account of my journey, and he then directed us to follow him, for the ſpace of three days, that we might not be expoſed to the fury of the *Poliſh* peaſants, who were ſhrowded in the woods through which we were to paſs, and ſpared none that came in their way. Such was the civility of the prince, which I can never ſufficiently praiſe. He likewiſe informed us, that the advance guard of the *Swediſh* troops arrived within three hours after our departure, at the laſt caſtle by which we had paſſed, and that they had maſſacred above a hundred *Ruſſians*, whom they found there. As ſoon as we had quitted that where we now were, it was ſet on fire, and as it was full of Hay, the flames reached us in a moment, and obliged us to double our pace. We purſued our journey the whole night, but halted at particular intervals to wait for the baggage. This circumſtance, in conjunction with the thickneſs of the woods, made us loſe much time, and expoſed us to the danger of being ſurpriſed by the enemy. However, we arrived about noon, at *Nilnikof*, after we had travelled four leagues through rain and ſnow.

We endeavoured to alleviate the fatigue of our journey with good cheer, without perceiving that we were almoſt unprovided with bread, which it would be impoſſible for us to procure in that road. Our only remedy was to addreſs ourſelves to the prince, and I was deputed to that office, ſince I had the honour to be known to him. He was at table when I acquitted myſelf of my commiſſion, which cauſed all the company to ſmile; but he had the goodneſs to deſire me to be ſeated by him, which gave me a ſenſible pleaſure, but was very mortifying to my companions, who waited my return with impatience. When we roſe from table, he ordered me to be ſupplied with all the accommodations we wanted; and this he did with ſuch an air of goodneſs, as is not to be expreſſed.

We renewed our journey toward evening, and paſſed through ſeveral woods that were filled with peaſants. About three we halted in a village which was not far from the city of *Siebina*, where the prince had invited us to dine with him that day; but his dinner was over before our arrival. We, however, were well entertained by his officers.

We took our leave of him on the 24th, and he had ſtill the goodneſs to ſend a detachment of three hundred horſe before us, to ſecure our paſſage; he likewiſe ordered us a guard of ſix dragoons, commanded by a *Poliſh* officer, and they were to accompany us as far as *Smolenſko*. We arrived about ſix, at the little city of *Boriſſova*, having travelled four leagues, and about ten in the morning we came to *Kroepka*, which is eight leagues from thence. We then paſſed through ſeveral villages, in one of which there was not a mortal to be found, and came about noon to *Tollothin*, after a journey of ſeven leagues. We ſet out again on the 27th, and arrived in the evening at the city of *Copies*. Colonel *Aller*, together with the *Pruſſian* miniſter, and doctor *Areſkine*, who had reſided there for ſome time, were juſt ſet out from thence, in order to join the *Czar* at *Solenſo*, which was eight leagues from that place; and we arrived at *Dobrooſna*, on the laſt day of the month, and after a journey of ſeven leagues. Here the *Poliſh* gentleman and his dragoons, who had conducted us out of our way, quitted us in the night without ſpeaking a word, which reduced us to a great perplexity. We, however, proceeded on our journey without a guard, and happily arrived about ſeven at *Bagova*, which is the laſt village in this part of the *Poliſh* territories. We took up our lodgings among the *Jews*, and came the next day to *Smolenſko*, where we went to pay our reſpects to the governor, and to acquaint him with the particulars of our journey. After which we deſired him to allow us freſh horſes, but he aſſured us he had not any; notwithſtanding which, we found eight that came the evening before from *Moſcow*, with a ſet of travellers who proceeded farther. This was a very ſeaſonable circumſtance, and we harneſſed four of the horſes to our ſledges, adding three of our own, but theſe were ſo fatigued, that they

The author's arrival at Moſcow.

they could hardly move forward, and we had loſt ſeveral by the way. In this manner we continued our journey, and arrived about eight in the morning at *Glowa*, after travelling thirty three *werſtes*. From thence we proceeded to *Dorgobuſh*, *Weeſgna*, and *Moſchaioſkie*, and at laſt arrived at *Moſcow*, where I returned to my old quarters in the *Slabode*, and ſurpriſed all who were there, with my return.

On the 10th of *March*, the *Dutch* merchants, who ſet out after us, returned thither in the ſame manner, and ſhortly after all the reſt of the travellers, whom I formerly mentioned, did the ſame. They had ſtopped for ſome time at the camp of his *Czarian* majeſty, in hopes of an opportunity for proceeding on their journey. Monſieur *Keiſerling*, the *Pruſſian* miniſter, came hither likewiſe, and as the commotions of war prevented the receipt of letters from *Holland*, from whence five or ſix poſts were then due, our merchants came to a reſolution to ſend an expreſs at all adventures; and I determined to return by water, by the way of *Archangel*, with Monſieur *Kinſius*, brother to the gentleman with whom I came to *Moſcow*.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

The author's laſt departure from Moſcow; *and his arrival at* Preſlaw, Roſtof, Jereſlaw, *and* Wologda. *The manner of travelling by water.*

The author's departure from Moſcow.

His arrival at Preſlaw.

At Roſtof.

At Jereſlaw.

I SET out from *Moſcow* in a ſledge, on the twenty third of *March*, with ſeveral other travellers, and proceeded that day as far as *Bratoſſina*, a town thirty *werſtes* from *Moſcow*. The next day about nine, we arrived at *Troytſkie*, which has been already deſcribed, as well as the fine monaſtery of that name. We afterward paſſed over mountains covered with trees, which undoubtedly create an admirable effect in ſummer. We there met a party of ſix or ſeven thouſand ſoldiers newly raiſed, and without arms; their officers were in ſledges. On the 25th, we arrived at *Preſlaw*, where we made no ſtay, but proceeded to *Waſka*. The next day we paſſed by *Roſtof*, on the north-weſt of the lake which bears that name, and is ſurrounded with villages. The inhabitants of this quarter cultivate onions and garlic; and the city has a metropolitan who reſides there. Half a league from thence is the monaſtery of *Peuter Zarewitz*, which is encircled with houſes. From thence we proceeded to *Nikola*, which is forty five *werſtes* in diſtance from it, and where in the ſummer ſeaſon the river *Oetſie-reka* may be paſſed on a float of timber. We arrived on the 26th at *Jereſlaw*, and lodged in the ſuburb of *Troepenoe*, from whence I cauſed my ſelf to be conveyed in a ſledge to the river *Wologda*, in order to draw a view of the city, as well as the time would allow, we being to continue there but three hours. This proſpect is exhibited in plate 244. It begins with the letter A to the ſouth, where flows the *Kotis*, which diſcharges its waters into the *Wologda*. There were five veſſels, with three maſts each, in the river at that time, and they came from *Caſan* with the utmoſt difficulty, being towed up the *Volga* by main force, in order to arrive at *Peterſburg*. Several other veſſels were likewiſe frozen in the river. At a little diſtance from the city is a village with a church built of ſtone, and the ſuburbs are on each ſide. The city is ſeated on an eminence, and partly encloſed with a ſtone wall, which has not been finiſhed, becauſe the earth was not ſufficiently compact; for which reaſon it is in a very bad condition. This city is very large, and almoſt ſquare, and the great number of ſtone churches which are there, give it a fine appearance without. There are likewiſe ſeveral houſes built of ſtone, but moſt of them are of wood, as are alſo four bridges which ſlant from the houſes to the river. The northern quarter is diſtinguiſhed by the letter B, beyond which is a proſpect of ſeveral houſes, and a church of ſtone. The city makes a greater appearance on this ſide than it does on the other, and indeed it may be juſtly reputed one of the fineſt cities in all *Ruſſia*. A great number of merchants live there, and a conſiderable trade is carried on in leather, tallow, bruſhes, and linnen cloth: but nothing is ſo much admired here as the beauty of the women, who in that particular ſurpaſs all the reſt of their ſex in this country.

We ſet out from hence at two in the afternoon, proceeding always to the north, through woods; after which we purſued our journey through ſeveral villages, and paſſed the night at *Wakſere*, after travelling forty *werſtes*. We arrived on the 27th at *Oegaſkie-jam*, which is thirty *werſtes* from the place where we lodged. From thence we had bad ways as far as *Wologda*, where I was reſolved to continue till the rivers were navigable, that I might proceed to *Archangel* by water, and carefully examine the courſe of the rivers between theſe two cities, ſince travellers have ſaid but little of them. Beſide the beauty of the rivers, this part of the country affords a variety of delightful proſpects. About this time ſeven thouſand families arrived at this city from *Dorpat*, the capital of *Livonia*, with an intention to ſettle there, and they had quarters aſſigned to them among the *Ruſſians*. This people made their appearance the next day on the river, in order to be regiſtered, and intelligence came in a ſhort time after, that the city of *Dorpat* had been deſtroyed after their departure. The moſt conſiderable perſons among them repaired to *Peterſburg*, by the order of his *Czarian* majeſty, and were to be followed by ſome foreign merchants. Soon after this event ſeventeen hundred of the inhabitants of *Narva* arrived there, and were likewiſe to continue in that city till new orders; ſeveral other perſons likewiſe came thither, and their number in the whole amounted to two thouſand ſeven hundred.

At Wologda.

The weather began to thaw toward the cloſe of *April*, and the wind blew a very ſtrong gale, on the firſt day of *May*, which cleared the river of all the ice. On the 15th in the evening there was a great tempeſt, accompanied with thunder and lightening, which beat down ſeveral roofs, doors, and chimneys, and damaged moſt of the houſes in the city.

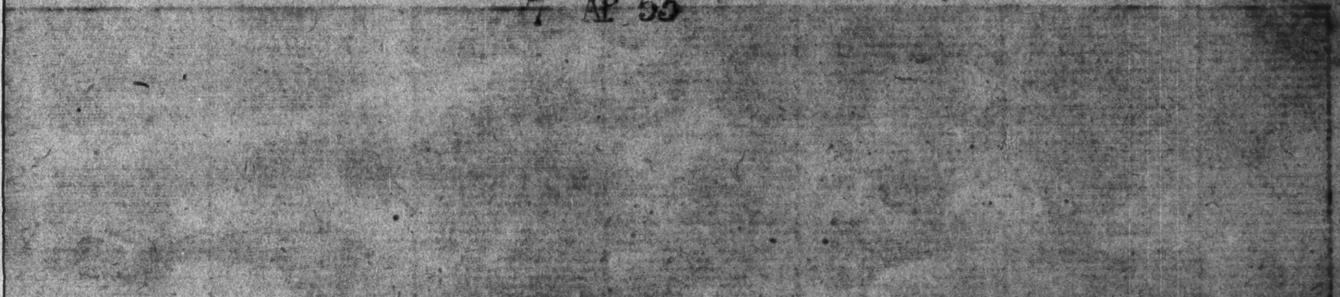
The *Engliſh* merchants who had accompanied me in *Poland*, arrived at this city on the 30th, and ſet out the ſame night for *Archangel*. They had ſuffered greatly in the ſtorm, which overthrew ſeveral of their carriages.

The courſe of the Wologda.

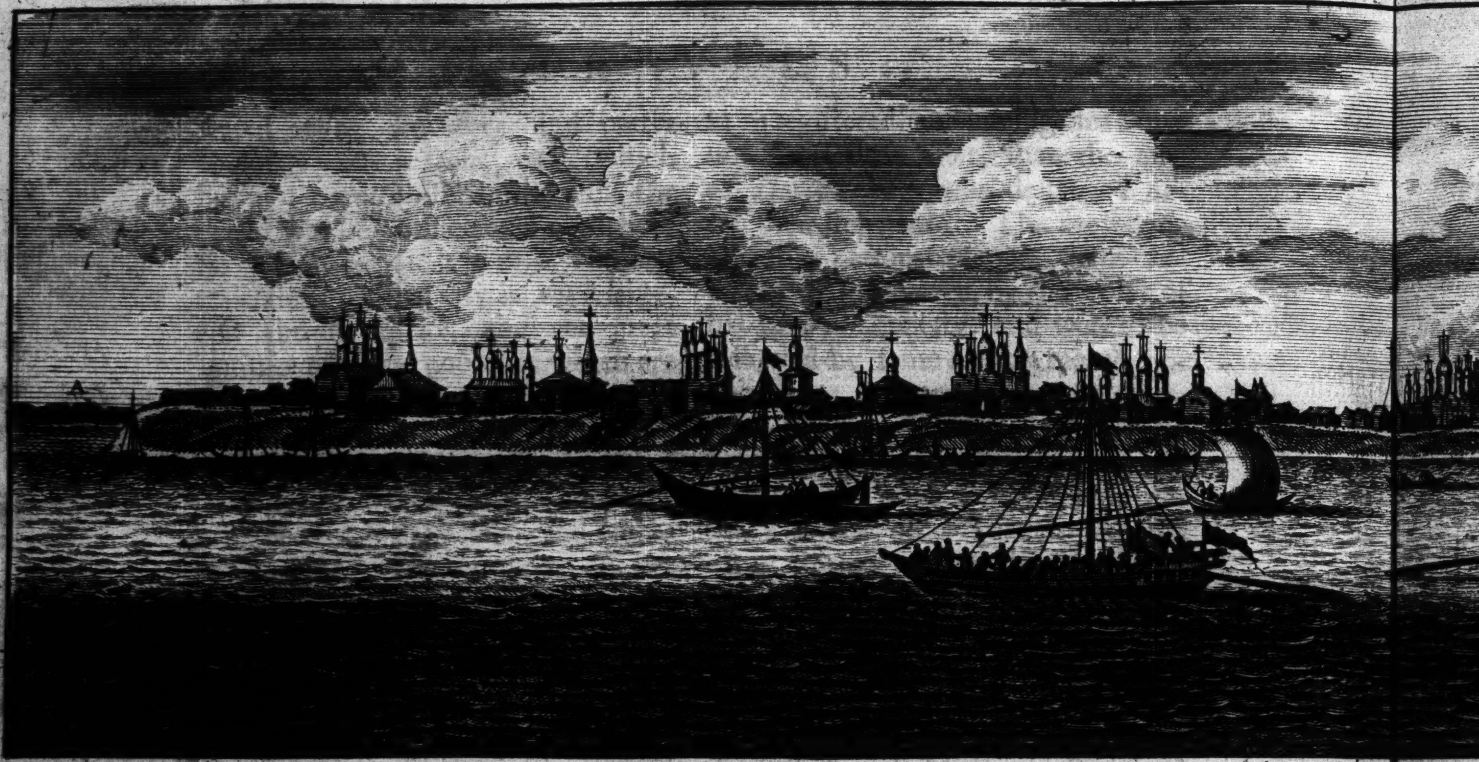
I drew, from my chamber window, the courſe of the river *Wologda* to the weſt, and it is repreſented in plate 245, as is a branch of cedar in plate 246. It is a very common tree in this country. I drew the leaves and fruit from nature. I have ſeen one of a prodigious ſize, that was produced from a ſeed brought from *Siberia*, a country abounding in trees of this ſpecies, and where ſome are as large as thoſe on mount *Libanus*. There are likewiſe very conſiderable growths of them in the country adjacent to *Moſcow*.

With reſpect to the river *Wologda*, which was formerly called *Naſſon*, its ſource is one hundred *werſtes* above the city of that name, in a large marſh, between the lake of *Koeben*, and the *White Lake*, and it diſcharges itſelf into the *Suchana*, after having

7 AP 53

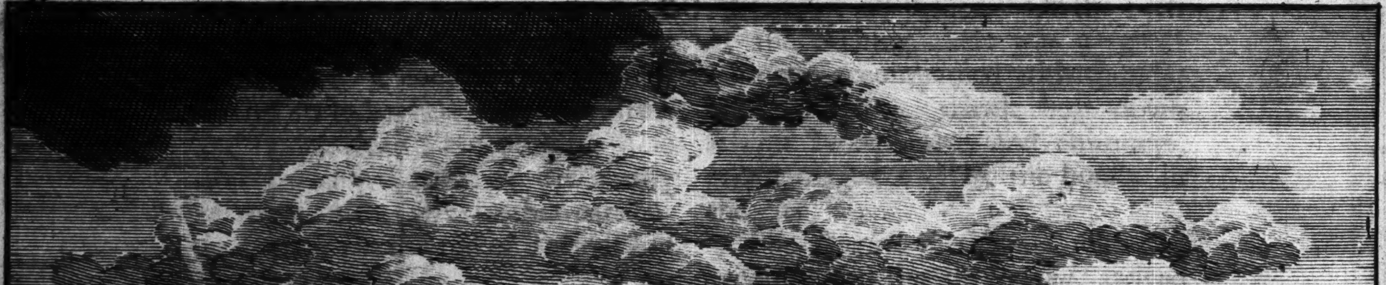


JERESLAW

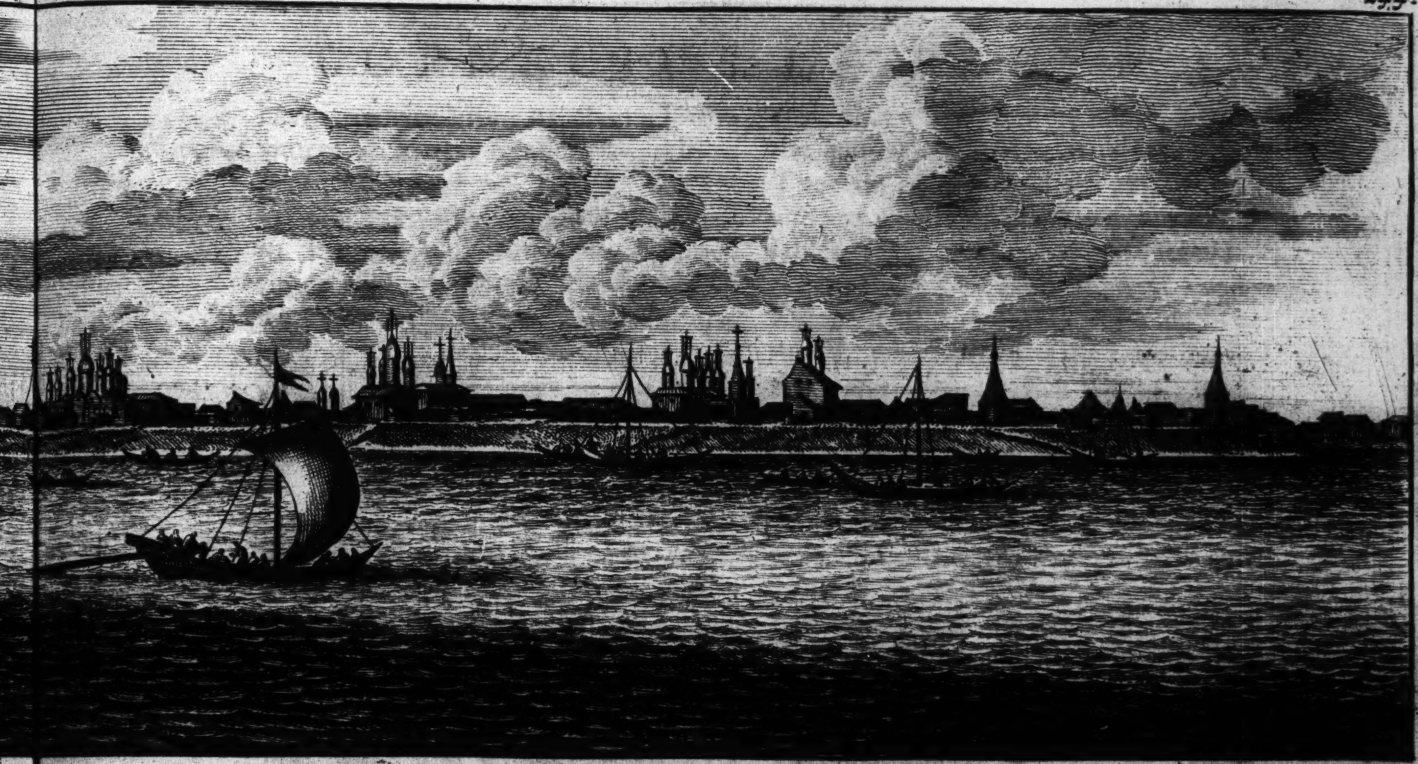


245.

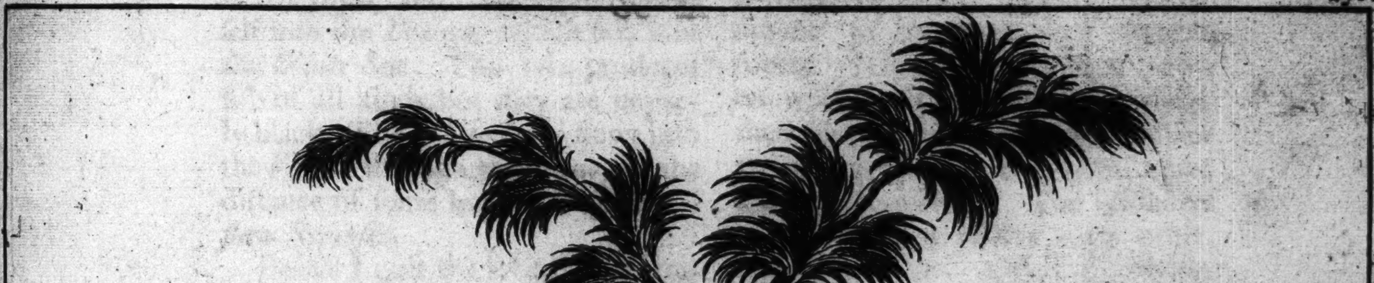
WOLOGDA.



ESLAW. 244.



BRANCHE DE CEDRE. 246.



1708. having received into its channel, the waters of ſeveral ſmall rivers, above *Wologda*. And yet thoſe of this river are exhauſted to ſuch a degree in the ſummer, that people ſometimes paſs it without wetting their feet, and only by leaping from one part of the ſand to another. It is about fifty paces broad in this place, where ſeveral other ſtreams are likewiſe to be ſeen. The diſtance of the *White Lake* from hence does not exceed ninety *werſtes*, and it abounds with excellent fiſh, ſuch as *Soedakes*, *Sterlettes*, perch, and ſmelts, whoſe exceeding whiteneſs has given this lake its name. On the contrary, there is another lake, at the diſtance of fifty *werſtes* from the city to the northweſt, and which extends as far as *Kargapol*, and then diſcharges itſelf into the *Donega*, which falls into the *White Sea:* This lake produces fiſh of all kinds, but they are entirely black. The *White Lake* flows into the *Volga*, through the *Soxna*, at the diſtance of ſome leagues from *Pereſlaw Reſanſke*.

Before I quit the ſubject of this city, it may be proper to obſerve, that thoſe who intend to ſet out from hence by water to *Archangel*, muſt have little veſſels made purpoſely on that Occaſion, and capable of containing five or ſix paſſengers; but thoſe who have occaſion for them, muſt ſend directions for their being built, before they ſet out from *Moſcow*, that they may be ready, when the paſſengers arrive at this place. They are as commodious as poſſible, and are furniſhed with wooden beds, tables, ſeats, and all other neceſſaries. They are called *Kajoeks*, and ſeldom coſt more than twenty five rubels, which are equal to one hundred and twenty five florins; and they have twelve or fourteen rowers, each of whom may be hired for ſix or ſeven florins. There are other veſſels ſmaller than theſe, and they are called *Karbaſſes*; but they contain no more than one or two paſſengers, and ſix rowers. Theſe little barks coſt five rubels and a half; each of the rowers will require four florins, and eleven or twelve muſt be paid to the pilot; ſo that the whole expence will amount to no more then thirteen rubels. No more than two rowers work at a time, and they relieve themſelves every ten, fifteen, or twenty *werſtes*, as they can agree among themſelves. The diſtances at which they relieve each other, and which are called *Peremines*, are marked out, either by a church, a village, a river, a tree, or a croſs. *Archangel* is computed to be a thouſand *werſtes* from *Wologda* by water, and ſix hundred and thirty by land; and this inequality is occaſioned by the various windings of the river. 1708.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

The author's departure from Wologda, *and arrival at* Todma. *A deſcription of* Oeſt-joega, *or* Ouſtiough. *The junction of the river of that name with the* Suchana, *and the* Dwina. *Salt-works. Mountains of Alabaſter. The mountain of* Orlees. *The author arrives at* Archangel.

The author's departure from Wologda.

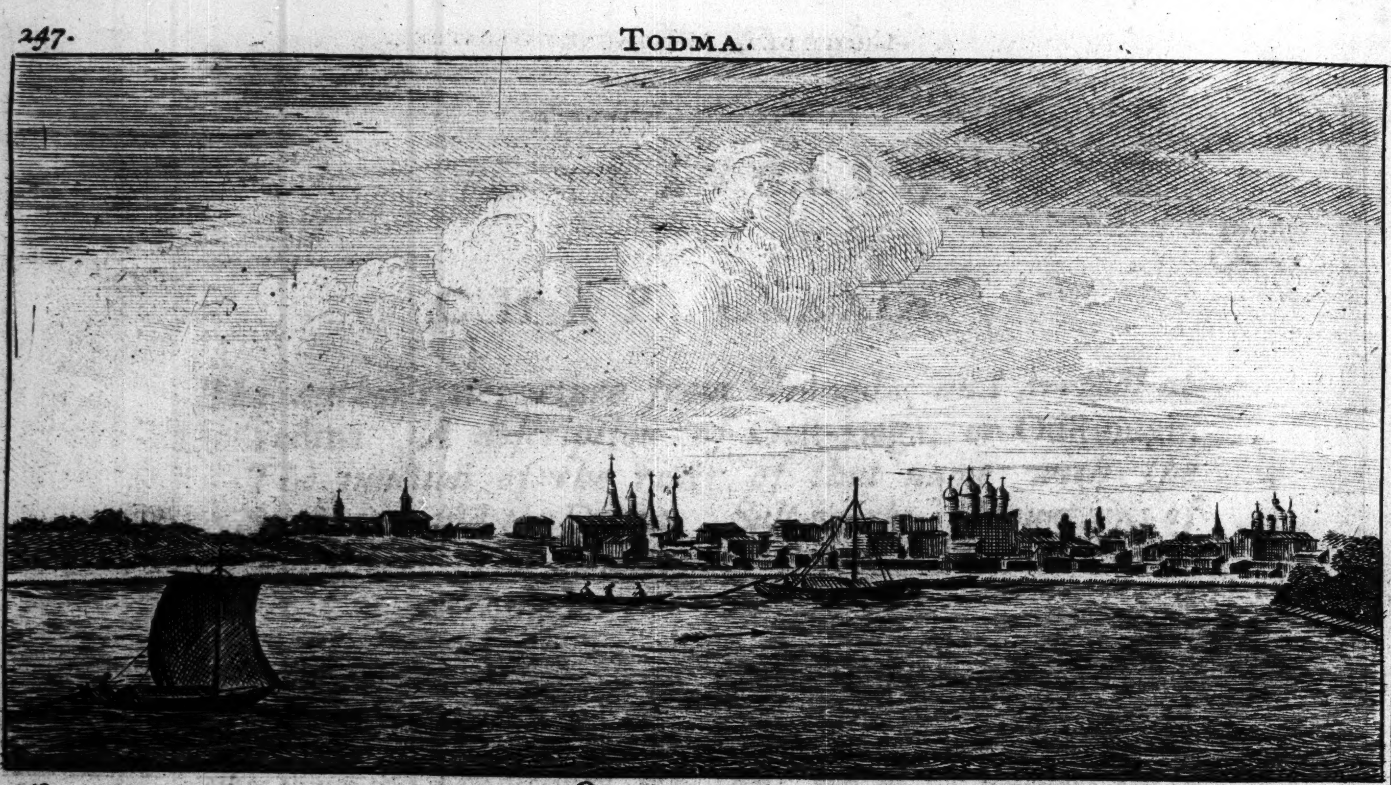
His arrival at Todma.

I SET out from *Wologda* on the 17th of *June*, after I had provided myſelf with a bark, and all other things that were neceſſary. We proceeded at firſt to the ſouth, and then to the eaſt, through a channel bordered with little woods on each ſide, and after we had advanced twenty *werſtes*, we came to the river *Soegna*, or *Suchana*, into which the *Wologda*, which is not ſo large a river, diſcharges its ſtreams. On the 18th we ſet up a ſail made of mats, and ſteered to the eaſt, and afterward to the ſouth, paſſing by a timber-yard, where the ſhips that tranſport mercantile goods from *Wologda* to *Archangel*, are built, and the bank was covered with fir-trees. On the 19th we kept on to the eaſt, and I landed on a ſpot of ground that was filled with a growth of wild ſtrawberries, and raſberries, flowers, and roſe-trees. This ſituation is in the northern latitude of 59 degrees, and 50 minutes; where the bank of the river riſes to a conſiderable height, and is ſhaded over with fir, birch, and alder-trees; and we there ſaw tracts of arable land, together with ſome meadows; and obſerved that the river flowed to the north, and then to the eaſt. We ſaw ſeveral fiſhermen in this place, and afterward paſſed by the iſland of *Jedo*, in which is a ſmall church, and we arrived in the evening at the city of *Todma*, at the conflux of the rivers *Suchana* and *Todma*. I drew the proſpect of this city to the ſouth-weſt, as it appears in plate 247. It is ſituated on an eminence near the river, and in the northern latitude of 60 degrees and 14 minutes. It is ſmall, and muſt be ranked among thoſe of the meaner claſs; and all the buildings are of wood. The diſtance from hence to *Ouſtiough*, is computed at two hundred and fifty *werſtes*. Near this city is a large mill, built in the *Dutch* manner, except only that it has but two ſails, which were partly broken. At the diſtance of eight *werſtes* above the city, we ſaw ſeveral large ſtones in the river, and they roſe above the ſurface of the water, but moſt of them are viſible only in the month of *July*, when the ſtream is low; but it was then two good fathoms in depth to our right. Several green tracts of land appeared in the middle of the river, but the ſouthern ſide is always navigable, and the channel is a hundred and fifty paces broad in ſeveral places. On the twentieth we came about noon to *Stare Todma*, which ſignifies *Old Todma*; and this is the ſpot where it was begun to be rebuilt thirty years ago, but the work was not continued, and it was built in the place where it now ſtands. I could eaſily read here at midnight, without a candle; whereas when I left *Wologda*, there was no travelling later than ten at night. We paſſed on the 21ſt by *Apocko*, which is a large town, ſituated on each ſide of the river, and there is a fine church in it, with a ſteeple and domes covered with tin. The ſoil of the country around it is fertile, and produces corn: It likewiſe preſents the eye with very delightful views. People

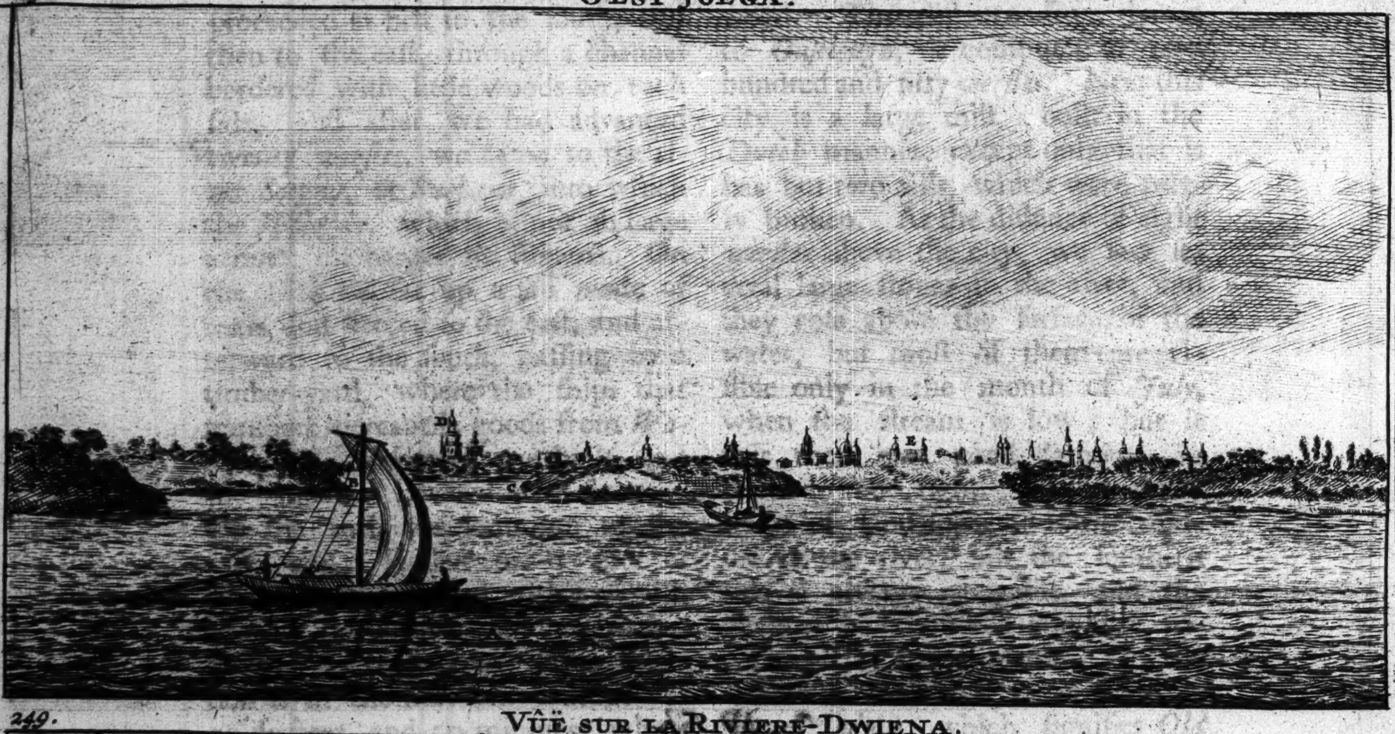
were

7 AP 53

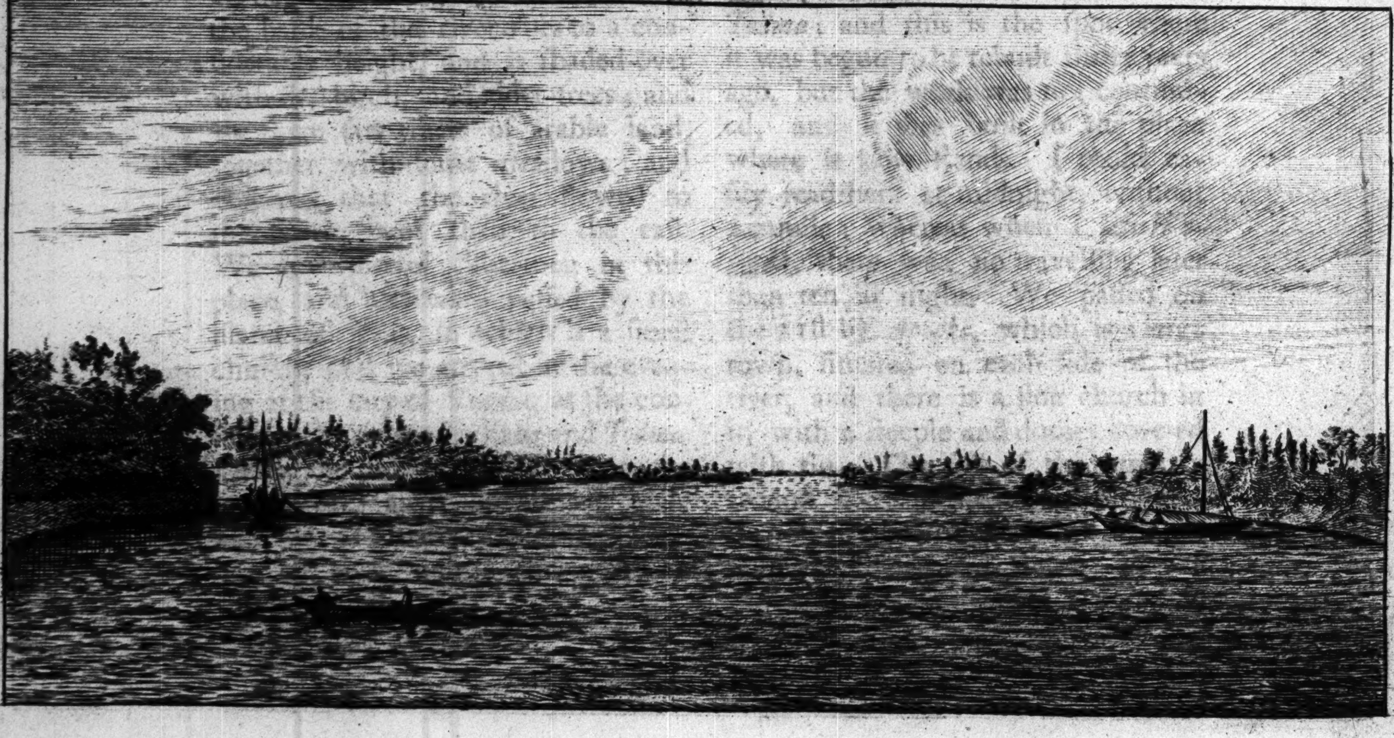
247. TODMA.

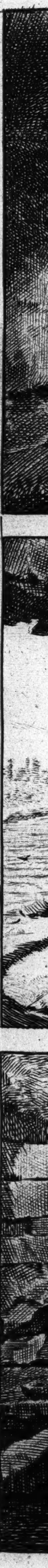


248. OEST-JOEGA.

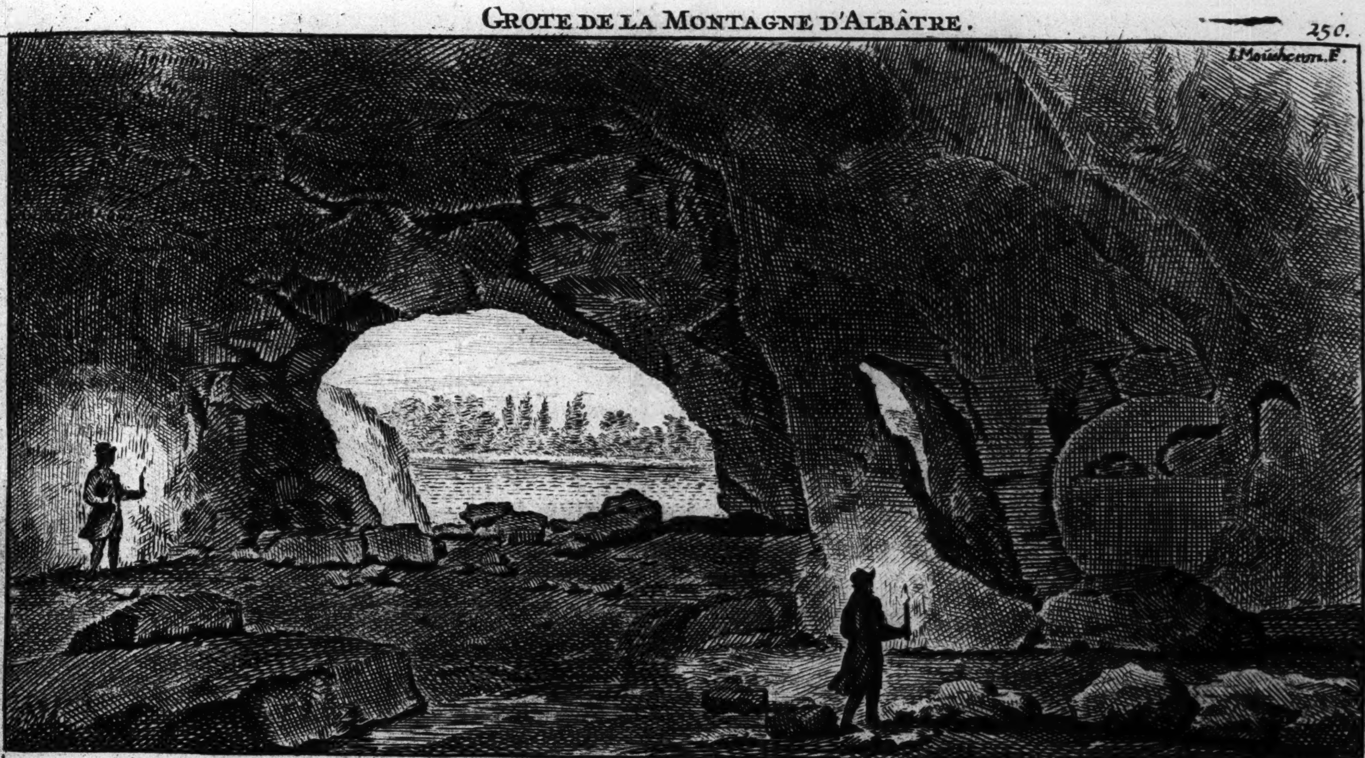


249. VÛË SUR LA RIVIERE-DWIENA.

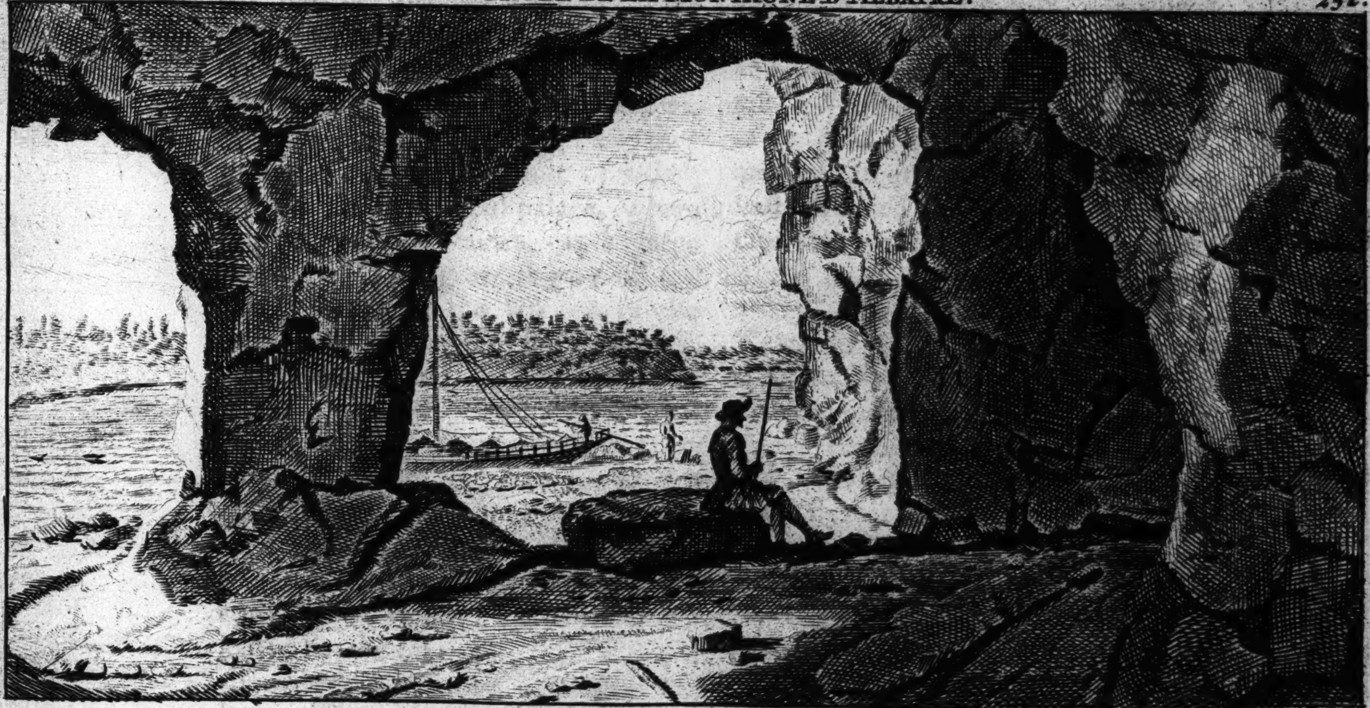




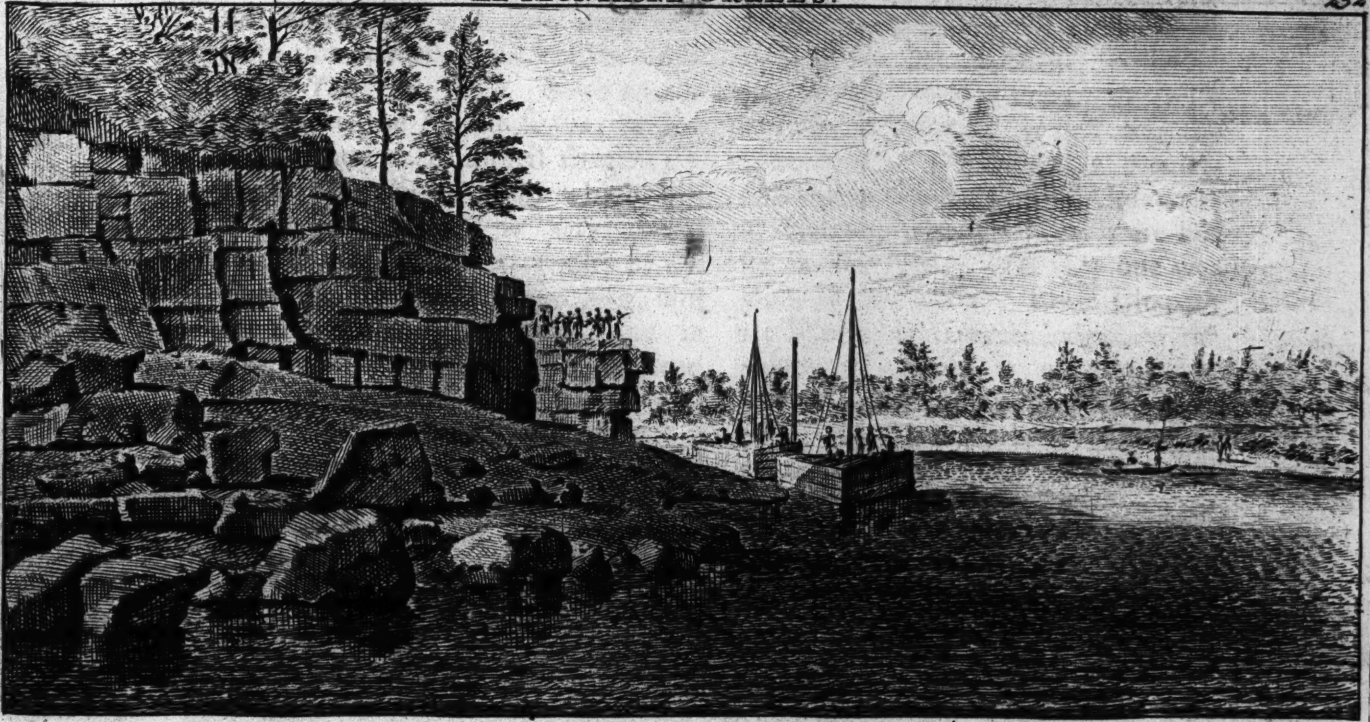
GROTE DE LA MONTAGNE D'ALBÂTRE. 250.


I.Moucheron.F.

GROTE DE LA MONTAGNE D'ALBÂTRE. 251.



LE MONTAGNE ORLEES. 252.



7 AP 53

were here employed in conveying wood to the bank, where ſeveral lime-kilns are erected. This part of the country is full of villages; the land likewiſe is very low, and abounds with corn. The river produces plenty of fiſh, and is a good *werſte* in breadth. About eight in the evening we paſſed by the monaſtery of *Dereefne*, which is built of wood, and incloſed with a wall of the ſame ſubſtance. From hence we could ſee the city of *Oeſt-joega*, or *Ouſtiough*, which makes a very conſiderable appearance in that quarter, and we arrived thither in the ſpace of an hour. This city is five hundred *werſtes* from *Archangel*, and has ten or twelves churches, all built of white ſtone, except the domes, two of which are cover'd with tin, as are likewiſe the little ſteeples. All the other churches, together with the houſes, are built of wood, and the archiepiſcopal palace, where the archbiſhop reſides, is a large ſtructure: The greateſt part of the city is ſeated on the left ſide of the river, and there is a ſtone church, and two of wood, in that part of it which is on the other ſide. That on the left extends along the river in the form of a half moon: It is a good league in length, and a quarter of a league in breadth, in ſome places, and the breadth of the river is equal to a *werſte*. After one has paſſed by the city, the river turns to the ſouth-eaſt, and the land lies low. The monaſtery of *Troyts* is not above half a league ſouth-eaſt from this flexure of the ſtream. The river *Joeg*, or *Jugh*, flows ſouthward into the *Nieſna-ſoegna*, or *Suchana*; and their united ſtreams are then called the *Dwina*, which ſignifies junction. The city therefore is ſeated at the extremity of the *Suchana*, the outlet of the *Joeg*, and the mouth of the *Dwina*; and in the northern latitude of 61 degrees, and 15 minutes. The *Joeg* flows from the city of *Glienooy*, which is forty *werſtes* from this place.

At Oeſt-joega.

The merchants in this city are very numerous, and great quantities of grain are tranſported from hence to all parts. I drew at midnight, and on the ſide of the monaſtery of *Troyts*, a proſpect of the city, which is exhibited in plate 248. The letter A ſhews the firſt opening of the *Dwina*; B the outlet of the *Joeg*; C the courſe of the *Suchana*; D, the monaſtery of *Troyts*; E, the city, before which is an iſland, and the continent is ſeen to the right and left. The *Dwina* is a league in breadth, at the city, and to the diſtance of a league beyond it, after which it contracts itſelf into the breadth of a hundred paces, but gradually enlarges its channel half a league lower.

On the 22d we continued our voyage to the north-eaſt, and paſſed by a village called *Czar Conſtantine*, and likewiſe by ſeveral others, and alſo ſome iſlands, and the monaſtery of St. *Nicholas*. The land is low, and extremely agreable. When we had advanced thirty *werſtes* from the city, we went to ſee the ſalt-works of the *Gooſt*, or officer of the cuſtoms, whoſe name was *Waſieli Groetin*. They are not far from the river, and conſiſt of four pits, in each of which are placed ſeveral trunks of trees hollowed through their whole length, and ſtrongly compacted together with cords. They riſe twelve feet above the ſurface of the earth, and are likewiſe ſunk to the depth of twenty ſeven fathoms below it. The water aſcends through them to the ſurface, from whence it is conveyed by pipes, to places appointed for its reception, and each pit is encloſed with a wooden building. I cauſed one of them to be opened, in order to taſte the water, which was extremely ſalt; and theſe four pits afford as much water as would fill twenty ſalt-pans, though there were but ſix in this place, and only one was uſed at that time. Theſe ſalt-pans are likewiſe in ſeparate lodges, in the middle of which is a large ſtove, and a great fire is kindled in it, when the ſalt is worked. The pans are ſquare, and made of iron; they have likewiſe a circumferrence of ſixty feet, and are a foot and a half in

Salt-works.

1708. in depth. The water is conſtantly boiling, for the ſpace of ſixty hours, in order to extract the ſalt, and when the water evaporates too faſt in boiling, the pans are from time to time repleniſhed with more. Each of them produce four *poet* of ſalt, which are equal to 1333 pounds. The ſalt-pan is raiſed over the ſtove, by means of large poles, and iron hooks, faſtened to the beams of the lodge. The uſual price for a *poet* of ſalt is two pence, but they ſometimes pay three at *Archangel*. The *Czar* has for ſome time entirely appropriated all the ſalt works to himſelf.

As we continued our voyage, we paſſed by ſeveral villages, as likewiſe a large bank of ſand, and an iſland two *werſtes* in length, and full of trees. From thence we advanced to the north, and came to the river *Wietſigda*, which is ſaid to have its ſource in *Siberia*, and it diſcharges itſelf into the *Dwina*, at a place where they are equal in breadth, the diſtance from ſhore to ſhore, both of the one and the other being a good half league. Theſe united rivers form, at the diſtance of half a league from their conflux, a kind of baſon, in the land to the ſouth, and it there receives the name of *Oſer*, or the *Lake*. It extends from the north to the weſt, and to the northweſt. There is likewiſe a little iſland in this part of the river, which is there two fathoms and a half in depth. The ſtream is rapid, and the banks are bordered with villages.

We proceeded, on the 23d, as far as the town of *Peremogora*, which has two ſmall churches, and is ſeated on an eminence along the river. The little river *Levele* flows by it, and extends itſelf ten *werſtes* up the country. The eye has here an unbounded view of the *Dwina*, which deflects into a number of windings in this place, and forms ſeveral gulphs like half-moons, and a *werſte* in breadth. This proſpect is repreſented in plate 249, and ſeveral banks of ſand are to be ſeen in that part of its channel. As we proceeded to the north-weſt, we every moment ſaw villages, ſituated in a beautiful country full of trees. The river is here very broad; it likewiſe forms ſome iſlands, and is two fathoms and a half in depth. On the 24th we ſaw a fine church, with a dome covered with tin, in a little village, about half the way from *Ouſtjough* to *Archangel*, and in the northern latitude of 63 degrees, and 10 minutes. We here ſaw a ſhip which had run a-ground, and ſeveral iſlands full of trees. We likewiſe had a view to the left of the little river *Pende*, which is very deep, and flows above forty *werſtes* up the country. 1708.

Mountains of Alabaſter.

On the 27th we found the ſhore very high and ſtony, and approached the mountains of Alabaſter, which are to the left of thoſe who advance northward, and we landed, in order to ſee them. The inhabitants of the country call them *Piſſoertje*, which ſignifies ovens, and the cavities from whence they derive that name, are ſo many ſubterranean grots formed by nature in a ſurpriſing manner. The principal entrance into them is by columns ſhaped out of the rock in the form of pilaſters, and there are ſeveral windings which lead into little grots. I advanced with a candle above a hundred paces, in one of the largeſt of them, and the natives pretend that it extends above thirty *werſtes* in length, though ſome among them are of a different opinion. I was very deſirous of proceeding farther, but the ground was too muddy. The openings into theſe ſubterranean paſſages reſemble gates; and I drew a part of them, together with a diſtant view of the river, in the manner they are exhibited in plates 250 and 251, where I have repreſented two vaulted openings, that one would imagine were ſupported by pilaſters, between which a veſſel is ſeen on the river, and the bank on the other ſide. There are other paſſages to the right and left, and ſeveral ſmall grottos, of no conſiderable length. The ſtones which compoſe them are as white as Alabaſter, but not but not ſo hard, and they are employed in very agreeable works. I preſerved a piece of one, as well as of the rock above it. This place is about 150 *werſtes* from *Archangel*; and the mountains, which comprehend a league in extent, may be ſeen for the ſpace of two hours, along the river, but there are no grottos beyond this place. The upper part of them is ſhaded with a growth of trees, and a large tract of arable land lies all around them.

After we paſſed by theſe mountains, a great ſtorm drove us to land; but we afterward advanced to the north-weſt, and the river through our whole courſe was a *werſte* in breadth. We proceeded on the 26th to the north-eaſt, with a contrary wind, and were towed along very ſlowly. Toward the evening we paſſed by *Stoepina*, which is a large town full of houſes; it has likewiſe a church with a ſteeple, and all the adjacent land is admirable. We came ſoon after to the mountain of *Orlees*, which roſe to our left; and ſeveral hundred perſons were employed in hewing out ſtones, and preparing them for the caſtle of *New Dwinko*, which is near *Archangel*; and to which they were to be conveyed in five veſſels which were made for that purpoſe. At a ſmall diſtance from this mountain is a little village, and ſome houſes on the other ſide of the river, where lime is made. When we had advanced ſo far, we proceeded to the north, but the mountain which is very lofty, and juts out into a point, turns the courſe of the river to the eaſt, and from thence to the north-weſt. The channel is not above fifty paces broad in this part.

The mountain of Orlees.

The mountain I have now mentioned is repreſented in plate 252. The ſtones which are ranged on the ſide of it reſemble a building; its top is covered with trees, and around it lies a tract of arable land. The river enlarges its channel, as one advances forward, and ſeveral other mountains of ſtone are there to be ſeen.

We came, about eight, to a *Cabak* *, which had been lately robbed by a ſhip's crew, whoſe veſſel lay by it, and they had been very inhuman to the people of the houſe, one of whom, who was a man, we ſaw breathing his laſt. The bad weather obliged us to anchor there all night.

We continued our voyage on the 27th, to the north-eaſt, and paſſed by a great bank of ſand, and a timber-yard which belonged to two *Ruſſian* merchants, who build a great number of veſſels there, and have a fine country houſe, ornamented with five little towers beautifully painted. We there ſaw a large number of villages on our right and left, and ſome iſlands that are inhabited. The nearer we came to *Archangel*, the longer the *werſtes* proved.

We ſaw the city of *Kolmogora*, about eleven, at the diſtance of a league and a half from us, and beyond the iſlands. Some time after we had a view of the monaſtery of *Nowoy-Preloetkoy*, which is built of ſtone, and on one ſide of it there are houſes on a mountain. The land riſes high, and the river of *Kolmogora*, which flows behind the iſland, diſcharges its ſtreams into the *Dwina*. On the 28th we ſaw ſome ſmall rivers, and ſeveral villages, at the diſtance of ten *werſtes* from *Archangel*, and had afterward a proſpect of the monaſtery of St. *Michael*, whoſe church is built of ſtone. From thence we continued our courſe till we arrived at the city.

The author's arrival at Archangel.

It is ſituated in the northern latitude of 64 degrees, and 22 minutes; and there were at that time twenty two veſſels in the road; namely thirteen *Dutch*, three *Engliſh*, five *Daniſh*, and one from *Hambourg*; but the next day two other *Engliſh* ſhips arrived there.

On the 9th of *July*, the feſtival which bears the name of his *Czarian* majeſty, was celebrated, and prince *Gallitzin*, who was then governor of the city, entertained all the foreign merchants, with a number of other perſons,

* *A public houſe where liquors are ſold.*

perſons, at the caſtle of *New Dwinko*. Several veſſels arrived here in a few days.

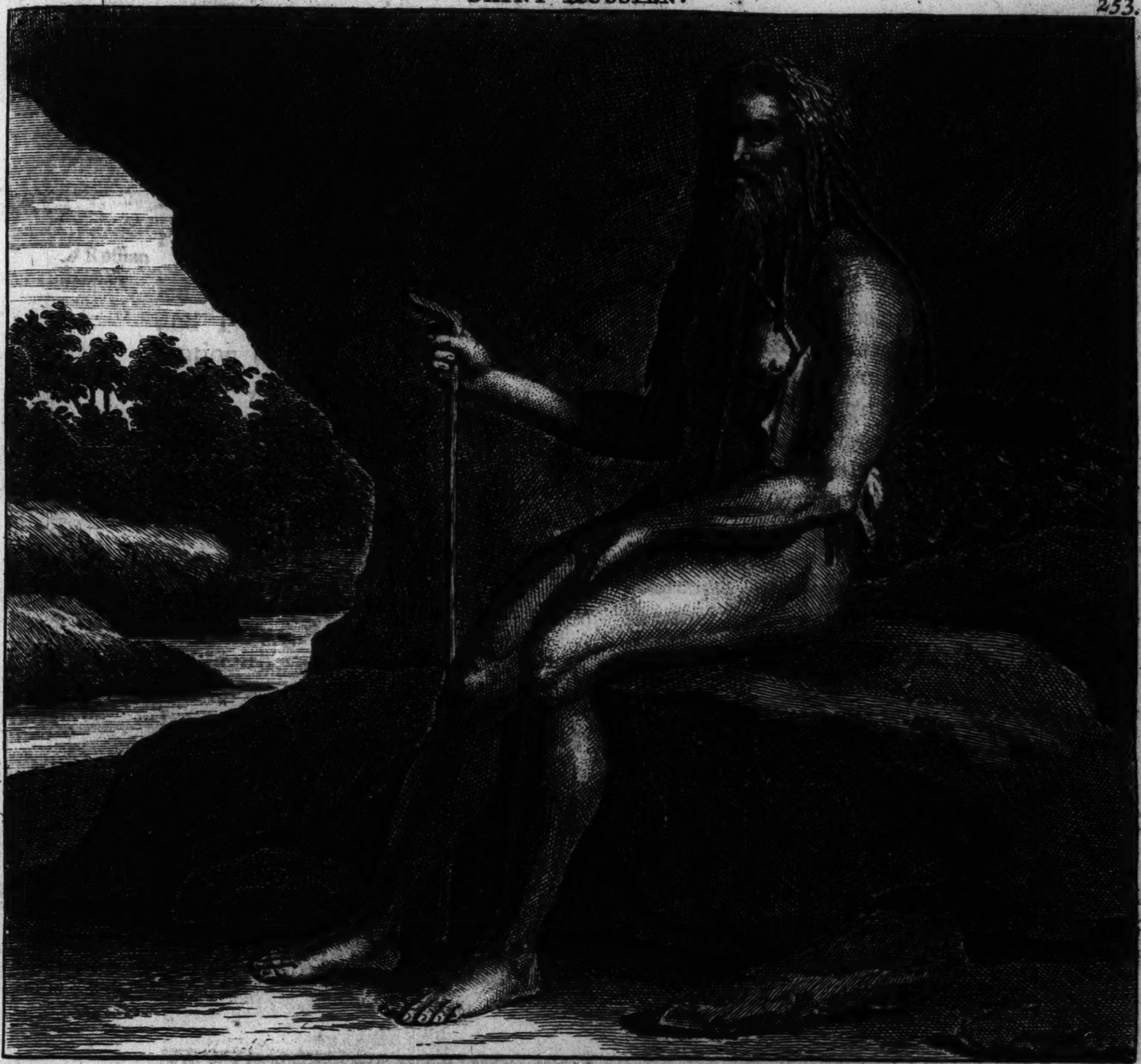
I was informed at *Archangel*, that the *Blew-Sea-Horſe*, a *Dutch* ſhip, which had ſet out from thence on the 8th of *October*, 1707, with a convoy, having ſprung a leak, the maſter was obliged to go in his ſloop on board the *Campen* man of war, which was commanded by captain *Van Buren*, in order to deſire aſſiſtance, and that while he was making this application, a ſtrong gale happening to riſe, the maſter could not return to his own ſhip. His men therefore deſpairing to ſee him any more, had taken a reſolution to ſail in queſt of ſome port along the coaſt; and after they had wandered in this condition, till the 3d of *November*, they approached the iſles of *Swetenpes*, where they caſt anchor the next day, having toiled beyond expreſſion, to keep the ſhip above water, by working continually at the pump, but they at laſt dragged the veſſel to land, where they paſſed the winter ſeaſon; and their proviſions having failed them at the end of five weeks, during which time they had not ſeen any living creature, they had ſubſiſted for three months on nothing but millet and tallow: While they were reduced to this extremity, they ſaw ſome *Laplanders* arrive in ſledges, but could not unfold their condition to them, ſince they were unacquainted with their language; and not finding any wood, they were obliged to uſe the planks of their ſhips for fewel, and drank nothing in all that time, but ſnow water; they, however, had ſaved what they could of their cargo, which chiefly conſiſted of leather; but after they had continued in this condition till the twelfth of *May*, ten of them reſolved to riſque a voyage to *Archangel* in a ſkiff; but having advanced as far as the river of *Pennooy*, they were ſtopped eight days by the ice, and did not arrive at *Archangel* till the third of *June*, having loſt three of their companions in their voyage: It was added, that theſe unhappy perſons, had, however, been ſo fortunate as to receive from time to time, freſh fiſh from the *Laplanders*, and made their millet ſerve for bread, till at laſt ſeven *Dutch* ſhips having arrived on the bank of the iſles of *Swetenoes*, the pilot of the veſſel which had been wrecked, ſent part of the cargo he had ſaved, and ſeven ſailors to *Archangel*, while he himſelf remained in the iſland, with two of the ſhip's crew, to wait for new orders, till at laſt the men he had ſent away, having returned with twenty *Ruſſians*, the reſt of the cargo was dried, and all of them then came to *Archangel*. I had all theſe particulars from the pilot himſelf, whom I invited to my lodgings, in order to be informed of the truth.

An unhappy ſhipwreck.

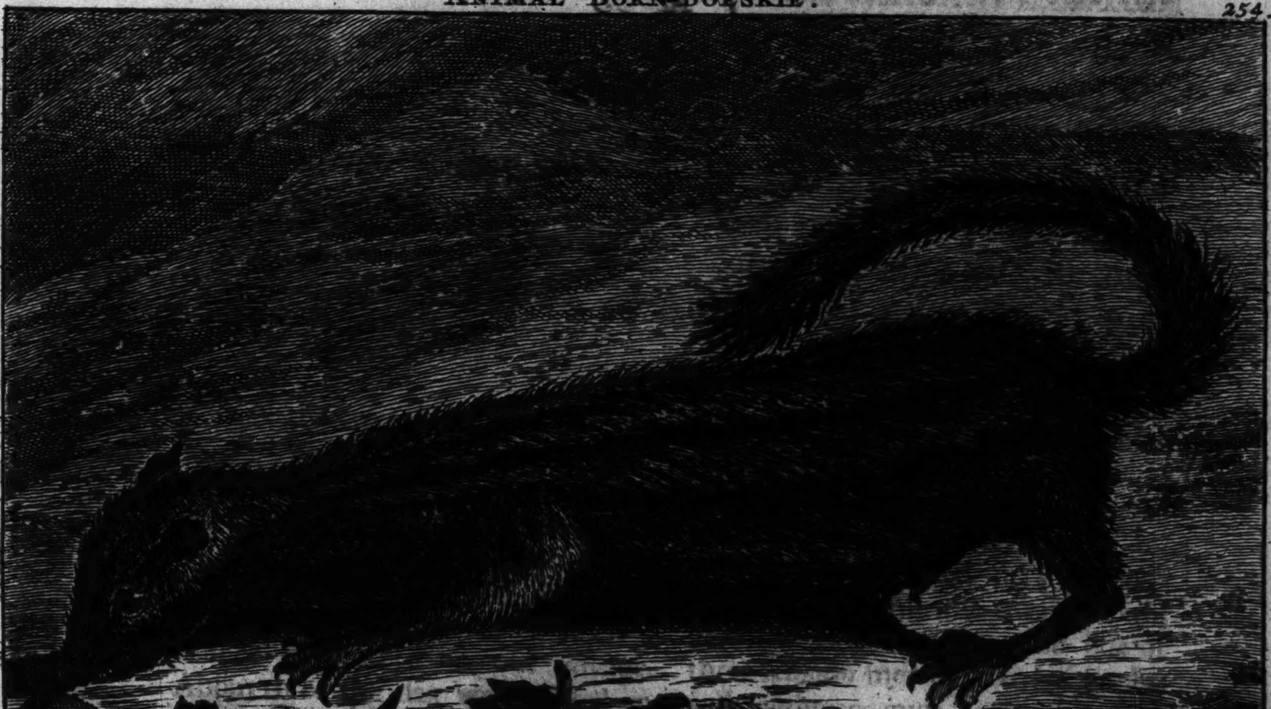
A Ruſſian *ſaint.*

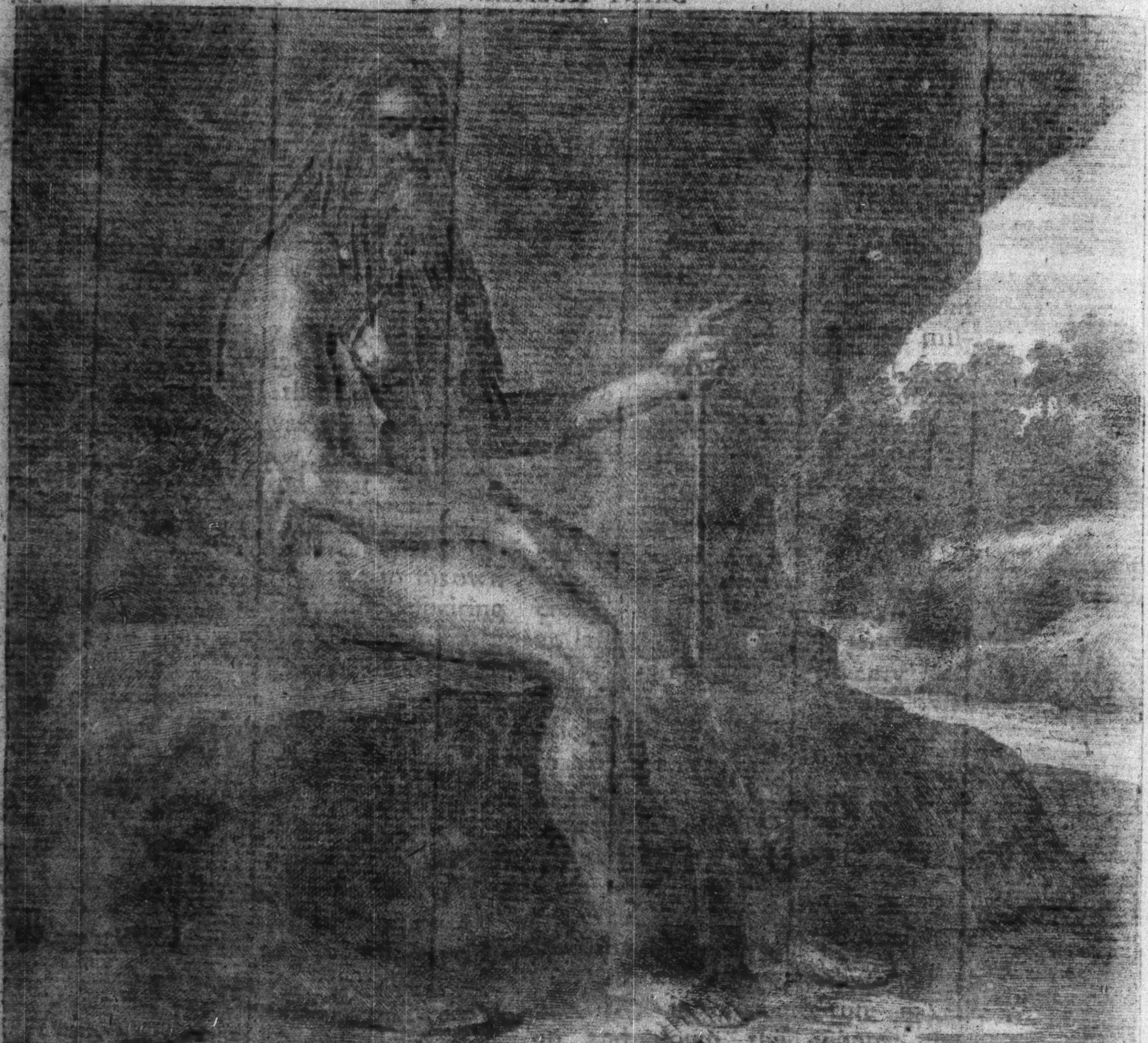
In this city was a *Ruſſian*, ſixty-ſix years of age, and he paſſed for a ſaint among his countrymen. He had been married, but quitted his wife, in order to run naked up and down the country, between this city and *Wologda*, and he frequently came to the market, and even entered the churches. He ſeemed very ignorant, and even deſtitute of tolerable ſenſe; notwithſtanding which, I am perſuaded that his whole intention was to procure himſelf a livelihood by acting the ſaint, and indeed he did not ſucceed amiſs. He ſometimes wore a ſmall cincture of net-work round his loins, but frequently went without any covering at all, and in this manner wandered about the country in winter, as well as ſummer. One of my friends brought him to my lodging, and I painted him juſt as he then appeared. He promiſed to come to me a ſecond time, but was not punctual to his word, and all my endeavours to procure another viſit from him were ineffectual; at which I was not a little ſurpriſed, ſince I had been very liberal

SAINT RUSSIEN. 253.

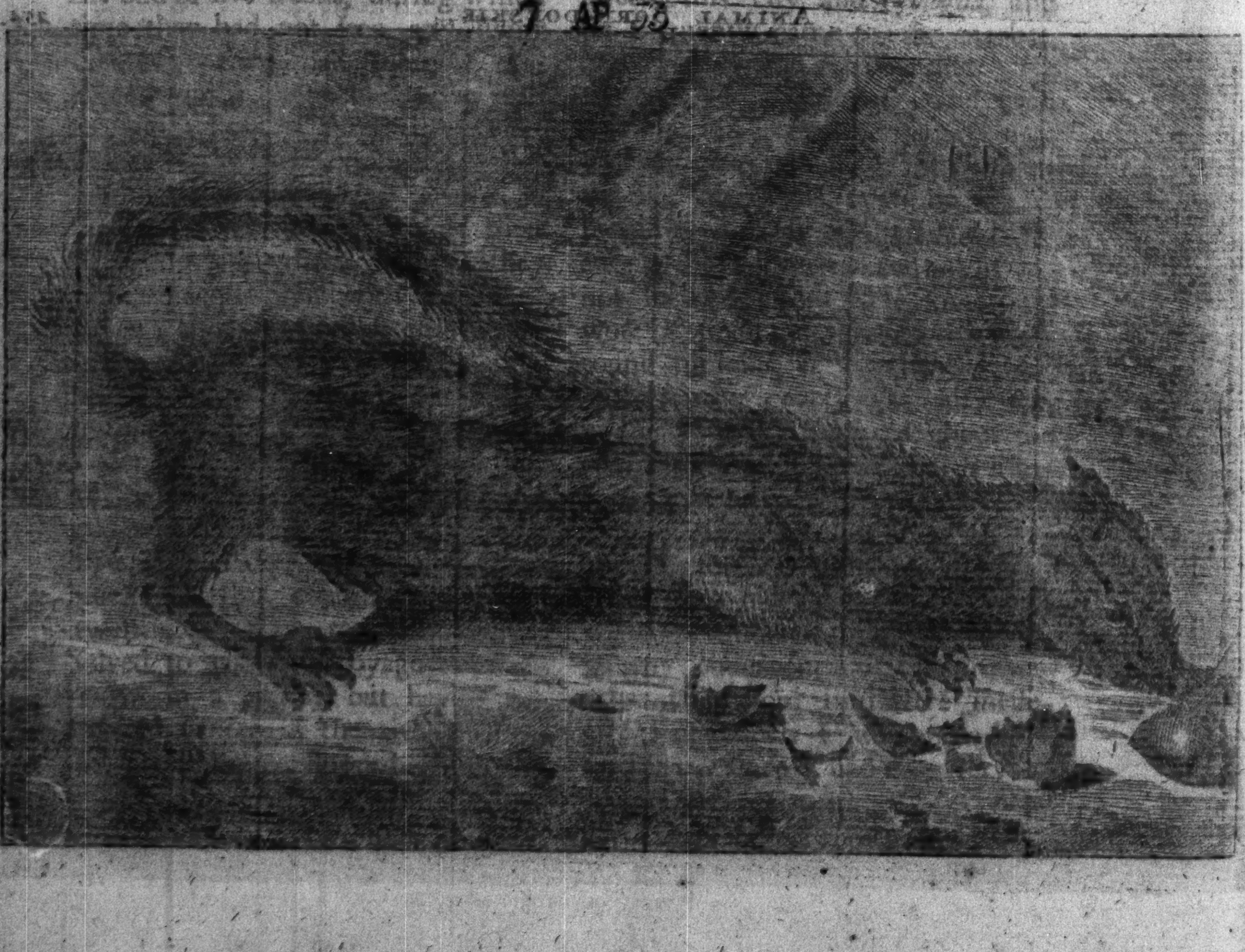


ANIMAL BORN-DOESKIE. 254.





7 AP 93



1708. beral to him. His hair and beard were matted into long twiſts, for he never made uſe of a comb. The reader will find him repreſented in plate 253.

A Ruſſian *animal.*

I had ſeveral little animals, called *Born-doeſkie*, brought to me, and I bought them, with an intention to bring them to *Holland*, but could preſerve none but the oldeſt among them. Theſe creatures reſemble Squirrels; but they are ſmaller, and have a grey skin marked with brown ſpots. They are extremely fond of raſberries, and will likewiſe eat bread, and crack nuts in a very agreeable manner, having long pointed teeth.

On the 25th a *Dutch* ſhip arrived, with a *French* Paſſport, and I was reſolved to finiſh my voyage on board that veſſel.

I went on the 13th of *Auguſt*, to congratulate the governor on the good news he had then received of the defeat of ſome rebels, who intended to ſurpriſe the fortreſs of *Aſoph*; but the governor of that city having routed and diſperſed them, they ſeized *Bolowien*, their own chief, who ſlew himſelf, upon which they ſurrendered at diſcretion, and brought his head to the governor. 1708.

Some days after, I made my application to prince *Gallitzin*, for leave to ſhip my baggage without having it ſearched, and he was pleaſed to grant my requeſt in a very obliging manner; giving me at the ſame time a writing under his own hand, to prevent my being expoſed to that inconvenience at *New Dwinko*.

This prince is a gentleman of politeneſs and merit, and much eſteemed by ſtrangers. He was formerly ambaſſador at the *Imperial* court, and readily came into all the manners of it. He likewiſe underſtands *Latin* and *High-Dutch* extremely well.

Before I ſet out from this place, news came of the victory obtained by the allies over the *French* at *Oudenard*, and it was confirmed by ſome tranſport ſhips, which occaſioned an univerſal joy.

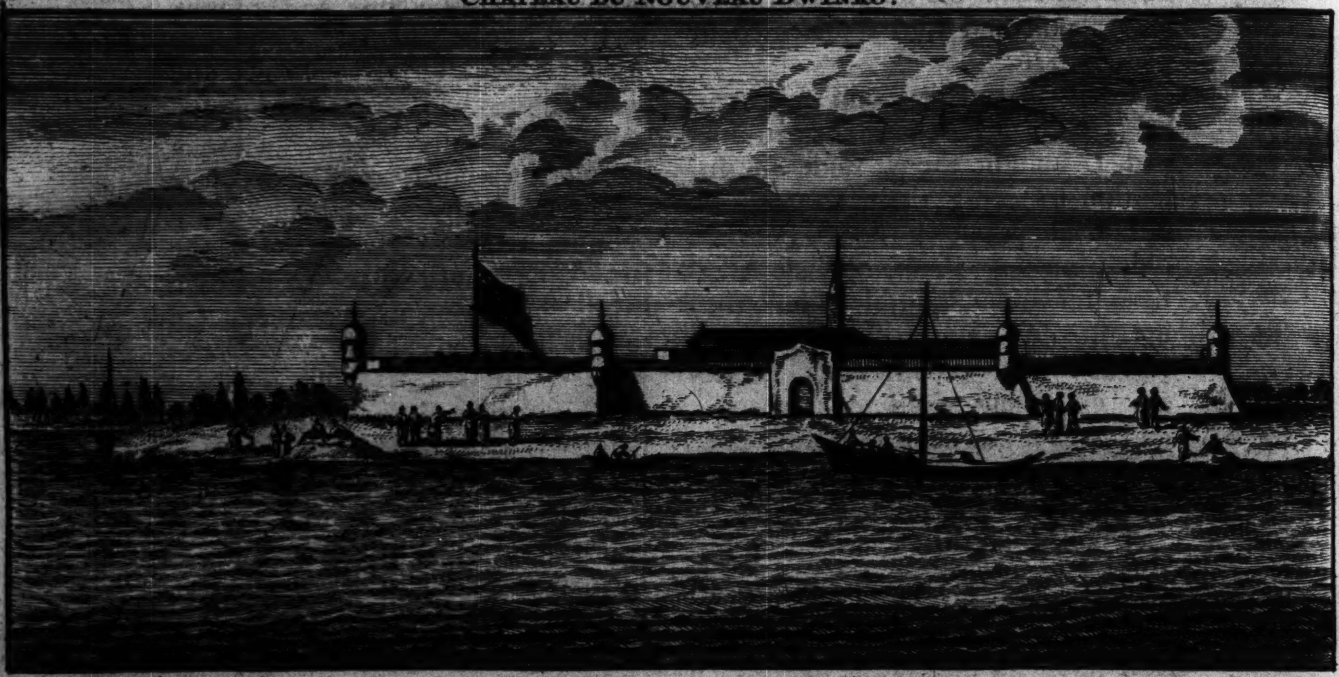
CHAP. XC.

The author's departure from Archangel. *The caſtle of* New-Dwinko. *The mountain of* Poots-fioert. *The northern cape. The iſlands of* Inga *and* Surooy. *The author arrives at* Amſterdam *and the* Hague. *The Concluſion.*

The author ſets out from Archangel.

ON the twenty third of *Auguſt*, I went on board the veſſel in which I was to ſail to *Holland*, and we came in a ſhort time to the caſtle of *New Dwinko*, where we caſt anchor, while our paſſports were examined, and till we had obtained a licence to proceed on our voyage. About three the flag was hoiſted on the caſtle, which is the uſual ſignal for veſſels to depart. There is a wooden bridge over the river, and likewiſe a draw-bridge, under which two ſhips may paſs at a time. I drew the caſtle as it appears in the following plate.

We were detained here by contrary winds, till the twenty ſixth, and then caſt anchor on the ſide of three *Ruſſian* men of war, of twelve and eighteen guns. On the 27th three others came up with us; and the next day we ſaw a fleet of about 150 merchant-men, with a convoy of nine



CHATEAU DU NOUVEAU DWINKO.

nine men of war, five of which were *Engliſh*, three *Dutch*, and one *Hamburgher*. The fleet conſiſted of ſixty-eight *Engliſh* ſhips, fifty *Dutch*, eighteen *Hamburgers*, three *Daniſh*, and one *Muſcovite*, which laſt came from *the Iſle of Bears*, laden with whale blubber. She had met with good ſucceſs in her voyage, and both the maſter and pilot were *Dutchmen*. This fleet employed the whole day in paſſing by us in a line, which formed a very agreeable view, and ſuch perhaps as had never been ſeen before in this part of the world. What appeared moſt ſurpriſing to us was, that this fleet entered the river without taking one pilot to aſſiſt them.

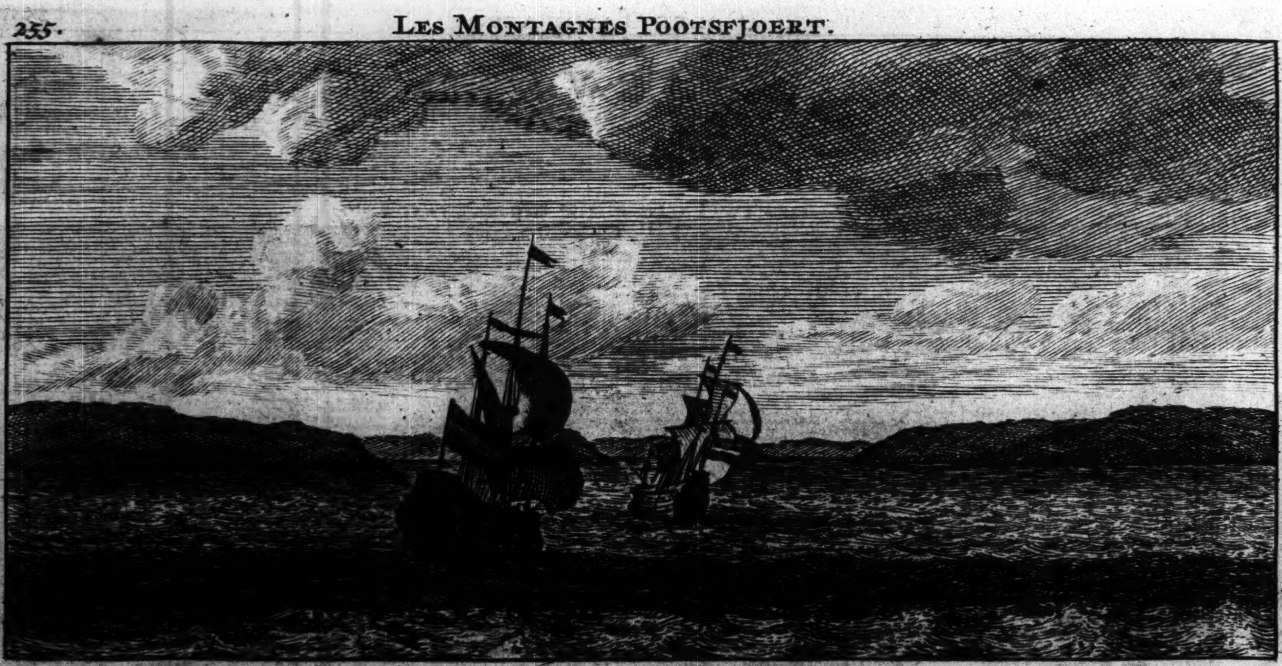
Among this fleet was a *Daniſh* ſhip of twenty guns, and a flag on her main maſt; and it had on board Monſieur *Iſmeyhof*, who had formerly been at the court of *Denmark*, in the quality of ambaſſador from *Muſcovy*. This miniſter immediately landed with all his train; and Madam *de Dolgerocke*, whoſe husband had lately ſucceeded Monſieur *Iſmeyhof* at the *Daniſh* court, embarked in the ſame veſſel, in order to proceed to *Copenhagen*, where her ſpouſe then was. This ſhip then lay at anchor in the outlet of the river, that ſhe might not be obliged to ſtrike her colours, which could not have been avoided if ſhe had advanced farther. There were ſome ſhips indeed which attempted to paſs without performing this ceremonial; but the *Czar*'s ſhips fired upon them twenty cannon loaded with ball, which obliged them to comply, and they were likewiſe compelled to pay above fifty florins for each ſhot; after which they all anchored before *New Dwinko*.

The White Sea.

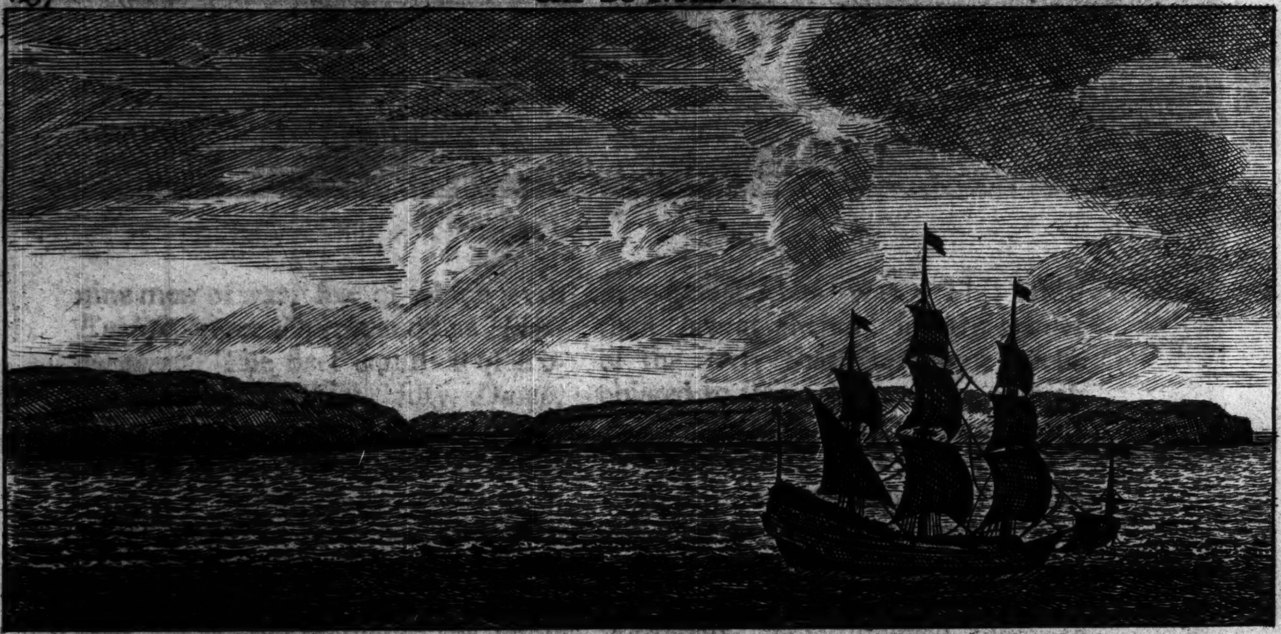
We advanced on the 30th into the *White Sea*, with a ſouth-weſt wind, and continued our courſe to the north-weſt. About noon we doubled the grey cape, but ſuch a thick fog aroſe, that we loſt ſight of the ſhips that accompanied us: But as it happened to grow clear toward the evening, we ſaw the *Laponian* ſhore, which we coaſted all night, and the next day, which was the firſt of *September*. The weather was then extremely fine, but we could not ſee any trees, houſes, or human creatures, on that coaſt. Our depth of water was then from twenty two to twenty ſix fathom, and we again

7 AP 53

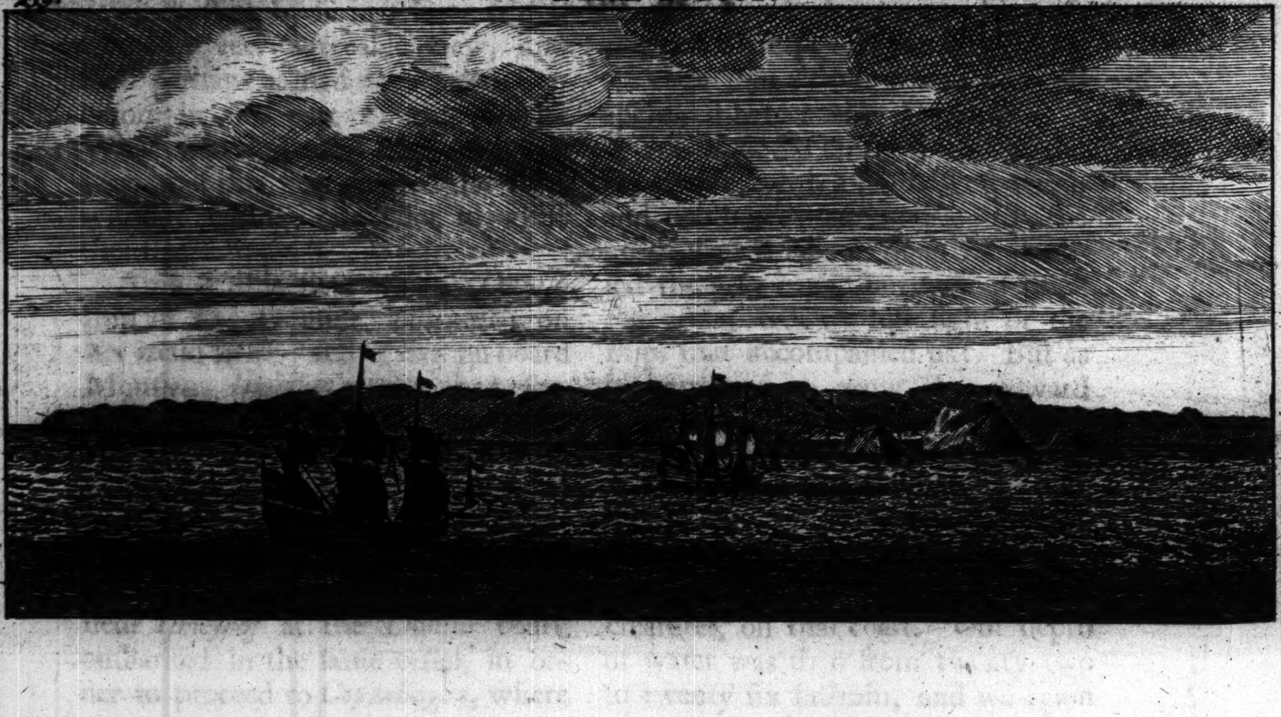
255. LES MONTAGNES POOTSFJOERT.



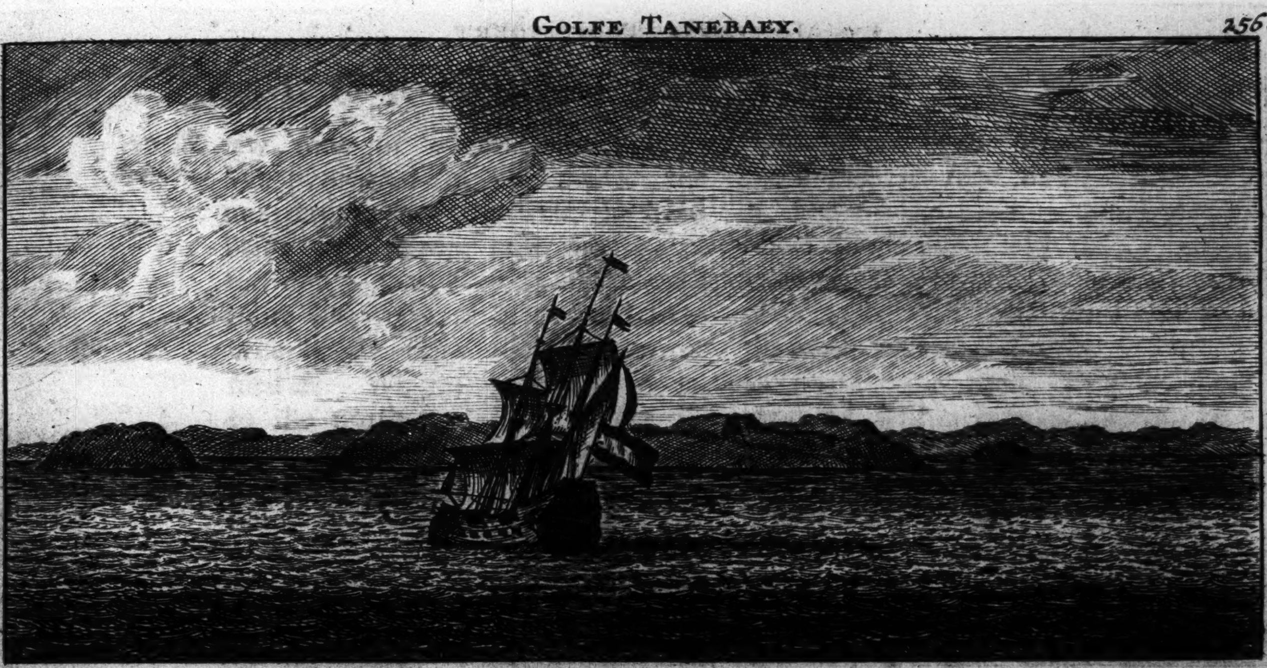
257 CAP DU NORD.



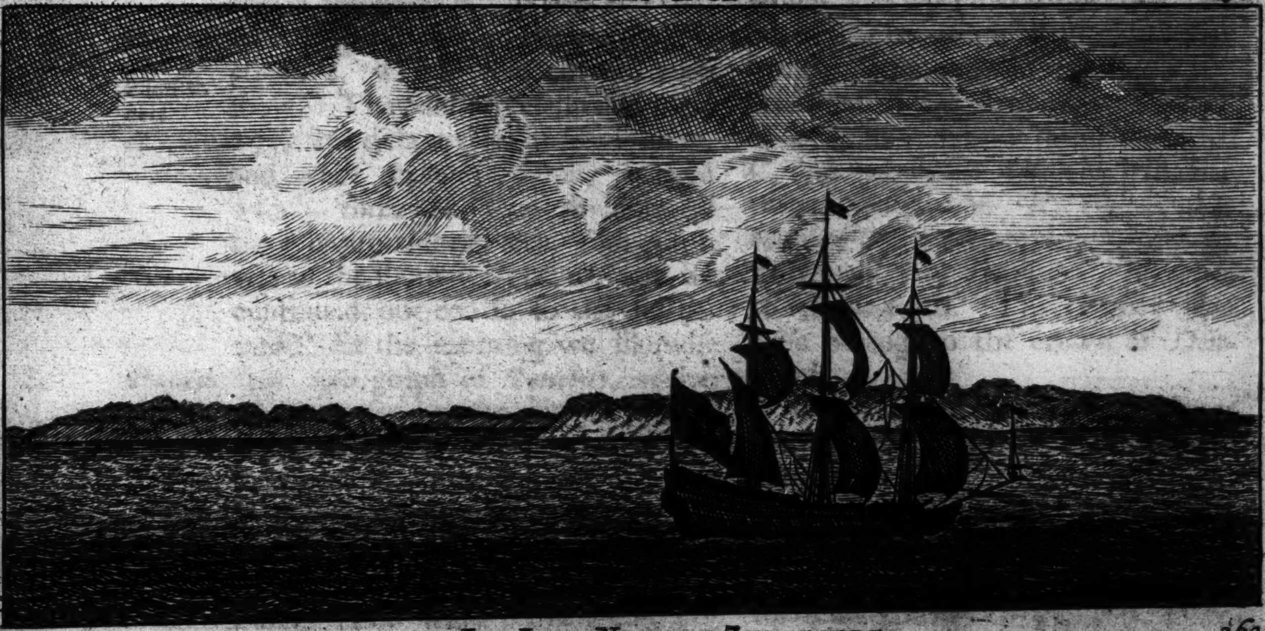
259. L'ISLE SUROOY.



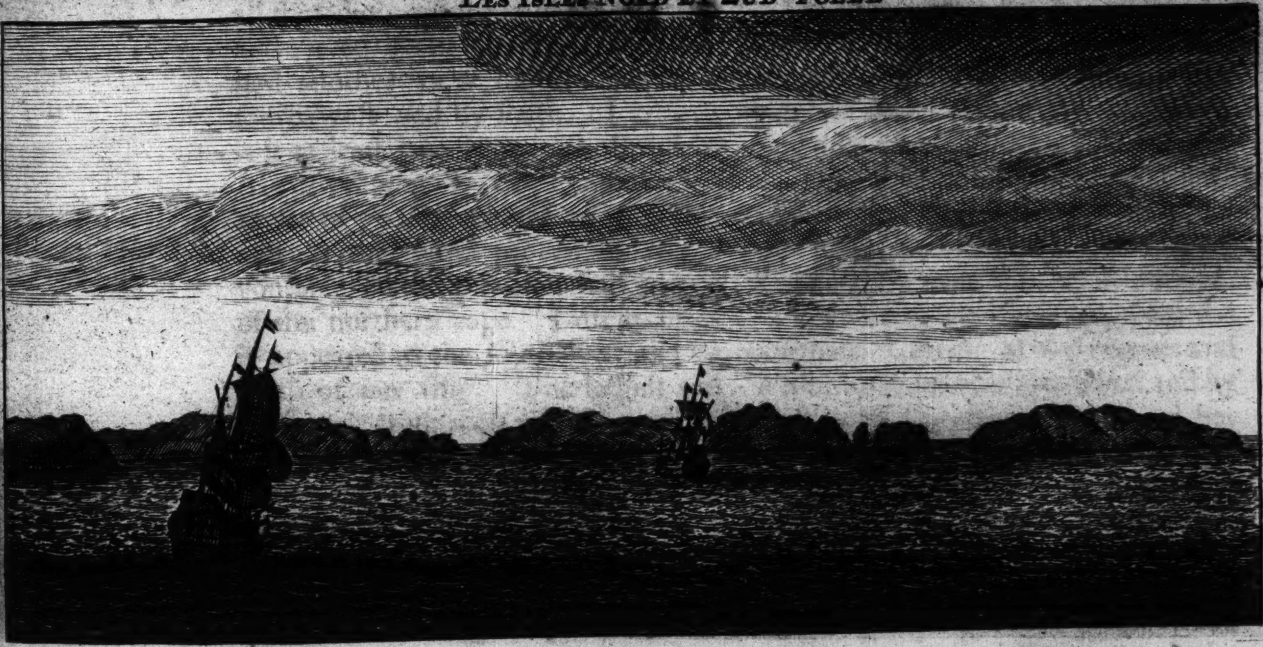
GOLFE TANEBAEY. 256.



LES ISLES INGE. 258.



LES ISLES NORD ET ZUD FOELE 260.



7 AP 53

1708.

The mountains of Poots-fioert.

The gulph of Tanebay.

ſaw nine of our ſhips behind us. We proceeded in our courſe the next day, to the north-weſt, the wind being very ſtrong, and the waves forming a great ſwell; and we once more loſt ſight of land, and likewiſe of the ſhips which accompanied us. We advanced, about noon, to the northern latitude of 60 degrees, and 50 minutes, near the iſland of *Kilduin*, which lay to the north-weſt of us, and is about ſeventy leagues from *Archangel*. On the fourth we had another view of the land, which had diſappeared. It belongs to the crown of *Denmark*, and is inhabited by the *Fin-markers*, who keep on the mountains of *Poots-fioert*, which were covered with ſnow. They are repreſented in plate 255, in a diſtant view of five leagues, and they have a gulph, behind which three or four diviſions of thoſe mountains are ſeen. This gulph was to the ſouth-weſt of us, and we continued our courſe to the north-weſt. In the morning we likewiſe ſaw the gulph of *Tanebay*, which advances far up the country, at a point formed by the mountains, and in the manner it appears in plate 256. In a ſhort time after we perceived other land beyond it, in the latitude of 70 degrees and 8 minutes. The wind proving contrary all that day, we ſtood for the *Offing*, and veered about; and the next day had another view of the gulph to ſouth-weſt and by ſouth. I believe it is at leaſt two leagues in breadth. About evening we came into the latitude of 70 degrees and 30 minutes; and as the wind proved more favourable on the 7th, we had a view of the northern cape. I drew it as it appeared to the ſouth-weſt and by ſouth of our ſhip. The largeſt and moſt projecting rock of this cape, is called *the Mother*; and the leſſer, which riſe to the right and left of it, have the name of *the Daughters*. The cape land is ſeen behind theſe rocks, together with an opening between them; and the whole is repreſented in plate 257.

The iſlands of Inga *and* Surooy.

About ſix in the evening we ſaw the iſlands of *Inga* on one ſide of us, and to the right a ſmall rock called *Schips-holm*, with the land beyond it, as the proſpect appears in plate 258. We then advanced to the ſouth-weſt, the wind being ſouth-eaſt, and came about ſeven in the morning within four leagues of the iſland of *Surooy*, which lay to our left, in the form repreſented in plate 259.

A large gulph.

Amidſt a range of mountains is a large gulph or bay, over which veſſels may ſail, and find an outlet to the left, between the mountains, which are ſeparated from one another. The gulph is diſtinguiſhed by the letter A, and another is repreſented at B. The weſtern point of theſe mountains is marked out by C, and ſhips may likewiſe paſs between the iſlands. All the inhabitants of this coaſt are fiſhers, and go to *Bergen*, and *Dronthem*, in order to ſell their fiſh. This country likewiſe belongs to the crown of *Denmark*.

Unknown iſlands of the North and South Foele.

We advanced next to the rocks or iſlands which are called *the North and South Foele*, or the unknown rocks, and which are not inſerted in our maps. They are waſhed by the ſea on all ſides, and ſome of them are entirely covered with ſnow.

On the 9th we ſaw a veſſel waiting at ſome diſtance, to ſpeak with us, but as we had a ſpeaking trumpet, we ſpoke firſt, without advancing any nearer. She had hoiſted her colours, and we ſaw ſhe was an *Engliſh* frigate from *London*, and ſhe was going with orders to the *Engliſh* ſhips which were then at *Archangel*.

Loeffoert

We came, on the 11th, into the northern latitude of 68 degrees and 8 min. and advanced ſouthweſt and by weſt, with a good northerly wind, being then not far from *Loeffoert*, which is about 250 leagues from *Archangel*, and at the ſame diſtance from *Amſterdam*. The wind having changed in the night, we ſtood to the *Offing*, and came by day-light into the latitude of 69 degrees 9 minutes; and the next

An eclipſe of the ſun.

An extraordinary phænomenon.

next day into 67 degrees 8 minutes. On the 14th, at half an hour after ſeven in the morning, there was a great eclipſe of the ſun, which was almoſt entirely darkened for the ſpace of half an hour, and at laſt was covered by a cloud. We were then in the latitude of 66 degrees 44 minutes, and had a favourable wind. The next day we found ourſelves in 65 degrees 55 minutes, with a gentle breeze from the north, and we then ſteered to ſouth-ſouth-weſt. During the night an extraordinary phænomenon appeared in the air, and ſhot out long beams of light to ſuch a degree that all the element ſeemed to be in flames, and one might eaſily read without a candle; but this appearance did not continue above the ſpace of two or three minutes.

The next day we had a contrary wind to ſouth-ſouth-weſt; and it continued with ſo much violence all the following day, which was the 17th, that we were obliged to faſten our rudder, and commit the ſhip to the mercy of God, having only our main-ſail and mizzen up, during all that and the next day; but the wind ſlackened in the night, and veered about to the north; upon which we directed our courſe to the ſouth, and came on the 19th in the latitude of 65 degrees, having been driven back four or five leagues to the north; but after this we had a contrary wind. On the 21ſt we found ourſelves in 64 degrees 14 minutes, and the wind blowing a very ſtrong gale in the evening, we had a violent ſtorm in the night: And as the darkneſs was very great, the extraordinary agitation of the waves made the ſea ſeem ali on fire. This weather ſtill continuing on the 22d, we were once more obliged to faſten the rudder, and were driven back almoſt ten leagues. On the 26th, we came into 62 degrees 30 minutes, with rainy weather, and the night was as dark as poſſible. On the 28th we came into 62 degrees 10 minutes, and the next day into 61 degrees 40 minutes.

An eclipſe of the moon.

That night there was an eclipſe of the moon, which began at half an hour after eight. The greateſt part of its disk was darkened an hour after, and the eclipſe ended about eleven. On the laſt day of the month, the wind ſhifted to the weſt, and we ſteered ſouth-ſouth-weſt, after having had a contrary wind for fifteen days.

The northern part of Hitland.

A little fiſh of an extraordinary ſpecies.

On the firſt of *October* we came into the latitude of 61 degrees 24 minutes, and ſaw the *Hitland* to ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, and at the diſtance of ſeven or eight leagues from our ſhip, which was then ſteering ſouth-eaſt and by ſouth. The next day we continued our courſe to the ſouth, with a weſterly wind, having always in view the ſame land to the ſouth-weſt, in the latitude of 61 degrees 9 minutes, and we were then about ſix leagues from the cape. On the 3d we came into 60 degrees 10 minutes, and the next day into 59 degrees 16 minutes, having the wind to the north, and directing our courſe ſouth and weſt; and we then ſaw four ſail of ſhips at ſome diſtance from us. We that day caught four cods, in one of which we found a ſmall fiſh, whoſe length did not exceed two inches: It had two fins on one of its ſides, and a third on its back, with very ſharp prickles. It was likewiſe thick ſpotted with yellow and white, that glittered like gold and ſilver. I preſerved it, becauſe I had never ſeen any fiſh like it. We found ourſelves at midnight in the latitude of 58 degrees 10 minutes, ſteering ſouth-ſouth-weſt; and about noon the next day in 56 degrees and 30 minutes. Our depth of water during the night was from ſeventeen to fourteen fathom.

On the 7th in the morning we came to the hether ſide of the dogger-bank, in thirty fathom water, and favoured with fine weather, and a fair wind. We then paſſed another ſand called the *Well*, from whence we ſaw, about four o'clock, ten or twelve ſail, which approached us about eight. They conſiſted of three men of war, accompanied by a victualling pink, and ſome galliots, from one of which we learnt that they were going to meet the *India* fleet, which was then arrived, and that they had met a *French* privateer the day before. As we advanced in company, we ſaw a hundred ſail at a diſtance, and likewiſe the privateer, who had hovered about in the night without daring to come up with us.

We began to ſee land about eleven, after which we paſſed by the buoys, and the remains of a ſhip which had been wrecked the preceding year, near *Helder*; and the next day we entered the *Texel*, from whence we proceeded to *Amſterdam* in nine hours, to the great ſatisfaction of us all.

I was informed, at my arrival there, that the curioſities I had ſent from *Batavia*, came ſafe thither the preceding year, and that the burgomaſter *Witſen*, to whom I have more obligations than I am able to expreſs, had ordered them to be kept in the *India-Houſe*. I likewiſe found letters here from the governor of the *Indies*, and my other friends; and was informed that the figure I had ſent from *Perſepolis* was ſafely arrived. I went from hence to the *Hague*, the place of my nativity, and arrived there the 24th. I was received with great joy by my relations and friends, who imagined I had been dead, as they had heard from all quarters.

The concluſion.

Nothing remains for me now, but to return thanks to Almighty God, for preſerving me by his good providence through the whole courſe of my travels; in the firſt of which I employed nineteen years, and ſeven and a quarter in the ſecond: And for having averted from me the dangers to which travellers are expoſed in foreign countries, ſo very diſtant, and ſo little frequented. I ought to teſtify my gratitude in a peculiar manner on this occaſion; ſince I have experienced all poſſible civilities, in my various journeys, and have likewiſe preſerved all the curioſities I had collected with ſo much care, and with no little labour and expence; together with all the plans and deſigns I have drawn, notwithſtanding the oppoſitions that were thrown in my way. I wiſh the public may receive this relation of my travels, with as much ſatisfaction as I experienced in preparing it for the preſs; ſince I hope it will be found to contain ſome particulars worthy of attention; and I may add too, that I have ſpared no expence, in order to render it agreeable and inſtructive.

REMARKS

OF

CORNELIUS LE BRUYN,

On the PLATES of the Antient PALACE of PERSEPOLIS.

Publiſhed by Sir JOHN CHARDIN and Mr. KEMPFER.

SOME Perſons of diſtinction and great learning, having intimated to me, that it would be proper to offer ſome light to the public, with reſpect to the difference between the plates which exhibit the ſtately ruins of the antient palace of *Perſepolis*, in the travels of Sir *John Chardin*, and thoſe which I have publiſhed on the ſame ſubject; I thought it incumbent on me to ſatiſfy the curioſity that has been created on this occaſion, and likewiſe to juſtify my own proceeding. In order to accompliſh this deſign, I have examined with the utmoſt exactneſs whatever has been written and publiſhed for a certain time on this ſubject; as well with relation to thoſe antiquities in general, as to each branch of them in particular; that I might make myſelf fully acquainted with all that has been advanced, either with inconſideration or ſolidity, and without reflecting in the leaſt on the reputation of thoſe illuſtrious travellers whoſe plates and ſentiments differ from mine; or pretending to derogate from their merit and learning in any other particular.

It is not eaſy to form an accurate judgment of the architecture of theſe ruins in general; ſince all the upper part of the edifice is entirely deſtroyed, and what remains of that below, are only ſeparate members, which have no communication or connection with each other. A better conception may indeed be formed, with reference to the nature of the capitals, and their ornaments, by thoſe fragments of the columns which are ſtill viſible, and I have drawn them in four different points of ſight, in order to form a compleat capital. As to the pedeſtals, they are of three ſorts; but the difference between them conſiſts chiefly in their foliage, ſince they are all round, and ſhaped in the ſame manner, as is evident by the plates I have here ſubjoined; in one of which an entire cornice is repreſented in the ſame manner as ſeveral others are ſtill to be ſeen, on ſome of the portals and windows of theſe celebrated ruins.

I was not inclinable to enlarge on theſe particulars in the account of my travels, becauſe I always hoped to find ſome perſon better ſkilled in the antient architecture than myſelf, and intended to take that opportunity of inſtructing myſelf, ſo as to be able to treat of this ſubject agreeably to the rules of art; but as yet I have not had the good fortune to ſucceed in my deſign. However, as I find it has been attempted by others, who have acquitted themſelves of that province in a very imperfect manner, by repreſenting things otherwiſe than they really are, either through their unacquaintedneſs with ſuch antiquities as theſe, and their unſkilfulneſs in deſigning, or elſe for want of employing a ſufficient time on a ſubject of this nature, or contenting themſelves with making inaccurate ſketches, which they afterward were unable to correct; or laſtly, becauſe they employed ſome mercenary draughtſmen, as was the caſe of Sir *John Chardin*, who could not draw himſelf, as he acknowledges in his writings, and has likewiſe aſſured me in converſation. I therefore thought it incumbent on me to point out the miſtakes they have committed, and likewiſe to juſtify what I have advanced in my preface, with relation to thoſe deſigners, who not being wrought upon by that ſolicitude for reputation, which is neceſſary for the diſcovery of truth, have committed egregious errors; and likewiſe with reſpect to thoſe who pretend they have drawn every thing with their own hand.

In the year 1712, a deſcription of the *Holy Land* was printed at *Amſterdam*, with the name of *John Balthaſar Metſcher* prefixed to it: But this author had ſo little regard for truth, that he has inſerted the plates of ſome cities of *Hungary* into his deſcription of *Judea* and *Paleſtine*. The plates I mean, are thoſe of *Tokkai* for *Tiberias*, and *Peter Waradin* for *Nazareth*, with ſeveral others that I could mention; and he has even preſumed to dedicate a work of this nature to no leſs a maſter of polite literature than the elector Palatine.

I ſhall now return to my ſubject, and begin with Sir *John Chardin*, who repreſents the firſt proſpect of *Perſepolis* in plate 52, almoſt like a platform, which may be taken in at one glance, and is nothing but mere imagination, ſince the lower part of thoſe ruins are viſible only in the manner I have drawn them. The ſtair-caſe of the facade ought not to have been elevated higher than the ſide-walls, unleſs it be to the right, where there is an aſcent to the columns; and the wall of the facade ought to have but half the height he has aſſigned it, in proportion to its extent. To this I may add, that moſt of the columns are out of their place, and he has exhibited five of them with only half their ſhafts, tho' in reality there is but one that appears in this manner. He has likewiſe miſrepreſented one half of the pedeſtals, as well as the animals which are carved upon the columns; and as the whole ſeems to appear in a level, the two royal tombs in the rock muſt conſequently be lower than mine, though they are certainly much higher than he has repreſented them. The mountain likewiſe ſlopes abundantly too much in that plate, and thoſe ſtone coffins which are exhibited on the left, ought to have been diſpoſed at the end of the facade. Theſe I have repreſented, together with the whole edifice, even to the ſmalleſt ſtone, in plate 117, and exactly in that point of ſight in which they appear on the ſpot.

The fifty third plate in Sir *John Chardin*'s work, is defective in the fore-view, where moſt of the conſiderable edifices, together with three buildings, and four other ſtructures oppoſite to thoſe, ſhould have been exhibited. All that appears on the two ſides is likewiſe contrary to truth, and the ſtones are drawn without any imitation of real antiquity. I muſt add to, that inſtead of the four pilaſters which are repreſented near thoſe edifices, there ought to have been but three; and they are not even diſpoſed in their proper ſituation. One is alſo wanting at a little diſtance, and thoſe beyond it have no reſemblance to the originals. The ſame may be ſaid of the laſt edifice in the back-view; and the inaccuracy is ſtill greater with reſpect to the ſtructure between that edifice and the columns, not the leaſt remains of any wall being now to be ſeen. The number of columns likewiſe in this plate is leſs by one than it is in the preceding; but he did not forget the five laſt coloumns, tho' the firſt of them to the right is undoubtly the higheſt of all; but it is there exhibited with all the faults I have pointed out in plate 119.

The wall of the facade of the edifice, which is repreſented between the two flights of ſtairs, in the fifty-fifth plate of Sir *John Chardin*'s travels, has more ſtones by one half in its height, than it ought to have, and they all appear equal, directly contrary to the original, and even to his own deſcription of that ſtructure. Thoſe of the palliers or perrons, which he has repreſented like thoſe of the wall, and to the number of 16, ought to have been very different from all the others, this perron being paved with large ſtones, in the manner I have expreſſed them in plates 120 and 124, where this ſtair-caſe, with its broken ſteps, and unconnected fragments, are exhibited in their proper appearance, without any addition or diminution.

Sir *John Chardin*'s fifty-ſixth plate repreſents two columns in their full dimenſions, and they appear with their capitals, as if they had been newly erected, tho' without ſupporting any architrave; whereas mine are delineated in a very ruinous condition, as may be ſeen in plate 121, and a large fragment of ſhapeleſs ſtone reſts on the talleſt of them, entirely agreeable to the original. Thoſe figures likewiſe of animals which that gentleman has exhibited in the front of the pilſters that riſe on the ſide of theſe columns, have no reſemblance to the originals, with reſpect either to the bodies and feet, or thoſe ornaments of the head which he has aſſigned them; the faces being all impaired to ſuch a degree, that they are hardly to be diſtinguiſhed; as he himſelf acknowledges in the fifty-fourth page of Vol. IX. The pilaſters are likewiſe repreſented in their compleat dimenſions, tho' they all ought to appear in the manner I have expreſſed them in the 122d plate of my travels.

The ſame figures are ſeen in the 57th plate, with the head and feet projecting from the front of each pilaſter, and the reſt of the body extending from the ſide, which is an abſolute impoſſibility, and the effect of mere invention; as are likewiſe the ornamented heads of men, which are there added. For my own particular, I have been careful to repreſent them agreeably to the manner in which I found them, and with the wing which is ſtill entire, and ſurpriſingly beautiful; I have likewiſe added all the ornaments, together with all that is broken and defaced in thoſe animals, and without omitting the three compartments of characters, as they appear in my 123d plate. It is certain that human heads ſeem to have been fixed on theſe winged animals, but I thought it ſufficient to repreſent them in the manner they then appeared.

With reſpect to the figures in Sir *John Chardin*'s 58th plate, I ſhall obſerve in general, that they are too diſtant from each other, and that the firſt of them which appears in the firſt range, ought to have had neither a collar nor chaplet, with which he has ornamented the breaſt and ſhoulders, nor indeed any thing of that nature: The left arm likewiſe of the ſecond figure ought not to hang down parallel with the body. The fifth figure is repreſented with a leg in each hand, and the ſixth is furniſhed with two buckets, which are meer invention, and not conformable in the leaſt to the original, where the five figures which follow the firſt have an entire ſimilitude with each other, and their arms are repreſented as ſupporting ſome particular habit. The dreſs and bonnets likewiſe which he has beſtowed upon them, are altogether as imaginary as the reſt, and all the heads ought to have been repreſented in a diſfigured appearance. The ornament, in the form of a vaſe, is expreſſed with the ſame inaccuracy, as is evident by my

126th plate. The firſt figure in the ſecond diviſion, diſtinguiſhed by the letter Q, holds an unknown machine in its hand, inſtead of a ſtaff; the lower end of which ought to reſt on the earth, behind the legs of that figure. The four which follow this are equally defective, and there ought to have been five, all habited in the ſame manner; for they are very viſible, tho' the heads and faces of them are impaired. The fifth ſhould have had a large ſtaff in its hand, inſtead of that which it is repreſented as graſping; and the animal that follows it ought to have had a bridle round its muzzle, and not round the horns, as Sir *John Chardin* has been pleaſed to repreſent it. The ſtaff likewiſe which the figure on the ſide of that animal places on its back, ought to have been much larger than it is: In a word, there are but ſix human figures in this range, whereas there ought to have been ſeven.

This gentleman has likewiſe exhibited ſeven figures in the third compartment; and the third of thoſe figures is repreſented with buckets, the fourth with a kind of bottles, and the fifth with the legs of a man; all which are mere fancy: And there ought to have been four figures in habits, which, tho' greatly defaced, are ſtill diſtinguiſhable. There likewiſe ought to have been eight other figures in this diviſion, five of which have large cinctures folded round the body; and the two laſt, which are on the ſide of the two goats, and are repreſented by Sir *John Chardin* with large ſtaves, ought to have claſped their arms about thoſe animals, which have only one horn riſing on the forehead, and are very different from thoſe deſcribed by him. I may add too, that theſe figures ſhould have been exhibited in a bending poſition, and not ſo high as the others.

Sir *John Chardin* is altogether as inaccurate with reſpect to the figures of the fourth compartment, where the firſt of them is repreſented with an unknown inſtrument in its hand; inſtead of which it ought to have had a large ſtaff. The ſecond likewiſe ſhould have raiſed its buckler to the head of the horſe that follows it, and whoſe feet ought to have reſted on the earth. I may add too, that the ſide figure ſhould extend the right foot before the left leg of the horſe, whoſe tail ought to have been repreſented in an erect poſition. The three following figures are as ill expreſſed, and there ought to have been four; the firſt of which ſhould have held a ring in each hand, and a flow of drapery ought to have been repreſented on the arms of the other three. The laſt figure in this diviſion, as exhibited by Sir *John Chardin*, has the legs of a man in its hand; the reaſon of which is incomprehenſible to me, ſince nothing of that nature was ever ſeen in the original ſculpture. The cinctures likewiſe, which are folded round the bodies of theſe figures, are too low, and the ends of them ought to appear.

The ſame gentleman has repreſented eight figures in the fifth range, tho' there are but ſeven in reality, and the third is not to be now diſtinguiſhed. The drapery likewiſe is defective, and none but the three laſt figures ought to have had lances; of which the firſt, who has likewiſe a buckler, holds one, and each of the other two graſps three with both hands. The halter of the ox, which is there led in proceſſion, ſhould have been fixed round the muzzle, inſtead of being faſtened to the horns, and the tail ought to have flowed down to the earth, cloſe by one of the legs, and the right leg of the two hinder ones ſhould not appear. In a word, the figure of this animal has no reſemblance with the original.

In the ſixth or laſt diviſion, Sir *John Chardin* has repreſented ſix figures, the firſt of which have each of them a quiver ſlung on the back, and an unknown machine in the hand; all which is mere invention: And indeed there ought to have been ſeven figures; the firſt of which, that leads the next in the train, ſhould have been repreſented with a ſtaff in its hand, and in a habit very different from that which appears in his plate. It ſhould likewiſe have been drawn with a cincture, the two ends of which appear in the fore part of the body. The five figures which ſucceed this ought to have been repreſented with bucklers, and very ſhort mantles; together with drawers deſcending to the feet. The fourth and fifth figures ſhould have been expreſſed with rings in their hands, and the ſixth ought to have graſped a trident. After this laſt, a horſe ſhould have followed, led by the bridle by a ſeventh figure, habited like the reſt. The feet likewiſe of this horſe ſhould have reſted on the earth, and its mouth ought to have been behind the buckler of the ſixth figure.

In the firſt diviſion of the laſt range, Sir *John Chardin* has repreſented a figure which holds the ſecond by the hand; the third and fourth have little buckets in their hands; the fifth carries ſome other thing, and there are two others on the ſide of a horſe harneſs'd to a chariot. This diviſion is to be found exactly under the firſt compartment of the firſt range, and at the foot of the ſtaircaſe, where ſix figures appear habited alike, in long plaited robes, and each of them graſps a lance with both hands. All of them likewiſe, except the laſt, have quivers hanging on their backs. There are ſome other figures before theſe, but they are broken and defaced to ſuch a degree, that their number is not to be diſtinguiſhed: We will therefore proceed to the five compartments that follow, and the reader may compare that which I have juſt mentioned (and where the horſe appears harneſs'd to a chariot) with the ſecond diviſion of my twelfth range.

In the ſecond diviſion, as exhibited by Sir *John Chardin*, are ſix figures, and a horſe with one of his feet aloft in the air, which is very different from my repreſentation of that compartment; the firſt figure in which ought to have had long and wide ſleeves. The hand likewiſe of that which leads the horſe ſhould have reſted on the body, and all the feet of the horſe ought to have been repreſented on the earth. I may add too, that the drapery of theſe figures has no ſimilitude to the original ſculpture. The three laſt figures likewiſe ought to have had their hands raiſed higher, and their heads defaced.

Sir *John*'s third diviſion repreſents nine figures, eight of which are in ſhagged habits, which are very extraordinary, and no way agreeable to thoſe that are to be ſeen at *Perſepolis*. The middle figure has ſomething of a peculiar form in its hand, inſtead of the two buckets with which I have repreſented it.

His fourth diviſion contains no more than ſix figures, all habited in the ſame manner; whereas the firſt ought to have been different from the others, and ſhould be repreſented with large ſleeves, and a particular kind of bonnet. The others ought to have plaited drawers, falling down to the middle of the leg: The bunches likewiſe which riſe on the back of the camel that follows, are out of their proper place, and too diſtant from each other: To which I may add, that the muzzle of this animal ought to reſt on the head of the laſt figure.

This gentleman has ſeven figures in his fifth compartment; but the firſt of them ought to have been repreſented with large ſleeves, and the ſecond and third with other habits. The ſcales borne by the third are too flat, and they ought to have hung by no more than two thick cords; inſtead of which he has allowed them three ſlender ſtrings. The fourth, which bears a vaſe in each hand, ought likewiſe to have been repreſented with rings. The ſixth ſhould graſp its lance with both hands, and the mule ought not to have been led by the bridle. The cinctures likewiſe of theſe figures ſhould have been raiſed higher.

The lion and the bull, which are to be ſeen in the ſame plate, have no correſpondence with the original figures. The bull is there repreſented with its mouth open, and turned toward the lion. Three of its feet likewiſe reſt on the earth, the other is reared aloft, and the tail ſeems to laſh the hinder legs of the lion. It has likewiſe two horns on the head; whereas there ought to have been no more than one, and that in the middle of the forehead. The mouth of this animal ſhould have reſted on its own body: It ought likewiſe to have been repreſented with a large ear, a bridled head, the two hinder legs fixed ſtrongly on the earth, the right behind the left; the left of the forelegs bent in the air, as preparatory to a leap; and it ſhould alſo have been exhibited as employing its horn in its defence. The fourth leg ought not to appear, the tail likewiſe ſhould have been diſpoſed between the hinder legs, and the ornaments on its body ought not to have been forgotten. The right leg of the lion ſhould be placed before the left; the tail likewiſe ought to deſcend to the ground, with the tip of it turned up; all which particulars are very different from Sir *John Chardin*'s repreſentation of thoſe figures; and he has ſucceeded as little, with reſpect to the talons, and the fore leg of the lion. This animal likewiſe ought to be exhibited, as fixing his fangs on the hinder part of the bull, and not in the middle; the head too, ought to have been repreſented in a different manner, and he has omitted all the ornaments. The height of the rock which appears behind theſe animals ought to be leſs by one half, and as wide again, with a work of foliage on the upper part. Beſide all theſe defects he has not repreſented the broken figures which are ſtill viſible on the rock of the ſtair-caſe, in the manner they are expreſſed in my plate.

I am apt to imagine, that the figures which appear on the ſtair-caſe, at the end of that gentleman's 58th plate, are intended to repreſent thoſe I mentioned in my obſervations on the ſix figures comprehended in his firſt compartment of the laſt range; but as I am not able to conceive how he came to be furniſhed with the twenty nine figures which are there repreſented, I ſhall not beſtow any obſervations upon them, but proceed to thoſe of his 59th plate. He has there exhibited forty two figures, among which 28 are repreſented with lances, and entire in all parts but the head, whereas it is very certain that the originals are greatly impaired, and there is not one entire figure (even among the twenty eight that have lances) whoſe drapery is diſtinguiſhable as high as the neck, nor have they any little bonnets, like thoſe with which he has repreſented them. But there is not one whoſe cincture is not viſible on the back part of the body, as is evident by thoſe very figures which I have exhibited, with all their defects in plate 127. The fourth figure of thoſe that follow the lance bearers, has neither hands nor buckler. The drapery of the ſixth ought to flow down to the feet, and the eleventh ſhould reſt its right hand on the buckler of the figure that follows. The fourteenth, and laſt, of thoſe which Sir *John Chardin* has exhibited, is habited in a different manner from all thoſe that are to be found at *Perſepolis*, whereas its dreſs ought to correſpond with that of the twelfth figure. I have likewiſe repreſented fifty figures in that range, though at the ſame time I have omitted ten, becauſe they were too much disfigured.

Sir *John Chardin* has repreſented on one of the columns of his 60th plate, the heads and upper-part of the bodies of two kneeling horſes; which is a meer work of imagination. There is indeed a ſhapeleſs maſs of ſtone, which ſeems to repreſent in part, the four feet and body of a camel, but very obſcurely, as I have drawn it on the ſame column in plate 152. It is likewiſe evident, by ſome pieces which are fallen down, that this animal had ornaments on the breaſt. As to the other column, which ſupports a fragment of ſtone, I have not ſeen any with a capital of that nature, nor any which reſembles that in the 61ſt plate of Sir *John Chardin*'s work, and which may be ſeen in the plate I have here annexed.

With reſpect to the three figures he has given us in plate ſixty two, it will be found, by comparing them with mine, in plate one hundred forty three, that the two figures which follow the firſt, ought not to have the head and ſhoulders touching each other: They are likewiſe greatly defaced, and the firſt figure ought not to have been repreſented with a ſtaff, though it might poſſibly have had one in former times; ſince other figures which reſemble this, are ſtill to be found with ſuch at *Perſepolis*. The beard of this figure ſhould deſcend no lower than the breaſt, which ought to be viſible between it, and the ſleeves of the figure, and the feet of theſe figures ſhould reſt on the earth.

The 63d plate of Sir *John Chardin*'s work, repreſents a pilaſter, which ſeems to be newly made, and the upper part of it is filled with ornaments, and figures of men and animals. The ſame pilaſter is repreſented in my 152d plate, exactly as it appears on the ſpot, and greatly impaired. The figure which appears before that which is repreſented as ſitting, ſeems to be ſpeaking to it, with a bending poſition of body, and that which follows it ſeems to be a man, and not a woman. The ſeated figures likewiſe ought to reſt againſt the back of the chair.

His 64th plate repreſents another pilaſter, as perfect as the former, tho' in reality it is greatly impaired, in the manner it appears in my 153d plate, and yet his draughtſman has placed on the ſide of it, ſeveral fragments that have fallen from it. The ſeated figure ought likewiſe to reſt againſt the back of the chair; and the draperies of the other figures are not conformable to the original. A judgment may be formed of the reſt, by comparing theſe two plates together. As I thought this part of the ruins extremely beautiful, I drew one of the largeſt and moſt perfect of its pillars, as it appears in my 163d plate. Sir *John Chardin* has omitted the ornament on the upper part of this pillar, and ſupplied the want of it with a work of foliage, that never appeared on the original.

This gentleman has likewiſe repreſented, in his 65th plate, three gladiators encountering as many different animals, and all in the ſame poſition; but they have no reſemblance to the originals, as any one may judge, who compares them with mine, in plates 130 and 146. Several of theſe gladiators are to be ſeen at *Perſepolis*; one of them encounters a bull with a ſingle horn, and ſtabs him with the right hand on one ſide of the pilaſter, and to the left of another. There is likewiſe another of theſe gladiators engaging a winged or horned lion, which he ſeizes by the mane. The laſt are viſible half way down the legs; but the others are buried in the earth up to the knees, in the manner I have deſcribed them, together with the animals, and the particular ſituations of the combatants, from page 14 to page 21. All which I have performed with the greateſt exactneſs.

Sir *John Chardin* has another ſeated figure in plate 66, which I have likewiſe repreſented in its proper attitude, together with the true form of a chair, and footſtool, in my 156th plate. Thoſe figures alſo which this gentleman has added, are exhibited in my 145th plate, exactly conformable to the originals.

We will now proceed to the royal monuments which he has repreſented in his 67th plate. The lower part of theſe tombs, as far as the cornice, is too lofty by more than one half; and the upper part, which reſts againſt the natural rock, is as much too low. The figure and the altar which appear on theſe monuments, are too near the corners, where the heads are diſpoſed, and the lions he has placed below, are leſs than the real number. A proper judgment may be formed of the whole, by comparing thoſe plates with my 158th, where I have expreſſed every particular with all poſſible exactneſs, even to the minuteſt ſtones, which are much impaired, and the ſmall elevation of the rock above the tomb. I have likewiſe repreſented in plate 162, the fine head, together with the ornament in form of a column, which appear on the ſide of this monument; and the ſupporters of the upper part of the edifice, are exhibited in plate 164. As the ſecond tomb, to the ſouth, is exactly like this, except its being more ruinous, I thought it unneceſſary to repreſent it.

Sir *John Chardin*'s 69th plate preſents to view the characters impreſſed on a window, and which are to be ſeen in my 134th plate; but the firſt line only of thoſe characters correſponds in part with mine; and indeed they may poſſibly have been taken from ſome other window. I am likewiſe as incapable of refuting thoſe that appear in the middle of that plate, becauſe I am ſenſible that ſuch characters have been carved in later times, as well as thoſe which I have repreſented in plates 135, 136.

We will now proceed to the dimenſions of the edifice in general, and the particular members of it that are moſt worthily to be conſidered. Sir *John Chardin* declares, in the 50th page of his ninth volume, that this auguſt ſtructure preſents to view an admirable facade of 1200 feet in length, and 1690 in depth, and that the circumference comprehends 1660 paces, to each of which he allows two feet and a half, or thirty inches. He then adds, that the wall riſes to the height of twenty four feet, but that the altitude is not equal in every part. He likewiſe affirms, that ſome of the ſtones are fifty two feet in length, as well around the ſtair-caſe as the wall, and that thoſe of the commoneſt ſize, are from thirty to fifty feet in length, and from five to ſix in height. He aſſigns to this ſtair-caſe an altitude of twenty two feet and ſome inches, and to each ſtep a breadth of twenty two feet, and a height of ſomething more than two inches; together with a depth of fifteen. He then adds, that this ſtair-caſe conſiſts of 103 ſteps, the lower flight of which contains forty ſix ſteps, and the upper fifty ſeven.

I have aſſigned to the facade which I have deſcribed in page 10. an extent of 600 paces from north to ſouth, and a height of forty four feet, each containing eleven inches; but it is lower in ſome places. The ſouthern front contains 390 paces, and the wall on that ſide riſes to the height of eighteen feet and ſeven inches; but is leſs by ſome feet in ſeveral places. The northern length contains 410 feet, with a height of twenty one, but this is not equal in all parts. Beſide theſe 410 paces, there are thirty more toward the ſlope of the mountain, and from thence another part of the wall is continued to the mountain itſelf. If we add to this the extent to the eaſt, along the mountain, which comprehends as many paces as the facade, namely, 600, this edifice will have a circumference of 2030 paces, equal to 5050 feet. And I found, on the upper part of the edifice, that the diſtance from the middle of the facade to the mountain, was exactly 400 paces.

On the parapet, which extends along the three ſides of this ſtructure, is a pavement compoſed of two ſtones eight feet in extent: But ſome of them are from eight to nine, and ten feet in length. Others are ſix in breadth, and ſome leſs. The principal ſtair-caſe is not placed in the middle of the facade, but toward the northern end, which is 165 paces from thence, and the ſouthern extremity is at the diſtance of 435 paces from this ſtair-caſe. The tract of ground, between the two flights of the ſtair-caſe, is but forty two feet in extent, and contains a depth of twenty five feet and ſeven inches to the wall, the ſtair-caſe poſſeſſing all the reſt. The inequality in the length of theſe ſteps does not exceed five inches, which are inſerted into the exterior ſtones, which extend to the ſide facade, and are of an equal length. Theſe ſteps are but four inches high, and fourteen in depth. The northern flight contains fifty five ſteps; but that which winds off to the ſouth has fifty three, which are more ruinous than the reſt. We may reaſonably ſuppoſe that a length of time has buried ſeveral of thoſe ſteps, with part of the wall, under the earth.

When the firſt flight of the ſtair-caſe has been aſcended, one ſees a perron, fifty one feet and four inches in breadth, and paved with very large ſtones; there are likewiſe two other flights, each containing forty eight ſteps; ſo that there are 103 ſteps to the north, and 101 to the ſouth. Here is likewiſe a ſecond perron, which contains twenty five feet in breadth, and is alſo covered with large ſtones, ſome of which are from thirteen to fourteen feet in length, and from ſeven to eight in breadth. Some are likewiſe ſquare, others long and narrow, and ſome very ſmall. This pavement extends thirty two feet along the facade, and the ſtones which compoſe it are joined together with exquiſite art. The reſt of the ground in this part of the ſtructure is very compact, and the facade riſes to the height of thirty ſix feet between the flights.

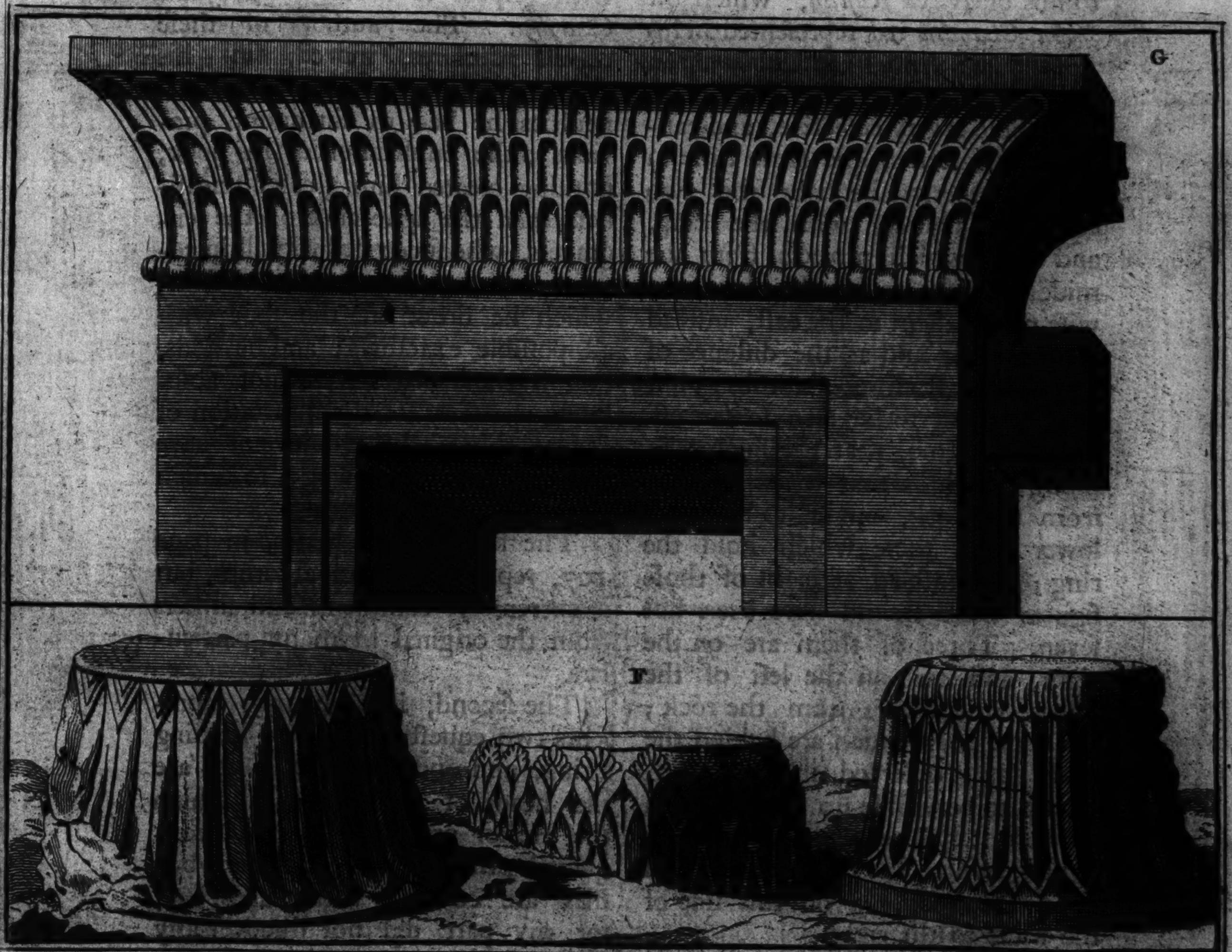
Sir *John Chardin* declares, in the 73d page of the 9th volume, that the columns which are neareſt to each other, are ſeparated by a diſtance of 25 feet; and that a ſpace of fifty feet lies between thoſe which are moſt remote from one another; each foot conſiſting of twelve inches. He likewiſe counts twelve ranges of ten columns, and adds, that *Figueroa* imagined there were but ſix ranges, with no more than eight columns in each range; from whence he concludes that there muſt be a miſtake in the figures, ſince he himſelf counted three ranks, with ten columns in each.

Theſe columns begin at the diſtance of twenty two feet and two inches from the ſtair-caſe where the figures appear, and they conſiſt of two ranges, each containing ſix columns; of which there is but one remaining. Eight pedeſtals, however, are yet to be ſeen, together with the cavities of earth in which three others were inſerted. They were diſpoſed along the wall of the ſtair-caſe, and at the ſame diſtance from one another, as the firſt is from that ſtair-caſe. There are likewiſe ſix other ranges of ſix colums each, at the diſtance of ſeventy two feet and eight inches from the former, and their ſpace of intercolumniation is equal to twenty two feet and two inches. There arebut ſeven of them ſtanding, but all the baſes, tho' ruinous, are ſtill in their places. One of theſe ſeven columns is in the firſt, and another in the ſecond range; the third has two; and there is one in each of the others. Eaſtward from hence, and at the diſtance of ſeventy one feet, were two other ranks of ſix columns each, toward the mountains; but four are all that are ſtanding at preſent; there are likewiſe five ruinous baſes, and the cavities of the reſt are ſtill viſible. It ſeemed evident to me, that theſe, which I frequently meaſured, were oppoſite to the twelve which were diſpoſed along the facade, as I have deſcribed them in page 13. I was likewiſe careful to examine every place where it was viſible that columns had formerly ſtood, and I found that their number amounted in the whole to 205. I was altogether as induſtrious, with regard to the figures, whoſe height I alſo meaſured. The largeſt of theſe appears only in part above the earth. The head is two feet and ſeven inches in height, and the hand, which holds the lance, is ten inches in breadth. There are other figures ten feet high, and ſome but ſeven feet five inches. Others correſpond with nature in their dimenſions.

Some are higher by two feet, and others are not ſo tall as a human body. The figures on the ſide of the ſtair-caſe are but two feet and nine inches high; and thoſe on the ſtair-caſe itſelf have much the ſame dimenſions. That which I brought away with me is but one foot nine inches and a half in height. There are ſome which are but two feet high, and others no more than one foot and a half. The number of thoſe figures, including human and animal forms, amounts to 1300, as I have already obſerved page 29.

All theſe columns are fluted in the ſame manner; the ſhafts of ſome conſiſt of three pieces, and others have four, excluſive of the capital, which is compoſed of five different pieces, and of an unknown order, which differs in every particular from the other five. The greateſt diſſimilitude between the columns is, that ſome have capitals, and others are without them. Their height is almoſt equal, their elevation varying only from ſeventy to ſeventy two feet, including the capital, which conſtitutes about a third part; and they are ſeventeen feet and ſeven inches in circumference. Thoſe, however, muſt be excepted which are on the ſide of the portals, and are but fifty four feet in height, with a circumference of fourteen feet and two inches. All the pedeſtals are round, and comprehend twenty four feet and five inches in their circumference; but the lower moulding exceeds it by a foot and five inches. They are four feet and three inches in height, and have three ſorts of ornaments.

The four ruinous capitals, which have already been mentioned, are repreſented, with their ornaments, in the following plate; and they are



marked with the letters A, B, C, D. The laſt is that of the column which is moſt entire, and is on the ſide of the two portals. On three of theſe capitals are large ſhapeleſs ſtones, which originally repreſented animals, but no certain judgment can be formed of them at preſent. The letter E repreſents a compleat capital, compoſed of the other four. The three pedeſtals which appear at the letter F, are drawn with the greateſt exactneſs from the originals. G repreſents the cornice of one of the portals.

I likewiſe found a fragment of a column that was not fluted, and it differed from all the others. It was twenty feet in circumference, and twelve feet four inches high; and we may conclude from hence, that there formerly were other columns like this.

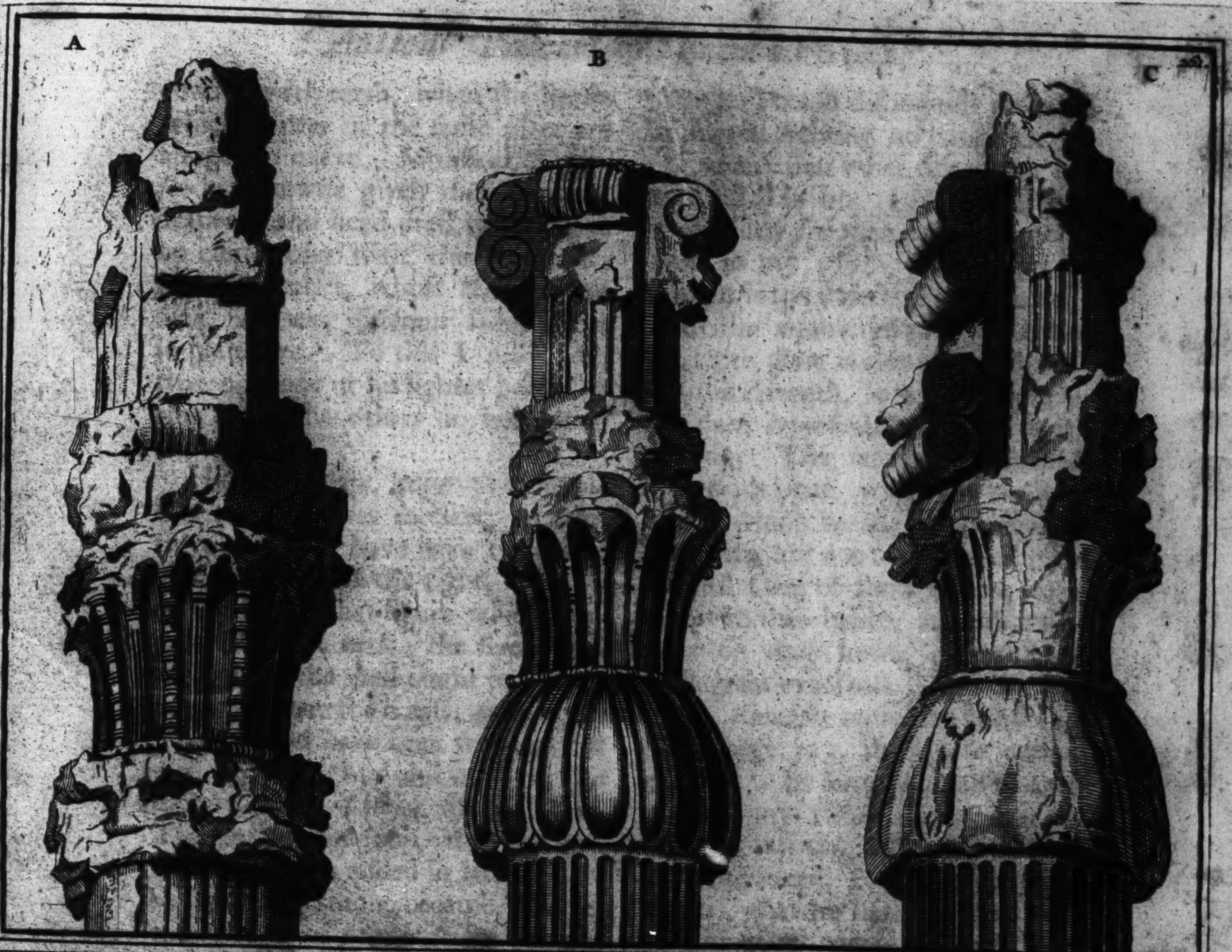
It remains that I ſpeak of the tombs of *Naxi Ruſtan*, which Sir *John Chardin* has repreſented in his 74th plate: And I muſt obſerve, in the firſt place, that the diſpoſition of the whole is very defective, and cannot be all ſeen at the ſame time in that manner, eſpecially the two equeſtrian figures, with the ring, and that which projects from the middle of the rock. He has likewiſe placed them to the eaſt, inſtead of the weſt, and at the diſtance of 330 paces from the tombs; but they are not to be ſeen ſo far off. I may add too, that the figures, among which is that which projects from the rock, ought to be much lower than thoſe which hold the ring; and inſtead of eight of thoſe figures there ſhould have been but ſeven. Three of them are on the right, and two on the left of the figure which riſes from the rock; but thoſe five, which are behind the wall, as I obſerved in page 33, ought to be viſible no farther than the breaſt. The ſeventh of theſe figures, which has the hands croſſed upon the body, is on this ſide of the wall, to the right.

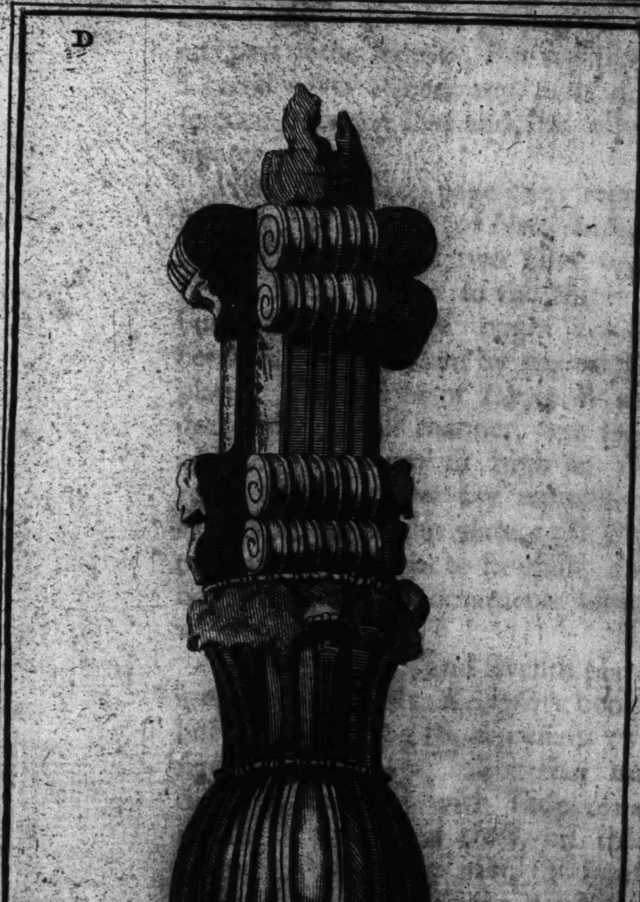
The ſquare edifice, which Sir *John Chardin* places beyond the laſt tomb, ought to front the firſt, and ſhould likewiſe have been exhibited with all the numerous and different apertures, with which I have repreſented it in plate 166. I have expreſſed the true ſtructure of one of theſe monuments, in plate 167. As to thoſe four repreſentations which Sir *John Chardin* has placed below the tombs, they are meer invention; and a judgment may be formed of them, by comparing them with mine, in plates 168, 169, and with my repreſentation of the two equeſtrian figures with the ring in plate 170.

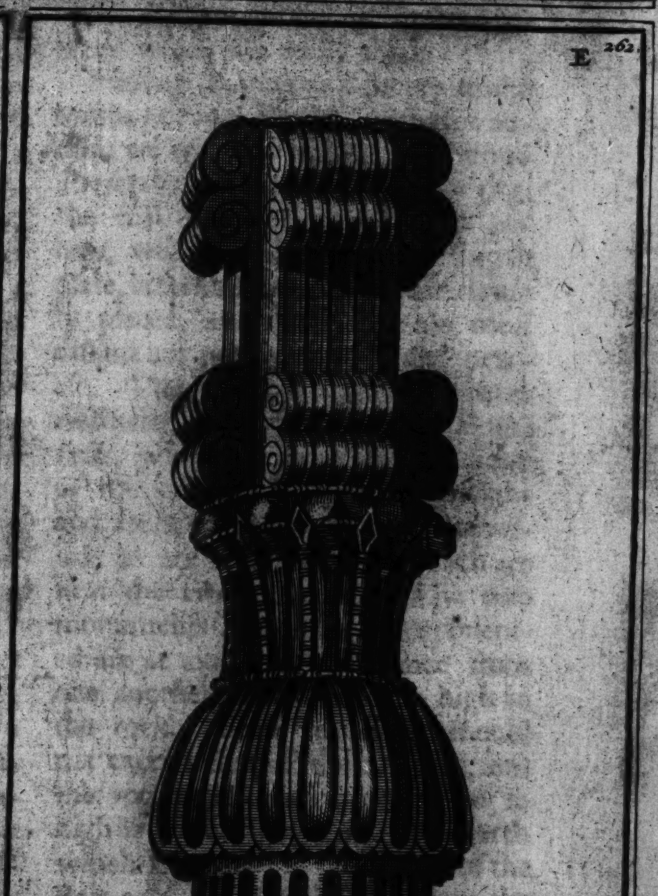
In the year 1712 another book of travels was publiſhed in *Latin* by Monſieur *Engelbert Kempfer*, and this work contains ſome plates of *Naxi Ruſtan*, and *Perſepolis*, which I have carefully examined, in order to diſcover their defects, with the ſame liberty as I have taken, and the ſame exactneſs I have obſerved, with reſpect to thoſe of Sir *John Chardin*. The author of theſe travels declares, indeed, in his preface, that beſide the various difficulties he had to ſurmount, previous to the publication of his book, nothing created him greater uneaſineſs than the ignorance of the engravers, who ſucceeded very ill in copying in little, thoſe original deſigns, which he drew on the ſpot with all poſſible exactneſs; and he adds, that if thoſe plates were not abſolutely neceſſary for the illuſtration of ſeveral things, he would not have inſerted them in his work; to which he declares they are a diſgrace.

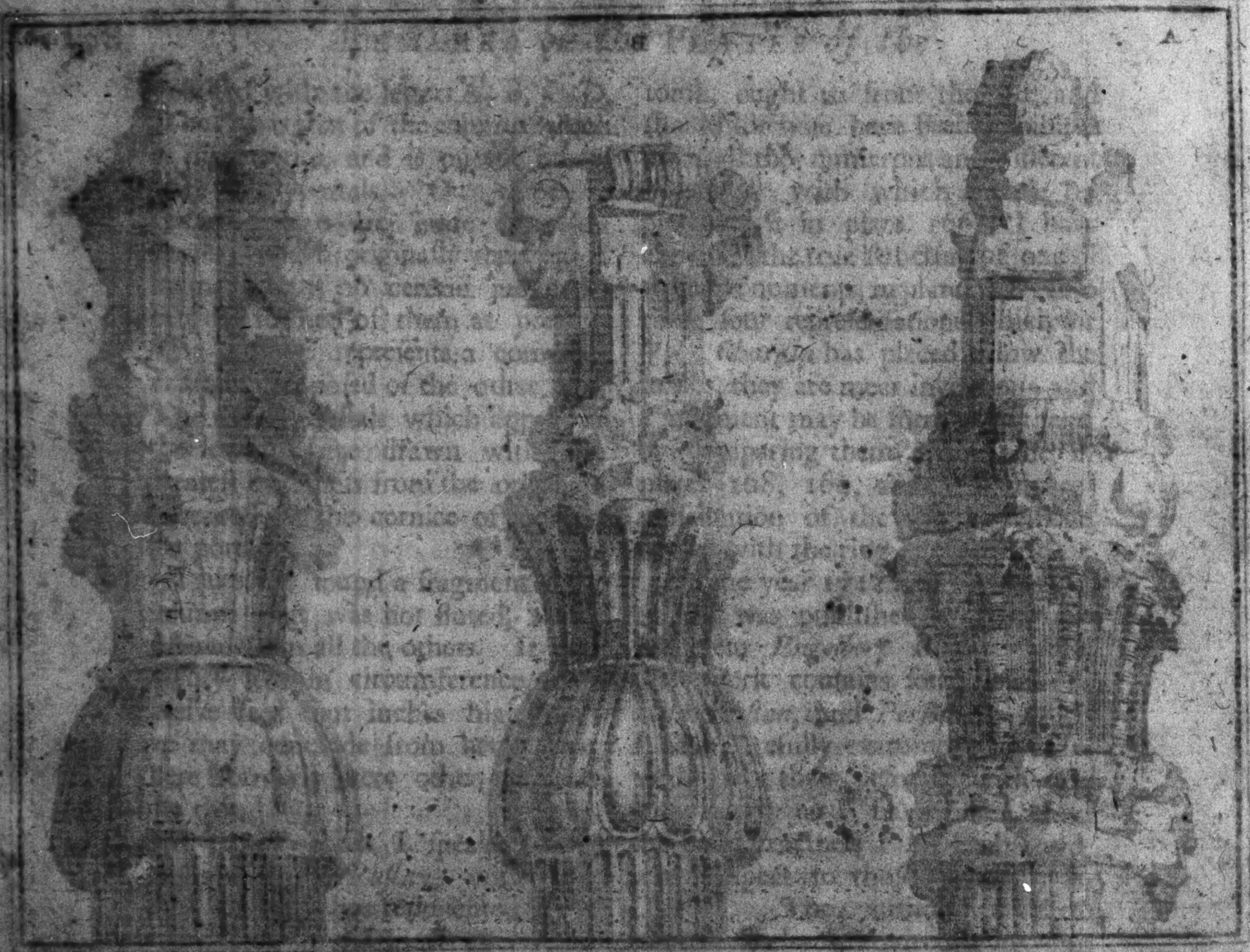
The firſt of thoſe plates, in page 107, repreſents the royal tombs, but is extremely confuſed, and differs from the original in many particulars.

The ſecond, in page 109, repreſents two equeſtrian figures, holding a ring, and under the horſes feet are the heads of two giants; which the author pretends were two conquered princes, and that their bodies are covered with earth. I, for my part, did not diſcover any thing of this nature; nor can I comprehend, why the bodies ſhould be

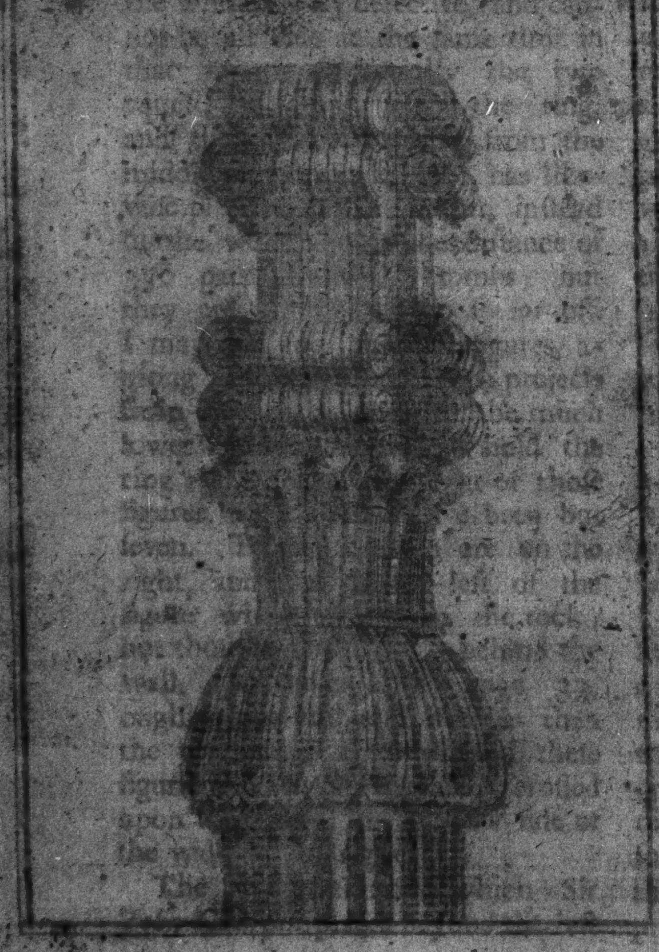

A
B
C
262.

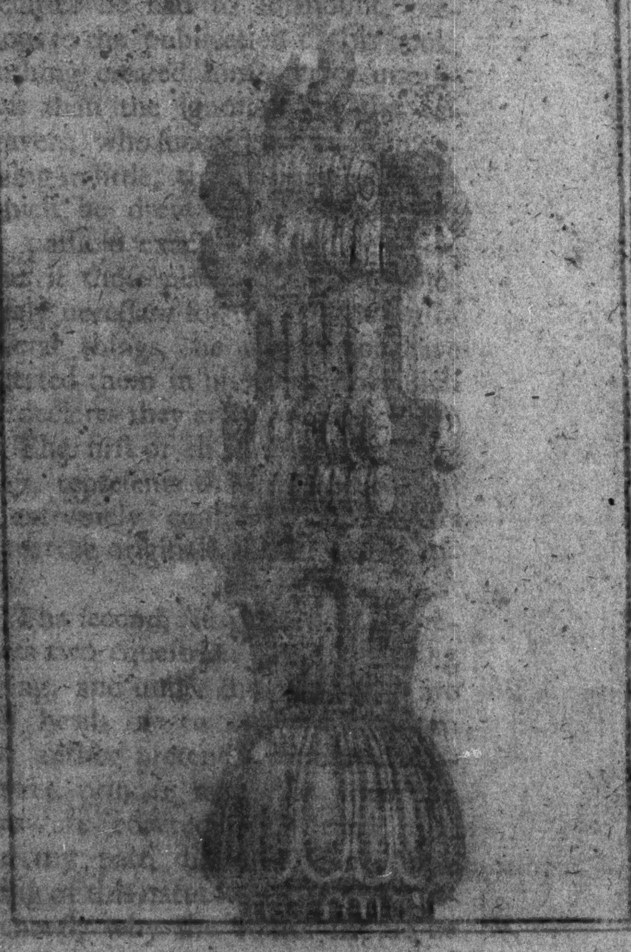

D


E
262.



7 AP 53





covered with earth, when the horſes which appear in the ſame place are altogether entire. Monſieur *Kempfer* has likewiſe given theſe figures a drapery, and head-dreſs, which have no conformity with the originals; and the horſes, whoſe feet are not ſeen, are very different from mine in plate 170. To this I may add, that only one of his figures holds the ring; for the others do but touch it.

His third plate, page 311, exhibits eleven figures to view, whereas there ought to have been but ſeven, namely, three on the right, and two on the left of that figure which projects from the rock: the five which are behind the wall ought to appear no farther than the breaſt; and the 7th figure ſhould have been without the wall, to the right; and it ought not to have had two faces, like a *Janus*. The author imagines, that this 7th figure has been added in later times, by way of deriſion, becauſe, ſays he, the noſe is of a monſtrous length, and there is no true proportion in any part of the figure. For my part, I could never obſerve any ſuch difference between that and the other figures.

His fourth plate, page 313, repreſents one of the tombs of *Naxi Ruſtan*, ornamented on the two ſides with figures from the top to the bottom; but which certainly ought not to be there, as is evident by my 167th plate. The tombs of *Perſepolis* are decorated in this manner, but they are not hewn out ſo high in the rock, as appears by my repreſentation of the whole in plate 158. The rock likewiſe ought to be plain, and not wrought into ornaments like a work of tapeſtry.

The fifth, ſixth, and ſeventh plates are wanting in Mr. *Kempfer*'s book; but his 8th, page 318, repreſents two figures with lances, altogether undefaced, together with little ornaments in form of a croſs, on their bonnets. For my part, I found them in a very ruinous condition, and I have accordingly deſcribed them in this manner. I, however, thought I could diſtinguiſh them to be figures fighting on horſeback.

I believe that what this author has repreſented in his 319th page, may be intended for that which is exhibited in my 168th plate: But his draught is too defective to deſerve a particular enumeration of its errors. His tenth plate is alſo unintelligible; and the eleventh, in which three figures are repreſented, is not worth refuting. The reader may conſult my 169th plate, where the crowned heads, which he has repreſented on the earth, are not to be found; but the real form of thoſe figures, together with their habits, and what they wear on their heads, are exhibited with great exactneſs.

Mr. *Kempfer* repreſents in his 14th plate, page 323, the ſquare edifice, which is to be ſeen, with all its apertures, in my 166th plate. But inſtead of refuting all the defects he has introduced, I ſhall only ſay in general, that he has exhibited ſeveral Things which are not to be found upon the ſpot, and has omitted others which are really there.

Having thus taken a ſurvey of the tombs of *Naxi Ruſtan*, with this author, we will now accompany him to *Perſepolis*. He repreſents in page 324, the firſt point of view of this palace, which is exhibited in my 117th plate, where all the columns are rightly placed, and thoſe that are moſt diſtant are not ſo high as the neareſt. The broken column appears diſtinctly there, as well as the ſtorks neſts, which are to be ſeen on ſome of the columns: The true height and form of the portals are expreſſed, as are likewiſe thoſe which are near the two columns. The two monuments which he has repreſented are at too great a diſtance from one another, and raiſed too high in the rock. Their elevation ſhould not exceed that of the columns, and the rock itſelf ought not to be ſo high as he has ſhewn it. The earth which ſeparates the two flights of the ſtair-caſe, and the deſcent from the wall, are viſible in my plate.

The ſecond point of ſight is likewiſe repreſented in the 334th page of Mr. *Kempfer*'s work, but the firſt part of the edifices ought to have been larger: The portals are too near one another; and the ruins to the left have no reſemblance to thoſe on the ſpot. The higheſt edifice has too many large portals like one another, and he has omitted the raiſed ſtone of one of the pilaſters, together with ſeveral other ruins. The greateſt part of the wall to the right is deſtroyed, and the tract of ground which leads to that edifice ought to appear. His ſtair-caſe agrees as little with the original, and it ought to appear as I have repreſented it in plate 150; but the whole plan of our author is too ſmall, and likewiſe too deep in perſpective. The curtain which appears between the facade and the columns, is too ſquare, and he has introduced too many entire portals. The columns are at too great a diſtance from one another, and likewiſe too regular, and the number of pedeſtals is too great. The ſtone ciſtern is much larger than it ought to appear, and it ſhould not be on the ſide of the wall next the columns, but nearer to the portals, the two columns of which are repreſented higher than their real elevation: For the firſt portal ought to be thirty nine feet in height, and the columns are but fifty four. The ſtorks neſt, which he has placed on one of the columns, is abundantly too large. The plain ought not to appear in the middle, contracting itſelf to the weſt, nor ſhould the mountains be ſo far to the eaſt; but they ought to appear as they are exhibited in my 119th plate, where I have omitted nothing, even to the ſmalleſt tree.

His plate of characters, page 333, has no correſpondence with mine in plate 126, and yet they are intended for the ſame, but they are all confuſed, and he has inſerted ſome which ought not to have been there. He has repreſented twenty four perfect lines, whereas ſeveral characters are wanting in mine, and the three firſt lines are entirely defaced. But I have repreſented all that are viſible in the other lines, even to the minuteſt point.

He obſerves, in page 336, that there are fifteen paces from the ſtair-caſe to the firſt portals, and thirty from theſe to the others. If we allow two feet and a half to each pace, the firſt portals will be thirty ſeven feet and a half from the ſtair-caſe, whereas the ſpace between them comprehends forty two feet. The columns are at the diſtance of twenty ſix feet from the firſt portal, and fifty-ſix from the ſecond, both which numbers amount to eighty two feet; but he has computed no more than ſeventy five. He adds, that each pilaſter is compoſed of two ſtones, jointed together with ſo much art as to be ſcarce viſible: And yet the firſt portal conſiſts of eight ſtones, and the other of ſeven, as I have obſerved in page 11. where the whole is deſcribed with all poſſible exactneſs, and as it appears in my 121ſt, 122d, and 123d plates, together with the animals and columns. He ſays, with reſpect to the animals, that as the heads are entirely defaced, it is impoſſible to judge what ſpecies they were intended to repreſent; and adds, that the laſt, which are winged, may poſſibly have been griffons; and that there really is one, whoſe head reſembles that of a bearded man, though it be much impaired, which indeed is true. He takes the ornaments of theſe animals for roſes or coral. I have exhibited two of them in plate 156.

He aſſigns to the columns a circumference of two fathoms, and twice the height of the portals; but this repreſentation has been already conſidered. He likewiſe places three or four ſtorks neſts on one of thoſe columns only, whereas they are to be found upon ſeveral. He has alſo exhibited figures on the ſtair-caſe, in page 341, and begins with the upper part, where he has placed, at the head of other figures, a man on horſeback, followed by a chariot drawn by two men, who are ſucceeded by a winged lion encountering a bull, to which he has added a table of twenty four lines. He then repreſents in his ſtair-caſe, ſeveral figures habited in different manners, and carrying various ſorts of things. Theſe he has alternately intermixed with mules, oxen, ſheep, camels, and cypreſs-trees planted in fine vaſes, above the two contending animals. With reſpect to the other ſide, which is to the eaſt, he contents himſelf with ſaying, that it is full of figures armed with lances. The author indeed acknowledges, in page 340, that he has ſketched out this proceſſion ſomething ſlightly, and without entering into a ſtrict examination of the particulars, and then adds, that his engraver has committed many errors in this part of the work, as well with reſpect to the figures, as the order in which they are diſpoſed, and that theſe defects were occaſioned by his miſapprehenſion of the author's deſign, and the remarks he has made. Upon which he promiſes to give the publick a ſet of more correct plates, in ſome future impreſſion of his work; and it is certain that he may eaſily ſucceed in that particular, like ſeveral other perſons, after having ſeen my plates. In a word, this whole repreſentation is very far from correſponding with the celebrated ruins of *Perſepolis*, and a judgment may be formed of it, by what I have exhibited in plate 126. It ſeems very improbable, therefore, that all theſe faults ſhould be chargeable on the meer negligence, or unskilfulneſs of the engravers, who ought naturally to conform to the orders, and trace out the sketches they receive. But indeed his verbal deſcription is altogether as imperfect as the plates; and he himſelf ſays, that the firſt figure which appears on the upper part of the ſtair-caſe, is a man on horſeback. Whereas it is very certain, that no equeſtrian figure is to be ſeen either there, or in any other part of the ruins of *Chelminar*, nor is there the leaſt appearance that any thing of that nature was ever there. The ſame may be ſaid of the chariot drawn by two men, as alſo of thoſe extraordinary animals which he has repreſented as encountering one another, and alſo of the cypreſs planted in the fine vaſes he has aſſigned them. I may therefore affirm, that theſe human and animal figures, together with all the reſt, are ſo remote from truth, that I ſhall not charge my ſelf with the unneceſſary trouble of pointing out their defects.

He repreſents, in page 344, a portal, which is the work of meer imagination, ſince inſtead of placing the figures within the entrance, he has diſpoſed ſome on each ſide without, and others within, deſcending from a rock with ſtrange animals in their hands; and above the entrance, he has placed a ſmall figure, which indeed is to be ſeen on the top of the pilaſters, but not within the portal. Our author adds, that figures are to be ſeen there habited in long robes; the firſt of which he imagines is a biſhop at the head of his clergy; and he likewiſe affirms, that in each of the portals, a giant is to be ſeen, together with a griffon, or a lion, into whoſe belly the giant plunges a dagger; and he places on the top, an hieroglyphic figure, equally compounded of a man and an eagle, with a variety of ornaments like thoſe at *Naxi Ruſtan*.

His 347th page repreſents a window, with ſmall ornaments on the outſide, and characters all around it, deſcending to a conſiderable depth. Theſe characters are indeed placed there inſtead of foliage, but they are not continued ſo far down as he has repreſented. The reader may ſee in what manner they are exhibited in my 128th plate.

Our author likewiſe declares in page 340, that he found ſeventeen of the ſeventy columns, the traces of which are ſtill viſible, and he believes they were diſtributed into four diviſions, ſeparated from each other by a thick wall of black marble, the ruins of which ſtill riſe to the height of a fathom; are ſix paces in length, and one in thickneſs. He pretends, that theſe columns were placed at the diſtance of nine paces from each other, and that they were raiſed on three ſorts of pedeſtals; ſome ſquare and rude, like a work in the gothic ſtyle; others round, and partly ornamented with the leaves of lillies: To which he adds, that in the ſpaces between theſe columns, there are ſome which are fluted, and others entirely plain: In a word, that they have a circumference of three fathoms, and are about fifteen in height. As I have already ſufficiently ſpecified their dimenſions, it is altogether unneceſſary to repeat them here; and therefore I ſhall only ſay, that neither plain columns, nor ſquare pedeſtals are to be found there.

In the 330th page, our author aſſigns to this edifice a length of 570 paces, from eaſt to weſt, tho' their number ſcarce amounts to 400, as I have already obſerved, and in the middle, where the greateſt extent is from north to ſouth, he allows it no more than 400 paces, tho' the real number is 600; he adds, that the height of the wall is not equal in every part, but that it may be allowed ſix fathoms for the altitude in general. The reader may conſult the particulars of my deſcription. He afterward affirms, that the ſtones of this wall are large, exactly ſquare, and poliſhed on the outſide. The two former particulars of this deſcription have already been ſhewn to be falſe, nor are all the ſtones poliſhed, as he declares. Some indeed are ſo, and they appear as ſmooth as mirrors in the portals and windows; but none of this poliſh is to be ſeen on their outſide, and I leave the reader to judge what time it would have required to poliſh every ſtone both within and without. I have indeed declared in my firſt volume, that the inſide of the *Egyptian* pyramids is poliſhed, and that the ſtones are joined together in a moſt exquiſite manner, but there is no poliſh to be ſeen on their outſide.

Our author repreſents the firſt flights of the ſtair-caſe in the facade, as conſiſting of fifty five ſteps to the right, and fifty eight to the left, and as many in the ſecond flights; the total of which will amount to 110 on one ſide, and 116 on the other; whereas there are but 103 to the north, and 101 to the ſouth. He likewiſe allows each ſtep a length of eight paces, a breadth of two and a half, and a ſpan for the height. All which he has conceived at random, without meaſuring what he has taken upon him to deſcribe.

As for the ſtones of the rock, which theſe two writers, as well as ſeveral others, take for black, white, and red marble; it is certain, as I have obſerved, page 29, that all the edifice is cut out of the natural rock, ſo that it is altogether ridiculous to ſuppoſe the materials were brought from any other quarter. It is even obvious to any eye, that the greateſt part of the edifice is formed of ſuch materials as were produced by the mountain againſt which it is ſituated. This is apparent beyond contradiction, with reſpect to the two royal monuments, the ſtair-caſe of the facade, the two ſides of the ſtructure, the large ſtones of the wall, and ſeveral other members of the building, particularly to the north. The poliſhed ſtones, indeed, and eſpecially thoſe within the portals, and the windows, together with the large angular ſtones, which ſtill appear in the earth, have a great reſemblance to marble, becauſe they are ſtreaked with white, grey, red, and yellowiſh veins intermixed with a deep blew, and lines of a black dye: But I look upon this variety of colours to be the effect of time, ſince nothing of that nature is to be ſeen in the rock itſelf. The greateſt part of the edifice is tinged with a light blue, as is evident from ſeveral pieces of the rock, and by the figure I brought away from thoſe ruins.

I ſhall here mention two antiquities which are taken notice of by our author, who ſays, page 354, that on the top of a certain hill, there are ſeveral ſquare and ruinous fragments of a wall of marble, together with portals which opened into an apartment fifteen paces ſquare; whoſe ſituation is from the north-weſt to the ſouth-eaſt, and the facade of which fronted the plain. He then adds, that there are ſeveral figures with lances ſtill viſible on ſome pieces of marble, and likewiſe three gates of a reddiſh marble, which are about three fathoms high; two of which front each other, and the third is ſituated toward the mountain. He likewiſe ſays, that the outſide is ſmooth and finely poliſhed, and not at all defaced by time, and that no ſort of ſculpture is to be found on the outward ſurface; but on the ſides within there are ſome figures a little larger than the life, ſeparate from each other, and habited in very wide and long robes, which flow down to the feet, and that the ſleeves of theſe veſtments are plaited like thoſe of the ſacerdotal garments: That ſome of theſe figures ſeem to ſhoot out, and others to ſhrink back, and that they are all clothed in the ſame manner: That the particular figure, which is under the gate, to the north-weſt, holds an urn in the left hand, and in the right, which is more elevated, a cenſer, ſomething like a ſmall lantern: That there is ſuch another figure as this under the oppoſite gate, and which holds the ſame thing; and that the others have neither heads nor hands; that the figure to the eaſt is likewiſe defaced, and holds a little packet in its left hand, and a flower, or ſomething like it, in the right.

This is the ſame edifice which I call, in page 50, *Mazyt Madre, Sulemoen*, or the moſque of the mother of *Sulemoen*; and I found that this edifice was between eighteen and twenty paces ſquare. One may there ſee three portals like thoſe of *Perſepolis*, repreſented in plate 161, and whoſe inward height is equal to eleven feet, and on each of the ſides is the figure of a woman as large as the life, and holding ſomething in its hand like thoſe at *Perſepolis*. On the two ſides of the rock, out of which the portal to the ſouth-weſt is formed, are nine ſmall figures much impaired by time, and their bodies are half buried in the earth; and to the north-weſt is a kind of ſtone ciſtern, which is mentioned by our author: All the reſt is ſurrounded with ſtones ſeparated from one another, and which owe that kind of ſituation to a length of time. Moſt of the pilaſters of theſe portals are out of their places, and theſe removals can only be imputed to an earthquake. The greateſt part of the cornice, belonging to the middle portal, is ſtill viſible, and the true form of theſe portals may be ſeen in my 178th plate, where only half the figure of the woman that is placed below, appears to view, by reaſon of the ſtones which ſurround it. At the diſtance of a good league from hence, one may find ſeveral figures carved on the rock; and our author ſays, page 363, that the two firſt repreſent *Ruſtan* and his wife in converſation together; that the head of this hero is covered with a caſque; that his beard and hair are ſhort, and that his neck is ornamented with a collar of jewels. To this he adds, that the breaſt and body of this figure are damaged, and that a plaited veſtment hangs down from the waiſt. He then tells us, that the figure which repreſents the wife of *Ruſtan*, is beautiful, and as large as the life, and that ſhe has jewels on her forehead, and round her neck; as likewiſe an upper robe, which is very ſhort, and plaited below. He farther acquaints us, that the Figure of *Ruſtan* has his left hand on his ſtomach, and with his right preſents a flower to the queen, which ſhe receives with her left, and preſents to him with her right hand a fruit which reſembles an apple, or a pear. To which he adds, that the two other Figures repreſent heroes or kings, but that *Ruſtan* is ſtill the largeſt of all.

For my part, I found in that place, as I intimated in page 51. three tables, and ſome other pieces of ſculpture carved in a very rude manner on the rock; and that on the firſt of theſe tables were two figures, one of which holds his hand on the guard of a large ſword: That the ſecond table exhibits the figure of a man with a round machine on his head, and on the third, which is equal to the firſt, and lower than that in the middle, is a figure with a kind of mitre on his head, and his left hand reſting on the guard of his ſword, like the former; but that the whole is ſo impaired by time, as to be hardly diſtinguiſhable, as I have repreſented the ſame in my 179th plate. Only the large ſword of that figure which our author calls king *Ruſtan*, is ſtill very viſible; but as to the collar, the caſque, and likewiſe the flower, which he ſays this prince holds in his hand, and which the queen receives with her left, I can affirm, that nothing of this nature is there to be found. I am likewiſe very uncertain whether this latter figure be that of a woman; for it is exceedingly defaced; and yet our author affirms, that it repreſents a very amiable woman, with jewels on her forehead, and round her neck. The middle figure ſeemed to have ſomething in its Hand, much reſembling a bowl. In a word, I found that theſe figures, together with what they have on their heads, and in all other particulars relating to them, are not very different from thoſe tables which appear below the tombs of *Naxi Ruſtan*, and that the former may probably have been the ſame with thoſe that are there repreſented as holding a ring, in plate 169.

It may naturally be concluded from all I have ſaid, that I have proceeded very differently from other travellers, in the examination of what I ſaw, and that the only view I propoſed in my travels, was to unfold thoſe antiquities, which have not been placed in their true light by any perſon before me; and that my deſign was to offer to the public a more perfect work, in this reſpect, than any which have been publiſhed by others. I undertook it altogether with this deſign, and was deſirous to ſatisfy my natural curioſity for things of this nature; without any thoughts of making my fortune in foreign countries, or engaging myſelf in the ſervice of any one. I can likewiſe affirm, that I drew with my own hand, and have painted in diſtemper, on paper, and from the original objects themſelves, thoſe repreſentations of them, which are to be found in my travels, and that I have completed the whole in ſo orderly and exact a manner, that I could have made uſe of them in the relation of my travels, without giving myſelf the trouble to have them engraved.

I brought away an entire figure from the rocks of *Perſepolis*, into my own country, together with ſeveral other curious pieces; a large collection of characters, and other ornaments, which ſufficiently prove what pains I took, during the three months I continued at *Perſepolis*: all which time I devoted my ſtricteſt attention to thoſe illuſtrious ruins. I may therefore take the liberty to repreſent myſelf as the firſt perſon who has placed them in the full light, and rendered juſtice to them, after an interval of 2000 years; and without deviating from the rules of art, either in the relation I have given of them, or with reſpect to the plates which were engraved, under my inſpection, with all poſſible juſtice and accuracy. I therefore flatter myſelf that I have merited the approbation of all thoſe who are lovers of art and undiſguiſed truth. I have likewiſe taken the pains to paint ſeveral extraordinary pieces of drapery, both of men and women, which the curious may ſee at my houſe, together with a variety of *Indian* fiſh, fruits, and birds.

A LET-

A
LETTER
Written to the
AUTHOR
ON THE
Subject of his REMARKS,

By a Lover of ANTIQUITY.

SIR,

I HAVE read with pleaſure, your remarks on the errors committed by Sir *John Chardin* and Mr. *Kempfer*, in the accounts they have given us of the celebrated ruins of the ancient palace of *Perſepolis*, but cannot take upon me to decide any thing concerning them, ſince I never had an opportunity of viewing them on the ſpot. I think, however, that the fine plates you have cauſed to be engraven, and the circumſtantial deſcription you have given of thoſe Antiquities, in the courſe of your travels, as well with reſpect to the edifice in general, as to each piece in particular, merit the attention and ſuffrages of learned men, and lovers of antiquity, more than any other relation which I have yet ſeen. When one conſiders the extent of that ſuperb ſtructure, together with the number of figures, and other curioſities which are there to be found, as is allowed by all who have been upon the ſpot, it muſt be confeſſed that a perſon ought to have excellent eyes, a maſterly hand, and a large ſhare of judgment, to acquit himſelf well on that ſubject; and that he muſt have joined to theſe, an application and patience that are not to be expreſſed. And yet Mr. *Kempfer* freely confeſſes, [*] "that he was hardly three days upon the ſpot: And tho' he endeavours to perſuade his readers, in ſeveral parts of his work, particularly, *Relat.* v. §. 3. *p.* 331. that he drew with great exactneſs the principal fragments of thoſe noble ruins; but that his engraver copied his drawings in a very inaccurate manner; the contrary is yet too viſible in the diſpoſition of the whole, as you have very juſtly obſerved; and all the parts of it are exhibited in ſo unmaſterly and injudicious a manner, that it is impoſſible to diſcover any great ſtrokes of art, or the leaſt air of antiquity, or any thing indeed that correſponds with the relations that have been written on this ſubject by the antient *Greeks*. To which I may add, that tho' a perſon be really maſter of all the qualities that are requiſite for the proper accompliſhment of ſuch an undertaking as this, it will yet be impoſſible for him to form ſo long and circumſtanſtial a relation as Mr. *Kempfer* has given us, in ſuch a ſhort time as that in which he was converſant with theſe ruins. Sir *John Chardin* likewiſe did not allow himſelf a ſufficient time to examine them very ſtrictly, and to give a clear repreſentation of what he there ſaw, ſince he acknowledges, in the 9th Volume, and 175th page of his travels, that he employ'd no more than five days in his ſurvey of *Chelminar*, and in completing his draughts and deſcription of that ſtructure; and adds, that he was obliged to hire a painter for that purpoſe. It muſt therefore be allowed, Sir, that tho' ſome figures in his plates may be ſaid to reſemble yours in a few particulars, and it be likewiſe evident that they were drawn on the ſpot, it is yet very apparent, that they were worked off in haſte, and ſome things were touched ſo very ſlightly, that it became neceſſary to finiſh them afterward by mere gueſs. This you have very judiciouſly obſerved in your remarks, wherein you have refuted all the errors he has committed, and have proceeded with all the exactneſs of a man who has ſeen things with his own eyes, and examined them in the ſtricteſt manner. I am therefore perſuaded that every judicious reader will declare in your favour without the leaſt heſitation; and it muſt be naturally allowed, that the repreſentation of thoſe ruins, made by ſo curious a connoiſſeur as yourſelf, are preferable to thoſe of a hired painter, who continued no more than five days upon the ſpot, and took but a tranſient view of things; whereas you was conſtant in your application there, and proceeded with all imaginable exactneſs for the full ſpace of three months. This is my opinion with reſpect to the work in general, and I think it is not ill founded. But, at the ſame time, I am far from pretending to derogate either from the merit of thoſe gentlemen, or the applauſe they deſerve in every other particular.

---

[*] Faſcicul. II. Amœnit. Exotic. Relat. iv. Sect. 2. p. 305.

Tom. 3. 140. de l'Ed. in 4.

But as you are deſirous, Sir, of knowing my ſentiments of thoſe hiſtorical remarks which thoſe gentlemen have interſperſed in the relation of their travels, with reference to the figures that are to be ſeen at *Chelminar*, I ſhall do myſelf the honour to acquaint you, that Mr. *Kempfer* ſeems to me, to have been extremely conciſe in thoſe particulars, and Sir *John Chardin* altogether as ſuperficial; whilſt you have omitted nothing that has been written by the ancients with relation to *Perſepolis*, and the antient *Perſians*. This might ſuffice in general; but in order to afford you all the ſatisfaction in my power, I ſhall now examine what theſe gentlemen have advanced on this ſubject, in which I intend to be as brief as poſſible, and as clear as is conſiſtent with that little knowledge Heaven has been pleaſed to afford me.

Sir *John Chardin*, ſpeaking of theſe famous ruins in general, which the modern *Perſians* call *Chelminar*, declares, that they are not the remains, either of the palace of the ancient kings of *Perſia*, or of that of *Darius* in particular; but that they are the ruins of a temple in the ancient city of *Perſepolis*. *See Vol.* ix. *page* 156. He then alledges ſeveral reaſons in proof of what he advances, the moſt plauſible of which is, that in ancient times palaces in that country were not built on mountains, but on the banks of rivers, for the benefit of a refreſhing air. He then endeavours to juſtify his opinion by the order of the figures on the ſtair-caſe, which he would have his readers believe are the proceſſion of a ſacrifice, becauſe each figure carries ſomething that was uſed in ſolemnities of that nature among the Pagans, as he pretends; and he even finds fault with *D. Garcia de Silva de Figueroa*, for calling this proceſſion a triumph, in the 150th page of his embaſſy. He likewiſe adds, in page 63, that this proceſſion is divided into ſeveral bands, ſome containing ſix, and

Tom. 3. p. 102. de l'Ed. in 4.

others

Tom. 3. p. 104. de l'Ed. in 4.

Tom. 3. p. 108. de l'Ed. in 4.

Tom. 3. p. 114. de l'Ed. in 4.

others nine figures; and that they are ſeparated by a tree which reſembles a cypreſs. He then tells us, that the general band is led by a man, who holds another by the hand, as if he conducted him in the quality of a victim: and that this repreſentation is exhibited in every particular band, except one. To this he adds, that five ſorts of victims ſeem to be in this proceſſion; namely, a dromedary, a bull, a couple of he-goats, an horſe, and a mule. And he obſerves, that tho' one ſees but one dromedary, two he-goats, and one mule, yet there are ſeveral horſes, which induced him to think that this was intended to repreſent a ſacrifice to the ſun. He then cites *Herodotus* and *Strabo*, to prove that the antient *Perſians* offered horſes to the ſun, as well as other animals, but has not pointed out the place where this paſſage is to be found in thoſe famous hiſtorians. And tho' he acknowledges that he cannot find any expreſs declaration, either in ſacred or prophane hiſtory, that the *Perſians* ſacrificed human creatures, like ſome of their neighbours, and that the *Guebres* abſolutely deny that any ſuch immolations were ever made by their anceſtors, he yet affirms, that the man who is led by the hand, is a victim, as well as the horſe and the dromedary: For he cannot conceive what elſe that figure can be intended for, in this proceſſion, all the other human figures of which carry ſomething that relates to a ſacrifice. He likewiſe maintains in page 77, that the tract of ground where the columns appear in their greateſt number, is the choir of this imaginary temple, and the place where the victims were ſacrificed; to which he adds in the 93d and following pages, that he is perſuaded that the great number of edifices and apartments, which appear to the eaſt, and north, and which are fewer toward the north, and toward the ſouth, were the ſeveral apartments of the ſacrificers, and other prieſts of the temple, ſince ſuch ſtructures were cuſtomary among the pagans, and were even ſome of the appendages to the temple of *Solomon*.

In order to anſwer this kind of reaſoning in a few words, I muſt acquaint you, Sir, that ſeveral palaces are to be found at this day in plains, throughout the eaſt, but we are not to conclude from thence, that this was the practice at all times, and in all places. I may alledge, as a proof of what I advance, that the antient city of *Jeruſalem* was not ſituated on the delightful banks of *Jordan*, but on the mountains of *Moriah* and *Sion*, as the ſacred ſcriptures declare. The temple of *Solomon* was built on mount *Moriah*, by the order of king *David*, the father of that prince [a]. The palace of *David* was alſo on mount *Sion*, as was likewiſe the fortreſs of that name, and which was a place of ſuch ſtrength, that the *Jebuſites* did not believe that prince could make himſelf maſter of it, even after he had taken *Jeruſalem*, as may be ſeen in the ſecond book of *Samuel*, *chap.* v. *ver.* 6, *&c.* [b] The palaces, or fortreſſes of the ancient kings of *Egypt*, at *Memphis*, which was once the capital of that kingdom, were likewiſe ſituated on an eminence, or the declivity of a mountain, which ſloped toward the city, that lay at the bottom, as *Strabo* obſerves [c] in his account of the antiquities of that city, which ſtill ſubſiſted in his time. In a word, the palace of the Khalifahs of *Egypt*, at *Al Kahira*, or *Cairo*, is alſo ſituated on a rock or mountain, as you obſerve in your firſt account of your travels, chapter 39. And as the climate of *Egypt* and *Judæa* is altogether as hot at leaſt as any part of *Perſia*, Sir *John Chardin*'s argument ſeems therefore to have no weight. I may add too, that the delicious plain in which theſe famous remains of the grandeur of the ancient monarchy of *Perſia* are ſituated, is watered by a variety of rivers and leſſer ſtreams, which frequently overflow their banks, and temper the glow of the ſun-beams in the ſummer ſeaſon. We may likewiſe take it for granted, that there were ſeveral ſprings and ſubterranean cavities, together with a great number of wells in the palace itſelf, and which have been ſince filled up with the fallen fragments of thoſe ſuperb ruins, and deſtroyed by thoſe barbarians, who laid that fine country under water; which is a fate that *Memphis* and *Jeruſalem* have likewiſe ſuſtained. But what is ſtill more to our purpoſe, Sir *John Chardin* frankly acknowledges, in the 173d page of the ſame volume, that the inhabitants call *Chelminar The Temple of the Winds*, becauſe a breeze of air perpetually blows in that place. Why, therefore, may we not ſuppoſe a palace to have been built there, as well as a temple? To this we will add the teſtimony of *Athenæus*,[a] who declares, that *Cyrus*, and the kings of *Perſia* who ſucceeded him, reſided at *Ecbatane*, the capital of *Media*, during the exceſſive heats of the ſummer; and paſſed the autumn at *Perſepolis*; the winter at *Suſa*, and the ſpring at *Babylon*. Add to this, that the manner in which *Diodorus Siculus* deſcribes the palace of *Perſepolis*, gives us ſufficient reaſon to believe that *Chelminar* is that very palace: For though that author mentions a triple wall, which encompaſſed that palace, and though theſe three incloſures are no longer to be ſeen there, that will not be thought a circumſtance of any conſequence, ſince the *Greek* authors from whom he tranſcribed that deſcription, ſome ages after the deſtruction of that palace, may have taken ſome particular angles, or ſections, of that edifice, or ſome corners or ſides of the rock on which it is ſituated, for walls; or thoſe walls, if any ſuch there were, may have been entirely deſtroy'd in a courſe of ſo many ages. But what ſeems moſt material to me is, that *Diodorus* adds in the ſame place, That *to the eaſt, and behind the palace, there was a mountain which was called the* Royal Mount, *where the tombs of the* Perſian *kings were built*. As thoſe circumſtances, therefore, together with ſeveral others which I may have occaſion to mention, as I proceed, are ſtill to be found at *Chelminar*, the learned *Don Figueroa*, who was a perfect maſter of antiquity, concludes very juſtly, in my opinion, that this place ought to be conſidered as the genuine ruins of the ancient palace of *Peſepolis*, which was deſtroyed by *Alexander the Great*. See his embaſſy, pages 160, 161, 162, &c. and page 41. of your own travels into *Perſia*. We will now proceed to Sir *John Chardin*'s ſecond argument.

---

[a] Vide Joſeph. rer. Judaic. l. 1. c. 14.

[b] Vide etiam Joſeph. {rer. Judaic. lib. 7. c. 2. & Buno in not. ad Cluver. Introduct. Geogr. lib. 5 c. 20. & Chriſtoph. Heideman. Paleſtin. c. 2. n. 10.

[c] Lib. 17. rer. Georg. in fin. & ſeq. pr.

Tom. 3. p. 140. Ed. in 4.

He ſays, that the ornaments on the ſtair-caſe of theſe ſtately ruins, repreſent a proceſſion, and probably one of thoſe which were made at ſolemn ſacrifices, and particularly thoſe to the ſun. But the teſtimonies which he cites from *Herodotus* and *Strabo*, to juſtify his conjecture, are altogether inconcluſive. *Herodotus* indeed declares [b] that the ancient *Perſians* made oblations to the ſun; but he does not ſeem to ſay, that thoſe offerings conſiſted either of horſes, or of any other animals; for he only declares, that the *Maſſagetæ* offered up to him, as the moſt active of all gods, the ſwifteſt of their quadrupeds, namely horſes. *Strabo* ſays the ſame[c] when he mentions the *Maſſagetæ*; but, with reſpect to the *Perſians*, he ſays nothing more, than that they honoured the [d] ſun. There is more reaſon, in my opinion, to affirm, that the *Perſians* offered horſes to the god *Mars*, from the authority of *Strabo*,[e] who declares, that they honoured the god of war above all other deities, and that the people of *Caramania*, a province ſubject to the *Perſians*, offered mules to him, becauſe they uſed thoſe animals in their wars, inſtead of horſes. However, as *Xenophon* affirms, [a] that *Cyrus* offered horſes to the ſun; and [b] *Pauſanias*, that the *Perſians* ſacrificed horſes and other beaſts to that luminary, we will not conteſt their authority; but we, however, are not to conclude from thence, that the figures on the ſtair-caſe of *Chelminar* repreſent the proceſſion of a ſacrifice, nor that the ſtructure itſelf was a temple of *Perſepolis*, becauſe it was cuſtomary for the *Perſians*, on the birth-day of their kings, which was anciently called *Tycta*, to ſlaughter a great number of goats, mules, oxen, deer, and ſheep, and the ſubjects afterward ſerved them up at the royal table, as *Athenæus* informs us [c] from ancient *Perſian* authors, whoſe works have long ceaſed to be extant. It is much more probable, therefore, that theſe figures repreſent one of thoſe feſtivals, rather than a ſacrifice: And what is ſtill more to our purpoſe, *Herodotus*, who lived in the time of *Xerxes the Great*, when the monarchy of the ancient *Perſians* was in its utmoſt glory, declares, that they had no images of gods, nor temples, nor altars, and that they even derided thoſe nations who had them; and were contented with offering their ſacrifices on lofty places free from all impurity [d]; which likewiſe is confirmed by *Strabo* [e]. I think this is ſufficient to prove, that the ruins of *Chelminar* are not thoſe of a temple, ſince the ancient *Perſians* had not any, and conſequently theſe muſt be the remains of a palace, to which the figures and ornaments correſpond much better. For though Sir *John Chardin* endeavours in a very ingenious manner to ſupport his opinion, by comparing the repreſentations on the ſtair-caſe with ſome particular cuſtoms which prevail among the modern *Perſians* and *Indians*, yet I cannot ſee that he can derive much advantage from that proceeding, ſince perſons of judgment are ſenſible, that modern cuſtoms differ there, as well as in other countries, from thoſe of the ancients, and eſpecially with regard to an antiquity that has ſubſiſted above two thouſand years. For which reaſon I am well perſuaded, that if one of thoſe *Batavians* who lived a thouſand years ago, was to appear upon earth again, he would be altogether unacquainted with the manners, language, and habits of his modern countrymen. The preſent cuſtoms and manners of the *Guebres*, and thoſe of the pagans of *India*, which Sir *John Chardin* ſo frequently alledges in his juſtification, are no more in his favour than the other particulars he has mentioned; for the modern *Guebres* differ from the antient *Magi*, as much at leaſt as the modern *Jews* deviate from their orthodox anceſtors, and as much as the generality of modern Chriſtians vary from the primitive church, both in their manners and doctrines. The *Guebres* of this age are a ſet of poor ignorant creatures, who in conſequence of a length of time, and the great changes which have happened in *Perſia*, have loſt the true knowledge of their anceſtors manner of worſhip, of which they retain nothing but the letter, in the ſame manner as the *Samaritans* have preſerved that of the pentateuch. It may even be preſumed, that the *Greeks*, who adored falſe deities, introduced many novelties in their time, into the *Perſian* religion, and which were very incongruous with the ancient manners of

---

[a] Lib. 12. p. m. 513.

[b] Lib. 1. c. 131.

[c] Lib. 12. c. 131.

[d] Lib. 15. p. m. 732.

[e] Cit. lib. p. m. 727.

---

[a] Lib. 8. Cyrop. c. 24.
[b] In Lacon. ſect. lib. 3. c. 20.
[c] Lib. 4. p. m. 145, &c.
[d] Vid. cit. lib. 1. p. 131. & 132.
[e] Lib. 15. p. m. 732.

this

the people. The *Parthians* indeed, and another race of *Perſian* kings, reigned in that country for ſome ages after the *Greeks*; but it is very probable, that the *Saracens*, who afterward made themſelves maſters of it under the firſt Khalifahs; and then the *Tartars*, under *Tamerlane*, and after them, the *Turks*, did not fail to introduce ſeveral great changes there, either by tyranny, or a ſeries of artful conduct; and we may naturally conclude, that theſe alterations contributed not a little to obſcure and perplex the affairs of the ancient *Perſians*. The *Indians* likewiſe have been no leſs obnoxious to changes and revolutions of this nature, but as they have no relation to our preſent ſubject, I ſhall not enlarge upon them.

I freely acknowledge, for my part, that I think the relations which the ancient *Greek* hiſtorians have given us of the manners and cuſtoms of the firſt *Perſians*, in peace and war, and in every other particular, except what relates to their religious worſhip, deſerve much more credit than all the fabulous hiſtories of the modern *Perſians*. It is certain, that the *Guebres* of our time are very commendable for entirely rejecting all falſe gods and idols, and for acknowledging one God alone; in which particulars they render juſtice to their anceſtors; and likewiſe declare, that they pay an external honour only to the planets, as Dr. *Hyde* has obſerved in his hiſtory of the religion of the ancient *Perſians*; and he declares, that he collected that account from their own writings. To which I may add, that you yourſelf received the ſame account from their own lips, as you obſerve in the 79th chapter of your travels. I think therefore we need nothing more to refute, or at leaſt to weaken Sir *John Chardin*'s ſecond argument; ſince, if the ancient *Perſians* were not idolaters, it is certain that the figures of the ſtair-caſe cannot be ſuppoſed to be carrying in proceſſion to this pretended temple, thoſe things which real pagans uſed in their ſacrifices. And indeed they prove the very contrary, by the manner in which you have repreſented them, agreeably to hiſtory and reaſon. I ſhall not take any notice of the errors he has committed, with reſpect to thoſe figures, ſince you have ſufficiently pointed them out, and no one can be a better judge of them than yourſelf. The hiſtorians likewiſe declare in your favour, ſince they all deny that the ancient *Perſians* ever ſacrificed human creatures, as the *Maſſagetæ* did, according to *Herodotus*[a] and [b] *Strabo*: And theſe authors would certainly have ſaid the ſame of the *Perſians*, if they had acted like the *Maſſagetæ*.

As to the figures which Sir *John Chardin* repreſents as bearing human limbs, I think you have ſufficiently proved, that it is all mere imagination; and it is impoſſible it ſhould be otherwiſe, if the whole be rightly conſidered. It is ſtill leſs conceivable, that the ſecond figures which are led by the firſt in each band, ſhould be intended for victims, ſince ſome of them have a machine on their left ſide, which he calls the caſe of a bow, in his 69th page; but there is much more reaſon to believe it to be a *Gerra*, or buckler made of cords and leather, which the *Perſians* carried on the left ſide, as they did a poinard on the right hip, as *Herodotus* obſerves [c] in his account of the arms of the ancient *Perſians*. This is confirm'd by the 58th and 59th plates in Sir *John Chardin*'s travels, ſince this buckler is ſeen in the firſt of thoſe plates, where the left ſide of the figures appears, and particularly that which is diſtinguiſhed by the letter O. The poinard likewiſe is viſible on the figures in the ſecond plate, where

Tom. 3. p. 102. de l'Ed. in 4.

---

[a] Lib. 1. c. 216.

[b] L. 11. pag. m. 513. a.

[c] Lib. 7. c. 61.

they are turned to the right, and are habited like the preceding figures, whoſe poniards are not ſeen; but the two ends of the ſcabbard appear on ſome others. Now it ſeems very unnatural to me, to have victims conducted to the altar, with bucklers and poniards on their ſides.

In the ſame 58th plate, Sir *John Chardin* has repreſented a perſon of rank, diſtinguiſhed by the letter A, who conducts another with a *Tiara* on his head, and his habit reſembles that of a *Magus*, or ſome prieſt: And yet, this figure, according to Sir *John Chardin*, muſt needs be a victim; which is very extraordinary. That which is marked with R in the ſame plate, together with the four following figures, have an inſtrument in their hands, which he calls a fleam, in his 69th page. This was an ancient inſtrument, and he ſays it is ſtill uſed in ſeveral parts of the eaſt, inſtead of a lancet, which was not known in that country, till the *Europeans* maintained a commerce with it. But this manner of reaſoning proves nothing in my opinion; for beſide that you repreſent this band of figures very differently from that gentleman, and without any fleams; I am not able to comprehend wherein they could be uſeful, unleſs it was to bleed the victims, which would have been ſomething very ſingular. I will not take upon me to decide what the other figures carry; for I would avoid all prolixity; and indeed you have ſaid all that can be offered on that ſubject, in your fifty third chapter: For which reaſon, I ſhall only declare in general, that after a due conſideration of the whole, I think this proceſſion reſembles a triumph more than any thing elſe, as *Figueroa* judged, or a birth-day ſacrifice. The ſeveral encounters of animals, likewiſe, who are engaged in combat either with one another, or with men, correſpond much better with a palace and a feſtival, than with a ſacrifice and a temple; and eſpecially as the ancient *Perſians* had not any of theſe latter. Sir *John Chardin* has repreſented one of theſe combats, in his 70th page, between a lion and a common bull with two horns, and he declares that combats of this nature are ſtill exhibited for the entertainment of the people, at the feſtivals and public ſhews of the *Perſians*; and that they are managed in ſuch a manner, that the lion is always victorious, becauſe that animal is an emblem of the *Perſian* monarchy. *Figueroa* only ſays, page 150, that a lion rending a bull is to be ſeen, and that the ſculptor had repreſented the combat ſo well, that nothing can be excepted againſt it; but he has not ſaid that this animal has horns. Monſieur *Thevenot* expreſſes himſelf to the ſame effect in his travels[a]. But as I find that you have repreſented all, and even the leaſt ornaments, with much more exactneſs than others, I imagine that theſe gentlemen, who sketched them out in a ſlight manner for want of time, have not taken notice that this bull has but one horn; and eſpecially Sir *John Chardin*, who repreſents this animal without the leaſt air of agreeableneſs, and in a poſition which is altogether unnatural, and directly contrary to that of *Figueroa*. If this animal therefore be ſuch as you have repreſented it, I ſhould not believe it to be a bull, and it ſeems to me to have more the air of a horſe or a mule; and it is likewiſe bridled and harneſſed like a horſe. Perhaps it may be one of thoſe *Indian* mules which are mentioned by *Cteſias*, [b] who ſays that they reſemble horſes, and ſome of them exceed thoſe animals in ſize. He adds, that they have a mane of a violet colour, a white body, black eyes, uncloven hoofs, and on their forehead a black horn, which is white near the head, and red at the point. He then informs us that this horn is ſhaped into drinking cups, and that this animal is ſo exceeding vigorous and ſwift, that he cannot be taken without great difficulty. *Elian* has given us much the ſame account [a]; and *Ariſtotle* likewiſe ſays, that there are mules in *India* which have one horn, but that their number is very inconſiderable [b]. *Pliny* relates the ſame thing [c]. And you may likewiſe conſult *Bartholinus* on this ſubject [d]. But however the fact may be, I think you have repreſented it much in this manner on the ſtair-caſe; and as to thoſe animals which are exhibited in Sir *John Chardin*'s 65th plate, there may poſſibly have been ſuch, notwithſtanding they are unknown to us. You likewiſe repreſent, in your 130th plate, a hero encountring a lion with one horn; and it is certain that nature ſometimes produces ſuch monſtrous births. I muſt indeed confeſs, that the combat between the lion and the mule with one horn, does not ſeem more extraordinary to me, than thoſe between the mules and bears, which you mention in the 39th chapter of your travels.

---

[a] L. 2. c. 7.
[b] In Indic. juxta. excerpt. Phot. c. 35.

Tom. 3. p. 102. de l'Ed. in 4. I can eaſily agree with Sir *John Chardin*, who ſays, page 70, that he believes the inſcription in characters, which appears at the end of the long baſſo-relievo of the ſtair-caſe, contains an explication of the ſculpture there; and yet I am fully perſuaded by the reaſons I have alledged, that theſe famous ruins are thoſe of a palace, and cannot poſſibly be the remains of a temple.

It is alſo probable that the tract of ground where moſt of the columns ſtand, was originally a court before the palace, like that which was before the king's houſe at *Suſa*, mentioned in the book of *Eſther*, c. v. and through which a flow of freſh air was admitted into the apartments. One may even preſume, that theſe columns did not ſupport any architrave, as Sir *John Chardin* has obſerved page 76; but we may venture to ſuppoſe that a covering of tapeſtry or linnen was drawn over them, to intercept the perpendicular projection of the ſun-beams. Tom. 3. p. 108. de l'Ed. in 4. The great number of apartments, whoſe ſymetry is no longer diſtinguiſhable, were undoubtedly appropriated to the prince, and the officers of his court.

Sir *John Chardin* expreſſes himſelf as poſitively, with relation to the drapery of the figures, as he did with reſpect to the imaginary temple, and the ſacrifices he ſuppoſed were offered there; becauſe he diſcovers ſome ſimilitude between theſe habits and thoſe that were worn by the ancient worſhippers of fire, or of the *Guebres*, who are ſtill to be found in the *Indies*. He adds, page 59, that the under veſtment of theſe figures is intended to repreſent a cotton or ſilken garment, Tom. 3. p. 114. de l'Ed. in 4. which is wrapped three or four times round the reins, and the end of which is inſerted into the cincture; after which he informs us, that the habits which are cut and ſewed, were introduced by the *Mohammedans*. He likewiſe declares, page 61, that the variety which is to be ſeen in the head-dreſs and drapery of thoſe figures, Tom. 3. p. 104. de Ed. in 4. proceeds only from the diverſity of countries and climes in the vaſt empire of *Perſia*. He repreſents ſome of them, in his 58th plate, in ſhagged habits, while others are naked; and he gives tiaras to ſome, and to others handkerchiefs wound about the head, inſtead of bonnets, in his 60th page; Tom. 3. p. 163. Ed. in 4. all which is the work of his own fancy, and contrary to the teſtimonials of ancient authors. For my part, I am perſuaded, there is no more ſimilitude between the habits of the pagan *Indians* of theſe days, and thoſe of the ancient *Perſians*, than there is between our manner of dreſs and that of our anceſtors; and indeed I do not find any figures in your plates that are either naked, or covered with furs. Nor has *Herodotus* mentioned any thing of this nature in his account of the arms and habit of the troops of *Xerxes the Great*. And we find that the drapery of thoſe figures which are ſtill remaining at *Chelminar*, correſponds with the habits of thoſe different nations. I likewiſe think it very extraordinary, that the ancient *Perſians* ſhould have learned the uſe of cut and ſewed garments from the *Mohammedans*, ſince *Athenæus* declares, that thoſe ancient *Perſians* were the firſt of all nations who addicted themſelves to luxury and pleaſure [a]. If they wore plaited robes of cloth with large ſleeves, and folded them twice or thrice over their reins, as they are repreſented by Sir *John Chardin*, there is but little probability that the famous *Pauſanias* of *Sparta* would have clothed himſelf in that manner: And yet *Thucydides* and *Cornelius Nepos* declare, that he wore a royal habit in the mode of the *Medes*, that is to ſay, a long plaited robe. It is likewiſe certain, that if this habit had been made of cloth neither cut nor ſewed, and that it was wrapped over the reins, the ancient *Greeks* would undoubtedly have ridiculed him; our modern *Dutchmen* would have taken him for a *Bohemian* fortune-teller, and the people of *Courland* would have ſaid poſitively that he was a peaſant of *Semigall* or *Livonia*.

---

[a] L. 4. de Nat. Animal. c. 52,
[b] L. 2. Hiſt. Animal. cap. 50.
[c] L. 11. Hiſt. Nat. cap. 37. &46.
[d] De Unicornu cap. 17.

But I think it time to draw to a cloſe, Sir, and ſhall therefore do my ſelf the honour to aſſure you, without ſtopping any longer at trifles, that your plates in the 53d and 54th chapters, agree perfectly with the deſcriptions in ancient authors; and I am perſuaded that every reader of taſte and judgment will prefer the account of your travels, in that particular, to that of Sir *John Chardin*. Your remarks likewiſe on the tombs of *Naxi Ruſtan*, are very accurate and judicious. Permit me, Sir, to add to what you have obſerved, that *Abul-Pharagius* declares there was a hero named *Ruſtan*, in the time of *Jeſdegerd*, before whoſe reign *Chelminar* was undoubtedly built, as the modern *Perſian* hiſtorians allow. But all the ſtories related of this *Ruſtan* are not to be credited; and I even believe that the tomb which is ſaid to be his, is really that of *Darius*, who is mentioned by *Cteſias*. The reſt of Sir *John Chardin*'s remarks are not material enough to require an anſwer.

As to the explications which are offered by Mr. *Kempſer*, they ſeem to correſpond very well with yours, if we except his plates and remarks: For which reaſon you will permit me to paſs over inconſiderable circumſtances, which can be agreeable to none but credulous minds.

Thus, Sir, have I endeavoured to comply with your deſires; and if there be any other particular wherein you judge me capable of ſerving you, I hope you will do me the juſtice to believe, that I will undertake it with pleaſure, as being

SIR,

Your moſt humble Servant,

H P.

---

[a] Lib. 12.

FINIS.

7 AP 53

INDEX.

A.

ABDALLA, his tomb deſcribed, vol. 1. Page 182.
Accident, a melancholly one, vol. 1. 53, 63. Another, vol. 1. 170.
Accidents cauſed by the violence of the winds on the lake of *Baikal*, vol. 1. 117. A terrible accident, vol. 2. 81.
Achim, the ſituation of that city, vol. 2. 115. The generoſity of the queen of *Achim*, *ibid.*
Adam's-Peak deſcribed, vol. 2. 80.
Adventure, an extraordinary one, with relation to a woman in child-bed, vol. 2. 166, 167.
Aeb-Chiaran, river of, vol. 1. 202
Alabaſter, mountains of, deſcribed, vol. 2. 190.
Alaetma, the ſituation and deſcription of that city, vol. 1. 76.
Alexander the Great burns *Perſepolis*, vol. 2. 34 Repents of that action, 44
Alinda Loeka, iſland of, vol. 1. 84.
Alley, a fine one deſcribed, vol. 2. 49.
Almond-trees, wild, vol. 2. 6.
Alphabet, *Javaneſe*, the characters of it, vol. 2. 109.
Ambaſſador, *Georgian*, accompanies the author in his travels in *Moſcovy*, vol. 2. 169, *&c.*
Ambaſſador, of *France*, his ſingular conduct and death, vol. 2. 142.
Anchediva, point of, vol. 1. 76.
Angoert, a bird ſo called, deſcription of it, vol. 1. 174.
Anthnoy, St. Miracles related of him, vol. 1. 71.
Animal, yielding Muſk, deſcribed, vol. 1. 116. The manner of taking it, and obtaining the muſk, *ibid.* Three ſorts of muſk, *ibid.*
Antipathy, between mules and bears, vol. 1. 186.
Apoſtacy, ſeveral *Dutchmen* guilty of it in *Perſia*. vol. 1. 233, 234.
Aqueduct, an account of one, vol. 1. 168.
Arabs, their manner of life, vol. 2. 4.
Aras, river of, its confluence with the *Kur*, and courſe, vol. 1. 162.
Archangel, city of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 14. The palace, court of juſtice, citadel, ſtreets, and other buildings, 15. A proſpect of that city delineated, 16. The revenues ariſing to the crown from that city, 17.
Ardevil, the ſituation and deſcription of it, vol. 1. p. 168. Its principal moſch, or moſque, *ibid.*
Areek, a fruit, its deſcription and uſe, vol. 2. 101.
Areſkine, doctor, the Czar's phyſician, vol. 2. 179. His penſion and merits, *ibid.*
Argum, caſtle of, its ſituation, vol. 1. 136.
Armenian, the ſudden death of one, and the ceremonials of his interment, vol. 1. 82. The fortitude and cruel death of another *Armenian*, vol. 1. 235.
Armenians, four *Armenians* murdered, vol. 1. 158, 159. The habit of the *Armenians*, 227. Cuſtoms obſerved at their birth, *ibid.* Their ceremonials of marriage, 228. And at their funerals, 229. The incivility of the women, 230. Their employments, and ignorance, *ibid.* Their miſapprehenſions with reſpect to religious worſhip, 231. Implacable hatred of two brothers, *ibid.* Several of them renounce chriſtianity, *ibid.* Their feſtival of the croſs, 264. Their grand faſt, vol. 2. 156.
Aſtracan, the author's firſt arrival at that city, vol. 1. 86. Its ſituation and deſcription, *ibid.* The author's ſecond arrival there in his return from the *Indies*, vol. 2. 166. His departure from thence, vol. 2. 169.
Atatſiaei, river of, or the *Paternal River*, vol. 1. 146.
Author, his departure from the *Hague*, vol. 1. p. 2. His arrival at *Archangel*, vol. 1. 5. Departure from thence, vol. 1. 18. His arrival at *Moſcow*, vol. 1. 21. His diſcourſe with Czar, *ibid.* Is ſent for by that prince, who ſhews him a ſurpriſing Spectacle, vol. 1. 28. Waits on the Empreſs, 29. Preſents a book of his travels to the Czar, 31. Paints the young princeſſes, *ibid.* and 37. Pays his compliments of congratulation to the Czar, on his return to *Moſcow*, 49. And on the ſucceſs of his arms, 51. Congratulates the Empreſs upon her coming into a new palace, *ibid.* His preſent to that princeſs, 52. Receives orders to attend the Czar to *Veronis*, 53. Sets out for that place, 57. Attends the Czar on board a ſhip, 62. His journey to *Tanais*, and arrival there, 62, 63. Takes leave of the Czar, who treats him in a very obliging manner, 63, 64. The author's departure from *Moſcow*, 72. His arrival at *Aſtracan*, 86. At *Samachi*, 147. At *Ardevil*, 165. At *Samgael*, 172. At *Com*, 176. At *Cachan*, 178. At *Perſepolis*, vol. 2. 8. At *Zjie-raes*, or *Chiras*, 45. At *Iſpahan*, 53. At *Zjie-raes*, 63. At *Jaron*, 66. At *Laer*, 68. At *Gamron*, 71. Sets out for the *Indies*, 75. Arrives at *Cochin*, 78. At *Gale*, 80. At *Batavia*, 89. At *Bantam*, 102. Is admitted to an audience of the king of *Bantam*, 104. Is favoured

with a ſecond audience, 106. Viſits a lady of a very extraordinary age, 112. His return to *Batavia*, 113. Arrival at *Gamron*, 131. At *Jaron*, 135. At *Zjie-raes*, 138. At *Iſpahan*, 140. At *Cachan*, 156. At *Com*, 157. At *Caſbin*, 158. At *Ardevil*, 161. At *Samachi*, 162. At *Nieſawaey*, 164. At *Aſtracan*, 166. At *Tzenogar*, 172. At *Zaritſa*, *ibid.* At *Saratof*, 173. At *Petroſkie*, 174. At *Pinſa*, 175. At *Inſera*, ibid. At *Demnik*, ibid. At *Wolodimir*, 177. At *Moſcow*, ibid. At *Waeſma*, 181. At *Smolenſko*, ibid. At *Boriſof*, 182. Return to *Smolenſko*, 184. To *Moſcow*, 185. Arrives at *Preſlau*, *Roſtof*, *Jereſlaw*, and *Wilogda*, 185, 186. At *Todma*, 188. At *Oeſtjoega*, 189. At *Archangel*, 191. At the *Texel* and *Amſterdam*, 197.

B.

BAIKAL, lake of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 118. Accidents occaſioned by the violence of the wind, *ibid.* The manner of croſſing it with camels and oxen, *ibid.* Strange ſuperſtition with relation to this lake, 119.

Baku, a fine port, vol. 1. 150.

Balbaroe, river of, vol. 2. 162.

Baliers, natives of *Java*; their arms, bravery, and fidelity to their maſters, vol. 2. 94.

Bamian, merchants, at *Iſpahan*; an account of them, vol. 2. 244. their dreſs, 245.

Bantam, gulf of, vol. 2. 89.

Bantam, king of, re-eſtabliſhed on the throne, by the forces of the *Dutch India* company, vol. 2. 102. The author admitted to the king's preſence, 104. The king's habit, *ibid.* His affability and converſation with the author, 105. ſituation of his pleaſure-houſe, 106. His guard, *ibid.* The author is admitted into his preſence the ſecond time, *ibid.* Deſcription of the queen, 107. Of the king's children, *ibid.* The king's perſon deſcribed, 109. His enſigns, *ibid.* Origin of the kings of *Bantam*, 110. A ſeries of them, *ibid.* The manner in which the king of *Bantam*'s letter was received by the *Dutch India* company, 114. Tombs erected for the family of the kings of *Bantam*, 112.

Bantam, city of, deſcribed, vol. 2. 102. The profile of it, 111. The caſtle, *ibid.* Situation and farther deſcription of the city, 112. Trade, *ibid.* Extent of the haven, *ibid.*

Bantam, kingdom of, its Situation, vol. 2. 112.

Baptiſm, of the croſs, vol. 1. 185.

Barabinſy, a race of *Calmucs*, tributaries to the Czar, vol. 1. 133. Their habitations and food, *ibid.* Their arms, ſurs, and *Saitan*, or idol, *ibid.* Their preſents to that idol, upon their obtaining any good fortune, *ibid.*

Barks, of leather, vol. 1. 139.

Batavia, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 2. 89. Rejoycings on the anniverſary of the taking of *Batavia* by the *Dutch*, 96. Deſcription and ſituation of *Batavia*, 117. Its arms and religion, *ibid.* The beauty of the city, *ibid.* Its citadel, *ibid.* The governor's palace, 118. Catalogue of the governors, *ibid.* The hall where the council aſſembles, 119. The governor's ſtables, *ibid.* The agreeable appearance of the canals, 120. An account of the ſtreets, churches, *&c.* *ibid.* The profile of *Batavia*, 121.

Baths, hot, vol. 1. 169.

Bed-muſwint, a remarkable flower, vol. 1. 187.

Bear, the adventure of one, vol. 1. 104. Antipathy beteen bears and mules, 186.

Beavers, incredible things related of them, vol. 1. 106. The caution of the *Ruſſians* in hunting them, *ibid.*

Beggars, *Ruſſian*, good regulations concerning them made by the Czar, vol. 1. 47. Story of a young beggar, *ibid.* An account of ſome *Tartarian* beggars, 76.

Bell, of a prodigious weight, in *Moſcow*, vol. 1. 40.

Bird, an extraordinary one deſcribed, vol. 1. 91. Deſcription of a large bird of prey, 146. Remarkable birds, 173, 174. 182. and vol. 2. 62, 113. A very ſingular bird deſcribed, vol. 2. 167.

Blew Mountain, deſcribed, vol. 2. 89.

Boars, wild, great ravages committed by them in *Perſia*, vol. 2. 62.

Bodon, colonel, beheaded by the Czar's order, vol. 1. 68.

Bogoſlova, a fine monaſtery, vol. 1. 74.

Bougis, *Indian* ſoldiers, their ridiculous manner of exerciſing, vol. 2. 101.

Boy, the boldneſs of one in climbing to the top of a high column, vol. 1. 182.

Bridge, a remarkable one deſcribed, vol. 1. 172. Deſcription of the noble bridge of *Alla-werdi-Khan*, 198. Of the bridge of *Shiras*, 199. A fine bridge deſcribed, vol. 2. 45.

Buffoons, at *Iſpahan*, an account of them, vol. 1. 195.

Building, a magnificent one at *Iſpahan*, vol. 1. 196. Buildings of a peculiar ſtructure, 136.

Burates, their manner of life, vol. 1. 115. Accidents they ſuſtain in hunting, *ibid.* Their ſtature and habit, 116. How they bury their women, *ibid.* Put their prieſts to death whenever they pleaſe, and for what reaſon, *ibid.* The place where they take an oath, *ibid.*

Buratſkoi, a fortreſs upon the river *Angara*, vol. 1. 115.

C.

CABACS, houſes on the *Moſcovite* roads, where liquors are ſold to travellers, vol. 2. 174.

Cachan, city of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 178. The rank of its governor, *ibid.* A royal garden there, *ibid.* Deſcription of the *Bazar*, *Caravanſeras*, public ſquares, and moſques, *ibid.* The number of mills there, *ibid.*

Calmucs, their depredations on the frontiers of the Czar's dominions, vol. 1. 102. Their manner of traffic, vol. 2. 174.

Cal-

Calmuc Tartars, their ravages, vol. 1. 81.

Canals, very fine ones in the city of *Batavia*, vol. 2. 120.

Cape, the frozen one, deſcribed, vol. 1. 137. The exceſſive coldneſs of its climate, *ibid.* and 139.

Capes of *Mouſandon*, and St. *James*, vol. 2. 75. 131. Of *Cama*, 76. Of *Komeryn*, 80. Of *Raſalgata*, 130. The grey cape, 194. The northern cape, 195.

Caravanſerai, a fine one deſcribed, vol. 2. 2. *Caravanſerai* of *Jeſdagaes*, 3.

Caravanſerai of *Majaer* delineated 141.

Caſan, its ſituation, vol. 1. 79.

Caſbin, the author's arrival there, vol. 2. 158. Its ſituation and deſcription, 159.

Caſpian-Sea, its ſituation and deſcription, vol. 1. 143.

Catamountain, or wild cat, deſcribed, vol. 2. 65.

Cataract, a famous one deſcribed, vol. 1. 112.

Cavern, deſcription of a burning one, vol. 1. 117.

Cedar, a branch of it delineated, together with its fruit, vol. 2. 186.

Ceilon, iſland of, the revenue received from thence by the *Dutch India* company, vol. 2. 83. An account of the money of that iſland, 85. The ſchools for the *Singales*, ibid. the habit of that people, *ibid.* This iſland abounds with elephants, *ibid.* An account of the cinnamon-tree, which grows there, and of its oil, 86. The ſituation of *Ceilon*, *ibid.*

Chamma, an agreeable fruit, deſcribed, vol. 1. 164.

Chardin, Sir *John*, refuted by the author, vol. 2. 198, *&c.* Acknowledges himſelf to be no draughts-man, 199. His miſrepreſentation of *Perſepolis* clearly refuted, *ib. &c.*

Chaſe, of rein-deer, a ſucceſsful one deſcribed, vol. 1. 126.

Cheſterick, a ſingular plant, deſcribed, vol. 2. 62.

Chelminar. Vide *Perſepolis*.

Chiaer-baag, or the fine walk of *Iſpahan*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 197. The delineation of it, 199.

Chineſe, an account of their comedies, vol. 2. 92. A remarkable inſtance of their regard to thoſe who have ſignalized themſelves in the ſervice of their country, 99. Great numbers of them in the city of *Batavia*, 120. Their habits, *ibid.* Their tombs, 125. Their ſentiments, with relation to their tombs, *ibid.* An account of one of their funeral proceſſions, 126. And of their funeral repaſt, *ibid.*

Chiras, or *Shiras*, See *Zjie-raes*.

Chriſt's Garment, a *Ruſſian* ſtory concerning it, vol. 1. 69.

Circaſſians, an account of their Manners, neatneſs, and habits, vol. 1. 64

Citrons, *Chineſe*, deſcribed, vol. 2. 100.

Clergy, *Perſian*, their habit and diſſimulation, vol. 1. 208, 209.

Cleſma, river of, vol 2. 177.

Cloth, deſcription of a remarkable ſort, vol. 1. 72

Cochin, city of, the ſituation and deſcription of it, vol. 2. 79. Great plenty of proviſion there, *ibid.*

Cocoa, an account of that fruit, vol. 2. 100.

Coffee, cultivated at *Batavia*, vol. 2. 100.

Cold, exceſſive in *Moſcovy*, vol. 1. 130.

Com, deſcription of that town, vol. 1. 176, 177. Delineated in profile, 178.

Comedians of Dantzic, imitated by the *Ruſſians*, vol. 1. 40.

Comedies, *Chineſe*, an account of them, vol. 2. 92.

Company, *Dutch India*, its revenue from the iſle of *Ceilon*, vol. 2. 83.

Comſhai, river of, the damage it occaſioned by its innundation, vol. 1. 177.

Coral, ſea, an account of it, vol. 2. 99.

Corn, a ſingular manner of cutting and threſhing it, vol. 2. 63.

Coſſacks, *Ruſſian*, their incurſions and cruelty, vol. 1. 122.

Cotton, an account of it, vol. 1. 174.

Cotton Trees, deſcribed, vol. 2. 133.

Country, account of a deſart one, vol. 1. 135.

Couriers, *Perſian*, an account of them, vol. 2. 2.

Crocodiles, an account of the taking of one that had devoured thirty two perſons, vol. 2. 81. Deſcription of thoſe animals, and the manner of taking them, 82. Their Strength, *ibid.*

Croſs, baptiſm of it, vol. 1. 185.

Croſſes, iſle of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 4.

Cuſtoms, *Ruſſian*, at birth and funerals, vol. 1. 55. ——Cuſtoms among the foreigners in *Ruſſia*, with regard to births and marriages, *ibid.* An abominable cuſtom among the *Tunguſes*, 123.

Czar, the ſignification of that word, vol. 1. 41.

Czar, of *Moſcovy*, the cuſtomary viſits made by that prince, vol. 1. 21. the author converſes with him, *ibid.* Lights the firſt fire-work, at a rejoycing for a victory, 24. Aſſiſts at a wedding of one of his favourites, 26. His majeſtic air on horſeback, *ibid.* Shews the author a ſurpriſing ſpectacle, 28. Carries him to the palace of the empreſs, 29. Aſſumes no higher title in his army, than that of a captain, 30. Magnificent entertainments given by him in the country, *ibid.* The author preſents his travels to the Czar, 31. The vigilance of that prince when a fire happens, *ibid.* Recreates himſelf upon the river *Moſko*, 32. His officers of ſtate 43. Creates the order of St. *Andrew*, ibid. The Czar an abſolute monarch, *ibid.* His counſellors of ſtate, and forces, 45. His triumphant entry into *Moſcow*, 49. The author congratulates the Czar upon his conqueſts, 51. That prince viſits Mr. *Brants*, 52, 68. His departure for *Veronis*, 57. The author takes leave of the Czar at *Veronis*, 63. The Czar arrives at *Moſcow*, vol. 2. 178. Receives the author very graciouſly upon his return from the *Indies*, ibid. Gives a grand entertainment on the firſt day of the year, 180.

Czars of Muſcovy, a ſeries of them, vol. 1. 44.

D

DAGESTAN, a ſmall province of *Georgia*, vol. 1. 143.

Dampier, captain, arrives at *Batavia*, vol. 2. 115. His adventures, 116.

INDEX.

Dancers, at the king of *Bantam*'s court, vol. 2. 107. Deſcription of the principal dancer, 108. And of ſeveral others, *ibid.*
Daniſloſſkoy, a fine large burgh, vol. 1. 20.
Dauria, deſcription of that country, vol. 1. 136.
Days and nights, their length in *Ruſſia*, vol. 1. 45. an account of thoſe days which are thought unlucky by the *Perſians*, vol. 2. 57.
Debtors, their puniſhment in *Muſcovy*, vol. 1. 43.
Deliverance, a miraculous one, vol. 1. 52.
Derbent, town of, its ſituation, vol. 1. 142. Citadel, 143. Tombs, *ibid.* The hill of *Derbent*, ibid. An odd cuſtom practiſed by the ſeamen upon their arrival at *Derbent*, ibid.
Dief-ſelon, or the giants mountain, deſcribed, vol. 2. 55.
Difference, between two *Tartar* princes, on the account of a woman, vol. 1. 72.
Director of the *Dutch* company, his arrival at *Iſpahan*, and the order of his march, vol. 2. 57, 58.
Dockyard, a deſcription of one belonging to the Czar, vol. 1. 14.
Doezinke, river of, vol. 1. 83.
Dogs, wild, their extraordinary howling, vol. 1. 89.
Don, river, a grand canal drawn from it, vol. 1. 58. The courſe of that river, 63.
Downs, by the *Caſpian Sea*, vol. 2. 164.
Dutchmen, an account of the apoſtacy of ſome of them in *Perſia*, vol. 1. 233, 234.
Dwarfs, belonging to the king of *Bantam*, vol. 2. 108.
Dwina, river, formed by the united ſtreams of two rivers, vol. 1. 96. The ſignification of its name, *ibid.* Its ſource, and progreſs, 18. A proſpect of it, vol. 2. 190.
Dwinko, *New*, caſtle of delineated, vol. 2. 194.

E.

EARTHQUAKE, an account of one, vol. 1. 120.
Edam, iſle of, its ſituation, vol. 2. 97.
Egyptians, their accuracy in ſtone-work, vol. 1. 151.
Elephants, in the iſle of *Ceilon*, the manner of taking and tranſporting them, vol. 2. 84.
Elks, manner of hunting them, vol. 1. 138.
Engano, iſle of, vol. 2. 87.
Ermins, an account of very fine ones, vol. 1. 105.
Execution, a ſevere one at *Moſcow*, vol. 1. 25. Execution of malefactors at *Moſcow*, vol. 2. 178.

F.

FALCON, large one taken, vol. 1. 3.
Faſt of the *Perſians*, an account of it, vol. 1. 184, 185.
Feaſts, in memory of the virgin *Mary*, vol. 1. 33. A magnificent one given by the king of *Perſia*, 187, 188.
Feſtival of the conſecration of water at *Moſcow*, vol. 1. 22. Feſtival of *Eaſter* in *Ruſſia*, 31. Feſtival in memory of the virgin *Mary*, 33. Feſtival of water in *Perſia*, 185. Feſtival of *Gaddernabir*, 187. Feſtival of the ſolar year, *ibid.* Feſtival of *Abraham*'s ſacrifice, 189. Feſtival of *Aidikadier*, 190. Feſtival of *Baba-ſoeds-ja-adier*, 263 Feſtival of *Phelonaphie* among the *Chineſe*, vol. 2. 99.
Filander, a very extraordinary animal, vol. 2. 101.
Fiſh, prodigious annual Shoals of a ſpecies called *Omuli*, in the river *Uda*, vol. 1. 120. The manner of taking them, *ibid.* Deſcription of the milk fiſh, 181. An extraordinary fiſh, vol. 2. 65. A curious Deſcription of ſeveral other ſpecies of fiſh, 77, 78. An account of a fiſh that devours men, 82. Several other remarkable fiſh deſcribed, 97, 98, 99.
Flies, an account of very troubleſome ones, vol. 1. 140.
Flood, an account of one, vol. 1. 31. A great one at *Archangel*, 33.
Fountain, a remarkable one, vol. 1. 179.
Fox, the ſubtlety of a *Ruſſian* one, vol. 1. 105.
Frontiers, of *Siberia* and *China*, vol. 1. 137.
Fruits, namely, kaffers and lanſe, vol. 2. 88. froete kafri, 91. Manguſtangus, gojaves, klapper royal, froete rottan, piepjenje, jamboes, ſhelfruit, annona, *ibid.* Pompelmoeſes, 92. Pieſang, *ibid.* Jaka, 100. Namnam, *ibid.* Bimbling, 101. Piek, 114. Froete mieri, froete tiackou, kandeke, baple kammie, *ibid.*
Furs, admirable one in *Muſcovy*, vol. 1. 101, and 120.

G.

GALE, a deſcription of that city, vol. 2. 84. Its fortifications, 85. Proviſions, current money, and ſchools, *ibid.*
Gallitzin, prince, his character, vol. 2. 193.
Gamron, the authors arrival at that city, vol. 2. 71. Deſcription of *Gamron*, 73. A view of it delineated, 74. The burying place of the *Europeans* there, *ibid.* A great mortality there in the ſummer ſeaſon, *ibid.* An extraordinary tree there, 132. Deſcription of the cotton plants, and a white flower there, calld *Juca*, 133. The arrival of the governor, *ibid.*
Ganſie, city of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 150.
Giant mountain, deſcribed, vol. 2. 55.
Goroſponoſſkie, mountain of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 83.
Governor general of the *Indies*, *Dutch*, his train, vol. 2. 122. The manner in which his troops are exerciſed, *ibid.* His arduous ſtation, *ibid.* His pleaſure-houſe, 124. An entertainment given by him, and his civility to the author, 127. A liſt of the *Dutch* governors of the *Eaſt-Indies*, 118.
Grottos, antient ones, vol. 2. 65, 190. Deſcription of a grotto near *Zjie-raes*, 136.
Guebres, the author's converſation with a Prieſt of the *Guebres*, vol. 2. 143. Their

opinion of the creation of the world, and God's omnipotence, 143. Their tradition concerning rebellious angels, *ibid.* Their notions with reſpect to the creation and fall of man, *ibid.* The food they are prohibited from eating, 144. Their cuſtoms with regard to the birth of infants, *ibid.* Their marriages, *ibid.* Burials, 145. Their days of prayer, *ibid.* Their calculations of the years of the world, *ibid.* Kings of the *Guebres*, *ibid.* and 146.

Gunpowder, a miſfortune occaſioned by it, vol. 1. 6.

H.

HALI, the anniverſary of that pretended prophet's death, vol. 1. 187.

Herbs, an account of an exceeding venomous one, vol. 1. 164.

Huſſein, a celebrated *Perſian* ſaint; the hiſtory of him, and manner of mourning for him, vol. 1. 215. The proceſſion of *Huſſein*, vol. 2. 54.

Hyde, Dr. his miſapprehenſion of a figure on a tomb near *Perſepolis*, vol. 2. 41.

I.

JAKOETS, a *Tartarian* people; an account of them, vol. 1. 13.

Jakutes, their peculiar dreſs, vol. 1. 139. Their belief, and funerals, *ibid.* Their language and temper, *ibid.*

Jakutſkoi, a town on the great river *Lena*, vol. 1. 139.

Jarauna, fortreſs of, vol. 1. 120. An account of the people of the country, *ibid.*

Jaron, the authors arrival there, vol. 2. 66. The ſituation of that city, and the proſpect of it delineated, *ibid.*

Java, emperor of, his preſent to the *Dutch India* company, who replaced him on the throne, vol. 2. 114.

Javanites, the characters of their alphabet, vol. 2. 109. Their religion, 110.

Ibrahim, Tomb of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 156.

Jediekombert, or the ſeven towers, an account of the tombs there, vol. 1. 152. Tomb of a ſaint there, *ibid.* Other tombs, 153. A fine tower, *ibid.*

Jekutſkoi, a town on the river *Angara*, vol. 1. 117. Deſcription of it, *ibid.*

Jeniſia, river, riſes to the ſouthward of *Tartary*, vol. 1. 140. The banks of it occupied by the *Ruſſians*, *ibid.*

Jenizeſkoi, a deſcription of that city, vol. 1. 111.

Jereſlau, the author's arrival in that city, vol. 1. 20. vol. 2. 185. Deſcription of it, *ibid.*

Jeſdagaes, *Caravanſerai* of, deſcribed, vol. 2. 3. Deſcription of the village of *Jeſdagaes*, ibid. A *Perſian* proverb relating to it, *ibid.* and 4.

Jeſuits, their ſevere treatment by the *Perſians*, vol. 2. 162.

Ilinſkoi, a city on the river *Ilni*, vol. 1. 112.

Illneſs, account of a ſudden one, vol. 1. 82.

Imperial Iſland, vol. 2. 87.

Indigo, a deſcription of that plant, 2. vol. 100.

Ingodda, river of, vol. 1. 121.

Joeg, river, its courſe deſcribed, vol. 2. 189.

Inſera, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 2. 175. Proviſions exceeding cheap there, *ibid.* Deſcription of that city, *ibid.*

Inſtruments of muſic, an account of thoſe uſed in *Perſia*, vol. 1. 197.

Irtis, river, a deſcription of it, vol. 1. 103. An account of the people who inhabit its banks, 104.

Isbrant Ides, reaſons for inſerting in this work his travels through *Muſcovy* to *China*, vol. 1. 96. His departure from *Moſcow*, *ibid.* Source of the *Dwina*, *ibid.* The city of the great *Uſtiga*, ibid. Country of the *Syrenes*, 97. Fortreſs of *Kaigorod*, ibid. Pillaged by pirates, *ibid.* Deſcription of *Solikamſkoi* and its ſaltworks, 98. Deſcription of the country of the *Tartars* of *Siberia*, 99. Deſcription of the river *Irtis*, 103. Adventure of a bear, 104. Sledges drawn by dogs, *ibid.* Deſcription of thoſe dogs, 105. Adventure and cunning of a fox, *ibid.* Deſcription of otters, *ibid.* Incredible things related of thoſe creatures, 106. Deſcription of the *Oſtiacs*, 106——109. Teeth and bones of the mammut, 110. Different opinions concerning that creature, 111. Prodigious teeth of the mammut, *ibid.* Deſcription of the city of *Jenizeſkoi*, ibid. Deſcription of the magicians torrent 112. Deſcription of the *Tunguſes* and their *Shaman*, 113. Deſcription of the *Burates*, 115. Creatures that yield muſk, 116. Deſcription of *Jekutſkoi*, 117. A burning cave, *ibid.* Lake of *Baikal* deſcribed, 118. The manner of croſſing it with camels and oxen, *ibid.* Accidents cauſed by the violence of the winds, *ibid.* Strange ſuperſtition about the lake of *Baikal.* 119. Caſtle of *Katania*, *ib.* Water diſtilled from mares milk, 123. An abominable cuſtom among the *Tungeſes*, *ibid.* Great deſert of *Tartary*, 124. A dreadful fire, 125. Great trouble of a caravan, *ibid.* A fortunate chaſe, 126. An intollerable famine, 127. A lucky fiſhing, *ibid.* The abode of a *Shaman*, or magician, *ibid.* Recapitulation of Mr. *Iſbrant*'s journey, 128. General deſcription of *Siberia*, 129. Several ſorts of *Samoeds*, *ibid.* Delineation of one of their ſledges drawn by rein-deer, 130. *Weygat*'s ſtraits, 131. Deſcription of the people called *Pojas*, 132. River of *Kungur*, ibid. *Tartars* of *Uſſi* and *Baſkir*, 133. Other *Tartars*, ibid. Their dreſs, *ibid.* They are good Soldiers, *ibid.* A lake full of ſalt, *ibid.* Deſcription of *Tora*, and the adjacent country, *ibid.* The food and arms of the inhabitants, 134. Their idol, and preſent to their *Saitan*, *ibid.* Trade of *Tomſkoi* with *China*, *ibid.* A deſert country, 135. Country of the *Kirgiſes*, ibid. Their arms and language, *ibid.* *Tunguſes* and *Burates*, ibid. Chiefs of the *Mongales*, ibid. Strength and habit of the *Tunguſes*, 136. Their chaſe, religion, and diverſions, *ibid.* Deſcription of *Dau-*

ria, 136. Deſcription of the *Koreiſi*, 137. Iſlanders of thoſe parts, and other nations, *ibid.* Deſcription of the frozen cape, *ibid.* Mountains of ice, 139. The river *Lena*, and town of *Jakutſkoi*, ibid. Leathern barks, *ibid.* Funerals, *ibid.* The language and temper of the natives, *ibid.* Cuſtom of the *Jukogates* with regard to their dead, *ibid.* The rivers *Lena*, and *Ieniſia*, 138.

Iſdwieſinje, a fine church in the city of *Aſtracan*, vol. 1. 87.

Iſland, of *Loppe*, vol. 1. 3. Of *Croſſes*, 4. A new one diſcovered to the left of *China*, 14.

Iſlands of *Alinda Loeka*, vol. 1. 84. Of *Serpindſke*, ibid. *Engano*, vol. 2. 87. *Imperial Iſland*, ibid. *Prince's Iſland*, ibid. Iſlands of *Alcmaer*, *Eukhuiſen*, *Leiden*, *Hoorn*, and *Smith*, 99. Of *Amſterdam*, *Middlebourg*, *Combuis*, and *Poeledoa*, 102. *Reſtleſs Iſland*, 124. Iſlands of *Ormus*, *Lareke*, and *Kiſmus*, 131.

Iſmaelhoff, palace of, an account of its conſecration, vol. 1. 51.

Iſpahan, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 1. 180. and vol. 2. 140. Proſpect of that city from without, vol. 1. 191. Its gates, 192. Wards of the city, 193. Subdiviſions of it, *ibid.* Its original name, *ibid.* Deſcription of the king's palace, 194, and 196. The citadel, 194. The *Meydoen*, or great ſquare, (one of the chief ornaments of the city) deſcribed, 194 and 196. Deſcription of the royal moſch in the *Meydoen*, 195. Tournaments held in the *Meydoen*, ibid. Deſcription of the *Chiaer-baeg*, or the fine walk of trees in *Iſpahan*, 197. Five different proſpects of it delineated, 199. Another fine proſpect of it, 202. Deſcription of the new bridge of *Allawerdi Khan*, 198. Deſcription of the bridge of *Shiras*, 199, &c.

Iwan, lake of, vol. 1. 58.

Juca, a plant, deſcribed, vol. 2. 133.

Jukogates, a heathen people, vol. 1. 139. Their cuſtom with regard to their dead, *ibid.*

Julfa, the ſuburb of *Iſpahan*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 225. New and old *Julfa*, *ibid.* The principal buildings of *Julfa*, 226. Neatneſs of the Houſes, *ibid.*

Juſtice, held in great veneration by the ancient *Perſians*, vol. 2. 39.

K.

KACKERLACKES, mountaineers of of the iſles ſoutheaſt of *Ternate*, vol. 2. 107. Have a much longer night than day, and cannot bear the light of the ſun, *ibid.*

Kaffers, an agreeable fruit, vol. 1. p. 88.

Kaigrod, a fortreſs on the river *Kama*, vol. 1. 97. Invaded by pirates, *ibid.*

Kalbabaer, an extraordinary plant, vol. 2. 115.

Kala-kuluſtakan, mountain of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 151.

Kama, river of deſcribed, vol. 1. 79.

Kamuſchinka, river of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 83.

Karackalouw, point of, vol. 2. 89.

Kaſiemof, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 75.

Kaſkar, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. p. 81.

Kaſtelein, Mr. director of the *Dutch India* company at *Iſpahan*, vol. 1. 180. Created director of the company's affairs at *Gamron*, vol. 2. 72. Deſcription of his country-houſe, 94.

Kaſua, a *Perſian* litter, vol. 2. 58.

Katania, caſtle of, vol. 1. 119.

Keits, director, inſcription on his tomb, vol. 1. 68.

Kempſer, his account of the ruins of *Perſepolis* refuted, vol 2. 215, &c.

Kings of *Bantam*, their origin, vol. 1. 110. A ſeries of them, *ibid.* A ſeries of the kings of the *Guebres*, 145. A liſt of the *Perſian* kings who have reigned in ſucceſſion from the death of *Alexander the Great* to the preſent time, 147, &c.

Kings of *Perſia*, their education and manner of life, vol. 1. 202, 203. The arduous ſtation and conduct of their firſt miniſter, 204. Their officers, 205, &c. The funeral ſolemnities of a king of *Perſia* deſcribed, 210. Coronation and qualities of his ſucceſſor, 210, 211. The contempt entertained of him by his Subjects, 212.

Kirgiſes, an account of their country, vol. 1. 135. Their arms and language, *ibid.*

Kiſiloſan, river of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 172.

Kiſmus, iſle of, vol. 2. 131.

Kogſhaga, town of, vol. 1. 79.

Kolmolgora, city of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 18. The civility of its archbiſhop to the author, *ibid.*

Kolommenſke, city of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 73.

Kolomna, ſituation of that city, vol. 1. 58. deſcribed and delineated, 73.

Konni Tunguſi, heathens under the dominion of the Czar, vol. 1. 122. An account of of their chief, *ibid.* Their habitations and worſhip, 123. Dreſs and arms of the women, *ibid.* Diſtil water from mares milk, and why they uſe that milk, *ibid.* Their time of hunting; their bread and fiſhing, *ibid.* An abominable cuſtom practiſed among them, *ibid.*

Koreiſi, an account of that people, vol. 1. 137.

Korug, a cry in *Perſia*, to warn the people, that the king is coming with his concubines, vol. 1. 234.

Kovers, iſle of, vol. 2. 76.

Kraſſo, enſign, hanged by the Czar's order, vol. 1. 68.

Kungur, river of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 132.

Kuſmademianſki, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 78.

Kur, river of, its confluence with the *Aras*, and courſe, vol. 1. 162. A great alteration in the banks of theſe united rivers, vol. 2. 162.

L.

LADY, the authors viſit to one of a very extraordinary Age at *Bantam*, vol. 2. 112.

Laer, the metropolis of that ancient kingdom con-

conquer'd by the *Perſians*, vol. 2. 69. Its ſituation, and beautiful ſtone Bazar, *ibid.* The caſtle, *ibid.* A proſpect of the city delineated, *ibid.*

Lake, full of ſalt, vol. 1. 133.

Lapland, *Ruſſian*, the coaſt of it deſcribed, vol. 1. 4. vol. 2. 194.

Lareke, iſle of, deſcribed, vol. 2. 75.

Lena, river of, vol. 1. 139. Teeth and other bones of the mammut found on its banks, *ibid.*

Lizard, ſea, a creature taken in the *Perſian* gulph, vol. 1. 181. Its form and medicinal qualities, *ibid.*

Loeffoert, iſle of, vol. 2. 195.

Loppe, iſle of, vol. 1. 3.

Luke, St. an account of a picture ſaid to be painted by him, vol. 1. 70.

M.

MACEDONIANS, the pillage of the famous city of *Perſepolis* given up to them by *Alexander the Great*, vol. 2. 42.

Machine, an account of a ſtrange one, vol. 1. 107.

Madroen, a *Perſian* plant, deſcribed, vol. 2. 61. A liquor diſtilled from it as ſtrong as ginger, *ibid.* The quality of its ſeed, *ibid.*

Magician, *Ruſſian*, an account of one, vol. 1. 127.

Makoſkoi, deſcription of the country about it, vol. 1. 110.

Malabar, coaſt of, vol. 2. 76.

Mammut, a curious account of that ſurpriſing animal, vol. 1. 119, 111.

Mangeloor, a place belonging to the *Dutch India* company, vol. 2. 77.

Marriage, an account of a ſtrange one, vol. 1. 264.

Mauſoleum, a ſumptuous one of *Sefi*, king of *Perſia*, vol 1. 166.

Media, ruins of it deſcribed, vol. 1. 151.

Merchants, a caravan of them robbed, vol. 2. 138.

Meydoen, or the great ſquare in *Iſpahan*, a fine deſcription of it, vol. 1. 194, 196.

Mill, an extraordinary one deſcribed, vol. 1. 62. A *Perſian* corn-mill, 168. An *Indian* ſugar-mill, vol. 2. 99.

Mohammedans, their authority in *Perſia*, vol. 1. 231.

Monaſtery, of *Smolenſki*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 73. Deſcription of a fine monaſtery, 74.

Moon, an account of an eclipſe of it, vol. 1. 234.

Moruma, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 76.

Moſcow, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 1. 21. Authors miſinformed with reſpect to its extent, 38. Deſcription of *Moſcow*, *ib.* Its gates, *ibid.* The city wall, 40. The palace, *ibid.* The church of *Saboor*, ibid. A new arſenal, *ibid.* The ſecond part of the town, *ibid.* & 41. The red wall, great church, market, and warehouſes of merchants, 41. The third and fourth diviſions of the town, *ibid.* Great number of churches and monaſteries, with their ſtructure, *ibid.* 42. A particular deſcription of the church of St. *Saboor*, 69, 70. Church of the patriarchs, 70. Churches of St. *Michael*, and of the annunciation, 71. The author's ſecond arrival at *Moſcow*, in his return from the *Indies*, vol. 2. 177. A deſcription of the new buildings which had been erected there, ſince his firſt departure from thence, vol. 2. 179. A manufactory of cloth and glaſs works erected at *Moſcow*, vol. 2. 180.

Mountains, on the coaſt of *Norway*, delineated, vol. 1. 3. Mountain of the giants, deſcribed, vol. 2. 55. Blew mountain, 89. Mountain of *Orlees*, 191.

Mountains, red, vol. 1. 141. Mountains called *the Brothers*, 169. Mountains of alabaſter, vol. 2. 190.

Moſch, or moſque, of *Solomon*'s mother, vol. 2. 138.

Mules, the antipathy between them and bears, vol. 1. 86.

Mummy, a famous drug in *Perſia*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 228. How firſt diſcovered, *ibid.* Its ſalutary virtue, *ibid.* 229.

Mungaſeja, town of, vol. 1. 138.

Muſcovites, expoſed to the depredations of the *Perſians*, vol. 2. 162, 163.

Muſcovy, its ſituation, vol. 1. 44.

N.

NAXI Ruſtan, its ſituation, vol. 2. 31. A curious account of its tombs and other antiquities, *ibid.* &c.

Neglina, a ſmall river, running through part of *Moſcow*, vol. 1. 41.

Nerinſkoi, its ſituation, vol. 1. 122. An account of the productions of the adjacent country, *ibid.* Two ſorts of heathen inhabitants, *ibid.*

Nikole Saraiſke, town of, vol. 1. 67.

Niſiwaey, the incommodious ſituation of its coaſt, vol. 1. 144. The author's arrival at that place, in his return to *Holland*, vol. 2. 164, The proſpect of it delineated, *ibid.*

Niſen, or *Nieſna*, the capital of a ſmall Dutchy of that name, vol. 1. 76. Its ſituation and deſcription, vol. 1. 76, 77. The adjacent country very agreeable, 77.

North and *South Foele*, or unknown rocks, vol. 2. 195.

Norway, mountains on its northern coaſt, vol. 2. 195.

Notteburg, taken by the Czar's forces, vol. 1. 48.

Nut-oil, the beſt in the world, produced in the weſtern part of *Perſia*, vol. 1. 150.

O.

OBY, river, abounds in fiſh, vol. 1. 107. the banks of it lie uncultivated, from the ſea to the river of *Tun*, and for what reaſon, 109. Their natural productions, *ibid.*

Occa, river of, deſcribed, vol. 1 74 The courſe of it delineated, vol. 2. 176

Oeſſa, river of, deſcribed vol. 1. 80.
Oeſtjoega, city of, its ſituation and deſcription, vol. 2. 189.
Oranjenburg, deſcribed, vol. 1. 59.
Orlees, mountain of, deſcribed, vol. 2. 191.
Ormus, iſle of, its ſituation, &c. vol. 2. 74.
Orotſa, or the dry river, vol. 1. 146.
Oſtiacs, a people inhabiting the banks of the *Oby*, vol. 1. 106. An account of their religion, *ibid.* 107. Their marriages, funerals, and dreſs, 107. They ſometimes periſh wilfully in the ſnow, *ibid.* Their manner of treating a bear they have hunted down, 108. An account of one of their petty princes, *ibid.* Deſcription of his cabin, and his women, *ibid.* Their manner of ſmoking, 109. Their ignorance, *ibid.* Their habitations in the winter, *ibid.*
Otters, *Ruſſian*, an account of them, vol. 1. 105.
Owen, Mr. agent of the *Engliſh* factory at *Iſpahan*, an account of his death, and the ceremonials at his funeral, vol. 1. 263, 264.

P.

PAES-JELEK, a remarkable bird, vol. 1. 182.
Palace, of the king of *Perſia* deſcribed, vol. 1. 194, 196.
Palm-trees, vaſt plantations of them in the city of *Jaron*, vol. 2. 66. Their uſefulneſs, *ibid.*
Paraſols, antiently in uſe among the *Perſians*, vol. 2. 39. The time when firſt invented, *ibid.*
Parruwas, an account of that people, vol. 1. 84.
Paſture for camels, an account of an excellent one, vol. 1. 163.
Patriarchs, of *Ruſſia*, a ſeries of them, vol. 1. 44.
Peak, of *Adam*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 80.
Pearl-fiſhery in the iſland of *Ceilon*, an account of it, vol. 2. 84.
People, *Savage*, a deſcription of their manners, habitations, and way of living, vol. 1. 6. 14.
Pereſlaw Soleſkoi, the ſituation of that city, vol. 1. 20.
Perſepolis, roads to it, vol. 2. 7. ſituation of its noble ruins, 9. 33. Called *Chelminar*, and for what reaſon, 9. 10. An accurate deſcription of them, 10. &c. The interior part of thoſe antiquities deſcribed, 11. Figures of animals, *ibid.* Two noble columns deſcribed, 12. The loftieſt part of thoſe ruins deſcribed, 14. Antique figures 15. Subterranean paſſages, 16. A ſtructure to the ſouth, *ibid.* A more particular deſcription of thoſe ruins, in four different views, 19, 20. A particular deſcription of the ſeveral pieces, 20, &c. The obſcurity of the antient characters, 23. The architecture of thoſe ruins, 25. The cauſe of the miſerable ſtate to which they are now reduced, 26. The royal tombs, *ibid.* The uncertainty with reſpect to the tomb of *Darius*, 27. A ſecond ſurvey of thoſe antiquities, 28, &c. The negligence of travellers in their account of *Perſepolis*, 29. The drapery of the figures, *ibid.* Some irregularities obſervable in them, *ibid.* The proportions well kept, *ibid.* The city of *Perſepolis* entirely deſtroyed, 30. Birds continually harbouring in thoſe ruins, 31. Different names of *Perſepolis*, 34 The ſentiments of the *Perſian* authors with relation to the founder of *Perſepolis*, 35. The accounts of modern writers uncertain, *ibid.* The author's opinion, *ibid.* The obſervations of *Diodorus Siculus*, 36. The ruins of *Chelminar* are thoſe of the antient palace of *Perſepolis*, which was deſtroyed by by *Alexander the Great*, ibid. Proofs drawn from the figures and ornaments, 37. The military habit of the *Perſians* and *Medes*, ibid. An evident proof taken from the ſtair-caſe, 58. Juſtice repreſented by a balance, 39. Why ſphinxes were repreſented with wings, *ibid.* *Paraſols* uſed by the antient *Perſians*, ibid. The plaited robes of the Medes, *ibid.* The tomb near *Perſepolis*, 40. The ſun an antient divinity of the *Perſians*, 41. Obſervations concerning the founder of the royal palace of *Perſepolis*, 42. The palace of *Perſepolis* built, or adorned, with the ſpoils of *Egypt*, 43.
Perſia, one of the moſt deſpotic monarchies in the word, vol. 1. 202. The three orders of men in that kingdom, 210. The coin of *Perſia*, 222. A liſt of the kings who have reigned in *Perſia*, from the death of *Alexander the Great* to the preſent time, vol. 2. 147, &c.
Perſia, king of, preſents made to him, vol. 1. 187. The manner of his education, 202. An account of the death and funeral of a king of *Perſia*, 210. Coronation of the new king, *ibid.* The author draws his picture, 211. That prince a great lover of building, *ibid.* Is deſpiſed by his ſubjects, 212.
Perſians, magnificence of the *Perſian* lords, vol. 1. 188. The *Perſian* governors inſatiably deſirous of riches, 203. An account of the firſt miniſter, 204. The infidelity of the *Perſians*, ibid. An account of the great officers of *Perſia*, 205—208. Eccleſiaſtical officers, 208. Hypocriſy of the clergy, *ibid.* Their habit and diſſimulation, 209. Men of letters, and their diſſimulation, *ibid.* Eunuchs in favour, 211. The contempt the *Perſians* had of the king who reigned in the author's time, 212. The habit of the *Perſians*, *ibid.* Dreſs of the porters of the court, 214. A male, and a female ſlave, in portraiture, *ibid.* The manner in which the *Perſians* mourn for *Huſſein*, 215. A great proceſſion on that occaſion, with the explication of it, 216, 217. Parade of the two diviſions of the city, 217, 218. Deſcription of another proceſſion, 218. Precautions taken to prevent diſorders on that occaſion, *ibid.* A ſuperſtitious notion entertained by the *Perſians*, *ibid.* An account of the *Perſian* painters, 220. Fine colours in *Perſia*, ibid.

INDEX.

The manner in which ſome of the *Perſian* books are ornamented, 220. The avarice of the *Perſians*, ibid. Cuſtoms at births, 221. Of their circumciſion, marriages, concubines, and dower of maidens, *ibid.* Deſcription of ſeveral *Perſian* birds, trees, fruits, plants, and flowers, 224, 227. Plenty and cheapneſs of proviſions, 227, 228. Deſcription of a famous *Perſian* drugs, 228.
Phænomenon, an extraordinary one deſcribed, vol. 2. 196.
Phelo, a *Chineſe*, makes a diſcovery of ſalt, vol. 2. 99.
Piedrakes, mountain of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 154. Several tombs, or the top of it, *ibid.* A ſuperſtitious belief, with reſpect to one of thoſe tombs, 155.
Pinſa, a large city of *Muſcovy*; its ſituation and buildings, vol. 2. 175.
Pirate, *Siberia* reduced to the obedience of the Czar by one, vol. 1. 102. The death of that pirate, 103.
Piſtachio-trees, deſcribed, together with their leaves and nuts, vol. 1. 225.
Plantations, a deſcription of ſome famous ones, vol. 1. 241.
Plants, a ſingular one deſcribed, vol. 2. 62. medicinal plants in the iſland of *Ceilon*, vol. 2. 83.
Plants, pepper, vol. 2. 95.
Plants, *Perſian*, a deſcription of ſeveral, vol. 1. 224, *&c.*
Poeledoa, iſland of, vol. 2. 102.
Pojas, deſcription of a rock ſo called, vol. 1. 132.
Poloſke, office of, conſumed by fire, vol. 1. 48.
Poots-fioert, mountain of, vol. 2. 195.
Precipices, ſrightful ones, vol. 1. 171.
Preſent, the author's to the Czarina dowager of *Ruſſia*, vol. 1. 52. Other preſents made to that princeſs, 53. Preſents made to the king of *Perſia*, 187.
Princes-iſland, vol. 2. 87.
Proſpect, a fine one delineated, vol. 1. 172.
Puniſhments, inflicted in *Muſcovy*, vol. 1. 43. The puniſhment of debtors, *ibid.*
Pyramid, deſcription of one, vol. 1. 177.
Pyrmaraes, village of, vol. 1. 156. Two famous tombs there, *ibid.*

Q.

QUARREL, an account of one between ſome *Engliſh* and *Perſians*, vol. 1. 235.
Queen of *Achim*, a noble inſtance of her generoſity, vol. 2. 115.
Queen of *Bantam*, deſcription of her perſon, habit, and behaviour, vol. 2. 107.

R.

REIN-DEER, horſes fly from them, vol. 1. 10. Their extraordinary Swiftneſs, *ibid.* The manner of taking them, *ib.* Food of rein-deer, 11. Deſcription of that animal, *ibid.*
Reliques, of ſaints, vol. 1. 71.
Remedy, an admirable one, for curing a ſuppreſſion of urine, vol. 1. 115.
Rhubarb, deſcription of it, vol. 1. 188, 189.
Rivers, an account of ſome that are but little known, vol. 1. 151. River of *Atataſiaei*, or the paternal river, 146. Dry river, *ibid.* River of *Sahanſha*, 147.
Robe, ſent to the governor of *Samachi*, vol. 1. 147.
Rocks, of a ſurpriſing form, vol. 1. 176.
Romans, their delicacies in ſtone-work, vol. 1. 151.
Roſtof, city of, deſcription of it, vol. 1. 20.
Ruins, of *Kallay Fandus*, delineated, vol. 2. 48.
Ruſſia, manner of travelling in that country, vol. 1. 18. Its productions, gardens, and fiſh-ponds, 35. its principal revenues, 45. The length of days and nights there, *ibid.* Changes introduced into that empire by the Czar, 46. Regulations concerning beggars, 47. Story of a young beggar, *ibid.* Alterations in the offices, 48. Fortified places, *ibid.* Treaſury of the ſtate, *ibid.* The expence of ſhip-building raiſed upon the public, *ibid.* Fine qualities of the hereditary prince, *ibid.* ſalt-works, vol. 2. 189.
Ruſſians, their manners and genius, vol. 1. 36. 40. Their manner of writing and ſewing, 36, 37. *Ruſſian* hermits, 37. The *Ruſſian* habits reformed, 46. The manner in which they are obliged to ſhave, *ibid.* Their cuſtoms, with reſpect to births and funerals, 55. Cuſtoms among ſtrangers who reſide in *Ruſſia*, ibid. The *Ruſſians* exceſſive drinkers, 77, 78.

S.

SABAKZAR, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 79.
Sagoe, its uſe, vol. 1. 115.
Sahanſha, river of, vol. 1. 147.
Saint, an account of a *Ruſſian* one, vol. 2. 192.
Salt, the diſcovery of it by *Phelo*, a *Chineſe*, vol. 2. 99.
Salt-works, in *Ruſſia*, an account of them, vol. 2. 189.
Samachi, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 1. 147. vol. 2. 162. Dearneſs of proviſions there, vol. 1. 147. Its ſituation, 148. The Khan's houſe, market, ſhops, and bazars, 149. Extent of the Khan's government, *ibid.* Deſcription of his perſon, 150. Soil of *Samachi*, ibid. The *Muſcovites* who live there expoſed to injurious treatment, vol. 2. 163. the adjacent country beautiful, *ibid.*
Samara, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 81.
Samgael, deſcription of that city, vol. 1. 172. The proſpect of it delineated, 173. The *Samgaels* commit piracy, vol. 2. 165.
Samgael, mountain of, vol. 1. 141. The coaſt of *Samgael* very dangerous, 142.
Samoeds, a wild people in *Ruſſia*, vol. 1. 6. Deſcription of their perſons, habit, food, and manners of life, 7. Their tents, 8. Stench of that people inſupportable, *ibid.* Repreſentation of a *Samoed* man and woman, *ib.* Their manner of taking rein-deer, 10. Their water-chaſe, and the danger which attends it, 11. The author's treatment of a *Samoed* woman, and his converſation with her, *ibid.* Manners and cuſtoms of the *Samoeds*, 12. Their marriages, *ibid.* Their belief, *ibid.* Prieſt and magician of the *Samoeds*, 13. Several ſorts of *Samoeds*, 129. Delineation of a ſledge drawn by rein-deer,

and uſed by the *Samoeds*, 130.
Saratof, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 82.
Saroegamis, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 83.
Savages, account of ſome that were brought to *Batavia*, vol. 2. 90, 91.
Sawalan, mountain of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 178.
Schamanſkoi, or the torrent of the magician deſcribed, vol. 1. 112. The manner of navigating it, *ibid.* Many veſſels loſt by the unſkilfulneſs of pilots, 113.
Schamberſkie, city of, vol. 1. 19.
Schilka, river of, vol. 1. 121.
Schoppin, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 66.
Sea-dogs, or ſeals, an account of them, vol. 1. 145.
Sena, tree, vol. 1. 175. Deſcription of it, vol. 2. 224, 225.
Serengſing, a plant, from whence a country in *India* is denominated, vol. 2. 95. Abundance of Apes in that country, *ibid.*
Serpinſkie, iſle of, vol. 1. 84.
Shaman, or magician, an account of one, vol. 1. 127. Account of a *Tunguſe* Shaman, or magician, 113.
Sheep, 50000 of them killed and ate at *Iſpahan*, on one feſtival day, vol. 1. 190.
Shipwreck, of the author on the river *Volga*, vol. 2. 169. a curious account of a very unhappy ſhipwreck, 192.
Siberia, reduced to the obedience of the Czar, by a pirate, vol. 1. 102. The death of that pirate, 103. A general deſcription of that country, 129.
Sieſeron, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 81.
Silk, the manner of winding it, in *Perſia*, vol. 1. 162.
Simbierſka, antiently a large city, vol. 1. 79. Deſcription of it, *ibid.*
Singales, their habits deſcribed, vol. 2. 85. Are the offspring of *European* and *Mooriſh* parents, *ibid.*
Siperakan, a ſingular bird, vol. 2. 62.
Sledges, drawn by dogs, and how, vol. 1. 104. Delineation of a *Samoed's* ſledge drawn by rein-deer, 130.
Smolenſkoi, monaſtery of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 73.
Smolenſko, the author's arrival at that city, vol. 2. 181. Terrible ravages committed by the *Ruſſians*, in the adjacent country, to prevent the *Swedes* from ſubſiſting there, 182. The calamitous ſtate of the peaſants finely deſcribed, *ibid.* The dangers to which the author was expoſed in travelling through that part the of country, *ib.* His return to *Smolenſko*, 184.
Sondak, a fiſh, vol. 1. 89.
Soldiers, *Indian*, the manner of their exerciſing at *Batavia*, vol. 2. 122.
Solikamſkoi, the deſcription of that city, and its ſalt-works, vol. 1. 98.
Sterlet, a fiſh much eſteemed, vol. 1. 89.
Strelſi, puniſhed by the Czar of *Muſcovy*, for their rebellion, vol. 2. 166.
Strucks, a ſort of flat-bottom veſſels uſed by the *Muſcovites*, vol. 1. 73. Their form and manner of ſailing, *ibid.*
Suchona, river, its courſe, vol. 1. 96.
Sulphur, works, in *Muſcovy*, vol. 1. 81.
Sultania, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 173.
Sun, worſhipped by the antient *Perſians*, vol. 2. 41.
Sunda, ſtreight of, vol. 1. 88.
Superſtition, a ſtrange one, with relation to the lake of *Baikal*, vol. 1. 119.
Sword, deſcription of an extraordinary one, vol. 1. 52.
Suyage, river of, vol. 1. 79.
Syrenes, a people in *Muſcovy*, vol. 1. 97. Their language, religion, and cuſtoms, *ibid.* The extent of their country, *ibid.*

T.

TAGTE *Ruſtan*, a famous mountain in *Perſia*, vol. 1. 266. Ruins of a building on the top of that mountain, and a grotto at its foot, *ibid.*
Tagte Sullemoen, a royal-houſe pleaſure in *Perſia*, vol. 1. 191.
Telimta, a fortreſs in *Ruſſia*, vol. 1. 120.
Tetoetſie, town of, its ſituation and deſcription, vol. 1. 79.
Taiſcha, or a lord of the *Mongales*, vol. 1. 117. His ſiſter a nun of the *Mongale* profeſſion, *ib.* Her belief, *ibid.* Attended by a Lama, or *Mongale* Prieſt, *ibid.*
Tanebay, gulph of, delineated, vol. 2. 195.
Tanguiſkoi, town of, vol. 1. 138.
Tanzinſkoi, caſtle of, vol. 1. 119.
Taper, an extraordinary one deſcribed, vol. 1. 184.
Tarku, town of, its ſituation, vol. 1. 143.
Tartar, king, ſtory of one, vol. 1. 80. *Tartar* market, 87.
Tartars, *Calmucs*, ravages committed by them, vol. 1. 82. The *Tartar* manner of living, 91. Dreſs of the *Tartar* women, 93. In what ſtrange manner the *Tartars*, called *Indians*, ſhave their heads, and ceremonials on that occaſion, 94. *Tartar* horſes, *ibid.* *Tartars* of *Siberia* deſcribed, 99. Their religion and manner of life, *ibid.* They pray but once a year, and acknowledge no devil, *ibid.* Their funerals, *ibid.* Thoſe of their dogs, *ibid.* They allow polygamy, *ibid.* Marriages and lyings-in, *ibid.* Their dreſs, *ibid.* Their habitations, 100. In what manner they ſubſiſt by hunting, *ibid.* Live under the protection of the Czar, *ibid.* Their divine ſervice, 103. Their mufti, *ib.* *Tartars* of *Uffi* and *Baſkir*, 133. Other *Tartars*, *ibid.* Their dreſs, *ibid.* Are good ſoldiers, *ibid.* Their religion, *ibid.* At what time the *Tartars* choſe their chief, or emperor, vol. 2. 168. The ſtyle and conqueſts of that prince, *ibid.*
Tartary, Great, deſert of it, vol. 1. 124.
Tavernier, taxed with miſrepreſenting the ruins of *Perſepolis*, vol. 2. 30. Another miſtake of that author, 132. 160.
Taurus, mount, deſcribed, vol. 1. 171.
Teeth, elephants, found near the river *Don*, vol. 1. 69.
Tobolſka, city of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 101, 102.
Todma, city of, delineated and deſcribed, vol. 2. 188.
Tomb of a ſaint, vol. 1. 152. Other tombs, 153. Deſcription of the tomb of *Tiribbaba*, 157. Several fine tombs deſcribed, 166, &c. A royal tomb, 170. Tomb of *Sultan Mahommed Khodabend*, 173. Tombs in a moſch at *Com*, 176. Deſcription of the tomb of *Abdulla*, and its moving columns,

I N D E X.

lumns, 182. The boldneſs of a child in climbing up one of thoſe columns *ibid.* Tomb of a ſaint, vol. 2. 2. Another tomb, 5. Fine deſcription of the antient royal rombs at *Perſepolis*, vol. 2. 26. The uncertainty with reſpect to the tomb of *Darius*, 27. Fine deſcription of the tombs of *Naxi Ruſtan*, 31, *&c.* A tomb near *Perſepolis* deſcribed, 40. Tombs of ſaints, 47. The tomb of a fine *Perſian* poet, 48. A royal tomb, 62. The tomb of a ſaint, *ibid.* Deſcription of *Chineſe* tombs, 125.

Tomſkoi, city of, its ſituation, and trade with *China*, vol. 1. 134.

Tora, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 133.

Trooytz, its fine monaſtery, deſcribed, vol. 1. 20.

Tournament, at *Iſpahan*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 195.

Tower, deſcription of a fine one, vol. 1. 153.

Tree, an extraordinary one, vol. 2. 133.

Tumeen, town of, alarmed by the *Calmuc Tartars*, vol. 1. 101.

Tunguſes, and their famous Shaman, or magician, vol. 1. 113. Deſcription of his perſon, and the manner in which he exerciſes his art, *ibid.* His riches, *ibid.* Deſcription of the *Tunguſes*, *ibid.* Their ſummer dreſs and ornaments, *ibid.* Thir dreſs in winter, 114. Their diverſions, *ibid.* Their idols, *ibid.* Deſcription of their cabbins, barks, and employments, *ibid.* 115. Remarkable deſcription of a *Tunguſe* prince, and his ſon, 121. Their ſtrength, habit, chaſe, and religion, 136. Their women and maids, *ibid.* Their bread, *ibid.*

Turks, their habit more modeſt and maſculine than that of the *Perſians*, vol. 1. 212.

Turnips, extraordinary ones, vol. 1. 8.

Turpentine-tree, the uſe of its gum and fruit, vol 2. 61.

Tzenogar, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 85.

U.

UDA, river of, deſcription of its fiſh, vol. 1. 120.

Udinſkoi, town of, its ſituation, 1. 119. Deſcription of its ſoil, *ibid.* An earthquake there, *ibid.*

Veronis, the ſituation of that city, vol. 1. 60. Its citadel, *ibid.* Docks for ſhipping, 61. Number of inhabitants in the town, and about it, *ibid.* The proſpect of the city delineated, *ibid.* A hill near the town, covered with ſkulls and bones, and pieces of coffins, 62. Ships, *ibid.*

Volga, river, its courſe, vol. 1. 73. An account of the author's ſhipwreck on that river, vol. 2. 169. His voyage on that river from *Aſtracan* to *Saratof*, ibid. *&c.*

Uſtiga, city of, vol. 1. 96.

W.

WAESMA, city of, deſcribed, vol. 2. 181.

Waſſiele, river of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 81.

Waſſieligorod, town of, vol 1. 76.

Water-chaſe, of ſeals, deſcribed, vol. 1. 11. The danger which attends it, *ibid.*

Water, ſalter near the line than in other parts of the ſea, vol. 2. 129.

Water, feſtival of, its conſecration in *Muſcovy*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 22. Another feſtival of water in *Perſia*, 185.

Water-Melons, fine ones in the gardens at *Aſtracan*, vol. 1. 90. Water-melons of a ſingular ſpecies, 164.

Wedding, a magnificent one of a favourite of the Czar of *Muſcovy*, vol. 1. 25. An account of a pleaſantry which happened on that occaſion, 27. A melancholy accident at one, 53. An account of an extraordinary wedding in *Ruſſia*, ibid.

Wells, dangerous ones, vol. 1. 152. Deep ones deſcribed, vol. 2. 55.

Weygat, ſtreights of deſcribed, vol. 1. 131.

Whale, a ſtrange one, vol. 1. 3.

Wheat, wild *Spaniſh*, in *Perſia*, a deſcription of it, vol 2. 61.

White-Sea, vol. 2. 194.

Wild-Dogs, their extraordinary howling, vol. 1. 89.

Winds, accidents cauſed by their violence, vol. 1. 118. Hot winds, vol. 2. 68.

Witſen, his account of *Weygat*'s ſtreights the beſt, vol. 1. 121.

Wolodimer, city of, its ſituation, and deſcription, vol. 2. 177.

Wologda, city of, vol. 1. 19. Its great church a fine building, *ibid.* Its markets, *ibid.* A variety of fine proſpects in the adjacent country, vol. 2. 186.

Wologda, river of, its courſe deſcribed, vol. 2. 186.

Worobjowa, a royal palace in *Muſcovy*, deſcribed, vol. 1. 38.

Z.

ZARITZA, town of, deſcribed, vol. 1. 84.

Zie-raes, or *Chiras*, city of, deſcribed, vol. 2. 45. A fine bridge, *ibid.* The paſs of *Teng-alla-agber* deſcribed, *ibid.* The diſpoſition of *Chiras*, 46. Moſt of its buildings in ruins, 47. Tombs of ſaints, *ibid.* A beautiful ſtructure, *ibid.* The proſpect of the city delineated, 49. A fine alley, *ibid.* The king's garden, *ibid.* The extent of the city, 50. The ruins of a Moſch, *ibid.* The delightful alley of *Tenga-alla-agber* delineated, 51. Ancient figures, *ibid.*

F I N I S.

7 AP 53